

## PUBLISHERS' NOTICE.

The Publishers take great pleasure in presenting to the public a new edition of the CYCLOPÆDIA OF MODERN TRAVEL, enlarged by the important narratives of

**Dr. Barth's Travels in Central Africa;**

**Dr. Livingston's Travels in Southern and Central Africa;**  
and

**Atkinson's Travels in Siberia and Chinese Tartary;**

Which have been issued since the publication of former editions of this work: the volumes are embellished by a finely engraved portrait of Mr. Taylor, and also by steel engravings of Scenes in Japan, sketched during his visit to that country. The author's preface to this edition will be found in the second volume; and in this connection a letter from Mr. Taylor is printed, without his knowledge, which fully explains itself, and renders unnecessary any further remarks by the Publishers.

NEW YORK, Aug. 5, 1859.

MOORE, WILSTACH, KEYS & Co.

*Gentlemen:* In reply to your inquiry as to what portion of the "Cyclopedia of Modern Travel" was prepared by me, I beg leave to state that of the fifty-eight narratives of exploration which it now contains, *forty-five* were prepared exclusively by my own hand, from the original works. The remaining thirteen were compiled by two literary friends, under my own direction, and were afterward carefully revised by me. The work, therefore, contains an amount of personal labor, such as I have never bestowed upon any other single volume. I have conscientiously endeavored to permit each author to speak for himself as much as possible, and am convinced that no important portion of any narrative is omitted. The work is as full and exact as its limits allow, and I know not where else the same amount of information with regard to travel is to be found in the same compass.

Yours, truly,

BAYARD TAYLOR.

E.

he public a new  
d by the import-

ral Africa;

tary;

mer editions of  
engraved portrait  
Japan, sketched  
this edition will  
a letter from Mr.  
plains itself, and  
s.

Aug. 5, 1859.

he "Cyclopedia of  
the fifty-eight narra-  
t exclusively by my  
e compiled by two  
fully revised by me.  
s I have never be-  
deavored to permit  
vinced that no im-  
d exact as its limits  
ith regard to travel

ARD TAYLOR.









*Deposited Nov. 21<sup>st</sup> 1839.*

**CYCLOPÆDIA OF MODERN TRAVEL:**

**A RECORD OF**

**ADVENTURE, EXPLORATION AND DISCOVERY,**

**FOR THE PAST SIXTY YEARS:**

**COMPRISING**

**NARRATIVES OF THE MOST DISTINGUISHED TRAVELERS SINCE THE  
BEGINNING OF THIS CENTURY;**

**PREPARED AND ARRANGED BY**

*21* **BAYARD TAYLOR.** *1848*

**ILLUSTRATED WITH NUMEROUS MAPS AND ENGRAVINGS.**

**REVISED AND ENLARGED EDITION.**

**COMPLETE IN TWO VOLUMES.**

**VOLUME I.**



**NEW YORK:**

**MOORE, WILSTACH, KEYS & CO.,  
49 WALKER STREET.**

**CINCINNATI: 25 WEST FOURTH STREET.  
1860.**

*170. 11 pl. 6 m*

G170  
T233

---

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1866, by

MOORE, WILSTACH, KEYS & CO.,

In the Clerk's office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of Ohio.

---

21299

---

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1869, by

MOORE, WILSTACH, KEYS & CO.,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern District of Ohio.

---

ELECTROTYPED BY  
THOMAS B. SMITH.

ern District of Ohio.

ern District of Ohio.





7-8-2) ap. 05

TO

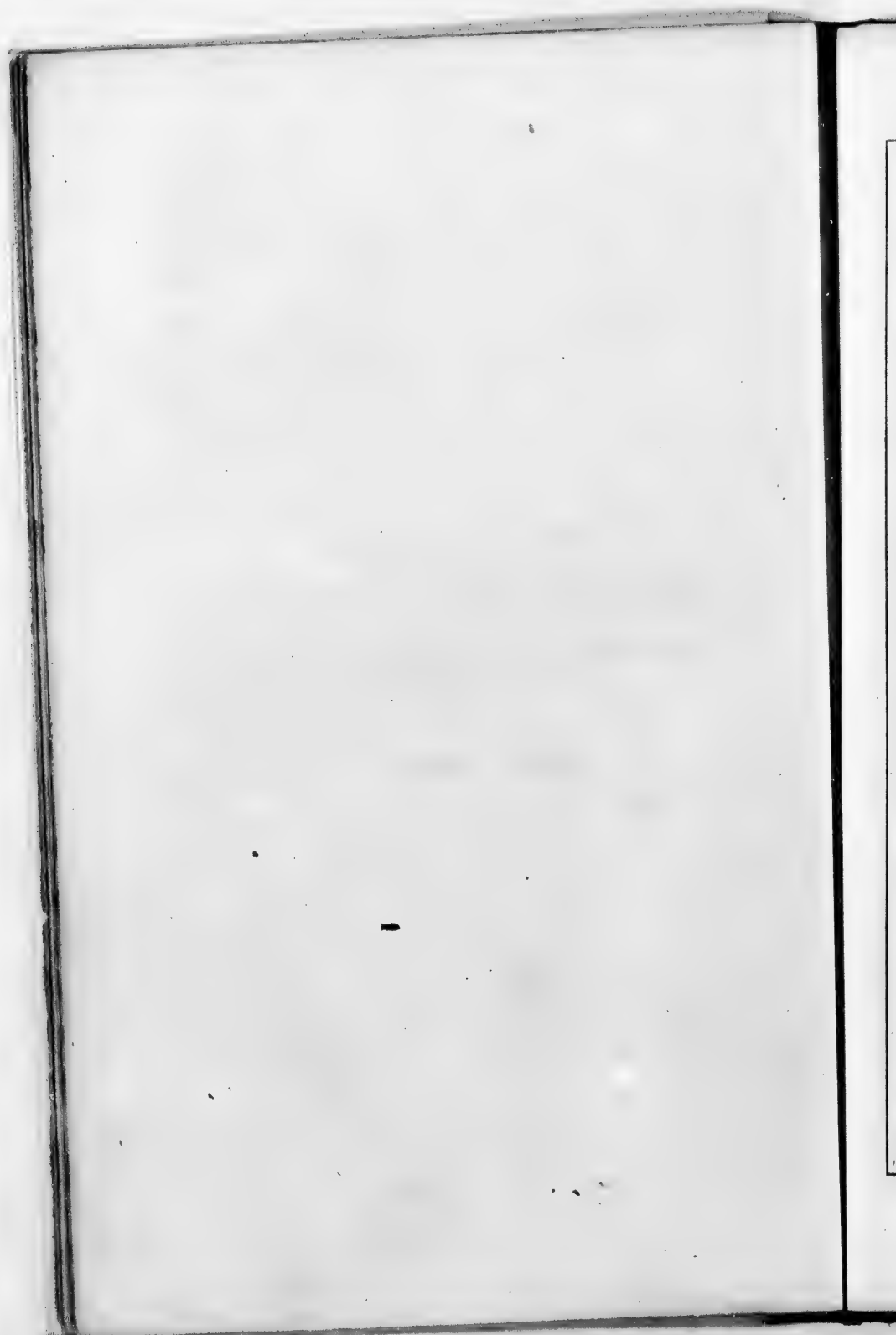
ALEXANDER VON HUMBOLDT,

THE OLDEST AND THE MOST RENOWNED OF LIVING TRAVELERS,

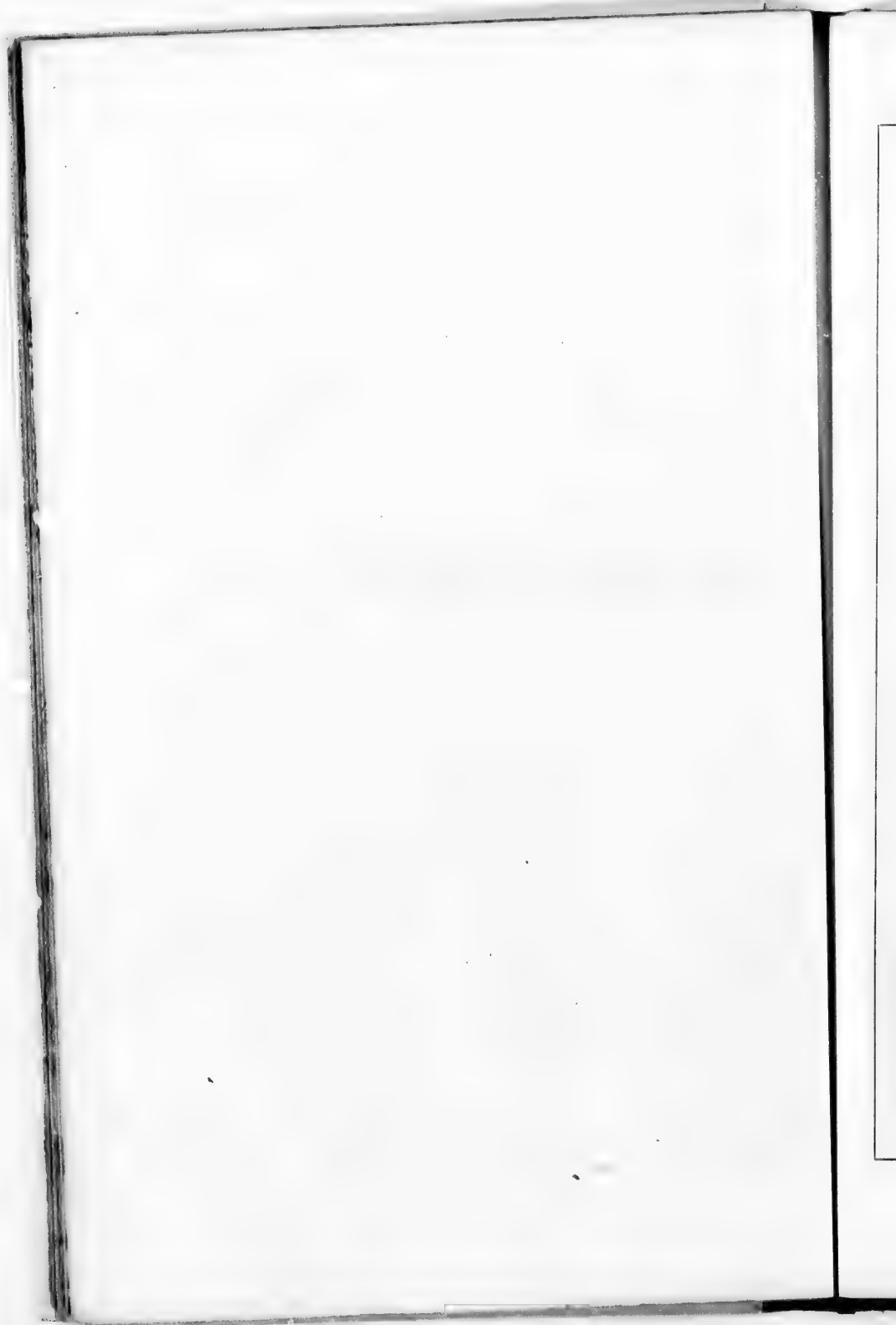
THIS COMPENDIUM OF THE RESULTS OF MODERN  
TRAVEL AND EXPLORATION,

19

Reverently Inscribed.



Cyclopedia of Modern Travel.



## PREFACE.

THE present century is emphatically an age of exploration and discovery. At no period since the days of Columbus and Cortez has the thirst for exploring new lands been more active and universal than now. One by one the outposts of barbarism are stormed and carried; advanced parallels are thrown up, and the besieging lines of knowledge, which, when once established, can never be retaken, are gradually closing round the yet unconquered mysteries of the globe. Modern exploration is intelligent, and its results are therefore positive and permanent. The traveler no longer wanders bewildered in a cloud of fables, prepared to see marvels, and but too ready to create them: he tests every step of the way by the sure light of science, and his pioneer trail becomes a plain and easy path to those who follow. The pencil, the compass, the barometer, and the sextant accompany him; geology, botany, and ethnology are his aids; and by these helps and appliances, his single brain now achieves results which it would once have required an armed force to win.

In nothing is this change more manifest than in the character of the narratives of modern travelers, as contrasted with those of the past three centuries. The old travelers had all the wonder and the credulity of children, and were scarcely less naïve and unembarrassed in the candor of their relations. They made their works a complete confessional of their experiences; they withheld no secrets from their readers, and in their account of the customs of strange races they frequently descended to details which the extreme delicacy of modern taste would not allow. Their volumes are singular compounds of personal experiences, historical episodes, statistics, and reflections on the laws, religions, and habits of life of other races of men, interwoven with many wonderful stories, and with the most extraordinary conjectures and speculations. Their con-

scientiousness in describing all which they saw, and their readiness in believing all which they heard, have subjected most of them to the charge of exaggeration, if not of positive falsehood ; yet many of their most extraordinary statements have been fully confirmed in our own day, and there is scarcely a single instance where any old traveler of repute has been convicted of willful fabrication.

The modern traveler, on the other hand, is characterized by scepticism rather than credulity. He is much more interested in solving some problem of physical geography, or in illustrating some favorite scientific theory, than in tales of "gorgons, hydras, and chimæras dire." As the ends of the earth have been brought together, through the extension of commercial intercourse, and that magnificent system of colonization which is the leading feature of modern history, he is no longer obliged to masquerade in the disguises of other races than his own, but bears about him the distinguishing stamp of his nationality. He is thus less truly a cosmopolite than his prototype of two centuries back, and while his delineations of nature are in most cases as exact and faithful as possible, he gives us less of that intrinsic human nature which lends such a charm to the story of the latter. There are some exceptions, it is true, the most remarkable of whom is M. Huc, who exhibits all the simplicity and sincerity of the early Jesuit missionaries ; and the reader can not help being impressed with the conviction that he tells us nothing which he does not himself honestly believe.

But in the accuracy of their observations the travelers of modern times are pre-eminently distinguished. It is no longer the testimony of a pair of eyes which is offered to us ; it is also the confirmation of instruments as unerring as natural laws, which photograph for us the climate, the conformation, the scenery, and the inhabitants of distant lands. Mountains have been measured and the enormous abysses of the ocean sounded ; maps are no longer an unmeaning plane surface, but the central plateaus of continents, and the terraces of mountain ranges take their proportionate levels ; coast-lines, which formerly displayed but the imperfect resemblance of a child's attempt at drawing, have now the clear and certain outline, the perfect profile of an artist's hand, and every feature in the panorama of our globe is growing into new and beautiful distinctness. These vast results are exclusively the product of our own day. Humboldt, the founder of Physical Geography, still lives to rejoice over the discoveries of each successive year ; Agassiz, who has arranged the geographical distribution of the animal king-

doms, and Maury, who has sketched the inequalities of the beds of oceans, ascertained their currents, and organized the apparent chaos of the winds, live among us ; while a host of co-workers, in all parts of the world, are daily contributing materials toward the perfection of those grand systems which attest the supremacy of Man over the material universe, and the majesty of that Divine Wisdom to which the order of creation moves.

A comparison of the maps which we now possess with those of fifty years ago, will best illustrate the achievements of modern exploration. Within that time all the principal features of the geography of our own vast interior regions have been accurately determined ; the great fields of Central Asia have been traversed in various directions, from Bokhara and the Oxus to the Chinese Wall ; the half-known river systems of South America have been explored and surveyed ; the icy continent around the Southern Pole has been discovered ; the North-Western Passage, the *ignis-fatus* of nearly two centuries, is at last found ; the Dead Sea is stripped of its fabulous terrors ; the course of the Niger is no longer a myth, and the sublime secret of the Nile is almost wrested from his keeping. The Mountains of the Moon, sought for through two thousand years, have been beheld by a Caucasian eye ; an English steamer has ascended the Chadda to the frontiers of the great kingdom of Bornou ; Eyre, Leichhardt, and Sturt have penetrated the wilderness of Australia ; the Russians have explored the frozen shores of Northern Siberia, and descended from Irkoutsk to the mouth of the Amoor ; the antiquated walls of Chinese prejudice have been cracked, and are fast tumbling down ; and the canvas screens which surrounded Japan have been cut by the sharp edge of American enterprise. Such are the principal features in the progress of modern discovery. What half-century, since the form of the earth and the boundaries of its land and water were known, can exhibit such a list of achievements ?

The design of this book is to present a compact, yet as far as possible, a complete and satisfactory, view of these results. So far as I am aware, no work of the kind has yet been undertaken. When it was proposed to me by the publishers, to whom the original idea is due, I at once recognized its utility, and as the preparation of it, though involving a considerable amount of labor, was congenial to my tastes and pursuits, I agreed to complete it previous to setting out on a new series of travels. As it was the object of the publishers to produce a work which should possess permanent value as a book of reference, and yet be sufficiently popular in its arrangement to interest the great mass of readers, who desire some-



thing more than a dry statement of facts, while its cost should not place it beyond their reach, I decided to let each traveler tell his own story, mainly, confining my own labors to the necessary condensation, and to the selection and arrangement of the different narratives.

The limits prescribed to me rendered it impossible to include under the head of "Travels," the many voyages of exploration which have been made during this century, and which have contributed so richly to its record of discoveries. Those of Ross, Parry, Cecile, D'Urville, Wilkes, Beechy, and others, extending over long periods of time, would have required much space in order to present a complete summary of their results. I determined, therefore, to confine myself to the works of travel and exploration by land, and even in this field the material was so rich that to have included every traveler who has attained some distinction since the beginning of this century would have rendered necessary a much more barren and encyclopedical arrangement than I have thought proper to adopt. The reader, who is interested in a traveler's achievements, naturally desires to hear them told in his own language and characteristic manner, and I preferred selecting the most prominent narratives—those which are, in some measure, typical of the various fields of exploration—and omitting those which are of less importance, or the disclosures of which have been superseded by later travelers. For the same reason, where the story of a man's travels is the story of his life, I have given the article a biographical character, as in the case of Burckhardt and Mungo Park. Alexander von Humboldt, from the position he occupies, justifies the same departure from the original plan of the work. No complete and connected account of his journeys has ever yet been published.

My principal difficulty has thus been the very richness of the materials at my disposal. I have taken great care to prevent the work of compilation from becoming mutilation—to distinguish between that which is of limited or special importance, and that which possesses general interest and value. I can not suppose that I have always succeeded, and am prepared to hear my judgment questioned on many points. The general usefulness of the work, however, and the necessity for its preparation, may be conceded. It contains fifty-five narratives, which, in their original form of publication, embrace ninety volumes. Many of the works, including some of the greatest interest, have long been out of print; many have never been republished in this country; and a few have not been translated into English. Very few distinguished names

have been omitted. Most of the ground traversed by Sir Alexander Burnes is covered by the narratives of Meyendorff and Lieutenant Wood; I was prevented from describing the very interesting researches of Stephens in Central America and Yucatan, by the fact of their being copyright works; and of Schomburgk's expensive work on Guiana, there is not a copy in this country, to my knowledge, and none to be procured at present. With these exceptions, the list of travelers who have made important contributions to our knowledge of other countries and other races, will be found complete.

I have, of course, been obliged to omit all works which do not in some degree partake of the character of exploration, however admirable in style or interesting in substance. There are also some works of the greatest interest in the course of publication, but which have not yet appeared. Foremost among these are the travels of Dr. Barth in Central Africa, which probably exceed in importance any previous labors in the same field. Dr. Krapf has not yet given to the world his account of the great African snow mountain of Kilimandjaro, which he discovered in the year 1850. Anderson's visit to the great lake Ngami, in Southern Africa, is on the eve of publication, and Dr. Livingston, the discoverer of this lake, is now on his return to Cape Town, from a daring journey of three years into the unknown interior. There is, therefore, the greater necessity now, when scarcely a year passes over without some interesting geographical discovery, of bringing together in a convenient form all that has hitherto been done, as an introduction to and elucidation of what may be done hereafter. Of the essential interest of the various narratives it is unnecessary to speak. Many of them already constitute a portion of the household literature of the world, and are read wherever heroic endurance and unflinching courage are held in esteem.

It was thought best to arrange the narratives in chronological order, although this rule has not been adhered to in all cases. Where there is a manifest connection between two or more separate exploring journeys—as in the case of Denham, Clapperton, and Lander—such connection has always been preserved. In some instances, also, several disconnected journeys over prescribed routes or in a special field of travel, have been grouped together under one head. To have introduced geographical distinctions, in addition, would have complicated the arrangement and required a greater expenditure of time than I have been able to devote to the work. I have endeavored to do the best allowed by the time and space at my disposal, and claim no further merit than that of the

mosaic-worker who arranges in a symmetrical form the jewels placed before him.

In nearly all instances the articles have been prepared from the original editions of the various works. For reference to a few volumes which I was unable to obtain, I am indebted to the Astor and Society Libraries of this city. My friend, Mr. Barclay Pennock, afforded me much assistance in translating from the French and German, and in the abridgement of some of the narratives. The cuts with which the work is illustrated have been taken in all cases, from the original publications. The maps have been specially prepared for the purpose, and will, it is believed, add materially to the interest of the narratives to which they are prefixed.

BAYARD TAYLOR.

NEW YORK, JULY, 1856.

jewels placed

ared from the  
nce to a few  
t to the Astor  
lay Pennock,  
e French and  
ratives. The  
taken in all  
s have been  
believed, add  
hich they are

TAYLOR.

## C O N T E N T S.

	PAGE
<b>LIFE AND TRAVELS OF ALEXANDER VON HUMBOLDT,</b>	19
Youth and Education,	19
Voyage to America,	23
Travels on the Orinoco,	33
Voyages on the Rio Negro and Cassiquiare,	50
Return to Cumana,	56
Visit to Cuba,	59
Travels among the Andes,	60
Visit to Mexico and return to Europe,	71
Publication of his Works,	73
Journey through Russia, Siberia, and Tartary,	76
Humboldt's Later Years,	87
<b>MUNGO PARK'S TRAVELS IN WESTERN AFRICA,</b>	93
Second Journey,	118
<b>LEWIS AND CLARKE'S JOURNEY TO THE PACIFIC OCEAN,</b>	129
Voyage up the Missouri,	129
Winter among the Mandans,	138
Journey across the Rocky Mountains,	142
Voyage down Lewis and Columbia Rivers,	160
Winter on the Pacific Coast,	169
The Return Journey,	175
<b>BURCKHARDT'S TRAVELS IN SYRIA, AFRICA, AND ARABIA,</b>	197
Travels in Syria,	197
Discovery of Petra,	205
Travels in Nubia and Ethiopia,	207
Journey to Mecca and Medina,	218
<b>BELZONI'S EXPLORATIONS IN EGYPT,</b>	228
<b>CAILLIAUD'S JOURNEY TO THE LIBYAN OASES, ETHIOPIA, AND SENNAAR,</b>	245
<b>FRANKLIN'S OVERLAND JOURNEY TO THE POLAR SEA,</b>	289
<b>MEYENDORFF'S JOURNEY TO BOKHARA,</b>	323
<b>TIMKOVSKI'S JOURNEY FROM SIBERIA TO PEKIN,</b>	349
<b>COCHRANE'S PEDESTRIAN JOURNEY THROUGH SIBERIA,</b>	388
<b>GOLOWNIN'S CAPTIVITY IN JAPAN,</b>	411
<b>DE LASCARIS'S SECRET MISSION AMONG THE BEDOUINS,</b>	439
<b>DENHAM AND CLAPPERTON'S EXPEDITION TO CENTRAL AFRICA,</b>	463
Reception in Bornou,	469
Denham's Military Excursion to Mandara,	478
The Rainy Season in Bornou,	487
Excursions to Loggun and around Lake Tchad,	491
Clapperton's Journey to Sackatoo,	497
Return to Europe,	502
<b>CLAPPERTON'S SECOND JOURNEY TO SACKATOO,</b>	505
Return Journey of Richard Lander,	518

	PAGE
EXPLORATIONS OF THE NIGER, . . . . .	523
Discoveries of Richard and John Lander, . . . . .	523
Laird and Oldfield's Voyages on the Niger, . . . . .	543
Narrative of Dr. Oldfield, . . . . .	550
Aller and Thompson's Expedition, . . . . .	553
MOFFAT'S LIFE IN SOUTHERN AFRICA, . . . . .	561
STURT'S EXPLORATIONS IN AUSTRALIA, . . . . .	581
Journey to the River Darling, . . . . .	581
Voyage down the Murrumbidgee and Murray Rivers, . . . . .	597
BAGG'S ARCTIC LAND EXPEDITION, . . . . .	596
WELLSTED'S TRAVELS IN OMAN, . . . . .	615
EXPLORATIONS OF THE WHITE NILE, . . . . .	628
Werne's Voyage, . . . . .	628
Dr. Knoblecher's Voyage, . . . . .	642
MAJOR HARRIS'S MISSION TO SHOA, . . . . .	649
PARKYNS'S LIFE IN ABYSSINIA, . . . . .	665
WOOD'S JOURNEY TO THE OXUS, . . . . .	683
FREMONT'S EXPLORATIONS OF THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS AND CALIFORNIA, . . . . .	697
Journey to the Rocky Mountains, . . . . .	697
Journey to Oregon and California, . . . . .	706
HUO'S TRAVELS IN TARTARY, THIBET, AND CHINA, . . . . .	727
Journey through Tartary and Thibet, . . . . .	727
Residence at Lha-Ssa, . . . . .	750
Journey from Lha-Ssa to Canton, . . . . .	754
FORTUNE'S JOURNEYS TO THE TEA-COUNTRIES OF CHINA, . . . . .	763
Journey to the Green Tea Districts, . . . . .	763
Journey to the Bohea Mountains, . . . . .	767
RECENT EXPLORATIONS IN AUSTRALIA, . . . . .	773
Eyre's Journey, . . . . .	773
Mitchell's Journey to Tropical Australia, . . . . .	776
Leichhardt's Overland Journey to Port Essington, . . . . .	786
LYNCH'S EXPLORATION OF THE DEAD SEA, . . . . .	795
LAYARD'S EXPLORATIONS AT NINEVEH AND BABYLON, . . . . .	809
First Excavations at Nineveh, . . . . .	809
Second Visit to Nineveh, . . . . .	816
Excavations of Babylon, . . . . .	822
TRAVELS OF IDA PFEIFFER, . . . . .	827
Journey to Palestine, . . . . .	827
Journey to Iceland, . . . . .	834
First Journey around the World, . . . . .	836
Second Journey around the World, . . . . .	844
EXPLORATIONS OF THE AMAZON RIVER, . . . . .	851
Journey of Lieutenant Herndon, . . . . .	851
Journey of Lieutenant Gibbon, . . . . .	860
RICHARDSON'S TRAVELS IN THE SAHARA, . . . . .	871
RICHARDSON AND BARTH'S EXPEDITION TO CENTRAL AFRICA, . . . . .	885
Dr. Barth's Journey to Adamowa, . . . . .	895
Dr. Overweg's Exploration of Lake Tsad, . . . . .	897
Explorations in 1851 and 1852, . . . . .	900
Explorations of Drs. Barth and Vogel, . . . . .	903
Navigation of the River Benue, . . . . .	905
BURTON'S PILGRIMAGE TO MECCA, . . . . .	909
EXPLORATION OF LOO-CHOO, . . . . .	916
Report of Bayard Taylor, . . . . .	916

## LIST OF MAPS.

		PAGE
SOUTH AMERICA, . . . . .	<i>Illustrating Humboldt's Travels,</i>	18
WESTERN AFRICA, . . . . .	<i>Mungo Park's "</i>	92
SYRIA, ETC., . . . . .	<i>Burchard's "</i>	196
NUBIA AND ETHIOPIA, . . . . .	<i>Cailliaud's "</i>	244
NORTHERN AMERICA, . . . . .	<i>Franklin's "</i>	288
PART OF SIBERIA AND MONGOLIA, . . . . .	<i>Timkovski's and Cochrane's Travels,</i>	348
PART OF AFRICA, . . . . .	<i>Denham and Clapperton's "</i>	462
THE NIGER, . . . . .	<i>Lander's Explorations, . . . . .</i>	523
EASTERN AUSTRALIA, . . . . .	<i>Sturt's "</i>	580
TARTARY, THIBET, AND CHINA, . . . . .	<i>Huc's Travels, . . . . .</i>	726
ASSYRIA, . . . . .	<i>Layard's Explorations, . . . . .</i>	808
THE AMAZON, . . . . .	<i>Herdon and Gibbon's Explorations, . . . . .</i>	850
CENTRAL AFRICA, . . . . .	<i>Richardson and Barth's Expedition, . . . . .</i>	884

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

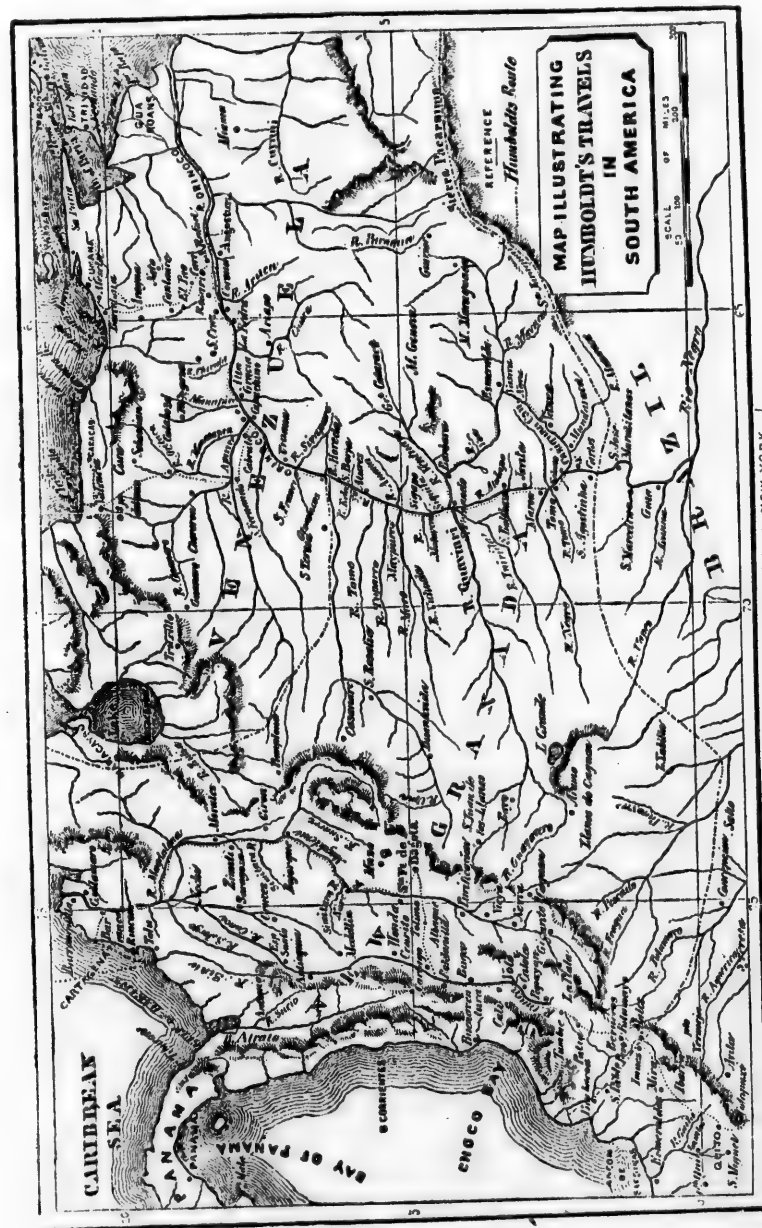
PORTRAITS OF DISTINGUISHED TRAVELERS, . . . . .	(Frontispiece)
FALLS OF TEQUENDAMA, . . . . .	62
THE VOLCANO OF COTOPAXI, . . . . .	64
CHIMBORAZO, . . . . .	67
SULTAN ALI'S TENT AT BENOWM, . . . . .	101
KAMALIA, . . . . .	115
EXCAVATED TOMB AT PETRA, . . . . .	227
FORT ENTERPRISE, . . . . .	293
WILBERFORCE FALLS, . . . . .	298
LAKE TOHAD, . . . . .	470
BODY-GUARD OF THE SHEKH OF BORNOU, . . . . .	473
ARRIVAL AT MORA, IN MANDARA, . . . . .	480
LANCER OF THE SULTAN OF BEGHARMI, . . . . .	494
AFRICAN FOREST, . . . . .	509
SCENERY OF THE LOWER NIGER, . . . . .	530
ABOKKO, . . . . .	537
LANDER'S GRAVE, . . . . .	552
MOUTH OF THE NIGER, . . . . .	554
KING OBI AND HIS WIVES, . . . . .	555
THE MODEL FARM, . . . . .	556

	PAGE
JUNCTION OF THE MURRAY AND THE DARLING, . . . . .	591
ANDERSON'S FALLS, . . . . .	604
VIEW SEAWARD FROM MONTREAL ISLAND, . . . . .	611
SCENERY OF OMAN, . . . . .	615
A WANDERING AFRICAN TRIBE, . . . . .	654
WARRIORS OF SHOA, . . . . .	660
ABYSSINIAN WARRIORS, . . . . .	670
AN ABYSSINIAN LADY OF FASHION, . . . . .	680
PEKIN, . . . . .	727
SAMDADCHIEMBA, . . . . .	739
THE HEMP PALM, . . . . .	765
CHINESE TEA-CARRIER, . . . . .	770
BOTTLE-TREE OF AUSTRALIA, . . . . .	779
NATIVES OF AUSTRALIA, . . . . .	783
THE MOUND OF NIMROUD (NINEVEH), . . . . .	809
THE RUINS OF BABYLON, . . . . .	822
COLOSSAL WINGED LION, FROM NINEVEH, . . . . .	825
ILLIMANI, HIGHEST PEAK OF THE ANDES, . . . . .	863
DESCENDING THE RAPIDS OF THE MADEIRA, . . . . .	868
GHADAMES, . . . . .	873
THE WELLS OF MISLAH, . . . . .	877
GHAT, . . . . .	879
THE DEMONS' PALACE . . . . .	887



PAGE

591  
604  
611  
615  
654  
660  
670  
680  
727  
739  
765  
770  
779  
783  
809  
822  
825  
863  
868  
873  
877  
879  
887





## LIFE AND TRAVELS

OF

## ALEXANDER VON HUMBOLDT.\*

SCIENTIFIC EXPLORATIONS IN SOUTH AMERICA, MEXICO,  
RUSSIA, SIBERIA, AND TARTARY.

### YOUTH AND EDUCATION.

ALEXANDER VON HUMBOLDT, the oldest and most renowned of living travelers, was born in Berlin, on the 14th of September, 1769. His youth was spent in the castle and park of Tegel, about nine miles north-west of that city—an estate which his father, Major Von Humboldt, purchased at the termination of the Seven Years' War, when he was appointed chamberlain to Frederic the Great. The poet Goethe, when he accompanied the Duke of Saxe-Weimar to Berlin, in the year 1778, visited Tegel, and there saw the Major's two sons, Wilhelm and Alexander, who were then eight and ten years of age, but could scarcely recognize in them, at that time, his future friends and co-workers in the fields of literature and natural science.

\* Humboldt is a traveled man of science, rather than a traveler. His passion for scientific investigation is, perhaps, even greater than his individual enjoyment of new scenes and new experiences. Hence I have found it difficult to obtain the material for a connected narrative of his travels and explorations. His "Personal Narrative," which was written to supply this want, at the request of his friends, is a rich treasury of information, but contributes comparatively little to the end in view, and does not extend beyond his visit to Cuba, in the year 1801. The remaining portion I have been obliged to construct out of fragmentary descriptions scattered through his other works. Klencke's "Life of Humboldt," on which I have relied for a concise statement of the scientific results of his travels, gives but the merest outline. The following are the principal works consulted: Humboldt's "Personal Narrative;" Humboldt's "Views of Nature;" Humboldt's "Vues des Cordillères;" Humboldt's "New Spain;" Humboldt's "Kleinere Schriften;" Humboldt's "Asie Centrale;" Rose's "Reise nach dem Ural," etc. (Journey to the Ural); Klencke's "Life of Humboldt."

The brothers Humboldt were remarkably fortunate in the influences which surrounded them in early life. The question of educational reform was beginning to engage the attention of scholars and statesmen; the ideas of Rousseau, which had penetrated into Germany, had given rise to more rational and liberal plans for the instruction of youth. The physical development of the scholar received its due share of attention, and the study of natural science was considered of no less importance than that of metaphysics and the classics. The first tutor employed by Major Von Humboldt for his sons was Campe (afterwards distinguished as a critic and philologist), who had edited a German edition of Robinson Crusoe, and had written several books for children, containing imaginary narratives of travel and adventure. It is very probable that these books, and the conversation of their author, first excited the passion for travel in the mind of his youngest pupil. By him, and the tutors who succeeded him, the boys were carefully instructed according to their years, without doing violence to the individual bent of their natures. They were allowed to pursue different paths of study, aiding and illustrating each other's progress by the mutual communication and discussion of what they had learned. Alexander soon began to show his inclination for the study of nature. In his eleventh year he received lessons in botany, and thenceforth devoted himself with ardor to that and kindred sciences. It was noticed, however, that his mind was slow to retain what was taught him; his body was weak, and not until late in boyhood, after he had become more robust and vigorous, did he awake to a full consciousness of his powers.

In the year 1786, the brothers entered the University of Frankfurt-on-the-Oder, where they remained two years, and were then transferred to that of Göttingen. Here Alexander, now in his nineteenth year, made the acquaintance of Blumenbach, the celebrated natural historian, and of George Forster, who, as naturalist, had accompanied Cook in his voyage around the globe. Through the friendship of the latter, his longing for exploration and scientific discovery was confirmed and strengthened; and he acquired that love of civil liberty, those humane and progressive ideas, which have made him, while the friend of monarchs, the most liberal of citizens. Of the admiration which he felt for Forster, we have ample testimony in the second volume of "Cosmos," where he pays an eloquent tribute to his genius. "All that can give truth, individuality, and distinctiveness to the delineation of exotic nature, is united in his works."

The brothers completed their studies in 1789. While Wilhelm, whose talents fitted him for political life, paid a visit to Paris, Alexander, in company with Forster, made his first scientific journey to the Rhine, through Holland, and to England in the spring of 1790; and this first experience became the subject of his first literary production. It appeared in the same year, under the title of "Mineralogical Observations on some Basaltic Formations of the Rhine." After studying

book-keeping in a commercial institute in Hamburg, he removed to Freiburg, and became a student in the mining academy, where he remained until the spring of 1792, when he received the appointment of superintendent of mines in Franconia, an office which he held for the three following years. During this time he zealously prosecuted his mineralogical and botanical studies, and made various experiments on the physical and chemical laws of metallurgy. His mind, however, was unsatisfied with his position; he was looking forward with impatience to the opportunity of prosecuting his investigations in broader and fresher fields, and the plan of his great American journey, which appears to have been first made during his intimacy with Forster, presented itself constantly to his imagination. In order to prepare himself for an undertaking of such magnitude, he made several visits to Switzerland and the mountains of Silesia, besides an official journey into Prussian Poland. Thenceforth, this vision of transatlantic travel and exploration became the ruling aim of his life. He thus refers to it in the opening chapter of his "Personal Narrative:"—"From my earliest youth, I felt an ardent desire to travel into distant regions, seldom visited by Europeans. This desire is characteristic of a period of our existence when life appears an unlimited horizon, and when we find an irresistible attraction in the impetuous agitation of the mind, and the image of positive danger. Though educated in a country which has no direct communication with either the East or the West Indies, living amid mountains remote from coasts, and celebrated for their numerous mines, I felt an increasing passion for the sea and distant expeditions. Objects with which we are acquainted only by the animated narratives of travelers have a peculiar charm; imagination wanders with delight over that which is vague and undefined; and the pleasures we are deprived of seem to possess a fascinating power, compared with which, all we daily feel in the narrow circle of sedentary life appears insipid."

Resigning his office in 1795, Humboldt visited Vienna, where he associated himself with the celebrated Freiesleben, and resumed the study of botany. He also occupied himself with galvanism, then just discovered, and planned a visit to the volcanic districts of Naples and Sicily, which he was unable to carry out, on account of the war. The death of his mother, and the disposition of the paternal estates, now called him away from his studies, and it was not until 1797 that he was able to make serious preparations for his American journey. In order to supply himself with ample means, he sold the large estate which he had inherited, and set aside the greater part of the proceeds for that object. But he was yet to encounter delays and obstacles, which would have exhausted the patience of a less enthusiastic person. The brothers had long talked of a journey to Italy in company, and it was decided to carry out this plan prior to Alexander's departure, but, on reaching Vienna, their progress was stopped by the war between France and Austria. Alexander spent the winter of 1797-8 in Salzburg, where he

the influences of educational  
ars and states-  
Germany, had  
ction of youth.  
share of atten-  
no less import-  
tutor employed  
erwards distin-  
German edition  
r children, con-  
It is very prob-  
ior, first excited  
l. By him, and  
y instructed ac-  
dividual bent of  
paths of study,  
tual communica-  
der soon began  
eleventh year he  
nself with ardor  
r, that his mind  
as weak, and not  
st and vigorous,

ity of Frankfort-  
then transferred  
nineteenth year,  
natural historian,  
anied Cook in his  
of the latter, his  
confirmed and  
ty, those humans  
he friend of mon-  
which he felt for  
ne of "Cosmos,"  
All that can give  
reation of exotic

While Wilhelm,  
to Paris, Alexan-  
ic journey to the  
ng of 1790; and  
erary production.  
neralogical Obser-  
After studying

met with a gentleman who had visited Illyria and Greece, and who was ardently desirous of making a journey to Egypt. The two enthusiasts matured a plan of ascending the Nile as far as the Nubian frontier, to be followed by an exploration of Palestine and Syria; but the political aspects of Europe at this time prevented them from carrying it into effect. In the spring, Humboldt, hearing that the French government was fitting out an exploring expedition, to be dispatched to the southern hemisphere, under the command of Captain Baudin, hastened to Paris, whither his brother had proceeded, after the peace of Campo Formio. Here he first met with M. Aimé Bonpland, his future companion in South America, who had been appointed one of the naturalists of the expedition. They entered together on a course of preparatory study, while Humboldt, at the same time, united with the celebrated Gay-Lussac, in making experiments to determine the composition of the atmosphere. In addition to these labors, he found time to study the Arabic language. His intellectual activity appears to have been truly remarkable, and there was scarcely any branch of knowledge, which could even remotely increase his qualifications for the great task before him, of which he did not make himself master.

Baudin's expedition was given up, on account of the renewed prospect of war. But the spirit of travel was now thoroughly implanted in Humboldt's heart, and he at once set about forming new plans. Being offered passage from Marseilles to Algiers, in a Swedish frigate, which was dispatched on a special mission to the latter country, he conceived the idea of passing through Barbary to Egypt, and there joining the French scientific mission, which accompanied the army of Napoleon. He also proposed to visit Mecca, if possible, and to extend his travels through Persia to India. In these plans he was seconded by Bonpland, who joined company with him, and in the autumn of 1798 they both proceeded to Marseilles, to await the arrival of the Swedish frigate. Here, again, they were doomed to disappointment. After waiting two months, they learned that the frigate had been injured in a storm on the coast of Portugal, and would not arrive until the following spring. During a visit to Toulon, Humboldt saw the frigate *La Boudouse*, which had been commanded by Bougainville in his voyage around the world. He says: "I can not describe the impression made upon my mind by the sight of the vessel which had carried Commerson to the islands of the South Sea." Rather than remain inactive in Marseilles, the two friends resolved to pass the winter in Spain. They proceeded, by way of Barcelona, to Madrid, making astronomical observations and barometrical measurements on the road. On arriving at the capital, they found that the accident to the Swedish frigate was the best fortune which could have befallen them. The Saxon ambassador informed Humboldt that under the administration of the enlightened minister, Urquijo, he might obtain permission to travel in Spanish America, a permission which, through the jealousy of Spain, had hitherto been obtained with great



difficulty, and always accompanied with restrictions, which greatly diminished its value. Humboldt thus relates the result of his application: "I was presented at the court of Aranjuez in March, 1799, and the king received me graciously. I explained to him the motives which led me to undertake a voyage to the New World, and the Philippine Islands, and I presented a memoir on the subject to the Secretary of State. Señor de Urquijo supported my demand, and overcame every obstacle. I obtained two passports, one from the first Secretary of State, the other from the Council of the Indies. Never had so extensive a permission been granted to any traveler, and never had any foreigner been honored with more confidence on the part of the Spanish government."

## VOYAGE TO AMERICA.

Overflowing with joy at the unhopd-for realization of desires which he had cherished for nine years, and full of the anticipation of adventure and discovery in the New World, Humboldt left Madrid in May, 1799, accompanied by Bonpland, and proceeded to Corunna, on the north-western coast of Spain, where the corvette Pizarro, bound for Havana and Mexico, was lying. The captain was ordered, not only to receive the travelers on board, and provide a safe place for their astronomical instruments, but also to touch at the port of Orotava, in the Canaries, and allow them time to ascend the peak of Teneriffe. Corunna was at that time blockaded by an English fleet, owing to which cause the sailing of the Pizarro was postponed from day to day, but in the beginning of June a violent storm obliged the three hostile vessels to make for the open sea, and on the fifth the corvette hoisted her anchors, and safely slipped away. The moment so impatiently looked forward to, through so many years, was come at last: after so much severe study, so much devotion to his object, such rich and various preparation, Humboldt, now thirty years of age, entered on the magnificent task, which he considered the great work of his life, and the foundation of his fame as a man of science. No man was ever better prepared, both by nature and by cultivation, for such an undertaking, or better deserved success by the patience and enthusiasm with which he overcame the obstacles in the way of its accomplishment. But the beginnings of success are always clouded with doubt and uncertainty, and when the irrevocable step had been taken, he experienced that sense of depression common to all travelers on first setting out, and he thus wrote: "The moment of leaving Europe for the first time, is attended with a solemn feeling. We in vain summon to our minds the frequency of the communication between the two worlds; we in vain reflect on the great facility with which, from the improved state of navigation, we traverse the Atlantic, which, compared to the Pacific, is but a larger arm of the sea; the sentiment we feel when we first undertake so distant a voyage, is not the less



accompanied by a deep emotion, unlike any other impression we have hitherto felt. Separated from the objects of our dearest affections, entering in some sort on a new state of existence, we are forced to fall back on our own thoughts, and we feel within ourselves a dreariness we have never known before." The light of a fisher's hut at Sisarga, glimmering like a star on the horizon, was his last glimpse of Europe. He and Bonpland leaned over the rail, watching it until it disappeared. "Oh," he exclaimed, years afterward, "these impressions will never be erased from my memory! How many recollections does not one bright spot, shining unsteadily over the agitated waves in the darkness of night, and pointing out the shores of our native earth, recall to the imagination!"

At sunset, on the 8th of June, the English fleet was seen from the mast-head, and the course of the Pizarro was immediately altered. For some days no lights were allowed on board after dark, for fear of detection, and the travelers were obliged to use dark lanterns in consulting the thermometer. Nothing could have surpassed the enthusiasm with which they prosecuted their scientific investigations. In Humboldt's narrative, the romance of travel is wholly lost sight of in the zeal of the philosopher. No sooner had he left the land than he began to speculate on the currents of the sea, and to measure their force and direction. He fished up medusae, or sea-nettles, galvanized them, and tested their capacity to emit light; he was enchanted with the beauty of the nights, but not too much so to make astronomical observations; he admired the brilliant azure of the tropical sky, and measured its intensity of color with a cyanometer; and when the island of Lancerote, one of the Canaries, came in sight, he immediately took the angle of altitude of its highest peak. So far from being insensible to the influences of nature, few travelers have enjoyed them with a keener zest, but his glance never rests long upon a beautiful scene without going behind its outward features, to speculate upon the geognostic laws which they illustrate. His "Personal Narrative" is therefore a record of his scientific observations rather than of his individual experience and adventure.

On approaching the island of Teneriffe, the weather was so hazy that the peak was invisible, greatly to Humboldt's disappointment. This circumstance, however, proved to be very fortunate; for after entering the harbor of Santa Cruz, early on the morning of the 19th of June, the mist cleared away, and the first rays of the sun which illuminated the famous peak, revealed also four English vessels lying at anchor. Thus narrowly did the travelers escape being carried back to Europe, at the outset of their journey! On account of the blockade, the captain gave them notice that he could only remain four or five days, and they hastened to the town of Orotava, where they procured guides to ascend the peak. They first visited the celebrated dragon-tree, the trunk of which they found to be forty-five feet in circumference, and the great age of which they could only conjecture. Humboldt considers it to be one of the oldest inhabitants of our globe: "Its aspect," he says, "forcibly

exemplifies that eternal youth of nature, which is an inexhaustible source of motion and of life." Leaving Orotava, Humboldt and his companion took a stony road through a forest of chestnut-trees, continued their ascent to an elevated plateau, called the Plain of *Retama* (a flowering shrub), and before night succeeded in reaching a kind of cavern, called the English Halt, nearly ten thousand feet above the sea. Though in the midst of summer, and under an African sky, they suffered much from cold, the thermometer falling to 41°. Humboldt thus describes their lodging-place. "Our guides made a large fire with the dry branches of *retama*. Having neither tents nor cloaks, we lay down on some masses of rock, and were singularly incommoded by the flame and smoke which the wind drove toward us. We had attempted to form a kind of screen with cloths tied together, but our inclosure took fire, which we did not perceive till the greater part had been consumed by the flames. We had never passed a night on a point so elevated, and we then little imagined that we should, one day, on the ridge of the Cordilleras, inhabit towns higher than the summit of the volcano we were to scale on the morrow. A strong northerly wind chased the clouds; the moon, at intervals, shooting through the vapors, exposed its disc on a firmament of the darkest blue; and the view of the volcano threw a majestic character over the nocturnal scenery. Sometimes the peak was entirely hidden from our eyes by the fog, at other times it broke upon us in terrific proximity; and, like an enormous pyramid, threw its shadow over the clouds rolling beneath our feet." At three o'clock in the morning they lighted fir-torches, and started on their journey to the summit. They reached the Malpais—a stony plain out of which rises the volcanic cone—in time to witness the rising of the sun. By means of a telescope and chronometer, Humboldt ascertained that the time which the disc occupied in mounting above the horizon, was eight minutes and one second. He was half an hour in scaling the cone, the height of which above the plain is only five hundred and seventy feet, but finally reached the summit, one thousand nine hundred and four toises—twelve thousand one hundred and seventy-four feet—above the sea, at eight o'clock. Here, seated on a block of lava, he overlooked a portion of the earth's surface, equal in dimensions to one fourth of the kingdom of Spain. In the transparency of the air he could distinguish not only the houses, the sails of vessels, and the trunks of trees, far below, but even the differences of color in the vegetation. "The volcano seemed to overwhelm with its mass the island which serves as its base, as it shot up from the bosom of the waters to a height three times loftier than the region where the clouds float in summer. If its crater, half-extinguished for ages past, shot forth flakes of fire like that of Stromboli in the *Æolian Islands*, the Peak of Teneriffe, like a light-house, would serve to guide the mariner in a circuit of more than two hundred and sixty leagues."

After having bottled some air for analysis, and collected some crystals of sulphur, bedewed with sulphuric acid, which destroyed part of Hum-

Humboldt's mineralogical journal, the travelers began their descent. The cold and violent wind often obliged them to seek shelter under the rocks. Their hands and faces were nearly frozen, while their boots were burned by the hot ashes. The guides threw away their specimens, drank their wine, and broke their water-jars. They met with no further accident, however, and before night reached Orotava. This ascent of the Peak of Teneriffe, although it occupied but two days, was most important in its results. The observations made by Humboldt gave him the first idea of those researches into the geographical distribution of plants and animals, which entitle him to rank as the founder of this branch of cosmography. He perceived that the inorganic forms of nature, such as mountains and rocks, resemble each other in the most distant parts of the world, while the organic forms—plants and animals—vary according to climate, character of the soil, altitude above the sea, and other local influences. From observing the circles of vegetation on Teneriffe—rising from the cocoa-palm on the sea-shore, through the regions of chestnut, heath, and fir, to the fragrant *retama* at the base of the crater—he was led to renew his investigations on the slopes of the Andes.

On the 25th of June they sailed from Santa Cruz, and some days afterward passed through the Sargasso Sea—a part of the ocean covered with immense beds of sea-weed, among which stems have been found eight hundred feet in length, and which, floating on the surface, give the sea the appearance of a vast inundated meadow. The appearance of the nocturnal heavens, as the ship proceeded southward, excited anew the enthusiasm of the travelers. "Nothing," writes Humboldt, "awakens in the traveler a livelier remembrance of the immense distance by which he is separated from his country, than the aspect of an unknown firmament. A traveler needs not to be a botanist, to recognize the torrid zone by the mere aspect of its vegetation. Without having acquired any notions of astronomy, he feels he is not in Europe, when he sees the immense constellation of the Ship, or the phosphorescent Clouds of Magellan, arise on the horizon. The heavens and the earth—every thing in the equinoctial regions—present an exotic character. We saw distinctly for the first time the Southern Cross only on the night of the 4th of July, in the sixteenth degree of latitude. It was strongly inclined, and appeared from time to time between the clouds, the center of which, furrowed by uncondensed lightnings, reflected a silvery light. If a traveler may be permitted to speak of his personal emotions, I shall add, that on that night I experienced the realization of one of the dreams of my early youth.

"The two great stars which mark the summit and the foot of the Cross, having nearly the same right ascension, it follows that the constellation is almost perpendicular at the moment when it passes the meridian. This circumstance is known to the people of every nation situated beyond the tropics, or in the southern hemisphere. It has been observed at what hour of the night, in different seasons, the Cross is

erect or inclined. It is a timepiece which advances very regularly nearly four minutes a-day, and no other group of stars affords to the naked eye an observation of time so easily made. How often have we heard our guides exclaim in the savannahs of Venezuela, or in the desert extending from Lima to Truxillo, "Midnight is past, the Cross begins to bend!" How often those words reminded us of that affecting scene, where Paul and Virginia, seated near the source of the river of Lataniers, conversed together for the last time, and where the old man, at the sight of the Southern Cross, warns them that it is time to separate."

The latter part of the voyage was not so fortunate as the first. A malignant fever broke out, which grew more serious the nearer the ship approached the Antilles. On the 12th of July, Humboldt, who had taken observations of the latitude and longitude every day during the voyage, predicted that land would be seen the next day before sunrise. The pilots, who depended mostly on the log for their reckoning, laughed at this, asserting that they would not make land for two or three days; but at six o'clock next morning, the welcome cry was given by a sailor at the mast-head. The land proved to be the island of Tobago. The next day a young Asturian, nineteen years of age, fell a victim to the fever, and his death seems to have produced a painful impression upon the mind of Humboldt, who thus describes the occurrence: "We were assembled on the deck, absorbed in melancholy reflections. It was no longer doubtful, that the fever which raged on board, had assumed within the last few days a fatal aspect. Our eyes were fixed on a hilly and desert coast, on which the moon, from time to time, shed her light athwart the clouds. The sea, gently agitated, emitted a feeble phosphoric light. Nothing was heard but the monotonous cry of a few large sea-birds, flying toward the shore. A profound calm reigned over these solitary regions, but this calm of nature was in discordance with the painful feelings by which we were oppressed. About eight o'clock, the dead man's knell was slowly tolled. At this lugubrious sound, the sailors suspended their labors, and threw themselves on their knees to offer a momentary prayer: an affecting ceremony, which brought to our remembrance those times, when the primitive Christians all considered themselves as members of the same family. All were united in one common sorrow for a misfortune which was felt to be common to all." Many of the passengers, becoming alarmed, induced the captain to run into Cumana, a port on the north-eastern shore of Venezuela, and there land them, rather than continue their voyage in the Pizarro to Havana. Among them were Humboldt and Bonpland, who decided to visit Venezuela before proceeding to Mexico, and thus the epidemic which they at first regarded as a misfortune, became the accidental cause of their discoveries in the regions of the Orinoco. To the same circumstance they were also indebted for the preservation of their health, for the yellow-fever was then prevailing in Havana, and many of the passengers who remained on board of the Pizarro, fell victims to it after their arrival.

"On the 16th of July, 1799, at break of day," says Humboldt, "we beheld a verdant coast, of picturesque aspect. The mountains of New Andalusia, half veiled by mists, bounded the horizon to the south. The city of Cumana and its castle appeared between groups of cocoa-trees. We anchored in the port about nine in the morning, forty-one days after our departure from Corunna; the sick dragged themselves on deck to enjoy the sight of a land which was to put an end to their sufferings. Our eyes were fixed on the groups of cocoa-trees which border the river; their trunks, more than sixty feet high, towered over every object in the landscape. The plain was covered with the tufts of cassia, caper, and those arborescent mimosas, which, like the pine of Italy, spread their branches in the form of an umbrella. The pinnated leaves of the palms were conspicuous on the azure sky, the clearness of which was unsullied by any trace of vapor. The sun was ascending rapidly toward the zenith. A dazzling light was spread through the air, along the whitish hills strewed with cylindric cactuses, and over a sea ever calm, the shores of which were peopled with pelicans, herons, and flamingoes. The splendor of the day, the vivid coloring of the vegetable world, the forms of the plants, the varied plumage of the birds, all were stamped with the grand character of nature in the equinoctial regions."

The captain of the Pizarro conducted the travelers to the Governor of the province, Señor Emparan, who received them with great kindness, and by the public consideration which he showed them, secured them a favorable reception in all parts of Venezuela. To their great astonishment, he asked them questions which denoted some scientific knowledge, and Humboldt declares, in his delight at this circumstance, "The name of his native country, pronounced on a distant shore, would not have been more agreeable to the ear of a traveler, than those words *azote*, *oxyd of iron*, and *hygrometer*, were to ours." The travelers hired a spacious house, in a situation favorable for astronomical observations, and commenced their labors at once. "Overpowered at once by a great number of objects, we were somewhat embarrassed how to lay down a regular plan of study and observation. While every surrounding object was fitted to inspire in us the most lively interest, our physical and astronomical instruments in their turns excited strongly the curiosity of the inhabitants. We had numerous visitors; and in our desire to satisfy persons who appeared so happy to see the spots of the moon through Dollond's telescope, the absorption of two gases in a eudiometrical tube, or the effects of galvanism on the motions of a frog, we were obliged to answer questions often obscure, and to repeat for whole hours the same experiments."

Humboldt found relaxation from these annoyances in botanizing, and in studying the manners and customs of the inhabitants. He was particularly interested in the gigantic varieties of cactus, which, planted around the Spanish fortresses, formed an almost impenetrable chevaux-de-frise, while the moats, for further defense, were filled with swarms of



alligators. Among the customs of the inhabitants of Cumana, he describes the following: "The children pass a considerable part of their lives in the water; all the inhabitants, even the women of the most opulent families, know how to swim; and in a country where man is so near the state of nature, one of the first questions asked on meeting in the morning is, whether the water is cooler than it was on the preceding evening. One of the modes of bathing is curious. We every evening visited a family, in the suburb of the Guayquerias. In a fine moonlight night, chairs were placed in the water; the men and women were lightly clothed, as in some baths of the north of Europe; and the family and strangers, assembled in the river, passed some hours in smoking cigars, and in talking, according to the custom of the country, of the extreme dryness of the season, of the abundant rains in the neighboring districts, and particularly of the extravagances of which the ladies of Cumana accuse those of the Caracas and the Havanna. The company were under no apprehensions from the bavae, or small crocodiles, which are now extremely scarce, and which approach men without attacking them." Humboldt also directed his attention to the volcanic soil on which he was living, and collected facts in relation to the earthquakes with which Cumana was frequently visited, in order to ascertain whether the direction and extent of the shocks was not regulated by some yet undiscovered law.

On the 19th of August, the travelers embarked in a boat, on an excursion to the peninsula of Araya, and those districts formerly celebrated for the slave-trade and the pearl-fishery. They had now been two months in the tropics, and found the nights so cold as to prevent them from sleeping, although the thermometer did not fall below 70°. After visiting the castle of Araya, they were benighted on their way to an Indian village. They were in a narrow path, with the sea on one side, and a perpendicular precipice on the other; the tide was rising rapidly, but they insisted on stopping to observe the setting of Venus, in spite of the terror of their guide. After wading for nearly an hour through the water, they finally reached a hut where they were hospitably entertained.

In the Indian village they found a Spanish shoemaker, who practiced medicine among the natives, and who, after delivering a long discourse on the vanity of human greatness, presented them with some small pearls, with the request that they would note the circumstance on their tablets. The next excursion made by Humboldt and Bonpland was to the mission in the mountains inhabited by the Chaymas Indians, a district filled with a wonderful animal and vegetable world, and a people living in the most primitive condition. Here they first beheld the splendors of tropical vegetation. Walking for hours under a roof of foliage, through which the sky appeared of a deep indigo-blue, they saw the hanging nests of the oriole, and heard the screaming of parrots and macaws. "When a traveler first penetrates into the forests of South

America," says Humboldt, "he beholds nature under an unexpected aspect. He feels at every step that he is not on the confines, but in the center of the torrid zone; not in one of the West India Islands, but on a vast continent where every thing is gigantic—mountains, rivers, and the mass of vegetation. If he feel strongly the beauty of picturesque scenery he can scarcely define the various emotions which crowd upon his mind; he can scarcely distinguish what most excites his admiration—the deep silence of those solitudes, the individual beauty and contrast of forms, or that vigor and freshness of vegetable life which characterize the climate of the tropics. It might be said that the earth, overloaded with plants, does not allow them space enough to unfold themselves. The trunks of the trees are everywhere concealed under a thick carpet of verdure; and if we carefully transplanted the orchideæ, peppers, and the pothoses, nourished by a single American fig-tree, we should cover a vast extent of ground. By this singular assemblage, the forests, as well as the flanks of the rocks and mountains, enlarge the domains of organic nature. The same parasitic vines which creep on the ground, reach the tops of the trees, and pass from one to the other at the height of more than a hundred feet." The travelers were kindly received at the mission, although the old monk smiled sarcastically on seeing their books and instruments, and observed that there was no satisfaction in life equal to that of eating good beef. In the village of Arenas, they noticed a curious physiological phenomenon, in the person of a Spanish laborer, named Lozano, who had suckled a child with his own milk. The mother having fallen sick, the father, to quiet the infant, took it into his bed, and pressed it to his bosom. Lozano, then thirty-two years of age, had never before remarked that he had milk; but the irritation of the nipple, sucked by the child, caused the accumulation of that liquid. The milk was thick and very sweet. The father, astonished at the increased size of his breast, suckled his child two or three times a day during five months. The travelers saw the certificate, which had been drawn up on the spot, to attest this remarkable fact. They were assured that, during this suckling, the child had no other nourishment than the milk of his father.

Humboldt and his friend continued their journey to the ravine of Cuchivano, by a path infested with jaguars. From the caverns in this ravine smoke and flames are sometimes emitted. The inhabitants of this district prophesied an increase of earthquakes and other disturbances, from the appearance of these flames—prophecies which were fully verified in the course of a few years. On the 12th of September, after climbing the hills, they reached the principal mission of Caripe, where they spent several calm and beautiful nights. "Nothing," says Humboldt, "can be compared to the majestic tranquillity which the aspect of the firmament presents in this solitary region. When tracing with the eye, at night-fall, the meadows which bounded the horizon, the plain covered with verdure and gently undulated, we thought



we beheld from afar, as in the deserts of the Orinoco, the surface of the ocean supporting the starry vault of heaven. The tree under which we were seated, the luminous insects flying in the air, the constellations which shone in the south; every object seemed to tell us how far we were from our native land. If amid this exotic nature we heard from the depth of the valley the tinkling of a bell, or the lowing of herds, the remembrance of our country was awakened suddenly. The sounds were like distant voices resounding from beyond the ocean, and with magical power transporting us from one hemisphere to the other. Strange mobility of the imagination of man, eternal source of our enjoyments and our pains!" In the valley of Caripe, the travelers visited the celebrated Guacharo Cavern, which had never been heard of in Europe. The entrance is an arch eighty feet wide and seventy-two feet high, out of which flows a small stream. The palms and arums on its banks were found growing a hundred feet within the cave. When the light began to fail, they heard the hoarse cries of the *guacharo*, a nocturnal bird, which they found to belong to a genus previously unknown. The plumage is of a dark bluish-gray, spotted with black, and the wings, when spread, measure three feet and a half. Their food consists of nuts and hard fruits, which they procure by night, retiring into the cave on the approach of day. "It would be difficult to form an idea of the horrible noise occasioned by thousands of these birds in the dark part of the cavern. Their shrill and piercing cries strike upon the vaults of the rocks, and are repeated by the subterranean echoes. The Indians showed us the nests of the guacharos by fixing a torch to the end of a long pole. The nests were fifty or sixty feet above our heads, in holes in the shape of funnels, with which the roof of the grotto is pierced like a sieve. The noise increased as we advanced, and as the birds were scared by the light of the torches of copal. When this noise ceased a few minutes around us, we heard at a distance the plaintive cries of the birds roosting in other ramifications of the cavern."

They only succeeded in penetrating to the distance of fifteen hundred feet, as the Indians, who were timid and superstitious, refused to proceed further. Humboldt estimates the entire length of the cavern at two thousand eight hundred feet, or a little more than half a mile. On the 22d of September, having collected their specimens, they set out on their return, crossing the mountain of Santa Maria, by a dangerous path along the edges of precipices and through dense forests, where they observed many varieties of monkeys. Humboldt remarked that these animals seem the more depressed and melancholy the nearer they resemble man—that in proportion to the increase of their apparent reasoning faculties, their impetuous sprightliness diminishes. The travelers finally arrived at the port of Cariaco, where a contagious fever had broken out, and they, therefore, embarked speedily for Cumana, twelve leagues distant. While studying the character of the Chaymas, and other Indian tribes, on this journey, Humboldt noticed their habit of as-

senting to whatever is said to them—a habit which taught him to be cautious, thenceforth, in accepting statements made by the natives. To put an Indian alcalde to the proof, he asked him one day, whether he did not think the little river of Caripe, which issues from the cavern of the Guacharo, returned into it on the opposite side by some unknown entrance, after having ascended the slope of the mountain. The Indian seemed gravely to reflect on the subject, and then answered, by way of supporting Humboldt's hypothesis: "How else, if it were not so, would there always be water in the bed of the river at the mouth of the cavern?"

The travelers decided to remain another month at Cumana, to prepare for their intended journey to the Orinoco and the Rio Negro, and to observe an eclipse of the sun, on the 27th of October. On the evening preceding that day, however, they met with an adventure which came near terminating their travels. They were strolling along the beach in the evening, when Humboldt, hearing some one walking behind him, turned and saw a tall Zambo (mongrel negro and Indian), who held over his head a great club of palm-tree wood. He thus describes what followed: "I avoided the stroke by leaping toward the left; but M. Bonpland, who walked on my right, was less fortunate. He did not see the Zambo so soon as I did, and received a stroke above the temple, which leveled him with the ground. We were alone, without arms, half a league from any habitation, on a vast plain bounded by the sea. The Zambo, instead of attacking me, moved off slowly to pick up M. Bonpland's hat, which, having somewhat deadened the violence of the blow, had fallen off and lay at some distance. Alarmed at seeing my companion on the ground, and for some moments senseless, I thought of him only. I helped him to raise himself, and pain and anger doubled his strength. We ran toward the Zambo, who, either from cowardice, common enough in people of this caste, or because he perceived at a distance some men on the beach, did not wait for us, but ran off in the direction of a little thicket of cactus. He chanced to fall in running; and M. Bonpland, who reached him first, seized him round the body. The Zambo drew a long knife; and in this unequal struggle we should infallibly have been wounded, if some Biscayan merchants had not come to our assistance. The Zambo again ran away and we pursued him through the thorny cactuses. At length, tired out, he took shelter in a cow-house, whence he suffered himself to be quietly led to prison. M. Bonpland was seized with fever during the night; but endowed with great energy and fortitude, he continued his labors the next day. The stroke of the club had extended to the top of his head, and he felt its effect for the space of two or three months during the stay we made at Caracas."

After having observed the eclipse, Humboldt's attention was directed to a reddish mist, which covered the sky for some minutes every evening. Other remarkable phenomena soon followed: the mist grew denser,

the hot night air was inodorous, the sea-breezes failed to blow, and the sky was colored like fire. On the 4th of November, in the afternoon, two violent shocks of an earthquake occurred. The travelers were greatly impressed by this new experience, but immediately arranged their electrical apparatus, and commenced their experiments. Humboldt's remarks upon the sensations produced by an earthquake are strikingly true, as every person who has felt the shock of one can testify. He says: "From our infancy, the idea of certain contrasts becomes fixed in our minds: water appears to us an element that moves; earth, a motionless and inert mass. These impressions are the result of daily experience; they are connected with every thing that is transmitted to us by the senses. When the shock of an earthquake is felt, when the earth which we had deemed so stable is shaken on its old foundations, one instant suffices to destroy long-fixed illusions. It is like awakening from a dream; but a painful awakening. We feel that we have been deceived by the apparent stability of nature; we become observant of the least noise; we mistrust for the first time the soil we have so long trod with confidence. But if the shocks be repeated, if they become frequent during several successive days, the uncertainty quickly disappears. Confidence easily springs up in the human breast: on the coasts of Peru we become accustomed to the undulations of the ground, as the sailor becomes accustomed to the tossing of the ship, caused by the motion of the waves."

## TRAVELS ON THE ORINOCO.

On the 18th of November, the travelers left Cumana on a coasting trip to Laguayra, intending to remain in Caracas until the end of the rainy season. They then proposed crossing the great plains, or *llanos*, to the missions of the Orinoco; to ascend that river, south of its cataracts, and ascertain its reported connection with the Rio Negro—the main northern tributary of the Amazon—by means of the Rio Cassiquiare; and afterward to descend the Orinoco to the town of Angostura, and recross the plains to Cumana. This was a journey of nearly twenty-five hundred miles, two thirds of which they would be obliged to make in boats, through a country almost entirely unknown. The monks were the real masters of the Orinoco country, and no intercourse existed between their missions and the cities on the coast. The colonists painted in threatening colors the dangers they would encounter, but nothing could daunt the zeal and intrepidity of Humboldt and Bonpland. They received every assistance from Señor Emparan, the governor, and derived much valuable information from Fray Juan Gonzalez, a monk who had spent several years at Esmeralda, on the upper Orinoco. On departing for Caracas they first realized how powerful an influence their first four months' experience of tropical life and scenery had produced upon their minds. "We quitted the shore of Cumana," says Humboldt, "as if it had long

been our home. This was the first land we had trodden in a zone toward which my thoughts had been directed from earliest youth. There is a powerful charm in the impression produced by the scenery and climate of these regions; and after an abode of a few months we seemed to have lived there during a long succession of years. In proportion as impressions are powerful and new, they weaken antecedent impressions, and their force imparts to them the character of duration. I appeal to those who, more sensible to the beauties of nature than to the charms of society, have long resided in the torrid zone. How dear, how memorable during life, is the land on which they first disembarked! A vague desire to revisit that spot remains rooted in their minds to the most advanced age. Cumana, and its dusty soil, are still more frequently present to my imagination than all the wonders of the Cordilleras. Beneath the bright sky of the south, the light, and the magic of the aerial hues, embellish a land most destitute of vegetation. The sun does not merely enlighten, it colors the objects, and wraps them in a thin vapor, which, without changing the transparency of the air, renders its tints more harmonious, softens the effects of the light, and diffuses over nature a placid calm, which is reflected in our souls."

Reaching Laguayra on the 21st, Humboldt found the yellow fever raging violently, and without halting in the town, ascended to Caracas, by the mountain road, which he compares to the passage of the St. Gothard, in Switzerland. In the latter city, at an elevation of 2,500 feet above the sea, he found a climate of perpetual spring. He took a house in a quarter of the city, which, during the great earthquake of 1812, was as completely destroyed as if a mine had been sprung beneath. Here the travelers remained two months, charmed with the society of the place, although the weather was unfavorable for their astronomical observations. The nights were generally cloudy, and Humboldt resorted to the theatre, where, as there was no roof over the pit, he could watch, as he sat in his box, for the appearance of Jupiter. The only excursion made during this residence was to the summit of the Silla (*saddle*) of Caracas, which none of the inhabitants had ever ascended. Sixteen persons offered to accompany the expedition, for the sake of novelty, and the party started on the 22d of January, 1800, on a day when, on account of the low clouds, they could calculate on a clear atmosphere. Leaving the foot of the Silla in the morning, they found the path very steep and fatiguing. The ground was covered with short grass, which afforded no firm footing, while thin vapors arose from the forest, and announced an approaching mist. Humboldt's companions lost courage and showed some signs of beating a retreat, and the garrulity of the accompanying negroes contrasted strongly with the taciturnity of the Indians, who had been his guides among the Chaymas mountains. They mocked the discouraged guides, and made themselves especially merry at a young Capuchin friar, who was, at the same time, professor of mathematics. When the company started, he imagined that he would

in a zone toward  
uth. There is a  
nery and climate  
e seemed to have  
ortion as impres-  
impressions, and  
I appeal to those  
e charms of soci-  
how memorable  
! A vague desire  
he most advanced  
tly present to my  
eneath the bright  
hues, embellish a  
merely enlighten,  
or, which, without  
more harmonious,  
ure a placid calm,

l the yellow fever  
, ascended to Ca-  
he passage of the  
elevation of 2,500  
spring. He took a  
reat earthquake of  
en sprung beneath.  
with the society of  
their astronomical  
Humboldt resorted  
bit, he could watch,  
The only excursion  
the Silla (*saddle*) of  
ascended. Sixteen  
he sake of novelty,  
on a day when, on  
a clear atmosphere.  
found the path very  
a short grass, which  
rom the forest, and  
anions lost courage  
he garrulity of the  
the taciturnity of  
Chaymas mountains.  
hemselves especially  
same time, professor  
igned that he would

surpass all the rest in boldness and endurance; he had even taken bits of white paper with him, that he, as the foremost of the climbers, might throw them down to show the way to the others. He had also promised the monks of his order to fire some rockets from the top of the mountain, in order to announce his success to the inhabitants of Caracas. But this boaster, encumbered in the ascent by his long gown, soon lost both his strength and courage, and stopped at a plantation, whence he watched Humboldt and the others through a telescope. The party moved on toward the eastern part of the Silla, which terminates in two rounded peaks. Their journey now became very difficult on account of the fog, and the necessity of using both hands and feet in climbing the steep and slippery ascent. At the height of five thousand five hundred feet, they were surprised by the sight of a palm forest, within which Humboldt found a greater variety of plants in a small space, than in any other part of the world. After further climbing, during which the mercury sank to 51°, and they suffered from the cold, they reached the hollow between the two peaks, called the "Saddle." The luxuriant vegetation here made it extremely difficult to find a path, which had to be hewn with knives and axes. A dense mist clung around them, and at every step the danger was incurred of coming suddenly upon the brink of the tremendous precipice, and falling six thousand feet into the sea. They made a halt, to await the arrival of some negroes with provisions, but the meal was very sparing, as they had only olives and a little bread. Even the guides had lost all courage, and were with great difficulty prevented from returning. It was now two o'clock in the afternoon, and Humboldt determined to reach the summit of the eastern peak before sunset, and pass the night in the hollow below. The negroes were sent back, with orders to meet him on the following day, with more satisfactory provender than olives. Scarcely had these preparations been made, when the east wind arose, dispersing the clouds in less than two minutes. The two peaks of the Silla, covered only with grass and low bushes, seemed astonishingly near. In order to reach the highest peak, they were obliged to approach the steep precipice hanging over the sea, but the obstacles from vegetation decreased as they ascended. In three quarters of an hour they stood upon the eastern summit, eight thousand six hundred and thirty-two feet above the sea, which expanded before their eyes with a radius of a hundred miles. The western peak hid from their view the city of Carácas, but the vast extent of tropical forests, villages, coffee plantations, and the silver windings of the Guayra River, filled them with rapture. It has been stated that in looking from the Silla over the Carribean Sea, Humboldt observed that rare and remarkable sight, the visible convexity of the earth, but this circumstance is not mentioned in his "Personal Narrative," where he thus describes the view: "Following with the eye the surface of the sea, which was smooth as glass, we were struck with the progressive diminution of the reflected light. Where the visual ray



touching the last limit of that surface, the water was lost among the superposed strata of air. This appearance has something in it very extraordinary. We expect to see the horizon level with the eye; but, instead of distinguishing at this height a marked limit between the two elements, the more distant strata of water seem to be transformed into vapor, and mingled with the aerial ocean. I observed the same appearance, not in one spot of the horizon alone, but on an extent of more than a hundred and sixty degrees, along the Pacific, when I found myself for the first time on the pointed rock that commands the crater of Pichincha; a volcano, the elevation of which exceeds that of Mont Blanc." At half past four o'clock, having finished their scientific observations, the travelers descended to the palm forest. They were botanizing when the night overtook them; the guides who carried the instruments went away, one by one, to seek a sleeping place among the rocks, and it was not until nearly midnight that Humboldt and Bonpland, overcome with hunger and fatigue, reached the lower valley. After a descent of six hours, they again arrived at the plantation at the foot of the mountain. The inhabitants of Caracas had witnessed their success through telescopes.

On the 7th of February, they commenced their journey into the interior. Instead of proceeding directly across the steppes, or *llanos*, to the Orinoco River, they selected a longer route by way of the valley of Aragua, and the hot springs of Mariara, to the Lake of Valencia; thence across the llanos to San Fernando, on the Apure River, and down that river to the Orinoco. On their way to the Lake of Valencia, they visited a tree called *samang*, a variety of the mimosa, the boughs of which formed a hemisphere five hundred and seventy-six feet in circumference, and so regular that on measuring several diameters, Humboldt found them to vary only from one hundred and eighty-six to one hundred and ninety-two feet. He considered this tree as old as the dragon-tree of Teneriffe. It is held in such high regard that a man, who cut off a branch, was tried and condemned for the act. In the colonies of Cura, the travelers passed several days after the manner of the natives, taking two baths, three meals, and three sleeps every twenty-four hours. After visiting the hot springs of Mariara, they journeyed six days to the town of New Valencia, traveling only by night, on account of the great heat. At the hot springs of Trinchera, they were surprised to find arums and fig-trees growing in water which had a temperature of 175°. From Valencia they descended to Porto Cabello, on the coast, where they remained until the 1st of March, and then commenced their journey to the plains of the Orinoco. In the valley of Aragua, Humboldt first saw the celebrated "cow-tree," the existence of which he had previously doubted, and of which he gives the following beautiful description: "When incisions are made in the trunk of this tree, it yields abundance of a glutinous milk, tolerably thick, devoid of all acidity, and of an agreeable and balmy smell. It was offered to us in the shell of a calabash. We drank considerable quantities of it in the evening before we

wen  
inju  
little  
plant  
over  
durin  
This  
stron  
"  
serve  
made  
What  
merel  
anoth  
the hu  
that n  
is app  
matter  
ancient  
of vege  
the pro  
receive  
ment cr  
solemn  
wrappe  
table ju  
nature.  
dry leav  
For sev  
Its bran  
flows fr  
that this  
are then  
receive t  
empty th  
their chi  
In cr  
llanos, th  
lodged w  
character  
recited th  
names of  
agreeable  
employed  
emperors  
the gout,

went to bed, and very early in the morning, without feeling the least injurious effect. The glutinous character of this milk alone renders it a little disagreeable. The negroes and the free people who work in the plantations drink it, dipping into it their bread of maize or cassava. The overseer of the farm told us that the negroes grow sensibly fatter during the season when the *palo de vaca* furnishes them with most milk. This juice, exposed to the air, presents at its surface membranes of a strongly animalized substance, yellowish, stringy, and resembling cheese.

"Amidst the great number of curious phenomena which I have observed in the course of my travels, I confess there are few that have made so powerful an impression on me as the aspect of the cow-tree. Whatever relates to milk or to corn, inspires an interest which is not merely that of the physical knowledge of things, but is connected with another order of ideas and sentiments. We can scarcely conceive how the human race could exist without farinaceous substances, and without that nourishing juice which the breast of the mother contains, and which is appropriated to the long feebleness of the infant. The amylaceous matter of corn, the object of religious veneration among so many nations, ancient and modern, is diffused in the seeds, and deposited in the roots of vegetables; milk, which serves as an aliment, appears to us exclusively the produce of animal organization. Such are the impressions we have received in our earliest infancy: such is also the source of that astonishment created by the aspect of the tree just described. It is not here the solemn shades of forests, the majestic course of rivers, the mountains wrapped in eternal snow, that excite our emotion. A few drops of vegetable juice recall to our minds all the powerfulness and the fecundity of nature. On the barren flank of a rock grows a tree with coriaceous and dry leaves. Its large woody roots can scarcely penetrate into the stone. For several months of the year not a single shower moistens its foliage. Its branches appear dead and dried; but when the trunk is pierced there flows from it a sweet and nourishing milk. It is at the rising of the sun that this vegetable fountain is most abundant. The negroes and natives are then seen hastening from all quarters, furnished with large bowls to receive the milk, which grows yellow, and thickens at its surface. Some empty their bowls under the tree itself, others carry the juice home to their children."

In crossing the mountain-range between the valley of Aragua and the llanos, the travelers passed a night in the village of Guigue, where they lodged with an old sergeant, a native of Murcia, a man of a very original character. To prove to them that he had studied among the Jesuits, he recited the history of the creation of the world in Latin. He knew the names of Augustus, Tiberias, and Diocletian; and while enjoying the agreeable coolness of the nights in an enclosure planted with bananas, he employed himself in reading all that related to the courts of the Roman emperors. He inquired of Humboldt with earnestness for a remedy for the gout, from which he suffered severely. "I know," said he, "a Zam-



bo of Valencia, who could cure me; but the Zambo would expect to be treated with attentions which I can not pay to a man of his color, and I prefer remaining as I am." On the 9th of March they commenced their journey on the great plains. "The sun was almost at its zenith; the earth, wherever it appeared sterile and destitute of vegetation, was at the temperature of 120°. Not a breath of air was felt at the height at which we were on our mules; yet, in the midst of this apparent calm, whirls of dust incessantly arose, driven on by those small currents of air which glide only over the surface of the ground, and are occasioned by the difference of temperature between the naked sand and the spots covered with grass. All around us the plains seemed to ascend to the sky, and the vast and profound solitude appeared like an ocean covered with sea-weed. On the horizon the earth was confounded with the sky. Through the dry mist and strata of vapor the trunks of palm-trees were seen from afar, stripped of their foliage and their verdant summits, and looking like the masts of a ship desiered upon the horizon. There is something awful, as well as sad and gloomy, in the uniform aspect of these steppes. Every thing seems motionless; scarcely does a small cloud, passing across the zenith, and denoting the approach of the rainy season, cast its shadow on the earth. I know not whether the first aspect of the llanos excites less astonishment than that of the chain of the Andes.

"When, beneath the vertical rays of the bright and cloudless sun of the tropics, the parched sward crumbles into dust, then the indurated soil cracks and bursts as if rent asunder by some mighty earthquake. And if, at such a time, two opposite currents of air, by conflict moving in rapid gyrations, come in contact with the earth, a singular spectacle presents itself. Like funnel-shaped clouds, their apexes touching the earth, the sands rise in vapory form through the rarefied air in the electrically-charged center of the whirling current, sweeping on like the rushing water-spout, which strikes such terror into the heart of the mariner. A dim and sallow light gleams from the lowering sky over the dreary plain. The horizon suddenly contracts, and the heart of the traveler sinks with dismay as the wide steppe seems to close upon him on all sides. The hot and dusty earth forms a cloudy veil which shrouds the heavens from view, and increases the stifling oppression of the atmosphere, while the east wind, when it blows over the long-heated soil, instead of cooling, adds to the burning glow. Gradually, too, the pools of water, which had been protected from evaporation by the now seared foliage of the fan-palm, disappear. As in the icy north animals become torpid from cold, so here the crocodile and the boa-constrictor lie wrapt in unbroken sleep, deeply buried in the dried soil. Every where the drought announces death, yet every where the thirsting wanderer is deluded by the phantom of a moving, undulating, watery surface, created by the deceptive play of the mirage. A narrow stratum separates the ground from the distant palm-trees, which seem to hover aloft, owing

to  
the  
hum  
low  
in t  
pool  
allay  
cact  
After  
cauti  
But  
atten  
lame  
of da  
equal  
now a  
or, fa  
-hippo  
"W  
scene  
assum  
of the  
escenc  
ain, a  
Misty  
thunde  
surface  
covered  
herbac  
were, t  
opening  
and en  
hides t  
and can  
tiger, w  
the acco  
is seen  
as on th  
high in  
from it  
awaken  
his tomb  
"W  
the Apu  
pels thos

to the contact of currents of air having different degrees of heat and therefore of density. Shrouded in dark clouds of dust, and tortured by hunger and burning thirst, oxen and horses scour the plain, the one bel-lowing dismally, the other with out-stretched necks snuffing the wind, in the endeavor to detect, by the moisture of the air, the vicinity of some pool of water not yet wholly evaporated.

"The mule, more cautious and cunning, adopts another method of allaying his thirst. There is a globular and articulated plant, the *melo-cactus*, which encloses under its prickly integument an aqueous pulp. After carefully striking away the prickles with his forefeet, the mule cautiously ventures to apply his lips to imbibe the cooling thistle juice. But the draught from this living vegetable spring is not always un-attended by danger, and these animals are often observed to have been lamed by the puncture of the cactus thorn. Even if the burning heat of day be succeeded by the cool freshness of the night, here always of equal length, the wearied ox and horse enjoy no repose. Huge bats now attack the animals during sleep, and vampyre-like suck their blood; or, fastening on their backs, raise festering wounds, in which mosquitoes, hippoboscæ, and a host of other stinging insects, burrow and nestle.

"When, after a long drought, the genial season of rain arrives, the scene suddenly changes. The deep azure of the hitherto cloudless sky assumes a lighter hue. Scarcely can the dark space in the constellation of the Southern Cross be distinguished at night. The mild phosphor-escence of the Magellanic clouds fades away. Like some distant mount-ain, a single cloud is seen rising perpendicularly on the southern horizon. Misty vapors collect and gradually overspread the heavens, while distant thunder proclaims the approach of the vivifying rain. Scarcely is the surface of the earth moistened before the teeming steppe becomes covered with a variety of grasses. Excited by the power of light, the herbaceous mimosa unfolds its dormant, drooping leaves, hailing, as it were, the rising sun in chorus with the matin song of the birds and the opening flowers of aquatic plants. Horses and oxen, buoyant with life and enjoyment, roam over and crop the plains. The luxuriant grass hides the beautifully spotted jaguar, who, lurking in safe concealment, and carefully measuring the extent of the leap, darts, like the Asiatic tiger, with a cat-like bound on his passing prey. At times, according to the account of the natives, the humid clay on the banks of the morasses is seen to rise slowly in broad flakes. Accompanied by a violent noise, as on the eruption of a small mud-volcano, the upheaved earth is hurled high into the air. Those who are familiar with the phenomenon fly from it; for a colossal water-snake, or a mailed and scaly crocodile, awakened from its trance by the first fall of rain, is about to burst from his tomb.

"When the rivers bounding the plain to the south, as the Arauca, the Apure, and the Payara, gradually overflow their banks, nature com-pels those creatures to live as amphibious animals, which, during the first

half of the year, were perishing with thirst on the waterless and dusty plain. A part of the steppe now presents the appearance of a vast inland sea. The mares retreat with their foals to the higher banks, which project, like islands, above the spreading waters. Day by day the dry surface diminishes in extent. The cattle, crowded together, and deprived of pasturage, swim for hours about the inundated plain, seeking a scanty nourishment from the flowering panicles of the grasses which rise above the lurid and bubbling waters. Many foals are drowned, many are seized by crocodiles, crushed by their serrated tails, and devoured. Horses and oxen may not unfrequently be seen which have escaped from the fury of this blood-thirsty and gigantic lizard, bearing on their legs the marks of its pointed teeth."

In traversing these vast plains, which were then parched with the intensest heat, the travelers journeyed mostly by night, halting occasionally at the huts of the herdsmen, who tended the horses and cattle roaming over the waste. After four or five days, they reached the town of Calabozo, a place containing about five thousand inhabitants, where they were hospitably entertained by the superintendent of the royal plantations. In this remote spot they were greatly surprised to find a tolerable electrical apparatus made by a native Spaniard, who had never seen anything of the kind in his life. He had constructed it entirely from the description given in Franklin's treatise, and was beside himself with joy at seeing the strangers arrive with the same machines, and others, of which he had never even heard. During a stay of a few days in Calabozo, Humboldt, after much difficulty, succeeded in obtaining some specimens of the *gymnotus*, or electrical eel. The Indians conducted him to a large reservoir of slimy water, near a neighboring village; but it was not found possible to catch the eels with fishing-nets, as they bury themselves with great agility in the slime. He did not wish to employ the *barbasco* root, which stupefies them when thrown into the water. The Indians then declared that they would be obliged to "fish with horses," thirty of which they collected in a short time. Humboldt, who had never heard of this extraordinary manner of fishing, anxiously awaited the result, which he thus describes: "The noise occasioned by the stamping of the horses drives the eels out of the slime and irritates them; they rise to the surface of the water, and crowd under the bellies of the horses and mules. A contest between animals of so different an organization presents a very striking spectacle. The Indians, provided with harpoons and long slender reeds, surround the pool closely; and some climb up the trees, the branches of which extend horizontally over the surface of the water. By their wild cries, and the length of their reeds, they prevent the horses from running away and reaching the bank of the pool. The eels, stunned by the noise, defend themselves by the repeated discharge of their electric batteries. For a long interval they seem likely to prove victorious. Several horses sink beneath the violence of the invisible strokes which they receive from all

sides, in organs the most essential to life; and stunned by the force and frequency of the shocks, they disappear under the water. Others, panting, with mane erect, and haggard eyes expressing anguish and dismay, raise themselves, and endeavor to flee from the storm by which they are overtaken. They are driven back by the Indians into the middle of the water; but a small number succeed in eluding the active vigilance of the fishermen. These regain the shore, stumbling at every step, and stretch themselves on the sand, exhausted with fatigue, and with limbs benumbed by the electric shocks of the gymnoti.

"In less than five minutes two of our horses were drowned. The eel being five feet long, and pressing itself against the belly of the horses, makes a discharge along the whole extent of its electric organ. It attacks at once the heart, the intestines, and the cæliac fold of the abdominal nerves. It is natural that the effect felt by the horses should be more powerful than that produced upon man by the touch of the same fish at only one of his extremities. The horses are probably not killed, but only stunned. They are drowned from the impossibility of rising amid the prolonged struggle between the other horses and the eels.

"We had little doubt that the fishing would terminate by killing successively all the animals engaged; but by degrees the impetuosity of this unequal combat diminished, and the wearied gymnoti dispersed. They require a long rest, and abundant nourishment, to repair the galvanic force which they have lost by the repeated discharges. The horses and mules recovered from their terror; their manes no longer bristled, and their eyes ceased to glare with fear. The Indians asserted that if the horses were driven to the same water on two consecutive days, none would die the second day. The eels now timidly approached the shore, where they were caught with little harpoons attached to long cords. If the cords were perfectly dry, no shock was felt while hauling out the fish, but it was communicated through the wet cords. In a few minutes five large eels were caught, which were only slightly wounded, and several others were obtained the same evening. Such is the remarkable contest between horses and fish. That which constitutes the invisible but living weapon of these inhabitants of the water—that, which awakened by the contact of moist and dissimilar particles, circulates through all the organs of animals and plants—that which flashing amid the roar of thunder illuminates the wide canopy of heaven—which binds iron to iron, and directs the silent recurring course of the magnetic needle—all, like the varied hues of the refracted ray of light, flow from one common source, and all blend together into one eternal all-pervading power.

"The gymnotus is neither a charged conductor, nor a battery, nor an electromotive apparatus, the shock of which is received every time they are touched with one hand, or when both hands are employed to form a conducting circle between the opposite poles. The electric action of the fish depends entirely on its will; because it does not keep its electric organs always charged, or whether by the secretion of some fluid, or by

any other means alike mysterious to us, it be capable of directing the action of its organs to an external object. We often tried, both insulated and otherwise, to touch the fish, without feeling the least shock. When M. Bonpland held it by the head, or by the middle of the body, while I held it by the tail, and, standing on the moist ground, did not take each other's hand, one of us received shocks which the other did not feel. It depends upon the gymnotus to direct its action toward the point where it finds itself most strongly irritated. The discharge is then made at one point only, and not at the neighboring points. If two persons touch the belly of the fish with their fingers, at an inch distance, and press it simultaneously, sometimes one, sometimes the other, will receive the shock. It would be temerity to expose ourselves to the first shocks of a very large and strongly irritated gymnotus. If by chance a stroke be received before the fish is wounded or wearied by long pursuit, the pain and numbness are so violent that it is impossible to describe the nature of the feeling they excite. I do not remember having ever received from the discharge of a large Leyden jar, a more dreadful shock than that which I experienced by imprudently placing both my feet on a gymnotus just taken out of the water. I was affected during the rest of the day with a violent pain in the knees, and in almost every joint."

The travelers left Calabozo on the 24th of March, and continued their journey over the desolate llanos. On the way they found an Indian girl lying in the road, almost lifeless, and with her mouth and nostrils filled with sand. They restored her to consciousness and gave her some wine and water, but she refused to accompany them, and wandered off alone. In three days they reached the Mission of San Fernando, on the Apure river, one of the principal tributaries of the Orinoco. Here was the commencement of their canoe voyages on the Apure, the Orinoco, the Cassiquiare, and the Rio Negro, which lasted for three months. During this journey they were accompanied by Don Nicholas Soto, brother-in-law of the governor of the province. They hired a large canoe, called a *lancha* by the natives. It had a cabin, covered with palm-leaves, in the stern, and was managed by a pilot and four Indians. Provision for a month—consisting of fowls, plantains, and cassava bread, to which the Capuchins added some Xeres wine—was placed on board, and a supply of fishing-tackle, ammunition, and some brandy for the Indians, laid in. Humboldt made notes of every thing which occurred on the voyage, either during the day, or after the canoe had halted for the night. Owing to this habit, his narrative has an unmistakable stamp of truth and reality. They passed the last plantation on the second day, and then entered a territory inhabited entirely by jaguars, crocodiles, manati, or river-cows, and peccaries. The Apure, which grew broader as they descended, was bordered by dense forests, the trees of which were full of monkeys and birds. The river abounded with fish and tortoises, while huge crocodiles, often twenty feet in length, basked on the sand. Notwithstanding the numbers of these latter animals, the rainy season



had not yet commenced, and thousands of them were still lying dormant in the mud of the plains. In those wildernesses, where man lives in constant strife with nature, the conversation turns much upon the means by which one can escape the pursuit of a tiger, or a crocodile; all prepare themselves to encounter the danger. The crocodile loosens its hold if the person seized thrusts his finger into its eyes, and the travelers heard of several instances of escape in this manner.

Humboldt gives the following picturesque description of the nocturnal noises of animals in the forests of the Apure: "Below the mission of Santa Barbara de Arichuna we passed the night as usual in the open air, on a sandy flat, on the bank of the Apure, skirted by the impenetrable forest. We had some difficulty in finding dry wood to kindle the fires with which it is here customary to surround the bivouac, as a safeguard against the attacks of the jaguar. The air was bland and soft, and the moon shone brightly. Several crocodiles approached the bank; and I have observed that fire attracts these creatures as it does our crabs and many other aquatic animals. The oars of our boats were fixed upright in the ground, to support our hammocks. Deep stillness prevailed, only broken at intervals by the blowing of the fresh-water dolphins, which are peculiar to the river net-work of the Orinoco. After eleven o'clock, such a noise began in the contiguous forest, that for the remainder of the night all sleep was impossible. The wild cries of animals rung through the woods. Among the many voices which resounded together, the Indians could only recognize those which, after short pauses, were heard singly. There was the monotonous, plaintive cry of the howling monkeys, the whining, flute-like notes of the small sapa-jous, the grunting murmur of the striped nocturnal ape, the fitful roar of the great tiger, the cougar, or maneless American lion, the peccary, the sloth, and a host of parrots, parraquas, and other pheasant-like birds. Whenever the tigers approached the edge of the forest, our dog, who before had barked incessantly, came howling to seek protection under the hammocks. Sometimes the cry of the tiger resounded from the branches of a tree, and was then always accompanied by the plaintive piping tones of the apes, who were endeavoring to escape from the unwonted pursuit.

"If one asks the Indians why such a continuous noise is heard on certain nights, they answer, with a smile, that 'the animals are rejoicing in the beautiful moonlight, and celebrating the return of the full moon.' To me the scene appeared rather to be owing to an accidental, long continued, and gradually increasing conflict among the animals. Thus, for instance, the jaguar will pursue the peccaries and the tapirs, which, densely crowded together, burst through the barrier of tree-like shrubs which opposes their flight. Terrified at the confusion, the monkeys on the tops of the trees join their cries with those of the larger animals. This arouses the tribes of birds who build their nests in communities, and suddenly the whole animal world is in a state of commotion. Further

experience taught us, that it was by no means always the festival of moonlight that disturbed the stillness of the forest; for we observed that the voices were loudest during violent storms of rain, or when the thunder echoed, and the lightning flashed through the depths of the woods. The good-natured Franciscan monk who accompanied us through the cataracts of Atures and Maypures to San Carlos, on the Rio Negro, and to the Brazilian frontier, used to say, when apprehensive of a storm at night, 'May heaven grant a quiet night both to us and to the wild beasts of the forest!'

The next day, Humboldt was favored with another and even more unwelcome experience. "While my companions were preparing dinner," he says, "I walked along the beach to get a near view of a group of crocodiles sleeping in the sun. Some little herons, white as snow, walked along their backs, and even upon their heads, as if passing over trunks of trees. The crocodiles were of a greenish gray, half covered with dried mud; from their color and immobility they might have been taken for statues of bronze. This excursion had nearly proved fatal to me. I had kept my eyes constantly turned toward the river; but, while picking up some spangles of mica in the sand, I discovered the recent footsteps of a tiger, easily distinguishable from their form and size. The animal had gone toward the forest, and turning my eyes on that side, I found myself within eighty paces of a jaguar that was lying under the thick foliage of a ceiba. No tiger had ever appeared to me so large. There are accidents in life against which we may seek in vain to fortify our reason. I was extremely alarmed, yet sufficiently master of myself and of my motions to enable me to follow the advice which the Indians had so often given us as to how we ought to act in such cases. I continued to walk on without running, avoided moving my arms, and I thought I observed that the jaguar's attention was fixed on a herd of capybaras which was crossing the river. I then began to return, making a large circuit toward the edge of the water. As the distance increased, I thought I might accelerate my pace. How often was I tempted to look back, in order to assure myself that I was not pursued! Happily I yielded very tardily to this desire. The jaguar had remained motionless. I arrived at the boat out of breath, and related my adventure to the Indians."

On the afternoon of the 4th of April, after a voyage of six days on the Apure, they entered the Orinoco. An immense plain of water stretched before them like a sea. White-topped waves, caused by a wind blowing against the current, rose to the height of several feet. The distant horizon was bounded by a zone of level forests. Humboldt found the Apure, at the junction, to be one thousand two hundred feet in breadth, and the Orinoco twelve thousand one hundred and eighty; during the rainy season the latter river attains a breadth of thirty-five thousand feet, or nearly seven miles. Sailing up the Orinoco, they touched at the port of Encaramada, where they first saw some specimens



of the naked Caribs. They were bound for a sandy island in the river, celebrated for its fisheries of turtle's eggs. Humboldt and Bonpland reached this island next day, and found there the missionary of Uruana, who was greatly astonished at seeing them. After having admired their instruments, he gave them an exaggerated picture of the sufferings to which they would be necessarily exposed in ascending the Orinoco beyond the cataracts. The object of their journey appeared to him very mysterious. "How is it possible to believe," said he, "that you have left your country, to come and be devoured by mosquitoes on this river, and to measure lands that are not your own?" While halting at the island, they witnessed the method of collecting turtle's eggs, and extracting the oil. The turtle always lays its eggs at the time of the lowest water, beginning at night, immediately after sunset. It digs a pit two feet deep, and then commences the work, which frequently lasts all night. There are such numbers that if one turtle finds a hole, which has not been filled up, from the haste of its owner on being surprised by the sunrise, he deposits a second layer of eggs over the top of the first. The egg-gatherers investigate the situation and extent of these deposits with a long pole, which, when pressed perpendicularly into the soil, reveals the looser sand below, on which the eggs lie. The harvest is then gathered in with methodical regularity. According to the number of Indian tribes, the soil is divided into certain districts, for the deposits of eggs are found three feet deep, one hundred and twenty feet from the shore. When they have sounded with the poles, the Indians dig up the soil with their hands, and break the eggs into wooden troughs filled with water, after which they expose them to the rays of the sun until the yellow, upper, oily part thickens. This oil is then skimmed off and boiled, and if none of the eggs contain embryo tortoises, it is very pure and of an agreeable flavor. A space on the shore, one hundred and twenty feet long, and thirty feet broad, gives one hundred jars of oil, and five thousand eggs are required to fill a single jar. It is estimated that the quantity of eggs taken from the island, amounts to thirty-three millions! In the afternoon the travelers had a narrow escape from shipwreck. The boat, struck by a violent gust of wind, was thrown on her beam ends, and was only righted by the breaking of some cordage, and the change of the wind. All their plants and books were submerged, and Humboldt saved his journal with difficulty. When at nightfall he bivouacked on a sterile island in the stream, eating his evening meal in the moonlight, seated on tortoise shells, he realized the great danger he had escaped. He had only been on the Orinoco three days, and a voyage of three months, involving far greater risks, was before him. "There are moments in life," he wrote, "in which, without absolutely despairing, the future seems very uncertain; one is more apt to indulge in serious reflection, when, after having escaped a danger, he has need of a strong emotion." While he meditated thus, lying upon a skin

spread on the ground, the jaguars swam across the stream, and prowled around him.

The next day they passed the mouth of the Arauca river and the Mission of Uruana, a village of five hundred inhabitants, most of whom belonged to the clay-eating Otomac tribe. Beyond this point the river became narrower and the current stronger. They continued to ascend under sail, but the high and woody grounds deprived them of wind. In the strait of Baraguan, as it is called, where the river is but a mile in breadth, they found almost perpendicular masses of granite, seven hundred feet high. On the 9th of April they reached an Indian settlement, called Pararuma, where the pilot, who had conducted them from San Fernando, and who was unacquainted with the passage of the rapids of the Orinoco, refused to go further. Fortunately, they succeeded in bringing an excellent canoe, to replace the *lancha*, and Father Bernardo Zea, missionary of Atures, near the cataract, offered to accompany them to the frontiers of Brazil. Humboldt gives the following description of their outfit and manner of voyaging: "The new canoe, intended for us was, like all Indian boats, a trunk of a tree hollowed out partly by the hatchet and partly by fire. It was forty feet long, and three broad. Three persons could not sit in it side by side. These canoes are so crank, and they require, from their instability, a cargo so equally distributed, that when you want to rise for an instant, you must warn the rowers to lean to the opposite side. Without this precaution the water would necessarily enter the side pressed down. It is difficult to form an idea of the inconveniences that are suffered in such wretched vessels. To gain something in breadth, a sort of lattice-work had been constructed on the stern with branches of trees, that extended on each side beyond the gunwale. Unfortunately, the *toldo*, or roof of leaves, that covered this lattice-work, was so low that we were obliged to lie down, without seeing any thing, or, if seated, to sit nearly double. The necessity of carrying the canoe across the rapids, and even from one river to another; and the fear of giving too much hold to the wind, by making the *toldo* higher, render this construction necessary for vessels that go up toward the Rio Negro. The *toldo* was intended to cover four persons, lying on the deck or lattice-work of brush-wood; but our legs reached far beyond it, and when it rained half our bodies were wet. Our couches consisted of ox-hides or tiger-skins spread upon branches of trees, which were painfully felt through so thin a covering. The fore part of the boat was filled with Indian rowers, furnished with paddles, three feet long, in the form of spoons. They were all naked, seated two by two, and they kept time in rowing with a surprising uniformity, singing songs of a sad and monotonous character. The small cages containing our birds and our monkeys—the number of which augmented as we advanced—were hung some to the *toldo* and others to the bow of the boat. This was our traveling menagerie. Every night, when we established our watch, our collection of animals and our instruments occupied the center; around

these were placed first our hammocks, then the hammocks of the Indians; and on the outside were the fires, which are thought indispensable against the attacks of the jaguar. About sunrise the monkeys in our cages answered the cries of the monkeys of the forest.

"In a canoe not three feet wide, and so incumbered, there remained no other place for the dried plants, trunks, sextant, a dipping-needle, and the meteorological instruments, than the space below the lattice-work of branches, on which we were compelled to remain stretched the greater part of the day. If we wished to take the least object out of a trunk, or to use an instrument, it was necessary to row ashore and land. To these inconveniences were joined the torment of the mosquitoes which swarmed under the *toldo*, and the heat radiated from the leaves of the palm-trees, the upper surface of which was continually exposed to the solar rays. We attempted every instant, but always without success, to amend our situation. While one of us hid himself under a sheet to ward off the insects, the other insisted on having green wood lighted beneath the *toldo*, in the hope of driving away the mosquitoes by the smoke. The painful sensations of the eyes, and the increase of heat, already stifling, rendered both these contrivances alike impracticable. With some gayety of temper, with feelings of mutual good-will, and with a vivid taste for the majestic grandeur of these vast valleys of rivers, travelers easily support evils that become habitual."

On the 10th of April they commenced their voyage in this narrow craft, slowly ascending the Orinoco. They were hospitably received at the Mission of Carichana, and on the second day passed the mouth of the Meta, one of the largest tributaries of the Orinoco, with a volume of water equal to that of the Danube. It is navigable as far as the foot of the Andes of New Grenada, within twenty leagues of Bogota, the capital. The Orinoco now began to rise, much to the surprise of the Indians, as the rainy season had not yet fairly set in. On the 13th, after passing the rapids of Tabaje, they reached the Mission of San Borja, where they found a number of converted Guahibo Indians. The interest with which they examined these creatures, occasioned, singularly enough, the desertion of the mission. The Guahibos of the forest persuaded their brethren that the whites, on their return, would carry them off as slaves, and they all fled into the woods. They had much difficulty in conversing with the different tribes which they met with on the river, and were sometimes obliged to employ several interpreters at the same time. They were, however, in no danger from hostile attacks, the Jesuits having subjugated the natives by force of arms, before they administered their spiritual consolations. One of these priests said to Humboldt, with great candor, "The voice of the Gospel is heard only where the Indians have also heard the sound of fire-arms. By chastising the natives, we facilitate their conversion."

The river Orinoco, in its course from south to north, is crossed by a chain of granite mountains. Twice confined in its course, it turbulently

breaks on the rocks, which form steppes and transverse dykes. "Neither the fall of Tequendama," says Humboldt, "nor the magnificent scenes of the Cordilleras, could weaken the impression produced upon my mind by the first view of the rapids of Atures and of Maypures. When the spectator is so stationed that the eye can at once take in the long succession of cataracts, and the immense sheet of foam and vapor illumined by the rays of the setting sun, the whole river seems, as it were, suspended over its bed." They reached the Mission of Atures, at the foot of the first cataract, on the evening of April 15. During this day's voyage they were struck with the supernatural silence of the tropical noonday: "Not a breath of air moved the dust-like sand. The sun stood in the zenith; and the effulgence of light poured upon the river gave additional distinctness to the red haze which veiled the distance. All the rocky mounds and naked boulders were covered with large, thick-scaled iguanas, gecko-lizards, and spotted salamanders. Motionless, with uplifted heads and widely-extended mouths, they seemed to inhale the heated air with ecstasy. The larger animals at such times take refuge in the deep recesses of the forest, the birds nestle beneath the foliage of the trees, or in the clefts of the rocks; but if in this apparent stillness of nature we listen closely for the faintest tones, we detect a dull, muffled sound, a buzzing and humming of insects close to the earth, in the lower strata of the atmosphere. Every thing proclaims a world of active organic forces. In every shrub, in the cracked bark of trees, in the perforated ground inhabited by hymenopterous insects, life is everywhere audibly manifest. It is one of the many voices of nature revealed to the pious and susceptible spirit of man." They found the cataract of Atures to be a succession of rapids, extending over a distance of four or five miles, in which the entire fall of the river was about thirty-two feet, presenting a striking resemblance to the cataracts of the Nile, while the method of ascending them in canoes is almost precisely similar to that employed by the Egyptians. When the dikes, or natural dams, are only two or three feet high, the Indians venture to descend them in boats. In going up the river, they swim on before, and if, after many vain efforts, they succeed in fixing a rope to one of the points of rock that crown the dike, they then, by means of that rope, draw the bark to the top of the rapid. The bark, during this arduous task, often fills with water; at other times it is stove against the rocks, and the Indians, their bodies bruised and bleeding, extricate themselves with difficulty from the whirlpools, and reach, by swimming, the nearest island. When the steppes or rocky barriers are very high, and entirely bar the river, light boats are carried on shore, and with the help of branches of trees placed under them to serve as rollers, they are drawn as far as the place where the river again becomes navigable. This operation is seldom necessary when the water is high.

After two days spent at Atures, Humboldt, and Bonpland continued their voyage, still accompanied by Don Nicholas Soto and Father Bernardo Zea. They now began to suffer indescribable torments from the

mosquitoes and venomous flies by day, and the *zancudos* (a species of large gnats) by night. These pests would bite through thick garments, and could not be driven away by smoke. They came in such clouds that the mouths, ears, and noses of the travelers were filled with them. Their hands were swollen and covered with hard, painful blotches, and they were at last able to tell the time of day by the regularity with which the different varieties of stinging insects made their visitations. On the upper Orinoco, the principal topic of conversation, both among the natives and the missionaries, is mosquitoes. The usual salutations are: "How did you find the gnats during the night?" "How are you off for mosquitoes to-day?" which reminded Humboldt of an ancient Chinese manner of greeting: "Have you been incommoded in the night by serpents?" "The lower strata of air," he writes, "from the surface of the ground to the height of fifteen or twenty feet, are absolutely filled with venomous insects. If in an obscure spot, for instance in the grottos of the cataracts formed by superincumbent blocks of granite, you direct your eyes toward the opening enlightened by the sun, you see clouds of mosquitoes more or less thick. I doubt whether there be a country upon earth, where man is exposed to more cruel torments in the rainy season. Having passed the fifth degree of latitude, you are somewhat less stung; but on the upper Orinoco the stings are more painful, because the heat and the absolute want of wind render the air more burning and more irritating in its contact with the skin. 'How comfortable must people be in the moon!' said a Salive Indian to Father Gumilla; 'she looks so beautiful and so clear, that she must be free from mosquitoes.' These words, which denote the infancy of a people, are very remarkable. The satellite of the earth appears to all savage nations the abode of the blessed, the country of abundance. The Esquimaux, who counts among his riches a plank or trunk of a tree, thrown by the currents on a coast destitute of vegetation, sees in the moon plains covered with forests; the Indian of the forests of Orinoco there beholds open savannahs, where the inhabitants are never stung by mosquitoes."

Two more days brought them to the great cataract, or rapid of Maypures, which they reached after night, in the midst of a violent rain. Father Zea lighted torches of copal, and conducted them to the mission, where they remained while the Indians dragged the canoe up the rapids. At the northern end of the principal cataract, which has a fall of nine feet perpendicular, there is a lofty rock called Keri, so named from a luminous white spot, in which the Indians perceive a remarkable similarity to the moon. Humboldt was not able to climb the rock, but supposed the white spot to be an immense piece of quartz in the dark granite. On an opposite rock, the Indians showed a similar disc, which they called Camosi, and worshiped as an image of the sun. The best view of the cataract, is from the rock of Manimi, a granite ridge near the mission of Maypures. "We often visited this mountain," says Humboldt, "for we were never weary of gazing on the astonishing spectacle."



From the summit of the rock is descried a sheet of foam, extending the length of a whole mile. Enormous masses of stone, black as iron, issue from its bosom. Some are grouped in pairs, like basaltic hills; others resemble towers, fortified castles, and ruined buildings. Their gloomy tint contrasts with the silvery splendor of the foam. Every rock, every islet is covered with vigorous trees, collected in clusters. As far as the eye can reach, a thick vapor is suspended over the river, and through this whitish fog the tops of the lofty palm-trees shoot up. Such is the character of the landscape discovered from the top of the mountain of Manimi, which no traveler has yet described. The calm of the atmosphere, and the tumultuous movement of the waters, produce a contrast peculiar to this zone. Here no breath of wind ever agitates the foliage, no cloud veils the splendor of the azure vault of heaven; a great mass of light is diffused in the air, on the earth strewn with plants with glossy leaves, and on the bed of the river, which extends as far as the eye can reach. When the rays of the glowing evening sun are refracted in the humid atmosphere, an exquisite optical illusion is produced. Colored bows appear, vanish, and re-appear, while the ethereal picture dances, like an *ignis fatuus*, with every motion of the sportive breeze. In the blue distance the eye rests on the mountain chain of Cunavami, a far-stretching range of hills which terminates abruptly in a sharply truncated cone. We saw this conical hill, called by the Indians *Calitamini*, glowing at sunset as if in crimson flames. This appearance daily returns. No one has ever been in the immediate neighborhood of this mountain. Possibly its dazzling brightness is produced by the reflecting surface of decomposing talc, or mica schist."

#### VOYAGES ON THE RIO NEGRO AND CASSIQUIARE.

On the 21st of April, they re-embarked in their narrow canoes, which had suffered considerable damage by striking against the rocks. The rainy season had now fairly set in; there were heavy showers almost daily, and as the wind never blows in these regions, they suffered terribly from mosquitoes. They made good progress, however, and on the night of the 24th entered the Guaviare, the largest tributary of the Orinoco, then the Atabapo, which flows into it from the south, near its junction with the former river, and reached the mission of San Fernando. Humboldt now found himself on the spot where he could be enabled to verify the celebrated bifurcation of the Orinoco, which had been previously doubted by geographers. The upper Orinoco, near the mission of Esmeralda, divides itself into two parts, one of which, flowing westward, receives the Guaviare and other tributaries, and continues its way to the Caribbean Sea; the other, turning southward, forms a branch of the Rio Negro, and mingles its waters with those of the Amazon. This extraordinary geographical feature, the only instance

of the  
bold  
thres  
trate  
the v  
porte  
had  
the p  
' You  
Ferna  
When  
vancin  
forest  
those  
Javita  
over l  
not br  
stale  
quiere  
month  
the pl  
dang  
days."  
Aft  
the At  
quality  
by the  
journey  
channe  
forests.  
trate it  
the can  
branch  
granite  
history  
at San  
for the  
woman  
on a h  
carried  
attempt  
brought  
mined t  
would b  
the Ata  
the foot

of the kind on a large scale, was first satisfactorily established by Humboldt's explorations. The mission of San Fernando de Atabapo was the threshold of the comparatively unknown region which he was to penetrate. "During the night," he says, "we had left, almost unperceived, the waters of the Orinoco; and at sunrise found ourselves as if transported to a new country, on the banks of a river, the name of which we had scarcely ever heard pronounced, and which was to conduct us, by the portage of Pimichin, to the Rio Negro, on the frontiers of Brazil. 'You will go up,' said the president of the missions, who resides at San Fernando, 'first the Atabapo, then the Temi, and finally, the Tuamini. When the force of the current of "black waters" hinders you from advancing, you will be conducted out of the bed of the river through forests, which you will find inundated. Two monks only are settled in those desert places, between the Orinoco and the Rio Negro; but at Javita you will be furnished with the means of having your canoe drawn over land in the course of four days to the rivulet of Pimichin. If it be not broken to pieces you will descend the Rio Negro without any obstacle as far as the little fort of San Carlos; you will go up the Cassiquiare (from south to north), and then return to San Fernando in a month, descending the upper Orinoco from east to west.' Such was the plan traced for our passage, and we carried it into effect without danger, though not without some suffering, in the space of thirty-three days."

After resting a day at the mission, they commenced their voyage up the Atabapo, the water of which was of a much darker hue and purer quality than that of the Orinoco. The banks were entirely concealed by the dense growth of palms and other trees. In order to shorten the journey, the Indians left the main bed of the river and took narrow channels (occasioned by the rains), which led directly through the forests. The foliage was so dense that no ray of sunlight could penetrate it, and they were often obliged to hew with knives a passage for the canoe. On the 30th of May, they left the Atabapo, and entered a branch called the Temi. Near the junction of the two rivers stands a granite mound, called the "Mother's Rock," on account of a touching history which it commemorates. Three years previous, the missionary at San Fernando had undertaken a hostile expedition among the Indians for the purpose of capturing souls. Among other prisoners taken was a woman who was surprised alone in a hut, her husband having gone off on a hunting expedition, accompanied by the children. After being carried to San Fernando, the desire to see her children induced her to attempt an escape. She fled repeatedly, but was as often caught and brought back, and violently flogged, without effect. It was then determined to send her to the distant missions on the Rio Negro, whence it would be impossible for her to return. While the canoe was passing up the Atabapo, she flung herself into the stream and was thrown ashore at the foot of the rock. Again she escaped into the woods, but was again

extending the  
as iron, issue  
e hills; others  
Their gloomy  
ry rock, every  
As far as the  
r, and through  
p. Such is the  
he mountain of  
n of the atmos-  
duce a contrast  
ates the foliage,  
n; a great mass  
ants with glossy  
r as the eye can  
refracted in the  
luced. Colored  
picture dances,  
breeze. In the  
Cunavami, a far-  
harply truncated  
Calitamini, glow-  
aily returns. No  
of this mountain.  
ecting surface of

SIQUIARE.

r narrow canoes,  
against the rocks.  
heavy showers al-  
ons, they suffered  
however, and on  
tributary of the  
he south, near its  
ssion of San Fer-  
here he could be  
inoco, which had  
er Orinoco, near  
rts, one of which,  
butaries, and con-  
rning southward,  
ters with those of  
the only instance



caught brought back to the rock, and most cruelly beaten. She was then taken to the mission of Javita and closely confined, but in spite of her wounds she took advantage of a dark and stormy night to unfasten with her teeth the cords which bound her and again fled in search of her children. For four days and nights she wandered through a trackless forest, then inundated and swarming with venomous reptiles. She swam the swollen rivers; her flesh was torn with thorns and spiky leaves; her only food was the large black ants which she caught; but after this incredible labor she reached her children, only to be torn away from them shortly afterward, for the last time. The missionaries threw her into a cell, where she refused all nourishment in her despair, and thus died. Humboldt exclaims, after relating this story: "If man scarcely leaves a trace of his existence in this wilderness, the name of this rock, an imperishable monument of nature, will remain as a memorial of the moral perversity of our age, of the contrast between the virtue of the savage and the barbarism of civilized man!"

On the 1st of May they left the river Temi, and advanced a short distance up one of its branches, the Tuamini, to the mission of Javita, the commencement of the portage of five miles through the forests to the rivulet of Pimichin, which flows into the Rio Negro. They were detained five days by the transportation of the canoe. Twenty-three Indians were employed in dragging it, using the branches of trees as rollers. The travelers employed the time in botanizing, and in collecting information concerning the Indian tribes. When the portage was performed—happily without injury to the canoe—they proceeded on foot to the Pimichin, through a forest swarming with venomous vipers. On the 6th of May they embarked on the Pimichin, and in five hours afterward entered the Rio Negro. Their perseverance was at last rewarded. "We had now been confined thirty-six days in a narrow boat, so unsteady that it would have been overturned by any person rising imprudently from his seat, without warning the rowers. We had suffered severely from the sting of insects, but we had stood the insalubrity of the climate; we had passed without accident the great number of waterfalls and bars, which impede the navigation of the rivers, and often render it more dangerous than long voyages by sea. After all we had endured, it may be conceived that we felt no little satisfaction in having reached the tributary streams of the Amazon, having passed the isthmus that separates two great systems of rivers, and in being sure of having fulfilled the most important object of our journey, namely, to determine astronomically the course of that arm of the Orinoco which falls into the Rio Negro, and of which the existence has been alternately proved and denied during half a century. In proportion as we draw near to an object we have long had in view, its interest seems to augment. The uninhabited banks of the Cassiquiare, covered with forests, without memorials of times past, then occupied my imagination, as do now the banks of the Euphrates, or the Oxus, celebrated in the annals of civil-

ize  
ac  
na  
de  
act  
the  
wit  
itar  
som  
with  
we  
us  
are  
Neg  
San  
south  
ant  
of th  
Orin  
ney.  
The  
of jea  
with  
and f  
starte  
turnin  
explor  
suade  
their  
howe  
progr  
positi  
prie  
carefu  
also v  
is inst  
to brin  
ers spe  
and an  
appro  
in a n  
aspect  
longer  
You se  
walls,

ized nations. In that interior part of the New Continent one may almost accustom one's self to regard men as not being essential to the order of nature. The earth is loaded with plants, and nothing impedes their free development. An immense layer of mold manifests the uninterrupted action of organic powers. Crocodiles and boas are masters of the river; the jaguar, the peccary, the dante, and the monkeys traverse the forest without fear and without danger; there they dwell as in an ancient inheritance. This aspect of animated nature, in which man is nothing, has something in it strange and sad. Here, in a fertile country, adorned with eternal verdure, we seek in vain the traces of the power of man; we seem to be transported into a world different from that which gave us birth. These impressions are the more powerful in proportion as they are of long duration."

After a voyage of only two days down the rapid current of the Rio Negro, passing the Missions of Maroa and Davipe, the travelers reached San Carlos, the last Spanish station, and the termination of their travels southward. Here there was a small military post, and the commandant received them with great hospitality. From San Carlos the mouth of the Amazon could have been reached in the same time as that of the Orinoco, and Humboldt was for a moment tempted to continue his journey. It was very fortunate that he did not carry this idea into effect. The government of Brazil had heard of his travels, and through a spirit of jealous suspicion, had given orders to its agents to seize the travelers, with their instruments, journals, etc., in case they crossed the frontier, and forward them to Lisbon. On the 10th, Humboldt and Bonpland started on their return. Soto and Father Zea would have preferred returning by the same route they had come, but the former, anxious to explore the Cassiquiare—the Orinoco branch of the Rio Negro—persuaded them to acquiesce in their plan. They found the two rivers, at their junction, nearly equal in breadth; the current of the Cassiquiare, however, was very strong—sometimes eight miles an hour—and their progress was slow. At one of the missions on its banks he obtained positive information of the cannibal habits of the native tribes. The priest informed him that one of the native chiefs, a few years before, had carefully fattened and then eaten one of his own wives. Infanticide is also very common, and when an Indian woman bears twins one of them is instantly killed, because they consider it a vile thing for a human being to bring forth more than one, like an opossum or peccary. The travelers spent ten nights on the Cassiquiare, tormented with gnats, mosquitoes, and ants. The passage became more troublesome in proportion as they approached the Orinoco. "The luxuriance of the vegetation increases in a manner of which it is difficult even for those acquainted with the aspect of the forests between the tropics, to form an idea. There is no longer a bank: a palisade of tufted trees forms the margin of the river. You see a canal twelve hundred feet broad, bordered by two enormous walls, clothed with parasitic vines and foliage. We often tried to land,

but without success. Toward sunset we would sail along for an hour seeking to discover, not an opening (since none exists), but a spot less wooded, where our Indians by means of the hatchet and manual labor, could clear space enough for a resting-place for twelve or thirteen persons. It was impossible to pass the night in the canoe; the mosquitoes, which tormented us during the day, accumulated toward evening beneath the *toldo* covered with palm-leaves, which served to shelter us from the rain. Our hands and faces had never before been so much swelled. Father Zea, who had till then boasted of having in his missions of the cataracts the largest and fiercest mosquitoes, at length gradually acknowledged that the sting of the insects of the Cassiquiare was the most painful he had ever felt. We experienced great difficulty, amid a thick forest, in finding wood to make a fire, the branches of the trees being so full of sap that they would scarcely burn. The view of the river, and the hum of the insects, were a little monotonous; but some remains of our natural cheerfulness enabled us to find sources of relief during our wearisome passage. We discovered, that by eating small portions of dry cacao ground with sugar, and drinking a large quantity of the river water, we succeeded in appeasing our appetite for several hours. The ants and the mosquitoes troubled us more than the humidity and the want of food. Notwithstanding the privations to which we were exposed during our excursions in the Cordilleras, the navigation on the Cassiquiare has always appeared to us the most painful part of our travels in America."

#### RETURN TO CUMANÁ.

They reached the Orinoco on the 21st of May, and proceeded three miles up the stream, to the missionary station of Esmeralda. At the bifurcation of the river rises the granite mountain of Duida, eight thousand feet high, which forms a splendid feature in the landscape. During a stay of two days at Esmeralda, Humboldt had an opportunity of witnessing the preparation of the celebrated *curare* poison, which is obtained from the juice and bark of a particular plant, highly concentrated by boiling and filtration. When it comes in contact with the blood it is immediately fatal, and no remedy for it has yet been discovered; but it may be swallowed not only with safety, but with great advantage, in cases of gastric derangement. It is prepared by a skillful Indian, who has the title of "poison-master." While Humboldt was witnessing the process, the master, who had a wounded finger, incautiously allowed some of the poison to touch it. He instantly fell to the ground, as if stunned, but the poison was fortunately in a diluted state, and the man's life was saved by the application of muriate of soda. Humboldt himself had also a narrow escape from a similar fate. The poison ran out of a bottle which was badly stopped, and saturated his stockings. He per-

ceiv  
feet  
hav  
in a  
bad  
ing  
quia  
and  
of n  
miss  
mon  
sever  
to w  
them  
the e  
ruipe  
H  
surro  
mark  
dang  
and p  
hardl  
feldsp  
from  
round  
the ri  
bank  
izon  
the di  
In the  
vultur  
shado  
valley  
granit  
eter.  
the sli  
side o  
the ca  
not a  
—a ki  
level.  
six hu  
of the  
pires,  
the de  
These

ceived the glutinous feeling as he was about to put them on, and as his feet were covered with sores from the bites of insects, such an act would have been certain death. When the travelers left Esmeralda, they were in a very weak and languid condition, caused by the torments of insects, bad food, and confinement in the narrow and damp canoe. After spending another night at the junction (or rather disjunction), of the Cassiquiare, they floated with the current, the river being free from shoals, and in thirty-five hours reached the mission of Santa Barbara, a distance of nearly a hundred and fifty miles. On the 27th, they arrived at the mission of San Fernando de Atabapo, which they had left more than a month before. They remained but a day to rest, and then floated, in seventeen hours, to the cataract of Maypures, where they were obliged to wait two days for the passage of their canoe. Another day brought them to the cataract of Atures. Here they landed before sunset, on the eastern bank of the Orinoco, in order to visit the cavern of Ataruipe, which is the place of sepulture of an extinct nation.

Humboldt thus describes his visit to this remarkable cave: "The surrounding scenery has a grand and solemn character, which seems to mark it as a national burial-place. With difficulty, and not without danger of being precipitated into the depths below, we clambered a steep and perfectly bare granite rock, on whose smooth surface it would be hardly possible to keep one's footing were it not for large crystals of feldspar, which, defying the action of weather, project an inch or more from the mass. On gaining the summit, a wide prospect of the surrounding country astonishes the beholder. From the foaming bed of the river rise hills richly crowned with woods, while beyond its western bank the eye rests on the boundless savannah of the Meta. On the horizon loom like threatening clouds the mountains of Uniamá. Such is the distant view; but immediately around all is desolate and contracted. In the deep ravines of the valley moves no living thing save where the vulture and the whirring goat-sucker wing their lonely way, their heavy shadows gleaming fitfully past the barren rock. The caldron-shaped valley is encompassed by mountains, whose rounded summits bear huge granite boulders, measuring from forty to more than fifty feet in diameter. They appear poised on only a single point of the surface, as if the slightest shock of the earth would hurl them down. The further side of this rocky valley is thickly wooded. It is in this shady spot that the cave of the Ataruipe is situated; properly speaking, however, it is not a cave, but a vault formed by a far projecting and overhanging cliff,—a kind of bay hollowed out by the waters when formerly at this high level. This spot is the grave of an extinct tribe. We counted about six hundred well-preserved skeletons, placed in as many baskets, formed of the stalks of palm-leaves. These baskets, called by the Indians *mapires*, are a kind of square sack varying in size according to the age of the deceased. Even new-born children have each their own *mapire*. These skeletons are so perfect, that not a rib or a finger is wanting.

"The Indians assured me that the corpse was buried during several months in a moist earth, which gradually destroyed the flesh; and that after being disinterred, any particles of flesh still adhering to the bones were scraped off with sharp stones. This practice is still continued among many tribes of Guiana. Besides these baskets, or mapires, we saw many urns of half-burned clay, which appear to contain the bones of whole families. The largest of these urns are upward of three feet in height, and nearly six feet in length, of an elegant oval form, and greenish color; with handles shaped like crocodiles and serpents, and the rims bordered with flowing scrolls and labyrinthine figures. These ornaments are precisely similar to those which cover the walls of the Mexican palace at Mitla. They are found in every clime and every stage of human culture—among the Greeks and Romans, no less than on the shields of Otaheitan, and other South Sea islanders—in all regions where a rhythmical repetition of regular forms delights the eye. The causes of these resemblances, as I have explained elsewhere, are rather to be referred to psychical conditions, and to the inner nature of our mental qualifications, than as affording evidence in favor of a common origin and the ancient intercourse of nations.

"Our interpreters could give us no certain information regarding the age of these vessels; but that of the skeletons did not in general appear to exceed a hundred years. There is a legend among the Guareke Indians, that the brave Atures, when closely pursued by the cannibal Caribs, took refuge on the rocks of the cataracts—a mournful place of abode—in which this oppressed race perished, together with its language! In the most inaccessible portion of the rapid, other graves of the same character are met with; indeed it is probable that the last descendants of the Atures did not become extinct until a much more recent period. There still lives, and it is a singular fact, an old parrot in Maypures which can not be understood, because, as the natives assert, it speaks the language of the Atures!

"We left the cave at nightfall, after having collected, to the extreme annoyance of our Indian guides, several skulls and the perfect skeleton of an aged man. One of these skulls has been delineated by Blumenbach in his admirable craniological work; but the skeleton, together with a large portion of our natural history collections, especially the entomological, was lost by shipwreck off the coast of Africa on the same occasion when our friend and former traveling companion, the young Franciscan monk, Juan Gonzalez, lost his life. As if with a presentiment of this painful loss, we turned from the grave of a departed race with feelings of deep emotion. It was one of those clear and delicious cool nights so frequent beneath the tropics. The moon stood high in the zenith, encircled by a halo of colored rings, her rays gilding the margins of the mist, which in well defined outline hovered like clouds above the foaming flood. Innumerable insects poured their red phosphorescent light over the herb-covered surface, which glowed with living fire, as

the  
Cili  
ad  
ove  
mer  
em  
the  
new  
ture  
him

rem  
last  
seve  
dike  
foun  
into  
with  
a fea  
to ci  
some  
and  
tle m  
bask  
of th  
long  
plish  
and v  
7th o  
mace  
They  
bake  
heigh  
stand  
and b  
the f  
and p  
other  
state  
seeds  
bird,  
so sti  
those  
A  
the tr  
arrive



though the starry canopy of heaven had sunk upon the grassy plain. Climbing bignonia, fragrant vanillas, and golden-flowered banisterias, adorned the entrance of the cave, while the rustling palm-leaves waved over the resting-place of the dead. Thus pass away the generations of men!—thus perish the records of the glory of nations! Yet when every emanation of the human mind has faded—when in the storms of time the monuments of man's creative art are scattered to the dust—an ever new life springs from the bosom of the earth. Unceasingly prolific nature unfolds her germs, regardless though sinful man, ever at war with himself, tramples beneath his foot the ripening fruit!"

After taking leave of the good monk, Father Zea, who was ill and remained at the mission, Humboldt and Bonpland ventured to pass the last half of the cataract of Atures in the laden boat. They landed several times on the rocks which connect the single islands by abrupt dikes; sometimes the waves dashed over these dikes, and sometimes found an outlet through subterranean channels. The travelers crept into one of the caverns under the rocks; its damp walls were covered with confervas, which they gathered, while overhead the torrent fell with a fearful noise. As the Indians had left them in the middle of the rapid to circumnavigate a small island in the canoe, they were obliged to spend some time on the rock in a violent storm. The night had already set in, and their situation without shelter was dismal in the extreme. The little monkeys, which they had carried with them for months in wicker baskets, attracted the crocodiles by their cries, thus refuting the assertion of the Indians that these animals are never seen in the rapids. After a long time the canoe arrived at the foot of the island, having safely accomplished the passage; they re-shipped their instruments and collections, and were soon afloat on the broad waters of the lower Orinoco. On the 7th of June they reached the Mission of Uruana, inhabited by the Otomacs—a tribe of Indians who are noted for their habit of eating dirt. They select an unctuous kind of clay, which they make into cakes and bake in the fire. They are very fond of this diet, which, during the height of the rainy season, constitutes their principal food. Notwithstanding it contains little or no nutritive quality, these Indians are robust and healthy. It is supposed that they use the oil of turtles' eggs, and the fat of the crocodile, in connection with it. They are a turbulent and passionate people, and strongly addicted to the use of palm-wine and other intoxicating drinks. They also throw themselves into a peculiar state of intoxication by the use of a powder called *niopo*, made from the seeds of a species of acacia, and inhaled through the forked bone of a bird, the extremities of which are applied to the nostrils. The powder is so stimulating that the smallest portion of it occasions violent sneezing in those unaccustomed to its use.

A further voyage of nine days, without particular incident, brought the travelers to Angostura, the capital of Spanish Guiana, where they arrived on the 16th of June. Humboldt thus describes his feelings,



on this return to civilization: "It would be difficult for me to express the satisfaction we felt on landing at Angostura. The inconveniences endured at sea in small vessels are trivial in comparison with those that are suffered under a burning sky, surrounded by swarms of mosquitoes, and lying stretched in a canoe, without the possibility of taking the least bodily exercise. In seventy-five days we had performed a passage of five hundred leagues—twenty to a degree—on the five great rivers, Apure, Orinoco, Atabapo, Rio Negro, and Casiquiare; and in this vast extent we had found but a very small number of inhabited places. Coming from an almost desert country, we were struck with the bustle of the town, though it contained only six thousand inhabitants. We admired the conveniences which industry and commerce furnish to civilized man. Humble dwellings appeared to us magnificent; and every person with whom we conversed, seemed to be endowed with superior intelligence. Long privations give a value to the smallest enjoyments; and I can not express the pleasure we felt, when we saw for the first time wheaten bread on the governor's table."

Soon after their arrival, they were both attacked with fever on the same day, and Bonpland's condition became so serious that his recovery was almost despaired of. This misfortune detained them at Angostura until the 10th of July, when they crossed the Orinoco for the last time and commenced their journey across the llanos to New Barcelona. Their collections of plants and geological specimens greatly augmented their baggage, owing to which circumstance they were obliged to travel very slowly. The heat was excessive, and as there was no wind, they found the journey very toilsome. At the end of the third day they reached the Mission of Cari, the inhabitants of which belonged to the ancient Carib tribe which Columbus found on this coast. They are a very tall race, many of them being six feet in height. Their features are more regular, with a more intelligent expression, than those of the other Indian tribes. The men are more clothed than the women, who are almost naked, the want of clothing being much less important than the absence of red paint on their bodies. They asked Humboldt for pins, which they immediately stuck into their lower lips. Leaving the mission, six more days brought the travelers in sight of the mountain-chain of Cumana—which divides the llanos from the Caribbean Sea—rising like a cloud in the distance. On the 23d of July they reached New Barcelona, exhausted by the hot sand-winds of the plains. Bonpland soon regained his health and activity, but Humboldt experienced an attack of typhus fever, which was then prevalent, and was unable to travel for a month.

Anxious to reach Cumana, in order to avail themselves of the first opportunity that might offer for a passage to Vera Cruz, they hired an open boat, which was employed in the contraband trade with Trinidad, and for that reason imagined they had nothing to fear from the English cruisers. They shipped their instruments, plants, and monkeys, and set

sail  
whi  
Hal  
who  
depo  
were  
to b  
Hau  
priv  
the c  
tain  
man  
throu  
some  
own  
the t  
fortre  
dark  
shore,  
where  
Amon  
Indian  
to us;  
beneat  
at Cum  
herbor  
joy at  
Orinoc

The  
to Ver  
they w  
an Ame  
determ  
a stay  
at Cum  
illumina  
time, b  
Barcelo  
24th, an  
Havana  
ations  
ouracy

sail; but had not gone far before they came in sight of an armed boat, which hailed them, and fired at them simultaneously. It belonged to a Halifax privateer, and among the passengers was a Prussian sailor, from whom Humboldt heard his native language, for the first time since his departure. He protested against the seizure, but without effect; they were carried on board the privateer, and the captain declared their boat to be a lawful prize. At this juncture, an English sloop-of-war, the *Hawk*, which was cruising in those seas, hove in sight and ordered the privateer to lay to. A midshipman was sent on board, who, on learning the difficulty, took Humboldt with him on board the sloop. The captain of the latter, Garnier, who had voyaged with Vancouver, and was a man of considerable intelligence, had heard of Humboldt's expedition through the English newspapers. He introduced him to his officers, some of whom had accompanied Lord Macartney to China, gave him his own state-room for the night, ordered the boat to be given up, and sent the travelers on their way in the morning. Before noon they saw the fortress of Cumana, strikingly relieved, from its whiteness, against the dark curtain of the inland mountains. "We gazed with interest on the shore," says Humboldt, "where we first gathered plants in America, and where, some months later, M. Bonpland had been in such danger. Among the cactuses, that rise in columns twenty feet high, appear the Indian huts of the Guaykerias. Every part of the landscape was familiar to us; the forest of cactus, the scattered huts, and that enormous ceiba, beneath which we loved to bathe at the approach of night. Our friends at Cumana came out to meet us: men of all castes, whom our frequent herborizations had brought into contact with us, expressed the greater joy at sight of us, as a report that we had perished on the banks of the Orinoco had been current for several months."

## VISIT TO CUBA.

They waited at Cumana for the arrival of the packet from Corunna to Vera Cruz; but the strictness of the English blockade was such that they were detained two months and a half. As no packet arrived, and an American vessel was about to leave New Barcelona for Cuba, they determined to take passage in her, and on the 16th of November, after a stay of sixteen months in Venezuela, bade a final adieu to their friends at Cumana. They beheld with emotion the silver disc of the full moon illuminating the cocoa-trees on the banks of the Manzanares, for the last time, but the breeze was strong, and in six hours they had reached New Barcelona. The American vessel sailed on the evening of November 24th, and after a very tempestuous passage of twenty-five days, reached Havana on the 19th of December. Humboldt made astronomical observations during the passage, whenever it was possible, and tested the accuracy of the position of the reefs and islands which they passed. His

approach to the shores of Cuba was announced by the delicious aromatic odors which blew from off the land.\* The travelers were the guests of Count O'Reilly and Señor Cuesta during their stay at Havana, which was about three months. They employed their time, until the end of February, in making observations in and around the city, and in the neighboring plains of Guines. About the end of February, having completed the observations they proposed making at the northern extremity of the torrid zone, they were on the point of embarking for Vera Cruz, intending to cross Mexico, sail to the Philippine Islands, and return to Europe by way of India and Persia, when a rumor (which afterward proved false) concerning the French expedition of Captain Baudin, induced them to change their plans. It was stated that this expedition had departed from France, bound for the coast of Chili and Peru, whence it would sail for Australia.

#### TRAVELS AMONG THE ANDES.

The projects which Humboldt had formed before leaving Paris were instantly revived. He determined to sail to Carthagena, cross the isthmus to the Pacific, and await Baudin's arrival in Lima or Valparaiso. But it was first necessary to forward to Europe his large collection of objects of natural history. "Bonpland and I," he says, "resolved instantly to divide our herbals into three portions, to avoid exposing to the risks of a long voyage the objects we had obtained with so much difficulty on the banks of the Orinoco, the Atabapo, and the Rio Negro. We sent one collection by way of England to Germany, another by way of Cadiz to France, and a third remained at Havana. We had reason to congratulate ourselves on this foresight: each collection contained nearly the same species, and no precautions were neglected to have the cases, if taken by English or French vessels, remitted to Sir Joseph Banks, or to the professors of natural history at the Museum at Paris. It happened fortunately that the manuscripts which I at first intended to send with the collection to Cadiz were not intrusted to our much esteemed friend and fellow-traveler, Fray Juan Gonzalez, who had followed us to Havana with the view of returning to Spain. He left the island of Cuba soon after us, but the vessel in which he sailed foundered on the coast of Africa, and the cargo and crew were all lost. By this event we lost some of the duplicates of our herbals, and what was more important, all the insects which M. Bonpland had, with great difficulty, collected during our voyage to the Orinoco and the Rio Negro. By a singular fatality we remained two years in the Spanish colonies without receiving a single letter from Europe; and those which arrived in the three following years made no mention of what we had transmitted.

\* In approaching Cuba from the north in July, 1849, we were met several miles from shore by the same fragrant land wind, freighted with the balms of the tropics.—B. T.

The reader may imagine my uneasiness for the fate of a journal which contained astronomical observations, and barometrical measurements, of which I had not made any copy. After having visited New Grenada, Peru, and Mexico, and just when I was preparing to leave the New Continent, I happened, at a public library of Philadelphia, to cast my eyes on a scientific publication, in which I found these words: 'Arrival of M. de Humboldt's manuscripts at his brother's house in Paris, by way of Spain!' I could scarcely suppress an exclamation of joy."

They experienced some difficulty in obtaining passage to Carthagena, but finally chartered a Spanish sloop lying at Batabano, on the southern shore of the island, and set sail on the 9th of March, 1801. The cabin was merely a hold for provisions, and they were obliged to live on deck, where the thermometer stood at 90° in the shade. "Luckily these inconveniences lasted only twenty days," says Humboldt, with the resignation of a genuine traveler. Coasting along the southern shore, in five days they reached Trinidad de Cuba, where they were treated with much distinction by the Governor. A grand party was assembled to entertain them in the evening, and an ecclesiastic, habited in velvet, notwithstanding the heat, declaimed a sonnet, celebrating their voyage on the Orinoco. They set sail the next day, and after a rough passage of sixteen days, again reached the South American continent, at the mouth of the river Sinu, which the captain entered to shelter his frail vessel from the storms. This was at that time an almost unvisited region, and the botanical zeal of the travelers led them into a situation of great danger. Having rowed ashore to collect plants by moonlight they would have fallen into an ambuscade of naked men, armed and laden with chains—probably escaped criminals—if they had not retreated cautiously to the vessel. On the 30th of March they reached Carthagena, where, after consultation with the authorities, they were persuaded to give up their intention of crossing the isthmus to Panama, and to choose instead the route to Guayaquil, by way of Bogota and Quito. This change of direction gave Humboldt occasion to trace the map of the Rio Magdalena, to determine astronomically the position of eighty points situated in the inland country between Carthagena, Popayan, and the upper valley of the Amazon and Lima, to discover the error in the longitude of Quito, to collect several thousand new plants, and to observe, on a vast scale, the relation between the rocks of syenitic porphyry and trachyte and the active fire of volcanoes.

The travelers remained six days at Carthagena, making preparations for their journey. During this time, Humboldt visited the remarkable air-volcanoes of Turbaco, lying in the midst of palm-groves, near the Indian village of the same name. These volcanoes consist of eighteen or twenty cones of gray mud, a few yards in height, with miniature craters filled with water at the top. Every few minutes a strong jet or exhalation of azotic gas takes place, accompanied with a loud, snorting sound. In ascending the Magdalena, Bonpland explored the rich botan-

ical treasures of the shore, while Humboldt drew a chart of the river district, in spite of the oppressive climate, and the tortures of the mosquitoes. At the town of Honda, they left the river, and proceeded on mules to Bogota, having been thirty-five days on the journey. In the latter place the travelers remained until September, occupying themselves with botanical and geographical researches, and with excursions to the many interesting spots in the vicinity. The most striking of these was the cascade of Tequendama, which Humboldt considers one of the most beautiful in the world. "The scenery comprises every thing which can render a view eminently picturesque: the cascade is not the highest in the world, but there is no other which combines so great a



FALLS OF TEQUENDAMA.

height with such a mass of water. The river is half the breadth of the Seine, at Paris, and precipitates itself, in two bounds, a depth of five hundred and seventy feet. In approaching the cascade, one sees around him oaks and other trees which recall the vegetation of Europe; then all at once he beholds, as from a tower, the palm, the banana, and the sugar-cane at his feet. Owing to this circumstance, the inhabitants of Bogota say that the river of Tequendama leaps at one bound from a cold to a hot climate. The appearance of the tropical vegetation at the bottom of the ravine is the more interesting to them, as they live on a table-land where the thermometer often descends to the freezing-point. The solitude of the place, the richness of the vegetation, and the frightful roar of the waters, make the foot of the cascade of Tequendama one of the wildest and most savage scenes among the Cordilleras.

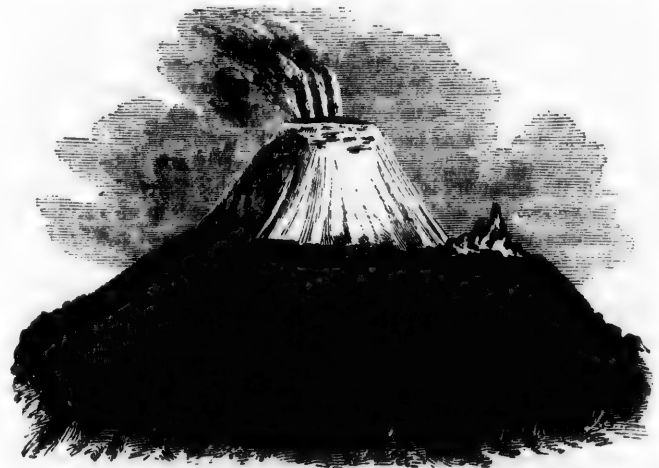
plan  
cross  
diu,  
feet  
ited  
are  
that  
elth  
or c  
carry  
tom,  
If th  
must  
self  
back  
livel  
their  
strap  
and  
horse  
run t  
they  
not h  
conse  
footed  
instru  
which  
habit  
a succ  
which  
they f  
dians  
cover  
these  
night,  
They  
Popay  
tinued  
arrived  
Bogot  
Hu  
bracin  
month  
natura  
fication

Leaving Bogota toward the end of September, Humboldt and Bonpland started on their journey to Quito, by way of Popayan. They crossed the central chain of the Andes, by the remarkable pass of Quindiu, the highest point of which is eleven thousand three hundred feet above the sea. The mountain of Quindiu is covered with uninhabited forests, and can not be passed in less than twelve days. Travelers are obliged to carry provisions for a month, because it often happens that a sudden swelling of the mountain torrents prevents them from either going backward or forward. The path in many places is a ravine, or *crevasse*, so narrow as barely to allow the passage of the oxen which carry the baggage. The light of day can scarcely penetrate to the bottom, and the obscurity is increased by the thick vegetation overhead. If the traveler meets with any of these laden animals in such a place, he must either retrace his steps, or seize hold of a stout root and draw himself up out of their reach. The rich inhabitants are transported on the backs of men, who are called *cargueros*, and follow this business for a livelihood. Like horses, they are selected according to their strength, their sureness of foot, and their easy gait. They carry a sort of chair, strapped to the shoulders, in which the traveler sits, looking backward, and easily accomplish a journey of eight or nine hours a day. Like horses, also, their backs often become sore under the saddle, and they run the same risk of being abandoned on the road if they fall sick; but they are, nevertheless, cheerful and attached to their business, which is not looked upon as degrading. Humboldt and Bonpland would not consent to use this method of transportation, but traveled on foot, barefooted, at the head of their caravan of twelve oxen, who carried their instruments and collections. The path was in a tenacious clayey soil, which made walking very fatiguing, added to which the oxen have the habit of stepping always in the same tracks, so that they gradually form a succession of deep holes, which are soon filled up with soft mud, in which the traveler sinks to his knees. It was in the rainy season, and they found the journey exceedingly laborious and fatiguing. The Indians carried with them packages of the leaves of a species of banana, covered with a resinous varnish, which is impervious to moisture. With these and some poles cut in the woods they constructed a tent every night, so that the travelers were always certain of a dry lodging-place. They finally reached the valley of the Cauca, which they ascended to Popayan, visited the snowy volcanoes of Purace and Sotara, and continued their journey, by way of the town of Pasto, to Quito, where they arrived on the 6th of January, 1802, nearly four months after leaving Bogota.

Humboldt soon recovered from the hardships of the journey, in the bracing and equable climate of Quito, and remained for nearly nine months, employed in his geological and botanical studies; his sense for natural beauty and sublime landscapes finding abundant food for gratification in the splendid landscapes of the plain of Quito, with its views



of the snowy cones of the Andes. These grand conical peaks, then supposed to be the highest in the world, tempted him to attempt the ascent of their almost inaccessible sides. He climbed to the snow-line of Coto-



THE VOLCANO OF COTOPAXI.

paxi, the highest volcano in the world, which, in the year 1738, threw up a pillar of flame a mile in height, and made its bellowings heard at the distance of five hundred miles. Finding it impossible to reach the summit, he next tried the volcano of Pichincha, lying nearer Quito, and after two unsuccessful attempts reached the crater on the 26th of May. He did not find it filled with snow, as Condamine and Bouger had done nearly seventy years before, but inflamed and preparing for an eruption, a circumstance which, on his return to Quito, filled the inhabitants with alarm. While on the summit of this volcano, Humboldt came near losing his life. While attempting to cross a deep chasm, the fragile bridge of snow gave way under him, and he was only saved by the presence of mind of an Indian, who held him on the brink, at the imminent risk of losing his own balance.

After having surmounted Pichincha, which is about fifteen thousand four hundred feet above the sea, and obtained an equal elevation on the side of Cotopaxi, Humboldt determined to make an attempt to scale Chimborazo, which was then believed to be the highest peak of the Andes.\* Accompanied by Bonpland and a young Spanish naturalist,

\* It has been since ascertained that Sorata and Illimani, in Bolivia, and the peak of Aconcagua, in Chili, are higher than Chimborazo, all of them having an altitude of over twenty-three thousand feet.

...DT.

...l peaks, then sup-  
...attempt the ascent  
...snow-line of Coto-



...year 1738, threw up  
...lowings heard at the  
...ble to reach the sum-  
...earer Quito, and after  
...he 26th of May. He  
...nd Bouger had done  
...aring for an eruption,  
...the inhabitants with  
...Humboldt came near  
...ep chasm, the fragile  
...s only saved by the  
...the brink, at the im-

...bout fifteen thousand  
...qual elevation on the  
...an attempt to scale  
...highest peak of the  
...g Spanish naturalist,  
...Bolivia, and the peak of  
...having an altitude of over

Don Carlos de Montufar, he proceeded to the table-land of Tapia, nine thousand four hundred and thirty-four feet above the level of the Pacific Ocean, and on the 22d of June commenced the expedition to Chimborazo. They followed the plain, slowly ascending, to the Indian village of Calpi, at the foot of the mountain, where they halted for the night. The next morning they started early, and began the ascent. They determined to climb the mountain from the south-south-eastern side, and the Indians who acted as guides—although few of them had ever reached the limit of the eternal snow—also gave this route the preference. The base of Chimborazo consists of great plains, rising like terraces one above the other. They first crossed the llano of Luisa, and then, after a gradual ascent of about a mile, reached that of Siagun, twelve thousand four hundred and thirty feet above the sea. Here, on the level floor of the plain, Humboldt wished to make a trigonometrical measurement, in order to ascertain the height of the summit, for which purpose he had brought along his sextants and other instruments; but the peak was shrouded in dense clouds. They then continued ascending to the little lake of Yana-Cocha, which is a circular basin of not more than one hundred and thirty feet in diameter. The sky became more and more obscured, but they had occasional glimpses of the head of Chimborazo through the openings of the clouds. Much snow had fallen during the previous night, and they were obliged to leave their mules at this point, which is considerably below the line of perpetual snow. The barometer showed that they had attained a height of fourteen thousand three hundred and fifty feet. A short distance above Yana-Cocha, the grass began to disappear, and they reached a region of naked augite rocks, which rose in columns to the height of fifty or sixty feet, and at a distance resembled trees or masts. Following these rocky pillars through the fields of snow, they finally reached a narrow ridge, or comb, running directly toward the summit, by which alone it was possible to advance; for the snow was so soft and yielding that they did not dare to walk upon it.

The path became more and more steep and narrow. The guides all left them, except one, at the height of sixteen thousand five hundred and twenty-five feet: neither threats nor persuasions would induce them to go further. They then remained alone—Humboldt, Bonpland, Carlos de Montufar, and a *mestizo* from the neighboring village of San Juan. With great labor and perseverance they continued to ascend, though they were enveloped in thick mist. The rocky comb, which the natives appropriately called a "knife-blade," was in many places not more than eight or ten inches broad. On the left was a declivity of snow, covered with a glassy coating of ice, while on the right they looked into a chasm a thousand feet deep, with immense masses of naked rock at the bottom. Nevertheless, they were obliged to incline their bodies to this side, for the snowy pitch on the left seemed even more dangerous, because there was no possibility of either arresting their descent, or of preventing them from sinking deep in the loose snows. The difficulty of ascending was

now increased by the brittle, disintegrated character of the rock. In some places they were obliged to crawl painfully on their hands and feet, which, wounded by the sharp edges, marked their path with their own blood. They marched in single file, carefully testing the stability of the rock as they proceeded—a very necessary operation, as many of the masses were lying loose on the brink. Their previous experience in climbing Pichincha, Cotopaxi, and Antisana here proved to be of great service, besides teaching them how best to husband their fast diminishing strength. As the summit was almost constantly hidden from view, they became very desirous of knowing how much remained to be ascended, and Humboldt opened the barometer at a point where the comb was broad enough to allow two persons to sit side by side. The mercury indicated a height of eighteen thousand three hundred and eighty feet, or about two hundred feet higher than they had ascended, three months previously, on the cone of Antisana, by climbing a very similar ledge. They were a little disappointed at finding themselves still so far from the point of their ambition. The temperature of the air was  $37^{\circ}$ , and that of the earth  $42^{\circ}$ .

After another hour of cautious climbing, the rocky comb became less steep, but the mist was thicker than ever. They now began, one after another, to suffer from the extreme rarefaction of the air. The tendency to vomit, combined with vertigo, was much more disagreeable than the difficulty of breathing. Their lips and gums bled profusely, and their eyelids and eyeballs were injected with blood. The mestizo suffered more than the others. They were by no means alarmed at these symptoms, which they had experienced during former ascents. Humboldt, in fact, had once fallen senseless near the summit of Pichincha, and remained in that condition for some time, until found by his guide. The belts of cloud finally parted, although the air was quite still, and they suddenly saw, apparently quite near at hand, the great dome of Chimborazo. It was a grand and solemn spectacle. The hope of soon standing upon its topmost pinnacle invigorated their strength anew. The ledge became a little broader, and they went forward with more security for a few minutes, when all at once a chasm, four hundred feet deep and sixty feet broad, yawned across their path. They distinctly saw beyond the chasm, the same ledge going forward in the same direction, but the gulf was not to be passed. They were stopped by an insurmountable obstacle, in full view of their goal. It was one o'clock in the afternoon, and they were benumbed with cold, although the temperature was no lower than  $29^{\circ}$ . The barometer indicated a height of nineteen thousand two hundred and thirty feet above the sea, and, according to Humboldt's calculation, thirteen hundred below the summit. This was the highest point to which any human being had ever ascended on the sides of the mountains. It has only been surpassed a single time since then, when Boussingault and Colonel Hall, in December, 1831, reached an elevation of

abov  
taki

As  
comme  
enabled  
mens o  
gently  
hail o  
into a  
reached  
to the  
on their  
and we  
ward C  
vapor, b  
second  
Duri  
expediti  
to pass  
not touc  
India w  
plan of

about nineteen thousand six hundred feet on the side of Chimborazo, by taking another path than that which Humboldt had chosen.



CHIMBORAZO.

As the weather became more and more thick and unfavorable, they commenced returning by means of the same narrow ridge which had enabled them to ascend. They only halted long enough to collect specimens of the rock, foreseeing that they would afterward in Europe frequently be asked for "a small piece of Chimborazo." A violent storm of hail overtook them, but fortunately changed into snow as they descended into a lower atmosphere. The storm became so dense that before they reached the spot where their mules had been left, the rocks were covered to the depth of several inches. The Indian guides were in great anxiety on their account, but before dark they reached the Indian village of Calpi, and were hospitably entertained by the priest. For several days afterward Chimborazo stood clear against the sky, unobscured by a speck of vapor, but the chasm which barred their path seemed impassable, and no second attempt was made.

During his residence in Quito, Humboldt received intelligence that the expedition under Captain Baudin had sailed to New Zealand, intending to pass homeward around the Cape of Good Hope, and would, therefore, not touch Chili or Peru. His plan of visiting the Philippine Islands and India was frustrated by this news, but he immediately formed a new plan of travel. Leaving Quito he followed the chain of the Andes, by

way of Assuay, Cuenca and Loxa, to the upper valley of the Amazon. This journey, which was very fatiguing and hazardous, was made still more difficult by the scientific instruments and the collections of plants and minerals which the travelers carried with them. On the road to Assuay, Humboldt found in the plain of Cañar, nearly sixteen thousand feet above the sea, the remains of the ancient road of the Incas, which is supposed to have led from Quito to Cuzco. It is paved with blocks of porphyry, and appeared to be fully equal to any of the ancient Roman highways. In Assuay and Cañar he found many other very interesting relics of the native Peruvian dynasty, but none which gave such an impression of its power and civilization as these roads. Near Loxa Humboldt visited the *cinchona* woods, which yield the "Peruvian bark," or quinine. "At that time," he says, "none of this valuable product found its way into commerce; all that was obtained was shipped at Payta, a port of the Pacific, and conveyed round Cape Horn to Cadiz, for the use of the Spanish court. To procure the small supply of eleven thousand Spanish pounds, no less than eight hundred or nine hundred cinchona-trees were cut down every year. The older and thicker stems are becoming more and more scarce; but, such is the luxuriance of growth that the younger trees, which now supply the demand, though measuring only six inches in diameter, frequently attain the height of from fifty-three to sixty-four feet. This beautiful tree, which is adorned with leaves five inches long and two broad, seems, when growing in the thick woods, as if striving to rise above its neighbors. The upper branches spread out, and when agitated by the wind the leaves have a peculiar reddish color and glistening appearance which is distinguishable at a great distance."

In descending to the valley of the Amazon, in the province of Jaen de Bracamoros, the travelers were obliged to ford the Rio de Guancabamba no less than twenty-seven times. The current was so strong that the heavily-laden mules, eighteen or twenty in number, were in continual danger of being carried away; and Humboldt and Bonpland suffered the greatest suspense and anxiety until the dangerous road was passed. In the lower part of the same river, they noticed a novel post for the conveyance of letters. The official communications from the Pacific coast to the valley of the Amazon are dispatched by a swimming courier, usually a young Indian, who is at home in the water. The few letters of which he is the bearer he carefully wraps in a large cotton handkerchief, which he rolls around his head in the form of a turban. On arriving at those parts of the rivers in which there are falls or rapids, he lands and goes by a circuitous route through the woods. When wearied by long-continued swimming, he rests by throwing one arm on a plank of light wood. Sometimes he takes a friend along to bear him company. Many of the wild Indian tribes who dwell on the shores of the upper Amazon, perform their journeys in a similar manner. On one occasion Humboldt saw the heads of thirty or forty individuals, men, women and children, as they floated down the river. On approaching the basin of the Amazon

he v  
the  
feet.  
T  
with  
river  
teen  
to th  
silver  
vicin  
at an  
only  
a gr  
is inh  
articl  
nothi  
town  
not th  
dice.  
quick  
lated  
had k  
of go  
Pa  
they  
neath  
square  
ancien  
many  
Inca's  
inal P  
dwelli  
ruins  
fined u  
even p  
golden  
"still  
parted  
cique,  
They l  
their h  
the fem  
traces  
The so  
sevent  
living i

y of the Amazon.  
 as, was made still  
 llections of plants  
 On the road to  
 teen thousand feet  
 mca, which is sup-  
 with blocks of por-  
 cient Roman high-  
 y interesting relics  
 such an impression  
 a Humboldt visited  
 ' or quinine. "At  
 found its way into  
 ayta, a port of the  
 for the use of the  
 n thousand Spanish  
 cinchona-trees were  
 are becoming more  
 h that the younger  
 g only six inches in  
 three to sixty-four  
 ves five inches long  
 woods, as if striving  
 read out, and when  
 dish color and glist-  
 distance."  
 province of Jaen de  
 Rio de Guancabamba  
 so strong that the  
 , were in continual  
 Bonpland suffered  
 us road was passed.  
 novel post for the  
 as from the Pacific  
 a swimming courier,  
 The few letters of  
 cotton handkerchief,  
 an. On arriving at  
 rapids, he lands and  
 en wearied by long-  
 on a plank of light  
 m company. Many  
 the upper Amazon,  
 e occasion Humboldt  
 omen and children,  
 basin of the Amazon

he was delighted with the beauty of the scenery and the luxuriance of the vegetation. The orange-trees grew to the height of sixty or seventy feet.

The travelers descended the River Chamaya on rafts, to its confluence with the Amazon, at the narrows of Rentama. They found the latter river to be fourteen hundred feet in breadth, at this point. After seventeen days spent in the hot valley of the Amazon, they ascended the Andes to the table-land of Caxamarca, stopping on the way to visit the famous silver mines of Gualgoyoc. They took up their temporary abode in the vicinity of the mines in the little mountain town of Micupampa, situated at an elevation of twelve thousand feet above the sea, and where, though only 6° 43' from the equator, water freezes within doors, at night, during a great part of the year. This wilderness, almost devoid of vegetation, is inhabited by three or four thousand persons, who are supplied with articles of food from the warm valleys, as they themselves can grow nothing but some kinds of cabbage and salad. Here, as in all the mining towns of Peru, *ennui* drives the richer inhabitants, who, however, are not the best informed class, to the dangerous diversions of cards and dice. The consequence is, that the wealth thus quickly won is still more quickly spent. Here one is continually reminded of the anecdote related of one of the soldiers of Pizarro's army, who complained that he had lost, in one night's play, "a large piece of the sun," meaning a plate of gold which he had obtained at the plunder of the temple of Cuzco.

Passing over a succession of *paramos*, or mountain deserts, where they were severely bruised by hail-storms, the travelers at last saw beneath them the fertile valley of Caxamarca, its extent of one hundred square miles watered by the windings of a beautiful little river. In the ancient town, the capital of the unfortunate Inca Atahualpa, there are many interesting remains of its former rulers. Some vestiges of the Inca's palace and fortress are still to be seen, although most of the original Peruvian buildings have been torn down to furnish material for the dwellings of their conquerors. In the town jail, which is erected on the ruins of Atahualpa's palace, the room is still shown in which he was confined until the day of his execution (August 29, 1533), and the natives even point out a mark on the wall, as indicating the height which his golden ransom reached. "Descendants of the Inca," says Humboldt, "still dwell in Caxamarca, amid the dreary architectural ruins of departed splendor. These descendants are the family of the Indian Cacique, or, as he is called in the Quichua language, the Curaca Astorpilca. They live in great poverty, but nevertheless contented, and resigned to their hard and unmerited fate. Their descent from Atahualpa, through the female line, has never been a doubtful question in Caxamarca; but traces of beard would seem to indicate some admixture of Spanish blood. The son of the Cacique Astorpilca, an amiable and interesting youth of seventeen, conducted us over the ruins of the ancient palace. Though living in the utmost poverty, his imagination was filled with visions of



the subterranean splendor and the golden treasures which, he assured us, lay hidden beneath the heaps of rubbish over which we were treading. He told us that one of his ancestors once blindfolded the eyes of his wife, and then, through many intricate passages cut in the rock, led her down into the subterranean gardens of the Inca. There the lady beheld, skillfully imitated in the purest gold, trees laden with leaves and fruit, with birds perched on their branches. Among other things she saw Atahualpa's golden sedan-chair, which had been so long searched for in vain, and which is alleged to have been sunk in the basin at the Baths of Pultamarca. The husband commanded his wife not to touch any of these enchanted treasures, reminding her that the period fixed for the restoration of the empire of the Incas had not yet arrived, and that whosoever should touch any of the treasures would perish the same night.

"The son of Astorpilca assured me that underground, a little to the right of the spot on which I then stood, there was a large datura-tree, or guanto, in full flower, exquisitely made of gold wire and plates of gold, and that its branches overspread the Inca's chair. The morbid faith with which the youth asserted his belief in this fabulous story, made a profound and melancholy impression on me. These illusions are cherished among the people here, as affording them consolation amid great privation and earthly suffering. I said to the lad, 'Since you and your parents so firmly believe in the existence of these gardens, do you not, in your poverty, sometimes feel a wish to dig for the treasures that lie so near you?' The young Peruvian's answer was so simple and so expressive of the quiet resignation peculiar to the aboriginal inhabitants of the country, that I noted it down in Spanish in my journal. 'Such a desire,' said he, 'never comes to us. My father says that it would be sinful. If we had the golden branches, with all their golden fruits, our white neighbors would hate us and injure us. We have a little field and good wheat.' Few of my readers will, I trust, be displeased that I have recalled here the words of young Astorpilca and his golden dreams."

After a stay of five or six days in Caxamarca, the travelers started for Truxillo, on the Pacific coast. Crossing the valley of the Magdalena, they ascended a steep wall of rock, five thousand feet high, from the summit of which the guides assured them, they would behold the Pacific Ocean. But a thick mist overhung the plain, and obscured the distant coast. They beheld only variously-shaped masses of rock, now rising like islands above the waving sea of mist, and now vanishing. "The desire which we feel to behold certain objects," says Humboldt, "is not excited solely by their grandeur, their beauty, or their importance. In proportion as the fulfillment of a wish may have appeared improbable, its realization affords the greater pleasure. The traveler enjoys, in anticipation, the happy moment when he shall first behold the constellation of the Cross, and the Magellanic clouds circling over the south pole; when he shall come in sight of the snow of the Chimborazo, and of the column of smoke ascending from the volcano of Quito; when, for

the  
par  
ma  
ma  
wh  
lon  
An  
boy  
Vas  
low  
isth  
reed  
held  
cann  
beho  
earli  
of th  
child  
in af  
tifo l  
"  
moun  
Guar  
denly  
and th  
of the  
Cordi  
long;  
Truxi  
paren  
the P  
an im  
bound  
panior  
prospe  
Guang  
somev  
the o  
nine t  
dred

At  
ward  
they r

the first time, he shall gaze on a grove of tree-ferns, or on the wide expanse of the Pacific Ocean. The days on which such wishes are fulfilled mark epochs in life, and create indelible impressions; exciting feelings which require not to be accounted for by any process of reasoning. The longing wish I felt to behold the Pacific from the lofty ridges of the Andes, was mingled with recollections of the interest with which, as a boy, I had dwelt on the narrative of the adventurous expedition of Vasco Nuñez de Balboa. That happy man, whose track Pizarro followed, was the first to behold, from the heights of Quarequa, on the isthmus of Panama, the eastern part of the great "South Sea." The reedy shores of the Caspian, viewed from the point whence I first beheld them, viz., from the Delta formed by the mouths of the Volga, cannot certainly be called picturesque, yet the delight I felt on first beholding them, was enhanced by the recollection that, in my very earliest childhood, I had been taught to observe, on the map, the form of the Asiatic inland sea. The impressions aroused within us in early childhood, or excited by the accidental circumstances of life frequently, in after years, take a graver direction, and become stimulants to scientific labors and great enterprises.

"After passing over many undulations of ground, on the rugged mountain ridges, we at length reached the highest point of the Alto de Guanamarcá. The sky, which had so long been obscured, now suddenly brightened. A sharp south-west breeze dispersed the veil of mist; and the dark blue canopy of heaven was seen between the narrow lines of the highest feathery clouds. The whole western declivity of the Cordilleras, covered with huge blocks of quartz thirteen or fifteen feet long; and the plains of Chala and Molinos, as far as the sea coast near Truxillo, lay extended before our eyes, with a wonderful effect of apparent proximity. We now, for the first time, commanded a view of the Pacific. We saw it distinctly; reflecting along the line of the coast an immense mass of light, and rising in immeasurable expanse until bounded by the clearly defined horizon. The delight which my companions, Bonpland and Carlos Montufar, shared with me in viewing this prospect, caused us to forget to open the barometer on the Alto de Guanamarcá. According to a calculation which we made at a place somewhat lower down, the point at which we first gained a view of the ocean must have been at no greater an elevation than between nine thousand three hundred and eighty and nine thousand six hundred feet."

#### VISIT TO MEXICO, AND RETURN TO EUROPE.

After reaching Truxillo, on the coast, the travelers proceeded southward over the barren and sandy tracts bordering the sea, to Lima, where they remained for some time, in order to observe the transit of Mercury.

Humboldt was especially fortunate in having a clear day for this purpose, at a time when fogs are prevalent in Lima. At the beginning of January, 1803, they took passage for Acapulco in the Spanish frigate *Atalanta*. On arriving at Guayaquil, they discovered that the volcano of Cotopaxi had suddenly burst into violent eruption, its explosions, resembling discharges of artillery, being distinctly heard at the former place, which was at least a hundred and fifty miles distant. The eruption was first announced to the inhabitants of Quito by the sudden disappearance of the snow from the crater of Cotopaxi, owing to the increase of internal heat. They immediately made preparations to revisit the volcano, but had not proceeded far before they were recalled by the news that the frigate was obliged to set sail immediately. After a voyage of thirty days, they arrived safely at Acapulco, where they remained for some weeks before commencing their journey to the capital. We have very few details of Humboldt's personal experiences and adventures in Mexico. His work on "New Spain" consists of an account of the political condition of the country, its statistics, its physical geography, its natural history and geology. At the time of its publication it was by far the most complete and accurate description of Mexico which had ever appeared, and in some respects has not been superseded by later works. On reaching Acapulco, Humboldt had intended to remain but a few months in Mexico, and then return to Europe, because his instruments appeared to have suffered, and he found it impossible to correct them. But he was so much pleased with the climate and scenery, and so fascinated by the new fields of investigation opened to him, that it was a year before he was willing to depart.

Toward the close of winter, the travelers left Acapulco, and proceeded, by way of Chilpanzingo and Cuernavaca to the capital, where they occupied themselves for some time in studying the interesting antiquities of the Aztecs. Humboldt was one of the first scholars who called attention to these remarkable relics, and a great portion of his "*Vues des Cordillères*" is taken up with dissertations in regard to them. In Mexico he succeeded in borrowing astronomical instruments, with which he ascertained the exact longitude of the place, which had been incorrectly given. He also visited the famous mines of Moran and Real del Monte, examined the *Desagua*, an immense artificial drain of the valley of Mexico, the pyramids of Teotihuacan, and other interesting objects in the vicinity. In July he proceeded northward, still accompanied by Bonpland, to the celebrated mining town of Guanajuato, where he devoted two months to geognostic studies, especially to the detection of ores, and then traveled southward through the valley of the Rio Santiago, to Valladolid (now Morelia) the capital of the province of Michoacan. He was greatly charmed with the little lake of Pascuaro, and the scenery in its vicinity, which, he declared, would alone repay the traveler for his voyage across the ocean. His interest in the phenomena of volcanoes led him to the plains of Jorullo, near the Pacific Ocean, where, in the year 1759, a volca-

nic  
whi  
vols  
exh  
port  
hoo  
the  
jag  
of tv

I  
city  
east  
metr  
and  
baro  
distr  
of on  
route  
trave  
trigon  
fortun  
there  
latter  
been  
month  
a viol  
reach  
Humb  
ing hi  
public  
was t  
grow  
scient  
celebr  
Borde  
from

Th  
with  
• T  
ing the  
slightly  
hundre  
North

day for this pur-  
the beginning of  
e Spanish frigate  
that the volcano  
on, its explosions,  
ard at the former  
ant. The eruption  
the sudden disap-  
ing to the increase  
ons to revisit the  
e recalled by the  
diately. After a  
co, where they re-  
ney to the capital.  
periences and ad-  
sists of an account  
ts physical geogra-  
f its publication it  
n of Mexico which  
een superseded by  
intended to remain  
urope, because his  
d it impossible to  
climate and scenery,  
pened to him, that

pulco, and proceed-  
capital, where they  
eresting antiquities  
rs who called atten-  
his "*Vues des Cor-*  
nem. In Mexico he  
ith which he ascer-  
n incorrectly given.  
el Monte, examined  
lley of Mexico, the  
ects in the vicinity.  
y Bonpland, to the  
evoted two months  
ores, and then trav-  
tiago, to Valladolid  
an. He was greatly  
enery in its vicinity,  
for his voyage across  
noes led him to the  
he year 1759, a volca-

nic cone, sixteen hundred feet high, was formed in a single night, on a spot which had previously been perfectly level. The plain surrounding this volcano is covered with several thousand diminutive basaltic cones, which exhale a thick vapor through their vent-holes and communicate an insupportable heat to the surrounding air. Owing to this cause, the neighborhood is very unhealthy, but the travelers were not deterred from threading the Tartarean labyrinth, and ascending the volcano, by climbing over the jagged surfaces of the streams of lava. They even descended a distance of two hundred and fifty feet into the cone, which is constantly burning.

In January, 1804, Humboldt and Bonpland took a final leave of the city of Mexico, and started on a tour among the Cordilleras, along the eastern border of the table-land. The former ascertained, by trigonometrical measurement, the height of the snowy peaks of Popocatepetl and Iztaccihuatl, and examined the pyramid of Cholula. He made a barometrical survey of the road from Mexico to Vera Cruz, which, in the district between Perote and Jalapa—then an almost impenetrable forest of oak and fir-trees—was thrice repeated, enabling him to locate the route for the fine post-road which has since been constructed. The travelers also ascended the peak of Cofre de Perote, and measured, by trigonometry, the height of Orizaba.\* Reaching Vera Cruz, they were fortunate enough to escape the yellow-fever, which was then raging there, and to obtain a passage for Havana in a Spanish frigate. At the latter place they took possession of the important collections which had been left there three years previously, and after a stay of nearly two months, took passage for Philadelphia in an American vessel. They had a violent storm, which lasted seven days, in the Bahama Channel, but reached their destination safely after a voyage of thirty-two days. As Humboldt remained but six or seven weeks in the United States, devoting his time principally to the study of their political condition, he has published no account of his visit. He traveled to Washington, which was then a mere village, but which, nevertheless, he thought, would grow into a more imposing city than Mexico. He associated with the scientific society of Philadelphia, which was at that time deservedly celebrated; he visited New York, and finally, in July, 1804, sailed for Bordeaux, where he arrived in the following month, having been absent from Europe more than five years.

#### PUBLICATION OF HIS WORKS.

This journey, planned with so much zeal and courage, prosecuted with so much perseverance and industry, and carried on to so triumph-

\* This mountain was ascended for the first time by a party of American officers during the late war. They found, by barometrical measurement, that its height had been slightly under-estimated by Humboldt, and that it was, in reality, between two and three hundred feet higher than Popocatepetl, hitherto considered the highest mountain on the North American Continent.

ant a completion, produced a great sensation in the scientific world. In the words of Professor Klencke, "It was not only unexampled as the execution of the most magnificent undertaking of a German citizen; it was not only perfectly disinterested, and a sacrifice made solely to the interests of science; people admired not alone the courageous determination, the persevering force, the industry, the intellectual capacities and inquiring talent of Humboldt's personality, but the gradually revealed results of his journey to the equinoctial regions of the new continent became of such universal importance in all branches of human science and commerce, in its influence on a new system of science even—nay, also on the political improvements of the country traversed—that Humboldt was hailed in Europe as a second Columbus." Wilhelm von Humboldt was at the time residing in Rome, but his wife was in Paris with her children. A report had reached Europe that the travelers had fallen victims to the yellow-fever previous to their departure from Havana, and this report was very generally believed. The dispatch, which brought the intelligence of their arrival at Bordeaux to the National Institute of France, was immediately forwarded by the secretary to Madam von Humboldt, whose surprise and joy on meeting with her brother-in-law was equal to his own on seeing her so much sooner than he had anticipated. On reaching Paris, Humboldt immediately set about arranging his collections, and preparing the materials he had gathered for the publication of a grand scientific work. He was still assisted by his friend Bonpland, and by the sympathy and encouragement of all the *savans* of the capital, among whom were Cuvier, Gay-Lussac, Arago, and Laplace.

In the spring of 1805 he accompanied his sister-in-law to Rome, and spent part of the ensuing summer at Albano, with his brother Wilhelm. Their society was at that time still further enriched by the presence of Madame de Stael, Schlegel, and Sismondi. An anticipated eruption of Vesuvius led him to Naples, in company with Gay-Lussac, and he was fortunate in being able to witness the grand outbreak of the 12th of August. After completing his observations he proceeded to Berlin, and did not return to Paris until 1807, when he established himself there permanently, to superintend the publication of his works. But the fruits of his journey were so considerable, so varied, and entering into so many spheres of science, his studies and collections were so exciting for further research and comparison, that he was obliged to unite with other scholars, and allow them to complete, in a more especial manner, the various branches of his undertaking. "The most eminent men of the age," says Klencke, "considered it an honor to be engaged as fellow-laborers in this gigantic work; they emulated each other in the sterling value of the contents, and the most accurate adaptation of the material afforded them. Artists and artisans strove to make the artistic contributions—the atlas, the landscapes, the typographical execution—as perfect and brilliant as possible." The work was originally written in French, and portions of it have not yet been translated into the author's native lan-



guage. It is rather a series of detached works, treating of special branches of science, than a single connected work, and some idea of the magnitude of the undertaking may be obtained from the fact that at the end of forty years from the publication of the first portion, it was not complete. Indeed, it may still be considered as incomplete, although incomparably the grandest work of the kind which has ever appeared. In 1844, the cost of a single copy of the folio edition was about \$2,000, and the printing, paper, and copper-plates alone had occasioned an expenditure of \$160,000, much of which was contributed by Humboldt from his own private resources.

In the year 1810 he visited Vienna, where his brother Wilhelm was residing as Prussian ambassador. Although but four or five volumes of his work were published, he had already conceived the idea of making a second great journey to Central Asia and Thibet. The Russian minister, Romanow, had proposed to him to accompany a mission which was to proceed through Independent Tartary to Cashgar, on the western frontier of Thibet, and he at once accepted the offer. This plan, which was to be put in execution in the year 1812, met with an unexpected obstacle in the war between Russia and France. Although his proposed journey was frustrated for the time, he did not relinquish the hope of carrying it out at some future day; and with this view, after his return to Paris, occupied himself for some years with the study of the Persian language, so that he might, at his own expense, proceed to India by way of Teheran and Herat. He gained so accurate a knowledge of the structure of the Asiatic mountain chains from literary sources that he was able to give critical judgments on the explorers who had traveled to the Hiraalaya mountains. The French government had, in the interests of science, proffered its assistance to the execution of this plan, and even the King of Prussia, when he was at Aix-la-Chapelle in 1818, granted Humboldt an annual sum of 12,000 thalers (\$6,500) and the expense of preparing the expedition for the journey to Asia; but, for some reason or other, which has not been explained, the plan was never carried out.

In the year 1818, Humboldt and Bonpland, after sharing each other's fortunes for twenty years, separated forever. The latter, who had been appointed superintendent of the gardens at Malmaison by Napoleon, became weary of France after the downfall of the empire, and accepted an appointment as Professor of Natural History at Buenos Ayres. After his departure from Europe nothing was heard of him for a long time, but the news came at last that he had been seized by the orders of Francia, the Dictator of Paraguay, while visiting an Indian colony on the shores of the river Paraná. Francia was incensed at Bonpland for his efforts to establish the tea culture within the Brazilian territories, for the tea-plant is peculiar to Paraguay, and forms one of the staple productions of the country. Bonpland was not deprived of his personal liberty, and was allowed to practice as a physician. When the news of this outrage reached Humboldt, he was unremitting in his endeavors to enlist the in-



fluence of the governments of France and Spain in Bonpland's favor; but Paraguay was entirely beyond their reach. After a detention of nine years, Bonpland was released and returned to Buenos Ayres.\*

After his visit to England in 1818, and his consultations with the King of Prussia at Aix-la-Chapelle, in October and November of the same year, Humboldt returned to Paris, where he remained until 1822, when he again joined the king at Verona, and accompanied him on his journey to Venice, Rome, and Naples. They also returned together to Berlin, where Humboldt spent some months with his brother. He did not, however, take up his permanent residence in Berlin until May, 1827, contenting himself with an annual visit to Paris, to superintend the progress of his great work. In the autumn of the same year, at the suggestion of his brother, Schlegel, and in fact, of all the scholars and naturalists of Berlin, he consented to give a course of public lectures on physical cosmography. The character of these lectures and the sensation they produced, is thus described by Professor Klencke:—"As he had before done in Paris, in the French language, Humboldt now, in his native tongue, gave the rich fruits of his researches to the public, in a course of lectures delivered before a select but numerous assemblage. He enchanted his hearers by the peculiar force of his intellectual clearness, by his eloquence, the genuineness and warmth of his feelings, and the inexhaustible novelty of his subject. He stood before them as a convincing, inspiring teacher, who, like an artist, displayed the wonderful pictures of a newly-explored world to their view. This course of sixty-one lectures, commenced on the 3d of November, and concluded on the 26th of April, 1828, was, as it were, the first sketch of the "Kosmos," published subsequently as the compact result of his life and studies. When some of the first lectures had been delivered, the press of people from all ranks was so great that Humboldt was literally forced to give a repetition of the first course, adapted for a more general public, nearly cotemporary with the others, in the large hall of the Musical Academy. These popular lectures were eagerly visited by the highest and most learned persons in the capital. The king, the royal family, the court, the highest lords and ladies, attended regularly and listened with the people, who showed their pride in the celebrated man by their enthusiastic admiration."

#### JOURNEY THROUGH RUSSIA, SIBERIA, AND TARTARY.

Humboldt was urged to publish these lectures, and prepared to comply, but his plans were unexpectedly changed. The illness and death of his sister-in-law drew him away from his studies for a time, but the sub-

\* Bonpland appears to have voluntarily returned to Paraguay soon afterward, and to have devoted himself to establishing plantations. He never relinquished the idea of returning to Europe, but lingered year after year, and finally died there, quite recently, at a very advanced age.

ject which soon demanded all of his attention was the renewal of the former plan of a grand scientific exploration of Central Asia. The original plan, which was warmly encouraged by the governments of France and Prussia, had been entirely given up, after Humboldt had cherished it for years. But in December, 1827, the Emperor Nicholas invited him to make an extended exploration of the mining districts of the Ural mountains, the territories bordering on China and Tartary, and the shores of the Caspian Sea, at the expense of the Russian government. Humboldt accepted the offer with joy, but asked leave to postpone the preparation for the journey until he had completed the public lectures on which he was at that time engaged. The emperor granted his request, and left him at liberty to choose the localities he was to explore, and to prosecute the journey in such a manner as would best advance the interests of science, always considering the advantages which the Russian government might draw from a development of the mining capabilities of the country, as merely of secondary importance.

In the year 1828, the preparations for the journey were made, plans were laid, and arrangements entered into with other naturalists, whom he was allowed to select as his companions. He communicated with Gustav Rose and G. Ehrenberg, two naturalists living in Berlin, who consented to accompany him on his projected expedition. Each of the three travelers had a special branch of activity allotted to him. Humboldt undertook the observations on magnetism, the results of geographical astronomy, and the general preparation of the geognostic and physical plan of north-western Asia. G. Rose was to make the chemical analyses of minerals, and keep the traveling diary, while the botanical and zoological labors fell to Ehrenberg's share.

On the 12th of April, 1829, the three travelers left Berlin for St. Petersburg, where they arrived on the 1st of May. The Russian Minister of Finance, Count Cancrin, had made ample arrangements for their comfort and security, and for facilitating their expedition. Carriages were prepared, a courier was selected, horses were engaged to be held in readiness at the stations along the route, houses were everywhere to be placed at their disposal, and military escorts provided, where proximity to the frontiers made their protection necessary. A Russian mining officer, Menschenin, afterward Inspector of Mines, was appointed as Humboldt's constant companion, to give him every information in regard to ways and localities, and to levy the necessary assistance from the Russian authorities.

Thus prepared, and furnished with all the comforts of Russian hospitality, they left St. Petersburg on the 20th of May, and proceeded rapidly over the broad highway to Moscow. After a few days spent here in making barometrical observations, and in examining the geological productions of the country, they continued their journey toward the Ural, advancing more slowly over the indifferent roads of the marshy lands that occupy a portion of that level region. They arrived at Nish-

T.

pland's favor;  
tention of nine  
res.\*

with the King  
r of the same  
til 1822, when  
on his journey  
ther to Berlin,  
He did not,

May, 1827, con-  
and the progress  
e suggestion of  
d naturalists of  
on physical cos-  
sation they pro-  
had before done

native tongue,  
course of lectures  
e enchanted his  
by his eloquence,  
naustible novelty  
nspiring teacher,  
a newly-explored  
, commenced on  
ril, 1828, was, as  
sequently as the  
the first lectures  
was so great that  
the first course,  
with the others,  
lar lectures were  
ns in the capital.  
ds and ladies, at-  
owed their pride

D TARTARY.

prepared to com-  
ness and death of  
ime, but the sub-

soon afterward, and  
nquished the idea of  
there, quite recently,

ni (Lower) Novgorod, on the Volga, by the last of May. Here they met with Count Polier, the proprietor of some mining estates in the Ural, who was traveling thither with a few scientific gentlemen, and who accordingly accompanied them into that region. They embarked on the Volga and reached Kasan on the 4th of June. Kasan was for three centuries the seat of an independent Tartar Khanate, which was overturned in 1552. The suburbs of the town were still inhabited by Tartars, whose *Medacheds* or temples were visited by the travelers. On entering the sacred edifices the guides took off their slippers, although they permitted the visitors to wear their boots. From Kasan they made an excursion down the Volga to the interesting ruins of Bulgar, the capital of the ancient Bulgaria, which flourished from the seventh to the thirteenth century. As they approached the modern village, the whole population came forth to meet them in groups of men, women, and children, and the oldest inhabitants, who led the groups, offered bread and salt to Humboldt, in token of reverence, according to the Russian custom. The walls of a few edifices, two towers, and several tombstones bearing monumental inscriptions in Turkish, Arabic, and Armenian, which mostly dated from the year 623 of the Hedjira, or, A. D. 1226, were the principal remains which the travelers found of the ancient capital. Many silver and copper coins, copper rings, and trinkets, were still found among the rubbish. The tombs of Tartar saints were still objects of pilgrimages for the faithful. A Tartar Mollah was performing his devotions among the ruins, by repeating a form of prayer and frequently bowing his body, without allowing the presence of the travelers to disturb him. As the ruins were some distance apart, he availed himself of a seat in their carriage, and rode with them to all the ruins, always arranging it so that he had performed his devotional exercises before they were through with their examinations. At Kasan they witnessed a rural festival of the Tartars, called the *Saban*, which is celebrated annually after seed-time. The sports consisted in wrestling, running, and horse-racing.

Leaving Kasan on the 9th, they passed through a district inhabited by the *Wotjaks*, a branch of the Finnish family, who had embraced the Christian religion, and adopted the Russian language, while they still retained their primitive costumes. The women wore high caps, made of birch-bark covered with blue cloth, and hung with silver coins and red fringes. They spent the 12th at Werchne (Upper) Mulinsk, on Count Polier's estate, where he entertained them hospitably, after which he accompanied them on their expedition beyond Jekatharinenburg. When they came to the valleys in the outskirts of the Ural, on the 14th of June, they were delighted with the sudden appearance of spring. Three weeks before, they had left the Nevs in ice, and now all the plants were in full bloom, covering the ground with a profusion of rare and beautiful flowers. On the 15th, they arrived at Jekatharinenburg, situated among the mountains on the Asiatic side of the Ural ridge, in

one  
bro  
min  
as fi  
per,  
trac  
fami  
ness  
the t  
Gora  
super  
platin  
Ural  
visite  
godas  
sian  
burne  
itants  
the R  
H  
analog  
now h  
platin  
the as  
coveri  
gold a  
hope.  
in the  
with d  
their  
sojour  
the vi  
a little  
Ural.  
On  
works  
mount  
from t  
were  
tively  
countr  
luxuria  
and m  
protec  
tea, or  
in ama

one of the richest mineral regions of the continent. They visited Schabrowski, Beresowsk, and other gold mines in the vicinity, the rich copper mines of Gumeschewskoi, and then extended their excursions northward as far as Nishni Tagilsk, into a district abounding in gold, platina, copper, iron, and precious stones. Nishni Tagilsk, with a surrounding tract of eight thousand square versts, is a possession of the Demidoff family, and is scarcely surpassed by any place in the world in the richness and variety of mineral productions in its immediate vicinity. Near the town is the celebrated mountain of magnetic iron, called Wissokaja Gora, whose excellent ores supply numerous furnaces, while copper of a superior quality is found in large quantities, and rich fields of gold and platina abound, the latter far surpassing in richness all others in the Ural mountains. Near the imperial iron works of Kuschwinsk, they visited another remarkable mountain of magnetic iron, called Gora Blagodät (the Blessed Mountain), which was discovered to the early Russian settlers by a *Wogul* named Tschumpkin. For this act he was burned alive upon the mountain by his countrymen, the primitive inhabitants. A monument stands on the summit, erected to his memory by the Russians.

Humboldt's attention had already been called to the remarkable analogy in the grouping of minerals in various parts of the world, and now he was struck with the resemblance of this region to the gold and platina districts of Brazil, which also produce diamonds. This idea of the association of minerals awakened in him the strongest hope of discovering diamonds in the Ural mountains, and on every occasion of gold and platina washing, the sand was microscopically examined in this hope. In this manner they found many minerals heretofore unknown in the Ural mountains, among them crystals which in Brazil are found with diamonds, although they were not successful in the main object of their search. Humboldt's theory was confirmed, however, during his sojourn in this region, for diamonds were found by Count Polier, in the vicinity of Bittersk, a few days after he parted from him, and in a little while others were discovered in various places in the northern Ural.

On the 1st of July they left Kuschwinsk, and proceeded by the iron works of Nishni Turinsk to the copper mines of Bogoslawsk. Here the mountains were higher, and the side-branches, extending at right angles from the main ridge, spread over a wider extent of territory. The forests were dense, and the indifferent roads, which render this region comparatively inaccessible, greatly hindered them in their investigations. The country was rich in plants and flowers, as well as in minerals, and the luxuriant growth of juicy vegetation produced myriads of stinging gnats and mosquitoes, which greatly annoyed the travelers. The inhabitants protect themselves from these pests by a net sprinkled with birch-bark tea, or by the smoke of decayed wood, or fungi, which they carry ignited in small earthen vessels upon their backs.

The scenery around Bogoslowak was magnificent. Over the broad plain, lying eastward, the view was almost unbounded; while on the west and north the mountains rose in majestic grandeur. The principal range was forty or fifty miles distant, and its snow-covered peaks stood out in bold relief above the dark forests of pine and fir which covered the intervening heights. They visited the mines of copper, iron, and gold in this district, and returned by Mursinsk, rich in precious stones, to Jekatharinenberg, where they arrived on the 11th, after an absence of sixteen days. In a week they had prepared and arranged the mass of materials they had collected, when they set out for Tobolsk, and reached that city on the 21st.

Tobolsk had been the eastern limit of the expedition in Humboldt's original plan; but the ease and promptness with which they had accomplished the journey in the northern Ural, induced him to extend the journey to the Altai, that he might become acquainted with these important mountains by personal observation. The plan being approved by the authorities, they completed their arrangements, and in two days were again upon the road. The intervening region consists mostly of steppes, which, although traversed by a few roads, upon which villages are here and there established at the stations, are generally barren and uncultivated. They ascended the Irtysh to Tatmytakaja, then crossed over in a south-easterly direction to the waters of the Om, and continued their route eastwardly, near its banks, across the fearful steppe of Barabinski. This great steppe, which embraces the whole space between the rivers Irtysh and Obi, is not dry and arid, as the steppes are usually supposed to be, but well supplied with lakes, marshes, and flowing streams. Many of the lakes contain salt water, and the earth itself is in some places impregnated with salt. Here and there a spot of rich vegetation appears, and occasionally a few poplars or birch-trees relieve the monotonous level. Over the marshy ground the road was frequently bridged in long courses, but as these improvements were in a bad condition, the traveling upon them was very tedious. Another annoyance was even less endurable than this; they were attacked by swarms of stinging gnats and flies, which preyed upon them unceasingly. This vexing pest, with the jolting of the carriage, occasioned a serious loss to Humboldt in the breaking of a large barometer, though its place was partially supplied by a lighter one. At Kainsk, in the middle of the steppe, they received the alarming intelligence that the Siberian pestilence was raging in all the villages before them on the way to Tomsk. This terrible disease prevails at first among the cattle, and from them extends to human beings, especially upon the plains, never among the mountains. The travelers held a consultation, and as it was impracticable to reach the Altai region by any other route, if they should retrace their steps, at least within the limits of their plan, they resolved, at all hazards, to continue their journey, with the precaution—as the disease was represented to be contagious—to avoid all contact with the peasants

amo  
thro  
day  
alrea  
num  
was  
mate  
atmo  
them  
they  
morn  
Tobol  
TI  
stepp  
of the  
princi  
is silv  
contin  
averag  
thousa  
eighty  
pound  
the Al  
yieldin  
the Me  
Lea  
ed to c  
the mi  
towska  
silver  
the ex  
or Ser  
found  
ores, o  
iron an  
August  
Irtysh  
opport  
sacks, y  
place, y  
anowsk  
the Alt  
of these  
the Sto  
closing  
summit



among whom it prevailed. There were many deaths in the villages through which they passed; in Karganskaja six persons had died on the day before their arrival, and in the same village five hundred horses had already perished, so that the expedition had difficulty in procuring the number requisite for their conveyance. In every village a small hospital was established; and on the outskirts of each, fires of dry turf and materials affording abundance of smoke, were kindled to purify the atmosphere. As they approached the Obi, and left the steppe behind them, all traces of the disease disappeared. Crossing the Obi at Bergak, they proceeded in a southerly direction, and reached Barnaul on the morning of August 2d, having traveled one thousand miles since leaving Tobolsk.

The city of Barnaul, on the Obi, although on the borders of the steppe, is the central point of the Altaian mining interests, being the seat of the controlling authorities of the whole region, and the location of the principal smelting furnaces. The most important product of the Altai is silver, of which the yield is greater than that of any other part of the continent. For more than a half century before Humboldt's visit, the average annual product was nearly seventy thousand marks, or forty thousand pounds. In the same time the mines yielded four hundred and eighty thousand pounds of copper, and about eight hundred thousand pounds of lead annually. Although the quantity of silver produced by the Altai is so great, the ore from which it is obtained is very poor, yielding an average of only four per cent., while the average product of the Mexican ores ranges from eighteen to twenty-five per cent.

Leaving Barnaul on the 4th, Humboldt and his companions proceeded to carry out the plan he had projected of an extensive tour through the mining regions. Going southward they crossed the steppe of Platowskaja to the upper districts of the Obi, where they visited the rich silver mines of Smejenskaja Gora, of Riddersk and its vicinity, and the extensive porphyry works of Kolyvansk. The Smejenskaja Gora, or Serpent Mountain—so called from the great number of serpents found upon it, when it was first discovered—consists almost entirely of ores, of which the most important is silver. Copper, lead, zinc, and iron are also produced in considerable quantities. On the 13th of August, they had advanced as far as Ustkamenogorsk, a fortress on the Irtysh, toward the frontiers of Chinese Mongolia. Here they had an opportunity of witnessing the admirable military exercises of the Cossacks, who were stationed at this post. Leaving their baggage at this place, they continued their tour to the gold and silver mines of Syranowsk, on the south-western side of the Cholsun and Katunja ranges of the Altai mountains. Beyond Syranowsk the travelers had distant views of these mountains. Thirty miles distant rose the numerous peaks of the Stolbrowucha, already covered with snow, and further eastward, closing the long vista of the valley of Beresowska, stood the untrodden summit of Bjelucha, the loftiest peak of the Altai. The view of these



snow-covered mountains awakened in Humboldt and his companions a desire to penetrate further into that interesting region, but the lateness of the season and the plans already laid, warned them to desist.

They were now so near the boundary of China, that Humboldt wished to pass over to Bati, or Khonimailakhù, the nearest Chinese-Mongolian post, situated on the Irtysh, below Lake Saissan. He had made known his wishes at Buchtarminsk, the upper Russian post on the river, and a Cossack had been sent thither to announce his visit. When they arrived, they found two tents prepared for them, which they occupied during their stay. There were two stations at this post, one on the left bank of the river, occupied by Mongolian troops, the other on the right, by Chinese; both commanded by Chinese officers. They lived in the small round tents, or *Jurten*, of the Khirgises, which were irregularly disposed. Humboldt first visited the commander of the Chinese, who came out before his tent to meet them, followed by two attendants. He was a young man, tall and thin, wore a blue silk coat which reached to the ankles, and carried several peacock feathers in his cap, denoting his rank. After a ceremonious introduction, questions and answers were exchanged through the interpreters, by which they learned that he was directly from Pekin, that he had made the journey in four months on horseback, and that the commanders were changed every three years. After a similar visit to the commanding officer of the Mongolians, who was less communicative, they visited the temple, a small, square, wooden building, containing an altar opposite the door, and the picture of an idol of the Buddhistic worship hanging upon the wall above the altar. A wall stood between the door and the river, near which was another altar with burning coals upon it. On returning to their tents they received a visit from the first commander and his attendants, who took out their pipes and began to smoke, after inviting their hosts to do likewise. Gifts were ceremoniously exchanged, when Humboldt received some Chinese books. The officer expressed great delight when Humboldt told him he had a brother who was interested in the Chinese language, to whom he would take them. These books, which are in the royal library at Berlin, contain a historical romance in four volumes, called *Sankuetshi*, the subject of which is the history of the three kingdoms, into which China was divided after the *Han* dynasty, and which was the subject of the literary dispute between Klaproth and Professor Neumann of Munich. The troops consisted of eighty men. They wore long coats of different colors, and they were very dirty, and very lean. They greatly admired the corpulency of one of Humboldt's company. A few camels were seen about the tents, a flock of goats, and some sheep with enormous tails.

The return to Ustkamenogorsk was highly interesting to Humboldt for its geological value, and was suggestive of new researches; for as he was sailing down the Irtysh he saw on the secluded shores of these waters, over a surface of more than sixteen thousand feet, immense rocks

of g  
who  
deg  
of th  
step  
the f  
ing  
milit  
vals  
ed al  
Sea.  
tary  
ing t  
carav  
as far  
two d  
school  
ed the  
and ca  
Mi  
most p  
spent t  
the mi  
around  
Uri, th  
in its  
village  
life, an  
Uial at  
tensive  
ney he  
Khirgis  
conside  
came to  
line, an  
middle  
burg, w  
and the  
Govern  
Gens, v  
dle Asi  
obtaine  
gratify  
sage to  
the neig

of granite lying horizontally and in layers, and resting on clay slate, whose layers were partly perpendicular, partly at an angle of eighty-five degrees. This was a highly important fact for Humboldt in his theory of the formation of granite.

Their next route was down the Irtysh and westward across the steppe of Ischim, to the southern portion of the Ural chain, passing along the frontiers of the Middle Horde of Khirgises, a nomadic tribe inhabiting the steppes between the Irtysh and the Ural river. A line of military posts, consisting of small villages more or less fortified, at intervals of twenty or thirty versts, and garrisoned by Cossacks, is established along the whole boundary, from the Chinese frontier to the Caspian Sea. Humboldt and his companions left Ustkamenogorsk under a military escort of Cossacks, which was relieved from post to post, and passing through Semipalatinsk, a place of considerable importance in the caravan trade with middle Asia, they followed the course of the Irtysh as far as Omsk, where they arrived on the 25th. After remaining here two days, in which they visited the Cossack, military, and Asiatic schools, and made their usual observations, they left the river and crossed the steppe by way of Petropaulowsk and the trading town of Troitsk, and came to Miask on the 3d of September.

Miask is a mining city of considerable importance, situated in the most productive mineral district of the southern Ural range. Here they spent two weeks, making frequent excursions to the gold washings and the mines of the vicinity, to the Ilmen mountains, and to the mines around Slatoust. Then proceeding southward to the head waters of the Uri, they climbed the Auschkul mountain, and examined several mines in its neighborhood. On the way thither, they passed some deserted villages of the Bashkirs, the owners spending the summer in a nomadic life, and returning to their houses for the winter only. At Orsk, on the Ural at the junction of the Or, Humboldt stopped to examine the extensive quarries of green jasper near that place. On continuing his journey he was furnished with a guard of Cossacks as a defense against the Khirgises, for that portion of the line, between Orsk and Orenburg, was considered the most dangerous on the whole frontier. On the 21st they came to Orenburg, the capital of the district, the main fortress on the line, and the center of a flourishing caravan trade to various places in middle Asia. What most interested Humboldt in the vicinity of Orenburg, was the great salt works of Ilezk, on the steppe between the Ural and the Ile, forty-five miles south of the city. In the absence of the Governor-General, the travelers were entertained by Major-General Gens, whose knowledge of the geography and political condition of middle Asia, greatly interested Humboldt. He had a fund of information obtained from caravans and from personal observation. In order to gratify Humboldt's desire to see more of the Khirgises, he sent a message to the nearest sultan, requesting him to come with his subjects into the neighborhood, and exhibit their skill in some of their accustomed

games and sports. Accordingly a large number appeared, and raised their tents a few versts from the city, after which the sultan came in person to visit Humboldt and General Gens.

As they drove to the encampment, they had occasion to admire the skill of the Khirgises, many of whom rode around the carriage at full gallop, resting with their hands upon the horses' backs and their feet in the air. Having arrived at the tents they were first introduced to the sultan's wives, who were seated in a row in his tent, and then the sports began. The first was horse-racing. The participants rode off to a place seven versts distant, whence they were to ride back to the tents as their goal. Meanwhile other games were introduced. Two Khirgises entered a circle, formed by the spectators, to wrestle. Casting off their outer garments, each threw his leathern girdle over the other, and thus they struggled to throw each other to the ground. The victor remained in the ring until thrown by a new antagonist. One distinguished himself by throwing six in succession, but was vanquished by the seventh. Then a large kettle was brought out, half filled with boiled groats. Into this General Gens threw a silver ruble, which the Khirgises attempted to take out with their teeth. When several rubles had been successively picked out in this manner, and a still greater number of Khirgises had ludicrously besmeared their heads and shoulders in vain, the sport was changed, and now the musicians appeared. The first were men, who begun to sing in long-drawn tones, frightfully distorting their faces the while. There was no trace of melody in their song, although they were themselves so enraptured with it that it was almost impossible to persuade them to stop. When they had finished, a female, completely veiled, entered the circle, and sang in the same manner as the men. Then two others entered and sang a duet, standing with their faces close together, and raising their veils so that they could see each other, and also allow the spectators to obtain a side view, which they did not seem to take amiss. They were interrupted by the intelligence that the horsemen were coming, whereupon the spectators gave way, aided by the whips of the overseers. A boy won the prize, which was a gold embroidered cloak, the others receiving smaller presents. Foot-racing was the next performance. From the starting-point to the tent was about a mile, which the winner ran through in the short space of three minutes. Here the first prize was a silver ruble, the rest were pieces of cotton cloth and smaller presents. When the sports were ended the travelers returned to the city, and prepared for their departure on the morrow.

On leaving Orenburg, they resolved to pass around to the northward of the great sandy steppes of Rynpeski, which lies between the Ural and the Volga, and is inhabited by wandering tribes of Cossacks, Khirgises of the Inner Horde, and Calmucks; but as Humboldt wished to see Uralsk, the chief city of the Uralian Cossacks, they first descended the Ural to that place. They arrived on the 27th, and remained a day to see the autumnal fishing, and other industrial operations of the people.

The  
to  
occur  
being  
war  
them  
foun  
and  
in la  
a nu  
Sarat  
of El  
in the  
its ex  
lake,  
birds,  
these  
Fu  
breth  
their c  
Volga  
people  
one of  
stood u  
the Ca  
used by  
gible t  
cloth,  
for the  
but wa  
ing of  
these f  
temple  
and, h  
gilded  
upon t  
cheese  
door an  
chief p  
remote  
the str  
frightfu  
lama ar  
whom t  
Hun  
arrived

The prosperity of the Cossacks of the Ural (or Jaik), is mainly owing to the productive fisheries of the Ural river, which, next to military occupations, furnish their chief employment; pasturage and agriculture being but secondary. From Uralsk the travelers turned north-eastwardly across the mountain steppe of Obschtschei Syrt, to Busuluk, thence westwardly to the Volga at Samara. In this region Humboldt found numerous sulphur springs, and waters impregnated with asphalt and with salt; while in many places sulphur is obtained from the earth in large quantities. As they descended the Volga, they passed through a number of German colonies on the banks of the river, above and below Saratoff. From Dubowka they made an excursion to the large salt-lake of Elton—called *Altan Nor*, the Golden Lake, by the Cossacks—situated in the steppe, seventy miles eastward of the Volga, and celebrated for its extensive manufactories of salt. While examining the waters of the lake, they found large quantities of insects of various kinds, and even birds, which, having fallen into the lake, were well preserved, and from these Ehrenberg made a good collection of the fauna of the region.

Further down the river, at Sarepta, they found a colony of Moravian brethren, established in 1765, who carried on a considerable traffic, in their own manufactures, with the Cossacks. In the lower districts of the Volga they frequently passed the *kibitkas* of the Calmucks, and met the people with their herds of horses, sheep and camels. They also passed one of the temples, in the entrance of which a number of long sticks stood upright with written prayers fastened upon them. The prayers of the Calmucks are all written in the Thibetan language, which is always used by the priests in their religious rites, although it is quite unintelligible to the people. They are usually written on long strips of cotton cloth, which are fastened to long sticks that they may be easily agitated, for the prayers are not read or repeated by the priests in their worship, but waved as flags by the wind, as the Calmucks believe that the moving of the written prayers is just as effectual as repeating them. By these fluttering prayers and the noisy music that proceeded from the temple, the travelers knew that the Cossacks were at worship within, and, having a desire to see them, they entered. Upon the altar stood gilded figures of their idols, while glaring pictures of idols hung upon the walls. Several basins containing fruit, water, dried flesh, cheese and other offerings, were placed before the altar. Between the door and the altar six priests sat face to face upon the floor, the *lama* or chief priest being nearest the altar, the *gellongs* or inferior priests more remote. They were playing upon a variety of instruments, producing the strange noise which was heard without. The music, or rather the frightful uproar, alternated with a song of like character. At length the *lama* arose, the music ceased, and the priests then spoke to the travelers, whom they had not before heeded.

Humboldt was received with great honor at Astrachan. When he arrived at the ferry on the afternoon of October 12th, a steamboat, sent

by the Governor-General Osmipoff, was waiting for him and his companions, and amid the firing of cannon they crossed to the city, where a large crowd was drawn together by these unusual preparations. They were conveyed by four-horse carriages to the spacious apartments allotted them, where, on the morrow, Humboldt was waited upon by the dignitaries of the place and the deputies of all the various nations represented in the motley population of Astrachan. They were presented by the governor-general in the order of rank. First came the burgomaster, with the elders of the mercantile profession, who, according to the Russian custom, brought the tokens of homage, but instead of common bread and salt, it was a pound-cake, ornamented with the best fruits of Astrachan—with grapes, large plums, pears and apples—and salt. Next came the nobles and the officers of the garrison, and then the deputies of the Armenians, Persians, Hindoos, Tartars, and others.

The travelers found much to interest them in Astrachan, in its diversified population, in the bazaars of the various nations and their places of worship. In one of the temples a *fakir* sat crouching on the floor with his chin resting upon his knees, between which the long white beard reached down to the ground. He had no clothing but a sheepskin thrown loosely about him, and had been sitting thus for fifteen years.

Humboldt obtained a steamboat and proceeded with his companions to the mouths of the Volga and the Caspian Sea, in order to analyze its waters, to make barometrical measurements, and to obtain specimens of the fish. When they had thus seen the most remarkable objects of Astrachan, and completed their scientific labors, they proceeded to visit the remarkable Calmuck prince, Sered Dschab, whom Humboldt desired to see. As he resided near the Volga, fifty miles above the city, they made all preparations for their journey, and set off from Astrachan on the 21st of October. The prince sent a large cavalcade and carriages to the landing, supposing that Humboldt traveled in greater state, and received them with great honor at his residence, where he entertained them hospitably. He conducted them to his temple where religious services were performed, showed them his horses, his orchard and gardens, and the distilleries where brandy is manufactured from mare's milk. At his residence they also met with Dschangir, the young Khan of the Inner Horde of Khirgisies. Leaving their Calmuck host they hastened to continue their homeward journey, for the weather was cold and winter was fast approaching. On the next day the country was covered with snow.

Retracing their course along the Volga as far as Zarizyn, they then crossed over to the Don, where Humboldt made his last barometrical observation, having reference to the relative height of the Caspian Sea, after which they proceeded by Woronesch, Tula and Moscow, to St. Petersburg, where Humboldt's obligations to the government and court detained him four weeks. The party finally arrived at Berlin on the 28th of December, 1829. Humboldt had been absent on this expedition

LDT.

n and his compan-  
to the city, where a  
reparations. They  
apartments allotted  
upon by the digni-  
fications represented  
presented by the  
the burgomaster,  
according to the Rus-  
d of common bread  
best fruits of Astra-  
and salt. Next came  
the deputies of the

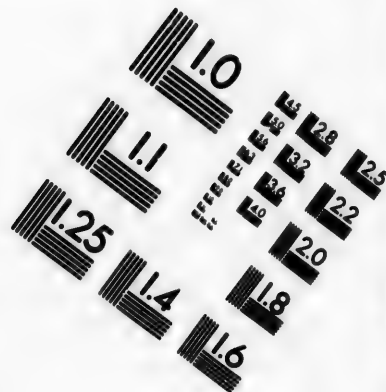
achan, in its diversi-  
and their places of  
on the floor with his  
white beard reached  
pakin thrown loosely

with his companions  
in order to analyze its  
obtain specimens of  
remarkable objects of As-  
troceeded to visit the  
Humboldt desired to  
the city, they made  
Astrachan on the 21st  
carriages to the land-  
te, and received them  
ained them hospitably.  
us services were per-  
nd gardens, and the  
e's milk. At his resi-  
g Khan of the Inner  
they hastened to con-  
s cold and winter was  
y was covered with

as Zarizyn, they then  
his last barometrical  
at of the Caspian Sea,  
and Moscow, to St. Pe-  
roverment and court  
ved at Berlin on the  
sent on this expedition

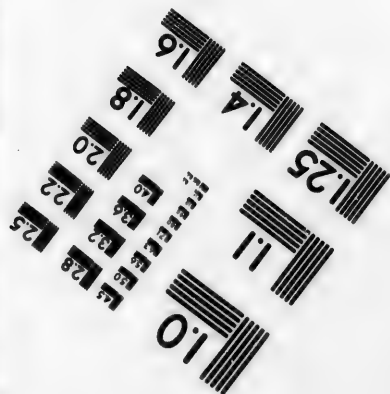






Resolution test chart showing patterns of vertical and horizontal lines with numerical values ranging from 1.0 to 2.5.

6"



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1983**

eig  
two

scie  
wor  
bol  
to a  
Cer  
can  
the  
of  
soil  
*tral*  
upo  
ped  
ther  
awa  
mer  
mou  
of  
fere  
reg  
bare  
soil,  
Dur  
"A  
was  
with  
Not  
scie  
com  
Per  
reg  
it w

I  
liam  
and  
1831  
Wei  
first  
In t  
who

eight months and a half, during which he had traveled a distance of between eleven and twelve thousand miles.

This journey, like the American one, was of great importance to the science of physical geography. Its results were published in three works, of which each of the travelers undertook to compose one. Humboldt's "Fragments of Asiatic Geology and Climatology" was the first to appear. It treats especially of the mountain ridges and volcanoes of Central Asia, and serves to establish Humboldt's theory, that the volcanic activity of the earth is continually decreasing. Before this journey there existed many erroneous notions of the geography of the interior of Asia, the connection of the mountain chains, and the character of the soil and climate, and Humboldt's work, together with his "*Asie Centrale*" (first published in Paris in 1843), threw an entirely new light upon all this region. Another very important result followed this expedition. In many parts of Siberia Humboldt left carefully compared thermometers, in the hands of competent and intelligent persons, and awakened the taste for these measurements and comparative experiments, especially among the Russian mining superintendents of the Ural mountains. In addition to this, at his suggestion, the Imperial Academy of St. Petersburg, with the emperor's concurrence, established at different points, throughout the entire extent of the Russian empire, a regular system of observations on the daily changes in the state of the barometer, thermometer, and hygrometer, on the temperature of the soil, the direction of the wind, and the moisture of the atmosphere. During the twelve years which elapsed between the publication of his "Asiatic Fragments" (1831), and his "Central Asia" (1843), Humboldt was in constant communication with Russia, and was regularly furnished with the results of the system of observation which he had instituted. Notwithstanding the varied and important contributions to physical science which he was thus enabled to afford, he felt that he was not compensated for the relinquishment of his long-cherished plan of visiting Persia, Thibet, and India. Now, in his old age, he declares that he regrets nothing so much as that he did not carry out the project, when it was first made.

#### HUMBOLDT'S LATER YEARS.

In September, 1830, Humboldt was sent to Paris by Frederic William III., with the diplomatic mission to acknowledge Louis Philippe and the new dynasty. He was also sent a second time in February, 1831, and on his return the following autumn, appears to have visited Weimar, and spent a few hours with Goethe, who was then in his eighty-first year, and whose death occurred in less than six months afterward. In the year 1835 he was called upon to mourn the loss of his brother, who died on the 8th of April, and whose literary executor he became.

Thenceforth he resided mostly in Berlin, devoting himself entirely to science, and to the arrangement, revision, and publication of his brother's manuscripts. His Asiatic works occupied the principal part of his time, and occasioned an extensive correspondence with his friends in Russia and Paris, besides which he superintended the labors of others who worked under his direction. In the year 1840, he published a dissertation on his ascent of Chimborazo, and on the mean elevation of the different continents, and also recommenced the work, which had been interrupted in 1828—his universal physical description of the world under the title of "Kosmos," which he now continued on a more extended plan. In January, 1842, the King, Frederic William IV., summoned him from these labors, with the command to accompany the court to London, to attend the christening of the Prince of Wales. In England he was treated with distinguished honor. After their return to Berlin, the king instituted a peace class of the Order of Merit (founded by Frederic the Great only as a military order), for the purpose of decorating the greatest scholars and artists, as a symbol of royal favor. The number was limited to thirty, and Humboldt, as the greatest living scholar, was appointed Grand Chancellor of the order.

Since 1842, Humboldt has remained in Berlin, devoting all the time which he can spare from his attendance at court to the preparation and publication of his "Kosmos," which he leaves behind him as his last and richest scientific legacy to the world. He presents a remarkable picture of hale, active, and productive old age. Possessed of that elastic temperament which resists the effects of climate and physical hardship, and which is totally independent of the laws of stature or muscular strength, his faculties seem scarcely less vigorous than in the prime of life, while his interest in the progress of scientific investigation and discovery, is as lively as ever. Professor Klencke, in his biography of Humboldt, written in the year 1849, gives the following description of the grand old veteran, as he then appeared:

"Humboldt now lives wherever his royal friend lives. There are apartments for him in Berlin, Potsdam, in all the royal palaces, and not a day passes that he does not see the king. In spite of his eighty-one years, he works unweariedly in those hours which are not occupied by the court; he is active and punctual in his immense correspondence, and answers every letter of the humblest scholar with the most amiable affability. The inhabitants of Berlin and Potsdam all know him personally, and show him as much honor as they show the king. With a slow but firm step, a thoughtful head, rather bent forward, whose features are benevolent with a dignified expression of noble calmness, either looking down or politely responding to the greetings of the passers-by with kindness and without pride; in a simple dress, frequently holding a pamphlet in his hand, resting on his back, so he wanders through the streets of Berlin, alone and unostentatiously, a noble picture of a blade of wheat bending beneath the weight of its numerous rich

golden ears. Wherever he appears he is received with tokens of universal esteem. Those who pass, timidly step aside for fear of disturbing him in his thoughts; even the working man looks respectfully after him, and says to his neighbor: 'There goes Humboldt!' And whoever has had the happiness of conversing with him, never forgets the force of his lucid, simple, natural, and unaffected conversation, for in every thing he says, depth and learning, clearness and unbounded knowledge, are revealed without any of the pride of learning, the stiff pedantry and preciseness of many German men of science. Humboldt has evidently been educated in the highest society; his manner is dignified, open, unaffected, and frank; he has lived with all nations, and adopted and united in himself the advantages of all."

This picture is true at the present day, when six years have been added to his venerable age. He is still in correspondence with scientific men in all parts of the world, and frequently reads their letters aloud at the table of the king. He is equally alive to the political aspects of the different nations, and suffers no circumstance of their material development to escape his attention. Though the friend and equal of a king, he is thoroughly liberal and progressive in his ideas, and there are few grander instances of individual independence on record, than the fact of his voting the liberal ticket at the polls in Berlin, in the year 1855. Few men have lived more fortunate lives than he: few have ever left behind them a nobler monument of industry, zeal and genius. Humboldt has been especially favored by Providence, from his very cradle. Unlike the majority of distinguished men, he was not obliged to contend with poverty or adverse circumstances; he never knew that physical and spiritual prostration which springs from the impatience of unacknowledged powers. And it is his highest merit that with worldly circumstances so favorable, he did not give way to the charms and indulgences of his aristocratic position, that he did not fall into the egotism of high birth, nor the pride of idleness, but in all periods of his life followed the true impulses of his nature, and made himself the self-sacrificing servant of science, for the good of mankind. Rejecting all the comforts which he inherited, and the distinguished society into which he was thrown, he cheerfully sacrificed his property, and subjected himself to the greatest dangers and privations in his endeavors to investigate the phenomena of nature, and obtain a knowledge of the laws which govern the world.

May the growing and still brightening orb of his life be rounded to a century of years!





This is a historical map of Liberia, titled "LIBERIA AND THE ATLANTIC OCEAN". It shows the country's coastline and interior features. Key locations labeled include Monrovia, Buchanan, Harper, and various towns like Greenville, Newburg, and Nimba. Rivers shown include the St. Paul's River, Cape Mesurado, and others. A scale bar at the top indicates distances from 0 to 100 miles. The map is oriented with North at the top.

**MUNGO PARK**, one of the first and bravest of the many travelers who have devoted themselves to the exploration of the course of the river Niger, was born on the 10th of September, 1771, at Fowlshiels, on the banks of the Yarrow, in Scotland. His father was a farmer, who was blessed with thirteen other children, but was fortunately able to give young Mungo a tolerable education, and to apprentice him to a surgeon at Selkirk, in his fifteenth year. In 1789, Park entered the University of Edinburg, and applied himself with great assiduity to the studies connected with his profession. His summer vacations, during one of which he made a tour to the Highlands, were devoted to botany.

After having completed his education he removed to London, hoping to establish himself there in business as a surgeon. Through his brother-in-law, Mr. Dickson, he had the good fortune to become acquainted with Sir Joseph Banks, the patron of so many travelers, and through whose recommendation he was appointed surgeon to the ship Worcester, an East Indiaman.\* In this capacity he made a voyage to Bencoolen, in Sumatra, and on his return communicated a paper to the "Linnæan Transactions," containing descriptions of eight new fishes of that island. About this time the African Association, of which Sir Joseph Banks was a very active and zealous member, was desirous of engaging a person to replace Major Houghton, who, it was feared, had fallen a sacrifice to the climate, or perished in some contest with the natives. Park at once offered his services, which, after some deliberation, were accepted, and the Association fitted him out in the most liberal manner. On the 22d of May, 1795, he sailed from Portsmouth in the brig *Endeavor*. His instructions, he says, were very plain and concise. He was directed, on his arrival in Africa, "to pass on to the river Niger, either by the way

\* The surgeon attached to the Peninsular and Oriental Company's steamer *Madras*, in which I sailed from Southampton to Gibraltar, in November, 1852, was Dr. Mungo Park, a nephew of the traveler.—B. T.

of Bambouk or by such other route as should be found most convenient; that I should ascertain the course, and, if possible, the rise and termination of the river; that I should use my utmost exertions to visit the principal towns or cities in its neighborhood, particularly Timbuctoo and Houssa; and that I should afterward be at liberty to return to Europe, either by the way of the Gambia, or by such other route as under all the then existing circumstances of my situation and prospects should appear to me to be most advisable."

On the 21st of June, after a voyage of thirty days, he arrived at Jilifica, a town on the northern bank of the Gambia, in the kingdom of Barra. From this place, after a stay of two days, he proceeded up the Gambia, in the waters of which were found prodigious numbers of fish of unknown species, together with alligators and hippopotami, whose teeth furnish excellent ivory. Park, having quitted the *Endeavor* at Jonkakonda, proceeded thence by land, and reaching Pisania, a small British factory in the King of Yam's dominions, on the 5th of July took up his residence at the house of Dr. Laidley, until he should be able to prosecute his journey into the interior.

His first care was to render himself master of the Mandingo language, which in that part of Africa is in general use, and to collect from every source within his power information respecting the countries he was about to visit. In the language his progress depended on his own application; but he soon found that little or no reliance could be placed on the accounts of the interior furnished him by the natives, who, on the most material points, were frequently in direct contradiction with each other. His anxiety to examine and judge for himself was therefore increased. However, besides that the rainy season, which had now commenced, rendered traveling impracticable, another equally insuperable bar to the speedy prosecution of his journey quickly presented itself. In observing on the 31st of July an eclipse of the moon, he imprudently exposed himself to the night dew, and next day he found himself attacked by fever and delirium, the commencement of an illness that with a very trifling intermission confined him during two months within doors.

Having been disappointed in his expectations of proceeding with a slave caravan toward Bambarra, Park departed from Pisania on the 2d of December, 1795. He had been provided with a negro servant, named Johnson, who had been many years in Great Britain, and understood both the English and Mandingo languages; and with a negro boy, named Demba, the property of Dr. Laidley, who, as the highest inducement of good behavior, promised him his freedom on his return. Besides these Park was accompanied by four other persons, who, though independent of his control, were made to understand that their safe return to the countries on the Gambia would depend on our traveler's preservation. His equipment was by no means magnificent: a horse for himself, two asses for his servants, provisions for two days, a small assort-

ment  
appar  
mome  
articl  
days  
persu

H  
musin  
peopl  
ing c  
their  
costly  
were  
the c  
king?  
missi  
up p  
trust

H  
misse  
deser  
negro  
guide  
one o  
made  
low  
water  
abov  
the  
kind  
Fatte  
he w  
Majo  
been  
so co  
he co  
meas  
gold  
ing

T  
nomi  
duct  
and  
that  
most  
the

most convenient;  
rise and termina-  
ons to visit the  
y Timbuctoo and  
return to Europe,  
e as under all the  
cts should appear

he arrived at Jil-  
n the kingdom of  
proceeded up the  
as numbers of fish  
ppopotami, whose  
the *Endeavor* at  
g Pisania, a small  
e 5th of July took  
e should be able to

landing language,  
collect from every  
countries he was  
d on his own appli-  
could be placed on  
atives, who, on the  
radiation with each  
lf was therefore in-  
which had now com-  
equally insuperable  
ly presented itself.  
oon, he imprudently  
ne found himself at-  
an illness that with  
two months within

of proceeding with a  
m Pisania on the 2d  
negro servant, named  
tain, and understood  
with a negro boy,  
s the highest induce-  
on his return. Be-  
persons, who, though  
nd that their safe re-  
nd on our traveler's  
nificant: a horse for  
o days, a small assort-

ment of beads, amber, and tobacco, a few changes of linen and other apparel, an umbrella, a pocket sextant, a magnetic compass, a thermometer, two fowling-pieces, two pair of pistols, and some other small articles. His friends at Pisania accompanied him during the first two days, and then, dismissing him on his way, took their leave, secretly persuaded that they would never see him more.

He had scarcely lost sight of his European friends, and ridden off musing and somewhat melancholy into the woods, when a body of black people presented themselves in a clamorous manner before him, demanding custom dues, in default of which they threatened to carry him before their king. To escape from this honor, which might have proved a costly one, Park presented them with a little tobacco, upon which they were contented, and he was allowed to proceed. On reaching Medina, the capital of Woolli, he judged it prudent to present himself at the king's levee, when the benevolent old chief not only granted him permission to traverse his dominions, but assured him that he would offer up prayers for his safety, partly to secure which he furnished him with a trusty guide.

Having safely reached the frontiers of the Woolli dominions, Park dismissed his guide; and being about to enter a country interspersed with deserts, in which water is frequently not to be procured, he hired three negroes, experienced elephant-hunters, who were at once to serve as guides and water-bearers. While he was preparing to depart, however, one of these negroes, who had all received a part of their pay in advance, made his escape; and lest the remaining two should be disposed to follow his example, he immediately gave orders to fill their calabashes with water, and struck off into the wilderness, just as the sun was appearing above the horizon. After crossing the first desert, they reached Talika, the frontier town of Bondou toward Woolli, where Park engaged a kind of custom-house officer to accompany him for a trifling present to Fatteconda, the residence of the king. On his arrival at Fatteconda he was received by the black chief with much apparent kindness, though Major Houghton, he had heard, in his passage through the country, had been both insulted and plundered by this same man. It is true the king was so completely captivated by Park's best blue coat and gilt buttons, that he could not resist the temptation to beg it; but he endeavored in some measure to remunerate him for the loss by a present of five drachms of gold, and by altogether abstaining from examining his baggage, or exacting any other present than what was voluntarily bestowed.

The territories of these petty African chiefs, who are complaisantly denominated kings, are exceedingly limited in extent. Your road conducts you to-day through one kingdom, to-morrow through another, and the next day through a third; which, of all those circumstances that obstruct the movements of the traveler in Africa, is, perhaps, the most vexatious and the most difficult to overcome; as the rapacity of the first chiefs who lie in his way deprives him of the power of satisfying

the equal rapacity of the remainder. Hence, Park traveled in a perpetual state of captivity. He was never, unless when far removed from human society by woods or deserts, completely master of his own actions, or sufficiently respected to render it possible for him to contemplate the superior classes, even of these savages, from a proper level.

Park left Fatteconda on the 23d of December. "In the afternoon," says he, "my fellow-travelers informed me, that as this was the boundary between Bondou and Kajaaga, and dangerous for travelers, it would be necessary to continue our journey by night, until we should reach a more hospitable part of the country. I agreed to the proposal, and hired two men for guides through the woods, and as soon as the people of the village were gone to sleep (the moon shining bright) we set out. The stillness of the air, the howling of the wild beasts, and the deep solitude of the forest made the scene solemn and impressive. Not a word was uttered by any of us but in a whisper; all were attentive, and every one anxious to show his sagacity by pointing out to me the wolves and hyenas as they glided like shadows from one thicket to another. Toward morning we arrived at a village called Kimmoo, when our guides awakened one of their acquaintance, and we stopped to give our asses some corn, and roast a few ground-nuts for ourselves. At daylight we resumed our journey, and in the afternoon arrived at Joag in the kingdom of Kajaaga."

On arriving at Joag Park—who had taken up his residence at the house of the dooty, or chief man of the town, a rigid but hospitable Mohammedan—was favored with an opportunity of observing the genuine character of the negro. "The same evening," says he, "Madiboo, the bushreen who had accompanied me from Pisania, went to pay a visit to his father and mother, who dwelt at a neighboring town called Dramanet. He was joined by my other attendant, the blacksmith; and as soon as it was dark, I was invited to see the sports of the inhabitants, it being their custom, on the arrival of strangers, to welcome them by diversions of different kinds. I found a great crowd surrounding a party who were dancing by the light of some large fires to the music of four drums, which were beat with great exactness and uniformity. The dances, however, consisted more in wanton gestures than in muscular exertion or graceful attitudes.

At Joag, while preparing to advance on his journey, he was suddenly honored with a visit from the king's son, accompanied by a troop of horse, who, pretending that by entering his father's dominions he had forfeited the whole of his property, insisted upon examining his merchandise, of which he seized upon the moiety. Of the remnant that remained, particularly a little amber and a few beads, which he had succeeded in concealing, he was now so fearful of producing any portion, even for the purchase of food, lest he should once more awaken the cupidity of the authorities, that both he and his attendants determined on combating hunger for the day, "and wait some opportunity of purchasing or beg-

ging provisions." In this extremity, while he was sitting down chewing straws, a female slave, who observed him in passing by, was moved with compassion, and presented him with a quantity of ground-nuts, which was a very seasonable supply. Scarcely had the old woman left him, before he received information that the nephew of the King of Kasson, who had been sent by his uncle on an embassy to the King of Kajaaga, and was now returning to his own country, was about to pay him a visit. He came accordingly, and upon Park's representing to him his situation and distresses, kindly offered to be his guide and protector as far as Kasson. With him, therefore, our traveler now continued his route to the banks of the Senegal, upon crossing which, his royal guide, who, like other guides, required a present for his services, informed him they were in his uncle's dominions, and in complete safety.

Safe or not safe, however, Park soon found that the stranger and the traveler were nowhere beyond the reach of extortion. Half of the little property which had escaped the fangs of the Kajaaga people, was here taken from him. He was then permitted to depart. Among the honest negroes with whom he had set out from Pisania, on the Gambia, there was a blacksmith from the interior, who, having amassed some little money upon the coast, was now returning to spend the remainder of his days in his native land. Shortly after quitting Teesee, the last place where our traveler had submitted to legal robbery, he and his companions came within sight of the blacksmith's village. The news of his return, had, it seems, preceded him. His brother, accompanied by a singing-man, came forth to welcome the wanderer home, and brought along with him a horse, that the blacksmith "might enter his native town in a dignified manner." Park and his companions were desired to put a good charge of powder into their guns. The singing-man led the way; the two brothers followed; and the cavalcade was quickly joined by a considerable number of the inhabitants, who, by extravagant gestures and songs of triumph, testified their joy at the return of their townsman. "When we arrived at the blacksmith's place of residence, we dismounted, and fired our muskets. The meeting between him and his relations was very tender; for these rude children of nature, freed from restraint, display their emotions in the strongest and most expressive manner. Amid these transports, the blacksmith's aged mother was led forth, leaning upon a staff. Every one made way for her; and she stretched out her hand to bid her son welcome. Being totally blind, she stroked his hands, and arms, and face with great care, and seemed highly delighted that her latter days were blessed by his return, and that her ears once more heard the music of his voice. From this interview, I was convinced, that whatever difference there is between the Negro and European in the conformation of the nose, and the color of their skin, there is none in the genuine sympathies and characteristic feelings of our common nature.

"During the tumult of these congratulations, I had seated myself



apart, by the side of one of the huts, being unwilling to interrupt the flow of filial and parental tenderness; and the attention of the company was so entirely taken up with the blacksmith, that I believe none of his friends had observed me. When all the people present had seated themselves, the blacksmith was desired by his father to give some account of his adventures; and silence being commanded he began; and after repeatedly thanking God for the success that had attended him, related every material occurrence that had happened to him from his leaving Kasson to his arrival at the Gambia; his employment and success in those parts; and the dangers he had escaped in returning to his native country. In the latter part of his narration, he had frequent occasion to mention me; and after many strong expressions concerning my kindness to him, he pointed to the place where I sat, and exclaimed, *Affille ibi aising* (see him sitting there). In a moment all eyes were turned upon me. I appeared like a being dropped from the clouds; every one was surprised that they had not observed me before; and a few women and children expressed great uneasiness at being so near a man of such an uncommon appearance. By degrees, however, their apprehensions subsided, and when the blacksmith assured them I was perfectly inoffensive, some of them ventured so far as to examine the texture of my clothes; but many of them were still very suspicious, and when by accident I happened to move myself, or look at the young children, their mothers would scamper off with them with the greatest precipitation. In a few hours, however, they all became reconciled to me."

With those honest people Park remained during the whole of that day and the next, and then, accompanied by the worthy blacksmith, who declared that he would not quit him during his stay in that part of the country, set forward toward Kooniakary. On his arrival at this city he obtained an audience of the king, a fine old man, who, for his conduct both in peace and war, was greatly beloved by his subjects. His behavior toward the stranger was not inconsistent with his character. He informed him with apparent regret, that the direct route to Bambarra was about to be closed by war; but, after vainly advising his guest to retrace his footsteps, added, that there yet remained some hopes of peace, respecting the validity of which he should be able to pronounce an opinion in the course of four or five days. In the mean while he invited Park to remain in the neighborhood.

On the 1st of February, 1796, the king's messenger returned from the contiguous kingdom of Kaarta, bringing intelligence that the Bambarra army had not yet entered the country, and that it was possible the traveler might be enabled to traverse it before the invasion should take place. Accordingly, being provided with two guides by the king, Park took leave of his friend the blacksmith, and set forward on his dangerous journey. The country, at all times thickly peopled, now swarmed with fugitives, whom the fear of the Bambarrans had terrified from their homes. The scenery in many places was romantically wild. "On com-

ing in sight of the mountains of Footado, we traveled," says Park, "with great difficulty down a stony and abrupt precipice, and continued our way in the bed of a dried river-course, where the trees meeting over our heads, made the place dark and cool. In a little time we reached the bottom of this romantic glen; and about ten o'clock emerged from between two rocky hills, and found ourselves on the level and sandy plains of Kaarta. At noon we arrived at a korree, or watering-place, where, for a few strings of beads, I purchased as much milk and corn-meal as we could eat; and indeed provisions are here so cheap, and the shepherds live in such affluence, that they seldom ask any return for what refreshment a traveler receives from them."

From this place, having prevailed upon his landlord, a Mohammedan negro, to accompany him as a guide to Kemmoo, Park set forward on the 11th of February. He observes, "We had no sooner got into a dark and lonely part of the first wood, than he made a sign for us to stop; and taking hold of a hollow piece of bamboo that hung as an amulet round his neck, whistled very loud three times. I confess I was somewhat startled, thinking it was a signal for some of his companions to come and attack us; but he assured me it was done merely with a view to ascertain what success we were likely to meet with on our present journey. He then dismounted, laid his spear across the road, and having said a number of short prayers, concluded with three loud whistles; after which he listened for some time, as if in expectation of an answer, and receiving none, told us we might proceed without fear, for there was no danger."

Adventures now appeared to crowd upon the party. The country through which their road lay being thickly sprinkled with wild fruit-trees, they amused themselves, as they rode slowly along, with picking and eating the fruit, "In this pursuit," says Park, "I had wandered a little from my people, and being uncertain whether they were before or behind me, I hastened to a rising ground to look about me. As I was proceeding toward this eminence, two negro horsemen, armed with muskets, came galloping from among the bushes. On seeing them I made a full stop; the horsemen did the same; and all three of us seemed equally surprised and confounded at this interview. As I approached them their fears increased, and one of them, after casting on me a look of horror, rode off at full speed; the other, in a panic of fear, put his hand over his eyes, and continued muttering prayers until his horse, seemingly without his rider's knowledge, conveyed him slowly after his companion. About a mile to the westward they fell in with my attendants, to whom they related a frightful story. It seems their fears had dressed me in the flowing robes of a tremendous spirit; and one of them affirmed, that when I made my appearance, a cold blast of wind came pouring down upon him from the sky, like so much cold water."

Shortly after this they arrived at the capital of Kaarta, where he was an object of such extraordinary curiosity to the populace—the majority

of whom had never before seen a white man—that they burst forcibly into his hut, crowd after crowd. Those who had beheld the monster gave way to those who had not, until, as he observes, the hut was filled and emptied thirteen different times. Here he found that the war with Bambarra had actually commenced; that all communication between the countries had consequently ceased; and that, if it was his determination to persevere, it would be necessary to take a circuitous route through the Moorish kingdom of Ludamar. The people of Kaarta were Mohammedans; but instead of the fine sonorous voice of the muezzin, by which the faithful are elsewhere summoned to their devotions, the hour of prayer was here announced by the beating of drums, and blowing through large elephant's teeth, hollowed out in such a manner as to resemble bugle-horns. The sound of these horns Park thought melodious, and approaching nearer to the human voice than any other artificial sound. Being very desirous to depart from the seat of war, he presented his horse-pistols and holsters to the king; and on pressing to be dismissed, received in return an escort of eight horsemen to conduct him to Jarra. Three of the king's sons, with two hundred horsemen, kindly undertook to accompany him a little way on his journey.

On his arrival at Jarra, in the kingdom of Ludamar, he dispatched a messenger to Ali who was then encamped near Benown, soliciting permission to pass unmolested through his territories; and having waited fourteen days for his reply, a slave at length arrived from the chief, affirming that he had been instructed to conduct the traveler in safety as far as Gocimba. His negro, Johnson, here refused to follow him any further, and signified his intention of pushing back without delay to Gambia; upon which Park, fearful of the success of his enterprise, intrusted him with a copy of his journal, reserving another for himself, directing him to deliver the papers to the English on the coast. A portion of his baggage and apparel he committed to the care of a slave-merchant at Jarra, who was known to Dr. Laidley. He then departed, with his slave-boy, accompanied by the chief's messenger. On the road he was robbed once more by the Moors, who added insult to violence; and when he was nearly perishing from thirst, beat away his faithful slave from the wells, without permitting him to draw water.

However, after much fatigue and extraordinary privations, they arrived in Ali's camp at Benown, where Park was immediately surrounded by crowds of fanatical Moors, attracted partly from curiosity, partly from a desire to vent their fierce zeal against a Christian. "My arrival," says he, "was no sooner observed than the people, who drew water at the wells, threw down their buckets; those in the tents mounted their horses, and men, women, and children came running & galloping toward me. I soon found myself surrounded by such a crowd, that I could scarcely move; one pulled my clothes, another took off my hat; a third stopped me to examine my waistcoat buttons, and a fourth called out '*La illah il, allah, Mohammed rossool allah* (there is no-God but

ey burst forcibly  
eld the monster  
he hut was filled  
hat the war with  
tion between the  
his determination  
us route through  
arta were Moham-  
muezzin, by which  
ons, the hour of  
ums, and blowing  
a manner as to  
t thought melodi-  
any other artificial  
war, he presented  
ressing to be dis-  
to conduct him to  
ersemens, kindly un-

ar, he dispatched a  
m, soliciting permis-  
having waited four-  
the chief, affirming  
in safety as far as  
ow him any further,  
t delay to Gambia;  
prise, intrusted him  
nself, directing him  
A portion of his bag-  
e-merchant at Jarra,  
l, with his slave-boy,  
he was robbed once  
; and when he was  
lave from the wells,

ary privations, they  
as immediately sur-  
partly from curiosity,  
t a Christian. "My  
he people, who drew  
in the tents mounted  
running & galloping  
such a crowd, that I  
her took off my hat;  
ns, and a fourth called  
(there is no-God but

God, and Mohammed is his prophet), and signified, in a threatening manner, that I must repeat those words. We reached at length the king's tent, where we found a great number of people, men, women, and children, assembled. Ali was sitting on a black leathern cushion, clipping a few hairs from his upper lip—a female attendant holding up a looking-glass before him. He appeared to be an old man of the Arab caste, with a long white beard, and he had a sullen and indignant aspect. He surveyed me with attention, and inquired of the Moors if I could speak Arabic; and being answered in the negative, he appeared much surprised, and continued silent. The surrounding attendants, and particularly the ladies, were abundantly more inquisitive; they asked a thousand questions, inspected every part of my apparel, searched my pockets, and obliged me to unbutton my waistcoat and display the whiteness of my skin; they even counted my toes and fingers, as if they doubted whether I was in truth a human being."



SULTAN ALI'S TENT AT BENOWM.

Ali now, with the base idea of insulting an unprotected stranger, ordered a wild boar to be brought in, which he signified his desire that Park should kill and eat. This, well knowing their religious prejudices, he, of course, refused to do; upon which the boys who led in the boar were commanded to let it loose upon him, the Moors supposing that there exists an inveterate feud between pigs and Christians, and that it would immediately run upon and gore him. The boar, however, was more magnanimous. Scorning to attack a defenseless foreigner, he no sooner found himself at liberty than, brandishing his tusks at the natives, he rushed at them indiscriminately, and then, to complete their consternation, took shelter under the very couch upon which the tyrant was sitting. This bold proceeding of the unclean beast dissolved the assembly, and the traveler was led away to the tent of a slave, in front of which,

not being permitted to enter, he received a little food. Here he likewise passed the night, lying upon the sand, surrounded by the curious multitude. Next day, a hut, constructed with corn-stalks, was given to him, but the boar, which had been recaptured, was tied to a stake in the end of it, as his fittest companion.

By degrees, however, the Moors began to conceive that the Christian might, in one way or another, be rendered useful, but could think of no better employment for him than that of a barber. In this capacity he made his first attempt, in the royal presence, on the head of the young prince of Ludamar. This dignified office he had no great desire to monopolize, and his unskillfulness in performing the operation, for he almost at the outset made an incision in the young prince's head, quickly reduced him once more to the rank of a common mortal. Ali seemed by no means desirous, however, of dispensing altogether with his services, wishing, perhaps, to preserve him from the same motives which induce us to preserve a wild beast; and, therefore, to render his escape the more impracticable, took possession of the whole of his baggage, including his gold, amber, watch, and one of his pocket compasses, the other he had fortunately buried in the sand composing the floor of his hut. The gold and amber were highly gratifying to Moorish avarice, but the pocket compass soon became an object of superstitious curiosity. "Ali was very desirous to be informed why that small piece of iron, the needle, always pointed to the Great Desert, and I found myself somewhat puzzled to answer the question. To have pleaded my ignorance would have created a suspicion that I wished to conceal the real truth from him; I therefore told him that my mother resided far beyond the sands of Sahara, and that while she was alive the piece of iron would always point that way, and serve as a guide to conduct me to her; and that if she was dead it would point to her grave. Ali now looked at the compass with redoubled amazement, turned it round and round repeatedly, but observing that it always pointed the same way, he took it up with great caution and returned it to me, manifesting that he thought there was something of magic in it, and that he was afraid of keeping so dangerous an instrument in his possession."

It now began to be debated between Ali and his advisers what should be done with their prisoner. Their decisions were very dissimilar. Some were of opinion that he should be put to death, others that he should merely lose his right hand, while a third party thought that his eyes ought to be put out. Ali himself, however, determined that matters should remain as they were until his queen Fatima, then in the north, had seen him. Meanwhile all these reports were related to our traveler, and tended not a little to distress and agitate his mind. His demand to be permitted to depart was formally refused. The accumulated horrors of his situation, united with the want of food and sleep, at length brought on a fever, by which his life was endangered. But his persecution from the Moors did not therefore cease. They plucked his cloak from him,

Here he like-  
by the curious  
ks, was given to  
d to a stake in

that the Christian  
ould think of no  
this capacity he  
ad of the young  
reat desire to mo-  
ion, for he almost  
head, quickly re-  
Ali seemed by  
with his services,  
ives which induce  
er his escape the  
a baggage, includ-  
mpasses, the other  
e floor of his hut.  
h avarice, but the  
is curiosity. "Ali  
of iron, the needle,  
self somewhat puz-  
horance would have  
truth from him; I  
nd the sands of Sa-  
would always point  
and that if she was  
at the compass with  
repeatedly, but ob-  
ook it up with great  
e thought there was  
f keeping so danger-

advisers what should  
ery dissimilar. Some  
thers that he should  
ought that his eyes  
rmined that matters  
na, then in the north,  
elated to our traveler,  
mind. His demand to  
e accumulated horrors  
eep, at length brought  
t his persecution from  
l his cloak from him,

they overwhelmed him with insults, they tortured him like some ferocious animal, for their amusement, and when, to escape from this detestable thralldom, he crawled away to a short distance from the camp, he was forced back by menaces and violence.

At length, after more than a month's detention at Benown, he was commanded to follow Ali to the northern encampment of Bubaker, on the skirts of the Great Desert, and on the way endured the extremity of hunger, thirst, and fatigue. Upon arriving at Bubaker, he was shown as a strange animal to Fatima, who, though far from being exempt from the Moorish prejudices against a Christian, or in any remarkable degree disposed to humanity, still treated him with somewhat greater lenity than the rest of the Moors; and, upon the departure of her husband for Jarra, not only obtained him permission to join the party, but prevailed upon the tyrant to restore him his horse, saddle, and bridle, together with a part of his apparel. His faithful black boy, Demba, however, was taken from him, notwithstanding his animated remonstrances to Ali, who, upon his pressing the point rather warmly, only replied, that if he did not instantly mount his horse and depart he should share the fate of his slave. "There is something in the frown of a tyrant," says Park, "which rouses the most secret emotions of the heart. I could not suppress my feelings, and for once entertained an indignant wish to rid the world of such a monster. Poor Demba was not less affected than myself; he had formed a strong attachment toward me, and had a cheerfulness of disposition which often beguiled the tedious hours of captivity. He was likewise a proficient in the Bambarra tongue, and promised, on that account, to be of great use to me in future. But it was in vain to expect any thing favorable to humanity from a people who are strangers to its dictates. So, having shaken hands with this unfortunate boy, and blended my tears with his, assuring him, however, I would do my best to redeem him, I saw him led off by three of Ali's slaves toward the camp of Bubaker."

Upon his arrival at Jarra, where he was shortly afterward transferred by Ali to tyrants of a lower grade, his condition, far from being improved, was only rendered the more intolerable. The city itself, moreover, was in a state of the utmost confusion. Malcontents from Kaarta having taken refuge there, had recently made an incursion into their native country, carried off a large quantity of plunder, and thus drawn the vengeance of their king against the city. All those who had reason to dread his resentment were now, therefore, preparing to fly into Bambarra; and Park, whose route lay in the same direction, became exceedingly desirous of effecting his escape from the Moors, that he might seize upon this fortunate occasion of fulfilling the object of his mission. "Their departure," says he, speaking of the black fugitives, "was very affecting: the women and children crying, the men sullen and dejected, and all of them looking back with regret on their native town; and on the wells and rocks beyond which their ambition had never tempted



them to stray, and where they had laid all their plans of future happiness, all of which they were now forced to abandon, and to seek shelter among strangers."

Hoping to escape in this confused throng, he mounted his horse, and taking a bag of corn before him, rode slowly off along with the townspeople. On their arrival at Queira, a village at no great distance from the city, Park began to flatter himself that he had really eluded the vigilance of his persecutors, but before the agreeable idea had got a firm footing in his mind, he saw Ali's chief slave, accompanied by four Moors, arrive, and take up their lodgings with the dooty. Johnson, Park's interpreter (who had been seized by Ali's order before he could leave Jarra), suspecting the design of this visit, sent two boys to overhear their conversation, by which means he learned that it was their intention to carry Park back to Bubaker. Upon this he at once came to the desperate resolution to effect that very night his deliverance from his pursuers, or to perish in the attempt. Johnson, who applauded this determination, but wanted the courage to imitate it, was nevertheless exceedingly well disposed to aid in effecting his master's escape. He therefore undertook to keep watch upon the movements of the enemy, while Park was preparing for flight. About midnight he got all his apparel in readiness, which consisted of two shirts, two pair of trousers, two pocket-handkerchiefs, an upper and under waistcoat, a hat, a pair of half boots, and a cloak. Besides these things he had not in his possession a single bead or any other article with which to purchase food for himself, or provender for his horse. "About daybreak, Johnson, who had been listening to the Moors all night, came," says he, "and whispered to me that they were all asleep. The awful crisis was now arrived when I was again either to taste the blessings of freedom, or languish out my days in captivity. A cold sweat moistened my forehead as I thought of the dreadful alternative, and reflected that one way or the other, my fate must be decided in the course of the ensuing day. But to deliberate was to lose the only chance of escaping. So taking up my bundle, I stepped gently over the negroes who were sleeping in the open air, and, having mounted my horse, I bade Johnson farewell, desiring him to take particular care of my papers I had intrusted him with, and inform my friends in Gambia that he had left me in good health on my way to Bambarra. I proceeded with great caution, surveying each bush, and frequently listening and looking behind me for the Moorish horsemen, until I was about a mile from the town, when I was surprised to find myself in the neighborhood of a korree, belonging to the Moors. The shepherds followed me for about a mile, hooting and throwing stones after me; and when I was out of their reach, and had begun to indulge the pleasing hope of escaping, I was again greatly alarmed to hear somebody halloo behind me, and, looking back, I saw three Moors on horseback coming after me at full speed, whooping and brandishing their double-barrel guns. I knew it was in vain to think of escaping, and therefore

R K.

future happiness,  
shelter among

his horse, and  
with the towns-  
at distance from  
really eluded the  
had got a firm  
l by four Moors,  
Johnson, Park's  
he could leave  
oys to overhear  
as their intention  
came to the de-  
nce from his pur-  
lauded this deter-  
vertheless exceed-  
pe. He therefore  
onemy, while Park  
s apparel in readi-  
asers, two pocket-  
pair of half boots,  
possession a single  
ood for himself, or  
on, who had been  
d whispered to me  
arrived when I was  
guish out my days  
as I thought of the  
the other, my fate

But to deliberate  
g up my bundle, I  
n the open air, and,  
desiring him to take  
ith, and inform my  
on my way to Bam-  
each bush, and fre-  
rish horsemen, until  
ised to find myself  
ors. The shepherds  
g stones after me;  
to indulge the pleas-  
l to hear somebody  
Moors on horseback  
ishing their double-  
aping, and therefore



THE NIGER. PAGE 101 AND 102.



THE NIGER. SCENE IN THE OLD.

tur  
one  
go

rob  
the  
clo  
to l  
and  
was  
was  
app  
cou  
wh  
of  
tor  
din  
ove  
to  
of  
we  
hav  
high  
ove  
tra  
san  
rup

and  
ter  
it l  
my  
sel  
fal  
He  
all  
she  
on  
wa  
fro  
tic  
sar  
th  
an  
wh  
ho

turned back and met them, when two of them caught hold of my bridle, one on each side, and the third, presenting his musket, told me I must go back to Ali."

It soon appeared, however, that these gentlemen were merely private robbers, who were fearful that their master had not sufficiently pillaged the stranger; for, after examining his bundle, and plundering him of his cloak, they bade him begone, and follow them no further. Too happy to be rid of the villains at any rate, he immediately struck into the woods and continued his journey. His joy at thus escaping from the Moors was quickly damped by the consideration that he must very soon be in want of both food and water, neither of which could he procure without approaching villages or wells, where he would almost inevitably encounter his old enemies. He therefore pushed on with all the vigor of which he was possessed, in the hope of reaching some town or village of the kingdom of Bambarra. But he already began to experience the tortures of thirst; his mouth was parched and inflamed; a sudden dimness, accompanied by symptoms of fainting, would frequently come over his eyes; and as his horse also was exceedingly fatigued, he began to apprehend that he should perish of thirst. Some shrubs, the leaves of which he chewed to relieve the burning pain in his mouth and throat, were all found to be bitter and of no service. "A little before sunset, having reached the top of a gentle rising," says Park, "I climbed a high tree, from the topmost branches of which I cast a melancholy look over the barren wilderness, but without discovering the most distant trace of a human dwelling. The same dismal uniformity of shrubs and sand everywhere presented itself, and the horizon was level and uninterrupted as that of the sea.

"Descending from the tree, I found my horse devouring the stubble and brushwood with great avidity; and as I was now too faint to attempt walking, and my horse too much fatigued to carry me, I thought it but an act of humanity, and perhaps the last I should ever have it in my power to perform, to take off his bridle and let him shift for himself; in doing which, I was affected with sickness and giddiness; and, falling upon the sand, felt as if the hour of death was fast approaching. Here then (thought I), after a short but ineffectual struggle, terminate all my hopes of being useful in my day and generation—here must the short span of my life come to an end. I cast, as I believed, a last look on the surrounding scene, and while I reflected on the awful change that was about to take place, this world and its enjoyments seemed to vanish from my recollection. Nature, however, at length resumed its functions; and on recovering my senses I found myself stretched upon the sand, with the bridle still in my hand, and the sun just sinking behind the trees. I now summoned all my resolution, and determined to make another effort to prolong my existence: and, as the evening was somewhat cool, I resolved to travel as far as my limbs would carry me, in hopes of reaching (my only resource) a watering-place. With this view



I put the bridle upon my horse, and driving him before me, went slowly along for about an hour, when I perceived some lightning from the north-east—a most delightful sight, for it promised rain. The darkness and lightning increased very rapidly; and in less than an hour I heard the wind roaring behind the bushes. I had already opened my mouth to receive the refreshing drops which I expected: but I was instantly covered with a cloud of sand, driven with such force by the wind as to give a very disagreeable sensation to my face and arms; and I was obliged to mount my horse and stop under a bush to prevent being suffocated. The sand continued to fly for near an hour in amazing quantities, after which I again set forward, and traveled with difficulty until ten o'clock. About this time I was agreeably surprised by some very vivid flashes of lightning, followed by a few heavy drops of rain. In a little time the sand ceased to fly, and I alighted and spread out all my clean clothes to collect the rain, which at length I saw would certainly fall. For more than an hour it rained plentifully, and I quenched my thirst by wringing and sucking my clothes.

"There being no moon, it was remarkably dark; so that I was obliged to lead my horse, and direct my way by the compass, which the lightning enabled me to observe. In this manner I traveled with tolerable expedition until past midnight; when the lightning became more distant, and I was under the necessity of groping along, to the no small danger of my hands and eyes. About two o'clock my horse started at something; and, looking around, I was not a little surprised to see a light at a short distance among the trees, and supposing it to be a town, I groped along the sand in hopes of finding corn-stalks, cotton, or other appearances of cultivation, but found none. As I approached, I perceived a number of other lights in different places, and began to suspect that I had fallen upon a party of Moors. However, in my present situation, I was resolved to see who they were, if I could do it with safety. I accordingly led my horse cautiously toward the light, and heard by the lowing of the cattle, and the clamorous tongues of the herdsmen, that it was a watering-place, and most likely belonged to the Moors. Delightful as the sound of the human voice was to me, I resolved once more to strike into the woods, and rather run the risk of perishing with hunger, than trust myself again in their hands; but being still thirsty, and dreading the approach of the burning day, I thought it prudent to search for the wells, which I expected to find at no great distance. In this pursuit I inadvertently approached so near one of the tents as to be perceived by a woman, who immediately screamed out. The people came running to her assistance from some of the neighboring tents, and passed so very near me that I thought I was discovered, and hastened again into the woods.

"About a mile from this place I heard a loud and confused noise, somewhere to the right of my course, and in a short time was happy to find it was the croaking of frogs, which was heavenly music to my ears.

me, went slowly  
lightning from the  
in. The darkness  
an hour I heard  
opened my mouth  
but I was instantly  
by the wind as to  
arms; and I was  
prevent being suf-  
r in amazing quan-  
with difficulty until  
ised by some very  
rops of rain. In a  
spread out all my  
aw would certainly  
nd I quenched my

ark; so that I was  
compass, which the  
traveled with toler-  
tning became more  
ong, to the no small  
my horse started at  
prised to see a light  
it to be a town, I  
ks, cotton, or other  
approached, I per-  
nd began to suspect  
ver, in my present  
I could do it with  
ward the light, and  
rous tongues of the  
kely belonged to the  
ice was to me, I re-  
ther run the risk of  
in their hands; but  
t the burning day, I  
I expected to find at  
y approached so near  
an, who immediately  
istance from some of  
that I thought I was

nd and confused noise,  
rt time was happy to  
enly music to my ears.

I followed the sound, and at daybreak arrived at some shallow muddy pools, so full of frogs that it was difficult to discern the water. The noise they made frightened my horse, and I was obliged to keep them quiet by beating the water with a branch until he had drunk. Having here quenched my thirst, I ascended a tree, and the morning being clear, I soon perceived the smoke of the watering-place which I had passed in the night, and observed another pillar of smoke, east-south-east, distant twelve or fourteen miles."

Toward this column of smoke, which, as he was informed, arose from a Foulah village, he now directed his course; but on arriving at the place, was inhospitably driven from every door, except that of an old woman, who kindly received him into her dwelling, and furnished him with food for himself, and with provender for his horse. Even here, however, the influence of Ali pursued him like his evil genius. The people who had collected round him while he was eating, began, as he clearly discovered from their expressions, to form the design of carrying him back once more to Benowm or Bubaker. He therefore hastened his departure, and having wandered among the woods all day, passed the night under a tree. In this way he continued his journey, sometimes meeting with hospitality, but more frequently avoiding the dwellings of man, and subsisting upon the wild produce of the woods, and the water of a few pools, to which the croaking of the frogs directed him.

At length he entered the kingdom of Bambarra, where he found the people more hospitable in proportion as they were more opulent than their neighbors. Cultivation was here carried on in a spirited manner, and on an extensive scale, and "hunger," as the natives expressed it, "was never known." The country itself was beautiful, intersected on all sides by rivulets, which, after a rain-storm, were swelled into rapid streams. Park's horse was now so attenuated by fatigue that it appeared like a mere skeleton, which the traveler, fearing to mount, drove before him, as if to scare away the crows. The Bambarrans, whose hospitable disposition was accompanied by but little delicacy, were infinitely amused at this droll spectacle. Taking him for a Moor, they supposed from his appearance that he must be one of those religious mendicants who, having performed the pilgrimage to the holy cities, thenceforward consider themselves fully entitled to subsist upon the labors of their industrious co-religionists. "'He has been at Mecca,' said one; 'you may see that by his clothes.' Another asked if my horse was sick; a third wished to purchase it, &c. So that I believe the very slaves were ashamed to be seen in my company."

However, in spite of all this laughter and ridicule, he proceeded on his way, and at length had the satisfaction to be informed that on the morrow he should see the Niger, denominated *Joliba*, or the "Great Water," by the natives. Next morning, the 21st of July, after passing through several large villages, he saw the smoke ascend over Sego, the capital of Bambarra, and felt elate with joy at the thought of drawing

near so important an object of his mission. "As we approached the town," says Park, "I was fortunate enough to overtake the fugitive Kaartans, to whose kindness I had been so much indebted in my journey through Bambarra. They readily agreed to introduce me to the king, and we rode together through some marshy ground, where, as I anxiously looked around for the river, one of them called out *Geo affili* (see the water); and, looking forward, I saw with infinite pleasure the great object of my mission—the long sought-for, majestic Niger, glittering in the morning sun, as broad as the Thames at Westminster, and flowing slowly to the eastward. I hastened to the brink, and, having drunk of the water, lifted up my fervent thanks in prayer to the Great Ruler of all things for having thus far crowned my endeavors with success."

Sego, the capital of Bambarra, consisted of four distinct towns, two on the northern, and two on the southern bank of the Niger. The king at this period resided on the southern bank, while Park had arrived on the opposite side. The communication between the different quarters of the city was kept up by means of large canoes, which were constantly passing and repassing; notwithstanding which, so great was the pressure of passengers, that Park was compelled to wait upward of two hours before he could obtain even a chance of being ferried over. Meanwhile, the prospect before him was novel and striking in the highest degree. "The view of this extensive city," he observes, "the numerous canoes on the river, the crowded population, and the cultivated state of the surrounding country formed altogether a prospect of civilization and magnificence which I little expected to find in the bosom of Africa."

While he was thus waiting for a passage, the news was conveyed to Mansong that a white man was on the banks of the river coming to see him. The king, who seems to have been alarmed at this intelligence, immediately dispatched a messenger, who was directed to inform the stranger that he would not be admitted into the royal presence until the purport of his mission was made known; and that in the mean while, he was prohibited from passing the river. He was likewise told that the king desired him to seek lodgings in one of the villages in the vicinity of the capital. As there was no alternative, he at once set out for the village, where, to his great mortification, he found that no person would admit him into a house. "I was regarded with astonishment and fear," he observes, "and was obliged to sit all day without victuals in the shade of a tree; and the night threatened to be very uncomfortable, for the wind rose, and there was great appearance of a heavy rain; and the wild beasts were so very numerous in the neighborhood, that I should have been under the necessity of climbing up a tree, and resting among the branches. About sunset, however, as I was preparing to pass the night in this manner, and had turned my horse loose that he might graze at liberty, a woman returning from the labors

approached the  
like the fugitive  
indebted in my  
introduce me to  
ground, where,  
called out *Geo*  
with infinite pleas-  
er, majestic Niger,  
at Westminster,  
the brink, and,  
links in prayer to  
ed my endeavors

distinct towns, two  
Niger. The king  
rk had arrived on  
different quarters  
which were con-  
h, so great was the  
ait upward of two  
ing ferried over.  
d striking in the  
he observes, "the  
ation, and the cul-  
together a prospect  
cted to find in the

s was conveyed to  
river coming to see  
at this intelligence,  
cted to inform the  
royal presence until  
d that in the mean  
e was likewise told  
of the villages in the  
he at once set out  
found that no per-  
arded with astonish-  
sit all day without  
reatened to be very  
reat appearance of a  
rous in the neighbor-  
ty of climbing up a  
et, however, as I was  
d turned my horse  
ning from the labors

of the field, stopped to observe me, and perceiving that I was weary and dejected, inquired into my situation, which I briefly explained to her; whereupon, with looks of great compassion, she took up my saddle and bridle, and told me to follow her. Having conducted me into her hut, she lighted up a lamp, spread a mat upon the floor, and told me I might remain there for the night. Finding that I was very hungry, she said she would procure me something to eat; she accordingly went out, and returned in a short time with a very fine fish, which, having caused to be half-broiled upon some embers, she gave me for supper. The rites of hospitality being thus performed toward a stranger in distress, my worthy benefactress, pointing to the mat, and telling me I might sleep there without apprehension, called to the female part of her family, who had stood gazing on me all the while in fixed astonishment, to resume their task of spinning cotton, in which they continued to employ themselves a great part of the night. They lightened their labor by songs, one of which was composed extempore, for I was myself the subject of it; it was sung by one of the young women, the rest joining in a sort of chorus. The air was sweet and plaintive, and the words literally translated were these: 'The winds roared, and the rains fell; the poor white man, faint and weary, came and sat under our tree; he has no mother to bring him milk, no wife to grind his corn.' Chorus: 'Let us pity the white man, no mother has he,' &c. Trifling as this recital may appear to the reader, to a person in my situation the circumstance was affecting in the highest degree. I was so oppressed by such unexpected kindness that sleep fled my eyes. In the morning I presented my compassionate landlady with two of the four brass buttons which remained on my waistcoat, the only recompense I could make her."

Although Mansong refused to admit the traveler into his presence, and seemed at first to neglect him, it soon appeared that his conduct did not arise from any churlish or inhospitable feelings; for while he persisted in his refusal to see him, and signified his pleasure that he should forthwith depart from the city, he sent him a present of five thousand cowries, and a guide to Sansanding. Park immediately obeyed the royal command, and learned from the conversation of his guide on the way, that the king's motives for thus dismissing him without an audience were at once prudent and liberal, since he feared that by the least show of favor he should excite the jealousy of the Moorish inhabitants, from whose inveterate malice he might be unable to protect him.

With his guide he proceeded to Sansanding, where he was hospitably received by the dooty, and would, as the king's stranger, have enjoyed much quiet and consideration, had he not the misfortune to meet with some of his old enemies, the Moors, who insisted on conducting him to the mosque, and converting him into a Mohammedan at once. However, the dooty, by exerting his authority, freed him from these fanatics, and ordered a sheep to be killed, and part of it dressed for his supper. "About midnight, when the Moors had left me," says Park, "he paid

me a visit, and with much earnestness desired me to write him a *saphie*, (charm). 'If a Moor's saphie is good,' said this hospitable old man, 'a white man's must needs be better.' I readily furnished him with one possessed of all the virtues I could concentrate, for it contained the Lord's Prayer. The pen with which it was written was made of a reed, a little charcoal and gum-water made very tolerable ink, and a thin board answered the purpose of paper."

From Sansanding he departed early in the morning, before the Moors were stirring. The road now lay through the woods, and the guide, who understood the dangers of the way, moved forward with the greatest circumspection, frequently stopping and looking under the bushes. Upon observing this, Park inquired the reason, and was told that the lions were very plentiful in that part of the country, and often attacked travelers in the woods. While they were conversing on this subject, Park discovered a giraffe at a little distance. "Shortly after this," says he, "as we were crossing a large open plain, where there were a few scattered bushes, my guide, who was a little way before me, wheeled his horse round in a moment, calling out something in the Foulah language which I did not understand. I inquired in Mandingo what he meant. 'Wara billi billi' (a very large lion) ! said he, and made signs for me to ride away. But my horse was too much fatigued; so we rode slowly past the bush from which the animal had given us the alarm. Not seeing any thing myself, however, I thought my guide had been mistaken, when the Foulah suddenly put his hand to his mouth, exclaiming, 'God preserve us,' and to my great surprise I then perceived a large red lion, at a short distance from the bush, with his head couched between his fore-paws. I expected he would instantly spring upon me, and instinctively pulled my feet from my stirrups to throw myself on the ground, that my horse might become the victim rather than myself. But it is probable the lion was not hungry; for he quietly suffered us to pass, though we were fairly within his reach."

About sunset they arrived at Moodiboo, "a delightful village on the banks of the Niger, commanding a view of the river for many miles, both to the east and west. The small green islands, the peaceful retreat of some industrious Foulahs, whose cattle were here secure from the attacks of wild beasts, and the majestic breadth of the river, which is here much larger than at Sego, render the situation one of the most enchanting in the world." Park was now so worn out with fatigue and suffering, that his landlord, fearing he might die in his house, hurried him away though he was scarcely able to walk, and his horse still less able to carry him. In fact, they had not proceeded far before the poor beast fell down, and could no more be made to rise; so that, taking off his saddle and bridle, our traveler with extreme reluctance abandoned him to his fate, and began to toil along on foot after his guide. In this way they reached Kea, a small fishing village on the Niger, where Park em-

write him a *saphie*,  
pitiable old man, 'a  
shed him with one  
r it contained the  
was made of a reed,  
ble ink, and a thin  
g, before the Moors  
ods, and the guide,  
ward with the great-  
under the bushes.  
I was told that the  
and often attacked  
ing on this subject,  
rtly after this," says  
e there were a few  
fore me, wheeled his  
he Foulah language  
go what he meant.  
ade signs for me to  
; so we rode slowly  
he alarm. Not see-  
had been mistaken,  
h, exclaiming, 'God  
ved a large red lion,  
ouched between his  
pon me, and instinct-  
self on the ground,  
n myself. But it is  
suffered us to pass,

ightful village on the  
river for many miles,  
t, the peaceful retreat  
e secure from the at-  
e river, which is here  
of the most enchant-  
th fatigue and suffer-  
s house, hurried him  
horse still less able to  
before the poor beast  
o that, taking off his  
stance abandoned him  
s guide. In this way  
iger, where Park em-

barked in a fisherman's canoe which was going down the stream, while the guide returned to Sego.

In this canoe he reached Moorzan, whence he was conveyed across the river to Silla, a large town on the opposite shore. It was with great difficulty that he here obtained admission into the strangers' room of the dooty's house, a damp, uncomfortable place, where he had a severe paroxysm of fever during the night. Here his resolution and energy, of which no traveler possessed a larger share, began at length to fail. No hope of success remained. He therefore, with extreme sorrow and anguish of mind, determined on returning. His own simple and manly account of the matter can not fail to impress even the most insensible with veneration for a degree of courage and intrepidity amounting to heroism. "Worn down by sickness, exhausted by hunger and fatigue, half-naked, and without any article of value by which I might procure provisions, clothes, or lodging, I began," says Park, "to reflect seriously on my situation. I was now convinced by painful experience, that the obstacles to my further progress were insurmountable. The tropical rains had already set in with all their violence; the rice-grounds and swamps were already overflowed; and, in a few days more, traveling of every kind except by water would be completely obstructed. The cowries which remained of the King of Bambarra's present were not sufficient to hire a canoe for any great distance; and I had but little hopes of subsisting by charity in a country where the Moors have such influence. But, above all, I perceived I was advancing more and more within the power of those merciless fanatics; and from my reception both at Sego and Sansanding, I was apprehensive that, in attempting to reach even Jenne—unless under the protection of some man of consequence among them, which I had no means of obtaining—I should sacrifice my life to no purpose; for my discoveries would perish with me. The prospect either way was gloomy. In returning to the Gambia, a journey on foot of many hundred miles presented itself to my contemplation, through regions and countries unknown. Nevertheless, this seemed to me the only alternative; for I saw inevitable destruction in attempting to proceed to the eastward. With this conviction on my mind, I hope my readers will acknowledge I did right in going no further. I had made every exertion, to execute my mission in its fullest extent, which prudence could justify. Had there been the most distant prospect of a successful termination, neither the unavoidable hardships of the journey nor the dangers of a second captivity should have forced me to desist. This, however, necessity compelled me to do."

When he had come to this resolution, he thought it incumbent upon him, before he left Silla, to collect whatever information might be within his reach respecting the further course of the Niger, and the situation and extent of the various kingdoms in its vicinity. Subsequent travelers have solved the problem, the honor of explaining which was denied to Park. We now know that this great river, after flowing to a consider-



able distance eastward of Timbuctoo, makes a bend to the south, and, after pursuing a south-westerly course, falls into the Atlantic Ocean on the coast of Benin.

On the 30th of July he commenced his return westward, by the same route through which he had reached Silla. In a few days he recovered his horse, which had in some measure regained its strength, though it was still too weak to be ridden. The rainy season having now set in, the whole of the plain country was quickly inundated; so that he was often in danger of losing his way while traversing savannahs many miles in extent, knee-deep in water. In several places he waded breast-deep across the swamps. The huts of the villages in which he passed the night, being undermined or softened by the rain, often fell in; and the noise of their fall sometimes kept him awake, expecting that his own might be the next. His situation was now even worse than during his progress eastward. A report had been widely circulated that he was a spy, in consequence of which he was in some places civilly refused admittance into the towns, in others repulsed from the gates with violence; so that he now appeared inevitably doomed to perish with hunger. However, when the fatal hour seemed at hand, some charitable being always appeared with a poor but seasonable supply, such, perhaps, as a little raw corn, which prolonged his life, and supplied him with strength to achieve his memorable journey. "On the evening of the 15th of August, I arrived," says Park, "at a small village called Song, the surly inhabitants of which would not receive me, nor so much as permit me to enter the gate; but as lions were very numerous in this neighborhood, and I had frequently in the course of the day seen the impression of their feet upon the road, I resolved to stay in the vicinity of the village. Having collected some grass for my horse, I accordingly lay down under a tree by the gate. About ten o'clock I heard the hollow roar of a lion at no great distance, and attempted to open the gate; but the people from within told me that no person must attempt to enter without the dooty's permission. I begged them to inform the dooty that a lion was approaching the village, and I hoped he would allow me to come within the gate. I waited for an answer to this message with great anxiety; for the lion kept prowling round the village, and once advanced so near me that I heard him rustling among the grass, and climbed a tree for safety. About midnight the dooty with some of his people opened the gate, and desired me to come in. They were convinced, they said, I was not a Moor; for no Moor ever waited so long at the gate of a village, without cursing the inhabitants."

The history of this journey now becomes nothing more than a repetition of similar sufferings. Hunger, fatigue, and depression of spirits attack the traveler by turns. Nothing, however, subdues his courage. Obstacle after obstacle yields to his persevering intrepidity, and he pushes forward with invincible ardor toward the coast. In one place, at the request of a native who had grown opulent by industrious application to

ARK.

to the south, and,  
Atlantic Ocean on

ward, by the same  
days he recovered  
length, though it was  
now set in, the  
that he was often  
ahs many miles in  
waded breast-deep  
which he passed the  
ten fell in; and the  
cting that his own  
rse than during his  
lated that he was a  
s civilly refused ad-  
gates with violence;  
erish with hunger.  
me charitable being  
, such, perhaps, as a  
d him with strength  
ning of the 15th of  
alled Song, the surly  
much as permit me to  
n this neighborhood,  
he impression of their  
y of the village. Hav-  
ly lay down under a  
ollow roar of a lion at  
; but the people from  
er without the dooty's  
at a lion was approach-  
come within the gate.  
t anxiety; for the lion  
ed so near me that I  
bed a tree for safety.  
e opened the gate, and  
they said, I was not a  
ate of a village, without

ing more than a repeti-  
depression of spirits at-  
r, subdues his courage.  
atrepidity, and he pushes

In one place, at the re-  
dustrious application to



RAPIDS OF THE NIGER.



RAPIDS OF THE NIGER.

com  
triv  
of v  
to h  
Ban  
trav  
favc  
ger  
our  
pell  
the  
beir  
and  
hor

Sibi  
koo  
that  
him  
whe  
nigl  
ante  
but  
arre  
to f  
of t  
imm  
me  
as f  
hat  
tim  
met  
into  
the  
to f  
anc  
mo  
und  
last  
tho  
rein  
I be  
whe  
ban  
swc  
upo

commerce, he wrote charms for a good supper; and, finding the contrivance productive, continued the practice next day for small presents of various kinds. On other occasions, where superstition did not come to his aid, humanity interposed, and snatched him from starvation. At Bammakoo he was hospitably treated, even by a Moor, who, having traveled to Rio Grande, had conversed with Christians, and conceived a favorable idea of their character. The rains had now increased the Niger to a vast size, and rendered impassable almost every road; but, as our traveler's finances had long been exhausted, he found himself compelled to proceed, the charity of the natives not extending so far as to the maintaining of a stranger for several months. The ordinary roads being obstructed by the rains, the only practicable route, wild, dreary, and desolate, lay over sterile, rocky mountains, which, it was feared, a horse could not pass.

Finding that a singing-man was about to proceed by this road to Sibidooloo, Park placed himself under his guidance, and quitted Bammakoo. He had not proceeded far, however, before his companion, finding that he had taken the wrong path, escaped among the rocks, and left him to find his way as he best might. He soon arrived at a village, where he was entertained with hospitality, and where he passed the night. Next day, as he was quietly pursuing his course, a troop of peasants presented themselves, whom he at first took for elephant-hunters, but who very shortly proved themselves to be banditti. Pretending to arrest him in the name of the King of the Foulahs, they commanded him to follow them, until, having reached a dark, lonely part of a wood, one of them exclaimed in the Mandingo language, "This place will do!" and immediately snatched his hat from his head. "Though I was by no means free from apprehension," says Park, "yet I was resolved to show as few signs of fear as possible; and therefore told them, that unless my hat was returned to me I should proceed no further. But before I had time to receive an answer another drew a knife, and, seizing upon a metal button which remained upon my waistcoat, cut it off, and put it into his pocket. Their intentions were now obvious; and I thought that the easier they were permitted to rob me of every thing, the less I had to fear. I therefore allowed them to search my pockets without resistance, and examine every part of my apparel, which they did with the most scrupulous exactness. But, observing that I had one waistcoat under another, they insisted that I should cast them both off; and at last, to make sure work, stripped me quite naked. Even my half-boots, though the sole of one of them was tied on to my foot with a broken bridle-rein, were minutely inspected. While they were examining the plunder, I begged them with great earnestness to return my pocket-compass; but when I pointed it out to them, as it was lying on the ground, one of the banditti, thinking I was about to take it up, cocked his musket, and swore he would lay me dead upon the spot if I presumed to put my hand upon it. After this, some of them went away with my horse, and the



remainder stood considering whether they should leave me quite naked, or allow me something to shelter me from the sun. Humanity at last prevailed; they returned me the worst of the two shirts and a pair of trousers; and, as they went away, one of them threw back my hat, in the crown of which I kept my memorandums; and this was probably the reason why they did not wish to keep it."

This was the most terrible misfortune that had hitherto befallen him, and at first his mind appeared to sink under the united influence of grief and terror. For awhile he sat in sullen dejection, half-persuaded that he had no alternative but to lie down and perish. Presently, however, a reliance upon Providence succeeded this extreme dejection, and his mind gradually regained its tone:—"I was, indeed, a stranger," he thought, "in a strange land; yet I was still under the protecting eye of that Providence who has condescended to call himself the stranger's friend. At this moment, painful as my reflections were, the extraordinary beauty of a small moss in fructification irresistibly caught my eye. I mention this to show from what trifling circumstances the mind will sometimes derive consolation; for though the whole plant was not larger than the top of one of my fingers, I could not contemplate the delicate conformation of its roots, leaves, and capsule, without admiration. Can that being, thought I, who planted, watered, and brought to perfection, in this obscure part of the world, a thing which appears of so small importance, look with unconcern upon the situation and sufferings of creatures formed after his own image? Surely not! Reflections like these would not allow me to despair; I started up, and, disregarding both danger and fatigue, traveled forward, assured that relief was at hand; and I was not disappointed."

On arriving at Sibidooloo, Park related to the mansa, or chief of the town, the misfortune which had befallen him. This humane and excellent man, having heard him patiently to an end, took the pipe from his mouth, and tossing up the sleeve of his coat with an indignant air, "Sit down," said he, "you shall have every thing restored to you; I have sworn it." He then took the necessary measures for the recovery of the traveler's property, and invited him to partake of his hospitable fare until this should have been effected. After spending a few days at this place, without hearing any news of his horse or other property, our traveler removed to a distant village, where he remained until the whole was discovered and restored to him, with the exception of his pocket-compass, which had been broken to pieces. Having nothing else to bestow upon his hospitable landlords, he gave his horse to one, and his saddle and bridle to the other: and then taking his leave, proceeded on foot to Kamalia, where he arrived on the 16th of September. At this town, romantically situated at the foot of a lofty mountain, he found a slave-merchant, who, intending to descend to the coast with a small caravan in the beginning of the dry season, offered the traveler an asylum until he should set out. Conceiving that it would be impossible to proceed

PARK.

me quite naked,  
Humanity at last  
hirts and a pair of  
w back my hat, in  
this was probably

herto befallen him,  
ed influence of grief  
f-persuaded that he  
esently, however, a  
ection, and his mind  
anger," he thought,  
tecting eye of that  
e stranger's friend.  
extraordinary beauty  
my eye. I mention  
mind will sometimes  
not larger than the  
ne delicate conforma-  
miration. Can that  
ght to perfection, in  
ars of so small import-  
ufferings of creatures  
tions like these would  
ding both danger and  
at hand; and I was

mansa, or chief of the  
his humane and excel-  
took the pipe from his  
an indignant air, "Sit  
tored to you; I have  
for the recovery of the  
his hospitable fare un-  
ing a few days at this  
her property, our trav-  
ained until the whole  
ception of his pocket-  
ing nothing else to be-  
se to one, and his sad-  
eave, proceeded on foot  
ember. At this town,  
tain, he found a slave-  
st with a small caravan  
traveler an asylum until  
e impossible to proceed

during the rains, Park accepted his kind proposal, and promised in return to give him the price of a slave upon their arrival on the coast. Here a fever, which had for some time menaced him, manifested itself with great violence, and continued to torment him during the whole season of the rains. His landlord, meanwhile, exerted himself to keep up his hopes, and having by some means or another obtained possession of an English Common Prayer Book, he communicated the use of it to Park, who was thus enabled to beguile the gloomy hours of his solitude and sickness. At length the rains became less frequent, and the fever abated, so that he could move out and enjoy the fresh air in the fields.



KAMALIA.

On the 19th of April, after Park had remained seven months at Kamalia, Karfa, the slave-merchant, having collected his slaves, and completed all necessary preparations, set out toward the coast, taking the traveler, to whom his behavior had always been marked by the greatest kindness, along with him. Their road led them across the Jallonka wilderness, where the sufferings of every member of the caravan, and more particularly of the slaves, were most exquisite; but affliction was far from having taught them commiseration, for a fine young female slave, fainting from fatigue, had no sooner signified her inability to go on, than the universal cry of the caravan was, "Cut her throat, cut her throat." By the interposition of Karfa her life was spared, but she was abandoned on the road, where she was, no doubt, soon devoured by wild beasts. At length, after a long, toilsome journey, Karfa succeeded

in fulfilling his promise, and conducted Park safe to Pisania, which he reached on the 10th of June, and where the good old man was overwhelmed with the gratitude of his guest. Park now took his passage in an American vessel, and on arriving in the West Indies, quitted this ship for a packet bound for Falmouth, where he arrived on the 22d of December, 1797, after an absence of two years and seven months.

Immediately on his landing, he hastened to London, where he arrived before daylight on the morning of Christmas day. It being too early an hour to call on his brother-in-law, Mr. Dickson, he strolled about for some time in the neighboring streets. At length, finding one of the entrances into the gardens of the British Museum accidentally open, he went in and walked about there for some time. It happened that Mr. Dickson, who had the care of those gardens, went there early that morning on some trifling business. What must have been his emotions on beholding, at that extraordinary time and place, the vision, as it must at first have appeared, of his long-lost friend, the object of so many anxious reflections, and whom he had long numbered with the dead.

He was now received with distinguished honor by the African Association, and the various literary men whom he met with in London. In the mean time his travels, which the Association permitted him to publish on his own account, were announced; and both during his stay in London, and the visit which he paid to his friends in Scotland, all his leisure hours were devoted to the compiling and arranging of the materials for the work. It appeared in the spring of 1799, and immediately acquired that degree of popularity which it has ever since maintained.

Soon after the publication of his travels, which became at once exceedingly popular and profitable, Park again returned to Scotland, where, on the 2d of August, 1799, he married one of the daughters of Mr. Anderson, of Selkirk, with whom he had served his apprenticeship. For the two following years he resided on the farm at Fowlshiels with his mother and one of his brothers. He then removed to the town of Peebles, where he resumed the practice of his profession, and in a short time acquired a good share of the business of the place. His kindness and charity greatly endeared him to the poor of the district, though he was considered haughty and reserved by strangers, who were apt to annoy him with their questions. He soon began to tire, however, of the obscure life of a country surgeon; the fascination of Africa was upon him, and he longed to return to the scene of his dangers and sufferings. When one of his relatives, a short time before his departure on his second expedition, expostulated with him on his rashness and imprudence, he replied that a few inglorious winters of country practice at Peebles was a risk as great, and would tend as effectually to shorten life, as his proposed journey. The British government twice offered him the command of an expedition to explore the interior of Australia, which he declined. After the preliminaries of peace with France had been signed, in October, 1801, Sir Joseph Banks wrote to him informing him that the

Pisania, which he  
d man was over-  
took his passage  
dies, quitted this  
ed on the 22d of  
ven months.  
where he arrived  
being too early  
strolled about for  
finding one of the  
identally open, he  
happened that Mr.  
re early that morn-  
en his emotions on  
vision, as it must  
object of so many  
with the dead.  
y the African Asso-  
ith in London. In  
mitted him to pub-  
during his stay in  
in Scotland, all his  
anging of the mate-  
0, and immediately  
r since maintained.  
became at once ex-  
to Scotland, where,  
ughters of Mr. An-  
pprenticeship. For  
Fowlshiels with his  
to the town of Pee-  
, and in a short time  
His kindness and  
strict, though he was  
were apt to annoy  
however, of the ob-  
Africa was upon him,  
gers and sufferings.  
departure on his se-  
ess and imprudence,  
y practice at Peebles  
to shorten life, as his  
offered him the com-  
f Australia, which he  
ance had been signed,  
nforming him that the

African Association intended reviving their project for an exploration of the Niger, and that, in case government should enter into the plan, he would be recommended as the most proper person to carry it into execution. Park remained in suspense for two years, when Lord Hobart, who was then connected with the Colonial Department, made him a formal proposal on the part of the government. He accepted at once, and in December, 1803, left Scotland with the expectation of soon embarking for Africa.

On account of political changes the expedition was given up, after several of the troops destined for the service had already been embarked at Portsmouth. Park was informed that nothing could be done until the following September, and was recommended to study the Arabic language in the mean time, and to exercise himself in taking astronomical observations. He employed a native of Mogador as a teacher, and returned to Scotland, where he remained during the spring and summer of 1804. Sir Walter Scott was at that time residing near Fowlshiels, and the traveler and author soon became friends. Scott relates that, calling upon Park one day and not finding him at home, he walked in search of him along the banks of the Yarrow. In a short time he found him employed in plunging large stones into the river, and attentively watching the bubbles as they rose to the surface. On being asked why he persevered so long in this singular amusement, Park answered: "This was the manner in which I used to ascertain the depth of a river in Africa, before I ventured to cross it, judging whether the attempt would be safe by the time which the bubbles of air took to ascend."

On leaving Fowlshiels for the last time in September, 1804, Park was extremely affected, and would not venture to trust his own feelings or those of his family, with a formal parting. He left them, as if with the intention of returning, alleging that he had particular business at Edinburg, whence he sent them his last farewell. Scott describes, in feeling terms, the manner of his last parting with his friend. Just before quitting Fowlshiels, Park paid him a visit and slept at his house. The next morning, Scott accompanied him part of the way on his return, and they rode together over the wild chain of pastoral hills which divide the Tweed from the Yarrow. Park talked much of his new African expedition, and mentioned his determination of going straight from Edinburg, without returning to take leave of his family. They were then on the top of a lofty hill which overlooked the course of the Yarrow, and the autumnal mist, which floated heavily and slowly down the valley beneath them, presented to Scott's imagination a striking emblem of the troubled and uncertain prospect which Park's undertaking afforded. He endeavored to present its dangers to his friend's mind, but Park had a ready answer for every thing. Thus discussing the plan, they came to a road where it had been agreed they should separate. A small ditch divided the moor from the road: in going over it, Park's horse stumbled, and nearly fell. "I am afraid, Mungo, that is a bad

omen," said Scott; to which Park answered, smiling: "*Freita* (omens) follow those who look for them." With this proverbial saying, and afraid of a formal adieu, he rode away and was speedily out of sight.

At the close of the year 1804, after much delay and uncertainty, the expedition was finally determined on, and Park received from Lord Camden his appointment as its chief conductor. "For the better enabling you to execute this service," says his lordship, "his majesty has granted you the brevet commission of captain in Africa, and has also granted a similar commission of lieutenant to Mr. Alexander Anderson, whom you have recommended as a proper person to accompany you. Mr. Scott has also been selected to attend you as draughtsman. You are hereby empowered to enlist with you for this expedition any number you think proper of the garrison at Goree, not exceeding forty-five, which the commandant of that island will be ordered to place under your command, giving them such bounties or encouragement as may be necessary to induce them cheerfully to join with you in the expedition."

Five thousand pounds were at the same time placed at Park's disposal, and further directions given him respecting the course and line of conduct he was expected to pursue. With these instructions Park and his companions proceeded to Portsmouth, where they were joined by four or five artificers, appointed for the service from the dock-yards. They sailed on the 30th of January, 1805, and after touching at St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verde Islands, to purchase asses, reached Goree on the 28th of March. Double pay was offered to the soldiers during the expedition, with a discharge on their return, and these inducements were so great that the whole garrison volunteered. Thirty-five were chosen, and placed under the command of Lieutenant Martyn of the royal artillery corps, who had also volunteered for the service. The expedition now being organized, left Goree on the 6th of April, the soldiers cheering loudly and joyously as they jumped into the boats.

On arriving at Kayee, a small town on the Gambia River, Park engaged a Mandingo priest, named Isaaco, who was also a traveling merchant, and much accustomed to long inland journeys, to serve as guide to his caravan. On the 27th of April, he left Kayee, and arrived in two days at Pisanía, from whence he had set out for the interior of Africa nearly ten years before. Some of the practical difficulties of the march had become very apparent during this short journey, since he found it necessary to halt at Pisanía six days, to procure additional beasts of burden. He soon found, also, that the soldiers, whose appearance had pleased him so much at Goree, were physically inferior to the work required of them, while in sobriety, steadiness, and good discipline, they were sadly deficient. Finally every thing was arranged, and they left Pisanía on the 4th of May. The party consisted of Park, his brother-in-law Anderson, to whom a lieutenant's commission was given; Lieutenant Martyn; George Scott, draughtsman; forty soldiers, sailors,

g: "Freita (omens)  
verbial saying, and  
lily out of sight.

y and uncertainty,  
received from Lord  
"For the better en-  
n, "his majesty has  
Africa, and has also  
Alexander Anderson,  
to accompany you.  
draughtsman. You  
expedition any num-  
not exceeding forty-  
be ordered to place  
or encouragement as  
with you in the ex-

placed at Park's dis-  
the course and line  
se instructions Park  
ere they were joined  
from the dock-yards.  
after touching at St.  
so asses, reached Go-  
fered to the soldiers  
return, and these in-  
volunteered. Thirty-  
f Lieutenant Martyn  
ered for the service.  
on the 6th of April,  
umped into the boats.  
mbia River, Park en-  
was also a traveling  
journeys, to serve as  
t Kayee, and arrived  
out for the interior of  
ical difficulties of the  
ort journey, since he  
to procure additional  
oldiers, whose appear-  
sically inferior to the  
s, and good discipline,  
as arranged, and they  
nsisted of Park, his  
ommission was given;  
forty soldiers, sailors,

and carpenters, and Isaaco, the guide. They had much trouble with the asses, at the start; some lay down, others kicked off their loads, and it became necessary to increase their number still further. They passed Medina, the capital of the kingdom of Woolli, and advanced slowly eastward—much too slowly, in fact, for the rainy season was fast approaching, and Park was anxious to reach the Niger before the intervening rivers should become impassable.

At Bady, a town on the interior frontier of Woolli, they were led into a quarrel with the *faramba*, or chief of the town, respecting the amount of duties to be paid by their caravan, in which, though the conduct of the African was rude and peremptory, the travelers were clearly in the wrong. A few days after this affair the caravan had an adventure with a new species of enemy. On the 24th of May they reached a place which they denominated Bee's Creek, where they halted with the intention of encamping there. "We had no sooner unloaded the asses at the creek," says Park, "than some of Isaaco's people, being in search of honey, unfortunately disturbed a large swarm of bees near where the coffee had halted. The bees came out in immense numbers, and attacked men and beasts at the same time. Luckily, most of the asses were loose, and galloped up the valley; but the horses and people were very much stung, and obliged to scamper in all directions. The fire which had been kindled for cooking, having been deserted, spread and set fire to the bamboos; and our baggage had like to have been burned. In fact, for half an hour the bees seemed to have put an end to our journey. In the evening, when the bees became less troublesome, and we could venture to collect our cattle, we found that many of them were very much stung and swelled about the head. Three asses were missing; one died in the evening and one next morning, and we were compelled to leave one at Sibikillin; in all six: besides which, our guide lost his horse, and many of the people were very much stung about the face and hands."

About the middle of June the rains began to set in, accompanied by violent tornadoes. The earth was quickly covered with water. The soldiers were affected with vomiting, or with an irresistible inclination to sleep. Park himself was affected in a similar manner during the storm, and, notwithstanding that he used every exertion to keep away heaviness, at length fell asleep on the damp ground. The soldiers did the same thing. In the morning twelve of them were sick. In this vicinity he saw many pits, from which gold was obtained in large quantities by washing. As the caravan proceeded, many of the soldiers growing delirious, or too weak to continue the march, were left behind to the care of the natives; while others died on the road, or were drowned in the rivers. Some, still more unfortunate if possible, were lost in the woods, where they were no doubt devoured by wild beasts. Meanwhile the natives, who imagined that the caravan contained prodigious wealth, hung upon their march, plundered them at every turn,



and as often as they appeared too weak to resist, endeavored to extort presents from them.

The condition of the men now became desperate. Day after day some poor wretch was abandoned to his fate, some in one way, some in another. One example of this kind may serve for the whole. "Three miles east of the village of Koombandi," says Park, "William Alston, one of the seamen whom I received from his majesty's ship *Squirrel*, became so faint that he fell from his ass, and allowed the ass to run away. Set him on my horse, but found he could not sit without holding him. Replaced him on the ass, but he still tumbled off. Put him again on the horse, and made one man hold him upright while I led the horse; but, as he made no exertion to hold himself erect, it was impossible to keep him on the horse, and after repeated tumbles he begged to be left in the woods till morning. I left a loaded pistol with him, and put some cartridges into the crown of his hat." The next day this man came up with the company, entirely naked, having been plundered by the natives. His health appeared to improve for some days, but he afterward grew worse again, and died before reaching the Niger.

In crossing the Wondu the caravan was nearly deprived of its guide in the following manner. "Our guide, Isaaco, was very active in pushing the asses into the water, and shoving along the canoe; but as he was afraid that we could not have them all carried over in the course of the day, he attempted to drive six of the asses across the river further down, where the water was shallower. When he had reached the middle of the river, a crocodile rose close to him, and instantly seizing him by the left thigh, pulled him under water. With wonderful presence of mind he felt the head of the animal, and thrust his finger into its eyes, on which it quitted its hold, and Isaaco attempted to reach the further shore, calling loudly for a knife. But the crocodile returned and seized him by the other thigh, and again pulled him under water; he had recourse to the same expedient, and thrust his fingers into its eyes with such violence that it again quitted him; when it arose, flounced about on the surface of the water as if stupid, and then swam down the middle of the river. Isaaco proceeded to the other side, bleeding very much."

This event retarded for several days the march of the caravan. Besides, Park himself was attacked with fever, and their provisions, moreover, were now reduced to so low an ebb, that upon examination it was found that no more than rice for two days remained in their possession. This deficiency was, therefore, to be immediately supplied. Two persons were sent away with an ass to a distant village for rice, and in the mean time Park devoted his attentions to the wounds of the guide. The audacity of the native thieves was extraordinary. In ascending an eminence two miles from Maniakono, Park himself was robbed in a very characteristic manner:—"As I was holding my musket carelessly in my hand, and looking around," says he, "two of Numma's sons came up to me; one of them requested me to give him some snuff; at this instant

avored to extort

Day after day  
one way, some in  
whole. "Three  
"William Alston,  
y's ship *Squirrel*,  
ed the ass to run  
t sit without hold-  
led off. Put him  
ght while I led the  
rect, it was impos-  
umbles he begged  
l pistol with him,  
The next day this  
ng been plundered  
some days, but he  
the Niger.  
prived of its guide  
ery active in push-  
canoe; but as he  
over in the course  
ss the river further  
reached the middle  
ntly seizing him by  
nderful presence of  
finger into its eyes,  
to reach the further  
returned and seized  
water; he had re-  
into its eyes with  
rose, flounced about  
am down the middle  
leading very much."  
of the caravan. Be-  
their provisions, more-  
examination it was  
l in their possession.  
supplied. Two per-  
e for rice, and in the  
s of the guide. The  
In ascending an emi-  
was robbed in a very  
sket carelessly in my  
ma's sons came up to  
snuff; at this instant

the other (called Woosaba), coming up behind me, snatched the musket from my hand, and ran off with it. I instantly sprung from the saddle and followed him with my sword, calling to Mr. Anderson to ride back, and tell some of the people to look after my horse. Mr. Anderson got within musket-shot of him; but, seeing it was Numma's son, had some doubts about shooting him, and called to me if he should fire. Luckily I did not hear him, or I might possibly have recovered my musket at the risk of a long palaver, and perhaps the loss of half our baggage. The thief accordingly made his escape among the rocks; and when I returned to my horse, I found the other of the royal descendants had stolen my coat."

Their condition was now exceedingly distressing. From the 10th of June, when the rainy season set in, the entries in Park's journal are truly heart-rending. On the 20th of July he writes: "Francis Beedle, one of the soldiers, was evidently dying, and having in vain attempted to carry him over the river, I was forced to leave him on the west bank. In the morning one of the soldiers crossed the bridge, and found Beedle expiring. Did not stop to bury him, the sun being high; but set out immediately. About half-past ten came to Mr. Scott lying by the side of the road, so very sick that he could not walk. Shortly after, Mr. Martyn laid down in the same state." On the 27th, five men were left behind; on the 30th, he writes: "Was under the necessity of leaving William Allen, sick. I regretted much leaving this man; he had naturally a cheerful disposition; and he used often to beguile the watches of the night with the songs of our dear native land." On the 10th of August four more men lagged behind, and were never heard of again; on the 12th, two more, and Mr. Anderson appeared to be dying. Park halted with him under a tree, watching his fluttering pulse, until his strength appeared to return. He then placed him upon his own horse, and pushed forward toward their proposed resting-place, leading the horse by the bridle. "We had not proceeded above a mile," says Park, "before we heard on our left a noise very much like the barking of a large mastiff, but ending in a hiss like the fuff\* of a cat. I thought it must be some large monkey; and was observing to Mr. Anderson, 'What a bouncing fellow that must be,' when we heard another bark nearer to us, and presently a third still nearer, accompanied with a growl. I now suspected some wild beast meant to attack us, but could not conjecture of what species it was likely to be. We had not proceeded a hundred yards further, when, coming to an opening in the bushes, I was not a little surprised to see three lions coming toward us. They were not so red as the lion I had formerly seen in Bambarra, but of a dusky color, like that of an ass. They were very large, and came bounding over the long grass, not one after another, but all abreast of each other. I was afraid, if I allowed them to come too near us, and my piece should miss

\* *Fuff* is an expressive Scotch word, applicable in its original sense to the explosive noise which a cat makes in flying at a dog.

fire, that we should all be devoured by them. I therefore let go the bridle, and walked forward to meet them. As soon as they were within a long shot of me, I fired at the center one. I do not think I hit him; but they all stopped, looked at each other, and then bounded away a few paces, when one of them stopped and looked back at me. I was too busy in loading my piece to observe their motions as they went away, and was very happy to see the last of them march slowly off among the bushes. We had not proceeded above half a mile further when we heard another bark and growl close to us among the bushes. This was, doubtless, one of the lions before seen; and I was afraid they would follow us till dark, when they would have too many opportunities of springing on us unawares. We however heard no more of them."

At length, from the brow of a hill, Park had once more the satisfaction of beholding the Niger, rolling its immense stream along the plain. It was the 19th of August, 1805, one hundred and five days after starting from Pisanía. But he was in no mood of mind to triumph at the sight. The majority of his companions had fallen on the way; of thirty-four soldiers and four carpenters who left the Gambia, only six soldiers and one carpenter reached the Niger. With this miserable remnant of his original force he descended the hill, and pitched his tents near the town of Bambakoo. After a day or two he advanced to Marraboo to await the answer of the King of Bambarra. On the 2d of September he writes: "Ever since my arrival at Marraboo I had been subject to attacks of the dysentery; and as I found that my strength was failing very fast, I resolved to charge myself with mercury. I accordingly took calomel till it affected my mouth to such a degree that I could not speak or sleep for six days. The salivation put an immediate stop to the dysentery, which had proved fatal to so many of the soldiers." On the 6th one of his remaining men died, two others at Samee on the 24th, and yet two more at Sansanding on the 2d of October. At Bambakoo some of the party embarked in canoes on the Niger, while others proceeded by land to the neighborhood of Sego, which they reached on the 19th of September. Mansong was still King of Bambarra; and being highly gratified with their presents, not only gave them permission to build a boat on the Niger at whatever town they pleased, but engaged to protect, as far as his power extended, the trade of the whites in the interior. Park selected Sansanding as the place most eligible for building the boat, and removed thither as quickly as possible. Here immediately on his arrival he opened a shop, exhibiting a choice assortment of European goods, which sold so well among the natives that his success excited the envy of the Jenné people, the Moors, and the other merchants of the place, who offered Mansong merchandise to a much greater value than the presents made him by Park, if he would either kill the strangers or drive them out of the country. Mansong, however, rejected the offer. "From the 8th to the 16th nothing of consequence occurred; I found my shop every day more and more crowded with customers; and such was my run of busi-

ness, that I was sometimes forced to employ three tellers at once to count my cash. I turned one market-day twenty-five thousand seven hundred and fifty-six pieces of money (cowries)."

Park now received intelligence of the death of Mr. Scott, who had been left behind near Bambakoo. Mansong very soon convinced the traveler that he understood the art of receiving presents much better than that of returning them; for upon being requested to furnish a canoe in which the mission, now reduced to a very small number, might embark on the Niger, he sent one after another several half-rotten barks; two of which Park, seeing no hope of getting better, was at length compelled to accept, and with these he constructed what he termed a schooner. Shortly after this he lost his brother-in-law Anderson, upon whose death "I felt myself," says he, "as if left a second time lonely and friendless amid the wilds of Africa." Dreary and perilous as was his position, however, he still determined to persevere. His companions were now reduced to four, Lieutenant Martyn and three soldiers, one of whom was deranged in his mind; yet with this wretched remnant of a detachment which, it must be confessed, had been thus thinned, or rather annihilated, by his own ill management and want of foresight, he purposed following the course of the Niger to its termination, whether that should prove to be in some great lake or inland sea, or, as he rather believed, in the Atlantic Ocean. "And this voyage," says one of his biographers, "one of the most formidable ever attempted, was to be undertaken in a crazy and ill-appointed vessel, manned by a few negroes and a few Europeans!"

On the 16th of November, having completed all the necessary preparations for his voyage, our traveler put the finishing hand to his journal; and in the interval, between that and his embarkation, which seems to have taken place on the 19th, wrote several letters to England. His letter to Lord Camden contained the following characteristic passage: "I am afraid that your Lordship will be apt to consider matters as in a very hopeless state; but I assure you I am far from desponding. With the assistance of one of the soldiers I have changed a large canoe into a tolerably good schooner, on board of which I this day hoisted the British flag, and shall set sail to the east with the fixed resolution to discover the termination of the Niger, or perish in the attempt. I have heard nothing that I can depend on respecting the remote course of this mighty stream; but I am more and more inclined to think that it can end nowhere but in the sea. My dear friend Mr. Anderson, and likewise Mr. Scott, are both dead; but though all the Europeans who are with me should die, and though I were myself half dead, I would still persevere; and if I could not succeed in the object of my journey, I would at last die on the Niger."

These letters, together with his journal, were then delivered to his guide, Isaaco, by whom they were conveyed to Gambia, from whence they were transmitted to England; after which nothing certain or au-

thentic can be said to have been heard either of Park or the expedition. In 1808, however, vague accounts of the death of Park and his companions were brought to the British settlement on the coast by the native traders from the interior; but several years elapsed without any further intelligence being obtained. At length, in 1810, Colonel Maxwell, governor of Senegal, dispatched Park's guide, Isaaco, into the interior, for the purpose of ascertaining the truth or falsehood of the reports which prevailed, and, should they prove correct, of collecting information respecting the place and manner of the catastrophe.

After an absence of one year and eight months, Isaaco returned to Senegal, and delivered to the governor a journal of his proceedings, including a narrative which he had received from Amadi Fatouma, the guide who had accompanied Park from Sansanding down the Niger. The particulars of Isaaco's adventures it is altogether unnecessary to describe. He found Amadi Fatouma at Medina, a village distant a few hours from Sansanding. On seeing Isaaco, and hearing the name of Park, he began to weep, and his first words were, "They are all dead." The recollection of the melancholy transaction appeared to affect him in an extraordinary manner, and it was with the utmost reluctance that he at length consented to recall to memory an event which he seemed peculiarly desirous of delivering over to oblivion. However, upon the pressing entreaties of Isaaco, he narrated circumstantially what had taken place. Upon leaving Sansanding, there were, he said, nine persons in the canoe, Park, Martyn, three other white men, three slaves, and myself as their guide and interpreter. They had proceeded but a very little way down the river before they were pursued and attacked by the Africans, in canoes, particularly in passing Timbuctoo, where a great number of the natives were killed. Shortly after passing Goroumo, they lost one white man by sickness. They were now, therefore, reduced to eight; but as each person had always fifteen muskets loaded and ready for action, they were still formidable to their enemies.

As Park had laid in a considerable quantity of provisions previous to his leaving Sansanding, he was enabled to proceed for several days without stopping at any place, which is the only circumstance that can account for his passing in safety through the country of so many hostile nations. At length, however, their wants compelled them to have some communication with the shore. "We came," says Amadi Fatouma, "near a small island, and saw some of the natives. I was sent on shore to buy some milk. When I got among them I saw two canoes go on board to sell fresh provisions, such as fowls, rice, etc. One of the natives wanted to kill me, and at last he took hold of me and said I was his prisoner. Mr. Park, seeing what was passing on shore, suspected the truth. He stopped the two canoes and people, telling the latter that if they should kill me, or keep me prisoner on shore, he would kill them all and carry their canoes away with him. Those on shore, suspecting Mr. Park's intentions, sent me off in another canoe on board. They were

or the expedition. Park and his companion coasted by the native without any further. Colonel Maxwell, governor to the interior, for the reports which giving information re-

Isaaco returned to of his proceedings, Amadi Fatouma, the down the Niger. ther unnecessary to village distant a few bearing the name of "They are all dead." are to affect him in reluctance that he which he seemed pe- However, upon the instantially what had he said, nine persons men, three slaves, and proceeded but a very and attacked by the ctutoo, where a great passing Goroumo, they therefore, reduced to ets loaded and ready ies.

provisions previous to for several days with- stance that can ac- try of so many hostile ed them to have some says Amadi Fatouma, I was sent on shore aw two canoes go on to. One of the natives and said I was his pris- e, suspected the truth. the latter that if they ould kill them all and shore, suspecting Mr. on board. They were

then released, after which we bought some provisions from them and made them some presents. A short time after our departure twenty canoes came after us from the same place. On coming near they hailed, and said, 'Amadi Fatouma, how can you pass through our country with- giving us any thing?' I mentioned what they had said to Mr. Park, and he gave them a few grains of amber and some trinkets, and they went back peaceably. On coming to a narrow part of the river, we saw on the shore a great many men sitting down; coming nearer to them they stood up; we presented our muskets at them, which made them run off into the interior. A little further on we came to a very difficult passage. The rocks had barred the river, but three passages were still open between them. On coming near one of them we discovered the same people again, standing on the top of a large rock, which caused great uneasiness to us, especially to me, and I seriously promised never to pass there again without making considerable charitable donations to the poor. We returned and went to a pass of less danger, where we passed unmolested.

"We came to before Carmassee, and gave the chief one piece of baft. We went on and anchored before Gourman. Mr. Park sent me on shore with forty thousand cowries to buy provisions. I went and bought rice, onions, fowls, milk, etc., and departed late in the evening. The chief of the village sent a canoe after us to let us know of a large army encamped on the top of a very high mountain waiting for us, and that we had better return or be on our guard. We immediately came to an anchor, and spent there the rest of the day and all the night. We started in the morning. On passing the above-mentioned mountain we saw the army, composed of Moors, with horses and camels, but without any fire-arms. As they said nothing to us we passed on quietly, and entered the country of Haoussa, and came to an anchor. Mr. Park said to me, 'Now, Amadi, you are at the end of your journey; I engaged you to conduct me here; you are going to leave me; but before you go you must give me the names of the necessities of life, etc., in the language of the countries through which I am going to pass;' to which I agreed, and we spent two days together about it without landing. During our voyage I was the only one who had landed. We departed, and arrived at Yaour. I was sent on shore the next morning with a musket and a saber to carry to the chief of the village; also with three pieces of white baft for distribution. I went and gave the chief his present; I also gave one to Alhagi, one to Alhagi-biron, and the other to a person whose name I forget; all Marabous. The chief gave us a bullock, a sheep, three jars of honey, and four men's loads of rice. Mr. Park gave me seven thousand cowries, and ordered me to buy provisions, which I did. He told me to go to the chief and give him five silver rings, some powder and flints, and tell him that these presents were given to the king by the white men, who were taking leave of him before they went away. After the chief received these things, he inquired if the white men in-



tended to come back. Mr. Park, being informed of this inquiry, replied that he could not return any more. Mr. Park had paid me for my voyage before we left Sansanding. I said to him, 'I agreed to carry you into the kingdom of Haoussa; we are now in Haoussa. I have fulfilled my engagement with you; I am therefore going to leave you here and return.'

On the next day Park departed, leaving the guide at the village of Yaour, where he was put in irons by an order from the king, from a supposition that he had aided the white men in defrauding him of the customary presents, which the chief of Yaour had in fact received, but retained for himself. "The next morning, early," continues the guide, "the king sent an army to a village called Boussa, near the river-side. There is before this village a rock across the whole breadth of the river. One part of the rock is very high; there is a large opening in that rock in the form of a door, which is the only passage for the water to pass through; the tide current is here very strong. This army went and took possession of the top of this opening. Mr. Park came there after the army had posted itself; he nevertheless attempted to pass. The people began to attack him, throwing lances, pikes, arrows, and stones. Mr. Park defended himself for a long time; two of his slaves at the stern of the canoe were killed; they threw every thing they had in the canoe into the river, and kept firing; but being overpowered by numbers, and fatigued, and unable to keep the canoe against the current, and no probability of escaping, Mr. Park took hold of one of the white men and jumped into the water; Mr. Martin did the same, and they were drowned in the stream in attempting to escape. The only slave remaining in the boat, seeing the natives persist in throwing weapons at the canoe without ceasing, stood up and said to them, 'Stop throwing now, you see nothing in the canoe, and nobody but myself; therefore cease. Take me and the canoe, but don't kill me.' They took possession of the canoe and the man, and carried them to the king.

"I was kept in irons three months; the king released me, and gave me a slave (woman). I immediately went to the slave taken in the canoe, who told me in what manner Mr. Park and all of them had died, and what I have related above. I asked him if he was sure nothing had been found in the canoe after its capture; he said nothing remained in the canoe but himself and a sword-belt. I asked him where the sword-belt was; he said the king took it, and had made a girth for his horse with it."

Such is the narrative of Amadi Fatouma; and the information since obtained in the country by Captain Clapperton corroborates almost every important circumstance which it describes. It appears, however, that certain books—whether printed or manuscript does not appear—were found in Park's canoe, some of which were still in the possession of the chief of Yaour when Clapperton made his inquiries; but the wily African, who no doubt expected a valuable present for these relics,

of this inquiry, replied  
paid me for my voy-  
I agreed to carry you  
Boussa. I have fulfilled  
to leave you here and

guide at the village of  
the king, from a sup-  
tending him of the cus-  
in fact received, but  
continues the guide,  
a, near the river-side.  
the breadth of the river.  
the opening in that rock  
for the water to pass  
This army went and  
Park came there after  
empted to pass. The  
er, arrows, and stones.  
o of his slaves at the  
y thing they had in the  
overpowered by num-  
against the current, and  
one of the white men  
same, and they were  
The only slave remain-  
owing weapons at the  
, 'Stop throwing now,  
yself; therefore cease.  
they took possession of  
king.

released me, and gave  
the slave taken in the  
d all of them had died,  
e was sure nothing had  
id nothing remained in  
him where the sword-  
e a girth for his horse

l the information since  
on corroborates almost  
It appears, however,  
ript does not appear—  
still in the possession  
inquiries; but the wily  
resent for these relics,

refused to deliver them to the traveler's messenger, and Clapperton him-  
self, for some reason or another not stated, neglected to visit the chief  
in person. It should be remarked, that the Africans who were ques-  
tioned by Clapperton seemed all exceedingly desirous of exculpating  
their countrymen, perhaps their own friends and relations, from the  
charge of having murdered Park and his companions: according to one  
narrator, the canoe was caught between two rocks, where the river,  
being obstructed in its course, rushed through its narrow channel with  
prodigious rapidity. Here the travelers, in attempting to disembark,  
were drowned in the sight of an immense multitude who had assembled  
to see them pass, and were too timid to attack or assist them. On an-  
other occasion, however, the same person confessed that his countrymen  
did indeed discharge their arrows at the travelers, but not until they  
had been fired upon from the canoe. But the sheriff of Bokhary, whose  
letter was found among the MSS. of Clapperton, asserts that the inhabi-  
tants of Boussa went out against the white men in great numbers, and  
attacked them during three successive days; after which Park and Mar-  
tyn, who from this account would appear to have been the only Euro-  
pean survivors, threw their papers and baggage into the water, and leap-  
ing in after them were drowned in the stream. This melancholy event  
appears to have occurred between three and four months after the de-  
parture of the expedition from Sansanding, or about the 1st of March, 1806.

Park possessed in a high degree the qualities necessary for a success-  
ful traveler: intrepidity, enthusiasm, perseverance, veracity, and pru-  
dence, all of which were admirably illustrated by his first journey. Few  
men have passed through circumstances so trying, with equal nerve and  
self-possession; but it is to be doubted whether these merits were  
equally conspicuous during his second expedition. Half of the men,  
whose lives were sacrificed to his haste and impatience, might have given  
his party sufficient strength to carry him through the territory of Boussa  
and the hostile tribes beyond, and assured alike his safety and his tri-  
umph. But the blame of his failure, no doubt, rests mainly upon the  
British government, through whose procrastination he was kept for two  
years in a state of painful suspense, and finally delayed in his prepara-  
tions, until the favorable season for traveling had nearly passed.

In person Park was tall, being about six feet high, and perfectly well  
proportioned. His countenance and whole appearance were highly  
interesting; his frame active and robust, fitted for great exertions and  
the endurance of extreme hardships. His constitution had suffered con-  
siderably from the effects of his first journey into Africa, but seems  
afterward to have been restored to its original vigor, of which his last  
expedition afforded the most abundant proofs. In all the relations of  
private life he appears to have been highly exemplary. To the more  
gentle and amiable parts of his character the most certain of all testimo-  
nies may be found in the warm attachment of his friends, and in the fond  
and affectionate recollections of every branch of his family.

ge  
pr  
ye  
of  
oc  
va  
be  
co  
C  
C  
m  
at  
S  
co  
p  
S

en  
w  
fi  
an  
fi  
ic  
a  
li  
w  
th  
a

# LEWIS AND CLARKE'S

## JOURNEY TO THE PACIFIC OCEAN.

---

### VOYAGE UP THE MISSOURI.

ON the acquisition of Louisiana, in the year 1803, the attention of the government of the United States was directed toward exploring and improving the new territory. Accordingly, in the summer of the same year, an expedition was planned by President Jefferson for the purpose of discovering the course and sources of the Missouri River, and the most convenient water-communication thence to the Pacific Ocean. His private secretary, Captain Meriwether Lewis, and Captain William Clarke, both officers of the army of the United States, were associated in the command of this enterprise. After receiving the requisite instructions, Captain Lewis left the seat of government, and being joined by Captain Clarke at Louisville, proceeded to St. Louis, where they arrived in the month of December. Their original intention was to pass the winter at La Charette, then the highest settlement on the Missouri, but the Spanish commandant of the province, not having received an official account of its transfer to the United States, was obliged, by the general policy of his government, to prevent strangers from passing through the Spanish territory.

They therefore encamped at the mouth of Wood River, on the eastern side of the Mississippi, out of his jurisdiction, where they passed the winter in disciplining the men, and making the necessary preparations for setting out early in the spring, before which the cession was officially announced. The party consisted of nine young men from Kentucky, fourteen soldiers of the United States Army who volunteered their services, two French watermen, an interpreter and hunter, and a black servant belonging to Captain Clarke. All these, except the last, were enlisted to serve as privates during the expedition, and three sergeants were appointed from among them by the captains. In addition to these were engaged a corporal and six soldiers, and nine watermen to accompany the expedition as far as the Mandan nation, in order to assist

in carrying the stores, or repelling an attack, which was most to be apprehended between Wood River and that tribe. The party was to embark on board of three boats; the first was a keel-boat fifty-five feet long, drawing three feet of water, carrying one large squaresail and twenty-two oars; a deck of ten feet in the bow and stern formed a forecabin and cabin, while the middle was covered by lockers, which might be raised so as to form a breast-work in case of attack. This was accompanied by two perioques or open boats, one of six and the other of seven oars. Two horses were at the same time to be led along the bank of the river for the purpose of bringing home game, or hunting, in case of scarcity.

All the preparations being completed, they left their encampment on Wood River, opposite the mouth of the Missouri, on the 14th of May, 1804, and on the 16th arrived at St. Charles, situated on the north bank of the Missouri, twenty-one miles from its mouth. This was then a town of about four hundred and fifty inhabitants, chiefly the descendants of the French of Canada. Here they remained a few days waiting for Captain Lewis, who had been detained by business at St. Louis. When he arrived, they again set sail, on the afternoon of Monday the 21st, but were prevented by wind and rain from going more than three miles, when they encamped upon an island.

Two miles above their next camp, they passed a settlement of thirty or forty families from the United States, and further on, at the foot of cliffs three hundred feet high, they saw a large cave called the Tavern by the traders, who had painted in it some images that commanded the homage of the Indians. On the 24th they passed some difficult rapids where, between the dangers of the falling banks on the one hand, and the constantly changing sand-bars on the other, they came near capsizing their boat. On the evening of the next day (25th), they stopped for the night near the small village of La Charette, about seventy miles from the mouth of the river. It consisted of seven small houses, and as many poor families, who had fixed themselves here for the convenience of trade, and formed the last establishment of whites on the Missouri. They were again detained a day on the 31st at their encampment on the Grindstone Creek, by the high west wind and rain. In the afternoon a boat came down from the Osage River, bringing a letter from a messenger sent to the Osage nation on the Arkansas River, which mentioned that the letter announcing the cession of Louisiana was committed to the flames; that the Indians would not believe that the Americans were owners of that country, and disregarded St. Louis and its supplies.

On the 5th of June they met two French traders, descending on a raft from their winter quarters, eighty leagues up the Kansas River, where they had caught great quantities of beaver, but had lost much of their game by fires from the prairies. Soon afterward they passed Little Manitou Creek, which was named from a strange figure resembling the bust of a man, with the horns of a stag, painted on a projecting rock, and probably representing some spirit or deity. On the 7th they

was most to be ap-  
e party was to em-  
fifty-five feet long,  
resail and twenty-  
ed a forecstie and  
h might be raised  
was accompanied  
ther of seven oars.  
e bank of the river  
n case of scarcity.  
eir encampment on  
n the 14th of May,  
d on the north bank  
his was then a town  
the descendants of  
ays waiting for Cap-  
t. Louis. When he  
onday the 21st, but  
e than three miles,

ttlement of thirty or  
, at the foot of cliffs  
d the Tavern by the  
manded the homage  
ult rapids where, be-  
e hand, and the con-  
near capsizing their  
stopped for the night  
miles from the mouth  
d as many poor fami-  
nience of trade, and  
Missouri. They were  
ent on the Grindstone  
oon a boat came down  
essenger sent to the  
tioned that the letter  
ed to the flames; that  
s were owners of that

s.  
nders, descending on a  
up the Kansas River,  
, but had lost much of  
ward they passed Little  
figure resembling the  
t on a projecting rock,  
y. On the 7th they

passed Big Manitou Creek, near which was a limestone rock inlaid with flint of various colors and covered with uncouth paintings of animals, and inscriptions. They landed to examine it, but found the place infested with rattlesnakes, of which they killed three. Meeting two rafts from the Sioux nation, loaded with furs and buffalo-tallow, they engaged one of the party, a Mr. Durion, who had lived more than twenty years with the Sioux, and was high in their confidence, to accompany them thither.

They continued to advance but slowly, their progress being greatly impeded by the numerous rolling sandbanks, the strong current and frequent head-winds, while the dangers of the navigation were increased on the one hand by the sunken trees, on the other by the falling in of the banks. They reached the Kansas River on the 26th, and encamped on the low point above its mouth, where they remained two days and made the necessary observations, recruited the party, and repaired the boat. They reached the mouth of the Platte on the evening of July 21st, and having found, at the distance of ten miles above its junction, a high and shaded situation, they encamped there, intending to make the requisite observations as well as to send for the neighboring tribes, for the purpose of making known the recent change in the government, and the wish of the United States to cultivate their friendship.

Having completed the object of their stay, they set sail on the 27th, and on the 30th again encamped to await the arrival of the Indians. On the evening of August 2d, a band of Ottoways and Missouris appeared, and next morning the Indians, with their six chiefs, were assembled under an awning, formed with the main-sail, in the presence of all the party, paraded for the occasion. A speech was then made, announcing to them the change of government, with promise of protection, and advice as to their future conduct. All the six chiefs replied, each in turn, according to rank. They expressed their joy at the change in the government, and their desire to be recommended to their great father (the President), that they might obtain trade and necessaries. They wanted arms for hunting and for defense, and asked for mediation between them and the Mahas, with whom they were then at war. "We promised to do so," says Captain Clarke, "and wished some of them to accompany us to that nation, which they declined, for fear of being killed by them. We then proceeded to distribute our presents. The grand chief of the nation not being of the party, we sent him a flag, a medal, and some ornaments for clothing. To the six chiefs who were present, we gave a medal of the second grade to one Ottoway chief, and one Missouri chief; a medal of the third grade to two inferior chiefs of each nation—the customary mode of recognizing a chief being to place a medal around his neck, which is considered among his tribe as a proof of his consideration abroad. Each of these medals was accompanied by a present of paint, garters, and cloth ornaments of dress; and to this we added a canister of powder, a bottle of whiskey, and a few presents to the whole, which appeared to make them perfectly satis-



fied. The air-gun, too, was fired, and astonished them greatly. The absent grand chief was an Ottoway, named Weahrushhah, which in English degenerates into Little Thief. The two principal chieftains present were Shangotongo, or Big Horse, and Wethea, or Hospitality; also Shosgucan, or White Horse, an Ottoway; the first was an Ottoway, the second a Missouri. The incidents just related induced us to give this place the name of the Council Bluff; the situation of it is exceedingly favorable for a fort and trading factory, as the soil is well calculated for bricks, and there is an abundance of wood in the neighborhood, and the air being pure and healthy. The ceremonies of the council being concluded, we set sail in the afternoon, and encamped at the distance of five miles, where we found the mosquitoes very troublesome."

The small-pox had sadly scourged the Indians of this region. The Mahas, once a warlike and powerful people, had been wasted away by the disease, and in their frenzy they had burned their villages; some had even put to death their wives and children, probably to save them from the affliction, and all had gone off to some better country. The messengers of the expedition called the Indians to another council, and they met further up the river on the 18th and 19th, when the commanders made speeches, and distributed medals and presents, as at Council Bluff. Next morning the Indians left them; they set sail, and soon afterward came to under some bluffs on the north side of the river. "Here," says Captain Clarke, "we had the misfortune to lose one of our sergeants, Charles Floyd. He was seized with a bilious colic, and all our care and attention were ineffectual to relieve him. He was buried on the top of the bluff with the honors due to a brave soldier, and the place of his interment marked by a cedar post, on which his name and the day of his death were inscribed. About a mile beyond this place, to which we gave his name, is a small river about thirty yards wide, on the north, which we called Floyd's River, where we encamped."

On the 25th of August, Captains Lewis and Clarke, with ten men, went to see an object deemed extraordinary among all the neighboring Indians. This was a large mound in the midst of the plain, nine miles northward from the mouth of the Whitestone River. "The base of the mound is a regular parallelogram, the longest side being about three hundred yards, the shorter sixty or seventy. From the longest side it rises with a steep ascent from the north and south to the height of sixty-five or seventy feet, leaving on the top a level plain of twelve feet in breadth and ninety in length. The north and south extremities are connected by two oval borders, which serve as new bases, and divide the whole side into three steep but regular gradations from the plain. The only thing characteristic in this hill is its extreme symmetry, and this, together with its being totally detached from the other hills, which are at the distance of eight or nine miles, would induce the belief that it was artificial; but, as the earth, and the loose pebbles which compose it, are arranged exactly like the steep grounds on the borders of the creek,

hem greatly. The  
rushhah, which in  
principal chieftains  
ness, or Hospitality;  
st was an Ottoway,  
induced us to give  
ation of it is exceed-  
oil is well calculated  
neighborhood, and  
of the council being  
ed at the distance of  
ablesome."

of this region. The  
een wasted away by  
their villages; some  
robably to save them  
better country. The  
another council, and  
19th, when the com-  
and presents, as at  
m; they set sail, and  
orth side of the river.  
fortune to lose one of  
a bilious colic, and all  
him. He was buried  
brave soldier, and the  
n which his name and  
mile beyond this place,  
thirty yards wide, on  
ve encamped."

Clarke, with ten men,  
ng all the neighboring  
of the plain, nine miles  
er. "The base of the  
ide being about three  
om the longest side it  
to the height of sixty-  
plain of twelve feet in  
nth extremities are con-  
bases, and divide the  
s from the plain. The  
ne symmetry, and this,  
ne other hills, which are  
duce the belief that it  
bbles which compose it,  
he borders of the creek,

we concluded from this similarity of texture that it might be natural. But the Indians have made it a great article of their superstition. It is called the mountain of Little People, or Little Spirits, and they believe that it is the abode of little devils, in the human form, of about eighteen inches high, and of remarkably large heads; they are armed with sharp arrows, with which they are very skillful, and are always on the watch to kill those who have the hardihood to approach their residence. The tradition is, that many have suffered from these little evil spirits, and among others three Maha Indians fell a sacrifice to them a few years since. This has inspired all the neighboring nations, Sioux, Mahas, and Ottoways, with such terror that no consideration could tempt them to visit the hill. We saw none of these wicked little spirits, nor any place for them, except some small holes scattered over the top. We were happy enough to escape their vengeance, though we remained some time on the mound to enjoy the delightful prospect of the plain, which spreads itself out till the eye rests upon the hills in the north-west at a great distance, and those of the north-east still further on, enlivened by large herds of buffalo feeding at a distance." As they returned they gathered delicious plums, grapes, and blue currants, on the banks of the creek, and on reaching their encampment set the prairies on fire, to warn the Sioux of their approach.

On the 27th, they met with a few Indians at the mouth of the James River, who informed them that a large body of Sioux were encamped in the neighborhood. Sergeant Pryor was accordingly dispatched to them with an invitation to meet Lewis and Clarke at a spot above the river. The latter encamped next day under Calumet Bluff, on the south side, to await the arrival of the Sioux. The 29th was spent in repairing a perioque that had been disabled, and other necessary occupations, when at four o'clock in the afternoon Sergeant Pryor and his party arrived on the opposite side, attended by five chiefs, and about seventy men and boys. Some presents were given, and a conference appointed for the morrow. Sergeant Pryor reported that on reaching their village, twelve miles distant, he was met by a party with a buffalo robe, on which they desired to carry their visitors, an honor which they declined, informing the Indians that they were not the commanders of the boats. As a great mark of respect they were then presented with a fat dog, already cooked, of which they partook heartily, and found it well flavored. The chiefs and warriors were received on the 30th, under a large oak-tree, when Captan Lewis delivered a speech, with the usual advice and counsel for their future conduct. They then acknowledged the chiefs by medals and presents, and smoked with them the pipe of peace, after which the latter retired to hold a council concerning the answer which they were to make on the morrow. The young people exercised their bows and arrows in shooting at marks for beads, and in the evening the whole party danced until a late hour. In the morning they met, and the chiefs sat down in a row, with pipes of peace, highly ornamented, and all

pointed toward the seats of Captains Lewis and Clarke. When the latter were seated, the grand chief, Weucha, or Shake Hand, arose and spoke at some length, approving what had been said, and promising to follow the advice. He promised to make peace between the tribes then at war, and ended by requesting material aid for their people and their wives. He was followed by the other chiefs and a warrior, who, in shorter speeches, repeated or seconded his views. "All these harangues concluded by describing the distress of the nation. They begged us to have pity on them; to send them traders; that they wanted powder and ball; and seemed anxious that we should supply them with some of their great father's milk, the name by which they distinguished ardent spirits. We prevailed on Mr. Durion to remain here and accompany as many of the Sioux chiefs as he could collect down to the seat of government." These Indians were the Yanktons, a tribe of the great nation of Sioux.

They set forward on the 1st of September. On the 2d they passed some extensive mounds and walls of earth, the first remains of the kind they had an opportunity of examining. They consisted of a citadel and walls more than a mile in length, on the southern banks of the river, and a circular fortress nearly opposite, on Bonhomme Island. On the morning of September 11th they saw a man on horseback coming down the river toward them, and were much pleased to find it was George Shannon, one of their party, for whose safety they had been very uneasy. Their two horses having strayed away on the 28th of August, he was sent to search for them. When he had found them he attempted to re-join the party, but seeing some other tracks, probably those of Indians, he concluded that they were ahead and had been for sixteen days following the bank of the river before them. During the first four days he had exhausted his bullets, and was then nearly starved, being obliged to subsist for twelve days on a few grapes and a rabbit which he had killed by making use of a hard piece of stick for a ball. One of his horses gave out and was left behind; the other he kept as a last resource for food. Despairing of overtaking the expedition, he was returning down the river in hopes of meeting some other boat, and was on the point of killing his horse, when he was so fortunate as to join his companions.

In another week they reached the Great Bend, and dispatched two men with their remaining horse across the neck to hunt there, and await their arrival. In the following night they were alarmed by the sinking of the bank on which they were encamped. They leaped into their boats and pushed off in time to save them, and presently the whole ground of their encampment sank also. They formed a second camp for the rest of the night, and at daylight proceeded on to the throat of the Great Bend. A man whom they had dispatched to step off the distance across the Bend, made it two thousand yards; the circuit is thirty miles. On the evening of the 24th, they encamped near a river which they called the Teton, from a tribe inhabiting its borders. Here they raised a flag-staff and an awning in the morning, and with all the party parading

Clarke. When the  
the Hand, arose and  
and promising to  
ween the tribes then  
their people and their  
a warrior, who, in  
All these harangues  
They begged us to  
wanted powder and  
m with some of their  
ished ardent spirits.  
company as many of  
eat of government."  
eat nation of Sioux.  
n the 2d they passed  
t remains of the kind  
sisted of a citadel and  
n banks of the river,  
me Island. On the  
rseback coming down  
o find it was George  
had been very uneasy.  
th of August, he was  
n he attempted to re-  
ably those of Indians,  
for sixteen days follow-  
the first four days he  
rved, being obliged to  
sit which he had killed  
ll. One of his horses  
as a last resource for  
ne was returning down  
nd was on the point of  
oin his companions.  
nd, and dispatched two  
o hunt there, and await  
alarmed by the sinking  
leaped into their boats  
ntly the whole ground  
second camp for the  
on to the throat of the  
to step off the distance  
e circuit is thirty miles.  
ear a river which they  
lers. Here they raised  
h all the party parading

under arms, awaited the Indians, who had been summoned to a council. The chiefs and warriors from a camp two miles up the river, met them, the speeches were delivered, and they went through the ceremony of acknowledging the chiefs by giving them the usual presents, according to rank. They then invited them on board, showed them the boat, air-gun, and such curiosities as might amuse them, but after giving them a quarter of a glass of whiskey, it was with much difficulty that they could get rid of them. "They at last accompanied Captain Clarke on shore in a perioque with five men; but it seems they had formed a design to stop us; for no sooner had the party landed than three of the Indians seized the cable of the perioque, and one of the soldiers of the chief put his arm around the mast; the second chief, who affected intoxication, then said that we should not go on, that they had not received presents enough from us. Captain Clarke told him that he would not be prevented from going on; that we were not squaws, but warriors; that we were sent by our great father, who could in a moment exterminate them. The chief replied that he, too, had warriors, and was proceeding to offer personal violence to Captain Clarke, who immediately drew his sword, and made a signal to the boat to prepare for action. The Indians who surrounded him drew their arrows from their quivers and were bending their bows, when the swivel in the boat was instantly pointed toward them, and twelve of our most determined men jumped into the perioque, and joined Captain Clarke. This movement made an impression on them, for the grand chief ordered the young men away from the perioque, and they withdrew and held a short council with the warriors. Being unwilling to irritate them, Captain Clarke then went forward and offered his hand to the first and second chiefs, who refused to take it. He then turned from them and got into the perioque, but had not gone more than ten paces when both the chiefs and two of the warriors waded in after him, and he brought them on board. We then proceeded on for a mile and anchored off a willow island, which from the circumstances that had just occurred, we called Bad-humored Island." Having thus inspired the Indians with fear, they desired to cultivate their acquaintance, and accordingly on the next day they drew up to the shore where a crowd of men, women, and children were waiting to receive them. Captain Lewis went on shore and remained several hours, and finding their disposition friendly, resolved to remain during the night, and attend a dance which the Indians were preparing for them. Captains Lewis and Clarke were received on landing by ten well-dressed young men, who took them up on a robe highly decorated, and carried them to the council-house where they were placed on a dressed buffalo skin by the side of the grand chief. He was surrounded by a circle of about seventy men, before whom were placed the Spanish and American flags, and the pipe of peace. A large fire, at which they were cooking provisions, was near, and a quantity of buffalo meat, as a present. When they were seated,

an old man spoke, approving what the white men had done, and imploring pity on their own unfortunate situation. Lewis and Clarke replied with assurances of protection; then the great chief arose and delivered a harangue, after which with great solemnity he took some of the most delicate parts of the dog, which was cooked for the festival, and held it to the flag by way of sacrifice. This done, he held up the pipe of peace, first pointing it upward, then to the four quarters of the globe, and then to the earth, made a short speech, lighted the pipe, and presented it to the guests. They ate and smoked until dark, when every thing was cleared away for the dance, a large fire being made in the center, to give light and warmth to the ball-room. The musicians played upon a sort of tambourine and made a jingling noise with a long stick to which the hoofs of deer and goats were hung; the third instrument was a small skin bag with pebbles in it: these, with a few singers, made up the band. The women came forward highly decorated, some with poles bearing the scalps of their enemies, others with guns, spears, and other trophies taken in war by their husbands, brothers, or connections. They danced toward each other till they met in the center, when the rattles were shaken, and all shouted and returned to their places. In the pauses of the dance a man of the company would come forward and recite, in a low, guttural tone, some little story or incident, either warlike or ludicrous. This was taken up by the orchestra and dancers, who repeated it in a higher strain and danced to it. Sometimes the women raised their voices, when the orchestra ceased, and made a music less intolerable than the men. The dances of the men, always separate from the women, were conducted in nearly the same way. The harmony of the entertainment came near being disturbed by one of the musicians, who, thinking he had not received a due share of the tobacco distributed during the evening, put himself into a passion, broke one of the drums, threw two of them into the fire, and left the band. The drums were taken out of the fire; a buffalo robe held in one hand and beaten with the other, by several of the company, supplied the place of the lost tambourine, and no notice was taken of the offensive conduct of the man. The white guests retired at twelve o'clock, accompanied by four chiefs, two of whom spent the night on board.

While on shore they saw fifty prisoners, women and children, who had been taken in a late battle with the Mahas, on which occasion the Sioux had killed seventy-five men. They gave them a variety of small articles and interceded for them with the chiefs, who promised to restore them and live in peace with the Mahas. The tribe they saw this day were a part of the great Sioux nation, known by the name of Teton Okandandas. While with them, the travelers witnessed a quarrel between two squaws, which was suddenly stopped by the appearance of a man, at whose approach every one seemed terrified and ran away. He took the squaws and without any ceremony whipped them severely.

This was an officer whose duty was to keep the peace. The whole interior police of the village was confided to two or three such officers, who were named by the chief, and remained in power a few days, until a successor was appointed. They were always on the watch to keep tranquillity during the day, and guard the camp in the night. Their power, though of short duration, was supreme, and in the suppression of any riot no resistance was suffered. In general they accompanied the person of the chief, and when ordered to any duty, however dangerous, made it a point of honor rather to die than refuse obedience. It was thus when they attempted to stop Lewis and Clarke on the day before. The chief having ordered one of these men to take possession of the boat, he immediately put his arms around the mast, and no force except the command of the chief would have induced him to release his hold.

They spent the next day with other Indians of the nation, who entertained them in a similar manner; but when they were preparing to set out, some difficulties arose from a misunderstanding with the people, either from jealousy or the hope of obtaining presents. By decided measures and the distribution of tobacco, the natives were appeased, and the expedition set forward on the 28th. As they sailed up the river they were frequently accosted by Indians, who asked them to land, and begged for tobacco and other presents, but they had no further intercourse with them until they came in the vicinity of the Ricaras, on the 8th of October. Here they halted a few days, visited the Indians at their villages, and received them in council. The usual ceremonies were here performed, speeches made, chiefs acknowledged by distinguished presents, and curiosities exhibited to astonish the natives. "The object that appeared to astonish the Indians most, was Captain Clarke's servant, York, a remarkably stout, strong negro. They had never seen a being of that color, and therefore flocked around him to examine the extraordinary monster. By way of amusement, he told them that he had once been a wild animal, and had been caught and tamed by his master; and to convince them, showed them feats of strength, which, added to his looks, made him more terrible than we wished him to be." "On our side," says Captain Clarke, "we were gratified at discovering that these Ricaras made use of no spirituous liquors of any kind; the example of the traders who bring it to them, so far from tempting, has, in fact, disgusted them. Supposing that it was as agreeable to them as to the other Indians, we had at first offered them whiskey, but they refused it with this sensible remark, that they were surprised that their father should present to them a liquor which would make them fools."

On the 13th they continued their journey. During the day they passed a stream to which they gave the name of Stone Idol Creek, for they learned that a few miles back from the Missouri there were two stones resembling human figures, and a third like a dog; all which were objects of great veneration among the Ricaras. "Their history would



adorn the 'Metamorphoses' of Ovid. A young man was deeply enamored with a girl whose parents refused their consent to the marriage. The youth went out into the fields to mourn his misfortunes; a sympathy of feeling led the lady to the same spot; and the faithful dog would not cease to follow his master. After wandering together and having nothing but grapes to subsist on, they were at last converted into stone, which, beginning at the feet, gradually invaded the nobler parts, leaving nothing unchanged but a bunch of grapes which the female holds in her hands unto this day." These stones were sacred objects to the Ricaras, who made some propitiatory offering whenever they passed them. They saw another object of Ricara superstition on the 21st—a large oak-tree, standing alone on the open prairie, which, having withstood fires that had consumed every thing around, was possessed of extraordinary powers in the belief of the Indians. One of their ceremonies was to make a hole in the skin of the neck, through which a string was passed, and the other end tied to the body of the tree; and after remaining in this way for some time, they fancied they became braver. The Ricara chief told them of a large rock in the neighborhood, on the Chisshetaw, which was held in great veneration, and consulted by parties for their own or their nation's destinies; these they probably found in some sort of figures or paintings with which it was covered.

#### WINTER AMONG THE MANDANS.

The party now approached the region of the Mandans, passed many of their deserted villages, and on the 24th met one of their grand chiefs, who was on a hunting excursion. He met his enemy, the Ricara chief, who had accompanied the expedition, with great ceremony and apparent cordiality, and smoked with him. The latter afterward went with the Mandans to their camp. On the 26th they encamped near the first village of the Mandans, who came down in crowds to see them as soon as they landed. Among the visitors was the son of the grand chief, who had his two little fingers cut off at the second joints. On inquiring into this accident, they found it was customary to express grief at the death of relations by some corporeal suffering, and that the usual mode was to lose two joints of the little fingers, or sometimes the other fingers. On the two following days they visited several villages, and went up the river a short distance in search of a convenient spot for a winter fort, but the timber was too scarce and small for their purpose. The council assembled on the 29th. A number of chiefs of the Mandans, the Minnetarees, and the Ahnahaways, were present. The forces of the expedition were all paraded, and the council opened by a discharge from the swivel of the boat. The Indians were addressed, as heretofore, with advice intermingled with assurances of friendship and trade, and toward the end of the speech the subject of the Ricara chief was intro-

duced, with whom they were recommended to make a firm peace. To this they seemed well disposed, and smoked with him amicably. Presents were then distributed with great ceremony: one chief of each town was acknowledged by a gift of a flag, a medal with the likeness of the President, a uniform coat, hat, and feather; to the second chiefs they gave a medal representing some domestic animals and a loom; to the third chiefs, medals with the impressions of a farmer sowing grain. A variety of other presents were distributed, but none seemed to give more satisfaction than an iron corn-mill which they gave to the Mandans. The council was concluded by a shot from the swivel, after which the air-gun was fired for their amusement. In the evening the prairie took fire, either by accident or design, and burned with great fury, the whole plain being enveloped in flames. So rapid was its progress, that a man and woman were burned to death before they could reach a place of safety, and several others were badly injured or narrowly escaped destruction. A half-breed boy escaped unhurt in the midst of the flames, and his safety was ascribed to the great medicine spirit, who had preserved him on account of his being white. But a much more natural cause was the presence of mind of his mother, who, seeing no hopes of carrying off her son, threw him on the ground, covered him with the fresh hide of a buffalo, and then escaped herself from the flames. As soon as the fire had passed she returned and found him untouched, the skin having prevented the flame from reaching the grass on which he lay.

On the 31st Captain Clarke had an interview with the grand chief of the Mandans, who expressed his faith in what had been said, hoped they would enjoy peace, and promised to send his second chief with some warriors to the Ricaras with their chief, to smoke with that nation. He added that he would go and see his great father, the President. The chiefs of the other villages manifested the same amicable disposition, and the Ricaree chieftain set out on his return with a Mandan chief and several Minnetaree and Mandan warriors.

Having found a suitable wintering-place three miles below, they encamped there, and on the 3d of November they began the building of their cabins. Some Frenchmen who were here built a perioque to descend to St. Louis, and Lewis and Clarke engaged the services of a Canadian Frenchman, who had been with the Chayenne Indians on the Black River. Mr. Jessaume, their interpreter, also came down with his squaw and children to live at the camp. In the evening they received a visit from Kagohami, or Little Raven, one of the chiefs who attended the council, whose wife accompanied him, bringing about sixty weight of dried meat, a robe, and a pot of meal. Other Indians visited them, and frequently brought them presents, during the building of their cabins. These were completed and picketed by the 20th, when they moved into them, and named the place Fort Mandan. There were five villages in the neighborhood, the residence of three distinct nations, who had been at the council. Captain Lewis made an excursion to them in a few days,

and found them all well disposed and very kind, except a principal chief of one of the upper villages, named Mahpahpaparapassatoo, or Horned Weasel, who made use of the civilized indecorum of refusing to be seen, and when Captain Lewis called he was told the chief was not at home.

They passed the winter very comfortably at the fort, finding sufficient employment in hunting, visiting, and cultivating the friendship of the Indians; although in these excursions they frequently suffered from the cold, which was sometimes very intense. On the 10th of December the hunters saw large herds of buffalo crossing the river on the ice. The mercury stood at  $11^{\circ}$  below zero, and the next morning it was  $21^{\circ}$  below. When the party returned in the evening, many of them were frostbitten. On the 12th the thermometer indicated  $38^{\circ}$  below zero, and at sunrise on the 17th it was  $45^{\circ}$  below.

On Christmas day the party fired three platoons before day. They had told the Indians not to visit them, as it was one of their great medicine days; so the men remained at home and amused themselves in various ways, particularly in dancing, in which they took great pleasure. The American flag was hoisted for the first time in the fort; the best provisions they had were brought out, and this, with a little brandy, enabled them to pass the day in great festivity.

On the morning of the new year, 1805, the men were permitted to go up with their music to the first village, where they delighted the whole tribe with their dances, particularly with the movements of one of the Frenchmen, who danced on his head. In return they presented the dancers with several buffalo robes and quantities of corn. This attention was shown to the village because they had conceived the whites to be wanting in regard for them, and had begun to circulate invidious comparisons between them and the northern traders; all these, however, they declared to Captain Clarke, who visited them in the course of the morning, were made in jest. The Indians likewise performed various dances at their villages during the winter.

On the 9th of January, the mercury at  $21^{\circ}$  below zero, Captain Clarke, with three or four men, accompanied Kagohami and a party of Indians to hunt. They were incommoded by snow and high winds, and several of the Indians came back nearly frozen. Next morning the mercury stood at  $40^{\circ}$  below zero, and they were uneasy for one of the men, who was still missing. He came back, however, as they were sending out a party in search of him, having made a fire and kept himself warm through the night. An Indian boy came in soon after. He had slept in the snow with no covering but his moccasins and leggings, and a buffalo robe, and had his feet frozen. A missing Indian also returned, and although his dress was thin, and he had slept on the snow without fire, he had not suffered the slightest inconvenience. They often had occasion to observe how well the Indians endured the rigors of the season. A more pleasing reflection occurred at seeing the warm interest which the situation of these two persons had excited in the village. The boy

had been a prisoner and adopted from charity, yet the father's distress proved that he felt for him the tenderest affection. The man was a person of no distinction, yet the whole village was full of anxiety for his safety.

Toward the middle of January nearly one half of the Mandan nation passed down the river to hunt for several days. In these excursions, men, women, and children, with their dogs, all leave the village together, and after finding a spot convenient to the game, fix their tents. All the family bear their part in the labor, and the game is equally divided among the families of the tribe. On the 9th of March the grand chief of the Minnetarees, who was absent on their arrival, visited them. He was received with great attention, two guns were fired in honor of his arrival, the curiosities were shown to him, and presents bestowed upon him. In the course of conversation he observed that some foolish young men of his nation had told him there was a person among them quite black, and he wished to know if it could be true. They assured him that it was true, and sent for York. The chief was much surprised at his appearance; he examined him closely, spitting on his finger and rubbing the skin in order to wash off the paint; nor was it until the negro uncovered his head and showed his hair, that the chief could be persuaded he was not a painted white man.

On the approach of spring, Lewis and Clarke began to make preparations for their departure. Canoes were built and hauled down to the river, and the boats were all finally launched on the 1st of April. While they were loading their boats on the 5th, they were visited by a number of Mandans. They brought information of a party of Ricaras on the other side of the river. An interpreter was sent to learn the reason of their coming; he returned next morning with a Ricara chief, who brought a letter from Mr. Tabeau, stating the wish of the grand chief of the Ricaras to visit the President, and requesting permission for himself and four men to join the returning boat of the expedition. This being granted, he said he was sent with ten warriors by his nation, to arrange their settling near the Mandans and Minnetarees, whom they wished to join; that he considered all the neighboring nations friendly, except the Sioux, whose persecution they could no longer withstand, and whom they hoped to repel by uniting with the tribes in this quarter. He added, that the Ricaras intended to live in peace with all nations, and requested Lewis and Clarke to speak in their favor with the Assiniboin Indians. This they promised, and assured him of the President's protection. They then gave him a medal, a certificate, and some presents, with which he departed for the Mandan village, well satisfied with his reception.

## JOURNEY ACROSS THE ROCKY MOUNTAINS.

Having made all their arrangements, they left the fort on the afternoon of April 7th. The party now consisted of thirty-two persons. Besides Captains Lewis and Clarke, there were Sergeants John Ordway, Nathaniel Pryor, and Patrick Gass. The interpreters were George Drewyer and Toussaint Chaboneau. The wife of Chaboneau also accompanied them with her young child, and they hoped she would be useful as an interpreter among the Snake Indians. She was herself one of that tribe, but had been taken in war by the Minnetarees, by whom she was sold as a slave to Chaboneau, who brought her up and afterward married her. One of the Mandans likewise embarked with them, in order to go to the Snake Indians and obtain a peace with them for his countrymen. All this party, with the baggage, was stowed in six small canoes and two large perioques. At the same time that they took their departure, their barge, manned with seven soldiers, two Frenchmen, and Mr. Gravelines as pilot, sailed for the United States, loaded with their presents and dispatches.

On the 9th they came to a hunting party of Minnetarees, who had prepared a park or inclosure, and were waiting the return of the antelope. In the region they passed through on the two following days they saw on the surface of the earth large quantities of a white substance which tasted like a mixture of common salt with Glauber salts. It appeared on the sides of the hills, and even on the banks of the rivers, as well as on the sand bars. Many of the streams which came from the foot of the hills were so strongly impregnated with this substance that the water had an unpleasant taste and a purgative effect. On the 26th of April, at noon, they encamped at the junction of the Missouri and Yellowstone Rivers. As the river was crooked and the wind adverse Captain Lewis had left the boats the day before and proceeded over land to find the Yellowstone and make the necessary observations, so as to be enabled to continue the expedition without delay. He pursued his route along the foot of the hills, which he ascended for the distance of eight miles. From these the wide plains, watered by the Missouri and the Yellowstone, spread themselves before the eye, occasionally varied with the wood of the banks, enlivened by the irregular windings of the two rivers, and animated by vast herds of buffalo, deer, elk, and antelope. Above the Yellowstone the hills were higher and rougher, and the wild animals more numerous. A small river which they passed on the 3d of May they called Porcupine River, from the unusual number of porcupines near it. A quarter of a mile beyond this they passed another on the opposite side, to which, on account of its distance from the mouth of the Missouri, they gave the name of Two-thousand-mile creek. On the 5th Captain Clarke and a hunter met the largest brown bear they had ever seen. When they fired he did not attempt to attack, but fled

with a tremendous roar, and such was his tenacity of life that, although he had five balls through his lungs, and five other wounds, he swam more than half across the river to a sand-bar, and survived twenty minutes. He weighed between five and six hundred pounds, and measured eight feet seven inches from the nose to the extremity of the hind feet. On the 14th six hunters attacked another which they discovered lying in the open grounds, at a little distance from the river. Coming unperceived upon him, four of them fired, and each lodged a ball in his body. The furious animal sprang up and ran open-mouthed upon them. As he approached, the two hunters, who had reserved fire, gave him two wounds, one of which, breaking his shoulder, retarded him a moment, but before they could reload, he was so near that they were obliged to run to the river. Two jumped into the canoe, the other four separated, and concealing themselves in the willows, fired as fast as each could reload. They struck him several times, but instead of weakening the monster, each shot seemed only to direct him to the hunter, till at last he pursued two of them so closely that they threw aside their guns and pouches, and jumped down a perpendicular bank of twenty feet into the river. The bear sprang after them, and was within two feet of the hindmost when one of the hunters on shore shot him in the head and finally killed him. They dragged him to the shore, and found that eight balls had passed through him in different directions. The bear being old, they took the skin only, and rejoined the party at the camp, who had meanwhile been terrified by an accident of a different kind. This was the narrow escape of a canoe containing all their papers, instruments, medicine, and almost every other article indispensable to the success of the enterprise. The canoe being under sail, was struck by a sudden squall of wind which turned her considerably. The man at the helm, instead of putting her before the wind, luffed her up into it. The wind was so high that it forced the brace of the squaresail out of the hand of the man who was attending it, and instantly upset the canoe, which would have been turned bottom upward but for the resistance of the awning. Such was the confusion on board, and the waves ran so high, that it was half a minute before she righted, and then nearly full of water; but by bailing she was kept from sinking until they rowed ashore. Here they remained until the articles were dried and repacked, and again embarked on the afternoon of the 16th.

On Sunday, the 26th of May, after ascending the highest summits of the hills on the north side of the river, "Captain Lewis first caught a distant view of the Rocky Mountains, the object of all our hopes, and the reward of all our ambition. On both sides of the river, and at no great distance from it, the mountains followed its course; above these, at the distance of fifty miles from us, an irregular range of mountains spread themselves from west to north-west from his position. To the north of these a few elevated points, the most remarkable of which bore north 65° west, appeared above the horizon, and as the sun shone on the

RKE.

MOUNTAINS.

the fort on the after-  
thirty-two persons.  
eants John Ordway,  
eters were George  
Chaboneau also ac-  
ed she would be use-  
e was herself one of  
tarees, by whom she  
er up and afterward  
arked with them, in  
e with them for his  
s stowed in six small  
that they took their  
two Frenchmen, and  
es, loaded with their

Minnetarees, who had  
e return of the ante-  
o following days they  
of a white substance  
Glauber salts. It sp-  
anks of the rivers, as  
which came from the  
with this substance  
ative effect. On the  
ction of the Missouri  
and the wind adverse  
d proceeded over land  
observations, so as to  
lay. He pursued his  
d for the distance of  
by the Missouri and  
re, occasionally varied  
gular windings of the  
o, deer, elk, and ante-  
her and rougher, and  
which they passed on  
he unusual number of  
is they passed another  
tance from the mouth  
sand-mile creek. On  
rest brown bear they  
pt to attack, but fled



snows of their summits, he obtained a clear and satisfactory view of those mountains which close on the Missouri the passage to the Pacific."

In the night of the 28th they were alarmed by a new sort of enemy. A buffalo swam over from the opposite side and clambered over one of the canoes to the shore; then taking fright he ran full speed up the bank toward the fires, and passed within eighteen inches of the heads of some of the men before the sentinel could make him change his course; still more alarmed, he ran down between four fires and within a few inches of the heads of a second row of men, and would have broken into the lodge if the barking of the dog had not stopped him. He suddenly turned to the right, and was out of sight in a moment, leaving them all in confusion, every one seizing his rifle and inquiring the cause of the alarm. On learning what had happened, they were rejoiced at suffering no more injury than the damage to some guns in the canoe which the buffalo crossed. Next day they passed a precipice about one hundred and twenty feet high, under which lay scattered the fragments of at least a hundred carcasses of buffaloes. They had been chased down the precipice in a way very common on the Missouri, by which vast herds are destroyed. The mode of hunting is, to select one of the most active young men, who is disguised by a buffalo skin, with the head and ears so arranged as to deceive the buffalo; thus dressed he fixes himself at a convenient distance between a herd and the river precipices. Meanwhile his companions show themselves in the rear and side of the herd; they instantly take the alarm and run toward the Indian decoy, who leads them on at full speed toward the river, then suddenly securing himself in some known crevice of the cliff, leaves the herd on the brink of the precipice. It is then in vain for the foremost to retreat or even stop; they are pressed on by the hindmost rank, who, seeing no danger but from the hunters, goad on those before them until the whole are hurled down and the shore is strewn with their dead bodies. Sometimes in this perilous seduction the Indian is himself either trodden under foot by the rapid movements of the buffaloes, or, missing his footing in the cliff, is urged down the precipice by the falling herd.

In the upper course of the Missouri, the rapidity of the current and the numerous rocks rendered the navigation difficult, and often dangerous. They had frequently to depend on towing, and as the lines were mostly of elk-skin, slender and worn, the boats sometimes narrowly escaped destruction, while the men on the banks suffered great hardships. In some places the banks were slippery and the mud so adhesive that they could not wear their moccasins; often they had to wade in deep water, and sometimes to walk over the sharp fragments of rocks which had fallen from the hills. As they advanced, the cliffs became higher and more abrupt. Sometimes they rose in perpendicular walls and turrets, which at a distance resembled long ranges of buildings and columns variously sculptured and supporting elegant galleries, while the parapets were adorned with statuary. On a nearer approach they repre-

actory view of those  
the Pacific."

new sort of enemy.  
umbered over one of  
speed up the bank  
f the heads of some  
ge his course: still  
thin a few inches of  
oken into the lodge  
uddenly turned to  
g them all in confu-  
cause of the alarm.  
at suffering no more  
e which the buffalo  
hundred and twenty  
f at least a hundred  
n the precipice in a  
erds are destroyed.  
ive young men, who  
ars so arranged as to  
at a convenient dis-  
anwhile his compan-  
herd; they instantly  
who leads them on at  
himself in some known  
f the precipice. It is  
op; they are pressed  
out from the hunters,  
urled down and the  
es in this perilous se-  
er foot by the rapid  
g in the cliff, is urged

ty of the current and  
ult, and often danger-  
and as the lines were  
ometimes narrowly es-  
ferred great hardships.  
mud so adhesive that  
had to wade in deep  
ments of rocks which  
e cliffs became higher  
ndicular walls and tur-  
of buildings and col-  
at galleries, while the  
r approach they repre-

sented every form of picturesque ruins; columns, some with pedestals and capitals entire, others mutilated and prostrate, others rising pyramidally over each other until they terminated in a sharp point. These were varied by niches, alcoves, and the customary appearances of desolated magnificence. As they advanced there seemed to be no end to this visionary enchantment.

On the 3d of June they encamped in the morning on a point formed by the junction of a large river with the Missouri. Here they were at a loss to know which was the Ahmateahza, or Missouri, therefore they dispatched a party in a canoe up each of the streams, to ascertain the comparative body of water, and sent out companies to discover from the rising grounds the bearings of the two rivers. Meanwhile they ascended the high grounds in the fork, whence they saw a range of lofty mountains in the south-west, partially covered with snow, and far beyond them a still higher range completely snow-clad, reaching off to the north-west, where their glittering tops were blended with the horizon. The direction of the rivers was soon lost in the extent of the plain. On their return they found the north branch to be two hundred yards wide, and the south three hundred and seventy-two. The characteristics of the north fork so nearly resembled those of the Missouri, that almost all the party believed it to be the true course, while the same circumstances induced Captains Lewis and Clarke to think otherwise—that it passed through the low grounds of the open plain in the north, and did not come down from the mountains.

The reports of the parties were far from deciding the question, therefore Lewis and Clarke set out on the 4th, each to ascend one of the rivers for a day and a half, or more, if necessary. Captain Lewis pursued the north fork for two days, when finding its direction too far northward for their route to the Pacific, he began to retrace his steps on the afternoon of the 6th. A storm of wind and rain which prevailed, made their returning route extremely unpleasant. The surface of the ground was saturated with water, and so slippery that it was almost impossible to walk over the bluffs which they had passed in ascending the river. In advancing along the side of one of these bluffs, at a narrow pass, Captain Lewis slipped, and but for a fortunate recovery by means of his espontoon, would have been precipitated into the river over a precipice of about ninety feet. He had just reached a spot, where, by the assistance of his espontoon, he could stand with tolerable safety, when he heard a voice behind him cry out, "Good God! captain, what shall I do?" He turned instantly, and found it was a man named Windsor, who had lost his foothold about the middle of the narrow pass, and had slipped down to the very verge of the precipice, where he lay with his right arm and leg over the brink, while with the other arm and leg he was with difficulty holding on to keep himself from being dashed to pieces below.

Captain Lewis instantly perceived his dreadful situation, and stifling

his alarm, calmly told him that he was in no danger; that he should take his knife out of his belt with the right hand, and dig a hole in the side of the bluff for his right foot. With great presence of mind he did this, and then raised himself on his knees. Then taking off his moccasins he came forward on his hands and knees, holding the knife in one hand and his rifle in the other, and thus crawled to a secure spot. The men who had not attempted this passage, returned and waded the river at the foot of the bluff, where they found the water breast high. Thus they continued down the river, sometimes in mud, sometimes up to their arms in water, and when it became too deep to wade, they cut foot-holds with their knives in the sides of the banks. At night they encamped in an old Indian lodge of sticks, which afforded them dry shelter, and they slept comfortably on some willow boughs. They reached the camp on the evening of the 8th, and found Captain Clarke and the party very anxious for their safety. Captain Lewis, being persuaded that this was not the main stream, nor one which it would be advisable to ascend, gave it the name of Maria's River.

Captain Clarke's party ascended the south branch. Near the camp on the evening of the 4th, a white bear attacked one of the men, whose gun happening to be wet, would not go off; he instantly made toward a tree, but was so closely pursued that in climbing he struck the bear with his foot. The bear not being able to climb, waited till he should be forced to come down; and as the rest of the party were separated from him by a perpendicular cliff which they could not descend, it was not in their power to give him any assistance: but finally the bear was frightened by their cries and firing, and released him. Next day they followed the river several miles, until Captain Clarke was satisfied it was their true route, when they turned back and reached the camp on the evening of the 6th. Although Lewis and Clarke were completely satisfied by their observations, all the rest of the party were of a contrary opinion. In order therefore that nothing might be omitted which could prevent an error, it was agreed that one of them should ascend the southern branch by land, until he reached either the falls or the mountains. Meanwhile, to lighten their burdens, they determined to deposit here one of the periouques and all the heavy baggage they could possibly spare from the boats.

Captain Lewis and his party set out on the 11th. As there were many deep ravines extending back from the shore which made the traveling difficult near the river, they sometimes left it in its windings, but on the 13th, being fearful of passing the falls, they changed their course toward the river. They had proceeded thus awhile, when their ears were greeted with the sound of falling water. Directing their steps toward it they reached the falls at noon, having traveled seven miles since hearing the sound. Captain Lewis hastened to descend the steep banks, which were two hundred feet high, and seating himself on a rock before the falls, enjoyed the sublime spectacle which

since the creation had been lavishing its magnificence upon the desert, unknown to civilization. "The river is three hundred yards wide at the fall, and is pressed in by perpendicular cliffs which rise about one hundred feet. The fall itself is eighty feet, forming on one side an unbroken sheet one hundred yards in length, while the remaining part, which precipitates itself in a more rapid current, is broken by irregular rocks below, and forms a splendid prospect of white foam, two thousand feet in length. This spray is dissipated into a thousand shapes, sometimes flying up in columns of fifteen or twenty feet, which are then oppressed by larger masses of the white foam, on all which the sun scatters the brightest colors of the rainbow. Below this fall the river is for three miles one continued succession of rapids and cascades, overhung with perpendicular bluffs, from one hundred and fifty to two hundred feet high."

Next morning a man was dispatched to Captain Clarke with an account of the discovery of the falls, and Captain Lewis proceeded to examine the rapids alone. After passing a series of rapids and small cascades he reached, at the distance of five miles, a second fall of nineteen feet. While viewing it he heard a loud roar above, and crossing over the point of a hill for a few hundred yards, he saw the whole Missouri, here a quarter of a mile wide, precipitated in an even, uninterrupted sheet to the perpendicular depth of fifty feet, whence, dashing against the rocky bottom, it rushes rapidly down, leaving behind it a spray of the purest foam across the river. The scene was singularly beautiful, without the wild, irregular sublimity of the lower falls. The eye had scarcely been regaled with this charming prospect when, at the distance of half a mile, Captain Lewis observed another of a similar kind. Hastening thither he found a cascade stretching across the river with a descent of fourteen feet, though the perpendicular pitch was only six feet. This too in any other neighborhood would have been an object of great magnificence, but after what he had just seen it became of secondary interest; his curiosity being however awakened, he determined to go on, even should night overtake him, to the head of the falls. The river was a constant succession of rapids and small cascades, at every one of which the bluffs became lower, or the bed of the river more on a level with the plains. At the distance of two and a half miles he arrived at another cataract of twenty-six feet, where the river was six hundred yards wide. Just above this was a cascade of about five feet, beyond which, as far as could be discerned, the velocity of the water seemed to abate.

Captain Lewis now ascended the hill which was behind him, and saw from its top a beautiful plain extending from the river to the base of the snow-mountains in the south and south-west. Along this wide level country the Missouri pursued its winding course, filled with water to its even and grassy banks; while, about four miles above, it was joined by a large river flowing from the north-west, through a valley three miles in

KE.

that he should dig a hole in the presence of mind he then taking off his holding the knife to a secure spot. ned and waded the water breast high. nud, sometimes up to wade, they cut ks. At night they afforded them dry pugs. They reach- Captain Clarke and via, being persuaded would be advisable

ch. Near the camp e of the men, whose stantly made toward he struck the bear waited till he should party were separated d not descend, it was finally the bear was him. Next day they larke was satisfied it nd reached the camp nd Clarke were com- of the party were of a ng might be omitted one of them should ached either the falls burdens, they deter- all the heavy baggage

11th. As there were hore which made the left it in its windings, ls, they changed their ed thus awhile, when ling water. Directing noon, having traveled Lewis hastened to de- feet high, and seating sublime spectacle which

width, and distinguished by the timber which adorned its shores. He then descended the hill, and directed his course toward the river falling in from the west. He soon met a herd of at least a thousand buffaloes, and being desirous of providing for supper, shot one of them. The animal immediately began to bleed, and the Captain, who had forgotten to reload his rifle, was intensely watching to see him fall, when he beheld a large brown bear which was stealing upon him unperceived, and was already within twenty steps. In the first moment of surprise he lifted his rifle, but remembering instantly that it was not charged, and that he had not time to reload, he felt that there was no safety but in flight. It was in the open level plain, not a bush or tree within three hundred yards, the bank of the river sloping and not more than three feet high, so that there was no possible mode of concealment. He therefore thought of retreating in a quick walk, as fast as the bear advanced, toward the nearest tree; but as soon as he turned, the bear ran, open mouth, and at full speed upon him. Captain Lewis ran about eighty yards, but finding that the animal gained on him fast, it flashed on his mind that by getting into the water to such a depth that the bear would be obliged to attack him swimming, there was still some chance of his life. He therefore turned short, plunged into the river about waist deep, and facing about, presented the point of his espartoon. The bear came to the water's edge within twenty feet of him, but as soon as he put himself in this posture of defense, he seemed frightened, and wheeling about, retreated with as much precipitation as he had pursued. Very glad to be released from this danger, Captain Lewis returned to the shore, and observed him run with great speed, sometimes looking back as if he expected to be pursued, till he reached the woods. He could not conceive the cause of the sudden alarm of the bear, but congratulating himself on his escape when he saw his own track torn to pieces by the furious animal, he learned from the whole adventure never to suffer his rifle to be a moment unloaded. The river to which he directed his steps he found to be the Medicine River of the Indians, mentioned as emptying itself into the Missouri, just above the falls. He set out in the evening to retrace his steps to the camp, twelve miles distant, and, after fresh encounters with wild beasts, came late at night to his party, who were anxious for his safety.

Captain Clarke and his party arrived in the boats at the rapids on the 15th, where they were joined next day by Captain Lewis. They then proceeded to examine the ground for a portage, to deposit a portion of their goods and baggage, and to prepare carriages for the transportation of the boats with the remainder. The portage was about fifteen miles. The men were loaded as heavily as their strength would permit, and the prickly pear and the sharp points of earth formed by the buffalo during the late rains made the crossing really painful. Some were limping from the soreness of their feet, others scarcely able to stand from the heat and fatigue. They were obliged to halt and rest fre-

turned its shores. He  
ward the river falling  
ousand buffaloes, and  
them. The animal im-  
d forgotten to reload  
en he beheld a large  
ived, and was already  
rise he lifted his rifle,  
l, and that he had not  
n flight. It was in the  
undred yards, the bank  
igh, so that there was  
thought of retreating in  
the nearest tree; but  
nd at full speed upon  
finding that the animal  
getting into the water  
attack him swimming,  
herefore turned short,  
ng about, presented the  
e water's edge within  
lf in this posture of de-  
retreated with as much  
o be released from this  
observed him run with  
ected to be pursued, till  
he cause of the sudden  
his escape when he saw  
al, he learned from the  
moment unloaded. The  
be the Medicine River  
the Missouri, just above  
e his steps to the camp,  
s with wild beasts, came  
his safety.  
boats at the rapids on  
y Captain Lewis. They  
ortage, to deposit a por-  
e carriages for the trans-  
the portage was about fif-  
as their strength would  
ats of earth formed by the  
ng really painful. Some  
ners scarcely able to stand  
ed to halt and rest fre-

quently, and at almost every stopping-place they would fall asleep in an instant; still they went on with great cheerfulness.

On the 29th, Captain Clarke, accompanied by his servant, York, Chaboneau and his wife and child, proceeded to the falls to make further observations. On his arrival he observed a very dark cloud rising in the west, which threatened rain. He took shelter in a deep ravine, where some shelving rocks kept off the rain. The shower increased, and presently a torrent of rain and hail descended. The rain fell in a solid mass, and instantly collecting in the ravine came rolling down in a dreadful current, carrying the mud and rocks, and every thing that opposed it. Captain Clarke fortunately saw the danger a moment before it reached them, and sprang up the steep bluff with his gun and shot-pouch in one hand, pushing the Indian woman with her child before him. Her husband, too, had seized her hand, but was so terrified that but for Captain Clarke they would all have been lost. So instantaneous was the rise of the water, that before he had reached his gun and began to ascend the bank, the water was up to his waist, and he could scarcely get up faster than it rose, till it reached the height of fifteen feet, with a furious current that would have swept them into the river just above the Great Falls, down which they must inevitably have been precipitated. He now relinquished his intention of going up the river, and returned to the camp.

Finally, after unheard-of toil and privations, the various parties had arrived at the camp above the falls and transported all the baggage thither by the 1st of July. Here some days were spent in building a boat, and calking it with a composition of charcoal, with beeswax and buffalo-tallow, instead of tar, which they could not obtain; but on the 9th, when it was lunched and loaded, it leaked so that they were obliged to abandon it. Captain Clarke, with a party of workmen, then went to some timber on the river, eight miles above, where they constructed some canoes. The expedition proceeded by land and by water to join them, and on the 15th of July they embarked all their baggage on board of eight canoes, and set out on their journey. On the 19th they went through a grand mountain-pass, which they called the Gates of the Rocky Mountains. For nearly six miles the rocks rise perpendicularly from the water's edge to the height of nearly twelve hundred feet. Being anxious to meet with the Shoshonees or Snake Indians, and fearful lest they should hear of the expedition and retreat to the mountains, Captain Clarke frequently went on by land in advance. On the 25th he arrived at the three forks of the Missouri, and finding that the north branch, though not largest, contained more water than the middle one, and bore more to the westward, he determined to ascend it. Therefore leaving a note for Captain Lewis, he went up the stream twenty-five miles; when Chaboneau being unable to proceed further, the party encamped, all of them much fatigued, their feet blistered, and wounded by the prickly pear. Captain Clarke proceeded next day to the top of



a mountain twelve miles further, whence he had an extensive view of the river valley upward, but saw no fresh signs of Indians. He then returned to Chaboneau, pursued his route across to the middle branch, and descending it, met with Captain Lewis at the forks on the 27th. Captain Lewis had first arrived at the south-eastern branch, which he ascended a short distance, and named Gallatin's River, in honor of the Secretary of the Treasury. He then proceeded to the confluence of the other branches, where he found Captain Clarke's note, and encamped on the south-west fork to await him. He arrived much exhausted with fatigue, and with fever and chills, occasioned by drinking cold water from a spring in the heat of the day. Finding it difficult to decide which of the two streams was the larger, or the real Missouri, they were induced to discontinue the name, and gave to the south-west branch the name of Jefferson, in honor of the President of the United States and the projector of the enterprise; and called the middle branch Madison, after the Secretary of State.

Captain Clarke being much restored by the 30th, they began to ascend the Jefferson River. On the 1st of August Captain Lewis left the party, with Sergeant Gass, Chaboneau, and Drewyer, to go on in advance in search of the Shoshonees. In a few days he came to forks in the river, and finding the right one to be rapid and obstructed, while the other was more turbid, and seemed to flow from an opening in the mountains, he left a note recommending the latter to Captain Clarke, and then continued his course along the more rapid branch. This he followed for more than a day when, coming to the mountains, he obtained an extensive view of the surrounding region. From the general course of the southern stream, as well as the gap by which it intersects the mountains, he decided to make it their future route. He then crossed over to the other branch, and descended toward the forks, where he found the party in the boats returning from the stream he had lately left. They had reached the forks on the afternoon of the 5th, but unluckily Captain Lewis's note had been left on a green pole, which the beavers had cut down and carried off, with the note, an accident which deprived them of all information as to the character of the two branches; and as the north-west fork was most in their direction, and contained as much water, they ascended it. They found it extremely rapid, and its waters so scattered, that they proceeded with difficulty. Next morning they had been joined by Drewyer, who had gone out in search of deer, and who informed them of the state of the two rivers, and of Captain Lewis's note. They accordingly descended to the fork, when they met with Captain Lewis. This north-west branch they called Wisdom River.

On the 7th they continued their journey up the Jefferson. Immediately after breakfast on the 9th, Captain Lewis took Drewyer, Shields, and McNeal, and slinging their knapsacks, they set out with a resolution to meet some nation of Indians before they returned, however

long they might be separated from the party. They followed the river by an Indian road until they entered the mountains next day, and came to two nearly equal branches. Finding the best road on the right fork, Captain Lewis concluded to follow it, and left a note to that effect for Captain Clarke.

They had gone but a few miles on the morning of the 11th, when they were delighted to see a man on horseback, at the distance of two miles, coming down to meet them. On examining him with the glass, Captain Lewis saw that he was of a different nation from any Indians they had hitherto met. He was armed with a bow and quiver of arrows; mounted on an elegant horse, without a saddle, while a small string attached to the under jaw answered as a bridle. Convinced that he was a Shoshonee, and knowing how much of their success depended on the friendly offices of that nation, Captain Lewis was anxious to approach without alarming him, and endeavor to convince him that he was a white man. He therefore proceeded on at his usual pace. When they were within a mile of each other the Indian suddenly stopped; Lewis followed his example, took his blanket from his knapsack, and holding it with both hands at the two corners, threw it above his head, and unfolded it as he brought it to the ground, as if in the act of spreading it. This signal is the universal sign of friendship among the Indians on the Missouri and Rocky Mountains. As usual, Captain Lewis repeated this signal three times; still the Indian kept his position, and looked with an air of suspicion on Drewyer and Shields, who were now advancing on each side. Lewis then took from his pack some beads, a looking-glass, and a few trinkets, which he had brought for the purpose, and advanced unarmed toward the Indian. He remained awhile, then turned his horse and began to move off slowly. Captain Lewis then called out "*Tabba bone!*" ("white man"), but the Indian kept his eye on Drewyer and Shields, who were still thoughtlessly advancing, till Lewis made a signal to them to halt. Then the Indian waited for Captain Lewis, who still came nearer, repeating the words "*tabba bone,*" and holding up the trinkets, at the same time stripping up his sleeve to show the color of his skin. He thus advanced within a hundred paces, but as Shields, who had not observed the signal, was still approaching, the Indian suddenly turned his horse, and leaping the creek, disappeared in an instant. Though sadly disappointed, Captain Lewis determined to make some use of the incident. He therefore set off with his men to follow the track, hoping it might lead them to a body of the nation. They now fixed a small flag of the United States on a pole, which was carried as a signal of their friendly intentions, should the Indians see them approaching. Thus pursuing their journey, they came, on the 12th, to a plain Indian road which led directly on toward the mountain. The stream gradually became smaller, till, after going a few miles, it had so greatly diminished in width, that one of the men, in a fit of enthusiasm, with one foot on each side of the river, thanked God that he had lived to bestride the

Missouri. As they went along, their hopes of soon seeing the waters of the Columbia arose almost to painful anxiety, when, after four miles from the last abrupt turn of the river, they reached a small gap formed by the high mountains, which recede on each side, leaving room for the Indian road. "From the foot of one of the lowest of these mountains, which rises with a gentle ascent of about half a mile, issues the remotest water of the Missouri. They had now reached the hidden sources of that river, which had never yet been seen by civilized man; and as they quenched their thirst at the chaste and icy fountain—as they sat down by the brink of that little rivulet, which yielded its modest tribute to the parent ocean—they felt themselves rewarded for all their labors and all their difficulties. They left reluctantly this interesting spot, and pursuing the Indian road through the interval of the hills, arrived at the top of a ridge, from which they saw high mountains, partially covered with snow, lying still further west. The ridge on which they stood formed the dividing line between the waters of the Atlantic and Pacific oceans. They followed a descent much steeper than that on the eastern side, and at the distance of three quarters of a mile, reached a fine, bold creek of cold water, running to the westward. They stopped to taste, for the first time, the waters of the Columbia."

Next day, as they were pursuing their journey westward through an open, broken country, they perceived two women, a man, and two dogs on an eminence a mile before them. The strangers seemed at first to await them, and Captain Lewis approached, unfurling the flag and calling "*Tabba bone!*" But the females first retreated behind the hill, and when Lewis came near the man went off also, and they had all disappeared when he reached the top of the hill. They had gone about a mile further, when they suddenly came upon three female Indians from whom they had been concealed until they were within thirty paces of each other. A young woman fled, the other two, an elderly woman and a little girl, seeing the strangers too near for them to escape, sat on the ground, holding down their heads as if reconciled to the death which they supposed awaited them. Captain Lewis put down his rifle, and advancing, took the woman by the hand, raised her, and repeated the words "*tabba bone!*" at the same time baring his arm to prove that he was a white man, for his hands and face had become, by exposure, as dark as their own. She appeared at once relieved, and Captain Lewis gave them some beads, pewter mirrors, paint, and other trinkets, as well as to their companions, who had hastened back when called, and he painted their cheeks with vermillion, a ceremony which among the Shoshonees, is emblematic of peace. Afterward, at his request, they conducted the party toward the Indian camp.

In this way they had marched two miles, when they met a troop of nearly sixty warriors, well mounted, riding at full speed toward them. Captain Lewis put down his gun and went forward with the flag. The chief spoke to the women, who explained and showed exultingly the

on seeing the waters when, after four miles and a small gap formed leaving room for the t of these mountains, le, issues the remotest the hidden sources of zed man; and as they in—as they sat down modest tribute to the all their labors and all ing spot, and pursuing arrived at the top of a ally covered with snow, stood formed the di- Pacific oceans. They e eastern side, and at a fine, bold creek of ed to taste, for the first

y westward through an a, a man, and two dogs ers seemed at first to rding the flag and call- eated behind the hill, and they had all dis- they had gone about a e female Indians from within thirty paces of two, an elderly woman or them to escape, sat reconciled to the death wis put down his rifle, aised her, and repeated g his arm to prove that ecome, by exposure, as ed, and Captain Lewis d other trinkets, as well k when called, and he which among the Sho- t his request, they con-

en they met a troop of all speed toward them. ard with the flag. The showed exultingly the

presents they had received, and then the chief and two warriors leaped from their horses, came up to Captain Lewis, and embraced him with great cordiality, at the same time applying their left cheek to his, and frequently vociferating "*Ah hi e! ah hi e!*" "I am much pleased; I am much rejoiced." The whole body of warriors now came forward, and the men received the caresses, and the grease and paint, of their new friends. After this fraternal embrace, Captain Lewis lighted a pipe and offered it to the Indians, who now seated themselves in a circle around the party. But before they accepted this mark of friendship, they pulled off their moccasins, a custom which indicates the sacred sincerity of their professions when they smoke with a stranger, and imprecates on themselves the misery of going barefoot forever if they are faithless to their words, a penalty by no means light to those who roam over the thorny plains of their country. It is not unworthy to remark the analogy which some of the customs of these children of the wilderness bear to those recorded in Holy Writ. After a few pipes were smoked and some presents distributed, Captain Lewis stated the friendly object of their visit, and gave the flag to the chief as an emblem of peace, after which they proceeded to the Indian camp. There a council was held, in which the captain more fully explained the purposes of his visit, and distributed the few articles he had left to the wondering crowd which had assembled to see the first white men. Here he learned that an alarm had been given, and the warriors he had met in the morning were coming down to attack the supposed enemy.

In order to give time for the boats to reach the forks of the river, Captain Lewis remained a while, and obtained all the information he could collect in regard to the country. On the 14th, his men went out with the Indians to hunt, but as they were unsuccessful he made a little paste with flour, which, with some berries, formed a palatable repast. Having secured the goodwill of the chief, he informed him of the approach of his companions, and induced him to go down with horses to assist in transporting their merchandise. On the morning of the 15th, he began to feel the inconveniences of hunger, and found that his whole stock of provisions consisted of two pounds of flour. This was divided, and one half boiled with the berries into a sort of pudding; and after presenting a large share to the chief, he and his men breakfasted on the remainder. Cameahwait, the chief, was delighted with this new dish; he examined the flour, and asked if it was made of roots; the process of preparing it was explained, and he said it was the best thing he had eaten for a long time. Captain Lewis now endeavored to hasten the departure of the Indians, who, although urged by the chief, were still reluctant, having heard that he was in league with their enemies, the Pahkees. Finally, by appearing to doubt their courage, he succeeded in enlisting a few, with whom he smoked a pipe and set off immediately. Their departure spread a gloom over the village, yet they had not gone far when they were joined by others, and before they had reached the

spring where they had encamped on the 12th, all the men of the nation, and a number of the women, had overtaken them. Here they halted an hour to let the horses graze, and at sunset encamped at the upper end of the valley.

Next morning Captain Lewis sent two hunters ahead to procure provisions, at the same time requesting Cameahwait to prevent his young men from going out, lest by their noise they might alarm the game, but this immediately revived their suspicions. They believed these men were sent forward to apprise the enemy of their coming, and small parties of Indians went out on each side of the valley, under pretense of hunting, but in reality to watch the movements of the two men; while a considerable number, alarmed, went home. An hour afterward they saw one of the spies coming back at full speed across the plain; the chief stopped and seemed uneasy, the rest were moved with fresh suspicions, and Captain Lewis himself was disconcerted; but the young Indian had scarcely breath to say a few words as he came up, when the whole troop dashed forward as fast as their horses could carry them; and Captain Lewis, astonished, was borne along nearly a mile before he learned, with great satisfaction, that it was all caused by the announcement that one of the white men had killed a deer. When they reached the place where Drewyer had thrown its intestines, they all dismounted in confusion, and ran tumbling over each other like famished dogs, each tearing away whatever part he could, and beginning to eat it. When the deer was skinned Captain Lewis reserved one quarter and gave the rest to the Indians, who devoured nearly the whole of it without cooking. Two more deer were brought in, and these scenes repeated, until the Indians seemed completely satisfied and in good humor. At length, as they were approaching the place where they were to see the white men, the chief placed ornaments around the necks of Lewis and his party, evidently to disguise the white men. Seeing this, Captain Lewis, to inspire them with confidence, put his cocked hat and feather on the head of the chief; the men followed his example, and the change seemed very agreeable to the Indians.

To guard against disappointment, Captain Lewis explained the possibility of his companions not having reached the forks, in consequence of the difficulty of navigation; and to the disappointment of both parties, on coming within two miles of the forks, no canoes were to be seen. Uneasy lest at this moment he should be abandoned and all his hopes of obtaining aid from the Indians destroyed, he gave the chief his gun, telling him that if the enemies of his nation were in the bushes he might defend himself with it; that for his own part he was not afraid to die, and that the chief might shoot him as soon as they discovered themselves betrayed. As they went on, Captain Lewis sent a man with an Indian for the notes he had left, which he pretended to be from his companion, sent forward by agreement, to let him know where the boats were; that they were just below the mountains, coming slowly against the current.

the men of the nation,  
Here they halted and  
at the upper end

head to procure pro-  
prevent his young  
alarm the game, but  
believed these men  
ming, and small par-  
y, under pretense of  
the two men; while  
hour afterward they  
the plain; the chief  
with fresh suspicions,  
the young Indian had  
when the whole troop  
y them; and Captain  
fore he learned, with  
ouncement that one  
y reached the place  
dismounted in con-  
shed dogs, each tear-  
to eat it. When the  
ter and gave the rest  
f it without cooking.  
es repeated, until the  
umor. At length, as  
to see the white men,  
Lewis and his party,  
his, Captain Lewis, to  
d feather on the head  
e change seemed very

is explained the possi-  
ka, in consequence of  
ment of both parties,  
es were to be seen.  
ed and all his hopes  
ve the chief his gun,  
the bushes he might  
as not afraid to die,  
discovered themselves  
man with an Indian  
from his companion,  
the boats were; that  
y against the current.

The chief and the greater part of the Indians were satisfied; they spent the night here, and in the morning Drewyer and an Indian were dispatched down the river in quest of the boats. They had been gone two hours when a straggling Indian came in with a report that he had seen the white men, who were only a short distance below, and were coming on. The Indians were all transported with joy, and the chief, in the warmth of his satisfaction, renewed his embrace of Captain Lewis, who was quite as much delighted as the Indians themselves.

Meanwhile the party in the boats had been ascending the multiplied windings of the river by a slow and toilsome progress, and on the night of the 16th were encamped only four miles, by land, below the forks, although the distance was ten miles by water. On setting out in the morning, Captain Clarke, with Chaboneau and his wife, walked on shore, but they had not gone more than a mile before Captain Clarke saw Sacajawea (Caboneau's wife) who was ahead with her husband, begin to dance and show every mark of the most extravagant joy, turning round to him and pointing to several Indians, whom he now saw advancing on horseback, sucking her fingers at the same time, to indicate that they were of her native tribe. As they came near he saw Drewyer among them, dressed like an Indian, from whom he learned the situation of the party. While the boats were making the circuit he went toward the forks with the Indians, who sang aloud as they went along, with the greatest appearance of delight. They soon drew near the camp, and just as they reached it a woman made her way through the crowd, toward Sacajawea, and recognizing each other they embraced with the most tender affection. They had been companions in childhood, had been taken prisoners in the same battle, and shared the rigors of their captivity, till one of them had escaped from the Minnetarees. Captain Clarke was received by the chief, who, after embracing him, conducted him to a tent of willows, seated him on a white robe, and tied in his hair six small shells resembling pearls, an ornament highly valued by these people. The moccasins of the whole party were then taken off, and after much ceremony the smoking began. When the conference was opened, Sacajawea was sent for; she came into the tent, sat down, and was beginning to interpret, when in the person of Cameahwait she recognized her brother. She instantly jumped up, and ran and embraced him, throwing over him a blanket and weeping profusely; the chief himself was also moved. After some conversation between them she resumed her seat and attempted to interpret for the parties, but her new situation seemed to overpower her, and she was frequently interrupted by her tears. After the council was finished, the unfortunate woman learned that all her family were dead except two brothers, one of whom was absent, and a son of her eldest sister, a small boy, who was immediately adopted by her.

When the canoes arrived the baggage was taken out and an awning erected, under which a treaty was held. Here they made arrangements



with the Indians for horses in order to proceed with as little delay as possible, promising them ample remuneration for every service they should render. The conference having ended satisfactorily, the presents were distributed. To Cameahwait they gave a small medal with the likeness of President Jefferson, and on the reverse a figure of hands clasped with a pipe and tomahawk; to this was added a uniform coat, a shirt, a pair of scarlet leggings, a carrot of tobacco, and some small articles. Each of the other chiefs received a small medal struck during Washington's administration, a shirt, handkerchief, leggings, a knife, and some tobacco. Medals were also given to two young warriors, who were promising youths and very much respected in the tribe. These honorary gifts were followed by presents of paint, moccasins, awls, knives, beads, and looking-glasses. A plentiful meal of Indian corn, of which the hull was taken off by being boiled in lye, was also distributed; and as it was the first they had ever tasted, they were very much pleased with it. They had indeed abundant sources of surprise in all they saw; the appearance of the men, their arms, their clothing, the canoes, the strange looks of the negro, and the sagacity of the dog; all in turn shared their admiration, which was raised to astonishment by a shot from the air-gun. This operation was instantly considered as a *great medicine*, by which they, as well as the other Indians, mean something emanating directly from the Great Spirit, or produced by his invisible and incomprehensible agency.

Lewis and Clarke next consulted as to their future operations. The Indians had represented that the river below them was rocky, rapid, and so closely confined between high mountains, that it was impossible to pass down it, either by land or water, to the great lake. It was therefore agreed that Captain Clarke should set off in the morning with eleven men, go by the Indian camp, and leave Chaboneau and his wife to hasten the collection of horses, then lead his men down the river, and if he found it navigable and the timber in sufficient quantity, begin to build canoes. Before setting out on the 18th, they exposed a few articles to barter for horses, and soon obtained three good ones, for which they gave some clothing, knives, and other small articles, the whole of which did not cost more than twenty dollars. A fourth was purchased by the men for an old check shirt, a pair of old leggings, and a knife. Captain Clarke arrived at the camp on the 20th, where he succeeded in engaging an intelligent old man as a guide. After pursuing his route for a few days he began to perceive that the Indians had not exaggerated. The mountains were rocky, and so high that it seemed almost impossible to cross them with horses; their road lay over the sharp fragments of rocks which had fallen from the steep cliffs, and were strewed in heaps for miles together; yet the horses, unshod, traveled across them as fast as the men. These difficulties increased until on the 23d he reached a small meadow, below which the whole current of the river beat against a solid wall of rock perfectly inaccessible to horses. Leaving the horses and the

greater part of the men here, he proceeded with his guide, clambering over immense rocks and along the sides of lofty precipices which bordered the river, until at the distance of twelve miles he reached a small meadow. Thus far the river was one continued rapid, along which even the empty canoes must be let down with cords, and then at the great risk both of the canoes and the men, while the transportation of the baggage over the steep mountains would have to be done by men. Still Captain Clarke continued his route, and at length ascended a high and steep point of a mountain, from which the guide now pointed out where the river broke through the mountains, about twenty miles distant. The view was terminated by a lofty mountain, which was perfectly covered with snow. Toward this formidable barrier the river went directly on, and there it was, as the guide observed, that the difficulties and dangers, of which they had spoken, commenced. Captain Clarke was now convinced of the impracticability of this route; he therefore hastened to return, and after rejoining his men next evening they retraced their steps to the Indian camp, where they arrived on the 26th. As game was scarce in this region they found a precarious subsistence, and suffered from a scarcity of food, the Indians being able to supply them with little else than a pittance of fish. Therefore, while awaiting the arrival of Captain Lewis and his party, they made all possible preparations for their departure, especially in preparing pack-saddles for the horses which Lewis had purchased.

Captain Lewis and his party, who were left with the Indians at the forks of the Jefferson on the 18th, spent a few days in making ready to transport the baggage. Saddles were made, some of the baggage was buried, the boats sunk in the stream, and by the 24th all the preparations were made for their departure. Meanwhile the hunters had been out as usual, but the game was so scarce that they were obliged to encroach on their stock of provisions. One night Drewyer returned late with a fawn and a quantity of Indian plunder, which he had taken by way of reprisal. While hunting in the morning, he came suddenly upon an Indian camp, at which were an old man, three women, a young man and a boy. As they showed no surprise he rode up to them, and turning his horse loose to graze, sat down and began to converse with them by signs. They had just finished a repast of some roots, and in a little while they collected their horses and began to saddle them. Drewyer, having rested, went to catch his horse, forgetting at the moment to take up his rifle. He had scarcely gone more than fifty paces when the Indians mounted their horses, the young man snatched up the rifle, and leaving all their baggage they set off at full speed toward the mountain passes. Drewyer instantly pursued them. After running ten miles, the horses of the women began to give out, and as they raised dreadful cries, the young man slackened his pace, and began to ride round them. Drewyer persuaded the women that he did not mean to hurt them, and they stopped; and when he asked the young man for his rifle, the only part

of the answer he understood was "Palikee," the name by which they call their enemies, the Minnetarees. While they were thus engaged in talking, Drewyer watched his opportunity, and seeing the Indian off his guard, galloped up to him and seized his rifle. The Indian struggled for some time, but finding Drewyer too strong for him, had the presence of mind to open the pan and let the priming fall out; then loosing his hold, he gave his horse the whip and escaped at full speed, leaving the women at the mercy of the conqueror. Drewyer then returned, and finding their baggage, brought it to camp with him.

From some Indians who arrived they purchased three horses, by giving for each an ax, a knife, a handkerchief, and a little paint. For a mule they were obliged to add a second knife, a shirt, a handkerchief, and a pair of leggings. They now loaded eleven horses and a mule, and placing the rest on the shoulders of the Indian women, left the camp at noon on the 24th. They were all on foot except Sacajawea, for whom her husband had purchased a horse. An Indian had the politeness to offer Captain Lewis one of his horses to ride, which he accepted, in order better to direct the march of the party. On the morning of the 26th they reached the fountain of the Missouri and passed over the dividing ridge, and in the evening arrived at the encampment. Here they found a note from Captain Clarke, apprising them that there were no hopes of a passage by water, and suggesting the route by the north as the most practicable. Captain Clarke joined them on the 29th, and they resumed the purchase of horses. The prices had risen meanwhile, so that one horse cost a pistol, one hundred balls, some powder, and a knife; another was changed for a musket; and in this way they obtained twenty-nine. The horses were young and vigorous, but poor, and worn with the roughness of the Shoshonee saddle. They were therefore anxious to obtain one at least for each man, to carry the baggage, or the man himself, or in the last resource to serve as food; but they were unable to supply all.

On the 30th they loaded their horses and took leave of the Shoshonees, accompanied by the old guide, his four sons, and another Indian. They descended the river by the road which Clarke had previously pursued until the 1st of September, when they turned to the north-west across the hills. Next day the Indians all left them except the guide, and the road they were following turned eastward toward the Missouri. They had therefore to cut their way with much difficulty up the west branch of the creek they were following. The road led over the steep and rocky side of the hills, and the thickets were almost impenetrable; the horses frequently fell down the sides of the hills, and some gave out exhausted with fatigue. On the 4th they crossed a high mountain, which formed the dividing ridge between the waters of the creek they had been ascending, and those running north and west. Every thing was frozen, and the ground was covered with snow, which had fallen the night before. They presently came to a stream flowing westward, which they

me by which they  
ere thus engaged in  
g the Indian off his  
ndian struggled for  
had the presence of  
en losing his hold,  
leaving the women  
turned, and finding

three horses, by giv-  
little paint. For a  
irt, a handkerchief,  
horses and a mule,  
ian women, left the  
except Sacajawea, for  
dian had the polite-  
, which he accepted.  
On the morning of  
and passed over the  
encampment. Here  
them that there were  
e route by the north  
em on the 29th, and  
had risen meanwhile,  
some powder, and a  
his way they obtained  
, but poor, and worn  
y were therefore anx-  
the baggage, or the  
food; but they were

leave of the Shosho-  
and another Indian.  
e had previously pur-  
ed to the north-west  
em except the guide,  
toward the Missouri.  
difficulty up the west  
ad led over the steep  
almost impenetrable;  
ls, and some gave out  
high mountain, which  
e creek they had been  
very thing was frozen,  
d fallen the night be-  
westward, which they

descended to its junction with a river from the east. Here they found a large encampment of Indians, who received them with great cordiality. They smoked with them, remained a few days, exchanged presents, and trafficked for horses. These Indians were called Ootlashoots, and represented themselves as one band of the Tushepaws, a numerous people residing on the head waters of the Missouri and Columbia Rivers. They seemed kindly and friendly, and willingly shared the berries and fruits which formed their only stock of provisions. Their only wealth was their horses, which were very fine and so numerous that this party had with them at least five hundred. To this river they gave the name of Clarke, as they had that of Lewis to the one they had lately left, each from the first white man who had visited its waters. Resuming their journey, they came on the 9th to a large stream flowing in from the west, where they halted a day to make observations and collect provisions, as they were here to leave the river, and the mountain region through which they had to pass was without game. Next day one of the hunters returned with three Indians whom he had met up the creek, one of whom they persuaded to go with them. They ascended the course of the creek, and after a rugged and difficult passage over the mountain, came on the 14th to the Kooskooskee River. Their whole stock of animal food being exhausted, they killed a colt, on which they made a hearty supper, and from this incident they gave the name of Colt-killed Creek to a stream near by. They then left the river and took the mountains on the right, where the timber was fallen and the ascent so steep that they had to wind in every direction. The horses frequently slipped, and one, which was loaded with a desk and small trunk, rolled over and over for forty yards till his fall was stopped by a tree. The desk was broken, but the poor animal escaped without much injury. Provision was also very scarce; they found only a few pheasants, and on the 17th they killed another colt. This want of provisions, the extreme fatigue to which they were subjected, and the dreary prospect before them, began to dispirit the men; Captain Clarke therefore set out with six hunters on the 18th, intending to go on ahead and find something for the support of the party. The region they passed through was rugged and barren until the 20th, when they descended the last of the Rocky Mountains and reached the level country. They had proceeded a few miles on the plain when they saw three boys, who ran and hid in the grass. Captain Clarke, leaving his horse and gun with the men, soon relieved the apprehensions of the boys, and sent them forward to the village with presents of small pieces of ribbon. Presently a man came out very cautiously to meet the party, and conducted them to a large tent in the village, where all the inhabitants gathered round to view, with a mixture of fear and pleasure, these wonderful strangers. This spacious tent was the residence of the great chief, who had gone, with all the warriors, to attack some of their enemies to the south-west, leaving but a few men to guard the women and children. They entertained their guests with a

sumptuous feast; the latter returned the kindness by a few small presents, and then went on with one of the chiefs to a second village, two miles distant. Here the party was treated with great kindness, and passed the night.

The inhabitants of these villages called themselves Chopunnish, or Pierced-nose. The chief drew a chart of the river, and explained that a greater chief than himself, who governed this village, and was called Twisted Hair, was now fishing at the distance of half a day's ride down the river. The hunters not being able to kill any thing, Captain Clarke bought as much dried salmon, roots, and berries as he could obtain with the few articles he chanced to have in his pockets, and having sent them back to Captain Lewis, he went on toward the camp of the Twisted Hair. He arrived at midnight, and giving him a medal they smoked together till one o'clock. The chief seemed cheerful and sincere, and on the next day he accompanied Captain Clarke back to the village where they arrived at sunset; they then walked up to the second village where the main party with Captain Lewis had just arrived. Next morning, the 23d, the chiefs and warriors were all assembled, and Lewis and Clarke explained to them whence they came, the objects of their visit, and their pacific intentions toward all the Indians. This was conveyed by signs, but seemed to give perfect satisfaction. They then gave medals and additional presents to the chiefs, and delivered a flag and handkerchief for the grand chief on his return. They purchased a quantity of fish, berries, and roots, and in the afternoon went on to the second village, where they continued their purchases.

On the 24th, they sent back Colter in search of horses lost in the mountains, and having collected the rest, set out for the river by the route already passed by Captain Clarke. They now felt the consequences of eating heartily after their late privations: many of them were taken very ill; Captain Lewis could scarcely sit on his horse, while others had to be put on horseback, and some, from extreme weakness and pain, were forced to lie down by the road-side for some time. At sunset they reached the island where they had first met the Twisted Hair, and where some hunters had been left on the 22d. The latter had been unsuccessful, and two of them were sick. The party encamped on an island a little below, and administered to the sick.

#### VOYAGE DOWN LEWIS AND COLUMBIA RIVERS.

Having resolved to go down to some spot suitable for building canoes, they set out early on the 26th, and encamped five miles below, opposite the forks of the river. But the men were so weak that several were taken sick in coming down, the weather being oppressively hot. Next day they prepared to make five canoes; but few of the men, however, were able to work, and some of them were taken ill. The hunt-



by a few small pres-  
a second village, two  
kindness, and passed

Chopunnish, or  
er, and explained that  
village, and was called  
half a day's ride down  
thing, Captain Clarke  
he could obtain with  
kets, and having sent  
the camp of the Twist-  
a medal they smoked  
eeful and sincere, and  
re back to the village  
up to the second vil-  
d just arrived. Next  
assembled, and Lewis  
e, the objects of their  
ndians. This was con-  
satisfaction. They then  
, and delivered a flag  
rn. They purchased a  
fternoon went on to the  
ases.

h of horses lost in the  
nt for the river by the  
y now felt the conse-  
ations: many of them  
y sit on his horse, while  
om extreme weakness  
ide for some time. At  
l first met the Twisted  
on the 22d. The latter  
sick. The party en-  
ered to the sick.

# MBIA RIVERS.

t suitable for building  
mped five miles below,  
ere so weak that several  
being oppressively hot.  
ut few of the men, how-  
e taken ill. The hunt-

ers, too, returned without any game, and seriously indisposed, so that nearly the whole party was ill. Colter returned with one of the horses and brought half a deer, which was very nourishing to the invalids. At length those first attacked began to recover, and all who were able to work were busied at the canoes. Meanwhile it became necessary to dispose of the horses. They were therefore collected to the number of thirty-eight, and being branded and marked, were delivered to three Indians, the brothers and son of a chief who was going with them down the river, who, having each received a knife and some small articles, agreed to take good care of the horses till the return of the expedition. The saddles were buried near the river, and with them a canister of powder and a bag of balls.

On Monday, the 7th of October, the canoes were lanced and loaded, the oars fixed, and every preparation made for setting out, but when all was ready, the two chiefs who had promised to accompany them were not to be found, and at the same time they missed a pipe-tomahawk. They therefore proceeded without them. Below the forks the river was called the Kooskooskee; it was a clear, rapid stream, with a number of shoals and difficult places. They passed, in the course of the day, ten rapids, in descending which one of the canoes struck a rock and sprung a leak. Next day, as they were passing the last of fifteen rapids, which they had been fortunate enough to escape, one of the canoes struck, and immediately filled and sunk. The men, several of whom could not swim, clung to the boat till a canoe could be unloaded, when with the assistance of an Indian boat they were all brought to shore. All the goods were so wet that they had to halt for the night, and spread them out to dry. The old Shoshonee guide with his son deserted them on the 9th, and was seen running up the river, without having given notice of his design, or even received his pay. Without serious accident they passed many rapids below and reached the junction of the Kooskooskee with the Lewis, on the evening of the 10th. They stopped for breakfast next morning at a large encampment of Indians a few miles below, where they traded for a stock of provisions. While the traffic was going on, they observed a vapor bath, different from those they had previously seen. "It was a hollow square six or eight feet deep, formed in the river bank, and completely covered, except an opening about two feet wide at the top. The bathers descend by this hole, taking with them a number of jugs of water; and, after being seated around the room, throw the water on the stones until the steam becomes of a temperature sufficiently high for their purposes. The baths of the Indians of the Rocky Mountains are of different sizes, the most common being made of mud and sticks like an oven, but the mode of raising the steam is exactly the same. Among both these nations it is very uncommon for a man to bathe alone; he is generally accompanied by one, or sometimes by several of his acquaintances; indeed it is so essentially a social amusement that to decline going in to bathe



when invited by a friend is one of the highest indignities that can be offered him."

In Lewis River they likewise encountered frequent rapids, which sometimes injured their boats, and endangered their safety. In descending one of these a boat was driven crosswise against a rock in the middle of the current. The crew attempted to get her off, but the waves dashed over her and she soon filled. They got out on the rock and held her above water, with great exertion, until another canoe was unloaded and sent to her relief, but they could not prevent a great deal of baggage from floating down the stream. As soon as she was lightened she was hurried down the channel, leaving the crew on the rock. They were brought off by the rest of the party, and the canoe itself and nearly all that had been washed overboard, was recovered.

On the 16th they reached the Columbia, and halted above the point of junction to confer with the Indians, who had collected in great numbers to receive them. A chief who had passed them on horseback a few days before, and who appeared to be a man of influence, harangued the Indians on the occasion. After smoking with the latter, they formed a camp and had the fires prepared, "when a chief came from the Indian camp, about a mile and a quarter up the Columbia River, at the head of nearly two hundred men. They formed a regular procession, keeping time to the noise, rather than music, of their drums, which they accompanied with their voices. As they advanced they formed a semicircle around us, and continued singing for some time. We then smoked with them all, and communicated, as well as we could by signs, our friendly intentions toward all nations, and our joy at finding ourselves surrounded by our children." Medals and presents were then distributed, as usual, to the chiefs. "After they had dispersed, we proceeded to purchase provisions, and were enabled to collect seven dogs, to which some of the Indians added small presents of fish, and one of them gave us twenty pounds of fat dried horse-flesh." Next day they were occupied in making the necessary observations and measuring the rivers. During this time, the principal chief came down with several of his warriors, and smoked with the party. They were also visited by several men and women who offered dogs and fish for sale, but as the fish was out of season, they contented themselves with purchasing all the dogs they could obtain.

These Indians called themselves Sokulks. In their language, as well as in dress and general appearance, they resembled the Chopunnish of the Kooskooskee and Lewis Rivers. "The most striking difference between them is among the females, the Sokulk women being more inclined to corpulency than any we have yet seen. Their stature is low, their faces broad, and their heads flattened in such a manner that the forehead is in a straight line from the nose to the crown of the head. Their eyes are of a dirty sable; their hair is coarse and black, and braided without ornament of any kind. Instead of wearing, as do the

Chopunnish, long leathern shirts, highly decorated with beads and shells, the Sokulk females have no other covering than a piece of leather drawn around the hips."

In the course of the day Captain Clarke ascended the Columbia a few miles in a small canoe. Opposite some rapids, five miles above, he found a fishing-place, consisting of three mat-houses. Here were great quantities of salmon drying upon scaffolds; and, indeed, from the mouth of the river upward he saw immense numbers of dead salmon strewed along the shore or floating on the surface of the river, whose waters were so clear that the salmon could be seen swimming in it at the depth of fifteen or twenty feet. The Indians, who had collected on the banks to view him, now joined him in eighteen canoes and accompanied him up the river.

On the 18th a numerous council was held with Indians who came in; then, having completed the purposes of their stay, they purchased forty dogs for provisions and proceeded down the river. Coming to some dangerous rapids on the 19th, several of the party landed to lighten the boats. While walking ahead, Captain Clarke ascended a cliff about two hundred feet above the water, from which he saw that the country on both sides of the river, immediately below the cliffs, was low, and spread itself in a level plain to a great distance on all sides. To the west, at the distance of about one hundred and fifty miles, was a very high mountain covered with snow, which, from its direction and appearance, he supposed to be the Mount St. Helen's laid down by Vancouver as visible from the mouth of the Columbia. There was also another mountain of a conical form, whose top was covered with snow, in a south-west direction. As Captain Clarke came to the lower end of the rapid before any others, except one of the small canoes, he sat down on a rock to wait for them, and seeing a crane fly across the river, shot it, and it fell near him. Several Indians had been before this passing on the opposite side toward the rapids, and some few who passed nearly in front of him, being either alarmed at his appearance or the report of the gun, fled to their houses. Captain Clarke was afraid that these people had not yet heard that the white men were coming, and therefore, in order to allay their uneasiness before the whole party should arrive, he got into the small canoe with three men, and rowed over toward the houses. While crossing, he shot a duck, which fell into the water. As he approached, no person was to be seen except three men on the plains, and they too fled as he came near the shore. He landed before five houses close to each other, but no one appeared, and the doors, which were of mat, were closed. He went toward one of them with a pipe in his hand, and pushing aside the mat, entered the lodge, where he found thirty-two persons, chiefly men and women, with a few children, all in the greatest consternation; some hanging down their heads, others crying and wringing their hands. He went up to them all and shook hands with them in the most friendly manner; but their apprehensions,

which had for a moment subsided, revived on his taking out a burning-glass, as there was no roof to the house, and lighting his pipe. He then offered it to several of the men, and distributed among the women and children a few small trinkets which he carried about with him, and gradually restored some tranquillity among them. He then left this house, and directing each of the men to go into a house, went himself into a second. Here he found the inhabitants more terrified than those he had first seen, but he succeeded in pacifying them, and then visited the other houses, where the men had been equally successful.

After leaving the houses he went out to sit on a rock, and beckoned to some of the men to come and smoke with him; but none of them ventured to join him till the canoes arrived with the two chiefs, who immediately explained to them the pacific intentions of the strangers. Soon afterward the interpreter's wife landed, and her presence dissipated all doubts, since in that country no woman ever accompanies a war-party; they therefore all came out and seemed perfectly reconciled. They told the two chiefs that they knew the strangers were not men, for they had seen them fall from the clouds. In fact, unperceived by them, Captain Clarke had shot the white crane, which they had seen fall just before he appeared to their eyes. The duck which he had killed also fell close by him, and as there were a few clouds flying over at the moment, they connected the fall of the birds with his sudden appearance, and believed that he had himself dropped from the clouds; the noise of the rifle, which they had never heard before, being considered merely as a sound to announce so extraordinary an event. This belief was strengthened when on entering the room he brought down fire from the heavens by means of his burning-glass. They were soon satisfactorily convinced that the strangers were only mortals, and after one of the chiefs had explained their history and objects, they all smoked together in great harmony.

On the 22d they came to the Great Falls of the Columbia, at the head of which they unloaded all the canoes and took the baggage over by land to the foot of the rapids. In this transportation they were greatly assisted by the Indians living on the banks of the river, who carried some of the heavy articles on their horses. For their services, however, they repaid themselves so adroitly that the travelers had to secure the camp against their pilfering. Next day they brought down their canoes by the plan adopted by the Indians. Crossing the river, they hauled them over a point of land on the south side, so as to avoid a perpendicular fall of twenty feet. At the distance of a quarter of a mile they reached the water and embarked. Having thus descended for a mile, they reached a pitch of the river, which, divided by two large rocks, descends with great rapidity down a fall of eight feet. As the boats could not be navigated down this steep descent, they were obliged to land and let them down as slowly as possible by strong ropes of elk-skin. They all passed in safety except one, which being loosed by the breaking of the ropes, was swept down, but was recovered by the Indians below.

They were visited that day by a great number of Indians, both from above and below the falls, and toward evening they were informed by one of the chiefs who accompanied them, that he had overheard that the Indians below intended to attack the party as it passed down the river. Being always ready for any attempt of that sort, they only re-examined their arms and increased the ammunition to one hundred rounds. The chiefs, however, were not so much at ease, and when at night they saw the Indians depart earlier than usual, they were very much alarmed. Next morning the Indians approached with apparent caution, and behaved with more than usual reserve. The two chiefs, by whom these circumstances were not unobserved, now expressed their wish to return home, saying that they could no longer be of any service, and that they could not understand the language of the people below the Falls; that the two tribes had been at war with each other, and the Indians would certainly kill them. "We endeavored to quiet their fears, and requested them to stay two nights longer, in which time we would see the Indians below and make a peace between the two nations. They replied that they were anxious to return and see their horses; we insisted on their remaining with us, not only in hopes of bringing about an accommodation between them and their enemies, but because they might be able to detect any hostile designs against us, and also assist us in passing the next falls, which are not far off, and represented as very difficult. They at length consented to stay two nights longer."

Three miles below, the river widens into a large basin, at the extremity of which a high black rock, rising perpendicularly from the right shore, seemed to run wholly across the river. So totally did it appear to stop the passage, that as they approached they could not see where the river escaped, except that the current was drawn with more than usual velocity to the left of the rock, where there was a great roaring. Climbing the rock, they saw that the whole river swept through a channel of forty-five yards wide, in which the water was thrown into whirls, and swelled and boiled in every part with the wildest agitation. But as it was impossible to carry the boats over this high rock, and as the chief danger was not from rocks, but from great waves and whirlpools, they resolved to try the passage in the boats. With great care they passed safely through, much to the astonishment of the Indians who had collected on the top of the rock to see them. This narrow passage continued for half a mile, when the river again enlarged to the width of two hundred yards. Presently they came to other rapids, which looked so unpromising that they unloaded the most valuable articles and sent them down by land, with all the men who could not swim. They descended in safety, and encamped in the evening, two miles below, near an Indian village at the second falls. The inhabitants received them with great kindness, visits were exchanged, and an apparent reconciliation was effected between them and the two chiefs who accompanied the expedition.

The Indians represented the narrows as most dangerous; but as the portage of the large canoes was impracticable, they sent some of the party forward next morning with the best stores, fixed others on the rocks to assist with ropes the canoes that might meet with any difficulty, and began the descent, in the presence of great numbers of Indians, who had collected to witness the exploit. The channel for three miles was worn through a hard, rough black rock from fifty to a hundred yards wide, in which the water swells and boils in a tremendous manner. At half a mile they got through the worst without serious accident, then reloading the canoes they passed down the remainder of the channel very well, except that one of the boats was nearly lost by striking against a rock. The Indians designate these falls by the word *Timm*, which they pronounce so as to make it represent the sound of a distant cataract. Below the channel they landed to smoke with a chief whom they saw, who had been absent when they passed his village above. He was a bold-looking man, of pleasing appearance, about fifty years of age, and dressed in a war-jacket, a cap, leggings, and moccasins. They presented him with a medal and other small articles, and he gave them some meat, of which he had but little; for on his route he had had a battle with a war party of the Towahnahiooks. Here they met with their old chiefs, who had walked on to the village below, to smoke a pipe of friendship on the renewal of peace. These chiefs had each brought a horse, intending to go home, and now the travelers smoked a parting pipe with their two faithful friends, who had accompanied them from the head of the river.

They encamped that evening, the 25th, on a high rock, where they remained two days to make observations, to dry their wet cargoes, and to hold conferences with the Indians. Six men were sent out to collect rosin to pitch the canoes, which, by being frequently hauled over rocks, had become leaky. Many Indians came; some, from hunting excursions, brought presents of deer's flesh and small white cakes made of roots. Lewis and Clarke bestowed the usual medals and presents, and being anxious to insure a friendly reception on their return, treated them with great kindness. These attentions were not lost on the Indians, who appeared well pleased with them. At night a fire was made in the middle of the camp, and as the Indians sat round it, the men danced to the music of the violin, which so delighted them that several resolved to remain all night; the rest crossed the river. Having dried their goods they set out on the 28th, and on the day following stopped at the residence of the principal chief of the Chilluckittequaw nation, who inhabited this region. He proved to be the same with whom the two chiefs had made peace at the village above. After the exchange of presents the chief showed them some curiosities, and then directed his wife to hand him his medicine-bag, from which he brought out fourteen forefingers, which he said had once belonged to the same number of his enemies, whom he had killed in fighting with the nations to the south-

east. This bag was about two feet in length, containing roots, pounded dirt, etc., which the Indians only know how to appreciate. It is suspended in the middle of the lodge, and it is supposed to be a species of sacrilege to be touched by any but the owner. It is an object of religious fear, and it is, from its sanctity, the safest place to deposit their medals and more valuable articles.

By the last of October they reached the Lower Falls of the Columbia, where they held a conference with the Indians who came in from a neighboring village, and then made preparations for a portage on the 1st of November. They then carried their small canoe and all the baggage across the slippery rocks to the foot of the shoot, after which the four large canoes were brought down by slipping them along poles, placed from one rock to another, and in some places by partially using streams that escaped alongside the river. Three of them, however, were so injured that the men were obliged to stop at the end of the shoot to repair them. A mile and a half below, they passed another bad rapid, and so difficult was the navigation of this day, that when they encamped for the night they had made but seven miles from the head of the shoot. In the morning they found it necessary to unload once more, and send the baggage, with those who could not swim, around a dangerous rapid. This was the last descent of the Columbia; below it they came to tide-water, and the river began to grow wide.

In passing along they frequently met Indians ascending the river in canoes; some of these canoes bore the figure of a bear in the bow, and that of a man in the stern, both made of painted wood and nearly as large as life. They also held continual intercourse with the natives on the shore, who were usually kind and friendly, but occasionally manifested a disposition to pilfer. They encountered much rainy weather in the lower stages of their journey, so that their clothing was continually wet, and the baggage much injured. On the 7th, they stopped to purchase some food and beaver skins at a village situated at the foot of the high hills on the right, behind two small islands. "Opposite to these islands the hills on the left retire, and the river widens into a kind of bay crowded with islands. We had not gone far from this village when the fog cleared off, and we enjoyed the delightful prospect of the ocean: that ocean, the object of all our labors, the reward of all our anxieties. This cheering view exhilarated the spirits of all the party, who were still more delighted on hearing the distant roar of the breakers." They went on with great cheerfulness, but the shore was so bold and rocky on the right that they could find no spot fit for an encampment, and after having gone thirty-four miles during the day, they spread their mats on the ground and passed the night in the rain. It rained in the morning; having changed their wet clothing of the day before, they set forward at a late hour, but when they had reached a point eight miles in advance, the waves ran so high, and dashed the canoes about so much that several of the men became sea-sick, and they were compelled to land.



The situation was extremely uncomfortable, the high hills jutting in so closely that there was not room to lie level, nor to secure their baggage free from the tide, but the waves were increasing at every moment so much that they could not move from the spot in safety. They therefore fixed themselves on the beach left by the ebb-tide, and having raised the baggage on poles, spent a disagreeable night. It rained the whole of the next day; the tide set in, accompanied by a high wind from the south, which shifted and blew almost a gale from the sea. The immense waves now broke over the place where they were encamped, and the large trees, some of them five or six feet thick, which had lodged at the point, were drifted over their camp, and the utmost vigilance of every man could scarcely save the canoes from being crushed to pieces. They remained in the water, and drenched with rain during the rest of the day; their only food being some dried fish, and some rain-water, which they caught. Yet, though wet and cold, and some of them sick from using the salt-water, the men were still cheerful and full of anxiety to see more of the ocean.

On the 10th they were enabled to proceed, but at the distance of ten miles the wind arose, and the heavy sea forced them to seek a place of safety. They made another attempt when the tide fell, but were obliged to put to shore a mile below. They encamped on some drift-logs, with the hills rising steep above their heads to the height of five hundred feet. Every thing was thoroughly wet with the rain, which did not cease during the night, in the course of which the tide reached the logs, and set them afloat. Next day the wind was still high, and drove the waves against the shore with great fury; the rain, too, fell in torrents, and not only drenched them to the skin, but loosened the stones on the hill-sides, which then came rolling down upon them. In this comfortless situation they remained all day, with nothing but dried fish to satisfy their hunger; the canoes in one place at the mercy of the waves; the baggage in another; and all the men scattered on floating logs, or sheltering themselves in the crevices of the rocks, and hill-sides. At three o'clock on the morning of the 12th, a tremendous gale of wind arose accompanied with lightning, thunder, and hail. In a few hours it abated, but a violent rain soon began, and lasted all day. Their situation now became much more dangerous, for the waves were driven with fury against the rocks and trees which till now had afforded them a refuge; they therefore took advantage of the low tide and moved half a mile to the mouth of a small brook which had been hidden by the bushes and drift-wood. Here they were safer, if not more comfortable. On the 14th, three men were sent to try if they could double the point and find some safer harbor. One of them returned next day with information that at no great distance there was a beautiful sand-beach, and a good harbor. Captain Lewis then set out to examine more minutely the lower part of the bay. On the 15th the weather was fair, and enabled them to dry their bedding and examine their baggage. The

rain, which had continued for the last ten days without an interval of more than two hours, had completely wet all their merchandise, and spoiled some of their fish, destroyed the robes, and rotted nearly one half of their few remaining articles of clothing, particularly the leather dresses. About three o'clock the wind fell, and they instantly loaded the canoes, and left the miserable spot to which they had been confined the last six days.

At the sand-beach below, they met Shannon, who had been sent back by Captain Lewis to meet them. The day Shannon had set out in his canoe, he and his comrade went on till they met a party of twelve Indians, who, having never heard of the expedition, did not know where they came from; they, however, behaved with so much civility, and seemed so anxious that the men should go with them toward the sea, that their suspicions were excited, and they declined going on. The Indians, however, would not leave them, and the men being confirmed in their suspicions, and fearful that if they went into the woods to sleep, they would be cut to pieces in the night, thought it best to remain in the midst of the Indians; they therefore made a fire, and after talking with them to a late hour, lay down with their rifles under their heads. On awaking in the morning they found the Indians had stolen and hidden their guns. Having demanded them in vain, Shannon seized a club and was about assaulting one of the Indians whom he suspected of being the thief, when another Indian began to load a fowling-piece with the intention of shooting him. He therefore stopped, and explained by signs that if they did not give up the guns, a large party would come down the river before the sun rose to such a height, and put every one of them to death. Fortunately Captain Lewis and his party appeared at this time and the terrified Indians immediately brought the guns.

## WINTER ON THE PACIFIC COAST.

"Saturday, November 16.—The morning was clear and beautiful. We therefore put out all our baggage to dry, and sent several of the party to hunt. Our camp is in full view of the ocean, on the bay laid down by Vancouver, which was distinguished by the name of Haley's Bay, from a trader who visits the Indians here, and is a great favorite among them." Captain Lewis returned on the 17th, after having coasted down Haley's Bay to Cape Disappointment, and some distance to the north along the sea-coast. He was followed by several Chinooks, among whom were the principal chief and his family. "They made us a present of a boiled root, very much like the common liquorice in taste and size, called *cuhohamo*; in return, we gave double the value of their present, and now learned the danger of accepting any thing from them, since no return, even if ten times the value of their gift, can satisfy

them." Captain Clarke afterward traveled by land around the coast, and climbed Cape Disappointment. This is a circular knob, rising, with a steep ascent, one hundred and fifty feet above the water, and connected to the main land by a neck of low ground, two or three hundred yards wide.

He returned to the camp on the 20th, and found a number of Chinooks, with whom they held a council. Next day they were visited by various bands of the neighborhood, and a chief from the Grand Rapids, with whom they exchanged articles of trade. After these Indians were gone they were surprised at a visit of a different kind: "An old woman, the wife of a Chinook chief, came with six young women, her daughters and nieces, and having deliberately encamped near us, proceeded to cultivate an intimacy between our men and her fair wards."

Having examined the coast, it became necessary to decide on the spot for their winter quarters. As they would have to rely chiefly on their arms for subsistence, they were guided in their choice by the abundance of game which any particular place might offer. The Indians said the country on the opposite side of the bay was better supplied with elk, an animal larger and more easily killed than the deer, the latter being most numerous at some distance up the river. The climate here was milder than above the first range of mountains; the Indians went thinly clad, and said they had but little snow. The weather had indeed been very warm since their arrival, sometimes disagreeably so; and dressed, as they were, altogether in leather, the cold would be very unpleasant, if not injurious. The neighborhood of the sea was further recommended by the facility of supplying themselves with salt, and the hope of meeting some of the trading vessels, which might be expected in about three months, and from which they might secure a fresh supply of trinkets for their route homeward. These considerations induced them to visit the opposite side of the bay; and if there was an appearance of much game, to establish themselves there during the winter. Accordingly, on the 25th they left their place of encampment, but the wind being too high they kept along near the shore toward their former camp, and on the following day crossed over to the south side of the Columbia. After going a few miles along the shore they entered a channel which separates the main land from a large, low island, and stopped at a village of the Cathlamah tribe. Here they procured some elk meat, and after dining on fresh fish and roots, which they bought at an enormous price, they coasted along the river toward the south. On the 27th they encamped on a pebbly beach, connecting with the main land a remarkable peninsular knob, which they called Point William. For a week past the weather had been almost incessantly wet, and it had rained hard the whole of this day; "it continued all night, and in the morning began more violently, attended with a high wind from the south-west. It was now impossible to proceed on so rough a sea. We therefore sent several men to hunt, and the rest of us remained during the day in a situation the most cheer-

less and uncomfortable. On this little neck of land we were exposed, with a miserable covering which did not deserve the name of shelter, to the violence of the winds; all our bedding and stores, as well as our bodies, were completely wet, our clothes rotting with constant exposure, and no food except the dried fish brought from the Falls, to which we were again reduced. The hunters all returned hungry and drenched with rain, having seen neither deer nor elk, and the swan and brant too shy to be approached. At noon the wind shifted to the north-west and blew with such tremendous fury that many trees were blown down near us."

The disagreeable diet of pounded fish and salt water occasioned so much sickness among the men that it became absolutely necessary to vary it. Captain Lewis took a canoe on the 29th, and went down the bay with five men, to hunt elk, and other parties went out by land. On the 3d of December an elk was brought into camp, the first they had killed west of the Rocky Mountains, and after their meager fare it formed a most nourishing food. In the afternoon of the 5th they were rejoiced at the return of Captain Lewis, for whose safety they had begun to be very uneasy. He came in a canoe with three of his men, the other two being left to guard six elk and five deer which they had killed. He had examined the coast, and found a river a short distance below, on which they might encamp during the winter, with a sufficiency of elk for their subsistence within reach. This information was very satisfactory, and they decided on going thither as soon as they could move from the point. This they were enabled to do on the 7th, although the tide was against them and the waves still very high. On reaching the south side of Meriwether's Bay, which they named from Captain Lewis, they ascended the river Netul for three miles, to the first point of highland on its western bank, and formed their camp in a thick grove of lofty pines, about two hundred yards from the water, and thirty feet above the level of the high tides. This seemed the most eligible spot for their winter establishment. In order, therefore, to find a place for making salt, and to examine the country further, Captain Clarke set out with five men, taking a south-western course through thick pine forests and much swampy land, toward the sea. For shelter the first night they stretched the skin of an elk they had killed, but rose in the morning perfectly wet with the rain. Proceeding westward, they had much difficulty in making their way over streams and swamps, and at length met with three Indians, who invited them to their village on the sea-coast. They went thither, and Captain Clarke was received with much attention. As soon as he entered, clean mats were spread, and fish, berries, and roots set before him on small, neat platters of rushes. After he had eaten, the men of the other houses came and smoked with him. They all appeared much neater in their persons and diet than Indians generally are, and frequently washed their hands and faces, a ceremony by no means frequent elsewhere.

As the captain was walking on the shore next day, one of the Indians asked him to shoot a duck about thirty steps distant. He did so, and having accidentally shot off its head, the bird was brought to the village by the Indians, all of whom came round in astonishment. They examined the duck, the musket, and the very small bullet, and then exclaimed: "*Clouch musket, wake, commatax musket*" ("A good musket, do not understand this kind of musket"). They now placed before him their best roots, fish, and syrup, after which he made a few purchases and returned to the camp through a heavy rain. The whole party had been occupied during his absence in cutting down trees to make huts, and in hunting.

On the 11th of December Captain Clarke says: "The rain continued last night and the whole of this day. We were, however, all employed in putting up our winter cabins, which we are anxious to finish, as several of the men are beginning to suffer from the excessive dampness; four of them have violent colds, one has a dysentery, another has tumors on his legs, and two have been injured by dislocation and straining their limbs." The work went on notwithstanding the rain, and by the 14th they had finished the walls of the huts and completed a house for provisions. The constant rains had spoiled their last supply of elk, but the sick were recovering, although scarcely a man had been dry for a great many days. The hunters were so fortunate as to kill eighteen elk, and on the 15th Captain Clarke set out with sixteen men, who were dispatched for the game in small parties, each man returning with the quarter of an animal. In bringing the third and last load, nearly half the men missed their way and did not return till after night, and five did not find their way till next morning. The rain had poured down upon them all night, as it had upon their comrades in the camp, but in addition to this they had been without fire, and drenched and cold as they were, they presented a most distressing sight when they came in. At length the building was completed, and they moved into their huts on the 24th. Meanwhile, however, their stock of meat was completely spoiled by the incessant rains, and pounded fish became again their chief dependence.

"*Wednesday, 25.* We were awaked at daylight by a discharge of fire-arms, which was followed by a song from the men, as a compliment to us on the return of Christmas, which we have always been accustomed to observe as a day of rejoicing. After breakfast we divided our remaining stock of tobacco, which amounted to twelve carrots, into two parts, one of which we distributed among such of the party as made use of it, making a present of a handkerchief to the others. The remainder of the day was passed in good spirits, though there was nothing in our situation to excite much gayety. The rain confined us to the house, and our only luxuries in honor of the season, were some poor elk, so much spoiled that we ate it through mere necessity, a few roots, and some spoiled pounded fish."

December 30. "We enjoyed the fairest and most pleasant weather

since our arrival; the sun having shone at intervals, and there being only three showers in the course of the day. By sunset we had completed the fortification, and now announced to the Indians that every day, at that hour, the gates would be closed, and they must leave the fort, and not enter it till sunrise. The Wahkiacums, who had remained with us, and who are very forward in their deportment, complied very reluctantly with this order; but being excluded from our houses, formed a camp near us."

"Wednesday, January 1, 1806.—We were awaked at an early hour by a discharge of a volley of small arms, to salute the New Year. This is the only mode of doing honor to the day which our situation permits, for though we have reason to be gayer than we were at Christmas, our only dainties are the boiled elk and Wappatoo roots, enlivened by draughts of pure water." One day a neighboring chief, with a party of Clatsops, brought for sale, besides roots and berries, three dogs and some flesh blubber. "Having been so long accustomed to live on the flesh of dogs, the greater part of us have acquired a fondness for it, and our original aversion for it is overcome, by reflecting that while we subsisted on that food we were fatter, stronger, and in general enjoyed better health than at any period since leaving the buffalo country eastward of the mountains." The blubber had been obtained from the Killamucks, a neighboring nation on the sea-coast to the south, near one of whose villages a whale had recently been stranded.

Two of the men who had been dispatched to make salt, returned on the 15th. They had carefully examined the coast, but it was not until the fifth day after their departure that they discovered a convenient situation for its manufacture. At length they formed an establishment about fifteen miles south-west of the fort, near some scattered houses of the Clatsop and Killamuck nations, where they had erected a comfortable camp and had killed a stock of provisions. The Indians had treated them very kindly, and made them a present of the blubber of the whale, some of which the men brought home. The appearance of the whale seemed to be a matter of importance to all the neighboring Indians, and in the hope of procuring some of it, a parcel of merchandise was prepared, and a party of men held in readiness to set out from the fort in the morning. As soon as this resolution was known, Chaboneau and his wife requested that they might be permitted to accompany the party. The poor woman stated very earnestly that she had traveled a great way with them to see the great water, yet she had never been down to the coast, and now that this monstrous fish was also to be seen, it seemed hard that she should not be permitted to see either the ocean or the whale. So reasonable a request could not be denied; they were therefore suffered to accompany Captain Clarke.

Having reached the salt-makers' camp, "we persuaded a young Indian, by a present of a file and a promise of some other articles, to guide us to the spot where the whale lay. He led us for two and a half miles

KE.

one of the Indians

He did so, and  
ght to the village  
ent. They exam-  
d then exclaimed:  
d musket, do not  
before him their  
purchases and re-  
e party had been  
make huts, and in

The rain continued  
ver, all employed  
s to finish, as sev-  
essive dampness;  
mother has tumors  
and straining their  
and by the 14th  
d a house for pro-  
ply of elk, but the  
en dry for a great  
eighteen elk, and  
en, who were dis-  
ing with the quar-  
d, nearly half the  
at, and five did not  
d down upon them  
out in addition to  
old as they were,  
e in. At length  
huts on the 24th.  
ly spoiled by the  
chief dependence.

by a discharge of  
as a compliment  
been accustomed  
divided our re-  
carrots, into two  
arty as made use

The remainder  
nothing in our  
us to the house,  
me poor elk, so  
a few roots, and

pleasant weather



over the round slippery stones at the foot of a high hill projecting into the sea, and then suddenly stopping, explained by signs that we must cross the mountain. This promised to be a most laborious undertaking, for the side is nearly perpendicular and the top lost in clouds. He, however, followed an Indian path which wound along as much as possible, but still the ascent was so steep that at one place we drew ourselves for about a hundred feet by means of bushes and roots. At length, after two hours' labor, we reached the top of the mountain, where we looked down with astonishment on the prodigious height of ten or twelve hundred feet which we had ascended. We proceeded by a bad road till night, when we encamped on a small run: we were all much fatigued, but the weather was pleasant, and for the first time since our arrival here an entire day has passed without rain. On the 8th we set out early and proceeded to the top of the mountain, the highest point of which is an open spot facing the ocean. It is situated about thirty miles south-east of Cape Disappointment, and projects nearly two and a half miles into the sea. Here one of the most delightful views in nature presents itself. Immediately in front is the ocean, which breaks with fury on the coast, from the rocks of Cape Disappointment, as far as the eye can discern, to the north-west, and against the high lands and irregular piles of rock which diversify the shore to the south-east. To this boisterous scene the Columbia, with its tributary waters, widening into bays as it approaches the ocean, and studded on both sides with the Chimook and Clatsop villages, forms a charming contrast; while immediately beneath our feet are stretched the rich prairies, enlivened by three beautiful streams, which conduct the eye to small lakes at the foot of the hills. We stopped to enjoy the romantic view from this place, which we distinguished by the name of Clarke's Point of View, and then followed our guide down the mountain."

The whale had been placed between two Killamuck villages, and nothing more remained than the skeleton, which they found to be one hundred and five feet in length. The natives were all busied in boiling the blubber and preserving the oil. These they parted with reluctantly, and at such high prices that Captain Clarke's whole stock of merchandise was exhausted in the purchase of three hundred pounds of blubber and a few gallons of oil. With these he set out to return, and encamped on the other side of the creek, which he called Ecola, or Whale Creek. Here they were joined by the men of the village, who gave all the information they possessed relative to their country. While smoking with the Indians, Captain Clarke was surprised about ten o'clock by a loud shrill outcry from the opposite village; on hearing which all the Indians started up to cross the creek, and the guide informed him that some one had been killed. On examination, one of the men was found to be absent, and a guard dispatched, who met him crossing the creek in great haste. An Indian belonging to another band, who happened to be with the Killamucks that evening, had treated him with much kindness, and

RKE.

hill projecting into  
signs that we must  
orious undertaking,  
n clouds. He, how-  
s much as possible,  
drew ourselves for  
At length, after  
n, where we looked  
ten or twelve hun-  
by a bad road till  
all much fatigued,  
ne since our arrival  
8th we set out early  
st point of which is  
thirty miles south-  
and a half miles into  
ature presents itself  
h fury on the coast,  
e eye can discern, to  
egular piles of rock  
his boisterous scene  
into bays as it ap-  
th the Chimook and  
mmediately beneath  
l by three beautiful  
he foot of the hills.  
place, which we dis-  
nd then followed our

amuck villages, and  
they found to be one  
all busied in boiling  
ted with reluctantly,  
stock of merchandise  
unds of blubber and  
rn, and encamped on  
a, or Whale Creek.  
ho gave all the infor-  
While smoking with  
en o'clock by a loud  
which all the Indians  
d him that some one  
was found to be ab-  
g the creek in great  
happened to be with  
much kindness, and





**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1983**



walked arm in arm with him to a tent where he found a Chinook squaw who was an old acquaintance. From the conversation and manner of the stranger, this woman discovered that his object was to murder the white man for the sake of the few articles on his person; and when he rose and pressed the man to go to another tent, where they would find something better to eat, she held M'Neal by the blanket. Not knowing her object, he freed himself from her, and was going on with his pretended friend, when she ran out and gave the shriek which brought the men of the village over. The stranger escaped before M'Neal knew what had occasioned the alarm.

"The month of February and the greater part of March was passed in the same manner. Every day, parties as large as we could spare them from our other occupations, were sent out to hunt, and we were thus enabled to command some days' provision in advance. It consisted chiefly of deer and elk; the first is very lean, and the flesh by no means as good as that of the elk, which is our chief dependence." In March the elk became scarce and lean, and they made use of fish whenever they could catch them, or purchase them from the Indians; but as they were too poor to indulge very largely in these luxuries, their diet was by no means pleasant, and to the sick, especially, was unwholesome. During the greater part of this month, five or six of the men were sick, the general complaint being a bad cold and fever, something like an influenza.

#### THE RETURN JOURNEY.

"Many reasons had determined us to remain at Fort Clatsop till the 1st of April. Besides the want of fuel on the Columbian plains, and the impracticability of passing the mountains before the beginning of June, we were anxious to see some of the foreign traders, from whom, by means of our ample letters of credit, we might have recruited our exhausted stores of merchandise. About the middle of March, however, we became seriously alarmed for the want of food; the elk, our chief dependence, had at length deserted their usual haunts in our neighborhood, and retreated to the mountains. We were too poor to purchase other food from the Indians, so that we were sometimes reduced, notwithstanding all the exertions of our hunters, to a single day's provisions in advance. The men, too, whom the constant rains and confinement had rendered unhealthy, might, we hoped, be benefited by leaving the coast and resuming the exercise of traveling. We therefore determined to leave Fort Clatsop, ascend the river slowly, consume the month of March in the woody country where we hope to find subsistence, and in this way reach the plains about the 1st of April, before which time it will be impossible to attempt crossing them: for this purpose we began our preparations. During the winter we had been very industrious in dressing skins, so that we had now a sufficient quantity of clothing, besides be-



tween three and four hundred pair of moccasins. But the whole stock of goods on which we are to depend, either for the purchase of horses or of food, during the long tour of nearly four thousand miles, is so much diminished that it might all be tied in two handkerchiefs. We have, in fact, nothing but six blue robes, one of scarlet, a coat and hat of United States artillery uniform, five robes made of our large flag, and a few old clothes trimmed with ribbon. Our chief dependence, therefore, must be on our guns, which, fortunately for us, are all in good order, as we had taken the precaution of bringing a number of extra locks, and one of our men proved to be an excellent artist in that way. The powder had been secured in leaden canisters, and though on many occasions they had been under water, it remained perfectly dry, and we now found ourselves in possession of one hundred and forty pounds of powder, and twice that quantity of lead, a stock quite sufficient for the route homeward.

"After much trafficking, we at last succeeded in purchasing a canoe for a uniform coat and half a carrot of tobacco, and took a canoe from the Clatsops as a reprisal for some elk they had stolen from us in the winter. We were now ready to leave Fort Clatsop, but the rain prevented us for several days from calking the canoes, and we were forced to wait for calm weather before we could attempt to pass Point William. In the mean time we were visited by many of our neighbors, for the purpose of taking leave of us. The Clatsop Comowool has been the most kind and hospitable of all the Indians in this quarter; we therefore gave him a certificate of the kindness and attention which we have received from him, and added a more substantial proof of our gratitude, the gift of all our houses and furniture. To the Chinook chief, Delashelwit, we gave a certificate of the same kind. We also circulated among the natives several papers, one of which we also posted up in the fort, to the following effect:

"The object of this last is, that through the medium of some civilized person, who may see the same, it may be made known to the world, that the party consisting of the persons whose names are hereunto annexed, and who were sent out by the government of the United States to explore the interior of the continent of North America, did penetrate the same by the way of the Missouri and Columbia Rivers, to the discharge of the latter into the Pacific Ocean, where they arrived on the 14th day of November, 1805, and departed the 23d day of March, 1806, on their return to the United States, by the same route by which they had come out."

"Sunday, March 23d, 1806, the canoes were loaded, and at one o'clock in the afternoon we took a final leave of Fort Clatsop. The wind was still high, but the alternative of remaining without provisions was so unpleasant that we hoped to be able to double Point William." Having passed the point in safety, they proceeded up the river without any hinderance until the 1st of April, when they learned from some Indians

ut the whole stock  
purchase of horses  
and miles, is so much  
chiefs. We have, in  
and hat of United  
flag, and a few old  
therefore, must be  
order, as we had  
locks, and one of  
The powder had  
many occasions they  
we now found our-  
nds of powder, and  
for the route home-

purchasing a canoe  
took a canoe from  
plen from us in the  
at the rain prevented  
were forced to wait  
int William. In the  
bors, for the purpose  
been the most kind  
therefore gave him  
have received from  
titude, the gift of all  
Delashelwit, we gave  
d among the natives  
e fort, to the follow-

edium of some civil-  
known to the world,  
es are hereunto an-  
of the United States  
merica, did penetrate  
a Rivers, to the dis-  
they arrived on the  
day of March, 1806,  
route by which they

loaded, and at one  
t Clatsop. The wind  
thout provisions was  
oint William." Hav-  
the river without any  
ed from some Indians

descending the river that there was a great scarcity of provisions in the neighborhood of the Great Rapids. They accordingly decided to remain at their present encampment, near the mouth of the Quicksand River, until they had collected meat enough to last them to the Choppunish nation, with whom they had left their horses. Parties were accordingly sent out to hunt, and in a week they had collected and dried a sufficient quantity of meat for their purpose.

Meanwhile they heard of a large river which empties into the south side of the Columbia a few miles below, and Captain Clarke set out on the 2d, with one of his informants as guide, to search for it. Proceeding down the south side of the river a few hours, he landed at a house which was recognized as the only remains of a village of twenty-four straw-huts which they had seen the preceding fall. Along the shore were great numbers of small canoes for gathering wappatoo, left by the Shahalas, who visit the place annually, and the inhabitants of the house belonged to a tribe of the same nation. On entering one of the apartments, Captain Clarke offered several articles in exchange for wappatoo, but they appeared sullen and ill-humored, and refused to give him any. He therefore sat down by the fire, opposite to the men, and taking a port-fire match from his pocket, threw a small piece of it into the flame; at the same time he took his pocket compass, and by means of a magnet which happened to be in his inkhorn, made the needle turn round very briskly. The match now took fire and burned violently, on which the Indians, terrified at this strange exhibition, immediately brought a quantity of wappatoo and laid it at his feet, begging him to put out the bad fire; while an old woman continued to speak with great vehemence, as if praying and imploring protection. Having received the roots, Captain Clarke put up the compass, and as the match went out of itself, tranquillity was restored, though the women and children still took refuge in their beds, and behind the men. He now paid for what he had used, and after lighting his pipe, and smoking with them, he continued down the river. He found the mouth of a large river, called Multnomah by the Indians, which a cluster of islands had concealed from them in their passage down and up the Columbia. From its entrance Mount St. Helen's bore north, Mount Hood due east, and Captain Clarke now discovered to the south-east a mountain which he had not before seen, and to which he gave the name of Mount Jefferson. Like St. Helen's, its figure was a regular cone, and it appeared to be of equal height with that mountain. He entered the Multnomah which he ascended several miles, and found to be a fine navigable river, held some intercourse with the natives on its banks, and returned to the camp on the evening of the 8d.

On the 9th they continued their journey and reached the first rapids. During the whole day they passed along under high, steep, and rocky sides of the mountains, which at length closed in on each side of the river, forming stupendous precipices, covered with fir and white cedar.

Down these heights frequently descend the most beautiful cascades, one of which, a large creek, throws itself over a perpendicular rock three hundred feet above the water, while other smaller streams precipitate themselves from a still greater elevation, and, evaporating in a mist, again collect and form a second cascade before they reach the bottom of the rocks.

Next day the preparations were made for a portage, which was begun on the 11th, by nearly the whole party, who dragged four of the canoes to the head of the rapids with great difficulty and labor. A guard consisting of the sick and lame, remained with Captain Lewis to protect the baggage. They had found the Wahccllahs to be great thieves, and were convinced that nothing but their numbers saved them from attack. These people crowded about them as they were taking up the boats, and in several instances seemed very ill disposed. Shields, one of the men, had stopped to purchase a dog, and being separated from the rest of the party, two Indians pushed him out of the road and attempted to take the dog from him. He had no weapon but a long knife, with which he immediately attacked them both, hoping to kill them before they had time to draw their arrows, but as soon as they saw his design they fled into the woods. Soon afterward it was found that the Wahccllahs had carried off Captain Lewis's dog to their village below, and three men well armed were instantly dispatched in pursuit of them, with orders to fire if there was the slightest resistance or hesitation. At the distance of two miles they came in sight of the thieves, who, finding themselves pursued, left the dog and made off. The Indians were now all ordered out of the camp, and told that whoever stole any baggage, or insulted the men, should be instantly shot. During the day they were visited by a chief of the Wahccllahs who seemed very well disposed and mortified at the behavior of the Indians, which, he said, was chiefly owing to two very bad men belonging to the tribe.

A perioque was lost in the rapids, and to replace it, Captain Lewis procured, on the 13th, two small canoes, in exchange for two robes and four elk-skins. They also purchased, with deer-skins, three dogs, an animal which had now become a favorite food, as it was found to be a strong, healthy diet, preferable to lean deer or elk, and much superior to horse flesh in any state. In the evening he joined the other boats, which had advanced a few miles, and they resumed their journey next morning. On the 18th, they made a portage of seven paces over the rock at the next rapids, then drew up the boats, reloaded, and at the distance of five miles reached the basin at the foot of the long narrows. Captain Clarke had meanwhile been out to procure horses, and having obtained four, they transported their merchandise over the portage on the 19th, and encamped near the Skilloot village above the rapids.

"The whole village was filled with rejoicing to-day at having caught a single salmon, which was considered as the harbinger of vast quantities

autiful cascades, one  
ndicular rock three  
streams precipitate  
aporating in a mist,  
y reach the bottom

rtage, which was be-  
dragged four of the  
culty and labor. A  
ith Captain Lewis to  
lecllahs to be great  
numbers saved them  
they were taking up  
ill disposed. Shields,  
and being separated  
n out of the road and  
no weapon but a long  
both, hoping to kill  
s, but as soon as they  
fterward it was found  
s dog to their village  
dispatched in pursuit  
test resistance or heai-  
in sight of the thieves,  
ad made off. The In-  
old that whoever stole  
stantly shot. During  
ahlecllahs who seemed  
of the Indians, which,  
men belonging to the

place it, Captain Lewis  
ange for two robes and  
skins, three dogs, an  
as it was found to be a  
lk, and much superior  
joined the other boats,  
med their journey next  
of seven paces over the  
ts, reloaded, and at the  
ot of the long narrows.  
ure horses, and having  
se over the portage on  
above the rapids.  
o-day at having caught  
binger of vast quantities

in four or five days. In order to hasten their arrival, the Indians, accord-  
ing to custom, dressed the fish and cut it into small pieces, one of which  
was given to each child in the village. In the good humor excited by  
this occurrence they parted, though reluctantly, with four other horses,  
for which we gave them two kettles, reserving only a single small one  
for a mess of eight men. Unluckily, however, we lost one of the horses  
by the negligence of the person to whose charge he was committed."

On the morning of the 21st the canoes were dispatched to the Eneeshur  
village at the Grand Falls, whither Captain Clarke had preceded  
them in order to barter for horses. The rest of the party were detained  
in searching for a horse that had broken loose in the night. In the  
mean time the Indians, who were always on the alert, stole a tomahawk,  
which was not recovered, though several of them were searched. An-  
other fellow was detected in carrying off a piece of iron, and kicked out  
of camp. Captain Lewis then, addressing the Indians, declared that he  
was not afraid to fight them, for, if he chose, he might instantly put  
them to death and burn their village; that he did not wish to treat them  
ill if they did not steal; and that although if he knew who had the  
tomahawk he would take away the horses of the thieves, yet he would  
rather lose the property altogether than take the horse of an innocent  
man. The chiefs were present at this harangue, hung their heads, and  
made no reply. At ten o'clock the men returned with the horse, and  
they left these disagreeable people. They found Captain Clarke at the  
Eneeshur village, and being here joined by the canoes and baggage  
across the portage, they proceeded a short distance above the town,  
where they dined on some dogs, and then set forward. They encamped  
near a village at the Rock Rapids on the 23d, and having assembled the  
warriors and smoked with them, they entertained them with the violin  
and a dance by the men. The Indians returned the compliment in a  
dance that was new to the travelers, and then retired, promising to bar-  
ter horses in the morning. Three horses were then purchased, and three  
more hired of a Chopunnish Indian who was to accompany the expedi-  
tion with his family. They also promised to take the canoes in exchange  
for horses, but finding the white men had resolved to go by land, they  
refused to give any thing, in hopes they would be forced to leave them.  
Disgusted at this conduct, the men began to split them in pieces, on  
which the Indians gave several strands of beads for each canoe. Hav-  
ing now a sufficient number of horses, they proceeded wholly by land.

As they advanced up the river, they found the inhabitants more kind  
and hospitable. After a long march on the 27th, they had encamped  
and were cooking some jerked meat, when they were joined by a party  
of Wollawollahs, among whom was a chief named Yellept, who had  
visited them in October. He was much pleased at seeing them again,  
and invited them to remain at his village three or four days, when he  
would supply them with food and furnish horses for the journey. After  
their late experience this kind offer was truly acceptable, and they went

with him to his village six miles above, and twelve miles below the mouth of Lewis's River. Yellept then harangued his people on the virtues of hospitality, and set them an example by bringing an armful of wood and a platter of roasted mullets. They immediately began by furnishing an abundance of the only fuel they use, the stems of plants. The travelers then purchased four dogs, on which they supped heartily, having been on short allowance for two days past.

The Indians informed them of a route opposite their village to the mouth of the Kooskooskee, much shorter than that by Lewis's River, and passing over a level, watered country, abounding in deer and antelope. As there were no houses on this road, they thought it prudent to lay in a stock of provisions, and accordingly, next morning, purchased ten dogs. Meanwhile Yellept presented a fine white horse to Captain Clarke, expressing a wish to have a kettle; but on being told that they had disposed of the last one they could spare, he said he would be content with any present they should make in return. Captain Clarke therefore gave his sword, for which the chief had before expressed a desire, adding one hundred balls, some powder, and other articles, with which he appeared perfectly satisfied. Fortunately there was here a Shoshonee prisoner, from the south of the Multnomah, who spoke the same language as the Shoshonee woman Sacajawea, and by their means Lewis and Clarke were able to explain themselves intelligibly to the Indians. The latter were inspired with confidence, and soon brought several sick persons requiring assistance. They splintered the arm of one, and administered remedies for various diseases; but their most valuable medicine was eye-water, which was greatly needed: the complaint of the eyes, occasioned by living on the water, and increased by the fine sand of the plains, being now universal.

On the 29th, they crossed the river in the canoes of Yellept. In the course of the day they gave small medals to two inferior chiefs, each of whom made them a present of a fine horse. They were in a poor condition to make an adequate acknowledgment for this kindness, but gave several articles, among which was a pistol, and several rounds of ammunition. They felt indeed that they had been treated by these people with an unusual degree of kindness. They finally took leave of this honest, worthy tribe, and, accompanied by a guide and the Chopunnish family, set off across an open sandy plain, on the 30th. They had now twenty-three horses, many of them young and excellent animals, but the greater part afflicted with sore backs. The Indians in general are cruel masters; they ride very hard, and as the saddles are badly constructed it is almost impossible to avoid wounding the back, yet they continue to ride when the poor creatures are scarified in a dreadful manner.

They reached Lewis's River a few miles above the Kooskooskee, on the 4th of May, and next day continued their journey up the latter river. As they proceeded they frequently met old acquaintances of last

below the mouth  
on the virtues of  
an armful of wood  
began by furnishing  
plants. The trav-  
ed heartily, having

their village to the  
Lewis's River, and  
deer and antelope.  
it prudent to lay in  
purchased ten dogs.  
Captain Clarke, ex-  
that they had dis-  
ould be content with  
Clarke therefore gave  
ed a desire, adding  
with which he ap-  
s here a Shoshonee  
ke the same language  
r means Lewis and  
to the Indians. The  
ght several sick per-  
of one, and admin-  
st valuable medicine  
mplaint of the eyes,  
y the fine sand of the

es of Yellept. In the  
ferior chiefs, each of  
were in a poor con-  
is kindness, but gave  
eral rounds of ammu-  
ted by these people  
ly took leave of this  
de and the Chopun-  
the 30th. They had  
d excellent animals,  
e Indians in general  
he saddles are badly  
ing the back, yet they  
arified in a dreadful

the Kooskooskee, on  
ourney up the latter  
acquaintances of last

year, and always found that their kindness had not been bestowed on the natives in vain. On the 8th, an Indian gave Captain Clarke a very elegant gray mare, for which all he requested was a phial of eye-water. In the autumn, at the mouth of the Chopunnish River, a man with pain in his knee was brought to them for relief. He was, to appearance, recovered from his disorder, though he had not walked for some time. But that they might not be disappointed, Captain Clarke, with much ceremony, washed and rubbed his sore limb, and gave him some volatile liniment to continue the operation, which caused, or rather did not prevent, his recovery. The man gratefully circulated their praises, and their fame as physicians was increased by the efficiency of some eye-water which they gave them at the same time. This new resource of obtaining subsistence was not unwelcome, now, when their stock of merchandise was very much reduced. So great was the fame of their medical skill, that when they encamped that evening at Colter's Creek, they soon had nearly fifty patients. A chief brought his wife with an abscess in her back, which Captain Clarke opened and dressed, and then distributed medicines to others. Next day the woman declared she had slept better than at any time since her illness. She was therefore dressed a second time, and her husband, according to promise, brought them a horse which they immediately killed. Their practice now increased so long as they remained. When they had gone a few miles further an Indian brought them two canisters of powder, which his dog had found. They recognized them as the same they had buried last fall, and as he had kept them safely, and had honesty enough to return them, they rewarded him as well as they could.

In crossing the plain they saw that the Rocky Mountains were still covered with snow, which the Indians informed them was so deep that they would not be able to pass before the 1st of June, and some placed the time later. As they were very desirous of reaching the plains of the Missouri, if for no other reason than that of once more enjoying a good meal, this intelligence was most unwelcome, and gave no relish to the remainder of the horse killed at Colter's Creek, which formed their supper, and part of which had already been their dinner.

On the 8th, they met with the Twisted Hair, the chief to whom they had confided their horses, and part of their saddles, but as he received them with great coldness they formed very unfavorable conjectures. They soon found that a violent quarrel had arisen between him and Neeshnepahkeekook, the Outnose, who now addressed each other in a loud, angry manner. They interposed, and all went forward to a place of encampment; the two chiefs forming separate camps, at a distance from each other. Anxious to reconcile the chiefs, and recover their property, they desired a Shoshonee, who had been with the party some days, to interpret while they attempted a mediation; but he peremptorily refused to speak a word, for fear of meddling in a private



quarrel where he had no right to interfere. The Twisted Hair was afterward invited to come and smoke with them. He accepted the invitation, and informed them that he had, according to promise, collected the horses, and taken charge of them; but that Neeshnepah-keecook, and Tunnachemootoolt (the Cutnose, and Brokenarm), who had been on a war party against the Shoshonees, returned, and becoming jealous because the horses were confided to his care, wore constantly quarreling with him. At length, unwilling to live in perpetual dispute with the two chiefs, he had given up the care of the horses, which had consequently become much scattered. He added that in the spring the earth had fallen away and exposed the saddles, some of which had probably been lost, but that he had buried them in another deposit. Next day he brought in about half the saddles, and some powder and lead which was buried at the same place; and soon afterward the Indians brought in about twenty-one of the horses, the greater part of which were in excellent order, though some had not yet recovered from hard usage. The Cutnose and Twisted Hair seemed now perfectly reconciled, and both slept in the house of the former. The party set forward next morning, and in the afternoon arrived at the house of Brokenarm, where they were received with due form under a flag which they had given him. In the evening the people brought them a large supply of roots, for which they thanked them, but remarked that they were not accustomed to live on roots alone, and therefore proposed to exchange a good horse, which was lean, for one that was fatter, which they might kill. The chief said that his people had an abundance of young horses, and that if their guests were disposed to use that food, they might have as many as they wanted. Accordingly they soon gave them two fat young horses, without asking any thing in return.

During their stay they were visited by several Indians, and on the 11th, finding some of the principal chiefs of the Chopunnish nation present, they took the opportunity to explain the intentions of the government. They drew a map of the relative situation of the country on a mat with a piece of coal, then detailed the nature and power of the American nation, its desire to preserve harmony between all its red brethren, and its intention of establishing trading houses for their relief and support. "It was not without difficulty, nor till nearly half the day was spent, that we were able to convey all this information to the Chopunnish, much of which might have been lost or distorted in the circuitous route through a variety of languages: for in the first place, we spoke in English to one of our men, who translated it into French to Chabonneau; he interpreted it to his wife in the Minnetaree language, and she then put it into Shoshonee, and the young Shoshonee prisoner explained it to the Chopunnish in their own dialect. At last we succeeded in communicating the impression they wished, and then adjourned the council; after which we amused them by showing the wonders of the compass, the spy-glass, the magnet, the watch, and air-gun, each of which attracted

the Twisted Hair was  
n. He accepted the  
rding to promise, col-  
out that Neeshnepah-  
(Brokenarm), who had  
turned, and becoming  
care, were constantly  
e in perpetual dispute  
the horses, which had  
that in the spring the  
s, some of which had  
m in another deposit.  
and some powder and  
oon afterward the In-  
ses, the greater part of  
not yet recovered from  
emed now perfectly re-  
her. The party set for-  
at the house of Broken-  
nder a flag which they  
ght them a large supply  
rked that they were not  
e proposed to exchange  
atter, which they might  
adance of young horses,  
t food, they might have  
oon gave them two fat  
n.  
ral Indians, and on the  
Chopunnish nation pres-  
entations of the govern-  
on of the country on a  
ature and power of the  
ony between all its red  
g houses for their relief  
r till nearly half the day  
information to the Cho-  
distorted in the circuit-  
the first place, we spoke  
t into French to Chabo-  
staree language, and she  
onee prisoner explained  
st we succeeded in com-  
n adjourned the council;  
vonders of the compass,  
, each of which attracted

its share of attention. They said that after we had left the Minnetarees last autumn three young Chopunnish had gone over to that nation, who had mentioned our visit, and the extraordinary articles we had with us, but they had placed no confidence in it till now."

Next day the chiefs and warriors held a council to decide on their answer, and the result was that they resolved to follow the advice of the white men.

The principal chief, Tunnachemootoolt, then took a quantity of flour of roots, and thickened the soup which his people were cooking, and making known the determination of the chiefs, invited all who agreed to the proceedings of the council to come and eat, while those who dissented would abstain from the feast. Meanwhile the women, probably uneasy at the prospect of this new connection with strangers, tore their hair and wrung their hands with the greatest appearance of distress. But the concluding appeal of the orator effectually stopped the mouth of every malcontent; the proceedings were ratified, and the mush devoured with the most zealous unanimity. The chiefs and warriors then came in a body to Lewis and Clarke, and at their instance two young men presented each of them with a fine horse. The latter then gave flags and presents to the chiefs and the two young men, after which the chiefs invited them to their tent to receive their answer, but stated also that many of their people were then waiting in great pain for medical assistance. Captain Clarke, who was the favorite physician, therefore went to visit the sick, while Captain Lewis attended the council.

The meeting was opened by an aged chief, who delivered a long speech in approbation of the advice they had received, expressing their desire to be at peace with all their neighbors. They had fought with the Shoshonees, because the latter had slain their messengers of peace; but now, having avenged the insult, they would receive them as friends. They would send some of their young men with the expedition if they would effect a peace with the Indians on the Missouri, and then the whole nation would go over next summer. They had not yet decided to send a chief with the white men to their country, but would let them know before they left. The whites might depend on their attachment and their best services, for though poor, their hearts were good. Captain Lewis replied at some length. They appeared highly gratified, and after smoking the pipe, made him a present of another fat horse for food. He in turn gave Brokenarm a phial of eye-water for all who would apply to him, and promised to fill it again; at which liberality the chief was much pleased. To Twisted Hair, who had collected six more horses, he gave a gun, a hundred balls, and two pounds of powder, promising the same quantity when they received the remainder of their horses. In the course of the day three more were brought in, and a fresh exchange of small presents put the Indians in excellent humor. Having settled all their affairs, the Indians separated into two parties, and began to play the game of hiding a bone for stakes of beads and other ornaments.

On the 14th, Lewis and Clarke transported all their baggage and swam their horses across the river, and formed their camp a short distance below, on a spot recommended by the Indians. As they were to pass some time in this neighborhood, while waiting for the snow on the mountains to melt, they sent out a number of hunters in different directions; the rest, who were well, were employed in completing the camp. They secured the baggage with a shelter of grass, and made a kind of tent of part of an old sail, while the men formed very comfortable huts of willow-poles and grass. In a few days it rained, and the flimsy covering of Lewis and Clarke so leaked that they were in water most of the time, and, what was more unlucky, their chronometer became wet and rusted. The men built a canoe, for which the Indians promised a horse when they should set out. The hunters brought nothing but a sandhill crane, and, as they usually met with ill success, the last morsel of meat was eaten. As there was now little hope of procuring a stock of dried meat, they made a division of all the merchandise, so as to enable the men to purchase a store of roots and bread for the mountains. On parceling out the stores, the stock of each man was found to consist of only one awl, and one knitting-pin, half an ounce of vermilion, two needles, a few skeins of thread, and about a yard of ribbon—but slender means of bartering for a subsistence, but the men had been now so much accustomed to privations, that neither the want of meat nor the scanty funds of the party, excited the least anxiety among them.

"Besides administering medical relief to the Indians," says the narrative, "we are obliged to devote much of our time to the care of our own invalids. The child of Sacajawea is very unwell; and with one of the men we have ventured an experiment of a very robust nature. He has been for some time sick, but has now recovered his flesh, eats heartily, and digests well, but has so great a weakness in the loins that he can not walk, nor even sit upright without extreme pain. After we had in vain exhausted the resources of our art, one of the hunters mentioned that he had known persons in similar situations restored by violent sweats, and at the request of the patient we permitted the remedy to be applied. For this purpose a hole, about four feet deep and three in diameter, was dug in the earth, and heated well by a large fire in the bottom of it. The fire was then taken out, and an arch formed over the whole by means of willow-poles, and covered with several blankets, so as to make a perfect awning. The patient, being stripped naked, was seated under this on a bench, with a piece of board for his feet, and with a jug of water we sprinkled the bottom and sides of the hole, so as to keep up as hot a steam as he could bear. After remaining twenty minutes in this situation he was taken out, immediately plunged twice in cold water, and brought back to the hole, where he resumed the vapor bath. During all this time he drank copiously of a strong infusion of horse-mint, which was used as a substitute for the seneca-root, which our informant said he had seen employed on these occasions, but of which

there is none in this country. At the end of three quarters of an hour he was again withdrawn from the hole, carefully wrapped, and suffered to cool gradually. The next morning he walked about, and was nearly free from pain.

"An Indian was brought in to-day who had lost the use of his limbs, and for whose recovery the natives seemed very anxious, as he is a chief of considerable rank among them. His situation is beyond the reach of our skill." On the 25th, they attempted to sweat him, but found he was too weak, and had to desist. The Indians who accompanied him were so anxious for his safety that they still remained, and on the 27th had the operation of sweating again attempted. The hole was therefore enlarged, and the father of the chief went in with him and held him in a proper position. "We could not produce as complete a perspiration as we desired, and after he was taken out he complained of suffering considerable pain, which we relieved with a few drops of laudanum, and then he rested well. Next morning he was able to use his arms, felt better than he had for many months, and sat up during the greater part of the day. \* \* \* 29th. The Indian chief is still rapidly recovering, and for the first time during the last twelve months, had strength enough to wash his face. We had intended to repeat his sweating to-day, but as the weather was cloudy, with occasional rain, we declined it. This operation, though violent, seems highly efficacious; for our own man, on whom the experiment was first made, is recovering his strength very fast, and the restoration of the chief is wonderful." He continued to improve, and on the following day, after a violent sweating, was able to move one of his legs, and thighs, and some of his toes; the fingers and arms being almost entirely restored to their former strength.

On the 1st of June their stock of merchandise was completely exhausted, and as yet they had no adequate supplies for the mountains. Being anxious to provide against the cold and hunger which they had to encounter on the passage, they created a new fund by cutting off the buttons from their clothes, preparing eye-water, and adding some small articles that had been in use. With this cargo two men set out on the 2d to trade, and brought home three bushels of roots and some bread, which, in their situation, was as important as the return of an East India ship. Another party returned from Lewis's River with roots and salmon, but the distance was so great that most of the fish was nearly spoiled. They continued hunting in the neighborhood, and by their own exertions and trading with the Indians, succeeded in procuring as much bread and roots, besides other food, as would enable them to subsist during the passage of the mountains.

On the 10th, they collected their horses and set out for the Quamash Flats, where they intended to hunt for a few days before proceeding to the mountains. In this they were not very successful; therefore, on the morning of the 16th, they collected their straggling horses and proceeded. On the 17th they found themselves enveloped in snow, from twelve to

fifteen feet deep, even on the south side of the mountain. The air was keen and cold, no vestige of vegetation was to be seen, and their hands and feet were benumbed. The snow bore their horses, and rendered the traveling far easier than it was during their outward journey. But it would require five days to pass over, the danger of missing the way was great, and during this time there would be no chance of finding either grass or underwood for the horses. They therefore decided to venture no further. The baggage and provisions, together with instruments and papers, were deposited on scaffolds and carefully covered. They then set out at one o'clock, and retracing their steps, encamped on Hungry Creek, at a spot where they found some scanty grass. In the hope of procuring a guide they went back to the Flats on the 21st, and in the evening found themselves at their old encampment, where the hunters had killed a deer for supper. Next day all the hunters were out, and brought in eight deer and three bear.

Having obtained guides, they set out at an early hour on the 24th, on a second attempt to cross the mountains. Pursuing their former route, they arrived at Hungry Creek on the evening of the 25th, and next morning began once more to ascend the ridge of mountains. On reaching the top, they found their deposit perfectly untouched. The snow had melted nearly four feet since the seventeenth. They arranged their baggage, took a hasty meal, and hastened on, as they had a long ride before reaching a spot where there was grass for the horses. They continued their route along the mountain-ridge, where sometimes they were so completely inclosed by mountains that, although they had once passed them, they would have despaired of finding their way out through the snow, but for the Indians. The marks on the trees, which had been their chief dependence, were fewer and more indistinct than they had supposed; but their guides traversed this trackless region with a kind of instinctive sagacity; they never hesitated, were never embarrassed; yet so undeviating was their step, that wherever the snow had disappeared, for even a few paces, they found the summer road. On the 29th, the ridge they had been following for several days terminated, and, leaving the snows, they descended to the main branch of the Kooskooskee.

"July 1.—We had now made one hundred and fifty-six miles from the Quamash Flats to the mouth of Traveler's Rest Creek. This being the point where we proposed to separate, it was resolved to remain a day or two in order to refresh ourselves and the horses. We now formed the following plan of operations: Captain Lewis, with nine men, is to pursue the most direct route to the falls of the Missouri, where three of his party are to prepare carriages for transporting the baggage and canoes across the portage. With the remaining six he will ascend Maria's River to explore the country, and ascertain whether any branch of it reaches as far north as the latitude of fifty degrees, after which he will descend that river to its mouth. The rest of the men will accompany Captain Clarke to the head of Jefferson River, which Sergeant Ordway and a party of

mountain. The air was seen, and their hands were rendered the hard journey. But it was missing the way was chance of finding either were decided to venture either with instruments carefully covered. They were encamped on Hungry grass. In the hope on the 21st, and in the event, where the hunters were out, and

early hour on the 24th, Pursuing their former ending of the 25th, and edge of mountains. On the 26th, they arranged on, as they had a long for the horses. They where sometimes they although they had once their way out through trees, which had been distinct than they had this region with a kind of never embarrassed; yet snow had disappeared, and. On the 29th, the terminated, and, leaving the Kooskooskee.

and fifty-six miles from the Creek. This being the weaved to remain a day or

We now formed the nine men, is to pursue where three of his party gage and canoes across descend Maria's River to branch of it reaches as which he will descend that company Captain Clarke Ordway and a party of

nine men will descend with the canoes and other articles deposited there. Captain Clarke's party, which will then be reduced to ten, will proceed to the Yellowstone, at its nearest approach to the three forks of the Missouri. There he will build canoes, and go down that river with seven of his party, and wait at its mouth till the rest of the party join him. Sergeant Pryor, with two others, will then take the horses by land to the Mandans. From that nation he is to go to the British posts on the Assiniboin, with a letter to Mr. Henry, to procure his endeavors to prevail on some of the Sioux chiefs to accompany him to the city of Washington."

"July 3.—All our preparations being completed, we saddled our horses, and the two parties who had been so long companions, now separated, with an anxious hope of soon meeting, after each had accomplished the purpose of its destination."

Captain Lewis proceeded down Clarke's River to the mouth of the Cokalahishkit, or, "River of the Road to Buffaloes," by which they ascended to the dividing ridge, and reached the Missouri at Whitebear Island, above the falls, on the 11th of July. They crossed over, and on the 13th formed a camp at their old station, near the head of the Whitebear Island. On opening the deposit, they found the bearskins entirely destroyed by the water which, during a flood, had penetrated to them. All the specimens of plants were lost; the chart of the Missouri, however, still remained unhurt, and several articles contained in trunks and boxes had suffered but little injury. They proceeded to make preparations for transporting the articles, and on the 15th sent M'Neal to examine the deposit at the lower end of the portage. He returned at night, however, without having reached the place. Near Willow Run he approached a thicket in which was a white bear, which he did not discover until he was within ten feet of him. His horse started, and wheeling suddenly around, threw him almost immediately under the bear. He started up instantly, and as the bear was rising up to attack him, struck it on the head with the butt of his musket. The blow was so violent that it broke the musket and knocked the bear to the ground, and before he recovered, M'Neal sprang up a willow-tree, where he remained closely guarded by the bear until late in the afternoon. The beast then went off, and M'Neal, being released, came down, and having found his horse, which had strayed two miles away, returned to camp.

Leaving Sergeant Gass with two men and four horses to assist in carrying the effects over the portage, Captain Lewis, with Drewyer and the two Fields, proceeded, with six horses, toward the sources of Maria's River. After a week's travel they halted at a place ten miles from the foot of the Rocky Mountains, whence they could trace the river to its egress from the mountains, and as this was to the south of west, they concluded they had reached its most northern point. They therefore remained here to make observations. The weather was cloudy, and after waiting a few days in vain, they mounted their horses on the 28th, and



set out on their return. They had proceeded several miles, and Drewyer had gone forward on the other side of the river, when Captain Lewis, who, with his party, had ascended the hills by the river's side, saw, at the distance of a mile, about thirty horses, half of which were saddled; on an eminence above them several Indians were looking down toward the river, probably at Drewyer. He feared some evil design, but resolved to make the best of the situation, and advanced in a friendly manner. Their attention was so engaged upon Drewyer that they did not at first see the approaching party; when they did they were alarmed, and ran about in confusion. Afterward they collected as if to await them. An Indian mounted and rode at full speed toward them, but after halting for some time he hastened back to his companions. The whole party then descended the hill and rode toward them. When they came near, all the Indians but one stopped. Captain Lewis ordered the two men to halt, while he advanced and shook hands with the Indian, and then with his companions. They now all came up, and the Indians proposed to smoke. Captain Lewis found, by signs, that they were Minnetarees of the north, and that there were three chiefs in the party. Though he did not believe them, yet he thought best to please them, and he gave to one a flag, to another a medal, and to a third a handkerchief. They seemed well satisfied, and now recovered from their alarm, while Lewis's party were equally satisfied that the Indians, only eight in number, were joined by no more of their companions. Being joined by Drewyer, they proceeded to the river, and all encamped together in an Indian tent of buffalo skins, where, by means of Drewyer, the evening was spent in conversation with the Indians.

In the morning the latter watched their opportunity and made off with the rifles of the party. As soon as Fields, who was on guard, perceived them, he called his brother, and pursued the one who had taken both their rifles. In their scuffle he stabbed the Indian, and he fell. Drewyer, being awake, wrested his gun from the fellow who seized it, and Captain Lewis, awakened by the noise, reached to seize his gun, but finding it gone, drew a pistol and followed the Indian who was running off with it. He ordered him to lay it down, which was done just as the others were about to shoot him. Captain Lewis forbid them, but finding that the Indians were now driving off the horses, he sent three of them in pursuit, with orders to fire on the thieves, while he pursued the fellow who had stolen his gun, and another Indian, who were driving away the horses on the other side. He pressed them so closely that they left twelve of their own horses, but still made off with one of Lewis's. As they entered a niche in the bluffs, Captain Lewis called out, as he did several times before, that unless they gave up the horse he would shoot them. As he raised his gun one jumped behind a rock, and Captain Lewis shot the other. He fell, but rising a little, fired, and then crawled behind a rock. Lewis, who was bare-headed, felt the wind of his ball; not having his shot-pouch, he now thought it most prudent to

retire. The other men pursued the Indians until two of them swam the river, and two climbed the hills, and then returned with four horses. In the contest they lost one horse, but gained four of the Indians', besides which they found in the camp four shields, two bows with quivers, and one of their guns, which they took with them, as well as the flag they had given to the Indians, but left the medal around the neck of the dead man to inform the tribe who they were.

As there was no time to lose, they ascended the river-hill and set off across the level plains toward the south-east, over which they pushed their horses with all possible speed. Fortunately the Indian horses were good, and the road smooth, so that when they halted at three o'clock they had made, by estimate, sixty-three miles. They rested an hour and a half, and then rode seventeen miles further, when, as night came on, they killed a buffalo, and again stopped for two hours. The moon gave light enough to show the route, and they continued along through immense herds of buffalo for twenty miles, when, almost exhausted, they halted at two in the morning. At day-light they awoke, sore and scarcely able to stand, but as their own lives, as well as those of their companions, depended on their passing forward, they mounted their horses and set off. At the distance of twelve miles they came near the Missouri, when they heard a noise like the report of a gun. They quickened their pace for eight miles further, when they heard distinctly the noise of several rifles from the river. They hurried to the bank and saw with joy their friends coming down the stream. Turning loose their horses, they embarked with their baggage, and all proceeded down to the spot where they had deposited some goods. Most of the articles were injured, but they took what was worth preserving, and immediately proceeded to the Point, where the deposits were found in good order. Here they were fortunately joined by Gass and Willard from the Falls, and proceeding down the river together, they encamped fifteen miles below. Sergeant Ordway's party, which had left the mouth of Madison River on the 13th, had descended in safety to the Whitebear Islands, where they arrived on the 19th, and after collecting the baggage, left the Falls on the 27th in a perioque and five canoes, while Sergeant Gass and Willard set out at the same time by land with the horses, and thus fortunately the three parties met at the same time.

On the 29th the united party proceeded with the aid of a strong current, and reached the mouth of the Yellowstone on the 7th of August, where they found a note from Captain Clarke, stating that he would wait for them a few miles below. Not meeting with him next day, they landed, and began to calk and repair their canoes, and also to repair some skins for clothing; for since leaving the Rocky Mountains, they had not had leisure to make clothes, and the greater part of the men were almost naked. On the 11th they went forward rapidly, hoping to reach the Burned Hills by noon, in order to ascertain the latitude, but arriving too late, Captain Lewis went with Cruzatte in pursuit of a herd

of elk which they saw. Each of them shot an elk, then reloaded and took different routes in pursuit of the game, when just as Captain Lewis was taking aim at an elk, a ball struck him, passing through the left thigh and grazing the right. Being dressed in brown leather, he thought Cruzatte had shot him in mistake for an elk. He called several times, but seeing nothing and receiving no answer, he concluded the shot must be from an Indian, and therefore made toward the boat, calling out to Cruzatte to retreat, as there were Indians in the willows. He then ordered the men to arms, saying that he was wounded by the Indians, and bade them follow him to relieve Cruzatte. They went forward until his wound became so painful that he could go no further. He then ordered the men to proceed, and if overpowered by numbers, to retreat toward the boats, keeping up a fire; then limping back to the boat, he prepared himself with his rifle, a pistol, and the air-gun, to sell his life dearly in case the men should be overcome. In this state of anxiety he remained about twenty minutes, when the party returned with Cruzatte, and reported that no Indians were to be seen in the neighborhood. Cruzatte was now much alarmed, and declared he had shot at an elk after Captain Lewis had left him, but disclaimed every idea of having intentionally wounded his officer. There was no doubt that he was the one who gave the wound, but as it seemed wholly accidental, and he had always conducted himself with propriety, no further notice was taken of it. The wound was dressed, and though it bled profusely, yet as the ball had touched neither bone nor artery, they hoped it would not prove fatal. They then went on till evening, when, as Captain Lewis had a high fever, and could not be removed without great difficulty, he remained on board during the night. Next morning they proceeded with all possible expedition, and soon afterward called at a camp of two Illinois traders, who said they had seen Captain Clarke the day before. While they halted, they were overtaken by two hunters who had been missing since the 3d, and whose absence excited much uneasiness. After making some presents to the traders they went forward, and at one o'clock joined their friends and companions under Captain Clarke.

On taking leave of Captain Lewis and the Indians on the 3d of July, the other division, consisting of Captain Clarke, with fifteen men and fifty horses, set out in a southern direction through the valley of Clarke's River. During the next day, they halted at an early hour to do honor to the birth-day of their country's independence. "The festival was not very splendid, for it consisted of a mush made of roots and a saddle of venison, nor had we any thing to tempt us to prolong it." On the 6th they left the last year's trail and crossed over the dividing ridge to the waters of Wisdom River, and on the 8th arrived at the forks of the Jefferson, where they had deposited their merchandise in August. "Most of the men were in the habit of chewing tobacco, and such was their eagerness to procure it, after so long a privation, that they scarcely took the saddles from their horses before they ran to the cave, and were de-

lighted at being able to resume this fascinating indulgence. This was one of the severest privations we have encountered. Some of the men, whose tomahawks were so constructed as to answer the purpose of pipes, broke the handles of these instruments, and after cutting them into small fragments, chewed them; the wood having, by frequent smoking, become strongly impregnated with the taste of that plant." They found every thing safe, though some of the goods were a little damp.

The canoes were raised, and the preparations for the journey all made by the 10th, when Captain Clarke divided his men into two bands, the one to descend the river with the baggage, and the other to proceed with him on horseback to the Yellowstone. After breakfast they set out, and at the distance of fifteen miles the two parties stopped to dine, when Captain Clarke, finding that the river became wider and deeper, and that the canoes could advance more rapidly than the horses, determined to go himself by water, leaving Sergeant Pryor with six men to bring on the horses. They reached the entrance of Madison River at noon on the 13th, where Sergeant Pryor had arrived with the horses an hour before. The horses were then driven across Madison and Gallatin Rivers, and the whole party halted to dine and unload the canoes below the mouth of the latter. Here the two parties separated; Sergeant Ordway with nine men set out in six canoes to descend the river, while Captain Clarke with the remaining ten, and the wife and child of Chaboneau, were to proceed by land with fifty horses to Yellowstone River.

They set out at five in the afternoon from the Forks of the Missouri, in a direction nearly eastward. On the 15th, they pursued a buffalo road over a low gap in the mountain, to the heads of the eastern fork of Gallatin River, where they reached the dividing ridge of the waters of the Missouri and the Yellowstone; and on descending the ridge, they struck one of the streams of the latter river. Nine miles from the top of the ridge they reached the Yellowstone itself, about a mile and a half from where it issues from the Rocky Mountains. They pursued their journey down the banks of the river until the 20th, when Captain Clarke determined to make two canoes, which, being lashed together, might convey the party down the river, while a few men should lead the horses to the Mandan nation. The horses were turned out to rest for a few days, but in the morning twenty-four of them were missing, and although the search for them was continued for several days, they were not seen afterward. One day a piece of robe and a moccasin were found not far from the camp, and it became evident that the Indians had stolen the horses.

At length the canoes were finished and lashed together, and every thing being prepared, the parties set out on the 24th. Sergeant Pryor was directed, with Shannon and Windsor, to take the horses to the Mandans, and if Mr. Henry was on the Assiniboin River, to go thither and deliver him a letter, the object of which was to prevail on the most distinguished chiefs of the Sioux to accompany him to Washington.

Captain Clarke embarked on the little flotilla, and proceeded very steadily down the river.

At 2 o'clock on the 3d of August, they reached the junction of the Yellowstone with the Missouri, and formed a camp on the point where they had encamped on the 26th of April, 1805. The canoes were now unloaded, and the baggage exposed to dry, as many of the articles were wet, and some of them spoiled. Next day they found their camp absolutely uninhabitable in consequence of the multitude of mosquitoes; the men could not work in preparing skins for clothing, nor hunt in the timbered low grounds; in short, there was no mode of escape except by going on the sandbars in the river, where, if the wind blew, the insects did not venture; but when there was no wind, and particularly at night, they could hardly be endured. Captain Clarke therefore determined to seek better quarters, and leaving a note on a pole at the confluence of the two rivers, proceeded down the Missouri.

On the 8th, they were joined by Sergeant Pryor, with Shannon, Hall, and Wilson, but without the horses. These had been stolen from them by the Indians on the second night after they had left Captain Clarke. In the morning they had pursued the tracks five miles, when they divided into two parties. They followed the larger party five miles further, till they lost all hope of overtaking the Indians, and returned to camp; and packing the baggage on their backs pursued a north-east course toward the Yellowstone. Having reached the river, they descended it in two skin canoes, which they made for the occasion.

In proceeding further down the river, Captain Clarke had stopped with Dickson and Hancock, two Illinois traders, on the 11th. The party continued slowly to descend, when, on the 12th, one of the skin canoes was by accident pierced with a small hole, and while they stopped to mend it, they were overjoyed at seeing Captain Lewis's boats heave in sight about noon. But they were alarmed on seeing the boats reach the shore without Captain Lewis, who, they learned, had been wounded the day before, and was then lying in the perioque. After attending to his wound they remained here a while, and were overtaken by their two men, accompanied by Dickson and Hancock, who wished to go with them as far as the Mandans. The whole party being now happily re-united, they all embarked together.

On the 14th, they approached the grand village of the Minnetarees, where the natives collected to view them as they passed. They fired a blunderbuss several times by way of salute, and soon afterward landed near the village of the Mahabas, or Shoe Indians, and were received by a crowd of people who came to welcome their return.

"In the evening we were applied to by one of our men, Colter, who was desirous of joining the two trappers who had accompanied us, and who now proposed an expedition up the river, in which they were to find traps, and give him a share of the profits. The offer was a very advantageous one, and as he had always performed his duty, and his

proceeded very

the junction of the  
the point where  
The canoes were  
any of the articles  
found their camp  
de of mosquitoes;  
g, nor hunt in the  
of escape except  
wind blew, the  
, and particularly  
Clarke therefore  
tote on a pole at  
Missouri.

or, with Shannon,  
been stolen from  
had left Captain  
s five miles, when  
er party five miles  
ans, and returned  
pursued a north-  
d the river, they  
the occasion.

Clarke had stopped  
e 11th. The party  
of the skin canoes  
le they stopped to  
is's boats heave in  
g the boats reach  
had been wounded

After attending  
overtaken by their  
who wished to go  
being now happily

f the Minnetarees,  
ed. They fired a  
h afterward landed  
and were received  
urn.

r men, Colter, who  
accompanied us, and  
hich they were to  
e offer was a very  
his duty, and his

services might be dispensed with, we agreed that he might go, provided none of the rest would ask, or expect a similar indulgence. To this they cheerfully answered that they wished Colter every success, and would not apply for liberty to separate before we reached St. Louis. We therefore supplied him, as did his comrades also, with powder and lead, and a variety of articles which might be useful to him, and he left us the next day. The example of this man shows how easily men may be weaned from the habits of a civilized life to the ruder but scarcely less fascinating manners of the woods."

On the 16th the principal chiefs of the Minnetarees came down to bid them farewell, as none of them could be prevailed on to go with the party. This induced Chaboneau, the interpreter, with his wife and child, to leave, as he could be no longer useful, and having no acquaintance in the United States nor means of making a livelihood there, he preferred remaining among the Indians. This man had been very serviceable to the expedition, and his wife particularly useful among the Shoshonees. She had borne with admirable patience the fatigue of the long journey, encumbered with an infant who was yet only nineteen months old. They therefore paid him his wages and dropped down to the village of the chief Bigwhite, who was to accompany them with his wife and son. All the chiefs accompanied them on shore, to take leave of him. They found him surrounded by his friends, who sat in a circle smoking, while the women were crying. He immediately sent his wife and son, with their baggage, on board, then, after distributing among his friends some powder and ball, and smoking with the white men, went with them to the river side. The whole village crowded about them, and many of the people wept aloud at the departure of their chief.

On the 3d of September they were delighted by hearing the first news from their country, from a trader who had lately passed through St. Louis, and with whom they encamped for the night. Near the Little Sioux River, on the 6th, they met a trading boat of St. Louis, with several men on their way to trade with the Yanktons at the river Jacques. They obtained of them a gallon of whiskey, and gave each of the party a dram, which was the first spirituous liquor any of them had tasted since the 4th of July, 1805. On the 17th they passed the island of the Little Osage village. Thirty miles below they met a Captain McClellan, lately of the United States Army, with whom they encamped. He informed them that the general opinion in the United States was that they were lost; the last accounts which had been heard from them being from the Mandan villages.

At length, as the hunters were not very successful, their stock of provisions became very low, though it was partially supplied by an abundance of papaws; several of the party were also attacked with a soreness of the eyes, which was extremely painful, particularly when exposed to the light. Three of the men were so much affected by it as to



be unable to row; they therefore turned two of the boats adrift on the 19th, and distributed the men among the other canoes.

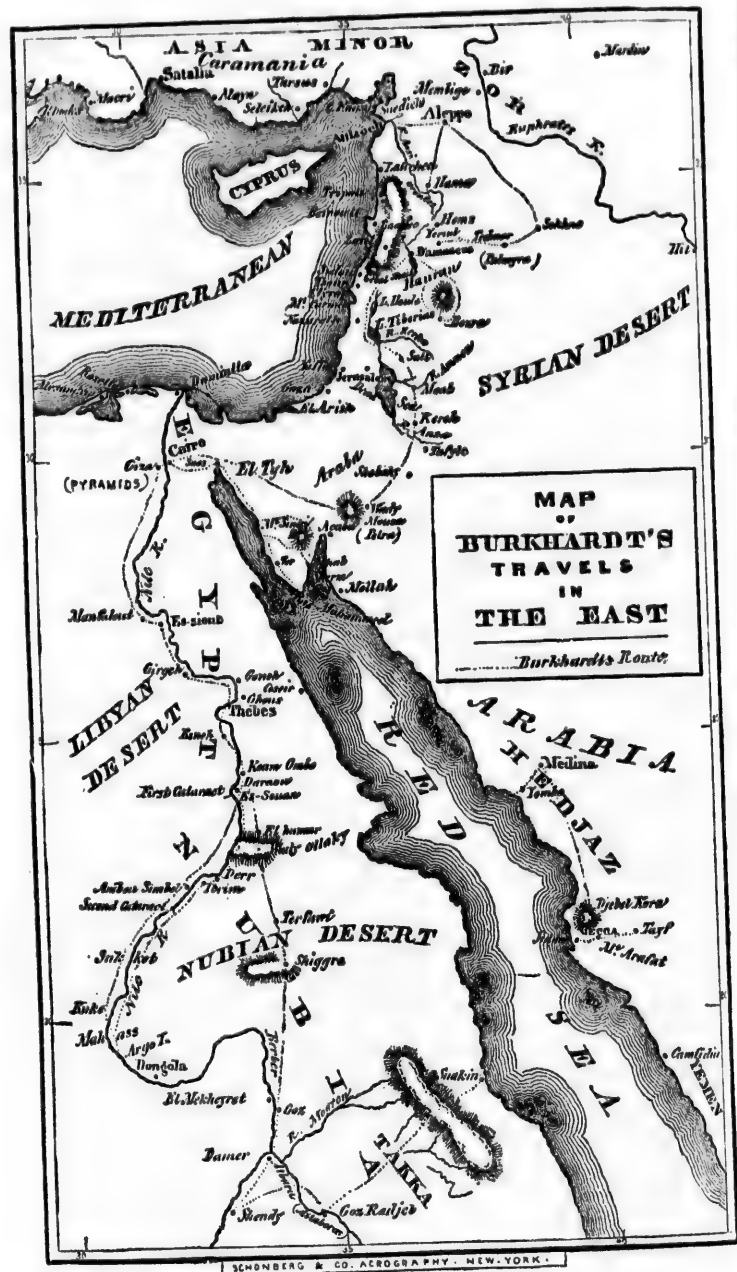
"*Saturday*, September 20th. Near the mouth of the Gasconade, where we arrived at noon, we met five Frenchmen on their way to the Great Osage village. As we moved along rapidly, we saw on the banks some cows feeding, and the whole party almost involuntarily raised a shout of joy at seeing this image of civilization and domestic life. Soon after we reached the little French village of La Charette, which we saluted with a discharge of four guns and three hearty cheers. They were all equally surprised and pleased at our arrival, for they had long since abandoned all hope of ever seeing us return. Next morning we proceeded, and as several settlements had been made during our absence, we were refreshed with the sight of men and cattle along the banks. At length, after coming forty-eight miles, we saluted, with heartfelt satisfaction, the village of St. Charles, and on landing were treated with the greatest hospitality and kindness by all the inhabitants of the place.

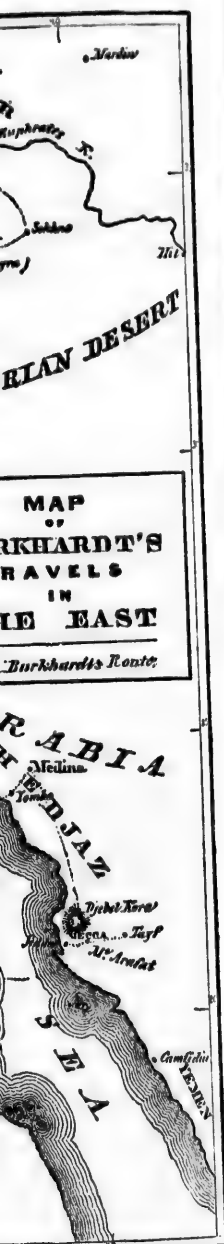
"*Tuesday*, 23d. Descended to the Mississippi, and round to St. Louis, where we arrived at twelve o'clock, and having fired a salute, went on shore and received the heartiest and most hospitable welcome from the whole village."

KE.

boats adrift on the  
of the Gasconade,  
in their way to the  
saw on the banks  
voluntarily raised a  
domestic life. Soon  
charette, which we  
hurty cheers. They  
for they had long  
Next morning we  
de during our ab-  
d cattle along the  
saluted, with heart-  
ding were treated  
inhabitants of the

and round to St.  
ing fired a salute,  
hospitable welcome





## BURKHARDT'S TRAVELS

### IN SYRIA, AFRICA, AND ARABIA

#### TRAVELS IN SYRIA.

JOHN LEWIS BURKHARDT, the most prominent among oriental travelers, the discoverer of the city of Petra, and the first Christian traveler who visited Mecca and Medina, was a Swiss, descended from an eminent family of Basle. He was born at Lausanne, on the Lake of Geneva, in the year 1784. He was the eighth child of John Rodolph Burckhardt, a gentleman of wealth and intelligence, whose prospects in life were early blighted by his adherence to the Austrian faction, during the troubles in Switzerland, consequent upon the French Revolution. He was at one time tried for his life, and was obliged to fly from Basle in order to save his family from total ruin. The future traveler naturally grew up with a detestation of the French rule, and it was his boyish desire to serve in the armies of some nation at war with France. It was his fortune, however, to be destined for a far more useful and heroic career.

Burckhardt's studies were, from various causes, conducted in the manner best calculated to create and nourish restless and adventurous habits. Having received the first rudiments of his education in his father's house, he was removed to a school at Neufchatel, where he remained two years. At the age of sixteen he was entered as a student at the university of Leipzig; from whence, after four years' residence, he proceeded to Göttingen, where he continued another year. He then returned to his parents. The natural firmness and consistency of his character, of which his countenance was strikingly expressive, still taught him to keep alive his hatred to the French; but no continental nation had preserved itself wholly free from the influence of this people; and therefore, rejecting an offer which was made him by one of the petty courts of Germany, desirous of numbering him among its diplomatic body, he turned his thoughts toward England, his father having formerly served in a Swiss corps, in English pay. Accordingly, having provided

himself with letters of introduction to several persons of distinction, among which was one from Professor Blumenbach to Sir Joseph Banks, he set out for London, where he arrived in the month of July, 1806.

This step was the pivot upon which the whole circle of his short life was destined to turn. His introduction to Sir Joseph Banks, who had long been an active member of the African Association, almost necessarily brought him into contact with several other individuals connected with that celebrated society; and conversations with these persons, whose enthusiasm was unbounded, naturally begot in Burckhardt a corresponding warmth, and transformed him, from a Quixotic crusader against the French, into an ardent, ambitious traveler.

Upon Burckhardt's desire to travel for the African Association being communicated to Sir Joseph Banks and Dr. Hamilton, then acting secretary to that body, strong representations of the dangers to be encountered in the execution of the plan were made to the youthful aspirant; "but," says one of his biographers, "such representations, which are a delusive kind of peace-offering placed for form's sake on the altar of conscience, are seldom sincerely designed to effect their apparent purpose; and the actors in the farce, for the most part, experience extreme chagrin should they find their eloquence prove successful."

His offer, which was laid before the association at the general meeting of May, 1808, was willingly accepted; and he immediately commenced all those preparations which were necessary to the proper accomplishment of his undertaking. He employed himself diligently in the study of the Arabic language both in London and Cambridge, as well as in acquiring a knowledge of several branches of science, such as chemistry, astronomy, mineralogy, medicine, and surgery: he likewise allowed his beard to grow, assumed the oriental dress, "and in the intervals of his studies exercised himself by long journeys on foot, bare-headed, in the heat of the sun, sleeping upon the ground, and living upon vegetables and water."

On the 25th of January, 1809, he received his instructions, by which he was directed to proceed in the first instance to Syria, where, it was supposed, he might complete his knowledge of the Arabic, and acquire oriental habits and manners at a distance from the scene of his researches, and where he was not likely to meet with any individuals who might afterward recognize him at an inconvenient moment. After spending two years in Syria, he was instructed to proceed to Cairo, to accompany the Arab caravan to Mourzuk, in Fezzan, by the same route traversed by the unfortunate Hornemann, and to make that place the point of his departure for the interior of Africa.

Burckhardt sailed from Cowes on the 2d of March, 1809, in a merchant-ship, proceeded to the Mediterranean, and arrived at Malta in the middle of April. During his stay at this place he completed his equipment in the oriental manner and assumed the character of an Indian Mohammedan merchant, bearing dispatches from the East India Company to

Mr. Barker, British consul, and the Company's agent at Aleppo. Meanwhile he carefully avoided all intercourse with such persons from Barbary as happened to be in the island; and when he met parties of them in the street, as he often did, the *salaam aleikoom* (peace be with you!) given and returned, was all that passed between them. There was at this time a Swiss regiment in the English service at Malta, to many of the officers of which Burckhardt was personally known. To be recognized by these gentlemen would at once have proved fatal to his assumed character; he therefore appeared in public cautiously, and but seldom; but had at length the satisfaction of finding that his disguise was so complete as to enable him to pass unknown and unnoticed.

He entered into arrangements with a Greek respecting his passage from Malta to Cyprus; but on the very morning of his expected departure he received information that the owner of the ship had directed the captain to proceed to Tripoli. His baggage was in consequence transferred to another ship, said to be bound to the same island; "but the very moment I was embarking," says Burckhardt, "the new captain told me that he was not quite sure whether he should touch at Cyprus, his ship being properly bound for Acre. I had now the option to wait at Malta, perhaps another month or two, for an opportunity for Cyprus or the coast of Syria, or to run the chance of disembarking at a place where there was no person whatever to whom I could apply for advice or protection. Luckily an Arab of Acre, then at Malta, happened to be known to Mr. Barker, jr.; in half an hour's time a letter from a merchant at Acre, with another in case of need for the pasha, were procured, and I embarked and sailed the same morning in the hope of finding, when arrived at Acre, a passage for Tripoli (Syria), or for Latakia. However, we were no sooner out of sight of the island than it was made known to me that the real destination of the ship was the coast of Caramania, that the captain had orders to touch first at the port of Satalia, then at that of Tarsus; and that if grain could not be purchased at an advantageous price at either of these places, in that case only he was to proceed to Acre. My remonstrances with the captain would have been vain; nothing was left to me but to cultivate his good graces and those of my fellow-travelers, as the progress of my journey must depend greatly upon their good offices. The passengers consisted, to my astonishment, of a rich Tripoline merchant, who owned part of the ship, two other Tripolines, and two negro slaves. I introduced myself among them as an Indian Mohammedan merchant, who had been from early years in England, and was now on his way home; and I had the good fortune to make my story credible enough to the passengers, as well as to the ship's company. During the course of our voyage numerous questions were put to me relative to India, its inhabitants and its language, which I answered as well as I could. Whenever I was asked for a specimen of the Hindoo language, I answered in the worst dialect of the Swiss German, almost unintelligible even to a German, and which, in its guttural



sounds, may fairly rival the harshest utterance of Arabic. Every evening we assembled upon deck to enjoy the cooling sea-breeze and to smoke our pipes. While one of the sailors was amusing his companions with story-telling, I was called upon to relate to my companions the wonders of the furthest east—of the Great Mogul and the riches of his court—of the widows in Hindostan burning themselves—of the Chinese, their wall, and great porcelain tower," etc.

They sailed along the southern coast of Candia, saw Rhodes at a great distance, and arrived in a few days at Satalia, in Caramania. Here the plague, it was found, was raging in the town; but this circumstance did not prevent the Tripoline merchant from landing and disposing of his merchandise, nor the captain from receiving him again on board. When their business with this town was completed, they again set sail, and after coasting for three days along the shore of Caramania, arrived in the roads of Mersin, from whence Burckhardt and several of his companions proceeded by land on an excursion to Tarsus. Finding here a ship bound for the coast of Syria, the traveler left the Maltese vessel in order to proceed by this new conveyance: "In taking leave of the Tripoline," says he, "I took off my sash, a sort of red cambric shawl, of Glasgow manufacture, which he had always much admired, thinking it to be Indian stuff, and presented it to him as a keepsake or reward for his good services. He immediately unloosened his turban, and twisted the shawl in its stead around his head: making me many professions of friendship, and assuring me of his hospitality, if ever the chance of mercantile pursuits should again engage me to visit the Mediterranean, and perhaps Tripoli, in Barbary."

Burckhardt reached the coast of Syria at that point where the Aasi, the ancient Orontes, falls into the sea; and immediately prepared to depart for Aleppo with a caravan. Having been intrusted with several chests for the British consul at Aleppo, his baggage appeared considerable, and he was consequently sent for by the aga, who expected a handsome present for permitting it to pass. When questioned by this officer respecting the contents of the chests, he replied that he was entirely ignorant of the matter, but suspected that among other things there was a sort of Frank drink, called *beer*, with various kinds of eatables. The aga now sent an officer to examine them. A bottle of beer having been broken in loading, "the man tasted it by putting his finger into the liquor, and found it abominably bitter; such was his report to the aga. As a sample of the eatables, he produced a potato which he had taken out of one of the barrels, and that noble root excited general laughter in the room. 'It is well worth while,' they said, 'to send such stuff to such a distance.' The aga tasted of the raw potato, and spitting it out again, swore at the Frank's stomach which could bear such food." The mean opinion to which these specimens gave rise, inclined the aga to be content with the trifling sum of ten piasters, which he probably thought more than the value of a whole ship's cargo of potatoes and beer.

Arabic. Every evening he would sit in the breeze and smoke his pipe, and his companions would listen to the wonders he told of his court—of the Chinese, their

from Rhodes at a great price. Here the circumstance did not prevent him from disposing of his property on board. When he again set sail, and after a short time, arrived in the harbor of his companions, where a ship bound for the Tripoline, says that, of Glasgow manumission, it to be Indian and for his good service, twisted the shawl in the hands of friendship, of mercantile purport, and perhaps

point where the Aasi, lately prepared to be entrusted with several, appeared considerably who expected a hand, mentioned by this officer that he was entirely ignorant of things there was a of eatables. The aga, after having been brought into the liquor, port to the aga. As a he had taken out of general laughter in the such stuff to such a spitting it out again, ch food." The meaned the aga to be con- he probably thought toes and beer.

Upon the arrival of the caravan at Antioch, Burckhardt, desirous of studying the manners of all ranks of men, took up his quarters in the khan of the muleteers, where, from a suspicion that he was a Frank in disguise, he was subjected to numerous indignities. The aga's dragoman, some wretched Frenchman, or Piedmontese, being sent by his master to discover the truth, and failing to effect his purpose by any other means, determined, as a last resource, on pulling him by the beard, and at the same time asked him familiarly why he had suffered such a thing to grow? To this Burckhardt replied by striking him on the face, which turned the laugh against the poor dragoman, and was an argument so peculiarly Mohammedan, that it seems to have convinced the bystanders of the truth of his assertions.

After a delay of four days he continued his journey with the caravan, with the motley members of which he was compelled to maintain an unceasing struggle in defense of his assumed character; a circumstance which proves one of two things, either that the Sonnees of the west have by intercourse with Europeans been rendered more acute in discovering impostors, than the Sheehs of Afghanistan and northern Persia, or that Burckhardt was hitherto somewhat unskillful in his movements. On his arrival at Aleppo, he determined, in pursuance of the advice of Mr. Barker, to put off his Mohammedan disguise, though he still retained the Turkish dress; and with the aid of an able master, recommenced the study of the Arabic, both literal and vulgar. He was attacked, however, shortly after his arrival, by a strong inflammatory fever, which lasted a fortnight; it was occasioned, as he conjectured, by the want of sleep, of which blessing he had been deprived by the prodigious colonies of fleas which had established themselves in his garments during his stay at the khan of Antioch. When this seasoning was over, his health appeared to be improved, and he found the climate finer, and more salubrious than he had expected.

During his stay in this city, which was a very protracted one, Burckhardt labored assiduously in fitting himself for the honorable performance of the task he had undertaken. His Arabic studies were uninterrupted. Besides seizing eagerly on every opportunity of improving himself by conversation with the natives, he labored at an attempt to transform "Robinson Crusoe" into an Arabian tale. He moreover succeeded in making the acquaintance of several shekhs, and other literary men, who honored him occasionally with a visit; a favor, he says, which he owed principally to Mr. Wilkins's "Arabic and Persian Dictionary." The ordinary lexicons of the country being very defective, the learned Turks were often obliged to have recourse to Wilkins, whose learning and exactness sometimes compelled them to exclaim, "How wonderful that a Frank should know more of our language than our first ulemas!"

In the month of July, 1810, Burckhardt departed from Aleppo under the protection of an Arab shekh, of the Aneyzeh tribe, who undertook

to escort him to Palmyra, and thence through the Haurân to Damascus. On the way they were attacked, while the shekh was absent at a watering-place, by hostile Arabs, by whom our traveler was robbed of his watch and compass; after which he pushed on into the desert to rejoin the chief. Contrary to the well-known faith of the Arabs, this man transferred to another the protection of his guest, thereby exposing him to be robbed a second time, at Palmyra, where the bandit in authority, finding that he had no money, contented himself with seizing upon his saddle. Returning from these ruins, he found at Yebrud a letter from the shekh, forbidding him to proceed toward the Haurân, because, as the writer asserted, the invasion of the Wahabees had rendered that portion of the country unsafe, even to himself and his Arabs. In consequence of this fraudulent conduct of the shekh, for the excuse was a fiction, he found himself necessitated to take the road to Damascus; disappointed in part, but upon the whole well satisfied with having beheld those magnificent ruins in the desert which have charmed so many strangers, and with having at the same time enjoyed so many occasions of observing the Bedouins under their own tents, where he was everywhere received with hospitality and kindness.

After proceeding southward to the territory of the Druses, and Mount Hermon, he returned to Damascus; whence, after a short stay, he made an excursion into the Haurân, the patrimony of Abraham, which four years before had been in part visited by Dr. Seetzen, previous to his tour round the Dead Sea. "During a fatiguing journey of twenty-six days," says Burckhardt, "I explored this country as far as five days' journey to the south and south-east of Damascus; I went over the whole of the Jebel Haurân, or mountain of the Druses, who have in these parts a settlement of about twenty villages; I passed Bozra, a place mentioned in the books of Moses, and not to be confounded with Boostra; I then entered the desert to the south-east of it, and returned afterward to Damascus through the rocky district on the foot of the Jebel Haurân, called El Leja. At every step I found vestiges of ancient cities; saw the remains of many temples, public edifices, and Greek churches; met at Shohbe with a well-preserved amphitheatre, at other places with numbers of still standing columns, and had opportunities of copying many Greek inscriptions, which may serve to throw some light upon the history of this almost forgotten corner. The inscriptions are, for the greater part, of the lower empire, but some of the most elegant ruins have their inscriptions dated from the reigns of Trajan, and M. Aurelius. The Haurân, with its adjacent districts, is the spring and summer rendezvous of most of the Arab tribes, who inhabit in winter-time the great Syrian desert, called by them El Hammad. They approach the cultivated lands in search of grass, water, and corn, of which last they buy up in the Haurân their yearly provision."

Having to a certain extent satisfied his curiosity respecting this ob-

haurân to Damascus, absent at a water-  
was robbed of his  
he desert to rejoin  
Arabs, this man  
reby exposing him  
audit in authority,  
h seizing upon his  
brud a letter from  
aurân, because, as  
had rendered that  
s Arabs. In con-  
the excuse was a  
pad to Damascus;  
ed with having be-  
e charmed so many  
so many occasions  
here he was every-

the Druses, and  
after a short stay,  
mony of Abraham,  
y Dr. Seetzen, pre-  
fatiguing journey  
this country as far  
Damascus; I went  
of the Druses, who  
villages; I passed  
nd not to be con-  
the south-east of it,  
ocky district on the  
y step I found ves-  
oles, public edifices,  
l-preserved amphi-  
ding columns, and  
s, which may serve  
t forgotten corner.  
r empire, but some  
ted from the reigns  
d adjacent districts, is  
Arab tribes, who in-  
by them El Ham-  
ch of grass, water,  
n their yearly pro-

respecting this ob-

secure region, he returned by way of Homs and Hamah toward Aleppo, where he arrived on the New-year's day of 1811. He now meditated an excursion into the desert toward the Euphrates, but was for some time prevented from putting his design in execution by the troubled state of the country, two powerful Arab tribes, the one inimical, the other friendly to the Aleppines, having been for many months at war with each other. Burckhardt at length succeeded, however, in placing himself under the protection of the Shekh of Sukhne, and set out toward the desert; but his own account of this journey was lost, and all that can now be known of it is to be gathered from a letter from Mr. Barker, the former celebrated British consul at Aleppo. "One hundred and twenty, or one hundred and fifty miles below the ruins of Membigeh, in the Zor," says this gentleman, "there is a tract on the banks of the Euphrates possessed by a tribe of very savage Arabs. Not far from them is the village of Sukhne, at the distance of five days from Aleppo, and of twelve hours from Palmyra, in the road which Zenobia in her flight took to gain the Euphrates. The people of Sukhne are sedentary Arabs, of a breed half Fellah and half Bedouin. They bring to Aleppo alkali and ostrich feathers. It was upon one of these visits of the Shekh of Sukhne to Aleppo, that Burckhardt, after some negotiation, resolved to accept the protection of the shekh, who undertook, upon their arrival at his village, to place him under the protection of a Bedouin of sufficient influence to procure him a safe passage through the tribes of the country which he wished to explore. Burckhardt had reason to be satisfied both with the Shekh of Sukhne, and with the Arab whom he procured as an escort, except that, in the end, the protection of the latter proved insufficient. The consequence was that poor Burckhardt was stripped to the skin, and he returned to Sukhne, his body blistered with the rays of the sun, and without having accomplished any of the objects of his journey. It was in this excursion to the desert that Burckhardt had so hard a struggle with an Arab lady, who took a fancy to the only garment which the delicacy or compassion of the men had left him."

After his return from this unfortunate journey, Burckhardt was delayed for a considerable time at Aleppo by incessant rains; but at length, on the 14th of February, he bade this city a final adieu, and hastened once more to Damascus. He was desirous, before quitting Syria, of performing another journey in the Haurân. This he completed, and having transmitted to England an account of his discoveries in this extraordinary region, he departed on the 18th of June for the Dead Sea. Having reached Nazareth, "I met here," says he, "a couple of petty merchants from Szalt, a castle in the mountains of Balka, which I had not been able to see during my late tour, and which lies on the road I had pointed out to myself for passing into the Egyptian deserts. I joined their caravan; after eight hours' march, we descended into the valley of the Jordan, called El Ghor, near Bysan; crossed the river, and

continued along its verdant banks for about ten hours, until we reached the river Zerka, near the place where it empties itself into the Jordan. Turning then to our left, we ascended the eastern chain, formerly part of the district of Balka, and arrived at Szalt, two long days' journey from Nazareth. The inhabitants of Szalt are entirely independent of the Turkish government; they cultivate the ground for a considerable distance round their habitations, and part of them live the whole year in tents, to watch their harvests and to pasture their cattle. Many ruined places and mountains in the district of Balka preserve the names of the Old Testament, and elucidate the topography of the province that fell to the share of the tribes of Gad and Reuben. Szalt is at present the only inhabited place in the Balka, but numerous Arab tribes pasture there their camels and sheep. I visited from thence the ruins of Amān, or Philadelphia, five hours and a half distant from Szalt. They are situated in a valley on both sides of a rivulet, which empties itself into the Zerka. A large amphitheater is the most remarkable of these ruins, which are much decayed, and in every respect inferior to those of Jerash. At four or five hours south-east of Amān are the ruins of Om Erresas and El Kotif, which I could not see, but which, according to report, are more considerable than those of Philadelphia. The want of communication between Szalt and the southern countries delayed my departure for upward of a week. I found at last a guide, and we reached Kerek in two days and a half, after having passed the deep beds of the torrents El Wale and El Mojeb, which I suppose to be the Nahaliel and Arnon. The Mojeb divides the district of Balka from that of Kerek, as it formerly divided the Moabites from the Amorites. To the south of the wild torrent Mojeb I found the considerable ruins of Rabbah Moab; and, three hours' distance from them, the town of Kerek, situated at about twelve hours' distance to the east of the southern extremity of the Dead Sea. \* \* \*

"The treachery of the Shekh of Kerek, to whom I had been particularly recommended by a grandee of Damascus, obliged me to stay at Kerek above twenty days. After having annoyed me in different ways, he permitted me to accompany him southward, as he had himself business in the mountains of Djebal, a district which is divided from that of Kerek by the deep bed of the torrent El Ahhsa, or El Kahary, eight hours' distance from Kerek. We remained for ten days in the villages to the north and south of El Ansa, which are inhabited by Arabs, who have become cultivators, and who sell the produce of their fields to the Bedouins. The shekh, having finished his business, left me at Beszeyra, a village about sixteen hours' south of Kerek, to shift for myself, after having maliciously recommended me to the care of a Bedouin, with whose character he must have been acquainted, and who nearly stripped me of the remainder of my money. I encountered here many difficulties, was obliged to walk from one encampment to another, until I found at last a Bedouin who engaged to carry me to Egypt. In his company

I continued southward, in the mountains of Shera, which are divided to the north from Djebel by the broad valley called Ghoseyr, at about five hours' distance from Beszeyra. The chief place in Djebel is Tafyle, and in Shera the castle of Shobak."

## DISCOVERY OF PETRA.

"The valley of Ghor is continued to the south of the Dead Sea; at about sixteen hours' distance from the extremity of the Dead Sea its name is changed into that of Araba, and it runs in almost a straight line, declining somewhat to the west, as far as Akaba, at the extremity of the eastern branch of the Red Sea. The existence of this valley appears to have been unknown to ancient as well as modern geographers, although it is a very remarkable feature in the geography of Syria and Arabia Petrea, and is still more interesting for its productions. In this valley the manna is still found; it drops from the sprigs of several trees, but principally from the Gharrab. It is collected by the Arabs, who make cakes of it, and who eat it with butter; they call it Assal Beyrook, or the honey of Beyrook. Indigo, gum-arabic, and the silk-tree, called Asheyr, whose fruit incloses a white silky substance, of which the Arabs twist their matches, grow in this valley."

In this valley, about two long days' journey north-east of Akaba, is a small rivulet, near the banks of which Burckhardt discovered the ruins of a city, which he rightly conjectured to be those of Petra, the capital of Arabia Petrea. No other European traveler had ever visited the spot, though few places in Western Asia are more curious or deserving of examination. The difficulties and dangers of reaching Petra, a city which had been lost to the world for fifteen hundred years, are thus described by the traveler: "I was particularly desirous of visiting Wady Moussa, of the antiquities of which I had heard the country people speak in terms of great admiration, and from thence I had hoped to cross the desert in a straight line to Cairo; but my guide was afraid of the hazards of a journey through the desert, and insisted upon my taking the road to Akaba, the ancient Ezion-geber, at the extremity of the eastern branch of the Red Sea, where, he said, we might join some caravans, and continue our route toward Egypt. I wished, on the contrary, to avoid Akaba, as I knew that the Pasha of Egypt kept there a numerous garrison to watch the movements of the Wahabees and of his rival the Pasha of Damascus. A person, therefore, like myself, coming from the latter place, without any papers to show who I was, or why I had taken that circuitous route, would certainly have roused the suspicions of the officer commanding at Akaba, and the consequences might have been dangerous to me among the savage soldiery of that garrison. The road from Shobak to Akaba lies to the east of Wady Moussa, and to have quitted it out of mere curiosity to see the Wady would have

until we reached  
into the Jordan.  
, formerly part of  
ys' journey from  
dependent of the  
considerable dis-  
he whole year in  
le. Many ruined  
the names of the  
province that fell  
is at present the  
ab tribes pasture  
he ruins of Amān,  
lt. They are sit-  
empties itself into  
ble of these ruins,  
to those of Jerash.  
ns of Om Erresas  
ding to report, are  
want of communi-  
yed my departure  
ve reached Kerek  
eds of the torrents  
ahaliel and Arnon.  
f Kerek, as it for-  
the south of the  
of Rabbah Moab;  
Kerek, situated at  
hern extremity of

a I had been par-  
bliged me to stay  
d me in different  
as he had himself  
divided from that  
El Kahary, eight  
ays in the villages  
ed by Arabs, who  
their fields to the  
ft me at Beszeyra,  
t for myself, after  
a Bedouin, with  
ho nearly stripped  
ere many difficul-  
ther, until I found  
In his company



looked suspicious in the eyes of the Arabs: I therefore pretended to have made a vow to slaughter a goat in honor of Haroun (Aaron), whose tomb I knew was situated at the extremity of the valley, and by this stratagem I thought that I should have the means of seeing the valley on my way to the tomb. To this my guide had nothing to oppose; the dread of drawing down upon himself, by resistance, the wrath of Haroun, completely silenced him.

"I hired a guide at Eldjy, to conduct me to Haroun's tomb, and paid him with a pair of old horse-shoes. He carried the goat, and gave me a skin of water to carry, as he knew there was no water in the wady below. In following the rivulet of Eldjy westward, the valley soon narrows again, and it is here that the antiquities of Wady Moussa (Petra) begin. Of these I regret that I am not able to give a very complete account; but I knew well the character of the people around me. I was without protection in the midst of a desert, where no traveler had ever before been seen, and a close examination of these works of the infidels, as they are called, would have excited suspicions that I was a magician in search of treasures. I should at least have been detained and prevented from prosecuting my journey to Egypt, and in all probability should have been stripped of the little money which I possessed, and, what was infinitely more valuable to me, of my journal. Future travelers may visit the spot under the protection of an armed force; the inhabitants will become more accustomed to the researches of strangers, and the antiquities of Wady Moussa will then be found to rank among the most curious remains of ancient art."

Burckhardt gives as careful a description as his memory afforded of the wonders of the valley—the hundreds of sepulchral chambers, adorned with Grecian sculpture, excavated in the red sand-stone rocks flanking the valley—of the mausolea, some in the Egyptian style, with obelisks, some in the chaste architecture of the Greeks—and especially of the Khasneh, or "Treasury of Pharaoh," an excavated edifice of wonderful beauty; but his account has been superseded by the more complete and elaborate descriptions of Laborde and other late travelers, and need not be quoted entire. "Near the west end of Wady Moussa," he continues, "are the remains of a stately edifice, of which part of the wall is still standing; the inhabitants call it *Kasr Bint Faraoun*, or the palace of Pharaoh's daughter. In my way I had entered several sepulchres, to the surprise of my guide, but when he saw me turn out of the foot-path toward the Kasr, he exclaimed: 'I see now clearly that you are an infidel, who have some particular business among the ruins of the city of your forefathers; but depend upon it that we shall not suffer you to take out a single para of all the treasures hidden therein, for they are in our territory, and belong to us.' I replied that it was mere curiosity which prompted me to look at the ancient works, and that I had no other view in coming there than to sacrifice to Haroun; but he was not easily persuaded, and I did not think it prudent

pretended to have (Aaron), whose tomb and by this stratagem the valley on my oppose; the dread wrath of Haroun,

un's tomb, and paid goat, and gave me water in the wady the valley soon nearly Moussa (Petra) ve a very complete ple around me. I ere no traveler had these works of the fictions that I was a have been detained pt, and in all proba-ly which I possessed, ny journal. Future an armed force; the earches of strangers, und to rank among

his memory afforded epulchral chambers, red sand-stone rocks the Egyptian style, of the Greeks—and caoh," an excavated been superseded by borde and other late e west end of Wady ely edifice, of which call it *Kasr Bint* n my way I had ene, but when he saw claimed: 'I see now ular business among nd upon it that we he treasures hidden us.' I replied that the ancient works, han to sacrifice to ot think it prudent

to irritate him by too close an inspection of the palace, as it might have led him to declare, on our return, his belief that I had found treasures, which might have led to a search of my person, and to the detection of my journal, which would most certainly have been taken from me, as a book of magic. It was of no avail to tell them to follow me, and see whether I searched for money. Their reply was, 'Of course you will not dare to take it out before us, but we know that if you are a skillful magician you will order it to follow you through the air to whatever place you please.'

"The sun had already set when we arrived on the plain. It was too late to reach the tomb, and I was excessively fatigued; I therefore hastened to kill the goat in sight of the tomb, at a spot where I found a number of heaps of stones, placed there in token of as many sacrifices in honor of that saint. While I was in the act of slaying the animal, my guide exclaimed aloud: 'O Haroun, look upon us! it is for you we slaughter this victim. O Haroun, be content with our good intentions, for it is but a lean goat. O Haroun, smooth our paths; and praise be to the Lord of all creatures!' This he repeated several times, after which he covered the blood that had fallen to the ground with a heap of stones; we then dressed the best part of the flesh for our supper, as expeditiously as possible, for the guide was afraid of the fire being seen, and of its attracting thither some robbers."

In proceeding further toward Akaba, Burckhardt encountered a small party of Arabs who were conducting a few camels for sale to Cairo, and uniting himself to this little caravan, performed the remainder of the journey in their company. "We crossed the valley of Araba," says he, "ascended on the other side of it the barren mountains of Beyane, and entered the desert called El Tih, which is the most barren and horrid tract of country I have ever seen; black flints cover the chalky or sandy ground, which in most places is without any vegetation. The tree which produces the gum-arabic grows in some spots; and the tamarisk is met with here and there; but the scarcity of water forbids much extent of vegetation, and the hungry camels are obliged to go in the evening for whole hours out of the road in order to find some withered shrubs upon which to feed. During ten days' forced marches we passed only four springs or wells, of which one only, at about eight hours east of Suez, was of sweet water. The others were brackish and sulphureous. We passed at a short distance to the north of Suez, and arrived at Cairo by the pilgrim road."

#### TRAVELS IN NUBIA AND ETHIOPIA.

On his arrival at Cairo, Burckhardt's first employment was to draw up a detailed account of his journey through Arabia Petræa: he then turned his attention to the means of fulfilling the great design of his mis-

sion; but no opportunity of penetrating into the interior of Africa occurring, he undertook, in order to fill up the interval thus created, a journey into Nubia. During his residence at Cairo, and on his journey up the Nile to Assouan, he beheld the principal ruins of Egypt. His preparations for the Nubian excursion were soon made. He purchased two dromedaries, one for himself and the other for his guide, for about twenty-two pounds; provided himself with letters of recommendation, and a firman from the pasha; and leaving his servant and baggage at Assouan, set out with his guide on the 14th of February, 1813, carrying along with him nothing but his gun, a saber, a pistol, a provision-bag, and a woolen mantle, which served by day for a carpet, and for a covering during the night.

Their road lay along the eastern bank of the Nile; they passed Philæ, and then pushed on with rapidity toward Derr, the capital of Lower Nubia. The Mameluke chiefs, with their desperate followers, were at this period roaming about Nubia, indulging their imaginations in vain projects for the recovery of Egypt. Every person coming from the north was of course an object of curiosity, if not of suspicion, to these baffled soldiers, as it was possible he might be the bearer of tidings of events upon the results of which their fate depended. Such was the state of things when Burckhardt entered Nubia.

Burckhardt arrived at Derr on the 1st of March, and, to his surprise, found two Mameluke beys at the palace of the governor. He had reckoned upon their utter disappearance, and had intended, under these circumstances, to represent himself as the secret agent of the Pasha of Egypt; but learning, upon inquiry, that the pasha and his enemies were regarded with nearly equal dread by the Nubian princes, he changed his resolution, and professed to be guided in his notions by no other motive than pleasure. Ignorant persons find it hard to conceive that men can expose themselves to difficulties and dangers from an enthusiasm for knowledge, or can find pleasure in encountering hardships and fatigue; however, a concurrence of fortunate circumstances extorted from the governor a permission to proceed, and accordingly, having provided himself with provisions for the road, Burckhardt departed for Sukkot.

His guide on the present occasion was an old Arab of the Ababdeh tribe. The branch of the Ababdeh to which this man, whose name was Mohammed, belonged, feed their flocks on the uninhabited eastern banks of the river, and on its numerous islands, as far south as Dongola. Though poor, they refuse to bestow their daughters, who are famed for their beauty, in marriage on the rich Nubians, and have thus preserved the purity of their race. They are, moreover, an honest and hospitable race, and during his journeys in Nubia, Burckhardt was constantly received and treated with kindness by these simple people.\*

In pursuing his course up the Nile, he passed a day at Ibream, a town

\* During my travels in Africa I had considerable intercourse with the Ababdehs, and fully concur in Burckhardt's opinion of their honesty and kindness.—B. T.

rior of Africa occur-  
us created, a journey  
his journey up the  
Egypt. His prepara-  
He purchased two  
uide, for about twen-  
commendation, and a  
baggage at Assouan,  
1813, carrying along  
provision-bag, and a  
, and for a covering

the Nile; they passed  
Derr, the capital of  
desperate followers,  
ing their imaginations  
y person coming from  
f not of suspicion, to  
e the bearer of tidings  
ended. Such was the

h, and, to his surprise,  
vernor. He had reck-  
ended, under these cir-  
agent of the Pasha of  
a and his enemies were  
princes, he changed his  
ons by no other motive  
to conceive that men  
s from an enthusiasm  
ing hardships and fa-  
stances extorted from  
ingly, having provided  
departed for Sukkot.

Arab of the Ababdeh  
man, whose name was  
nhabited eastern banks  
far south as Dongola.  
ers, who are famed for  
d have thus preserved  
honest and hospitable  
ardt was constantly re-  
people.\*

day at Ibream, a town  
rse with the Ababdeh, and  
dness.—B. T.

inhabited by Turks, where, though quarrels and bloodshed were frequent, property was more secure than in any other town he had visited in the eastern world; the corn was left all night in the field, and the cattle on the banks of the river, unwatched, and even the greater part of the household furniture remained all night under the palm-trees around their dwellings. Indeed, theft here was quite unknown. Proceeding a short distance to the south of this town, he dismounted from his dromedary, and directing his guide to continue his route to the next village, struck off into a narrow footpath along the lofty, precipitous shores of the river. Pursuing this mountain-track, he arrived at an ancient temple hewn out of the rock, in as perfect a state of preservation as when first finished. Sepulchral chambers and mystic sculptures, the usual accompaniments of Egyptian temples, were found here.

The reception which the traveler and his guide met with at the Nubian villages was generally hospitable; as soon as they alighted, a mat was spread for them upon the ground, just before the door of the house, which none but intimate friends are permitted to enter; dhourra bread, milk, and sometimes dates were placed before the strangers, and their host, if earnestly pressed, sat down with them. Straw, when plentiful, was likewise given to their camels; and when the host desired to be particularly hospitable, a breakfast of hot milk and bread was served up before their departure in the morning.

At length, on the 6th of March, they arrived on a sandy plain, sprinkled with rocky points, which thrust up their heads through the sand that concealed their bases. Here they encamped in the evening near one of the islands which are formed by the river. The noise of the cataract was heard in the night, at about half an hour's distance. The place is very romantic: when the inundation subsides, many small lakes are left among the rocks; and the banks of these, overgrown with large tamarisks, have a picturesque appearance amid the black and green rocks; the lakes and pools thus formed cover a space of upward of two miles in breadth.

The Arabs who serve as guides through these wild districts, "have devised," says Burckhardt, "a singular mode of extorting small presents from the traveler: they alight at certain spots, and beg a present; if it is refused, they collect a heap of sand, and mould it into the form of a diminutive tomb, and then placing a stone at each of its extremities, they apprise the traveler that his tomb is made; meaning that henceforward there will be no security for him in this rocky wilderness. Most persons pay a trifling contribution rather than have their graves made before their eyes; there were, however, several tombs of this description dispersed over the plain. Being satisfied with my guide, I gave him one piaster, with which he was content." At the next rocky pass, however, the guide repeated the process, whereupon Burckhardt dismounted, and making another tomb, told him it was intended for his own sepulchre; for that, as they were brethren, it was but just they should be buried to-

gether. At this, the guide began to laugh; they then mutually destroyed each other's labors, and in riding along, the latter exclaimed, from the Koran, "No mortal knows the spot upon earth where his grave shall be digged."

On his arrival in the territory of Sukkot, he presented to the governor the letter of which he was the bearer; and received from this old savage a scrap of paper, containing an introduction to his son, who was the chief of the southern part of the district. Here the guide, who had been granted him at Derr, reached the extremity of his commission, and announced his intention of returning from thence; four piasters, however, overcame his determination, and he agreed to proceed to Mahass: "If Hassan Kashif," said he, "upbraids me, I shall tell him that you rode on, notwithstanding my exhortations, and that I did not think it honorable to leave you alone." An admirable custom prevails in this and every other part of Nubia: water-jars are placed under a low roof at short distances by the roadside, where the traveler may always quench his thirst; and every village pays a small monthly sum to some person to fill those jars morning and evening. The same thing is practiced upon a much larger scale in Upper Egypt and in Asia Minor.

Upon Burckhardt's reaching the Mahass territory, he suddenly found himself in the midst of the worst description of savages. The governor, a ferocious black, received him in a hut, furiously intoxicated, and surrounded by numerous followers in the same condition. In the midst of their drunken mirth they called for their muskets, and amused themselves with firing in the hut. Burckhardt every moment expected that a random ball would put an end to his travels; but the palm wine at length extended the whole of this atrocious rabble upon the ground, and next morning, when sleep had somewhat restored the tone of the governor's senses, he found time to question the traveler respecting the motives of his visit. The story which he related to them was not believed. "You are an agent of Mohammed," said they; "but at Mahass we spit at Mohammed Ali's beard, and cut off the heads of those who are enemies to the Mamelukes."\* These suspicions, although they produced no immediate injury to his personal safety, entirely put a stop to his progress further south; for he was now within two days and a half of the limits of Dongola, where the Mamelukes were lords paramount, and to enter their territories with the character of an agent of Mohammed Ali, would be to court certain death. He therefore turned his face toward the north, and traveled with all possible celerity along the eastern bank of the Nile, until he arrived at Kolbe, where he swam across the

\* Thirty-nine years later, in the spring of 1852, I passed alone through the countries of Dongola, Mahass and Sukkot, with the most perfect security. The King of Mahass even embraced me affectionately at parting. This contrast shows how readily the suspicion and mistrust which the first travelers generally have to encounter, on entering a new country, gives place to confidence and kindness.—B. T.

then mutually de-  
ter exclaimed, from  
here his grave shall

ented to the gover-  
ved from this old  
o his son, who was  
the guide, who had  
his commission, and  
four pinsters, how-  
proceed to Mahass:  
ll him that you rode  
not think it honora-  
hills in this and every  
ow roof at short dis-  
ys quench his thirst;  
e person to fill those  
cticed upon a much

y, he suddenly found  
gea. The governor,  
ntoxicated, and sur-  
on. In the midst of  
s, and amused them-  
ment expected that  
out the palm wine at  
le upon the ground,  
ored the tone of the  
aveler respecting the  
to them was not be-  
hey; "but at Mahass  
heads of those who  
s, although they pro-  
entirely put a stop to  
two days and a half  
ere lords paramount,  
an agent of Moham-  
efore turned his face  
elerity along the east-  
re he swam across the

done through the countries  
ity. The King of Mahass  
ows how readily the suspi-  
ccounter, on entering a new

river, holding by his camel's tail with one hand, and urging on the beast with the other.

Burckhardt now descended the Nile to Abou-Simbel, the vast rocky temple of which he supposed to be of extremely ancient date. He here found four colossal statues of enormous magnitude, which had been hewn out of the rock, on the face of an elevated cliff, with their backs adhering to the precipice. The fine sand of the desert had been blown up into mounds against the rock, and covered two of these statues almost entirely; the rest rose somewhat above the surface. The faces of these colossal statues are turned toward the north. "The head, which is above the surface," says he, "has a most expressive youthful countenance, approaching nearer to the Grecian model of beauty than that of any ancient Egyptian figure I have seen; indeed, were it not for a thin, oblong beard, it might well pass for a head of Pallas."

From Abou-Simbel he continued his journey to Derr, where he parted with his guide, who, on taking his leave, begged as a present the mellaye, or cloak, which the traveler usually wore. To this request Burckhardt replied, "May God smooth your path!"—a phrase usually addressed to beggars when they are civilly told to be gone. "No," said the Arab, who had often employed this phrase when he desired to elude the questions of the traveler, "for once I will beg you to smooth it." "So," says Burckhardt, "I gave him the mellaye, and a small present in money; and am confident that Abou Saad will never forget me."

On his return to Assouan, Burckhardt's first care was to repair, by repose, the inroads which fatigue had made upon his constitution. He then repaired to Esne, where he established his head-quarters. It being his policy to excite but little attention, he very seldom went into company, dressed meanly, and reduced his expenditure to the lowest possible sum. The cheapness of provisions was incredible. His whole expenditure for himself, his servant, his dromedary, and his ass, not exceeding thirty-five cents per day, while his horse cost him no more than thirty cents per month.

Here he remained until the 2d of March, 1814, when he joined himself, as a petty trader, to another caravan, which was proceeding from Deraou to Berber. The caravan, consisting of about fifty merchants, with their slaves and beasts, moved under the protection of about thirty Ababdeh Arabs, who, though no heroes or philosophers, were not remarkably deficient either in courage or humanity. Burckhardt, on this occasion, possessed no command over his own movements. He traveled, halted, ate, slept, in obedience to the fantasy of the caravan-leaders, who were ignorant, however, that the humble trader, whom they regarded at most with compassion, was at that moment forming reflections and bringing observations to maturity, which were destined to affect the opinion entertained by the civilized world of their character and pursuits. Meanwhile the merchants, who were chiefly engaged in the debasing traffic of slaves, and, as may be supposed, cherished no respect for any



thing but riches, and the power which riches commands, looked upon their humble companion with undisguised contempt. They constantly treated him with contumely, though he professed a belief in the same law and the same prophets; plundered his water-skins, or obstructed his filling them at the wells, thus exposing him to the danger of perishing of thirst; circulated in the towns where they stopped the report that he was a spy; and, in short, put in practice every art which their malice could conceive in order to disgust him with the trade, and thus free themselves from a new competitor.

At the end of a week's journey the caravan arrived at the celebrated wells of El Haimar, in the vicinity of which they found the tomb of a Mameluke chief, who died on this spot. "His companions, having inclosed the naked corpse within low walls of loose stones, had covered it over with a large block. The dryness of the air had preserved the corpse in the most perfect state. Looking at it through the interstices of the stones which enveloped it, it appeared to me a more perfect mummy than any I had seen in Egypt. The mouth was wide open, and our guide related that the man had died for want of water, although so near the wells." Next day they passed Wady Ollaky, a fine valley extending east and west from the Nile to the Red Sea. Here were numerous trees and excellent pasture, advantages which caused it to be regarded with peculiar veneration by the Bedouins; and every man, as he traversed it on his ass or camel, took a handful of dhourra and threw it on the ground as a kind of pious offering to the good genius of the Wady. On the following day, in crossing Wady El Towashy, or the Valley of the Eunuch, Burckhardt saw the tomb of that Mahomet Towash whose body was found on the sands by Bruce three days after he had been murdered by his guides.

Burckhardt gives the following account of the impositions and hardships which he was obliged to endure in the course of this journey: "I was often driven from the coolest and most comfortable berth into the burning sun, and generally passed the midday hours in great distress; for beside the exposure to heat, I had to cook my dinner, a service which I could never prevail upon any of my companions, even the poorest servants, to perform for me, though I offered to let them share my homely fare. In the evening the same labor occurred again, when fatigued by the day's journey, during which I always walked for four or five hours, in order to spare my ass, and when I was in the utmost need of repose. Hunger, however, always prevailed over fatigue, and I was obliged to fetch and cut wood, to light a fire, to cook, to feed the ass, and finally to make coffee, a cup of which, presented to my Daraou companions, who were extremely eager to obtain it, was the only means I possessed of keeping them in tolerable good-humor. A good night's rest, however, always repaired my strength, and I was never in better health and spirits than during this journey, although its fatigues were certainly very great, and much beyond my expectation. The common dish of all the

mands, looked upon  
 pt. They constantly  
 a belief in the same  
 ins, or obstructed his  
 danger of perishing  
 ed the report that he  
 t which their malice  
 trade, and thus free

ved at the celebrated  
 found the tomb of a  
 companions, having  
 e stones, had covered  
 ir had preserved the  
 through the interstices  
 o me a more perfect  
 th was wide open, and  
 of water, although so  
 laky, a fine valley ex-  
 a. Here were numer-  
 h caused it to be re-  
 and every man, as he  
 dhourra and threw it  
 he good genius of the  
 y El Towashy, or the  
 of that Mahomet Tow-  
 e three days after he

e impositions and hard-  
 se of this journey: "I  
 ortable berth into the  
 ours in great distress;  
 dinner, a service which  
 a, even the poorest serv-  
 hem share my homely  
 gain, when fatigued by  
 for four or five hours,  
 utmost need of repose.  
 , and I was obliged to  
 eed the ass, and finally  
 my Daraou companions,  
 only means I possessed  
 d night's rest, however,  
 r in better health and  
 ques were certainly very  
 common dish of all the

travelers at noon was fetyre, which is flour mixed up with water into a liquid paste, and then baked upon the sadj, or iron plate; butter is then poured over it, or honey, or sometimes a sauce is made of butter and dried bamyé. In the evening some lentils are boiled, or some bread is baked with salt, either upon the sadj or in ashes, and a sauce of bamyé, or onion, poured over lentils, or upon the bread, after it has been crumbled into small pieces. Early in the morning every one eats a piece of dry biscuit, with some raw onions or dates."

On the 14th of March, on arriving at the Wady el Nabeh, they found the celebrated wells of that valley insufficient to supply the caravan until they should reach the rocks of Shigre, and as no water was anywhere to be found in the intervening space, they were reduced to the greatest perplexity. "Upon such occasions as these," says Burckhardt, "every man gives his opinion: and mine was, that we should kill our thirty-five asses, which required a daily supply of at least fifteen water-skins, that we should load the camels to the utmost of their strength with water, and strike out a straight way through the desert toward Berber, without touching at Shigre; in this manner we might perform the journey in five forced marches." This plan the Arabs refused to follow. They repaired their water-skins and their sandals, refreshed themselves with bathing in the cool wells, and then set out. But "it was not without great apprehension," says our traveler, "that I departed from this place. Our camels and asses carried water for three or four days only, and I saw no possibility of escaping from the dreadful effects of a want of water. In order to keep my ass in good spirits, I took off the two small water-skins with which I had hitherto loaded him, and paid one of the Ababdehs four dollars to carry four small water-skins as far as Berber; for I thought that if the ass could carry me, I might bear thirst for two days at least, but that if he should break down, I should certainly not be able to walk one whole day without water in this hot season of the year."

Notwithstanding all these difficulties and sufferings, Burckhardt considered the Nubian desert, at least as far south as Shigre, far less terrible than that of Syria or Tyh. Trees and water are much more frequent, and though it is intersected in various directions by mountains of naked rock, the more desolate and awful appearance which it acquires from this circumstance is, in a great measure, compensated for by its consequent grandeur and variety. "Here," says he, "during the whole day's march, we were surrounded on all sides by lakes of the mirage, called by the Arabs Serab. Its color was of the purest azure, and so clear that the shadows of the mountains that bordered the horizon were reflected on it with the greatest precision, and the delusion of its being a sheet of water was thus rendered still more perfect." This appearance, however, only served to heighten the terrors which the scarcity of real water excited. Every man now began to attach the greatest importance to the small stock he possessed. Burckhardt, who possessed but two

draughts, drank the half of it at once, reserving the remainder for the next day; but, observing the general scarcity, shared the dejection of his companions. At length, their condition having become nearly desperate, they adopted the course recommended by the Ababdeh chief, and dispatched ten or twelve of their companions, mounted on as many camels, to the nearest part of the Nile, which was not more than five or six hours distant; but as its banks were inhabited by fierce tribes, nothing but the fear of instant death could have forced them to this step. They timed their march in such a manner, that they would reach the banks of the river by night; when they were directed to select some uninhabited spot, and having there loaded their camels, to return with all speed. "We passed the evening," says Burckhardt, "in the greatest anxiety, for if the camels should not return, we had little hopes of escape either from thirst or from the sword of our enemies, who, if they had once got sight of our camels, would have followed their footsteps through the desert, and would certainly have discovered us." Many of my companions came in the course of the evening to beg some water of me, but I had well hidden my treasure, and answered them by showing my empty skins. We remained the greater part of the night in silent and sullen expectation of the result of our desperate mission. At length, about three o'clock in the morning, we heard the distant halloosings of our companions; and soon after refreshed ourselves with copious draughts of the delicious water of the Nile."

This was the last of their sufferings on this route; on the 23d of March, they entered on a plain with a slight slope toward the river, which was felt at more than two hours' distance by the greater moisture of the air. The Arabs exclaimed, "God be praised, we again smell the Nile!" and about ten o'clock at night, the caravan entered the town of Ankheyreh, or El Mekheyref, the capital of the country of Berber. Burckhardt's residence at this place was nothing but one continued series of annoyances. The principal delight of the whole population, among whom drunkenness and debauchery were scarcely accounted vices, seemed to consist in deluding and plundering travelers, who on all the envenomed soil of Africa could scarcely be exposed to more irritating insults or extortion than on this spot.

The caravan, now reduced to about two thirds of its original number, several of the merchants having returned to Egypt, while others remained at Berber to dispose of their goods, again put itself in motion on the 7th of April. Burckhardt, who had hitherto attached himself to the merchant portion of the party, several of whom, previous to their leaving Egypt, had received benefits at his hands, was here driven by abuse and contumely to take refuge among the Ababdehs, who not only willingly received him as their companion, but exercised their influence, on more than one occasion, to protect him from violence. Pursuing a southerly direction for three days, they arrived at the town of Damer, which, under the government of a number of religious men, had attained a very

the remainder for the  
red the dejection of  
become nearly des-  
the Ababdeh chief,  
mounted on as many  
not more than five or  
by fierce tribes, noth-  
ed them to this step.  
they would reach the  
ected to select some  
camels, to return with  
hardt, "in the greatest  
little hopes of escape  
ies, who, if they had  
owed their footsteps  
discovered us." Many  
ng to beg some water  
wered them by show-  
part of the night in  
desperate mission. At  
ard the distant halloo-  
ourselves with copious

route; on the 23d of  
lope toward the river,  
y the greater moisture  
ed, we again smell the  
n entered the town of  
ne country of Berber.  
ng but one continued  
the whole population,  
re scarcely accounted  
ring travelers, who on  
exposed to more irri-

of its original number,  
gypt, while others re-  
put itself in motion on  
attached himself to the  
revious to their leaving  
re driven by abuse and  
who not only willingly  
their influence, on more

Pursuing a southerly  
town of Damer, which,  
en, had attained a very

high pitch of prosperity. Their sanctity, indeed, was considerably aided by their skill in magic, which, as Burckhardt was credibly informed, was so great that, on one occasion, the Faky el Kebir, or Great Fakeer, caused a lamb to bleat in the stomach of the thief who had stolen, and afterward eaten it. As Burckhardt needed a few measures of dhourra for his ass, and found it impracticable to purchase less than a dollar's worth, which would have been more than he could carry, he was under the necessity of imitating his companions, and went from house to house with some strings of beads in his hands, offering them for sale at about four handfuls of dhourra for each bead. "I gained at this rate," says he, "about sixty per cent. above the prime cost, and had at the same time an opportunity of entering many private houses. I repeated these walks every day during our stay. One afternoon, while crying my beads for sale, I was accosted by a faký, who asked me if I could read. On my answering in the affirmative, he desired me to follow him to a place where, he said, I might expect to get a good dinner. He then led me to a house where I found a great number of people, collected to celebrate the memory of some relative lately deceased. Several fakies were reading the Koran in a low tone of voice. A great faký afterward came in, whose arrival was the signal for reciting the Koran in loud songs, in the manner customary in the East, in which I joined them. This was continued for about half an hour, until dinner was brought in, which was very plentiful, as a cow had been killed upon the occasion. After a hearty meal, we recommenced our reading. One of the shekhs produced a basketful of white pebbles, over which several prayers were read. These pebbles were destined to be strewed over the tomb of the deceased in the manner which I had often observed upon tombs freshly made. Upon my inquiries respecting this custom, which I confessed to have never before seen practiced in any Moham-medan country, the faký answered that it was a mere meritorious action: that there was no absolute necessity for it: but that it was thought that the soul of the deceased, when hereafter visiting the tomb, might be glad to find these pebbles, in order to use them as beads in addressing its prayers to the Creator. When the reading was over, the women began to sing and howl. I then left the room, and on taking my departure my kind host put some bones of roasted meat in my hand to serve for my supper."

In proceeding from this place to Shendy the caravan was accompanied by several fakies, whose presence was found to be a sufficient protection against the Nubian Bedouins. They reached Shendy on the 17th of April, and this being, next to Sennaar and Kobbe, the largest town in eastern Soudan, they remained here a whole month, during which time Burckhardt enjoyed an ample opportunity of collecting materials for an account of this and the neighboring countries. Crocodiles are numerous in this part of the Nile. They are much dreaded by the inhabitants, who, when repairing to its banks for water or to wash their

linen, are in constant fear of these creatures. Burckhardt ate of the crocodile's flesh, which he found of a dirty white color, not unlike young veal, with a slight fishy smell.

At Shendy Burckhardt abandoned all idea of proceeding further south; and, in order to procure himself some little civility from his former companions, circulated the report that he intended to return directly to Egypt, where, by describing to the pasha their conduct toward him during the journey, he might do them considerable injury. This stratagem succeeded. Their civility and affected friendship now surpassed their former insolence. In the mean while, understanding that a caravan was about to set out for Souakin on the Red Sea, our traveler prevailed on the Ababdeh chief to introduce and recommend him as his own friend to its leader. Here he disposed of his merchandise, and purchased a slave-boy to attend upon him on the road; and having laid in the necessary quantity of provisions, joined the Souakin caravan, and departed from Shendy on the 17th of May. "After all my accounts were settled," says he, "I had four dollars left; but the smallness of the sum occasioned me no uneasiness, for I calculated on selling my camel on the coast for as much as would defray the expenses of my voyage to Jidda, and I had a letter of credit on that place for a considerable sum, which I had procured at Cairo."

The road now traversed by the caravan crossed the Atbara, the Atbaras of the ancients, on the banks of which they found numerous groves of trees and the most luxuriant vegetation. At the sight of this the imagination even of the slave-dealers was touched with enthusiasm; and in alluding to the dreary track over which they had traveled, one of them exclaimed, "After death comes paradise!" "There was a greater variety of natural vegetation here than I had seen anywhere on the banks of the Nile, in Egypt. I observed different species of the mimosa, doom-trees of the largest size, whose luxuriant clusters of fruit excited the wishes of the slaves, the nebek-tree, with its fruit ripe; the allobé, of the size of the nebek, besides a great number of others unknown to me; to these may be added an abundance of wild herbage, growing on a rich, fat soil similar to that of Egypt. The trees were inhabited by great numbers of the feathered tribe, whose song travelers in Egypt very rarely hear. I saw no birds with rich plumage, but observed small ones of several different kinds. Some sweet notes struck my ears, which I had never before heard, and the amorous cooings of the turtle-dove were unceasing. We hastened to the river and eagerly descended its low banks to allay our thirst. Several camels, at the sight of the water, broke the halters by which they were led, and in rushing or stumbling down the banks threw off their loads, and occasioned great clamor and disorder."

In the vicinity of Goz Rajeb, on the Atbara, Burckhardt saw on the summit of a hill the ruins of a huge fabric of ancient times, but was deterred from visiting it by the assertion of his companions that it was the

Burckhardt ate of the  
or, not unlike young

proceeding further  
vility from his former  
to return directly to  
conduct toward him  
injury. This strata-  
delip now surpassed  
standing that a caravan  
ur traveler prevailed  
him as his own friend  
ise, and purchased a  
ing laid in the neces-  
aravan, and departed  
counts were settled,"  
of the sum occasioned  
camel on the coast for  
e to Jidda, and I had  
um, which I had pro-

l the Atbara, the As-  
they found numerous  
on. At the sight of  
touched with enthu-  
which they had traveled,  
lise!" "There was a  
had seen anywhere on  
fferent species of the  
riant clusters of fruit  
with its fruit ripe; the  
number of others un-  
ance of wild herbage,  
t. The trees were in-  
whose song travelers  
rich plumage, but ob-  
e sweet notes struck  
amorous cooings of  
the river and eagerly  
al camels, at the sight  
re led, and in rushing  
and occasioned great

Burckhardt saw on the  
ent times, but was de-  
anions that it was the

haunt of banditti. On the 5th of June, while the caravan halted at an encampment of the Hadendoa Bedouins, Burckhardt beheld the effects of a desert storm: "Toward evening we were visited by another hurricane, the most tremendous I ever remember to have witnessed. A dark blue cloud first appeared, extending to about 25° above the horizon; as it approached nearer and increased in height, it assumed an ash-gray color, with a tinge of yellow, striking every person in the caravan who had not been accustomed to such phenomena with amazement at its magnificent and terrific appearance; as the cloud approached still nearer the yellow tinge became more general, while the horizon presented the brightest azure. At last it burst upon us in its rapid course, and involved us in darkness and confusion; nothing could be distinguished at the distance of five or six feet; our eyes were filled with dust; our temporary sheds were blown down at the first gust, and many of the more firmly fixed tents of the Hadendoa followed; the largest withstood for a time the effects of the blast, but were at last obliged to yield, and the whole camp was leveled with the ground. In the mean time the terrified camels arose, broke the cords by which they were fastened, and endeavored to escape from the destruction which appeared to threaten them; thus adding not a little to our embarrassment. After blowing about half an hour with incessant violence, the wind suddenly abated, and when the atmosphere became clear, the tremendous cloud was seen continuing its havoc to the north-west."

Next day they reached Takka, a district famous for its fertility, where hares, gazelles, wolves, giraffes, and lions, as large, it was said, as cows, were found in the woods. Hence, after a stay of several days, they departed for Souakin, and after a not unpleasant journey through a wild, picturesque country, approached the termination of their toils. On the morning of the last day they started before sunrise. "The eastern hills," says Burckhardt, "terminate in this latitude; and the sun was just rising beyond them when we descried its reflection at an immense distance in the sea, affording a pleasing sight to every individual in the caravan, but most of all to me." The whole of the route, from Shendy to Souakin, had never before been traversed by a European. At length, on the 26th of June, they reached Souakin, and pitched their little sheds at about twenty minutes' walk from the town. Next day they were visited by the emir, who, understanding that our traveler's camel was an excellent animal, determined on taking it as a part of the caravan dues; upon which Burckhardt insisted upon referring their difference to the Turkish custom-house officer. His wishes were quickly complied with, but the aga, instead of interfering to protect the stranger, immediately conceived the idea of uniting with the emir in seizing upon the whole of his property; and, therefore, pretending to regard him as a Mameluke spy, began at once to overwhelm him with abuse. To all this Burckhardt returned no reply, but requested the aga to inform him whether the emir was entitled to his camel. "Not only thy camel," re-



plied the Turk, "but thy whole baggage must be taken and searched. We shall render a good account of them to the pasha, depend upon it. You shall not impose upon us, you rascal; and you may be thankful if we do not cut off your head!" The traveler protested that he was nothing but an unfortunate merchant, and endeavored, by a submissive deportment, to pacify his anger; but "he began cursing and swearing in Turkish," says Burckhardt, "and then calling an old cripple, to whom he had given the title of waly, or police officer, he ordered him to tie my hands, to put me in prison, and to bring my slave and baggage into his presence. I now thought it high time to produce my firmans, which I drew from a secret pocket in my thaboot; one of them was written in Turkish, upon a piece of paper two feet and a half in length, and one foot in breadth, and was sealed with the great seal of Mohammed Ali; the other, a smaller one, was written in Arabic, and bore the seal of Ibrahim Pasha, his son, in which Ibrahim termed me 'Our man, Ibrahim, the Syrian.' When Yemak saw the firmans unfolded, he became completely stupefied, and the persons present looked at me with amazement. The aga could read the Arabic only, but he kissed them both, put them to his forehead, and then protested to me, in the most submissive terms, that it was the good of the public service alone that had led him to treat me as he had done, and for which he begged me a thousand pardons. Nothing more was said about the emir's right to my camel, and he declared that I should pay no duty for my slave, though he was entitled to it."

Burckhardt now disposed of his camel, and took his passage to Jidda in one of the country vessels. After tossing about the Red Sea for nearly a fortnight, visiting Mekouar, and several points of the African coast, he arrived at Jidda on the 18th of July, 1814. His first care now was to present his letter of credit, which, being of an old date, he was refused payment, though the merchant offered him a lodging at his house. This he accepted, but removed two days afterward to a public khan, where he was attacked by a fever, in which he lay delirious for several days. His recovery from this violent disorder, which he attributed to his indulging in the fine fruits of the Jidda market, seems to have been chiefly owing to the kindness of a Greek captain, who, having been his fellow-passenger from Souakin, attended him during one of his lucid intervals, and, at his own request, procured a barber, who bled him copiously.

#### JOURNEY TO MECCA AND MEDINA.

At Jidda Burckhardt was reduced to the hard necessity of parting with his slave, for whom he obtained forty-eight dollars, of which thirty-two were profit. With this money he dressed himself in the guise of a reduced Egyptian gentleman, and determined to remain in the Hedjaz until the time of the pilgrimage in the following November. However,

taken and searched. Pasha, depend upon it. You may be thankful if I told that he was nothing but a submissive desecrating and swearing in a cripple, to whom he ordered him to tie my hands and baggage into his my firmans, which I told them was written in a length, and one of Mohammed Ali; and bore the seal of 'Our man, Ibrahim, ded, he became come me with amazement. them both, put them most submissive terms, had led him to treat a thousand pardons. my camel, and he de- ough he was entitled

his passage to Jidda out the Red Sea for points of the African 4. His first care now f an old date, he was him a lodging at his afterward to a public a he lay delirious for er, which he attributed market, seems to have tain, who, having been during one of his lucid arber, who bled him

and necessity of parting ollars, of which thirty- self in the guise of a remain in the Hedjas November. However,

as his funds were far too low to enable him to live independently until that period, he began to turn his thoughts toward manual labor; but first determined upon trying the effect of a direct application to Mohammed Ali, then at Tayf. He accordingly wrote to his highness's Armenian physician, who was likewise at Tayf with his master, requesting him to learn from the pasha whether he would accept a bill upon Burckhardt's correspondent at Cairo, and order his treasurer at Jidda to pay the amount of it. Before the result of this application could be known, he received an invitation to the house of Toosoon Pasha's physician, who, on being acquainted with the state of his finances, kindly offered him the sum of three thousand piasters (about \$150) for a bill upon Cairo payable at sight. Mohammed Ali, to whom his condition was accidentally made known, immediately dispatched a messenger with two dromedaries, an order for five hundred piasters, and a request that he would repair immediately with the messenger to Tayf. With this invitation, which was, in fact, equivalent to a command, he thought it necessary to comply, and accordingly set off on the same afternoon (24th August) for the interior of the Hedjaz.

They were accompanied during the first portion of the way by about twenty camel-drivers of the tribe of Harb, who were carrying money to Mecca for the pasha's treasury. The road at first lay over a barren sandy plain, ascending slightly as it receded from the sea; it then entered the narrow gorges of a mountainous country, where they overtook a caravan of pilgrims, who were accompanying a quantity of goods and provisions destined for the army. The pasha, who, no doubt, suspected the sincerity of Burckhardt's creed, had given orders to the guide to conduct him by a by-road to Tayf, which lay to the north of Mecca: "Just before we left Hadda," says Burckhardt, "my guide, who knew nothing further respecting me than that I had business with the pasha at Tayf, that I performed all the outward observances of a Moslem pilgrim, and that I had been liberal to him before our departure, asked me the reason of his having been ordered to take me by the northern road. I replied that it was probably thought shorter than the other. 'That is a mistake,' he replied; 'the Mecca road is quite as short, and much safer; and if you have no objection we will proceed by it.' This was just what I wished, though I had taken care not to betray any anxiety on the subject; and we accordingly followed the great road, in company with the other travelers."

On this occasion, however, Burckhardt saw but little of the sacred city, as the guide, who had no curiosity to gratify, hurried through the streets without allowing him time for observation. Continuing their journey, therefore, toward the east, they arrived, on the 27th of August, at Ras el Kora, where they passed the night. "This," says the traveler, "is the most beautiful spot in the Hedjaz, and more picturesque and delightful than any spot I had seen since my departure from Lebanon, in Syria. The top of Jebel Kora is flat, but large masses of granite lie scat-

tered over it, the surface of which, like that of the granite rocks near the second cataract of the Nile, is blackened by the sun. Several small rivulets descend from this peak, and irrigate the plain, which is covered with verdant fields and large shady trees, on the side of the granite rocks. To those who have only known the dreary and scorching sands of the lower country of the Hedjaz, this scene is as surprising as the keen air which blows here is refreshing. Many of the fruit-trees of Europe are found here; figs, apricots, peaches, apples, the Egyptian sycamore, almonds, pomegranates; but particularly vines, the produce of which is of the best quality. After having passed through this delightful district for about half an hour, just as the sun was rising, when every leaf and blade of grass was covered with a balmy dew, and every tree and shrub diffused a fragrance as delicious to the smell as was the landscape to the eye, I halted near the largest of the rivulets, which, although not more than two paces across, nourishes upon its banks a green alpine turf, such as the mighty Nile, with all its luxuriance, can never produce in Egypt."

Upon reaching Tayf, he caused his arrival to be made known to the pasha, who, upon learning his desire to visit the Holy Cities, expressed a wish to see him late in the evening at his public residence, and observed to the Kadi of Mecca, who happened to be present, "It is not the beard alone which proves a man to be a true Moslem; but you are a better judge in such matters than I am." Our traveler, on learning these particulars, affected to be much hurt by the pasha's suspicions, and let the physician, who was the bearer of the message, know that he should not go to the pasha's public audience unless he was received as a Turk. When the physician delivered this message, Mohammed Ali smiled, and said that he was welcome, whether Turk or not. On this occasion he was closely catechized by two experienced teachers of the Moslem faith, who declared to the pasha that he was not only a true Mussulman, but one of great learning and piety. The audience passed off well. But Burckhardt clearly discovered that he was regarded as a spy of the English government; that his conduct was narrowly watched; and that, in being made the guest of the physician, he was a kind of prisoner, whose words and actions were reported to the pasha. This was by no means an agreeable position. He therefore determined to be delivered from it; and, in order to effect his purpose, adopted the most prudent plan that could have been imagined: he rendered himself so troublesome and expensive to his host, that the latter, in order to be freed from him, represented him in the most favorable light to Mohammed Ali, and contrived to obtain him permission to spend the last days of the Ramadan at Mecca.

Accordingly, on the 7th of September, Burckhardt departed in company with the Kadi for the Holy City. On passing Wady Mohram, he assumed the *ihram*, the dress worn by all pilgrims during the Hadji, and consisting of two pieces of linen, woolen, or cotton cloth, one of which is wrapped round the loins, while the other is thrown over the neck and

nite rocks near the  
Several small rivu-  
ich is covered with  
the granite rocks.  
ching sands of the  
ing as the keen air  
rees of Europe are  
ptian sycamore, al-  
duce of which is of  
s delightful district  
hen every leaf and  
very tree and shrub  
the landscape to the  
although not more  
green alpine turf,  
n never produce in

made known to the  
y Cities, expressed a  
dence, and observed  
"It is not the beard  
but you are a better  
n learning these par-  
spicions, and let the  
w that he should not  
received as a Turk.  
amed Ali smiled, and  
On this occasion he  
of the Moslem faith,  
true Mussulman, but  
passed off well. But  
d as a spy of the En-  
watched; and that, in  
nd of prisoner, whose  
his was by no means  
be delivered from it;  
ost prudent plan that  
troublesome and ex-  
reed from him, repre-  
ed Ali, and contrived  
e Ramadan at Mecca.  
ardt departed in com-  
g Wady Mohram, he  
during the Hadji, and  
cloth, one of which is  
n over the neck and

shoulders, so as to leave part of the right arm bare. In this dress he arrived at Mecca, on the 9th of September; and, as the law enjoins, proceeded immediately to visit the temple, before he had attended to any worldly concern whatever. The ceremonies practiced on this occasion are long and tedious. Having completed these performances, he hired a ready-furnished lodging in the house of a metowwaf, or guide to the holy places; who, while the poor Hadji was occupied with his devotions, employed his spare moments industriously in stealing whatever he could from his traveling-sack.

Being desirous of completing his traveling equipments before the commencement of the Hadj (pilgrimage), Burekhardt proceeded to Jidda, where such things are more easily procured than at Mecca, and again returned about the middle of October, with a slave-boy whom he purchased. He hired apartments in an unfrequented part of the city, where he enjoyed the advantage of several large trees growing before his windows, "the verdure of which," says he, "among the barren and sunburnt rocks of Mecca, was to me more exhilarating than the finest landscape could have been under different circumstances." The principal curiosity of Mecca is the *beit ullah*, or House of God, a species of quadrangle, in the center of which stands the Kaaba, "an oblong massive structure, eighteen paces in length, fourteen in breadth, and from thirty-five to forty feet in height. It is constructed of the gray Mecca stone, in large blocks of different sizes, joined together in a very rough manner, and with bad cement." "At the north-east corner of the Kaaba, near the door, is the famous 'Black Stone;' it forms a part of the sharp angle of the building at four or five feet above the ground. It is an irregular oval of about seven inches in diameter, with an undulating surface, composed of about a dozen smaller stones of different sizes and shapes, well joined together with a small quantity of cement, and perfectly smoothed. It looks as if the whole had been broken into many pieces by a violent blow, and then united again. It is very difficult to determine accurately the quality of this stone, which has been worn to its present surface by the millions of touches and kisses it has received. It appeared to me like a lava, containing several small extraneous particles, of a whitish and of a yellowish substance. Its color is now a deep reddish brown, approaching to black. It is surrounded on all sides by a border, composed of a substance which I took to be a close cement of pitch and gravel, of a similar, but not quite the same, brownish color. This border serves to support its detached pieces. It is two or three inches in breadth, and rises a little above the surface of the stone. Both the border and the stone itself are encircled by a silver band, broader below than above, and on the two sides, with a considerable swelling below, as if a part of the stone were hidden under it. The lower part of the border is studded with silver nails."

On the 21st of November, 1814, the approach of the Syrian caravan was announced by a messenger, whose horse dropped down dead the

moment he dismounted. Several other persons followed in about two hours after; and during the night the main body, with the Pasha of Damascus at its head, came up, and encamped in the plain of Shekh Mahmoud. Next morning the Egyptian caravan likewise arrived; and at the same time Mohammed Ali, who desired to be present at the Hadj, appeared unexpectedly at Mecca, dressed in an ihram composed of two magnificent shawls of Cashmere. All the hadjis residing in the city now assumed the ihram, with the usual ceremonies, at their own lodgings, preparatory to their setting out for Mount Arafat, and at noon heard a short sermon in the mosque.

The city was now full of movement and activity; all the pilgrims were preparing to set out for Arafat, some running hither and thither in search of lodgings, others visiting the markets or the Kaaba. Many Meccans, engaged in petty traffic, were hastening to establish themselves on the mountain, for the accommodation of the pilgrims. Camel-drivers led their beasts through the streets, offering them to the pilgrims for hire. On the 24th of November the Syrian caravan, with the Mahmal, or sacred camel, in front, passed in procession through the city. The majority of the pilgrims rode in a species of palanquin, placed upon their camels; but the Pasha of Damascus, and other grandees, were mounted in splendid litters, which were borne by two camels. The heads of these picturesque animals were decorated with feathers, tassels, and bells. Crowds of people of all classes lined the streets, and greeted the pilgrims as they passed with loud acclamations and praise. The martial music of the pasha, twelve finely-caparisoned horses led in front of his palanquin, and the rich litters in which his women rode, particularly attracted attention. The Egyptian caravan followed soon after, and, consisting entirely of military pilgrims in the splendid Turkish costume, was no less admired than its predecessor. Both continued, without stopping, their march to Arafat, and were almost immediately followed by the other pilgrims in the city, and by far the greater proportion of the population of Mecca and Jidda, among whom Burckhardt likewise proceeded to the sacred hill.

He reached the camp about three hours after sunset. The pilgrims were still wandering about the plain, and among the tents, in search of their companions, or of their resting-place, and many did not arrive until midnight. Numberless fires glimmered upon the dark plain to the extent of several miles; and high and brilliant clusters of lamps marked the different places of encampment of Mohammed Ali, Soleyman Pasha, and the Emir el Hadj of the Egyptian caravan. Few slept: "the devotees set up praying, and their loud chants were particularly distinguished on the side of the Syrian encampment. The merry Meccans formed themselves into parties, singing jovial songs, accompanied by clapping of hands; and the coffee-houses scattered over the plain were crowded all night with customers. The night was dark and cold. I had formed a resting-place for myself by means of a large carpet tied

lowed in about two  
y, with the Pasha of  
the plain of Shekh  
kewise arrived; and  
present at the Hadj,  
am composed of two  
iding in the city now  
their own lodgings,  
and at noon heard a

ity; all the pilgrims  
hither and thither in  
the Kaaba. Many  
g to establish them-  
the pilgrims. Camel-  
them to the pilgrims  
avan, with the Mah-  
n through the city.  
lanquin, placed upon  
ther grandees, were  
y two camels. The  
with feathers, tassels,  
streets, and greeted  
ns and praise. The  
l horses led in front  
omen rode, particu-  
followed soon after,  
splendid Turkish cos-  
oth continued, with-  
ost immediately fol-  
e greater proportion  
Burckhardt likewise

met. The pilgrims  
p tents, in search of  
did not arrive until  
ark plain to the ex-  
rs of lamps marked  
li, Soleyman Pasha,  
ew slept: "the de-  
particularly distin-  
The merry Meccans  
ga, accompanied by  
ver the plain were  
dark and cold. I  
a large carpet tied

to the back of a Meccan's tent; and having walked about for the greater part of the night, I had just disposed myself to sleep, when two guns, fired by the Syrian and Egyptian Hadj, announced the approaching dawn of the day of pilgrimage, and summoned the faithful to prepare for their morning prayers."

The scene which, on the unfolding of the dawn, presented itself to the eye of the traveler, was one of the most extraordinary upon earth. "Every pilgrim issued from his tent to walk over the plains, and take a view of the busy crowds assembled there. Long streets of tents, fitted up as bazaars, furnished all kinds of provisions. The Syrian and Egyptian cavalry were exercised by their chiefs early in the morning, while thousands of camels were seen feeding upon the dry shrubs of the plain all round the camp." Burckhardt now ascended the summit of Arafat, whence he could enjoy a distant view of the whole, the mountain being an isolated mass of granite, reaching to the height of two hundred feet above the level of the plain. From this point he counted about three thousand tents, but the far greater number were, like himself, without tents. Twenty or twenty-five thousand camels were dispersed, in separate groups, over the plain; and the number of pilgrims of both sexes, and of all classes, could not amount to less than seventy thousand. "The Syrian Hadj was encamped on the south and south-west side of the mountain; the Egyptian on the south-east. Around the house of the Sherif, Yahya himself was encamped with his Bedouin troops, and in its neighborhood were all the Hedjaz people. Mohammed Ali, and Soleyman, Pasha of Damascus, as well as several of their officers, had very handsome tents; but the most magnificent of all was that of the wife of Mohammed Ali, the mother of Toosoon Pasha and Ibrahim Pasha, who had lately arrived at Cairo for the Hadj, with a truly royal equipage, five hundred camels being necessary to transport her baggage from Jidda to Mecca. Her tent was in fact an encampment, consisting of a dozen tents of different sizes, inhabited by her women; the whole inclosed by a wall of linen cloth, eight hundred paces in circuit, the single entrance to which was guarded by eunuchs in splendid dresses. Around this inclosure were pitched the tents of the men who formed her numerous suite. The beautiful embroidery on the exterior of this linen palace, with the various colors displayed in every part of it, constituted an object which reminded me of some descriptions in the Arabian Tales of the Thousand and One Nights."

Among the prodigious crowd were persons from every corner of the Mohammedan world. Burckhardt counted forty different languages, and did not doubt that there were many more. About three o'clock in the afternoon, the pilgrims, quitting their tents, which were immediately struck, and mounting their camels, pressed forward toward Mount Arafat, and covered its sides from top to bottom. The preacher now took his stand upon the platform on the mountain, and began to address the multitude. The hearing of the sermon, which lasts till sunset, constitutes



the holy ceremony of the Hadj, and without being present at it, and at least appearing to hear, no pilgrim is entitled to the name of hadji. "The two pashas, with their whole cavalry drawn up in two squadrons behind them, took their post in the rear of the deep line of camels of the hadjis, to which those of the people of the Hedjaz were also joined: and here they waited in solemn and respectful silence the conclusion of the sermon. Further removed from the preacher was the Sherif Yahya, with his small body of soldiers, distinguished by several green standards carried before him. The two Mahmals, or holy camels, which carry on their backs the high structure that serves as the banner of their respective caravans, made way with difficulty through the ranks of camels that encircled the southern and eastern sides of the hill, opposite to the preacher, and took their station, surrounded by their guards, directly under the platform in front of him. The preacher, or khatyb, who is usually the Kadi of Mecca, was mounted upon a finely-caparisoned camel, which had been led up the steps; it being traditionally said that Mohammed was always seated when he addressed his followers, a practice in which he was imitated by all the caliphs who came to the Hadj, and who from hence addressed their subjects in person. The Turkish gentleman of Constantinople, however, unused to camel-riding, could not keep his seat so well as the hardy Bedouin prophet; and the camel becoming unruly, he was soon obliged to alight from it. He read his sermon from a book in Arabic, which he held in his hands. At intervals of every four or five minutes he paused, and stretched forth his arms to implore blessings from above; while the assembled multitudes around and before him waved the skirts of their ihrams over their heads, and rent the air with shouts of *Lebeyk, Allah, huma Lebeyk*!—"Here we are at thy bidding, O God!" During the wavings of the ihrama, the sides of the mountain, thickly crowded as it was by the people in their white garments, had the appearance of a cataract of water; while the green umbrellas, with which several thousand hajjis, sitting on their camels below, were provided, bore some resemblance to a verdant plain."

Burckhardt was present at all the remaining ceremonies of the Hadj, and after observing whatever was worthy of examination both at Mecca and Jidda, he joined a small caravan of pilgrims who were going to visit the tomb of the prophet, and set out for Medina on the 15th of January, 1815. During this journey he imprudently advanced before the caravan, and was attacked by five Bedouins, from whom he was quickly delivered, however, by the approach of his companions. They reached Medina on the 28th of January. The ceremonies practiced in this city were much less tedious than those at Mecca, and did not occupy him more than a quarter of an hour. Here, shortly after his arrival, he was attacked by an intermittent fever, accompanied by extraordinary despondency. His condition, indeed, was well calculated to inspire gloomy thoughts; for he had no society, and but one book, which was, however, as he observes,

present at it, and at name of hadjt. "The two squadrons behind camels of the hadjts, also joined: and here conclusion of the sermon. Yahya, with his small standards carried before him on their backs the respective caravans, and the standards that encircled the preacher, and took under the platform in the Kadi of Mecca, had been led up the hill was always seated and he was imitated by him hence addressed in of Constantinople, kept his seat so well coming unruly, he was sermon from a book in of every four or five implore blessings from and before him waved out the air with shouts thy bidding, O God!" the mountain, thickly ments, had the appearances, with which several were provided, bore

ceremonies of the Hadj, ination both at Mecca who were going to visit the 15th of January, ed before the caravan, was quickly delivered, they reached Medina on in this city were much occupy him more than a l, he was attacked by ery despondency. His gloomy thoughts; for wever, as he observes,

worth a whole shelf full of others. This was a pocket edition of Milton, which he had borrowed from an English ship at Jidda.

Medina, it is well known, is chiefly indebted to the tomb of Mohammed for its celebrity. This mausoleum, which stands on the south-eastern corner of the principal mosque, is protected from the too near approach of visitors by an iron railing, painted green, about two thirds the height of the pillars of the colonnade which runs round the interior of the mosque. "The railing is of good workmanship, in imitation of filigree, and is interwoven with open-worked inscriptions of yellow bronze, supposed by the vulgar to be of gold, and of so close a texture, that no view can be obtained of the interior except by several small windows about six inches square, which are placed in the four sides of the railing, about five feet above the ground." On the south side, where are the two principal windows, before which the devout stand when praying, the railing is plated with silver, and the common inscription—"There is no God but God, the Evident Truth"—is wrought in silver letters round the windows. The tomb itself, as well as that of Abu Bekr and Omar, which stand close to it, is concealed from the public gaze by a curtain of rich silk brocade of various colors, interwoven with silver flowers and arabesques, with inscriptions in characters of gold running across the midst of it, like that of the covering of the Kaaba. Behind this curtain, which, according to the historian of the city, was formerly changed every six years, and is now renewed by the Porte whenever the old one is decayed, or when a new sultan ascends the throne, none but the chief eunuchs, the attendants of the mosque, are permitted to enter. This holy sanctuary once served, as the temple of Delphi did among the Greeks, as the public treasury of the nation. Here the money, jewels, and other precious articles of the people of the Hedjaz were kept in chests, or suspended on silken ropes. Among these was a copy of the Koran in Kufic characters; a brilliant star set in diamonds and pearls, which was suspended directly over the prophet's tomb; with all sorts of vessels set with jewels, earrings, bracelets, necklaces, and other ornaments, sent as presents from all parts of the empire. Most of these articles were carried away by the Wahabees when they sacked and plundered the sacred cities.

On the 21st of April, 1815, Burckhardt quitted Medina with a small caravan bound for Yembo, on the sea-coast. His mind was still exceedingly depressed by the weak state of his body; and his gayety and animal spirits, which had supported him through so many arduous scenes, appear to have deserted him at last. Upon his arrival at Yembo, dejected and melancholy, to add to his despondency, he found the plague raging in the city. The air, night and day, was filled with the piercing cries of those who had been bereaved of the objects of their affection; yet, as no vessel was ready to sail for Egypt, he was constrained to remain during eighteen days in the midst of the dying and the dead, continually exposed to infection through the heedlessness and the impru-

dence of his slave. At length, however, he procured a passage in an open boat bound for Coaseir, many of the passengers in which were sick of a disease which appeared to be the plague, though only two of them died. After remaining twenty days on board, he was, at his own request, put on shore in the harbor of Sherin, at the entrance of the Gulf of Akaba, where he agreed with some Bedouins to transport him and his slave to Tor and Suez. Learning on the way, however, that the plague was at Suez, he remained at a village in the vicinity of the former place, where the enjoyment of tranquillity and a bracing mountain air soon restored his strength, and enabled him, though still enfeebled, to pursue his journey to Cairo, where he arrived on the 24th of June, after an absence of nearly two years and a half. As his health was not yet completely recovered, he undertook a journey into Lower Egypt during the following winter, which, as he seems to have believed, restored his constitution to its former tone.

His time was now entirely occupied in writing the journal of his Nubian and Arabian travels, and in the necessary care of his health, which, notwithstanding his sanguine expectation to the contrary, was still in a somewhat equivocal state. In the spring of 1816, the plague again broke out at Cairo, and Burckhardt, to avoid the infection, undertook a journey to Mount Sinai, intending to remain among the Bedouins until the pestilence should be over. During this excursion he traced the course of the eastern branch of the Red Sea to within sight of Akaba, which he was prevented by circumstances from visiting. On his return to Cairo, he united with Mr. Salt in furnishing Belzoni with money for transporting the head of Memnon from Goorneh to Alexandria. The scheme, it would seem, originated with Burckhardt and Salt, to whom, therefore, the British Museum is chiefly indebted for the possession of that remarkable specimen of ancient art.

On the 4th of October, 1817, Burckhardt, who had so long waited in vain for an opportunity of penetrating with a Moggrebin caravan to Timbuctoo, by way of Fezzan, was attacked with violent dysentery. The best medical advice which an eminent English physician (Doctor Richardson), then at Cairo, could afford was found unavailing. The disease prevailed, and on the 15th of the same month the able, adventurous, and lamented traveler breathed his last at the early age of thirty-three years. As he had lived while in the East as a Mussulman, the Turks, he foresaw, would claim his body, "and perhaps," said he to Mr. Salt, who was present at his death-bed, "you had better let them."—"The funeral, as he desired," says this gentleman, "was Mohammedan, conducted with all proper regard to the respectable rank which he had held in the eyes of the natives." This was honorable to his Cairo friends; and to those who are interested in the history of his manly career it is gratifying to discover how highly he was valued. His remains, unmarked by any memorial, lie somewhere in the Moslem burying-ground on the eastern side of Cairo, where another traveler of equal

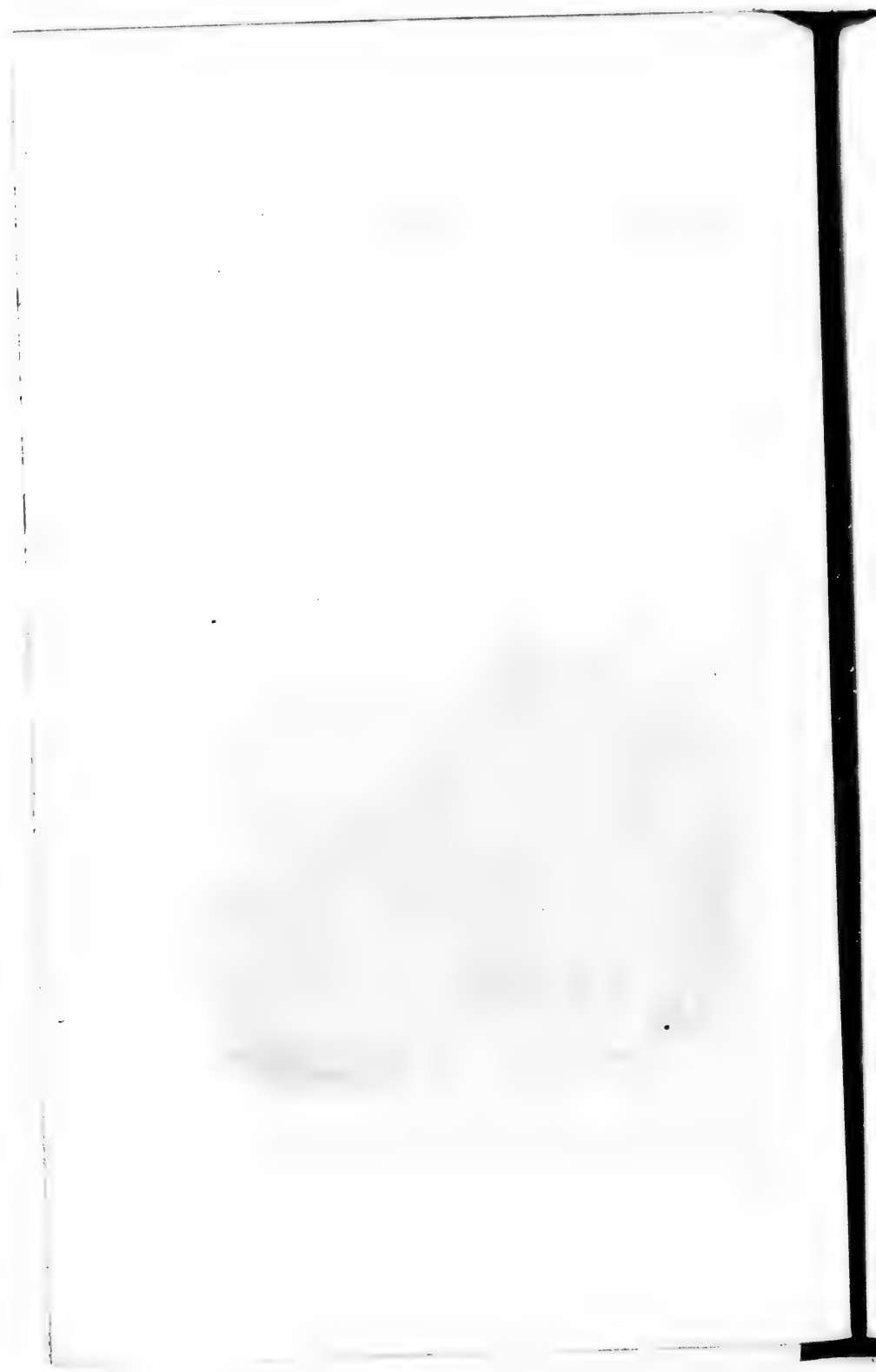
secured a passage in an  
ers in which were sick  
ugh only two of them  
was, at his own re-  
entrance of the Gulf  
transport him and his  
ever, that the plague  
y of the former place,  
mountain air soon re-  
enfeebled, to pursue  
of June, after an ab-  
alth was not yet com-  
wer Egypt during the  
ved, restored his con-

ing the journal of his  
ry care of his health,  
to the contrary, was  
g of 1816, the plague  
d the infection, under-  
n among the Bedouins  
excursion he traced  
ea to within sight of  
ies from visiting. On  
rushing Belzoni with  
om Goorneh to Alex-  
with Burekhardt and  
chiefly indebted for the  
art.

o had so long waited  
Moggrebin caravan to  
th violent dysentery.  
lish physician (Doctor  
und unavailing. The  
month the able, adven-  
the early age of thirty-  
t as a Mussulman, the  
rhaps," said he to Mr.  
d better let them."—  
"was Mohammedan,  
ble rank which he had  
onorable to his Cairo  
history of his manly  
e was valued. His re-  
s in the Moslem bury-  
other traveler of equal

courage, enthusiasm, and energy—John Ledyard—was buried more than twenty years before him. Since Burekhardt's death, others have walked in his steps, and many of the places which he visited with so much difficulty and peril, are now accessible to all travelers, but no one has surpassed him in prudence and intrepidity, no one has lived a life of such romantic interest, or productive of more rich results.





## BELZONI'S

### EXPLORATIONS IN EGYPT.

---

THIS enterprising traveler and explorer, descended from a respectable Roman family, was born at Padua, whither his relations had many years previously removed. Being designed by his parents for some monastic order, he was at a very early age sent to Rome, the original abode of his ancestors, where he received his education, and spent the greater part of his youth. Here the sciences would appear to have obtained a decided preference in his mind, over every other branch of study; particularly hydraulics, to which he owed much of the reputation which he afterward acquired in the world. The invasion of Italy, and the capture of Rome by the French, disturbed the peaceful but insignificant plan of life which he had traced out for himself. Instead of a monk he became a traveler. Departing from Rome in the year 1800, he for some time wandered about the Continent, deriving his subsistence, as he himself observes, from his own knowledge and industry, and occasional remittances from his family, who, though by no means wealthy, seem to have been generously disposed to afford him a support, which he, in a short time, no less generously refused to accept.

In the year 1803 he arrived in England, where he not long afterward married. In that country he supported himself by performing in public feats of prodigious strength, and by scientific exhibitions; still, with a manly independence, preferring the gaining of a precarious subsistence by these means to the idea of draining the slender resources of his family, or of resorting to those more easy but less reputable sources of gain which too frequently employ the talents of foreigners in England. Having remained nine years in Great Britain, Belzoni conceived the desire of visiting the south of Europe; and, taking his wife along with him, traveled through Portugal, Spain, and Malta. It seems to have been during this part of his travels that he learned, from what he considered unexceptionable authority, that his scientific knowledge might be turned to good account in Egypt, where an hydraulic machine would



be of the greatest utility in irrigating the fields, which need water only to make them produce at any season of the year.

He accordingly took his passage on board of a ship bound for Egypt, and arrived in the harbor of Alexandria on the 9th of June, 1815. The plague, he learned, was then prevailing in the city, but gradually decreasing in malignity. St. John's day, the 24th of June, was likewise at hand, on which it usually ceases entirely, through the interference, as the vulgar believe, of the saint, but in reality from the intense heat of the sun, which has by that time exhaled the miasmata which are the immediate cause of the plague. Belzoni, who was accompanied by his wife and a young Irish lad, named Curtain, landed, notwithstanding the disease; and having remained secluded in the caravanserai, until after the 24th, set off for Cairo. On reaching that city, where he meant to make an offer of his services to the pasha, to whose principal interpreter he brought letters of recommendation, he obtained lodgings in an old house of vast size and ruinous condition. Though antiquities, as he observes, were not at that time his object, he could not refrain from visiting the Pyramids. He accordingly accompanied an English gentleman to the spot, where they passed the night, and long before dawn had ascended the summit of the highest pile, to behold the sun rise over the land of Egypt.

"The scene here," says he, "is majestic and grand, far beyond description: a mist over the plains of Egypt formed a veil, which ascended and vanished gradually as the sun rose, and un veiled to the view that beautiful land, once the site of Memphis. The distant view of the smaller pyramids on the south marked the extension of that vast capital, while the solemn endless spectacle of the desert on the west inspired us with reverence for the all-powerful Creator. The fertile lands on the north, with the serpentine course of the Nile, descending toward the sea; the rich appearance of Cairo and its minarets, at the foot of the Mokattam mountain, on the east; the beautiful plain which extends from the Pyramids to that city; the Nile, which flows magnificently through the center of the Sacred Valley; and the thick groves of palm-trees under our eyes, altogether formed a scene of which a very imperfect idea can be given by the most elaborate description."

A few days after his return to Cairo he was to have been presented to the pasha, but on the way to the citadel was attacked and wounded by a Turkish soldier in such a manner that he was compelled to defer his presentation for thirty days. Mohammed Ali had not at that time properly established his power; for, when informed of the injury which had been inflicted on his guest, he only observed that such accidents were not to be prevented in cities filled with troops. This point was very soon made still clearer. In a few days the soldiers burst out into open rebellion, pillaged the inhabitants, committed every description of atrocity, and pursued his highness himself into his castle, where they for some time held him besieged. When this storm had blown over,

Belzoni, whose hydraulic project was highly approved of by the pasha, commenced the construction of his machine in the gardens of the latter, at Shoobra, three miles from Cairo. As Mohammed Ali was not bigotedly attached to oriental fashions, he freely permitted Belzoni to be witness of his amusements, which he was sometimes even called upon to multiply. During his stay at Shoobra, business frequently required his presence at Cairo, where, on one occasion, he narrowly escaped being shot by a Turkish soldier. The ruffian having struck him in the street, he returned the blow; upon which the Turk drew his pistol, fired at him, singed his hair, and killed one of his own comrades who happened to be standing behind the traveler. The man was next day apprehended by the pasha, and never more heard of. When the hydraulic machine was completed, its power was made trial of in the presence of Mohammed Ali, who, perceiving that as an innovation it was regarded with extraordinary dislike by the Turkish and Arabic cultivators, abandoned the project altogether, without even remunerating the traveler for the loss of time and money which he had incurred.

Notwithstanding these circumstances, Belzoni found, upon calculation, that his finances would still enable him to ascend the Nile as far as Assouan; and was about to proceed up the country when Burckhardt and Mr. Salt, who had previously discussed the point together, determined upon the removal of the colossal head of young Memnon to England, for the purpose of being presented to the British Museum; and requested Belzoni, as one of the fittest persons that could be found, to undertake the task. The expenses Burckhardt and Mr. Salt were to defray between them. A report was, it seems, circulated even during the lifetime of Belzoni, and previous to the publication of his travels, that in this affair he was merely the paid agent of Mr. Salt (for, as a professed Mohammedan, Burckhardt did not choose to appear). This, however, was clearly not the case. In a letter addressed to the African Association, dated Cairo, February 20th, 1817, Burckhardt says, "You will be pleased to hear that the colossal head from Thebes has at last, after many difficulties, safely arrived at Alexandria. Mr. Belzoni, who offered himself to undertake this commission, has executed it with great spirit, intelligence, and perseverance. The head is waiting now at Alexandria for a proper conveyance to Malta. Mr. Salt and myself have borne the expenses jointly; and the trouble of the undertaking has devolved upon Mr. Belzoni, whose name I wish to be mentioned, if ever ours shall, on this occasion, because he was actuated by public spirit fully as much as ourselves."

Few things are more interesting in themselves, or less captivating in description, than a search after antiquities. Belzoni, after visiting Hermonthis and Dendera, arrived at Thebes, which, from the time of Strabo to the present moment, has excited the wonder and admiration of every traveler who has beheld it. "It is absolutely impossible," says Belzoni, "to imagine the scene displayed, without seeing it. The most sublime

ideas that can be formed from the most magnificent specimens of our present architecture would give a very incorrect picture of these ruins; for such is the difference, not only in magnitude, but in form, proportion, and construction, that even the pencil can convey but a faint idea of the whole. It appeared to me like entering a city of giants, who, after a long conflict, were all destroyed, leaving the ruins of their various temples as the only proof of their existence."

After a brief examination of these mighty ruins, he crossed to the western bank of the Nile, where, amid the vast remains of the Memnonium, was the colossal head which he was to remove. He found it, he says, near the remains of its body and chair, with its face upward, and apparently smiling on him at the thought of being taken to England. The implements which he had brought from Cairo were sufficiently simple: fourteen poles, eight of which were employed in making a sort of car to lay the bust on, four ropes of palm-leaves, and four rollers, without tackle of any sort. Their boat lying too far to be used as a lodging every night, they established themselves in the Memnonium, where, as the traveler remarks, they were handsomely lodged in a small hut formed of stones. Mrs. Belzoni seems, in fact, to have been as enterprising and romantic as her husband, and made no difficulty about the rudeness of their accommodation. It is not necessary to give a detailed account of his laborious exertions, or those of the Arabs in conveying the head to the Nile. It will be sufficient to state, that after incredible toil and perseverance, it was at length brought to the edge of the stream on the 12th of August, 1816.

This object being effected, he made an excursion to the sepulchral excavations in the mountain of Goorneh, celebrated for the quantity of mummies which they contain. Into this vast labyrinth he entered with two Arabs and his interpreter. They were in search of a sarcophagus which was said to have been discovered by Drovetti, the French Consul at Alexandria; but, in roaming about amid the dreary passages, lost their way, which, without extraordinary good fortune, might have been the first step to losing their lives. In laboring to find a passage out, they came to a small aperture, through which the interpreter and one of the Arabs passed easily, but Belzoni, who was a very large man, found it too small. "One of the Arabs, however, succeeded, as did my interpreter; and it was then agreed," says he, "that I and the other Arab should wait till their return. They proceeded evidently to a great distance, for the light disappeared, and only a murmuring sound from their voices could be distinguished as they went on. After a few moments I heard a loud noise, and the interpreter distinctly crying, 'O mon Dieu! O mon Dieu! je suis perdu!' after which a profound silence ensued. I asked my Arab whether he had ever been in that place. He replied, 'Never.' I could not conceive what could have happened, and thought the best plan was to return to procure help from the other Arabs. Accordingly, I told my man to show me the way out again; but, staring

at me like an idiot, he said he did not know the road. I called repeatedly to the interpreter, but received no answer. I watched a long time, but no one returned, and my situation was no very pleasant one."

At length, however, by dint of laborious perseverance, they issued into the upper air; and as the sarcophagus, which they had discovered, could not at that moment be removed, Belzoni conceived the design of making a small excursion into Nubia. Accordingly, he proceeded up the river to Assouan, where, after much altercation, he procured a fresh boat to carry him to the second cataract. He admired, in passing, the beautiful island of Philæ, rich in the ruins of antiquity. On the next day several natives, armed with spears and shields of crocodile skins, came in boats to attack them on the river; but observing them, Mrs. Belzoni and all, to be armed with pistols, very prudently retired. At Derr, the capital of Lower Nubia, he purchased, with a small looking-glass, permission to continue his voyage. Previous to this, many of the people of the country had never enjoyed the gratification of contemplating the reflection of their own countenances. On arriving at Abou-Simbel, he saw, with amazement, the great rock-temple noticed by Burckhardt. He immediately conceived the design of clearing away the sand which obstructed the entrance into the temple, and made the proposal to the villagers, promising, in order to excite them to the task, a present in money; but soon found that he had at length arrived in a region where money had ceased to be omnipotent. The people stared at his piasters as they would have stared at a letter in an unknown language, and inquired who would give them any thing for such small bits of metal as those? However, he by degrees succeeded in convincing them that money possessed over civilized men, and all who came within their influence, a mysterious power which they could not resist. This seemed at first to produce a good effect; but the love of money once excited, they knew not where to stop; and their avarice, which he had reckoned his best ally, soon exhausted his means, so that before he had half-completed his undertaking he was compelled to desist, and continue his voyage up the Nile to the second cataract.

Having gratified his curiosity with a glance at these celebrated spots, Belzoni returned to Assouan, and from thence proceeded to Thebes, where he immediately put in train the measures necessary for conveying down the river the Memnon's head, and various other antiquities. The obstacles which were thrown in his way by the obstinacy of the natives, and the intrigues of Drovetti, and other collectors of antiquities, were numerous, and highly disgraceful to their originators. Nevertheless, on the 17th of November, 1816, he succeeded in placing the head on board of a boat, in which he set sail on the 21st for Cairo, where he arrived on the 15th of December, after a voyage of twenty-four days.

From Cairo, Belzoni proceeded with the bust down the Nile to Rosetta and Alexandria; from whence, after having placed his charge in

the pasha's warehouses, he quickly returned, for the purpose of proceeding on a second voyage up the Nile. It was on this occasion that he had the good fortune to become known to Mr. Briggs, with whom he returned to Cairo. Captain Caviglia had at this period commenced his researches in the interior of the first pyramid of Ghizeh, but was about to discontinue them for lack of means, when Mr. Briggs munificently engaged to furnish funds for the purpose, in which he was seconded by Mr. Salt. It was proposed by this latter gentleman that Belzoni should join Captain Caviglia in his researches; but the traveler, with commendable ambition, preferred some undertaking in which all the credit should redound to himself; and, having left his wife at the house of a friend at Cairo, he once more ascended the Nile, accompanied by Mr. Beechey, to whom he had been introduced at Alexandria.

At Eraramoun, Belzoni obtained intelligence that two agents of M. Drovetti were hurrying on toward Thebes, in the hope of forestalling him in the purchase of antiquities; upon which he hired two asses, and, leaving Mr. Beechey to come up slowly with the boat, hurried off by night. On reaching the ruins, after an incredibly fatiguing journey of five days, he found that, although the agents were not arrived, Mr. Salt's neglect, in not paying the way with a handsome present, had so completely irritated the bey, that he had appropriated to M. Drovetti the very ground upon which Belzoni had commenced his excavations during his first journey. Into the details of these quarrels, which continued to rage during Belzoni's residence in Egypt, it is not necessary to enter.

The most interesting transaction, perhaps, in which Belzoni was anywhere engaged, was his visit to the Necropolis of Thebes, in the mountain of Goorneh. This is a tract of about two miles in length, at the foot of the Libyan ridge. Every part of those rocks is scooped out into a sepulcher, which, however close it may be to other sepulchral chambers, has rarely any interior communication with them. It is impossible, as Belzoni observes, to convey by description an adequate idea of these subterraneous abodes and their inhabitants. No other sepulchers in the world resemble them. There are no excavations or mines that can be compared with those astonishing places, which, when once seen, forever after haunt the imagination, like a glimpse of the regions beyond the grave. Few travelers see more of these catacombs than the exterior chambers, from which the dead have been removed. In the interior sepulchers the air is suffocating, and frequently causes fainting. The dust of decayed mummies, which is so fine that it quickly penetrates in vast quantities to the lungs, and causes a difficulty of respiration; the strong effluvia of decomposed bodies; the dark, dismal, lonesome aspect of the place;—every thing tends to discourage the intruder. Belzoni was not, however, to be deterred. In describing the difficulties which he here encountered, he observes, "In some places there is not more than the vacancy of a foot left, which you must contrive to pass through in a creeping posture, like a snail, on pointed and keen stones that cut

purpose of proceeding on the occasion that he had with whom he recommenced his research, but was about to be munificently engaged was seconded by that Belzoni should rather, with commendation, all the credit should be ascribed to the house of a friend attended by Mr. Beechey,

At two agents of Mr. Salt's, he was of forestalling him to the asses, and, leaving off by night. On the day of five days, he was neglected, in completely irritated the very ground upon his first journey. to rage during Belzoni's.

which Belzoni was anywhere, in the mountains in length, at the rocks is scooped out into a sepulchral chamber. It is impossible, to get an idea of these other sepulchers in the mines that can be seen once seen, forever in regions beyond the mountains than the exterior. In the interior causes fainting. The air quickly penetrates in the way of respiration; the dismal, lonesome aspect of the intruder. Belzoni the difficulties which there is not more to strive to pass through the keen stones that cut

like glass. After getting through these passages, some of them two or three hundred yards long, you generally find a more commodious place, perhaps high enough to sit. But what a place of rest! surrounded by bodies, by heaps of mummies, in all directions, which, previous to my being accustomed to the sight, impressed me with horror. The blackness of the wall; the faint light given by the candles or torches for want of air; the different objects that were around me seeming to converse with each other; and the Arabs with the candles or torches in their hands, naked and covered with dust, themselves resembling living mummies—absolutely formed a scene that can not be described. In such a situation I found myself several times, and often returned exhausted and fainting, till at last I became inured to it, and indifferent to what I suffered except from the dust, which never failed to choke my throat and nose; and though fortunately I am destitute of the sense of smelling, I could taste that the mummies were rather unpleasant to swallow. After the exertion of entering into such a place, through a passage of fifty, a hundred, three hundred, or perhaps six hundred yards, nearly overcome, I sought a resting-place, found one, and contrived to sit; but when my weight bore on the body of an Egyptian, it crushed it like a bandbox. I naturally had recourse to my hands to sustain my weight, but they found no better support; so that I sank altogether among the broken mummies, with a crash of bones, rags, and wooden cases, which raised such a dust as kept me motionless for a quarter of an hour, waiting till it subsided again. I could not move from the place, however, without increasing it, and every step I took crushed a mummy in some part or other. Once I was conducted from such a place to another resembling it, through a passage of about twenty feet in length, and no wider than that the body could be forced through. It was choked with mummies, and I could not pass without putting my face in contact with that of some decayed Egyptian; but as the passage inclined downward, my own weight helped me on. However, I could not help being covered with bones, legs, arms and heads, rolling from above. Thus I proceeded from one cave to another, all full of mummies, piled up in various ways, some standing, some lying, and some on their heads. The purpose of my researches was to rob the Egyptians of their papyri, of which I found a few hidden in their breasts, under their arms, and in the space above the knees, or on the legs, and covered by the numerous folds of cloth that envelop the mummy."

Belzoni continued indefatigably making new researches both at Goorneh and Karnak, but was at length put to flight by the machinations of the French, who had succeeded in gaining over to their party the bey of the province. He then resolved once more to ascend the Nile to Abou-Simbel, and was fortunate enough to meet with two English travelers, Captains Irby and Mangles, who were desirous of performing the same voyage. They hired a boat between them at Philæ, and setting out together in high spirits, visited the second cataract, and



then returned to Abou-Simbel. Here the wrong-headedness and quarrelsome disposition of the Nubians considerably obstructed their labors in clearing away the entrance to the temple. But at length, having dismissed the native laborers, and undertaken the task themselves, they succeeded, and enjoyed the satisfaction of beholding one of the most perfect and beautiful rock-temples in the world.\*

\* "About two hours after midnight, I was awakened from a deep sleep by the shock of the boat striking the shore. I opened my eyes and saw, as I lay, without moving my head, a huge wall of rock before me, against which six enormous statues leaned as they looked from deep niches cut in its front. Their solemn faces were touched by the moon, which shone full on the cliff, and only their feet were wrapped in shadow. The lines of deep-cut hieroglyphics over the portal of this rocky temple were also filled with shadow and painted legibly on the gray, moonlit rock. Below them yawned the door—a square of complete darkness. A little to the left, over a long drift of sand that sloped from the summit of the cliff nearly to the water's edge, peered the mitered head of a statue of still more colossal proportions. I gazed on this broad, dim, and wonderful picture for a moment, so awed by its majesty that I did not ask myself where or what it was. This is some grand Egyptian dream, was my first thought, and I closed my eyes for a few seconds, to see whether it would vanish. But it stood fast and silent as ever, and I knew it to be Abou-Simbel. My servants all slept, and the rais and boys noiselessly moored the boat to the shore, and then lay down and slept also. Still I lay, and the great statues looked solemnly down upon me, and the moon painted their kingly nomens and banners with yet darker distinctness on the gray rock. The river made no sound below, the long grass stirred not a blade at the foot of the crags, and the slopes of sand were white and dumb as snow. I lay in too deep a repose for thought, and was not then conscious how grateful was such a silence in Nature, while the moon held up that picture before me. It might have been two minutes or twenty, before the current slowly swung the stern of the boat around, and the picture as slowly shifted from my view, leaving instead the Southern Cross in its shrine of stars.

"The front of the great temple is not parallel to that of the other, nor does it face the river, which here flows in a north-east course. The line of the cliff is broken between the two, so that the figures of the great Remeses, seated on each side of the door, look to the east, the direction of the line of the face being nearly north. Through the gap in front, the sands have poured down from the Desert behind, almost wholly filling up the space between the two cliffs; and though since the temple was first opened, by Belzoni, in 1817, it has been cleared nearly to the base more than once, the rapid accumulation of sand has again almost closed the entrance. The southern colossus is only buried about half way to the knee, but of the two northern ones there is little else to be seen except the heads. Obscured as is the effect of this grand front, it is still without parallel in the world. I had not thought it possible that in statues of such enormous magnitude there could be such singular beauty of expression. The face of Remeses, the same in each, is undoubtedly a portrait, as it resembles the faces of the statues in the interior, and those of the King in other places. Besides, there is an individuality in some of the features which is too marked to represent any general type of the Egyptian head. The fullness of the drooping eyelid, which yet does not cover the large, oblong Egyptian eye; the nose, at first slightly inclining to the aquiline, but curving to the round, broad nostrils; the generous breadth of the calm lips, and the placid, serene expression of the face, are worthy of the conqueror of Africa and the builder of Karnak and Medeenet Abou.

"The great doorway of the temple is so choked up with sand that I was obliged to creep in on my knees. The sun by this time had risen exactly to the only point where it can illumine the interior, and the rays, taking a more yellow hue from the rock and sand on which they fell, shone down the long drift between the double row of colossal statues,

Having completed this laborious operation, Belzoni returned to his old station at Thebes, where he continued his researches in the valley of the Tombs of the Kings. Here, among other remarkable antiquities, he discovered one relic of the ancient world, which certainly appears to rank among the most beautiful that have ever been exhumed. "It is," says he, "a sarcophagus of the finest oriental alabaster, nine feet five inches long, and three feet seven inches wide. Its thickness is only two inches, and it is transparent when a light is placed inside it. It is minutely sculptured within and without with several hundred figures which do not exceed two inches in height, and represent, as I suppose, the whole of the funeral procession and ceremonies relating to the deceased, united with several emblems, etc. I can not give an adequate

and lighted up the entrance to the second hall of the temple. I sat down in the sand, awed and half-frightened by the singular appearance of the place. The sunshine, falling obliquely on the sands, struck a dim reflection against the sculptured roof, and even lighted up the furthest recesses of the grand hall sufficiently to show its imposing dimensions. Eight square pillars—four on either side of the central aisle—seem to uphold the roof, and on their inner sides, facing each other, are eight statues of the king. The features of all are preserved, and have something of the grace and serenity, though not the majesty of the great statues outside. They look into each other's eyes, with an eternal question on their fixed countenances, but none can give answer. There was something so stern and strange in these eight faces, that I felt a shudder of fear creep over me. The strong arms are all crossed on their breasts, and the hand hold various sacred and regal symbols, conspicuous among which is something resembling a flail, which one sees often in Egyptian sculpture. I thought of a marvelous story I once read, in which a genie, armed with a brazen flail, stands at the entrance of an enchanted castle, crushing with the stroke of his terrible weapon all who come to seek the treasure within. For a moment the childish faith in the supernatural was as strong as ever, and I looked at the gloomy entrance beyond, wishing to enter, but fearing the stony flails of the terrible Remesi on either hand. The faces were once partially colored, and the black eyeball, still remaining on the blank eye of stone, gives them an expression of stupor, of death-in-life, which accounted to me for the nervous shock I experienced on entering.

"There is nothing in Egypt which can be likened to the great temple of Abou-Simbel. Karnak is grander, but its grandeur is human. This belongs rather to the superhuman fancies of the East—the halls of the Afrites—or to the realm of the dethroned Titans, of early Greek mythology. This impression is not diminished, on passing the second hall and corridor, and entering the adytum, or sacred chamber of the temple. There the granite altar yet stands in the center, before the undestroyed figures of the gods, who, seated side by side, calmly await the offerings of their worshipers. The peculiar individuality of each deity is strikingly shown in these large statues, and their attitude is much less constrained than in the sitting statues in the tombs of Thebes. These look as if they could rise, if they would. The walls are covered with sculptures of them and of the contemplative deities, in the grand, bold style of the age of Remeses. Some visitors had left a supply of dry palm branches near the entrance, and of these I made torches, which blazed and crackled fiercely, flaring with a rich red light on the sculptured and painted walls. There was sufficient to enable me to examine all the smaller chambers, of which there are eight or nine, cut laterally into the rock, without any attempt at symmetry of form, or regularity of arrangement. Several of them have seats running around three sides, exactly like the divans in modern Egyptian houses. They were probably designed for the apartments of priests or servants connected with the temple."—BAYARD TAYLOR'S *Journey to Central Africa*.

idea of this beautiful and invaluable piece of antiquity, and can only say, that nothing has been brought into Europe from Egypt that can be compared to it. The cover was not there; it had been taken out and broken into several pieces."

Of the tomb in which this extraordinary monument was found a model was many years afterward exhibited in London, and so exceedingly well executed was the representation, that had it not been for the crowds of visitors, one might easily have imagined one's self in the sepulcher of the Egyptian kings. The original tomb at Thebes, which was first opened by Belzoni, bears his name to this day. It had been entered and plundered, probably during the Roman occupation, but again closed in so careful a manner, that it had remained undiscovered for nearly two thousand years. Belzoni wanted but one thing to render him one of the greatest antiquarian collectors in the world: this one thing was money. From the lack of this, many of his most arduous and well-planned enterprises came to nothing.

From Thebes, with which he was now as familiar as he was with London, he some time after this proceeded to Cairo. He had by this time acquired quite a passion for excavations, tomb-opening, and all those other pursuits by which travelers aim at diving into the mysteries of Egyptian manners and arts; and reflecting upon the success of Captain Caviglia in descending into the well of the Great Pyramid, the project of attempting the opening of the second occurred to him. There is not space to describe the difficulties which he encountered and overcame in the execution of this design. His labors were incessant; his expenses considerable; but, at length, after success had frequently appeared hopeless, the entrance to the interior chambers was found. "After thirty days' exertion," says he, "I had the pleasure of finding myself in the way to the central chamber of one of the two great pyramids of Egypt, which have long been the admiration of beholders!"

This object having been happily effected, Belzoni again set out for Thebes. There he was made acquainted with the history of a pretended discovery, which became a motive for a journey to the coast of the Red Sea. The history of this expedition is given in a very few words by a writer in the Quarterly Review. "A French mineralogist, of the name of Cailliaud, had accompanied some Arab soldiers sent by the pasha of Egypt in search of emeralds among the mountains between the Nile and the Red Sea. On their return, Cailliaud gave out that in this expedition he had discovered the ancient city of the Ptolemies, the celebrated Bernicé, the great emporium of Europe and the Indies, of which he gave a magnificent description. Mr. Belzoni, doubtful of the accuracy of the story, set out from Edfoo, with one of the former party, to visit the supposed Bernicé; where, instead of the ruins of eight hundred houses and three temples, as stated by M. Cailliaud, he could find no more than eighty seven scattered houses, or rather cells; the greater number of which did not exceed *ten feet square*, built with unhewn stones, and

y, and can only say,  
pt that can be com-  
een taken out and

ument was found a  
lon, and so exceed-  
it not been for the  
one's self in the sep-  
b at Thebes, which  
day. It had been  
nan occupation, but  
ained undiscovered  
t one thing to ren-  
the world: this one  
of his most arduous

iliar as he was with  
ro. He had by this  
pening, and all those  
into the mysteries of  
he success of Captain  
Pyramid, the project  
to him. There is not  
red and overcame in  
cessant; his expenses  
iently appeared hope-  
ound. "After thirty  
inding myself in the  
t pyramids of Egypt,  
"

oni again set out for  
istory of a pretended  
the coast of the Red  
very few words by a  
neralogist, of the name  
s sent by the pasha of  
between the Nile and  
that in this expedition  
s, the celebrated Ber-  
es, of which he gave a  
f the accuracy of the  
er party, to visit the  
eight hundred houses  
uld find no more than  
e greater number of  
n unhewn stones, and

without cement; and the only appearance of a temple was a niche in a rock, without inscription or sculpture of any kind; there was no land for cultivation, nor any water within twenty-four miles; no communication with the sea but by a rough road over the mountains, of twenty-four miles; and the shore was so covered with projecting rocks for twenty or thirty miles on each side, that there was no security even for the smallest boats, much less for ships trading to India. These, therefore, he was quite certain, could not be the remains of Bernicé.

As, however, the site of this celebrated city had been fully described by the ancient writers, Mr. Belzoni determined to prosecute his researches; and at the end of twenty days he discovered, close to the shore, the extensive ruins of an ancient city near the Cape Lepte Extrema, the Ras el Anf (Cape Nose) of the present day; the projection of which forms an ample bay (now named Foul Bay), having at the bottom an excellent harbor for vessels of small burden. These ruins, which are beyond dispute those of the celebrated emporium founded by Ptolemy Philadelphus, were four days' journey from the rude cells of the quarrymen or miners, which Mr. Cailliaud is stated to have so strangely mistaken for the magnificent vestiges of the ancient Bernicé. Several wells of bitter water were found among the ruins; and between them and the mountains was an extensive plain fit for cultivation. The remains of more than three thousand houses were counted, about the center of which were those of a temple with sculptured figures and hieroglyphics."

Having made this discovery, he again returned to the valley of the Nile, where he was for some time occupied in the removal of various antiquities. He then descended to the sea-coast, and on the 20th of April, 1819, set out from Rosetta, on an excursion to the district of Fayoum, and the Oasis of Jupiter Ammon. After roaming about the shores of Lake Mœris for some time, for he had no leisure for making researches, he visited the ruins of Arconde, consisting of a few granite columns, and fragments, and mounds of burned bricks. He then prepared to cross the desert to the Oasis, which was an affair of some difficulty. Nevertheless, he at length succeeded in completing his preparations, and commenced his journey, accompanied by a Bedouin guide, and three or four other persons. Even here, in the desert, ruins of Egyptian edifices, beautifully sculptured with hieroglyphics, were found. The scene at first lay among low rocks, sandy hills, and barren valleys, which were gradually exchanged for a plain of sand, as level as the sea, and thickly strewed with brown and black pebbles. They continued during five days their journey over this dreary waste, at the end of which time they perceived the rocks of the Oasis, and beheld two crows coming, as it were, to meet them. In the afternoon they entered the valley, which is surrounded by high rocks, and forms in the midst a spacious plain, about twelve or fourteen miles long, and about six in breadth. "There is only a very small portion of the valley cultivated

on the opposite side to that which we reached, and it can only be distinguished by the woods of palm-trees which cover it. The rest of the valley is wholly covered with tracts of sand, but it is evident it has once been cultivated everywhere. Many tracts of land are of a clayey substance, which could be brought into use even now. There are several small hills scattered about, some with a natural spring at the top, and covered with rushes and small plants. We advanced toward a forest of date-trees, and before evening we reached within a mile of a village named Zaboo, all of us exceedingly thirsty: here we observed some cultivation, several beds of rice and some sunt-trees, etc. Before the camels arrived, they scented the water at a distance; and as they had not drank since they left Rejan, they set off at full gallop, and did not stop till they reached a rivulet, which was quite sweet, although the soil was almost impregnated with salt. I observed here a great many wild birds, particularly wild ducks, in greater abundance than any other."

The first man who perceived them after their entrance into the valley evinced a disposition to shoot Belzoni; but, upon the explanation of the Bedouin guide, consented to conduct them to the village. "We advanced," says the traveler, "and entered a lane; and as we penetrated further, we entered a most beautiful place, full of dates, intermixed with other trees, some in blossom and others in fruit; there were apricots, figs, almonds, plums, and some grapes. The apricots were in greater abundance than the rest, and the figs were very fine. The soil was covered with verdure of grass and rice, and the whole formed a most pleasing recess, particularly after the barren scenes of the desert."

His reception at this village was equivocal: there being several shekhs, each of whom made pretensions to authority. Some were disposed to treat him kindly, while others, more morose, kept at a distance; but a few cups of coffee, judiciously distributed, and followed by a sheep boiled in rice, reconciled the whole; although they next morning, when they were again hungry, relapsed into their former rude manners. Like all other ignorant people, they supposed that he must necessarily be in search of treasure, and for some time refused to conduct him to the ruins of which he was in search; but upon being assured that whatever treasures might be discovered should fall to their share, while all he stipulated for were a few stones, they consented to accompany him. The ruins, which he supposed to be those of the temple of Jupiter Ammon, now served, he found, as a basement for nearly a whole village, in the vicinity of which he discovered, as he thought, the famous "Fountain of the Sun," which is warm at midnight and cold at noon.\* This is a well of sixty feet deep by eight square, which, over-

\* In both these suppositions, Belzoni was mistaken. The Oasis which he visited was not that of Jupiter Ammon, now known under the name of Siwah, but was in reality the *Oasis Parva*, or Little Oasis, called by the Arabs the *Wah El-Bahrreh* (Northern Oasis). The Temple of Jupiter Ammon, and the Fountain of the Sun, are to be found in the Oasis Siwah, which is seven or eight days journey north-west of the latter.

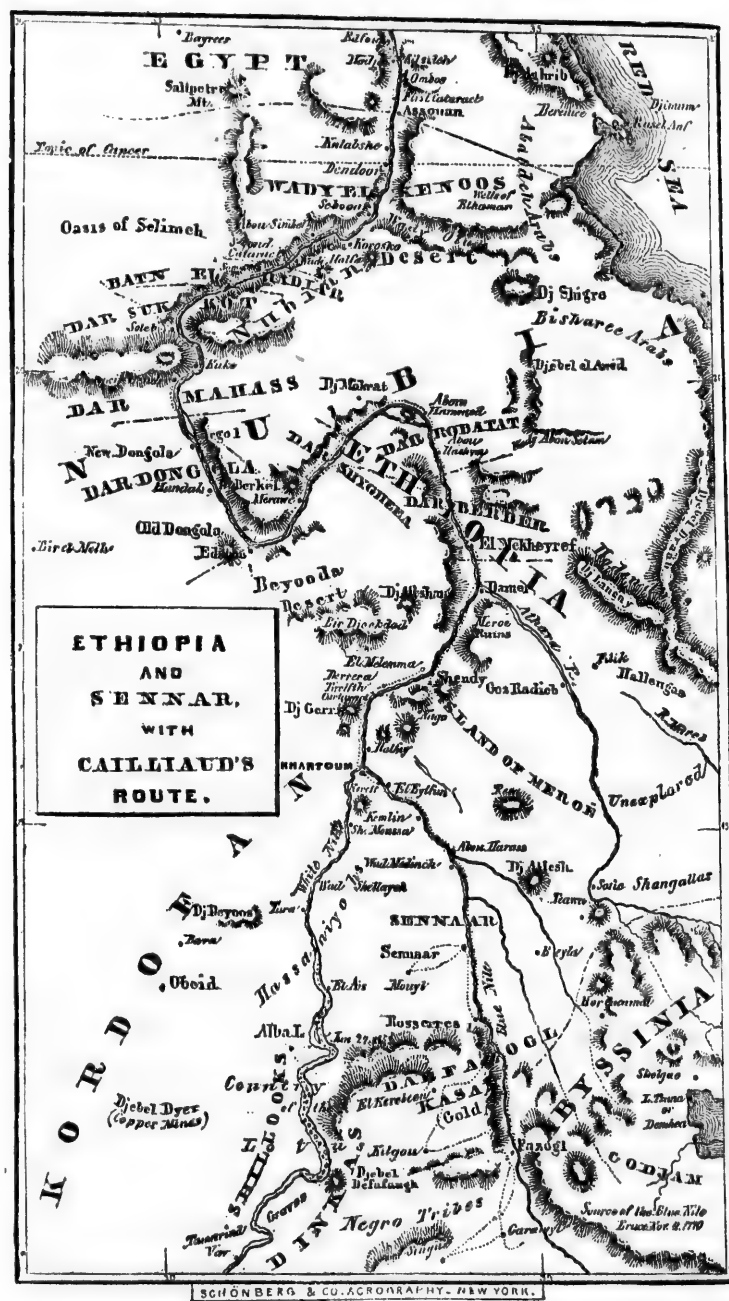
ONI.

it can only be dis-  
it. The rest of the  
evident it has once  
are of a clayey sub-  
. There are several  
ring at the top, and  
enced toward a forest  
n a mile of a village  
we observed some  
ees, etc. Before the  
ace; and as they had  
l gallop, and did not  
ect, although the soil  
re a great many wild  
e than any other."  
entrance into the val-  
on the explanation of  
to the village. "We  
and as we penetrated  
dates, intermixed with  
; there were apricots,  
icots were in greater  
y fine. The soil was  
whole formed a most  
es of the desert."  
there being several  
ority. Some were dis-  
morose, kept at a dis-  
uted, and followed by a  
gh they next morning,  
r former rude manners.  
at he must necessarily  
sed to conduct him to  
on being assured that  
fall to their share, while  
onsented to accompany  
those of the temple of  
basement for nearly a  
ered, as he thought, the  
at midnight and cold at  
ght square, which, over-  
he Oasis which he visited was  
e of Siwah, but was in reality  
Wah *El-Bahryeh* (Northern  
of the Sun, are to be found  
orth-west of the latter.

flowing in a considerable rivulet, serves to irrigate some cultivated lands. All around it is a grove of palm and other trees. The temperature of the water, however, continues at all times the same; all its apparent changes being accounted for by the greater or less degree of heat in the atmosphere.

From this excursion Belzoni returned to Egypt, from whence he embarked for Europe about the middle of September, 1819. After an absence of twenty years he visited his family in Italy, whence he departed for England, where he completed and published his travels. A few years afterward this enterprising and able traveler fell in an attempt to penetrate into the interior of Africa.







## CAILLIAUD'S

### JOURNEY TO THE LIBYAN OASES, ETHIOPIA, AND SENNAAR.

FREDERIC CAILLIAUD, the first modern traveler who made a complete exploration of the ruins of Ethiopia, was a native of Nantes. His taste for archaeology and for the natural sciences led him to travel, and on visiting Egypt he found so much to interest and fascinate him, that he remained four years. Early in 1816 he ascended the Nile as far as Wady Halfa, at the second cataract, following in the steps of Burckhardt, and preceding Belzoni by a few months. He also visited the Great Oasis in the Libyan Desert, west of Thebes, and crossed from the Nile to the Red Sea, where he discovered ruins which he supposed to be those of Berenicé—a mistake afterward corrected by Belzoni.

Returning to France in February, 1819, after an absence of nine years, Cailliaud immediately applied to the French government, to be again dispatched to Egypt for the purpose of making more extensive explorations. His application was warmly seconded by the French Institute, and in two months he received the appointment, and his instructions from the Minister of the Interior. After passing a month with his parents at Nantes, he set out for Marseilles, accompanied by M. Letorzec, a cadet of the French navy, who desired to accompany him. Embarking on the 10th of September, he landed at Alexandria on the 1st of October, after a very stormy passage. His plan was, first to penetrate to the Oasis of Siwah, or Jupiter Ammon, in the Libyan Desert, a spot which few travelers had ever reached, and which none had ever thoroughly explored. The failure of a recent attempt did not discourage him: he proceeded to Cairo, and after visiting some new mummy pits which had been opened at Sakkara, made his preparations and set out on the 1st of November, accompanied by Letorzec, and Iamail, a French Mameluke.

Ascending the Nile to Benisouef Cailliaud proceeded to the district

of the Fyoom, lying a day's journey to the west, and was so fortunate as to find the governor, who had just returned from a successful foray among some rebellious desert tribes. The latter sent for an Arab chief named Koroom, and an inhabitant of Siwah, named Youssef, who happened to be in the Fyoom, and requested them to conduct Cailliaud to the Oasis. They made serious objections to the plan, but finally yielded, on condition that the travelers would neither write nor draw, clothe themselves as Egyptians, and assume the character of natives of Cairo. The governor of the Fyoom gave Cailliaud a letter to the chiefs of Siwah, in which he declared that the traveler was sent by Mohammed Ali, and should be treated with the same respect which they owed to the pasha. The camels were brought, and after halting two days at the encampment of Koroom, they commenced their march into the desert. "The two eldest daughters of Shekh Koroom," says Cailliaud, "accompanied us for half a league, wishing us all sorts of benedictions, for the success of our journey. I saw them collect the dust from the places where the feet of the Arabs who accompanied us had left their imprint; this dust they placed in a *takia*, or small Arab cap, which they held in the hand. I was told that this was done to preserve us from accidents; that they were required to collect some dust from the steps of each man and each camel; that, on returning to their tent, they would make a little hole in the top of the cap, and suspend it, in the manner of an hour-glass; and that they would consult it every day to notice the duration of our absence, and calculate the time of our return."

At a village called El Gharak, on the borders of the desert, they were joined by a caravan of inhabitants of the Fyoom, with one hundred camels, bound for Siwah. Some of the native merchants refused to go, through the fear of being compromised by the presence of Cailliaud's party. The travelers were obliged to relinquish the idea of taking meridian altitudes, and could not make the least observation, even by the barometer, except by stealth. They were also exceedingly circumspect in their conversation, taking care to make no remark which might excite the suspicion of the Arabs. In two days they arrived at a mountain called Rayàn el Kasr, at the foot of which, in a little valley, they found a curious well. "The principal spring is a funnel-shaped hole, two feet in diameter at the bottom. Shekh Koroom descended into this hole, and plunged into the center a stout piece of wood, which he moved around in the clay, opening a passage for the water, which instantly began to rise. The shekh then placed his legs in the orifice, and by twisting himself, succeeded in thrusting his body down to the arm-pits. Another man mounted on his shoulders to retain him there, and when the latter quitted his hold the shekh was thrown out of the water by the force of the spring, which is very abundant. The Arabs have the habit of crying aloud during this operation, which appears to them miraculous: they pretend that without doing so, the water would not come."

and was so fortunate  
a successful foray  
for an Arab chief  
Youssef, who hap-  
conduct Cailliaud to  
but finally yielded,  
nor draw, clothe  
of natives of Cairo.  
ter to the chiefs of  
sent by Mohammed  
which they owed to  
ing two days at the  
arch into the desert.  
e Cailliaud, "accom-  
benedictions, for the  
rust from the places  
d left their imprint;  
which they held in  
e us from accidents;  
the steps of each man  
they would make a  
in the manner of an  
y to notice the dura-  
turn."

a of the desert, they  
room, with one hun-  
ve merchants refused  
the presence of Cail-  
ish the idea of taking  
observation, even by  
o exceedingly circum-  
remark which might  
s they arrived at a  
hich, in a little valley,  
ng is a funnel-shaped  
h Koroom descended  
piece of wood, which  
for the water, which  
his legs in the orifice,  
his body down to the  
s to retain him there,  
vas thrown out of the  
bundant. The Arabs  
ion, which appears to  
g so, the water would

The caravan continued its march over plains of sand, alternating with hard tracts covered with agates, and occasionally the remains of petrified forests, among which Cailliaud found the trunk of a sycamore eleven feet in circumference and fifteen feet in length. As they approached Siwah the earth became covered with a crystalization of salt, forming vast incrustated plains. Finally, on the fifteenth day, they saw in the distance a valley fertile in palms and acacias, in the midst of which was a village tributary to Siwah, and distant from it about twenty leagues. The village, called El-Garah, was built on the summit of a steep rock, and appeared to consist partly of the remains of ancient edifices. A curious superstition prevails in this place. A former shekh predicted that the inhabitants of the village—men, women, and children—would never exceed forty. The people declared that the number had sometimes a little exceeded that limit, but that the balance was always speedily restored by the death of the surplus population. When a child is born, they expect a death among the older inhabitants, to make room for it. Cailliaud was not allowed to enter the village on the first day, and on climbing the rock the next morning, the people cried "Christian!"—whence he knew that some of the Arabs of the caravan had betrayed his true character. Youssef of Siwah finally declared that the traveler would instantly write to Mohammed Ali, who was his friend, if they did not admit him, whereupon they allowed him to enter, and presented him with some fine dates.

"On the night of December 8," says Cailliaud, "Shekh Koroom and Youssef came into my tent, and said to me with a very mysterious air, that now was the moment to make use of my sorcery in order to moderate the anger of the people of Siwah. 'I have had several occasions,' said Koroom, 'of knowing how experienced are the Christians in this art. Signor Belzoni, whom I conducted to the Little Oasis, finding himself annoyed by the inhabitants and by a caravan of Siwah which opposed his researches, suddenly began to write mysterious notes; and immediately those who designed to injure him, humiliated themselves before him and kissed his hands, which proved his great power!' I was at first tempted to convince him of his error, but I reflected that in order to encourage him to serve me, I ought, on the contrary, to assure him that I was as skillful as Belzoni, and he might depend on the success of my magical arts." On the evening of the 9th, they discovered in the west the palm-groves of Siwah, and encamped near an old well. Koroom and Youssef set out by night to announce their approach to the shekhs, and Cailliaud was so excited with anxiety and expectation, that he found it impossible to sleep.

"After marching three hours, the next morning, we reached the first grove of date-palms, and the Arabs fired a volley to signalize our approach. Youssef came to me, crying out with joy that we had obtained permission to enter the oasis. We proceeded onward by paths shaded by numerous palm-groves; olive, pomegranate, peach, apricot, and fig-

trees enriched the landscape. The freshness of the verdure is preserved by tanks and abundant springs; brooks flow in all directions. These gardens appeared to us delicious, and the happiness of having been able to penetrate into this district, separated from the world by a hundred leagues of sand, enchanted me. Every step brought me nearer to a spot almost unknown, and perhaps to the long-sought temple of Jupiter Ammon. Youssef presented me to three chiefs, who saluted me after the manner of the country. They made us encamp in a court under the walls of the town, near a place where dates were exposed for sale. The windows of the houses were crowded with women, curious to see us. The people came in crowds around our tent; there was an excitement in all Siwah. In order to disperse the assembly, the shekhs were obliged to prohibit the inhabitants of the place, Youssef excepted, from approaching us, under penalty of a fine of a hundred and sixty baskets of dates. A much more severe fine was imposed on those who addressed insulting remarks to us. This circumstance gave me an opportunity of judging of the power of the shekhs over the people, for the latter retired suddenly, and we remained entirely isolated."

Soon afterward Cailliaud was called before a grand council of the shekhs and people, and asked by what authority he came. He replied that he was sent by Mohammed Ali. They then demanded the firman, which he had not been able to procure, as the Pasha was absent in Nubia; but he had an old firman, given to him for the purpose of visiting Souakin, on the Red Sea, which he presented. The only shekh who could read, understood "Souakin" to mean "Siwah," and ridiculed the secretaries of Cairo, who could not spell the name correctly. The final decision of the council was that the traveler should be permitted to see the antiquities of the oasis, and on the third day he was furnished with a guide. He was first conducted to the Mountain of the Dead, a small hill of limestone, hollowed out with the sepulchers of the ancient inhabitants. Two leagues west of the town he found the remains of a building, apparently of the Lower Empire, another hill of catacombs, and a beautiful little Roman temple, of the Doric order, in a good state of preservation. Near the latter, on the plain, were the remains of houses, broken columns, and heaps of cut stones, indicating a former town or fortress. The Arabs called the place *heled er-Room*, or the Greek town.

Cailliaud now solicited the chiefs to allow him to visit the ruins of Om Beydah, the most important of all, which he conjectured to be those of the temple of Jupiter Ammon. He tried both entreaties and presents, but they refused, giving as a reason that his presence there would cause the great fountain to dry up. They stated that immediately after the visit of Browne and Hornemann to Om Beydah, the fountain became dry. The inhabitants were struck with terror, and attributed the circumstance to the fact of the Christians having gazed upon it. The next day, on ascending the mountain of Drar-Abou-Beryk, Cailliaud

overlooked all the province of Siwah, and, by the aid of a good telescope, saw the ruins of Om Beydah rising above the tufted palms. They appeared to him of gigantic size, and the desire to visit them became stronger than ever. "The sun was on the horizon; my guides had descended. I followed them, but at a distance, feeling myself unable to converse with them. I pondered in my mind what stratagem I could devise in order to visit the temple. I let them all pass on—guides, Arabs, interpreter—and remained in the rear. Reflecting that I was but a quarter of a league from the spot, I determined to make an attempt to reach it. Enveloping myself in my bornous, I approached the palm-grove, but seeing that I was watched by the spies, I felt the impossibility of accomplishing my object, and returned."

During his short stay at the oasis, Cailliaud collected some information regarding the place and people. The principal trade is in dates, which are produced in great numbers, and of excellent quality. The government consists of twelve shekhs, six of whom are elected for life, and the remaining six from year to year. Their deliberations are public, and the people all take part in them. Theft and other minor offenses are punished by a fine of dates; those who are not able to pay, are conducted out of the town, placed upon the ground face downward, and bastinadoed on the naked loins. If a murderer is taken, he is given into the hands of the relatives of his victim, to whom he belongs. According to their caprice they may kill him, torture him, or set him free. The amount received in fines is appropriated to keeping the mosques in repair, to supporting the saints, or holy men, and to assisting strangers who have been pillaged in the desert. As soon as the boys have attained the age of puberty, they are obliged to leave the town and live in a separate village outside of the walls. Each widower is also obliged to leave his house and join the young bachelors; if he marries again, he is allowed to return home. They are permitted to enter the town during the day, to see their relatives and friends, but they must retire before sunset. In spite of their mistrust, obtinacy and superstition, the inhabitants of Siwah are very hospitable. The poor, or strangers, may go to the market of dates and eat to satiety; each one leaves his goods exposed in public with the perfect assurance that no one will touch them.

At last, by means of presents judiciously distributed by the mame-luke Ismail, Shekh Ali was induced to second Cailliaud's application to visit Om Beydah. But the other shekhs and the people still refused, until, on the evening of the 21st, the traveler offered to be conducted to the temple with his eyes bandaged, seeing neither the country nor the great fountain. On the same day news had been received of the approach of a large caravan coming from Bengazi, in Barca—a circumstance which would oblige Shekh Koroom to leave with his camels, as there was not pasturage for all in the oasis. In the evening, Shekh Ali came with the permission to visit Om Beydah, but counseled the traveler to act with prudence, and to depart with Koroom immediately af-

OPIA.

verdure is preserved  
 directions. These  
 of having been able  
 world by a hundred  
 me nearer to a spot  
 ple of Jupiter Am-  
 luted me after the  
 a court under the  
 posed for sale. The  
 curious to see us.  
 was an excitement  
 shekhs were obliged  
 excepted, from ap-  
 ed and sixty baskets  
 those who addressed  
 e an opportunity of  
 le, for the latter re-

grand council of the  
 e came. He replied  
 demanded the firman,  
 ha was absent in Nu-  
 the purpose of visiting  
 The only shekh who  
 h," and ridiculed the  
 correctly. The final  
 d be permitted to see  
 he was furnished with  
 of the Dead, a small  
 s of the ancient inhab-  
 and the remains of a  
 her hill of catacombs,  
 order, in a good state  
 were the remains of  
 s, indicating a former  
 heled *er-Room*, or the

n to visit the ruins of  
 he conjectured to be  
 d both entreaties and  
 that his presence there  
 stated that immediately  
 a Beydah, the fountain  
 terror, and attributed  
 having gazed upon it.  
 -Abou-Beryk, Cailliaud



terward. These were also his intentions, and the next morning, at daylight, accompanied by M. Letorzeac, Ismail, and four of the shekhs of Siwah, mounted on asses, he set out. Threading the woods of date-palms, watered by little brooks, for half an hour, they emerged from the shade at the foot of the temple. "The ruin, although not extensive, appeared to me imposing from its grand masses, constructed in the Egyptian style. The remembrance of the voyage of Alexander caused me to approach it with a sort of religious respect. My attention was directed to the walls of the temple; I looked for some vestiges of the presence of the Macedonian hero; but I found no inscription, no word in his language. All was mute; his name even was unknown to the inhabitants, and buried in profound oblivion."

The temple consisted of a mass of ruins about three hundred and sixty feet in length by three hundred in breadth. The walls were not more than eighteen feet high, and the roof, a portion of which remained, was composed of blocks twenty-six feet long. After having measured and inspected these ruins, Cailliaud began to make a sketch of them. The people of Siwah, who accompanied him, approached in order to discover what he was doing; but as they saw he drew nothing but stones, omitting the fountains and date-trees, they allowed him to proceed. During this operation, Ismail amused them by playing with a fragment of India-rubber; they could not comprehend how so small a body could prolong itself to such an extent, nor how it could efface the writing on paper. The guides now urged the traveler to depart, and on reaching the town, he learned that the caravan from Barca had arrived. Shekh Koroom was very anxious to set out, and the order was accordingly given to load the camels. They left in the afternoon for the Little Oasis, several days' journey to the south, whither the shekh had promised to conduct them; but this intention was kept secret from the rest of the caravan. During the next day's march, they were surprised by the appearance of another caravan, coming toward them. The camels were arranged in order of battle, powder distributed, guns loaded, and every preparation made to repel an attack, but the strangers fortunately proved to be friends. Shekh Koroom, with two Arabs, and Cailliaud and his party here left the caravan, in spite of the remonstrances of the other Arabs, and set out for the Little Oasis. Their route led them through tracks of salt desert, alternating with mountains of naked rock and sand. On the 27th, they came upon a salt lake, the existence of which had been hitherto unknown. The Arabs called it *El-bahreyn* (the Two Lakes); it was nearly two leagues in length from east to west, by half a league in breadth, bordered on the north by a long, rocky mountain, and on the south by a great bank of sand, behind which was a grove of date and doum-palms.

"On the 1st of January, 1820, we started at half-past nine, following the valley toward the East. The grass, the asclepias, the tamarisks, and some little marshes which we passed, announced to us the proximity

of the oasis. In a short time we perceived the date-groves. With what pleasure we discovered this rich verdure, in the midst of the sands of the desert, after having undergone so many fatigues, so much care and privation! The vegetation appeared to me still more beautiful when I thought of the signs of winter then prevailing in Europe. At noon, we arrived at El-Kasr, the largest village of the oasis. On approaching it, we met the shekh, who came to offer us the use of his house, whither we repaired." The travelers were very hospitably entertained. Having expressed a wish to visit the antiquities of the place, they were next day conducted to the ruins of a triumphal arch, of Roman time, small, but of graceful design. Near the village of Mendysh were numerous catacombs, and the remains of an old Coptic village, but Cailliaud failed to discover any thing of special interest. There was also a warm spring, probably the same mistaken by Belzoni for the Fountain of the Sun, as the latter supposed this oasis, which he visited, to be that of Jupiter Ammon.

On the 10th, a small caravan arrived from Minyeh, on the Nile, and Cailliaud took the opportunity to send back with it one of his servants in charge of all his unnecessary baggage, and the minerals, shells, and curiosities which he had collected. His contract with Koroom being at an end, he asked the shekh of the oasis to procure him camels for his further journey, and in the mean time employed himself in making a topographical plan of the oasis. In this he was soon embarrassed by the inhabitants, some of whom declared that he was putting their country upon paper, in order to show it to the pasha, and thereby increase their tribute; while others imagined it to be a work of magic, which would cause their springs to dry up. In spite of the firman of Mohammed Ali, which the shekh read aloud, publicly, the opposition was so great that the travelers were obliged to make their observations secretly, but as they were detained several weeks, waiting for camels, they finally succeeded in making a very correct map.

On the 2d of February, however, a complaint was made before the *cadi*, and the principal inhabitants of the village assembled around Cailliaud's house. The travelers were formally arraigned, and the most profound silence ensued, when an Arab stepped into the circle to denounce them. "I have seen him," said he, pointing to Cailliaud, "stop at a fountain and plunge therein an instrument of glass and of silver. After having withdrawn it, he immediately began to write." These magical proceedings, he said, were made to alarm the inhabitants. There was then a general demand to behold the instrument of sorcery. The thermometer was produced, and Cailliaud endeavored, but in vain, to explain its properties. When he made the column of mercury rise or fall, by applying or withdrawing the ball of his thumb, they looked on with terror, calling the Prophet to their aid. He then showed them a telescope and repeating watch, and exploded some fulminating silver; all of which all the more firmly convinced them of his magical powers. They appointed a man to watch him day and night, but the spy found

TOPIA.

ext morning, at day-  
of the shekhs of Si-  
woods of date-palms,  
ged from the shade  
extensive, appeared  
the Egyptian style.  
d me to approach it  
directed to the walls  
esence of the Mace-  
his language. All  
abitants, and buried

three hundred and  
The walls were not  
n of which remained,  
ter having measured  
e a sketch of them.  
ached in order to dis-  
nothing but stones,  
ved him to proceed.  
ying with a fragment  
so small a body could  
efface the writing on  
part, and on reaching  
had arrived. Shekh  
rder was accordingly  
on for the Little Oasis,  
ekh had promised to  
from the rest of the  
e surprised by the ap-  
m. The camels were  
uns loaded, and every  
strangers fortunately  
Arabs, and Cailliaud  
remonstrances of the  
Their route led them  
untains of naked rock  
lake, the existence of  
led it *El-bahreyn* (the  
from east to west, by  
a long, rocky mount-  
ind which was a grove

Half-past nine, following  
lepias, the tamarisks,  
ed to us the proximity

the sorcerer's table so much better than his own, that he soon became a firm friend. Meanwhile the inhabitants busied themselves in procuring camels, in order that the dangerous visitor might be enabled to leave as soon as possible.

The departure took place on the 10th of February. The inhabitants assembled in a crowd to witness it, and Cailliaud judged it prudent to distribute a few parting gifts among them. The *cadi* gave him a letter of recommendation to the shekhs of the Oasis of Farafreh, which no European had ever visited, and where, consequently, difficulties were to be anticipated. Passing a range of sand-stone mountains, and plains of gravel dotted with isolated peaks, the caravan reached a village called El-Hayz, a dependency of the Little Oasis, after ten hours' march. Near this place are the remains of an ancient Christian church, on the wall of which the travelers noticed a mutilated fresco of St. George and the dragon. After five days' journey over barren deserts, passing many ancient oases which the sands have now completely inundated, they approached Farafreh. "An accident, which might have proved fatal, broke the monotony of our journey. Our camels had been bitten and frightened by a vicious he-camel of the caravan, and my interpreter and myself were thrown upon the bare rock. This fall was terrible; it was impossible for me to rise; my interpreter fell upon his head, and I suffered intense pains in the loins. But we were near Farafreh. The desire of arriving there gave us strength, and at the end of an hour our Arabs assisted us to remount our dromedaries.

"Toward evening we discovered the palms of Farafreh, and arrived there after a march of ten hours. On seeing us, the Arabs flew to arms, and assembled at the gate of their village; most of them mounted on the towers of the Kasr, and all had muskets. These preparations made us fear that they would not receive us. Seeing us advance, they sent two men to parley with us. The greeting of these men was unfriendly; they offered us water and every thing else which we wanted, on condition that we would not approach the village, adding that they had orders to make us continue our route. Our reputation in the Little Oasis had preceded us, and it was known that we were Christians; but I was not in a condition to go further, and my interpreter was scarcely able to speak. I told them I had a firman from the Pasha, which they should see next morning, at the same time ordering the camels to be unloaded, and the tents pitched near the village. They still insisted that we should leave, but I threw myself on my carpet, and listened to no one. When they had been informed of our accident they took pity on us, and allowed us to pass the night tranquilly."

The next day the shekhs of the place came to visit Cailliaud. They paid no attention to the firman of Mohammed Ali, nor to the letter of the shekh of the Little Oasis; but a dish of crows cooked with rice, which was offered to them, secured their good graces—nothing more was said of forcing the travelers to leave, although they were denied en-

trance into the village. Cailliaud, during the two following days, succeeded in making a plan of the oasis, and in taking a sketch of the village by means of a camera obscura. While he was thus employed the natives thronged around, curious to know what he was doing. He directed M. Letorzeo to take a telescope and point it to the sun; the interpreter made the people sit on the ground and observe profound silence. After the magical operation was finished the chiefs were allowed to look through the telescope, and they cried out in astonishment at seeing the sun (through the colored lens) as a ball of purple fire. The people were then allowed to look, and in their gratification, they gave the travelers permission to enter their village. Contrary to Cailliaud's expectation, there were no ruins of importance. The principal building was the Kasr, or Castle, which was about three hundred feet in circuit, and thirty-five feet in height, built of stone and burned bricks. The Oasis of Farafreh is said to have been the first which was conquered by the Moslems from the Christians who formerly inhabited these deserts.

After a stay of four days, Cailliaud set out for the Oasis of Dakhel, which he reached after a journey of three days. On approaching the largest village, called also the Kasr, the principal inhabitants came out to receive him. After he had encamped in a garden of dates and olive-trees, outside of the wall, the shekhs came, bringing a present of dates and dried apricots. When he informed them that he desired to see the antiquities of the oasis, they willingly offered to show them to him. These antiquities, however, are of little importance, consisting of some catacombs, several brick edifices of Roman construction, and a small Egyptian temple which appears to belong to the era of the Ptolemies. Near the town there is a natural warm spring, which the inhabitants have conducted into baths cut in the rock, where they bathe every morning.

Some Arabs, coming from Siout, brought the news that the pasha was preparing an expedition against Dongola, and this news excited in Cailliaud the desire to profit by the occasion, to visit Ethiopia and Meroë. Besides this, his funds were getting low and his party were exhausted by the fatigues of desert travel. Instead, therefore, of remaining to make a careful survey of the oasis, he determined to make a hasty visit to the Great Oasis of El-Khargeh (sometimes called the Oasis of Thebes), and then return to the Nile. After a stay of only two days at Kasr-Dakhel, he set out, journeying through the oasis for the first day or two; the path then led over an elevated desert plateau, crossed by detached mountain chains. "On the morning of the 1st of March, we reached a mountain of sandstone, whence we had the satisfaction of discovering, in the south-east, the palms of El-Khargeh, two and a half leagues distant. It would have been more agreeable to us to have seen the palms of the Nile; my Arabs, above all, would have desired it, as two of them were suffering severely with fever, but we

OPIA.

at he soon became themselves in pro-  
ght be enabled to

7. The inhabitants  
dged it prudent to  
li gave him a letter  
Farafreh, which no  
difficulties were to  
tains, and plains of  
hed a village called  
hours' march. Near  
church, on the wall  
St. George and the  
ts, passing many an-  
inundated, they ap-  
t have proved fatal,  
had been bitten and  
d my interpreter and  
was terrible; it was  
his head, and I suf-  
r Farafreh. The de-  
end of an hour our

Farafreh, and arrived  
s, the Arabs flew to  
most of them mounted  
These preparations  
eing us advance, they  
of these men was un-  
elike which we wanted,  
age, adding that they  
eputation in the Little  
were Christians; but  
terpreter was scarcely  
the Pasha, which they  
ring the camels to be  
They still insisted that  
et, and listened to no  
dent they took pity on

visit Cailliaud. They  
li, nor to the letter of  
ows cooked with rice,  
graces—nothing more  
h they were denied en-

were all delighted to reach El-Khargeh, where we should have two days rest. We soon descended into the valley, and encamped near a fine fountain, under some superb acacias. It was a lively pleasure to me to behold again the ruins which had excited my surprise and admiration in April, 1818. The shekh of El-Khargeh, who was soon apprised of the arrival of Europeans, ran to meet me. What was his surprise when he recognized me, after an absence of two years! He no longer considered me as a fool, and was more than ever convinced that I had discovered treasures among the ruins, which I had now come to carry away."

Cailliaud only remained two days, to examine the great temple, which is one hundred and ninety-five feet in length, and then took the direct road to Siout, in Upper Egypt. The journey was very rough and fatiguing; they expected to reach the Nile by the end of the fourth day, but the camels were too much fatigued. The next morning "the camels were very lively; they seemed already to smell the air of the Nile-valley. At the end of an hour, we reached the crest of a mountain, and all at once discovered at our feet the shores of the Nile, which we had quitted four months before. Then, suffering our glances to wander alternately over the desert we had traversed, and the smiling perspective before us, we admired at our leisure this interesting contrast. On one side, the river presented to us, as far as our vision extended, its banks covered with verdure, with flowers, and with harvests; the palms of the Nile, the numerous barks upon the water, and the animals which grazed upon the shores, animated the lovely landscape: on the other hand, the desert still saddened us with the appearance of its vast sea of arid and burning sands."

"On reaching the cultivated lands, we encountered a Bedouin woman, carrying a jar of water upon her head, and begged her to stop. She contemplated our caravan, exhausted with fatigue; our camels, haggard and marching painfully; our own pale faces, our Arabs covered with dust, depressed and shaking with fever—these objects at once told her how much we needed water, and she hastened to offer us all that her jar contained, with some dates. The young woman asked if it had been a long time since we had left the Nile. 'Four months,' replied the Arabs. 'Four months!' she exclaimed, fixing upon us her beautiful dark eyes, with a touching expression of tenderness and pity. Then, by a spontaneous movement, she extended her arms toward us, adding in a plaintive voice, 'O my friends, O my unfortunate brothers!' I presented this charitable creature with a silver coin, and we left her with our benedictions."

Disappointed in finding letters from Europe at Siout, Cailliaud resolved to proceed immediately to Cairo, where he arrived on the 18th. He was not able to see Mohammed Ali, for the plague had broken out in the citadel, and the pasha had shut himself up in his palace at Shoubra. The French Consul, Drovetti, however, presented him to Ismail Pasha, who was about setting out for Upper Egypt, to take command

we should have two days encamped near a fine lively pleasure to me to surprise and admiration in was soon apprised of the as his surprise when he He no longer considered that I had discovered me to carry away."

mine the great temple, length, and then took the they was very rough and e end of the fourth day, xt morning "the camels l the air of the Nile-val- st of a mountain, and all he Nile, which we had our glances to wander t the smiling perspective sting contrast. On one sion extended, its banks rvests; the palms of the he animals which grazed : on the other hand, the its vast sea of arid and

encountered a Bedouin and begged her to stop. ch fatigue; our camels, faces, our Arabs covered these objects at once told ned to offer us all that g woman asked if it had 'Four months,' replied ng upon us her beautiful erness and pity. Then, arms toward us, adding nfortunate brothers!' I coin, and we left her with

pe at Siout, Cailliaud re- he arrived on the 18th. plague had broken out up in his palace at Shoo- presented him to Ismail Egypt, to take command

of the expedition against Dongola. This prince assured the traveler of his protection, and offered to assist him in the execution of his plans. As it was difficult to hire a vessel for the ascent of the Nile, Cailliaud purchased a boat about twenty-five feet long, with a cabin large enough for three persons, and sailed for Upper Egypt on the 22d of April, accompanied by M. Letorze, an interpreter, and two Arab servants. On reaching Siout, he learned that the expedition to Dongola had been retarded, and therefore proceeded to Thebes, where he arrived on the 14th of May, designing to occupy himself with archaeological studies during the delay. He had a temporary dwelling made from the stones of a ruined temple, at the foot of the mountain of Goorneh; the roof was composed of the lids of mummy-coffins. Here he occupied himself in copying the representations in the adjoining tombs; but the continued delay of the expedition led him to believe that he would have time to return to Cairo, and make an excursion to the ruins of Cyrene on the Libyan coast, before the departure of Ismail Pasha for Dongola.

In consequence of this, he departed from Thebes on the 6th of June, and arrived at Cairo after a voyage of twenty days. Here he visited Ismail Pasha, who renewed to him the promise of his assistance and protection, but added that he intended to set out with the expedition in fifteen days. Cailliaud's voyage was therefore useless, and after visiting the petrified forests near Cairo, he started on his return to Upper Egypt on the 27th of July. After a tedious voyage of twenty-two days he again reached Thebes, but continued his journey without halt—except to purchase four dromedaries at Daraou—to Assouan, where Ismail Pasha was then encamped, on the left bank of the Nile. "The shores were crowded with barks, and covered with troops, tents, camels, cavalry, baggage, ammunition, and artillery; every thing announced the war which was soon to be carried on in Nubia. These preparations had an important aspect: the cries of the animals, the acclamations of the people, the songs of the Albanians, the music of the cymbals and flutes, and the roll of the drums—all contributed to excite the imagination. The camp presented a picture of mirth; each one gave himself up to joy; the soldiers saw pillage in perspective; the pasha flattered himself with the idea of capturing forty thousand negroes; the Europeans were ambitious of reaching Meroë, and in that ambition, exposed themselves to the dangers and chances of an unjust war."

Soon after his arrival, Cailliaud paid a visit to Ismail Pasha, and found him still favorably disposed. He offered the traveler a tent, and the usual daily ration, which the latter declined. Soon afterward, however, he learned that the Greek physicians in the pasha's service were intriguing to prevent him from going; reports were spread that he had a secret commission from the French government to search for gold mines. On visiting the pasha a second time, two days afterward, Cailliaud saw that these intrigues were likely to prove successful. He was coldly



received, and the pasha stated that, since reflecting upon the subject, he believed that it would be useless for him to accompany the expedition, which was wholly warlike, and would give him no opportunity of examining the antiquities of the country. The traveler presented to him three firmans, which he had received from Mohammed Ali, but as the name of Dongola was not mentioned in them, the pasha made this a pretext for persisting in his refusal, stating that a new firman would be necessary.

Cailliaud had already gone to considerable expense in preparing for the journey, and rather than give up his hopes at this point, he determined to return at once to Cairo. The country was inundated by the rise of the Nile; his progress was tedious and delayed by accidents, and he did not reach Cairo until the 20th of September. Mohammed Ali had gone to Alexandria, whither the traveler followed him. He lost no time in being presented to the pasha, who demanded news of his son Ismail and the army. Cailliaud gave him the desired information, then spoke of Sennaar and the gold-mines which were said to exist in the mountains beyond that country, promising to examine them and report to him whether they could be profitably worked. This proposition was well received, and the pasha promised new firmans for Sennaar and the gold-mines, which were made out and delivered two days afterward. The return voyage was immediately commenced; four days more were spent at Cairo, in procuring additional supplies, and the party, after encountering a violent hurricane in passing Djebel Silsileh, did not reach Daraou until the 19th of November. Here he obtained a guide for Dongola, and learned, from messengers descending the Nile, that Ismail Pasha had gained a victory over the Shyghheas, in Southern Nubia. The messengers carried with them the heads of six shekhs, and the ears of several hundred warriors, which the pasha was sending to Mohammed Ali.

Cailliaud's caravan, consisting of eight persons—including himself, M. Letorzec, and the captain of his bark, a Maltese—left Assouan on the 25th of November. They ascended the western bank of the Nile, devoting very little time to the examination of the Egyptian temples in Nubia, in their haste to overtake the army, and reached Wadi Halfa (the second cataract) on the 8th of December. After being detained in this neighborhood for some days by vexatious disputes in relation to guides and camels, which it is not necessary to describe, they resumed their journey through the Batn el-Hadjar, Sukkot, and Mahass, taking nearly the same route followed by Burckhardt in his return from the latter country. The track sometimes followed the course of the river, sometimes swerved to the right, into the desert, to avoid its windings. On the 3d of January, 1821, they reached the temple of Soleb, the most beautiful of the Egyptian monuments in Nubia, above the second cataract, and remained several days to examine it. Cailliaud considered it of similar style to the Memnonium at Thebes; he gives its length at three

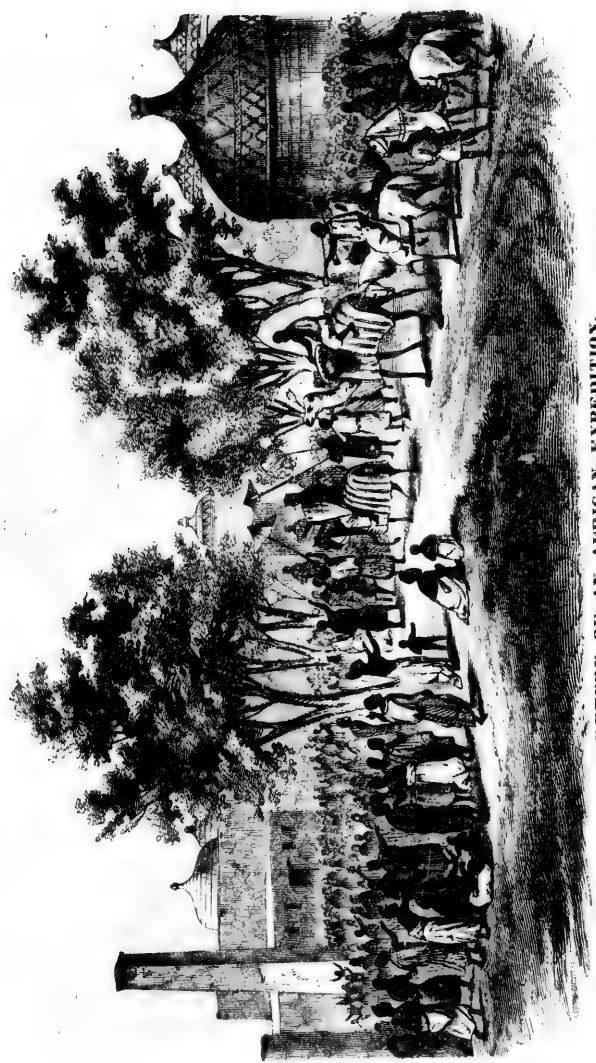
## ETHIOPIA.

g upon the subject, he  
company the expedition,  
m no opportunity of  
traveler presented to  
Mohammed Ali, but as  
the pasha made this a  
new firman would be

pense in preparing for  
at this point, he deter-  
was inundated by the  
ayed by accidents, and  
nber. Mohammed Ali  
owed him. He lost no  
led news of his son Is-  
sired information, then  
e said to exist in the  
mine them and report

This proposition was  
ns for Sennaar and the  
l two days afterward.  
; four days more were  
nd the party, after en-  
Silsileh, did not reach  
tained a guide for Don-  
the Nile, that Ismail  
a Southern Nubia. The  
hekha, and the ears of  
sending to Mohammed

ons—including himself,  
se—left Assouan on the  
bank of the Nile, de-  
e Egyptian temples in  
l reached Wadi Halfa  
After being detained in  
disputes in relation to  
describe, they resumed  
ot, and Mahass, taking  
his return from the lat-  
e course of the river,  
to avoid its windings.  
pple of Soleb, the most  
above the second cata-  
Cailliaud considered it  
gives its length at three



RETURN OF AN AFRICAN EXPEDITION.



RETURN OF AN AFRICAN EXPEDITION.



hundred and fifty feet, and counted the remains of more than ninety columns, some of which, thirty-two feet high, are still standing on their pedestals.\*

On the 11th of January, the caravan reached the frontier of Dongola. "Our route was bordered by a grove of tufted acacias, which hid from our view the opposite bank of the river. At a quarter of a league to the west, we saw other acacias, with cultivated fields and the habitations of the Arabs. There, only, I felt that I had quitted Egypt. In Lower Nubia, as in Egypt, the monotonous aspect of the palms, the burning rocks, the sands which threaten to engulf the valley of the Nile, occasion a profound feeling of melancholy; but the region I had reached presented a very different aspect—the palms were there replaced by thick woods of acacias and of nebbuks. This verdure recalled France to my mind; I felt the liveliest emotion in traversing this smiling country. In the afternoon we encamped at the village of Hafyr, where we remained a day, and met with Messrs. Waddington and Hanbury, who came from the province of Shyghhea, the limit of their journey, and were returning to Cairo. I flattered myself that this unexpected meeting would procure me the advantage of learning what the antiquities were which, the Arabs had told me, existed in Shyghhea; but Mr. Waddington, whom I questioned on the subject, was by no means indiscreet. He suffered me to remain in the most profound ignorance, and my surprise was therefore extreme, when, on arriving at Berkel, I first beheld the grand monuments there."

A few days after this, the caravan began to suffer from a scarcity of provisions. Sheep were to be had, and the travelers shot doves and partridges, but the army of Ismail Pasha had swept away all the grain, so that they had neither bread for themselves, nor food for their camels. Opposite the island of Argo, Cailliaud learned that there was a dépôt of army supplies, but on visiting it, found that nothing was to be had except some dourra (a coarse grain resembling broom-corn), and dried beans, and to obtain even these he must first procure an order from King Tomboul, who lived on an adjoining island. Kafiz Effendi, the commissary, nevertheless received the traveler kindly, invited him to dinner, and offered to allow his caravan to accompany a small military party of his own, which was to leave for Ismael Pasha's camp in a few days. This offer was accepted; a visit to King Tomboul procured two bags of dourra and beans; and Cailliaud then set to work to examine the antiquities of the island.

"We were obliged," he says, "to traverse plains covered with thick woods, where it was often necessary to descend from our horses in order

\* The Temple of Soleb, situated in the midst of a landscape which presents the most enchanting forms, stands in a little bay of verdure, inclosed on three sides by the rocks of the Desert. Whether the traveler approaches it from north or south, it appears unexpectedly, and the surprise of the first view tends to heighten the impression of its symmetry and majesty.—B. T.



to penetrate the little paths, bordered with acacia and arbutus. The charms of these delicious paths made us disregard the obstacles we encountered. Vegetation, on this island, breathes of freshness and life: the trees which have been dried up by age, or choked by the violent embraces of the parasitic vines, still present the appearance of vigor and youth, under the tissue of verdure, with which these gigantic plants embrace them, forming arbors which no art can imitate. We at length arrived at the spot, where lie the two colossal statues of Memnon. A bare space, covered with fragments of sandstone, and two hundred and fifty by one hundred and seventy feet, indicates the extent of the temple, the materials of which have entirely disappeared. Not a single stone of any size, which might have formed part of it, can now be recognized. At the eastern extremity are the statues, overthrown upon the earth. They are of gray granite, and about twenty-two feet high. The execution is not of a very good style; the bodies are too flat, and the nose too depressed; one does not see the correct and beautiful workmanship of the head of the young Memnon, shipped to England by Belzoni—whence I infer that the latter is a more recent work than the colossi of Argos."

After several days' detention on the island, Cailliaud joined a caravan of a hundred and fifty camels, and accompanied it to Old Dongola, which he reached in five days. Here he had his own camels and baggage transported to the eastern bank of the Nile, which was considered more safe, and then devoted two days to an inspection of the town. He found little to interest him except an ancient Coptic convent, built of burned bricks. On the terrace over the upper story were still to be seen the remains of the belfry, while pillars of granite, with the lotus capital, supported the interior. The Mussulmen, although knowing the building to have been erected by the Christians, had nevertheless converted it into a mosque. Dongola, formerly a flourishing city, had been ruined by the incursions of the Shyghheas, and in traversing the streets, Cailliaud only met with two half-naked women, shivering with cold; for the wind was blowing strongly from the north, and the place was enveloped in clouds of sand.

Leaving Dongola on the 3d of February, the caravan continued to ascend the Nile, finding traces of the war in wounded men and devastated villages. In three days they reached the frontier of the Shyghheea country, at the village of Karafat. While resting there three quarters of an hour under a large acacia, they were accosted by several Shyghheas, who spoke Arabic. One of them had lost his ears at the battle of Korti, and related to Cailliaud an exciting story of his sufferings and escape. Beyond this were many abandoned villages and deserted fields. In two more days they arrived at Merawe, "and it was not without surprise," says Cailliaud, "that I found here a place of this name. I inquired carefully whether there were any antiquities in the neighborhood, and was informed that at Mount Berkel, a short distance off, there was a 'city of the infidels.' There were the monuments whose existence Mr. Waddington wished to conceal from me. The next morning we set out

and arbutus. The obstacles we encountered, the freshness and life: choked by the violent clearance of vigor and the gigantic plants emerged. We at length arrived at Memnon. A bare two hundred and fifty feet of the temple, the single stone of any size could not be recognized. At length, upon the earth. They were the execution of the workmanship of the day by Belzoni—whence I saw the colossi of Argos." Cailliaud joined a caravan to Old Dongola, which he and his baggage train considered more safe, than the desert. He found little but ruins of burned bricks. He saw the remains of a capital, supported the building to have been converted it into a mosque. Cailliaud only met with the wind was blowing in clouds of sand. The caravan continued to be surrounded by men and devas- tated by the Shyghheas, who were there three quarters of a day by several Shyghheas, who were there at the battle of the day of his sufferings and the desert fields. It was not without surprise of this name. I inquired in the neighborhood, at a distance off, there was a place whose existence Mr. Cailliaud next morning we set out

to visit them, across the cultivated fields. Passing the grand pyramidal mansions of the Shekhs of Shyghheea, after a short march, we reached a little village called Shibat. What was my joy, when I discovered pyramids to the north, and soon a great extent of ruins at the foot of Mount Berkel! Impatient to arrive, I urged on my dromedary. I then advanced on foot into the midst of those immense ruins; here, the remains of a beautiful temple were exposed to my gaze; there, piled together confusedly, the debris of pillars, temples, and pyramids. Where shall I direct my steps? To which shall I give the preference? I desired to see every thing at once. To the east, on the other bank, I saw the summits of several other pyramids. I ran rapidly around the ancient inclosure of eight temples, and the pyramids; but the day passed away, and I could take but a superficial view of the crowd of objects which surrounded me, before the night constrained us to retire. A Shyghheean family gave us lodgings for the night, in a little village near the river. The women only were at home; their husbands, in order to escape from the Turks, to whom they had not yet submitted, were concealed somewhere in the desert."

In the night, while Cailliaud was dreaming of the antiquities he had seen, he was aroused by the trampling of horses, and the voices of men. "I arose, and as our chamber had no door, in an instant I was in the court, where I saw five Shyghheans on horseback. It was the proprietor of the house, accompanied by four friends, who had quitted their retreat, to visit their wives under cover of the night. One of these men accosted me in an angry voice, demanding why the pasha did not choose some other mode of punishment than impalement. I was astounded at this question, the purport of which I could not conceive; but his friends called the man and he entered with them. The rest of my party were already awakened by the noise. The Shyghheans began to drink mareessa, a liquor which sometimes bewilders the head. A slave finally gave me the key to the sanguinary remark which had been addressed to me. The bodies of five of the inhabitants of the place were at that moment exposed near our lodging, upon the stakes of their impalement; they were malefactors, who had been executed in this manner on account of their murders and robberies. This execution, horrible as it was, no doubt contributed to our own safety. We kept guard the rest of the night, but before morning the five Shyghheans hastened to regain the desert."

The next day Cailliaud set out on a visit to Ismail Pasha, whose camp he reached after a march of five hours. The prince was ill, but he was very kindly received by Abdin Bey, to whom he delivered his new firmans, and who, after perusing them, made profuse offers of his services. The army was to set out for Berber and Shendy in three days, and the traveler immediately sent for his companion, M. Letorze, and the rest of his baggage, in order to be in readiness. Meanwhile, he took occasion to visit the pyramids of Noori, which he had first seen at a distance,

from the foot of Mount Berkel. These pyramids are fifteen in number, of moderate size, the base of the largest measuring one hundred and sixty feet, but curious from the resemblance of some of them to the terraced pyramids of Sakkara.

On the 18th, Ismail Pasha having recovered from his feigned indisposition, Cailliaud was admitted to see him. He was received with all the political cunning of the Turkish race, but it was decided that he should be allowed to accompany the expedition, although, previous to this interview, it was known that the prince was strongly opposed to it, under the pretense that the firmans of his father were not addressed to him. He had even, as Cailliaud afterward learned, sent a dispatch to the governor at Wady Halfa, to prevent the traveler from going beyond that point, but the messenger, fortunately, did not arrive in time. The army at that time consisted of four thousand men, of whom one thousand eight hundred were cavalry, besides two thousand servants, and three thousand camels. There were also twenty-four pieces of artillery. The pasha had a body-guard of twenty Mamelukes. The diplomatic functions were exercised by three ulernas, who made great efforts to subjugate the people by moral suasion, and avoid the effusion of blood. They often succeeded in this humane intent, and were rewarded with robes of honor, and a sum equal to about one thousand two hundred dollars each.

The camp was broken up on the 21st of February, and the army commenced the march to Berber. One third of the troops were left with the boats, which were obliged to wait for the rise of the Nile, to pass the cataracts; the remainder, headed by the pasha, took a south-east course across the desert, to avoid the great curve of the Nile. At nine o'clock a gun gave the signal for loading the camels, and the march began two hours afterward, with the roll of drums. The route was difficult, on account of the rocky ranges which it was necessary to cross. In order to avoid the mid-day heats, the army traveled mostly by night; fires were lighted along the route, as landmarks, and the troops amused themselves by kindling the dry foliage of the doum-palms. On the fifth night a violent wind arose, which drove the flames among the baggage-camels, and several of Abdin Bey's tents were burned. The ammunition was fortunately in the rear, and escaped. The night-journey was so fatiguing, as it was almost impossible to obtain sleep during the day, that Cailliaud could with difficulty keep his seat on his camel. In the morning the rocky valley they had been following, became more narrow; the presence of palms and acacias was hailed with delight, for it announced the proximity of the Nile. Finally, after a march of fourteen hours, worn out with fatigue, they reached the river. "Like the rest," says the traveler, "I rendered homage to him, in quenching my thirst. In the twinkling of an eye, the banks were covered with soldiers; all desired to drink the water of the river, or to plunge into it. The army appeared to have regained a new existence. The Nile, in fact, gives

are fifteen in number,  
ing one hundred and  
ne of them to the ter-

from his feigned indis-  
was received with all  
was decided that he  
although, previous to  
strongly opposed to it,  
were not addressed to  
ed, sent a dispatch to  
ler from going beyond  
t arrive in time. The  
en, of whom one thou-  
thousand servants, and  
four pieces of artillery.  
ukes. The diplomatic  
made great efforts to  
d the effusion of blood.  
d were rewarded with  
thousand two hundred

February, and the army  
f the troops were left  
the rise of the Nile, to  
he pasha, took a south-  
curve of the Nile. At  
e camels, and the march  
drums. The route was  
was necessary to cross.  
aveled mostly by night;  
and the troops amused  
um-palms. On the fifth  
aes among the baggage-  
urned. The ammunition  
e night-journey was so  
n sleep during the day,  
nt on his camel. In the  
ving, became more nar-  
iled with delight, for it  
after a march of fourteen  
river. "Like the rest,"  
in quenching my thirst.  
overed with soldiers; all  
unge into it. The army  
The Nile, in fact, gives

life to every thing which breathes or vegetates in these countries, and the Egyptian who is afar from its creative waters seems to have lost the essential part of his vitality."

The day after the pasha's arrival, a courier brought news that the Shygueans had rallied and united themselves with the forces of Shendy. Berber was but two days' journey distant, but the cannon had not yet arrived, and a further halt was ordered, until it should come up. Three days afterward, another courier brought a contradiction of the first message, which, it was subsequently ascertained, was only a *ruse* of the pasha, in order to encourage his troops with the prospect of a battle. The march was resumed at midnight on the 4th of March. "Many of the camels, overcome with fatigue, dropped by the way, and the order was given to slaughter them for provisions. One of my own, lying upon the ground, was unable to rise; it was loaded with dhourra, and I should have willingly lost the load if I could have preserved the animal. The final stimulant, which consists in applying a burning torch to the flanks, was then administered; the poor brute rose and ran, but only to fall again, further on."

In approaching El-Mekheyref, the chief city of Berber, the pasha, in order to make a strong impression on the inhabitants, disposed his army in order of battle. The brilliant array of the troops, their rich dresses, and the splendor of the pasha's staff, filled the people with astonishment and admiration; and the chiefs of the country came at once with offers of submission. In order to proceed further, it was necessary first to procure a great number of baggage camels, and expeditions were sent among the Arabs of the surrounding deserts for this purpose. Soon after his arrival, Cailliaud paid a visit to the King of Berber, Nasr ed-Deen, whom he found lying upon his bed, suffering from some wounds which he had received in his wars with the Shygueans. A low stool, exactly similar to those which are represented in the tombs of Thebes, was offered to the traveler, who was also furnished with coffee, a pipe, and some other refreshments. Five shekhs, tall, athletic men, of noble figure, were seated around the king.

"On the 12th of March, a son of Mek Nemr (King Leopard), the King of Shendy, brought to Ismail Pasha the news of the submission of that country. The latter desired a visit from the Mek himself, who reached the camp on the 22d. He was in a sort of palanquin, carried by two camels. His costume, of an elegant simplicity, consisted of two robes of great fineness; the under one was white, and the other of a rich Indian stuff; a sort of mantle hung from his shoulders, and upon his head was a pointed cap, with long, falling ends. His guard was composed of fifty men armed with lances, shields, and sabers, some of which were adorned with silver; behind him marched two men armed with lances, and two others carrying long wands, tipped with balls of silver. After having several times prostrated himself, with a sad and humiliated air, the unhappy king, on being invited thereto, seated himself upon a carpet

in front of Ismail Pasha. He took the hand of the latter, kissed it above and below, and placed it upon his head in token of submission. The pasha gave him to understand that his visit was tardy, and the king humbly replied that he was his servant. Neither pipe nor coffee was presented to him. At the end of ten minutes of silence, he took his leave, all the inquietude of his soul painted on his countenance. The next day the pasha showed him more attention, sending him a horse richly caparisoned, a dress, a green tent, and some dishes from his own table."

Reinforcements having arrived from Egypt, the army was obliged to delay its march from the want of provisions. Cailliaud was very impatient, but made the most of his time in endeavoring to ascertain from the inhabitants whether there were any ancient ruins in the province. On the 19th of April, being in the pasha's tent, the conversation turned upon gold mines. The pasha exhibited a large diamond which his father had sent him, and asked Cailliaud in what country such stones were found. The latter answered that all the diamond mines heretofore discovered were situated about the 18th parallel of latitude. He took occasion to say, also, that in order to discover the true diamond soil, it would be advisable to make excursions out of the regular track of the army, and added that the antiquarian explorations which he desired to make in Shendy might be turned to good account, in this manner. After the subject had been fully explained, the pasha stated that as the rainy season would soon commence, the army would not halt at Shendy, but, to Cailliaud's great delight, gave him permission to set out in advance, with a small escort. He insisted, however, that the travelers should pass for Turks, and assume Turkish names, giving to Cailliaud the name of Murad Effendi, and to M. Letorze that of Abdallah El-Fakeer. When the two conversed in French, the natives supposed the language to be Turkish (and, in fact, there is some resemblance in the sound of the two languages), while their Turkish dresses, their bare legs, their long beards, their shaven heads, and their tanned complexions, made the disguise complete, and caused them to be taken everywhere for good Mussulmen.

Having received firmans from the pasha, they set out two days afterward, and after passing the mouth of the Atbara (the ancient Astaboras), the most northern tributary of the Nile, continued their journey for two days, and then crossed to the eastern bank of the Nile, at the village of El-Bagheyr. Here, Cailliaud had already passed the latitude assigned by the French geographer, D'Anville, to the ancient city of Meroë, and was uncertain what course to take. After sweeping the horizon in vain, for some trace of ruins, he proceeded southward, entering the territory of Mek Nemr, of Shendy. Their appearance called together a crowd of people; the envoys sent by the pasha to Shendy had followed the western bank of the Nile, and they were the first Turks whom the natives had ever seen. They judged it prudent to say that they were only a little in advance of the pasha's army. After the inhabitants had retired, Cailliaud took his guide apart, and began to question

OPIA.

ter, kissed it above submission. The and the king humor coffee was pre- he took his leave, nee. The next day horse richly capar- s own table."

army was obliged to aud was very impa- ascertain from the the province. On rsation turned upon which his father had stones were found. retofore discovered He took occasion to soil, it would be ad- ck of the army, and desired to make in manner. After the hat as the rainy sea- t at Shendy, but, to out in advance, with elers should pass for d the name of Murad eer. When the two nguage to be Turkish und of the two lan- s, their long beards, ade the disguise com- good Mussulmen.

et out two days after- ra (the ancient Asta- ntinued their journey k of the Nile, at the y passed the latitude o the ancient city of After sweeping the ed southward, enter- appearance called to- pasha to Shendy had were the first Turks it prudent to say that ny. After the inhab- and began to question

him concerning what he had heard in Berber, that one day's journey north of Shendy there were a great many *tarabeels*, or heaps of hewn stones. The latter, supposing that the traveler was sent by the pasha to discover hidden treasures, first asked him whether, if he found a great quantity of gold, he would give him a little, that he might get married. To this Cailliaud consented, and he then verified the statement, adding that the *tarabeels* were only four or five leagues distant; that there were a hundred of them, and that it was possible to climb to their summits.

Cailliaud feared that these *tarabeels* were simply heaps of granite boulders, such as are seen at Assouan. His excitement was so great that he could not sleep; rousing his party at one o'clock in the morning, much to their astonishment, he set out. Mek Nemr had passed along the day before, on his return to Shendy; his convoy had plundered the inhabitants of the villages through which they passed, and the people were awake and lamenting over their loss. The travelers feared a reprisal under cover of the night, and did not consider themselves safe, until the dawn appeared, when they entered an open desert plain three miles in length. "The guide then announced to me that we should soon see the *tarabeels*. Imagine the joy which I felt on beholding a crowd of pyramids, the summits of which were splendidly gilded by the rays of the sun, then just above the horizon! Never did he illumine a spectacle more delightful to me! I urged on my dromedary; I would have annihilated the space of a league or two which still separated me from the ruins of the ancient capital of Ethiopia. At last, I arrived; my first aim was to mount an eminence that I might embrace at one glance the whole extent of the ruins. I remained motionless with pleasure and admiration at the sight of this imposing spectacle. I then ascended the most elevated of the monuments. There, wishing to pay a tribute of homage to the illustrious geographer whose genius had directed my steps, I carved upon the stone the name of D'Anville. Again casting my eyes around me, I discovered in the west a second group of pyramids, and, a short distance from the river, a vast space covered with ruins and rubbish, announcing the situation of the ancient city. When the rest of my party arrived, I descended to examine the little sanctuaries attached to the tombs; silence and solitude prevailed everywhere. I saw, to my great regret, the impossibility of establishing my residence in one of these funereal chambers, and therefore sought an abode in the little village of Assour, near the river. In repairing thither, I passed among the other pyramids and the ruins which I had seen, and distinguished there the remains of several temples, with an avenue adorned with colossal rams."

Cailliaud found that the letters of the pasha were not respected by the chiefs of the village. He therefore adopted the more prudent plan of inviting them to dinner, and distributing some beads and other trinkets among the people. This course soon established him in their good graces, and he was allowed to continue his explorations undisturbed, during the fourteen days which intervened before the arrival of the



pasha and his army. The group of pyramids which he had first seen belonged to the necropolis of the ancient city. They stand upon a low ridge at the foot of the mountain of Mogran. They are all built of fine red sandstone, in regular courses of masonry, the spaces of which are not filled, or cased, as in the Egyptian pyramids, except at the corners, which are covered with a narrow hem, or molding. The stones are about eighteen inches high, and the recession of each course varies from two to four inches, so that the height of the structure is always much greater than the breadth of the base. A peculiarity of these pyramids is, that the sides are not straight but curved lines, of different degrees of convexity, and the breadth of the courses of stone is adjusted with the utmost nicety, to produce this form. The largest of these pyramids has a base of fifty-eight, with an elevation of eighty-five feet. There are twenty-one in all, besides the substructures of sixteen others. To the east are twenty others, more or less ruined, and on the plain nearer the Nile, the remains of a group of forty-six, some of which are very small, having bases of from fifteen to twenty feet. The sites of *one hundred and ninety-six* pyramids, in all, have been discovered. Of this city, nothing remains except mounds of pottery and broken bricks, the foundations of stone walls, fragments of columns and statues, and occasionally the outlines of temples and other public edifices, covering an extent of nearly two miles. From the more recent researches of Lepsius, the age of these ruins is fixed at from two thousand to twenty-two hundred years.

During his stay, Cailliaud was not without considerable anxiety for the safety of his party. Wishing to forward news of his discoveries to Europe, he determined to send one of his Arabs to Egypt, with letters, and engaged one of the men of Assour to accompany him as far as the army. On the return of the latter he learned that his messenger had been waylaid and robbed by the country people, who had destroyed all the letters. The shekh of a neighboring village, who had become his friend, informed him that the soldiers of Mek Nemr intended to seize him, and offered him an asylum in his own house. But the very next day, fortunately, the first of the pasha's boats appeared on the Nile, announcing the immediate approach of the Egyptian army, which arrived two days afterward, on the 8th of May. Cailliaud was now safe, and having completed his drawings and measurements, he followed the troops, and arrived next day at Shendy. On crossing the Nile to visit the pasha, who was encamped upon the western bank, he was informed by the latter that the army would continue its march to Sennaar—a circumstance which obliged him to postpone an excursion to the valleys of Mesowurat and Naga, south-east of Shendy, where, he was informed, there were many ruined temples.

On the 15th of May, the king of Shyghcea came to render his submission to the pasha. He expressed a desire to enter a military life, and was accordingly attached to the army, at the head of four hundred men of his tribe. The same day the camp was broken up, and the army

he had first seen be-  
they stand upon a low  
y are all built of fine  
aces of which are not  
at the corners, which  
The stones are about  
urse varies from two  
always much greater  
ese pyramids is, that  
ent degrees of convex-  
asted with the utmost  
e pyramids has a base  
There are twenty-one  
To the east are twenty  
r the Nile, the remains  
small, having bases of  
*hundred and ninety-six*  
city, nothing remains  
e foundations of stone  
tionally the outlines of  
nt of nearly two miles.  
e age of these ruins is  
d years.

considerable anxiety for  
s of his discoveries to  
to Egypt, with letters,  
pany him as far as the  
at his messenger had  
who had destroyed all  
who had become his  
emr intended to seize  
t. But the very next  
eared on the Nile, an-  
an army, which arrived  
aud was now safe, and  
ents, he followed the  
ssing the Nile to visit  
bank, he was informed  
arch to Sennaâr—a cir-  
cursion to the valleys  
here, he was informed,

ame to render his sub-  
ter a military life, and  
d of four hundred men  
ken up, and the army

commenced its march for Halfay and Sennaâr. As the disposition of the inhabitants of those countries was not known, distributions of ammunition were made, and every one required to be on the alert. The journey was very painful and fatiguing; there were not enough baggage-camels to carry a sufficient supply of grain, and as the country was thinly inhabited, both men and beasts suffered severely from hunger. Many camels perished; the soldiers were reduced to eating the nuts of the doum-palm, and pillage became the order of the day. After ten days the army arrived opposite Halfay, the king of which had announced his submission two days beforehand. Cailliaud crossed the Nile in a canoe and visited the town, which he found almost deserted. He had great difficulty in procuring provisions, as the inhabitants had concealed their supplies. Finding it impossible to return the same night, he was obliged to ask the king's hospitality, which was cheerfully extended to him.

It was Ismail Pasha's intention to make a halt at Halfay, but on arriving there he learned that Sennaâr was in a state of revolution, the legitimate king, who had been held captive for a long time by two usurpers, having succeeded in establishing a party, while a third usurper, who had arisen, was hostile to both. These intestine troubles seemed to the pasha to furnish a favorable opportunity for the accomplishment of his own plans, and he hastened to profit by it. Continuing the march, the army reached the confluence of the Blue and White Niles on the 27th, and encamped on the banks of the latter, at a place called Omdurman, near a wood of large acacias. Here commenced the kingdoms of Sennaâr on the eastern bank, and of Kordofan, on the western. Many of the slaves, who were natives of the latter country, and of Dar-Fur, which lies beyond it, took occasion to escape from the fatigues and brutal treatment to which they had been subjected: among them was one which Cailliaud had purchased in Berber for the moderate price of seventy-five francs.

The passage of the river commenced on the following day. There were only five small boats to be had, which were employed to transport the artillery, baggage, and ammunition. The prospect of approaching battle, pillage, and booty, and the confidence of victory with which their previous successes had inspired them, excited the soldiers to the highest pitch. "During three days, the surface of the river was covered with camels, horses, Turks, and Arabs, who cast themselves into it, some supporting themselves by empty jars, or pieces of wood, others clinging to the tails of horses, or the humps of camels. In this manner passed the army, consisting, with the slaves, of five thousand five hundred men, and three thousand camels and horses. It would be difficult to describe the tumult, the confusion, the cries of men and beasts, and the sound of the blows with which the poor beasts were forced into the flood: one would have said that it was a retreating host, pursued with the sword, rather than troops rushing confidently to victory. Unhappily, this excessive

zeal occasioned the loss of thirty men, and one hundred and fifty camels and horses."

The point of land between the two rivers, forming the northern extremity of the peninsula of Sennaâr, was called *Ras* (Cape) *el-Khartoum*. Half a league to the eastward, on the bank of the Blue Nile, were the first habitations of Sennaâr.\* At the sight of the army the inhabitants took to flight. The ambassadors whom the pasha had sent to demand the submission of those who held the reins of government, returned with the information that a large army had collected near the capital, with several pieces of cannon; and the kings had replied that they would wait to see the pasha's army before they decided what they would do. The order was given to continue the march, but as Cailliaud had heard at Halfay that there were ruins at a place called Sobah, on the Blue Nile, he applied to the pasha for a boat to ascend the river, while M. Letorzeo followed the army with the camels and baggage.

Cailliaud set sail on the 1st of June, and arrived next day at a town called El-Eylfun, near Sobah. At his appearance, a crowd of people collected, astonished at his Osmanli costume, which they had never before seen. In the habit of touching all that they saw, they passed their hands over his garments; the shawl and shoes attracted them, especially the latter, with the red color of which they were delighted. After having thus examined him they conducted him to the shekh, where a second inspection took place. The shekh, far from suspecting that he was a Christian, received him in the mosque. He asked many questions concerning the Egyptian army, but as Cailliaud was very desirous of visiting the ruins, he gave him a Spanish dollar, and received a horse and guide. The shekh informed him that he had done well to travel in a boat, for the general opinion in the country was that the pasha's army would be cut to pieces at Sennaâr, where there were four large cannon, and eight or ten thousand warriors. Sobah was reached after a ride of an hour and a half, and the traveler saw distinctly that an ancient city had once stood there; but, to his great mortification, nothing was to be found except heaps of earth and gravel—not a single stone of any size, nor the slightest trace of a wall. The only object, which gave any evidence of the ancient character of the place, was a mutilated ram-headed sphinx, about five feet in length.

During the following week the wind was adverse, and the voyage was very slow and tiresome, but the desire of ascertaining the points of junction of the Rahad and the Dender, Abyssinian tributaries of the Blue Nile, induced Cailliaud to continue his journey by water. He had learned, from a courier, that the pasha's army was marching forward without resistance, and soon afterward heard that the king of Sennaâr

\* Now the city of Khartoum, a place of from thirty to forty thousand inhabitants, which has been built up entirely under the Egyptian domination. It has become the great trading mart of eastern Soudan, and its rise has therefore been the ruin of both Shendy and Sennaâr.—B. T.

## ETHIOPIA

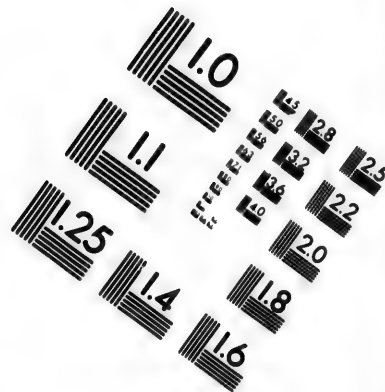
hundred and fifty camels

ing the northern ex-  
(Cape) *el-Khartoum*.  
Blue Nile, were the  
army the inhabitants  
had sent to demand  
government, returned  
ected near the capital,  
plied that they would  
what they would do.  
Cailliaud had heard  
Sobah, on the Blue  
d the river, while M.  
uggage.

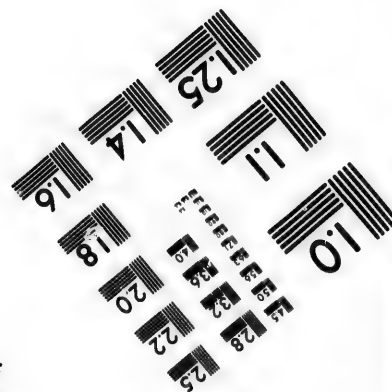
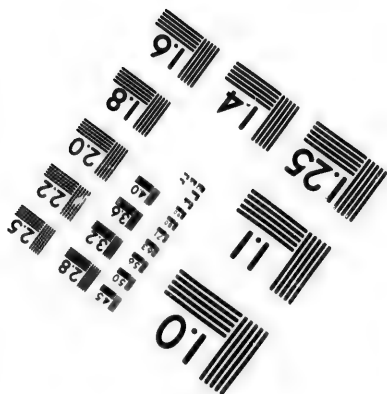
d next day at a town  
e, a crowd of people  
h they had never be-  
aw, they passed their  
ected them, especially  
ere delighted. After  
o the shekh, where a  
m suspecting that he  
asked many questions  
was very desirous of  
and received a horse  
done well to travel in  
that the pasha's army  
ere four large cannon,  
reached after a ride of  
ly that an ancient city  
ion, nothing was to be  
ingle stone of any size,  
, which gave any evi-  
mutilated ram-headed

verse, and the voyage  
ertaining the points of  
nian tributaries of the  
ey by water. He had  
was marching forward  
at the king of Sennaâr  
forty thousand inhabitants,  
ination. It has become the  
efore been the ruin of both





6"



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1983**





had submitted quietly; that he had come in great state to visit the pasha, accompanied by his ministers, the principal inhabitants of the capital, and an escort of two hundred men; that he and the pasha had exchanged gifts, and the latter had taken possession of the capital. After passing the mouth of the Rahad, Cailliaud, on the 12th, reached the village of Kourdkeyleh, where the scenery began to assume a very different aspect. "At the dawn of day," says he, "I endeavored to enter the forest of Kourdkeyleh to surprise some wild animals. I saw there many monkeys, the fresh tracks of the elephants, guinea fowls, and birds of brilliant plumage, which uttered harsh cries. Since the Pharaohs, perhaps, no bark had spread its sail on the river which I navigated, and it was not without a keen satisfaction that I saw mine advancing before all others, fighting with the winds in quarters where the gaze of a European had never before penetrated. I felt an involuntary emotion in contemplating those trees, conquerors of Time, which age had not bent; those thick woods, whose eternal foliage never spread for the traveler a protecting shade against the burning sun; those inaccessible thickets where the shepherd never led his flocks. Savage nature alone breathed amid this constantly renewed vegetation; the acacias, the nebbuks, the dead trees themselves, were enlaced in the inextricable convolutions of the parasitic vines, thus forming a compact mass of verdure, through which a few almost impracticable paths allowed the light to enter. The shock of our oars and the sound of the water against our bark alarmed the inhabitants of the flood; the crocodiles forsook the solitary shores, and the frightened hippopotami, swimming in herds around us, seemed by their bellowings to reproach us for having invaded their domain. The river was bordered with the bamboo, the ebony, and other new and precious woods; we saw trees, plants, insects, and shells of unknown kinds, and rejoiced in the distinctive, yet hitherto unknown physiognomy of this virgin soil."

The traveler passed the mouth of the River Dender, and continued slowly to advance until the 21st, when, having arrived within three leagues of Sennaâr, he finished the journey by land. The army had already been encamped there eight days. M. Letorzeo and the rest of the party were comfortably established. Cailliaud immediately called upon the pasha, whom he found greatly elated with his rapid successes. He at once began to speak of Fazogl and its rich mines of gold, believing that it was in his power to add still richer and more fertile regions to those which he had already brought under the Egyptian rule. Meanwhile, it was necessary first to arrange the internal affairs of Sennaâr. King Bady, the legitimate monarch, was reinstated, and named shekh of the kingdom; one of the two usurpers had fled into Abyssinia, after having treacherously murdered the other. Cailliaud employed his time in seeking for ancient remains, and having heard that there was a great figure in stone at Djebel-Mouyl, seven leagues from Sennaâr, persuaded the pasha to furnish him with an escort for a journey thither. He

found, however, that this statue was nothing more than a heap of rough granite boulders, which bore a faint resemblance to a human figure.

"On the 22d of July," says Cailliaud, "I paid a visit to the former king, Bady. I found him seated on a stool, in one of the courts of his residence, where he enjoyed the fresh air, with his ministers and some persons of his suite at his side. He ordered a straw mat to be brought, on which I placed myself. He was dressed in a broad shirt of white linen; his legs were bare, his feet covered with long sandals, and the royal cap upon his head. A servant brought him a pipe of the commonest kind used in the country. Bady is a man of about forty years old, of middling height, robust, of an agreeable figure, with crisp hair and a coppery complexion, which is that of the race of Foungi, to which he belongs. He asked me what difference I found between my country and his, believing me to be from Constantinople, and I drew a picture which threw his own capital quite into the shade. 'At present,' said he, 'Sennaâr is no longer to be recognized; it is very different from what it was in the times of my ancestors.' Then, with a visible emotion, he bade me see all around him the ruins of the palace of his father, which still overlooks the whole city. 'These ruins,' said he, 'are the remains of the power of my ancestors, the limits of whose kingdom once reached to the confines of Dongola.' Having nothing worthy of his rank to offer him, I gave him one of my boxes of oxygenated matches. When he saw one of them ignite in the sulphuric acid, he called upon the name of the Prophet, and exhibited the greatest surprise."

In the beginning of August, the pasha, in a conversation with Cailliaud, praised the climate of Sennaâr, and declared that the contrary accounts given by Bruce were totally false. Only one month of the rainy season had passed; the rain had not been frequent nor the heat excessive, and there was no sickness among the troops. "The rains cease at the end of September. The soil, profoundly saturated, retains here and there pools of stagnant water, which, fermenting by the sudden action of the heat, exhale putrid miasma. These, joined to the not less pernicious vapors of the earth, vitiate the air, and engender a host of maladies; the fevers, above all, prevail until January. At the approach of this disastrous season, the inhabitants of the banks of the river hasten to desert the villages with their beasts, and to fly from the pestiferous atmosphere." Twenty days after this conversation with the pasha, malignant fevers, dysenteries, and affections of the liver, threatening an epidemic, prevailed among the troops. M. Letorzec, the interpreter, and two of Cailliaud's Arab servants, became very ill, and six of the Greek and Italian physicians of the army died. "By the 25th of September, there were six hundred deaths and two thousand sick, in an army of three thousand men, and the number increased every day. During the whole campaign, the army had never before been in so pitiable a condition. The pasha, in despair, drew up an account of his

an a heap of rough human figure.

visit to the former of the courts of his ministers and some mat to be brought, road shirt of white g sandals, and the a pipe of the comf about forty years ere, with crisp hair of Foungi, to which between my country and I drew a picture

'At present,' said very different from th a visible emotion, palace of his father, 'said he, 'are the of whose kingdom nothing worthy of xes of oxygenated sulphuric acid, he ed the greatest sur-

versation with Caill that the contrary one month of the quent nor the heat troops. "The rains ly saturated, retains menting by the sudse, joined to the not and engender a host anuary. At the ap of the banks of the and to fly from the onversation with the of the liver, threat-M. Letorzec, the iname very ill, and six died. "By the 25th wo thousand sick, in creased every day. r before been in so p an account of his

situation, and sent it to his father. The soldiers were obliged to eat dourra of a very inferior quality, which was very unwholesome for them; destitute of clothes, almost half-naked, they slept on the damp earth; there were neither physicians nor medicine of the proper kind. Horses and camels died in all parts of the city and its environs, and the police were not sufficiently careful to remove the carcasses, which soon infected the air. All these causes contributed to augment the number and intensity of the diseases."

Ibrahim Pasha arrived at Sennaar on the night of the 22d of October, to the surprise of his brother, who did not expect him so soon. Fearing the contagion with which the city was infected, he only remained there two hours, and encamped about a league to the southward. The arrival of this prince, who was a general favorite, rallied the spirits of the troops. He hastened to supply the sick with rice, flour, and other articles from his own stores, paid the troops their arrears, and furnished them with clothes. His physician conceived the happy idea of transporting the sick several leagues into the interior, and the change of air, with the more careful treatment which they experienced, soon produced a rapid diminution of their number. "For my part," says Cailliaud, "I have experienced many tribulations. The state of M. Letorzec and my interpreter gave me the greatest anxiety, and my Arabs were devoured with fever. For two months, I had been obliged to take care of all the persons who were attached to me, attend to all our wants, prepare our food, wash my own clothes, look after my sick camels, and seek in all directions for the necessaries of life. When I could obtain a little wheat, paying for it at the rate of a franc per pound, I mixed it with three parts of dourra, and made cakes which served us instead of bread. None of the natives would serve us at any price, and it was impossible to find other domestics. All the officers of the army were in the same case. My interpreter gave me the greatest trouble; he became insane, and I was often obliged to bind him fast upon his bed. This state was followed by complete exhaustion, and the unfortunate man at last died."

Cailliaud visited Ibrahim Pasha soon after his arrival. He was very kindly received by the prince, who, after the traveler had expressed to him his desire to explore the White Nile, and to penetrate to Bornou and Timbuctoo, sent for his maps—a fine collection of which he carried with him—and explained the plan of his campaign. Ismail Pasha, with half of the troops, was to follow the course of the Blue Nile as far as Fazogl: Ibrahim advancing toward the south-west, would reach the White Nile somewhere in the territories of the Dinkas. The former, turning westward, was to visit the pretended gold mines of Gamamyl, and then proceed in the same direction, where the abundant rains furnish a number of wells and natural cisterns. Ibrahim would approach his brother until the junction of the two armies should take place, and they would return northward on a route parallel to the two rivers. Af-

ter this was accomplished, Ibrahim's magnificent plan was to explore the White Nile with well-armed barks and canoes, to its very sources. If the river should communicate with the Niger, the fleet would enter the latter stream; otherwise it would return, and after being reinforced, would march upon Kordofan, Dar-Fur and Bornou, and return to Egypt by way of Tripoli. Such was the ambitious plan of the avenger of Mecca, and the conqueror of the Wahabees; but it was not destined to be carried into effect.

The prospect of exploring the White Nile induced Cailliaud to apply to Ismail Pasha to accompany his brother Ibrahim, but the pasha objected to it on account of his desire that the traveler should examine the gold mines of Gamamyl. In order to induce him to remain, he offered him the use of an armed barque in which he might ascend the Blue Nile, and added that he also intended to make a campaign on the White Nile, at a later day. Relying on these promises, Cailliaud decided to follow him. On the 5th of December, Ibrahim Pasha set out for the country of the Dinkas, with an army of fifteen hundred men. The expedition of Ismail was to consist of fifteen hundred; as many more, the half of whom were ill, were left at Sennaâr. Cailliaud was greatly embarrassed by the want of servants. Some of the inhabitants of the country had promised to go with him, but on the day of his departure, they were not to be found. In addition to this, the man who had charge of his camels, ran off with four of them, but the loss was made good by Ismail Pasha, who presented him with eight others.

The pasha left Sennaâr on the 6th, and commenced his march up the western bank of the Blue Nile. The country became more rough and savage as they approached the mountains of Fazogl, the vegetation was more dense, and the journey more difficult and fatiguing. On the afternoon of the 11th, "while we were traversing a district covered with trees partly dead, and thickets of vines and brush-wood half dry, a conflagration broke out, spreading terror through the army, across the track of which a strong north-west wind drove the flames. Nothing was heard but confused cries; the disorder was at its height; the dispute was, who should save himself most speedily; the frightened camels no longer regarding the voices of their masters, broke into a gallop, cast off their loads, and often blindly ran to seek their own destruction. It was not without trembling that I saw myself obliged to pass this gulf of fire, which soon extended over a distance of half a league. Our first idea was that the natives had maliciously set the woods on fire, but we learned that it was entirely the fault of some stragglers of the army, who, in lighting their pipes, used themselves with igniting the trees." The same scenes were repeated from day to day, and the pasha did not dare to punish the culprits, on account of the mutinous spirit of the troops. There had been no distribution of grain since leaving Sennaâr, and in order to keep themselves from starving, the soldiers were driven to pillage. "All the villages which we saw," says Cailliaud, "were mercilessly

plundered by the troops, and I was obliged to follow their example in order to obtain a little dourra, some fowls, the fruit of the baobab, and the fresh pods of the tamarind—the only things left behind by the inhabitants, who fled at our approach.”

On the 17th, after passing through a region abounding in wild elephants and giraffes, they reached a village called El-Kerebeen, a dependency of Senñaâr, situated at the commencement of the mountains. The village is built in a group of granite hills, from six to eight hundred feet high. Ibrahim Pasha was at this time encamped four or five miles further to the west. Cailliaud, who went to visit him, found him laboring under an attack of dysentery, and very much dejected. He said to his brother Ismail, who was present, that if he did not find himself better in a few days, he would return to Egypt. “Thus was dissipated, as I could plainly see, the splendid plan of a voyage up the White Nile, and into the interior of Africa! In the evening I returned to my tent with Prince Ismail, who obliged me to dine with him every day. I was the only stranger who had accompanied him in his last campaign; I only could write and make known his exploits in Europe; and I could see that he was as ambitious of glory, as are the Turks ordinarily.” On the same day, envoys arrived from the King of Fazogl, to announce that he was ready to give in his submission. There then only remained the Pagan negroes to be conquered, whom the pasha designed to capture and carry off for slaves.

As the army approached Fazogl the country became more densely wooded, and it was a matter of great difficulty to pass through the forests of thorny mimosas. After two days they reached a group of mountains called Agady, on the summit of one of which was a negro village. Many of the inhabitants had fled during the night; the remainder were called upon to pay tribute, which they refused, saying the pasha might do what he pleased with them. The troops were eager for an attack, and the order was at once given. Three hundred men mounted to the village, which became the scene of fire, slaughter, and pillage. One hundred and seventy negroes, mostly women, were taken prisoners, and conducted to the rear of the pasha's tents, with yokes of wood around their necks.

On the 22d, after a difficult march of eight hours through the woods, the expedition reached the mountains of Kilgou, where there was another large negro village. “Ismail ordered the advance-guard to march rapidly upon the place, surprise the inhabitants, and prevent their flight. This order was promptly executed; the rocks were scaled, and a large body of negroes surrounded, who, nevertheless, defended themselves with unexpected obstinacy. The troops had spread their lines in climbing the hill, in order to surround as large a number as possible. But soon the difficulties of the ground broke up the order of march; they could not keep their footing on the masses of slippery granite which barred their path. Finally, taking off their slippers, which they stuck

PIA.

was to explore the  
very sources. If  
t would enter the  
being reinforced,  
d return to Egypt  
avenger of Mecca,  
destined to be car-

Cailliaud to apply  
the pasha objected  
examine the gold  
in, he offered him  
the Blue Nile, and  
the White Nile, at  
ided to follow him.  
the country of the  
expedition of Ismail  
half of whom were  
rassed by the want  
had promised to go  
re not to be found.  
amels, ran off with  
asha, who presented

ed his march up the  
ne more rough and  
the vegetation was  
ning. On the after-  
strict covered with  
ood half dry, a com-  
my, across the track  
Nothing was heard  
he dispute was, who  
camels no longer re-  
gallop, cast off their  
uction. It was not  
ss this gulf of fire,  
gue. Our first idea  
a fire, but we learned  
f the army, who, in  
ng the trees.” The  
e pasha did not dare  
spirit of the troops.  
ing Senñaâr, and in  
s were driven to pil-  
d, “were mercilessly



into their belts, they reached the first huts, where they found several women, who refused to follow them, and were killed. The men, on the summit of the mountains, rolled down masses of stone and logs of wood upon their enemies. They dashed hither and thither with surprising agility. The Turks compared them to birds, for their feet hardly seemed to touch the surface of the rocks. Many of them hurled their lances from behind trees or masses of granite, and pierced the first troops who ascended the hill. Meanwhile the pasha, tired of the prolonged resistance, mounted the hill with seven of his Mamelukes and some Albanians, but soon had reason to repent his imprudence: the negroes suddenly sallied out of their retreat, and hurled their lances, killing one of the Mamelukes. After firing a volley into them, the pasha returned to the camp. By this time the negroes had cast away all their lances, and sought safety in flight. One fourth of them escaped, and the rest were taken. In this affair the pasha had twelve men killed and forty wounded; of the negroes one hundred and eighty were killed, and five hundred and seventy-five taken prisoners. The latter had crisp hair, thick lips, and prominent cheek-bones; a few of them had flat noses. The men wore only a piece of goat-skin tied around the loins, and the women a piece of cotton which reached to the middle of the thigh. There were none among them who understood Arabic. The pasha allowed me to take two who appeared intelligent and good-tempered, and an Arab of Fazogl, who knew a little of their language, served me as interpreter."

After a rest of three days, the army resumed its march. On the 26th it entered a narrow, rocky valley, on either side of which were many deserted villages. The pasha determined to put himself at the head of the expedition, and asked Cailliaud to accompany him. The latter excused himself on account of his fatigued dromedary, but the offer of a horse obliged him to accept, and having armed himself to the teeth, he followed the commander. "We entered a little valley inclosed between two chains of high hills and overlooked by a mountain, which we proposed to scale, in the hope of surprising the negroes on the opposite side. It was necessary to break a passage through the mimosas and the nebbuks, the thorny branches of which tore our clothes into shreds. The pasha had recommended me, for my own safety, to keep close to him, but this benevolent consideration nearly proved fatal to me. After two hours' march, we had made two thirds of the mountain which was the aim of our expedition. We advanced up a rough and uneven path, with the brink of a precipice on the right, while the peaked summit of the mountain arose on the left. A part of the troops were in advance; the pasha followed them, having behind him one of his slaves, who carried his narghileh; I came immediately after, so near that the head of my horse touched his, and the Mamelukes after me, for the path was so narrow that we were obliged to march in single file. All at once a rock, three feet in diameter, fell between Ismail and myself, hurling

they found several  
The men, on the  
and logs of wood  
er with surprising  
feet hardly seemed  
hurled their lances  
he first troops who  
the prolonged re-  
akes and some Al-  
ence: the negroes  
lances, killing one  
the pasha returned  
ay all their lances,  
aped, and the rest  
en killed and forty  
ere killed, and five  
ter had crisp hair,  
hem had flat noses.  
the loins, and the  
iddle of the thigh.  
bic. The pasha al-  
good-tempered, and  
uage, served me as

march. On the 26th  
f which were many  
himself at the head  
ny him. The latter  
y, but the offer of a  
self to the teeth, he  
ey inclosed between  
tain, which we pro-  
oes on the opposite  
h the mimosas and  
clothes into shreds.  
ty, to keep close to  
fatal to me. After  
mountain which was  
gh and uneven path,  
peaked summit of  
ps were in advance;  
his slaves, who car-  
ar that the head of  
for the path was so  
file. All at once a  
and myself, hurling

down the precipice the slave who separated us. Without doubt the blow was intended for the pasha, who was distinguished by his rich costume; but one step more, and I should have received it! Ismail turned immediately, and I could perceive his fright in the pallor of his countenance; I confess, however, that he could justly have made the same remark concerning me. We dismounted, in order to avoid more readily the rocks and pieces of wood which the negroes continued to hurl down upon us. We descended the mountain much faster than we went up, and, having reached a level spot, the pasha played a piece of cannon against the summit; but the balls, passing beyond, almost reached the troops commanded by his physician, who returned in great fear, without having achieved any more valorous exploits than ourselves."

During the next day's march, they saw several enormous *baobab*-trees, one of which measured sixty-two feet in circumference. The country became more open, but a new range of mountains appeared in the south. Although he knew that his army was surrounded by a body of five or six thousand negroes, the pasha neglected to place any sentinels around his camp that night. Favored by this carelessness, the negroes cautiously descended from the mountains: the thickness of the foliage, the darkness of the night, and the color of their skins, even, contributed to conceal their march. They were but a pistol-shot distant, when, owing no doubt to a custom of theirs on attacking, they began to utter loud cries, hurling their lances at the same time. The alarm and confusion was general; no one knew from which side the attack came. The soldiers, hurrying out of their tents, supposed that the negroes were already masters of the camp. A few discharges of musketry sufficed to drive off the foe, and the tumult finally ceased. During the confusion several cannon were fired, but so much at random, that one of the balls passed over Cailliaud's tent, and another struck the earth about fifteen paces off.

Seeing that little was to be accomplished against the negroes, in a country where every mountain or forest was an almost impregnable fortress, the pasha determined to return to Kilgou, and take the direct route to Fazogl. The way was very laborious and difficult; there was no water, except some pools which were corrupt and stagnant; deep, rocky ravines crossed the path, and the army was beginning to suffer greatly from thirst, when a little water was obtained by digging in the dry bed of the torrent. "Having passed these dry water-courses," says Cailliaud, "we made our painful way through a dense thicket of gigantic bushes, acacias and nebbuks; our faces, our hands and feet, were scarred with severe and inevitable scratches, and our clothes were hanging in shreds. At last, toward evening, we found ourselves all at once on the banks of the Nile. The sight of the water restored quiet to the troops, who were becoming discontented and mutinous."

On the 1st of January, 1822, they set out for the great mountain of Fazogl, which they saw in the south-east. The country was covered

with thick woods; here and there grew tamarinds and doum-palms of much grander proportions than those of Egypt. "This day was for us a day of misfortune. At first I abandoned one of my camels, which died on the route; toward evening two others fell into a ravine, and it was necessary to unload and reload, which consumed much time, besides obliging me to throw away a part of our dourra. Meanwhile the night came, and we were enveloped in gloom. We ceased to hear the footsteps of some stragglers who hurried on to reach Fazogl; the whole army was in advance, and we sought vainly, in the obscurity, to find a trace of its path. M. Letorzeo and myself were greatly fatigued and depressed. I went to take a drink of water, but, alas! the water-skin had been burst by the fall of the camel. It seemed now that we must pass the night in the woods, exposed to the danger of being attacked by wild beasts, or by the negroes, in case we should light a fire to frighten away the former. Such was our perplexity, when our Arab said to me that he perceived a light in the distance; we looked but discovered nothing, but finally it increased and we saw it also. This sight revived our courage. We hastened toward it, but cautiously, not knowing whether we were approaching friends or foes. I sent the Arab in advance to make a stealthy inspection, and in a short time we were agreeably startled by his cries of joy. At the same time several soldiers, lost like ourselves, approached, begging us for water. A single bottle of wine, which I had always preserved in case of misfortune, could not be better employed: we drank the half of it, and then resigned ourselves to pass the night with our companions in misfortune. This was the time when M. Letorzeo was seized with a fever, which lasted several months. Early the next morning we set out to rejoin the army, which we found at two hours' distance, on the banks of the Nile, near the village of Yara, a dependency of Fazogl, where we remained several days."

On approaching the village of Fazogl, the pasha was received by Hassan, king of the province, who went in advance, accompanied by his ministers, mounted on fine Abyssinian horses, and surrounded by a guard of a hundred men, armed with lances. They met Ismail at five leagues' distance; the king and his ministers dismounted when they perceived him, advanced on foot and prostrated themselves before him. Hassan presented him with two splendid horses; the guards, approaching, ranged themselves in a line, knelt and reversed the points of their lances in token of submission. In recognition of his reception, Ismail prohibited his troops from passing through the villages, in order that they might not be devastated; for it was not always in his power to preserve good order. On the 5th, the expedition advanced to a village called Tourmoga. Having learned that King Hassan was there, Cailliaud paid him a visit. "I entered into an ordinary hut, where I found the king sitting cross-legged upon a mat. He was a handsome man, young, and of an agreeable figure. His costume was similar to that of the kings of Sennaâr, but I remarked with surprise that his sandals terminated in

doum-palms of  
 day was for us  
 mels, which died  
 vine, and it was  
 h time, besides  
 hwhile the night  
 to hear the foot-  
 zogl; the whole  
 security, to find a  
 ntly fatigued and  
 l the water-skin  
 ow that we must  
 eing attacked by  
 a fire to frighten  
 Arab said to me  
 d but discovered  
 This sight revived  
 ly, not knowing  
 the Arab in ad-  
 t time we were  
 e several soldiers,  
 A single bottle  
 fortune, could not  
 resigned ourselves  
 This was the time  
 ed several months.  
 y, which we found  
 ear the village of  
 veral days."

s received by Has-  
 accompanied by his  
 surrounded by a  
 met Ismail at five  
 ed when they per-  
 selves before him.  
 guards, approach-  
 the points of their  
 s reception, Ismail  
 in order that they  
 power to preserve  
 to a village called  
 ere, Cailliaud paid  
 e I found the king  
 e man, young, and  
 that of the kings  
 dals terminated in

curved points, exactly similar to those represented in the Tombs of the Kings, at Thebes. On his knees he held his saber, in which seemed to consist all his magnificence. The scabbard and hilt were of silver; several heavy silver rings adorned his fingers, and around his neck he wore little leather cases containing verses from the Koran."

The amount of tribute to be paid by Fazogl, was at last fixed at one thousand ounces of gold and two thousand male slaves, and the pasha set out on the 12th for the gold mines of Kasan, lying two or three days' journey to the south-west. To Cailliaud, whose camels were nearly exhausted, he gave a horse, and to M. Letorze a mule, which enabled them to travel with more ease and rapidity. On approaching the mountain of Agaro, the road was crossed by a precipitous gully thirty-five feet deep, in passing which many of the camels were hurled to the bottom with their riders, and perished. The next forenoon the army reached the foot of the mountain, and encamped. The negroes, full of audacity, on account of their number and the strength of their position, had sent word to Ismail, before he left Fazogl, that if he came into their mountains, they would break his legs. But, at the sight of the army, they began to change their tune; they sent word to him that they would submit and pay tribute to him. Ismail entered into negotiations with them, in order to gain time until his troops had surrounded the mountain. When the negroes perceived this design, they took to flight. The signal was then given for attack, and after a short struggle the soldiers reached the top of the mountain, where they at once set fire to the village. The inhabitants numbered about three thousand, of whom only about a hundred, mostly women, were taken, at the cost of fifteen lives.

The pasha then determined to make another assault on the eastern part of the mountain, with eight hundred men and a piece of cannon. "This time," says Cailliaud, "I was tempted to accompany him. The troops dispersed themselves over the mountain in the hope of blockading the village, and arrived there without trouble or resistance: it was deserted. In an instant the torch was applied, and five hundred huts were reduced to ashes. Old persons of both sexes, whom age or infirmity prevented from flying, were buried under their blazing roofs; others were conducted to the pasha, who, not knowing what to do with them, allowed them freely to behold the horrible lesson which a more civilized people than they came to teach them." On the 16th the army crossed a river called the Toumat, continuing its course in a south-western direction, and reached the mountains of Khasinkaro, where a deputation of negroes came to meet the pasha. They said that if he would continue his journey without doing them any harm, they would be able to pay him tribute on his return. He placed little faith in their promises, but as he was impatient to reach the gold mines, agreed to what they asked.

Following the course of the Toumat, which furnished an ample sup-

ply of water, the expedition skirted the mountain of Kasan on the 18th. The inhabitants of a large village on its summit promised the pasha five hundred male slaves, as their tribute. Soon afterward they entered the territory of Gamamyl, and discovered in the west a long chain of mountains called Obah. The road here was continually crossed by small affluents of the Toumat, which had worn for themselves deep beds in the soil, making the traveling more difficult than any which the army had yet encountered. "The passage of these ravines," says Cailliaud, "was fatal to the camels; the route was strewn with abandoned animals and baggage. The pasha himself had but a single good horse remaining. We were constrained to leave behind us a camel, part of its load, and the mule of M. Letorzec, who then mounted the dromedary which carried my papers and drawings; but the poor animal, exhausted with fatigue, lay down. In vain did we employ every means to raise it, we could not succeed. That part of the forest in which we were was full of small dead trees and dry brush-wood, which was imprudently set on fire by the soldiers at a short distance from us. Soon the flames were ready to envelop us; I resolved to lose the dromedary, but I wished to save its load, which contained all my papers. We had nothing at hand to cut the cords and straps which bound it, and in our anxiety made useless efforts to untie them. All was over: the fruit of so much trouble and peril was about to become the prey of the flames. They cried out to us to save ourselves, but I could not resign myself to sacrifice my treasures. Already the heat scorched us, we felt the approach of the fire; we must leave—I uttered a cry of despair. Meanwhile our camel, feeling the flames, rose, darted forward a little distance, and fell again. We ran to it, tore away the precious load, and placed it on my horse, which I drew by the bridle, while M. Letorzec urged it in the rear. But the wind drove the flames toward us; they advanced nearer and nearer; we were almost overcome with terror, when, oh, joy! the trees became scattering, and we issued from the wood."

Having escaped this danger, the travelers found that they had lost their way, and were in almost equal peril, until they encountered some straggling soldiers. On reaching the camp Cailliaud found that his baggage had not arrived, and was indebted to the charity of some soldiers for a cake of dourra, after eating which he slept upon his saddle-cloth, in the open air. The place where they were encamped was called Abkoulgui, situated, according to Cailliaud's observations, in latitude  $10^{\circ} 38'$  north. "The village consists of a few scattered habitations, on an elevated slope, whence the view extends over several other hills more or less wooded, and covered with isolated habitations. In the south one sees the distant mountain of Mafsa, and in the west the long ridge of Obah. Abkoulgui appears to be the central point of the province of Gamamyl, which is two days' journey in extent. It is watered by the Toumat and a great quantity of its tributary torrents; the soil is a clay, full of sand and pebbles, and showing everywhere traces of oxyd of iron.

This province is reputed to be the richest in auriferous substances, where the negroes have been most successful in collecting gold dust."

The pasha, impatient to test the value of the gold washings, sent Cailliaud the next day to examine them. The negroes had sunk pits eighteen or twenty feet deep, in the bed and banks of the river, and washed out in wooden bowls the earth which they took from these places. The traveler succeeded in getting a few very small grains of fine gold, after washing for some time, but the result was very unsatisfactory to the pasha, who next day sent him to another gold-washing, with several miners and an escort of thirty men. Here he opened new pits, and carefully washed the earth, but the gold was found in quantities so small as scarcely to repay the labor. Finally, in the hope that the natives knew of richer deposits, Ismail sent out an expedition to take some prisoners. Among those captured was a chief, who informed him that during the rainy season, the floods sometimes washed down pieces of gold as large as beans, but that at the present time, it was only found in dust and small grains. He indicated several of the most favorable places in the country, and offered to conduct the pasha to them. Two or three excursions were made in different directions, under a strong armed escort, and the washing carried on vigorously for several days, but with no better success. The pasha at last became disgusted, and gave up the search entirely.

Meanwhile, his situation was becoming insecure. The Gallas, who have overrun all the south-western part of Abyssinia, and who are also enemies of the wild negro tribes, were only five or six hours distant from him; the negroes were collecting for a new assault, and he received word that a convoy of powder and other munitions had been taken by the natives near Fazogl, and an escort of twenty-five men killed. However, being re-enforced by a company of four hundred men who arrived from Sennaâr, he continued to send out parties against the neighboring villages for the purpose of increasing his harvest of slaves. All this region has the general name of Bertât; the inhabitants are of pure negro blood, and wholly savage in their character and habits. Their only religion consists in the worship of large trees, especially the baobab, under which they sometimes sacrifice sheep or goats. Their clothing is scarcely sufficient for description; their bodies are long, and nimble rather than athletic, and they are not wanting in courage, as the Egyptian troops had already learned.

"Seventeen days," says Cailliaud, "had elapsed since our arrival at Gamamyl. I had undergone many fatigues, and yet my health had improved. Every day I mounted my horse to go on the hunt of auriferous sands. We multiplied our trials, weighed the earth, calculated the proportion of the quantity of gold, but never attained any result which could give us the least hope. Those mountains of gold upon which the pasha counted so strongly, vanished like smoke: the thirty thousand negroes, which he intended to capture diminished to a few



hundreds. It became necessary to try our luck elsewhere, and he gave the order for our departure. From the want of camels I was obliged to leave behind a fine collection of minerals which I had gathered together. M. Letorzec, weighed down by fever, remained in bed during our stay; his strength visibly diminished, day after day. When he learned that we were about to set out for the purpose of penetrating still further southward, his chagrin increased his illness, and he was haunted by the idea that he would never see his native country again. We set out on the 5th of February. Most of the soldiers could not restrain their surprise at seeing that we were still marching to the south. The Shy-gheans had made a mannikin resembling a man and dressed in the fashion of their tribe; it is an established custom with them to inter a similar mannikin at the extreme limit which their hostile expeditions reach, in an enemy's country. Some of them walked in order to allow this ridiculous figure to ride on a camel; at which the Turks were greatly amused."

The army encamped near the village of Singué, which was inhabited by Mussulmen. Moussa, their chief, had sent word that he was disposed to pay a tribute, in consequence of which, the pasha prevented his troops from approaching the village, fearing they might commit depredations. Cailliaud visited the place next morning, and found it to consist of five or six hundred houses, scattered along a ridge three or four miles in length. It was almost deserted, and the traveler did not judge it prudent to remain long. The village was sacked by the troops the same day. On the afternoon of the 7th, while the greater part of the Turkish soldiers were asleep, according to their custom, a body of about a thousand negroes descended from the hills to the westward. They were finally perceived, and the pasha and his artillery-men aroused; but before the guns could be brought to bear on them, they had advanced near enough to kill some straggling soldiers. The fear of the cannon caused them to retreat precipitately to the mountains. Five hundred men were sent after them, but not being able to reach them, burned their houses. The negroes renewed their attacks next day, and succeeded in carrying off eight of the pasha's finest horses. One of the savage chiefs who had been taken prisoner, was offered his liberty if he would obtain the animals and restore them; this he swore by the Koran to do, and was accordingly liberated, but neither chief nor horses were ever seen again.

The situation of the Egyptian army was now very critical. There was a general league among all the negro tribes, to repel the invaders. The ammunition was almost exhausted; provisions were rapidly diminishing, and the latest news from Sennaar stated that the people, persuaded that the pasha and his troops would perish among the mountains, were already beginning to foment a rebellion against the Egyptian rule. The pasha at last made up his mind to submit to circumstances, and order a retreat. "The next day, February 11th," says Cailliaud, "was fixed upon for our departure. Before quitting Singué, I wished to overlook

ere, and he gave  
I was obliged to  
athered together.  
during our stay;  
he learned that  
ating still further  
as haunted by the  
nin. We set out  
not restrain their  
south. The Shy-  
ad dressed in the  
th them to inter a  
ostile expeditions  
in order to allow  
h the Turks were

which was inhabited  
at he was disposed  
revented his troops  
omit depredations.  
it to consist of five  
ee or four miles in  
d not judge it pru-  
e troops the same  
part of the Turkish  
dy of about a thou-  
ward. They were  
aroused; but before  
had advanced near  
the cannon caused  
hundred men were  
urned their houses.  
succeeded in carrying  
age chiefs who had  
ould obtain the ani-  
n to do, and was ac-  
e ever seen again.

very critical. There  
o repel the invaders.  
were rapidly dimin-  
the people, p-  
the mountains, were  
Egyptian rule. The  
stances, and order a  
Cailliaud, "was fixed  
I wished to overlook

at least, as far as my vision might reach, the regions which an inexorable fate prevented us from traversing. I climbed a hill, and there, armed with a telescope, I sought to discover the regions where my imagination had placed the source of the White Nile. Vain effort! I only convinced myself anew how limited is the space which the human eye can embrace. Ceasing to gaze at a horizon which exhibited only vapory and confused outlines, I carved deeply on the rock the name of France, and transported myself, in thought, to that beloved land. The army slowly debouched from the labyrinth of hills which surrounds Singué, cutting for itself a path to the west of that which it had followed in coming. We were still surrounded with enemies, and observed an order of march more regular than usual. This retrograde movement inspired all the men with new energy; even the animals seemed to understand that we were returning, and marched more firmly and rapidly. Joy was painted on the faces of all; the Bedouins and the Albanians manifested theirs by songs; the remembrance of past hardships was banished from memory, and all hopes were turned toward Egypt."

After a toilsome march of four days, the army reached Adassy, on the Nile. The troops rushed to the bank, and precipitated themselves into the river, each anxious to be the first to drink of its waters. M. Letorzec was in such a weak state, that Cailliaud applied to the pasha for a boat, in order to descend the river to Sennaar, and the latter was so obliging as to give up his own barque, as he intended returning by land with the army. He sent with the travelers a courier to his father, who was intrusted with two quintals of the auriferous sands of Gamamyl, and a report on the gold region, containing the results of the experiments made under Cailliaud's direction. The barque left for Sennaar on the 18th. "For a long time we had not enjoyed so much ease and tranquillity. We experienced an inexpressible feeling of pleasure in sleeping, without being suddenly called up by the drum-beat; in having to suffer no more from hunger, thirst, watchfulness, alarms; in being relieved from tending, feeding, loading and unloading camels; and, instead of running the risk of being buried in torrents, torn by the thorns of mimosas and nebbuks, or swept by the flames of burning forests, in lying peacefully upon a thick carpet in the shade, all day long. Ah, this new life was too luxurious—it was the height of felicity!"

In passing the cataract of El-Kerr, the boat struck a rock and damaged the bow, occasioning a dangerous leak. It was on the point of sinking; all was terror and confusion; Cailliaud seized his packages of notes and drawings, and leaped upon a rock, and for awhile a complete shipwreck threatened them. Finally, however, the leak was found and stopped, the boat temporarily calked, and the travelers continued their voyage to Sennaar, where they arrived without further mishap, on the 26th. Cailliaud immediately went to his old residence, where he was received with great joy by his former hosts. In delivering to Divan Effendi, the commander of the garrison, the letters of Ismail Pasha, he learned that the

latter had ordered that he should be furnished with camels, and with the funds necessary for the expenses of his journey to Egypt. As he expected to receive some money in Dongola, he took but five thousand piasters (\$250). As there were symptoms of insurrections in the provinces of Halfay and Shendy, he determined to make no stay in Sennaar, but to push forward and examine the reported ruins of Mesowurat and Naga, before the country should become insecure. He had desired to explore Kordofan, but the state of M. Letorzeo's health was such that he could not have supported the journey. This circumstance, which seemed so unfortunate at the time, was in reality the salvation of the travelers. Had they remained longer they would probably have become involved in the same fate which overtook Ismail Pasha and a great part of his army.

Cailliaud left Sennaar on the 1st of March, and reached Halfay on the 9th. M. Letorzeo was so ill that he was obliged to travel in a litter, fastened on the back of a camel. After resting a day they resumed the route to Shendy, following the eastern bank of the Nile. "On the 14th," says Cailliaud, "after having traveled for an hour over a plain thinly covered with small acacias, I reached some ruins which had attracted my attention at a distance; I recognized the site of an ancient city by the enormous mounds of burned brick, several of which still indicated the outlines of buildings. The place is known by the name of Naga. The most remarkable ruins are those of a typhonium, or temple to the Evil Principle, which is about eighty-seven feet in length." On the 15th they passed a great many villages, announcing their approach to Shendy, where they arrived at noon. They immediately visited the Turkish governor, who procured them a house, as they intended remaining some days. M. Linant, who had returned from Sennaar with Ibrahim Pasha, was at Shendy.

Before setting out on his return to Egypt, Cailliaud desired to visit the ruins of Naga near Djebel Ardan, and those of Mesowurat. His companion, although convalescent, was not able to support the fatigue. It was, therefore, agreed that he should leave for Egypt in a few days, and journey by short stages until overtaken by Cailliaud. The latter set out on the 22d, accompanied by two guides and two servants. After journeying all day down a long valley extending to the south, he reached the extremity of the mountains, where the ruins were said to exist. "It was already night," he writes, "and my guides did not consider it prudent to go further, for fear of meeting with the Shukorees, who were in open revolt. We unloaded our camels cautiously, and lay down under the acacias which surrounded us. Wrapped in a quilt, with my head on a bundle of papers, I slept soundly, my Arabs watching by turns through the night. I awoke at dawn, and finding every thing quiet, advanced through the trees toward the ruins, which I discovered near at hand. The first object which I saw was a temple covered with Egyptian sculptures, with its pylon, and a portico of Greco-Roman ar-

mels, and with the  
gypt. As he ex-  
but five thousand  
ctions in the prov-  
no stay in Sennaar,  
of Mesowurat and  
He had desired to  
ealth was such that  
circumstance, which  
he salvation of the  
bably have become  
na and a great part

reached Halfay on  
to travel in a lit-  
a day they resumed  
he Nile. "On the  
hour over a plain  
ruins which had at-  
e site of an ancient  
ral of which still in-  
wn by the name of  
phonium, or temple  
et in length." On  
eing their approach  
mediately visited the  
ey intended remain-  
ennaar with Ibrahim

aud desired to visit  
of Mesowurat. His  
support the fatigue.  
Egypt in a few days,  
Cailliaud. The latter  
s and two servants.  
ing to the south, he  
e ruins were said to  
guides did not con-  
with the Shukorees,  
s cautiously, and lay  
pped in a quilt, with  
Arabs watching by  
finding every thing  
which I discovered  
temple covered with  
of Greco-Roman ar-

chitecture, with Egyptian ornaments. Still further were the ruins of another grand temple, with finely sculptured decorations, and preceded by an avenue of sphinxes; the substructions of several other edifices, and those of a public tank. I recognized here the ruins of an ancient city, the importance of which was attested by the nature of the remains which still existed, and by the extent of territory which they occupied. \* \* \* My guides arrived, and in order that we might not be seen by the rebel Arabs, we established our residence in the western temple. I then began, assisted by my two servants, to make a more careful examination of the monuments."

Cailliaud found the largest temple to be two hundred and seventy feet in length, including the pylon and avenue of sphinxes. "The sculptures of the interior are almost entirely destroyed. This state of degradation is owing, I suppose, to the insignificant height of the walls and the action of the tropical rains. The figures are without the indication of a beard, so common in the sculptures of the Egyptian temples. The peculiar character of their costume, and the *embonpoint* of their figures, give evidence of a people quite distinct from the ancient Egyptians, but who, nevertheless, appear to have had the same symbolic writing and the same religious ideas." For three days and a half the traveler remained among these ruins, sketching by day and writing by night; but his supply of water was getting low, and the desire of examining El-Mesowurat before returning to Shendy, obliged him to leave.

The ruins of Mesowurat are about six hours' travel north-east of Naga. "I was struck with astonishment," writes Cailliaud, "on approaching the immense ruins which were exhibited to my gaze. I wandered from court to court, from temple to temple, from one chamber to another, traversing the corridors and galleries which connect the different structures. In this rapid survey I counted eight temples or sanctuaries, forty-one chambers, twenty-four courts, and three galleries, all surrounded with walls, and occupying a space two thousand five hundred feet in circumference. On returning to my guides, I discovered that we had only water enough for twenty-four hours. My intention was to remain here five or six days. I proposed to the men to go to the Nile and replenish the stock, but was obliged to pay them extravagantly before they would consent. I mounted on the most elevated wall of the central edifice, where my eye overlooked all the ruins. There, carefully studying the distribution of the different edifices around me, I became convinced that they formerly belonged to a college. Were these silent solitudes, I asked myself, ever animated by the boisterous sports of youth? Have these ruins ever resounded with the voices of the professors? Yes, these rude figures of birds and animals traced on the walls, are the work of childish hands; these names, engraved in Ethiopian characters, are those of students; and these others, in Greek, are without doubt those of strangers, whom the celebrity of the institution has attracted.

"However extensive are these ruins of Mesowurat, nothing had led me to conjecture that the place could ever have been the site of a city. I found neither tombs nor any great number of ordinary habitations. A matter worthy of notice is the small size of the stones employed in the construction of the temples. Taking into consideration this want of strength and solidity in the materials, in a climate where the rain falls for three months in the year, one is led to believe that the ruins which remain have not, like those of Thebes, resisted the injuries of time during a long course of ages. They evidently do not possess a very great antiquity. The tradition of the country is that the name of El-Mesowurat was that of the ancient fakeers who inhabited these vast edifices. This tradition confirms the opinion that the place was devoted to education."

Cailliaud returned to Shendy on the 2d of April, where he found that M. Letorzec had set out for Egypt ten days beforehand. He immediately followed, by way of the Pyramids of Meroë and Damer, and reached El-Mekheyref, in Berber, after a journey of five days. Finding that his companion was still six days in advance, and hurrying toward Egypt, he halted but a day to procure some provisions from the governor (the province having been completely stripped by the army), and then continued his course through the country of Robatat, to Djebel Berkel. Passing Abou-Hammed, at the northern extremity of the great bend of the Nile, and the long island of Mokrat, he at last overtook M. Letorzec on the 18th, at a place called El-Kab. The latter was very much exhausted by the fever, which obliged them to travel with less rapidity, and they were therefore eight days more in reaching Mount Berkel.

Cailliaud remained at this place more than two weeks, in order to make a complete survey of the ruins. "Every morning, at sunrise," he says, "I repaired to the ruins, and I did not leave them until night. In the middle of the day, I occupied myself in drawing the interior sculptures of the typhonium, and the sanctuaries of the pyramids, where I sought a shelter against the excessive heat, which was often 105° in the shade. Mount Berkel, isolated on the desert plain, is a mass of sandstone about three quarters of a mile in circumference. Its southern side is a naked precipice two hundred feet high, at the base of which are the temples, all facing the river. Among the sculptures are two cartouches, which, according to Champollion, contain the name of Tirhaka, the first king of the Ethiopian dynasty who invaded Egypt, in the eighth century before the Christian era. The style of the figures and ornaments is the pure style of the monuments of Egypt and Lower Nubia. That part of the temple which is excavated in the mountain, is in a good state of preservation. East of the typhonium there are many remains of walls and fragments of columns, extending for some distance. Among these I discovered two lions of rose-colored granite, of Egyptian style and beautiful form. \* \* \* Every thing goes to prove that the vast

t, nothing had led  
the site of a city.  
inary habitations.  
ones employed in  
ration this want of  
ere the rain falls  
at the ruins which  
juries of time dur-  
ossess a very great  
ame of El-Mesow-  
these vast edifices.  
devoted to edu-

l, where he found  
forehand. He im-  
s and Damer, and  
five days. Find-  
nce, and hurrying  
rovisions from the  
ped by the army),  
f Robatat, to Dje-  
a extremity of the  
rat, he at last over-  
b. The latter was  
em to travel with  
more in reaching

weeks, in order to  
ing, at sunrise," he  
em until night. In  
the interior sculpt-  
pyramids, where I  
s often 105° in the  
is a mass of sand-

Its southern side  
base of which are  
atures are two car-  
e name of Tirhaka,  
gypt, in the eighth  
e figures and orna-  
and Lower Nubia.  
untain, is in a good  
are many remains  
e distance. Among  
e, of Egyptian style  
rove that the vast

ruins of Mount Berkel are those of the city of Napata, the ancient capital of Ethiopia, of which the pyramids of Noori were the necropolis.

"On the 12th of May, my designs and observations being finished, I made preparations for my departure. Knowing that I should find no more antiquities on either bank of the Nile, I resolved to cross the desert in a north-western course, hoping that on the line of communication between Napata and the island of Argo there might be something worthy of notice. We laid in a large supply of water, and on the evening of the 13th struck into the desert. There was no path across the arid plains; the night came, and our guide regulated his march by the stars. About one o'clock in the morning, not being able to conquer our drowsiness, we halted and took two hours' rest. At nine o'clock, the thermometer stood at 108°. We pitched our tent and tried to sleep, but in vain; the intense heat obliged us to drink a little water and bathe our faces every half hour. At one o'clock the temperature inside of the tent was 117°. The desert was an immense plain of naked sand and sandstone rock; some fragments of petrified palms, scattered here and there, seemed to attest that nature was for ever dead in these frightful solitudes, and the rays of a burning sun, reflected from the incandescent sands, pierced our eyes with their terrible power."

The next night they stopped to take two hours' sleep, but were so fatigued that they slept four and a half, which obliged them to travel until eleven o'clock, at which time the thermometer stood at 118° in the shade. The *Khamseen*, or desert-wind, began to blow; the atmosphere was charged with clouds of sand, and the sun gave but a dim and lurid light. This place was called by the Arabs the *Salamât* (Welcome). They left in the afternoon and made a march of seventeen hours, during which they found it almost impossible to keep their seats on the camels, from drowsiness and fatigue. Owing to the great evaporation and the thirst of the party, the water had diminished so rapidly, that Cailliaud put the Arabs on allowance, "but this precaution was hardly necessary," says he, "for we were near the Nile. Presently we perceived, in the distance, a zone of verdure along the horizon, and at seven in the evening we had completed this inconsiderate journey, for there was no monument of any kind to repay us for our toil and danger. We found ourselves in the province of Dongola, opposite the island of Argo, and had thus, at least, shortened our journey six days."

After passing Tombos, where he found a granite colossus of Egyptian workmanship, Cailliaud conceived the idea of visiting the Oasis of Selimeh, which lies in the Libyan Desert, three days' journey west of the Nile, on the caravan route from Egypt to Dar-Fur. He set out on the 25th of May, accompanied by M. Letorzec and two Arabs. They had a painful journey of thirty hours over the burning desert, and at last came in sight of Selimeh. "Before descending into the valley," says the traveler, "I gazed eagerly over the beautiful verdure of the palms,



which contrasted so strikingly with the aridity of the sands around them; but I sought in vain for any trace of that beautiful temple, before which, the Arabs said, I should stand in ecstacy. With what bitterness I cursed my blind confidence in men, whom, from long experience, I ought to have known better!" After this disappointment Cailliaud remained two days at the oasis to rest, and then, returning by forced marches, reached the Nile again on the 31st of May.

He paid another visit to the temple of Soleb, examined the insignificant ruins at Amarah, and then continued his route to Wadi Halfa, where he arrived on the 13th of June. While descending the Nile, a week afterward, he met a bark coming up the river, on board of which was Captain Gordon, an English traveler, on his way to Dongola. "His project, like mine, was to explore the White Nile. He was a robust mariner, firmly resolved to undertake this perilous enterprise alone; but he perished like so many others. He began, rather imprudently, too soon to adopt the hard life and customs of the Arabs; like them, a pair of drawers and a shirt were all his clothing; he plunged into the water and swam every hour of the day; he abstained scrupulously from all nourishing food, in order that he might accustom himself to support the privations and fatigues which he expected to undergo. Such devotion and resolution were not rewarded with success. He fell ill, and died before reaching Sennaâr."

On reaching Assouan, Cailliaud sent M. Letorzeo with the baggage and collections in a boat to Thebes, and continued his own journey with his camels, in order to visit the ruins of El-Kab, Edfoo, and Esneh by the way. He did not tarry long at any of these places: "On the 6th of July," he writes, "I found myself in the midst of the splendid remains of Medeenet-Abou. With what pleasure and admiration I again beheld those propylons, those immense porticoes and colonnades, which thirty-five centuries have respected! In the afternoon I reached Goorneh, where I found M. Letorzeo, quite restored by the air of Egypt. Nothing in my house had been damaged; the Arabs seemed delighted to see us again safe and sound after a journey in which so many others had lost their lives. Thebes was in our eyes almost a French port; no obstacle now separated us from our country."

Cailliaud remained at Thebes until the 15th of September, employing himself in copying the sculptures on the walls of Memnon's tomb. He also made excursions to Ekhmin, Abydos, and other ruins which he had not previously visited, and was about setting out on another trip to the Great Oasis, for the purpose of examining more carefully the ruined temple there, when some Arab burglars, who entered his house at night, carried off all his ready money, and obliged him to give up the undertaking. Leaving Thebes, finally, with his companion, he descended the Nile rapidly and reached Cairo on the 27th. The travelers sailed from Alexandria on the 30th of October, in a Genoese brig bound for Marseilles. The passage was very stormy, and the brig narrowly escaped

the sands around  
beautiful temple, be-  
With what bit-  
m, from long ex-  
his disappointment  
then, returning by  
May.

mined the insignifi-  
te to Wadi Halfa,  
ending the Nile, a  
on board of which  
to Dongola. "His

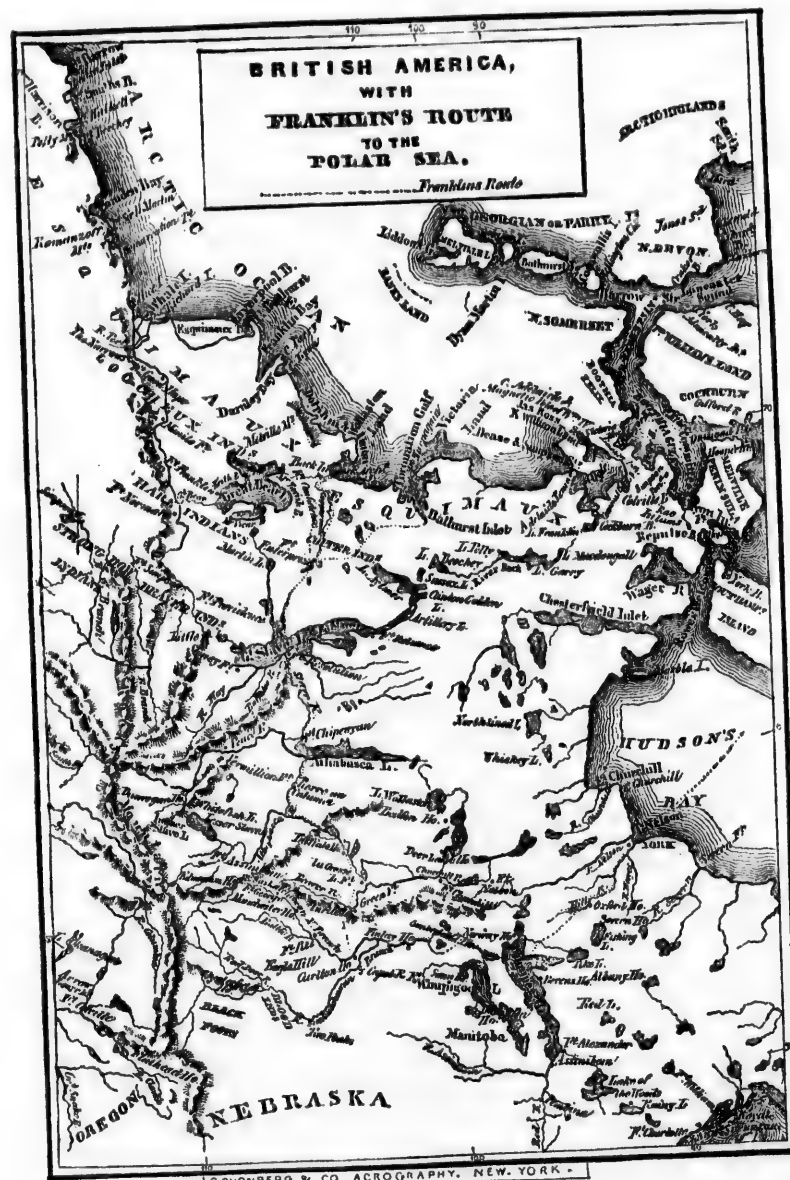
He was a robust  
terprise alone; but  
er imprudently, too  
s; like them, a pair  
nged into the water  
erupulously from all  
mself to support the  
go. Such devotion  
fell ill, and died be-

c with the baggage  
his own journey with  
Edfoo, and Esneh by  
places: "On the 8th  
the splendid remains  
ration I again beheld  
nnades, which thirty-  
I reached Goorneh,  
r of Egypt. Nothing  
d delighted to see us  
many others had lost  
ach port; no obstacle

September, employing  
Memnon's tomb. He  
er ruins which he had  
on another trip to the  
refully the ruined tem-  
d his house at night,  
to give up the under-  
ion, he descended the  
e travelers sailed from  
e brig bound for Mar-  
brig narrowly escaped

shipwreck off the Sardinian coast, but on the 11th of December anchored in the harbor of Marseilles. The very next vessel which arrived from Egypt brought the news of the terrible fate of Ismail Pasha, his staff, and fifty of his troops, in Shendy. Mek Nemr, who had sworn vengeance against him, persuaded him to attend a festival held in a large building some distance from the Egyptian camp, and having surrounded the place in the night with combustible materials, set fire to it and burned to death all who were within.

Cailliaud's account of his journey, in four octavo volumes, with an accompanying folio containing maps, plans, and engravings, was published in Paris in 1826. It is from this edition that the present abridgement has been prepared.





## FRANKLIN'S

### OVERLAND JOURNEY TO THE POLAR SEA.

In the year 1819, the British Government determined to send an expedition by land from Hudson's Bay to explore the northern coast of America from the mouth of the Coppermine River eastward. Captain, afterward Sir John Franklin, was appointed to the command, with Dr. John Richardson, and Messrs. George Back and Robert Hood, midshipmen, as associates. Captain Franklin also took with him John Hepburn, an English seaman; the rest of the party were to consist of Canadian hunters and *voyageurs*. They embarked at Gravesend on the 23d of May, 1819, on board the Hudson's Bay Company's ship *Prince of Wales*, and after touching at Stromness, in the Orkney Islands, where they procured four skillful boatmen, reached York Factory, in Hudson's Bay, on the 30th of August, after a very stormy and perilous voyage.

According to the advice of the officers at the Factory, Franklin determined to take the route by Cumberland House, and through the chain of trading-posts to Great Slave Lake. Having procured a boat, with a steersman who acted also as guide, the party commenced their march into the interior on the 9th of September. They made the journey up Hayes and Hill Rivers very slowly, owing to the strength of the current, and were finally obliged to leave part of their supplies behind, in the charge of some of the Company's traders, who promised to forward them the next spring. On passing the White Fall, Franklin slipped into the river and was on the point of being carried over, when he happened to seize a willow branch strong enough to sustain him. They arrived at Norway House, on Lake Winnipeg, on the 6th of October, after which they traveled with more rapidity, and reached Cumberland House, on the Saskatchewan, on the 23d of the same month.

By this time the ice was forming in the rivers, and it was impossible to proceed further by boats. The whole party remained at Cumberland House until the middle of January, accustoming themselves to the life they were thenceforth to lead, and making preparations for the journey

to Slave Lake. They had also an opportunity of witnessing the habits of the Cree Indians, who had assembled around the Fort. These people were dissipated in their habits, but unusually honest, and very superstitious. They have among them professed conjurors, who take advantage of their fears to tyrannize over them and procure a good living at their expense. One of these conjurors came to Cumberland House during Franklin's residence there. "He immediately began to trumpet forth his powers, boasting, among other things, that although his hands and feet were tied as securely as possible, yet, when placed in a conjuring-house, he would speedily disengage himself by the aid of two or three familiar spirits who were attendant on his call. He was instantly taken at his word, and, that his exertions might not be without an aim, a capot or great-coat was promised as the reward of his success. A conjuring-house having been erected in the usual form, that is, by sticking four willows in the ground and tying their tops to a hoop at the height of six or eight feet, he was fettered completely by winding several fathoms of rope around his body and extremities, and placed in its narrow apartment, not exceeding two feet in diameter. A moose-skin being then thrown over the frame, secluded him from our view. He forthwith began to chant a kind of hymn in a very monotonous tone. The rest of the Indians, who seemed in some doubt respecting the powers of a devil when put in competition with those of a white man, ranged themselves around and watched the result with anxiety. In this manner an hour and a half elapsed; but at length our attention, which had begun to flag, was roused by the violent shaking of the conjuring-house. It was instantly whispered around the circle, that at least one devil had crept under the moose-skin. But it proved to be only the "God-like man" (as he called himself), trembling with cold. He had entered the lists stripped to the skin, and the thermometer stood very low that evening. His attempts were continued, however, with considerable resolution for half an hour longer, when he reluctantly gave in. He had found no difficulty in slipping through the noose when it was formed by his countrymen; but, in the present instance, the knot was tied by Governor Williams, who is an expert sailor. After this unsuccessful exhibition his credit sank amazingly, and he took the earliest opportunity of sneaking away from the Fort."

Franklin divided his company, leaving Dr. Richardson and Mr. Hood at Cumberland House until the spring, and taking with him only Mr. Back and Hepburn. He set out on the 18th of January, 1820, furnished with two dog-sleds by the Company's agents, and some Canadians whom he had taken into his service. He reached Carlton House after a walk of fourteen days, during which the three Englishmen suffered greatly from the unaccustomed chafing of the snow-shoes. The weather was intensely cold: "Our tea," says Franklin, "froze in the tin pots before we could drink it, and even a mixture of spirits and water became quite thick by congelation; yet, after we lay down to rest, we felt no incon-

possessing the habits of the arctic. These people are, and very superlatively, who take advantage of a good living at Cumberland House. He began to trumpet although his hands were placed in a conjuring-trick, the aid of two or three.

He was instantly without an aim, his success. A conjuring-trick, that is, by sticking a hoop at the height of several feet, and winding several times round it, and placed in its narrowest. A moose-skin was then thrown from our view. He then spoke in a very monotonous tone, without doubt respecting the character of a white man, with anxiety. In this manner he attracted our attention, which was the conjuring-trick, that at least one of the men supposed to be only the result of a conjuring-trick with cold. He had a thermometer stood very close to him, however, with confidence, he reluctantly gave up the noose when it was in the instance, the knot was sailor. After this undisturbed he took the earliest

Richardson and Mr. Hood went with him only Mr. Franklin, January, 1820, furnished some Canadians whom he sent on House after a walk. The men suffered greatly from the weather. The weather was in the tin pots before the water became quite cold, we felt no incon-

venience." The day before reaching Carlton House, they consumed their last provisions. Here they took a few days' rest, in order to recover from their fatigue, and procure supplies for the further journey.

They started again on the 8th of February, and, with the exception of a short rest at Fort La Crosse, continued their journey to Fort Chipewyan, on Athabasca Lake, where they arrived on the 26th of March. "Thus," says Franklin, "terminated a winter journey of eight hundred and fifty-seven miles, in the progress of which there was a great amount of agreeable and disagreeable circumstances: could the amount of each be balanced, I suspect the latter would much preponderate. Among these, the initiation into walking on snow-shoes must be considered as prominent. The next evil is the being constantly exposed to witness the wanton and unnecessary cruelty of the men to their dogs, especially those of the Canadians, who beat them unmercifully. There are other inconveniences, which, though keenly felt during the day's journey, are speedily forgotten, when, stretched out in the encampment before a large fire, you enjoy the social mirth of your companions, who usually pass the evening in recounting their former feats in traveling."

As Dr. Richardson and Mr. Hood were to wait at Cumberland House until the opening of river navigation in the spring, Franklin was obliged to wait at Chipewyan House for their arrival, which did not take place until the 13th of July. He made use of the intervening time in sending messages to the chief of the Coppermine Indians, who professed his willingness to assist him in his explorations, in engaging boatmen and interpreters, and building canoes, and in preparing dispatches for England. Richardson and Hood brought along two canoes, but the pemmican with which they had been supplied by the agents of the Hudson's Bay Company proved to be so moldy, that they threw it away, and they had but provisions for one day on arriving at Fort Chipewyan. Franklin obtained all the supplies that could be spared from the fort, but could obtain neither ammunition nor spirits, and but little tobacco. He says: "We then made a final arrangement respecting the voyageurs who were to accompany the party; and fortunately there was no difficulty in doing this, as Dr. Richardson and Mr. Hood had taken the very judicious precaution of bringing up ten men from Cumberland, who were engaged to proceed forward if their services were required. These men were most desirous of being continued, and we felt sincere pleasure in being able to keep men who were so zealous in the cause, and who had given proofs of their activity on their recent passage to this place, by discharging those men who were less willing to undertake the journey. When the numbers were completed which we had been recommended by the traders to take as a protection against the Esquimaux, we had sixteen Canadian voyageurs, and our worthy and only English attendant, John Hepburn, besides the two interpreters whom we were to receive at the Great Slave Lake; we were also accompanied by a Chipewyan woman. An equipment of goods was given to each of the men; and when this



distribution had been made, the remainder were made up into bales, preparatory to our departure on the following day, the 18th of July."

Their stock of provisions was only sufficient for one day's consumption, exclusive of two barrels of flour, three cases of preserved meats, with some chocolate, arrow-root, and portable soup, which they had brought from England and intended to reserve for their exploring tour along the coast next summer. The scarcity of food did not in the least depress the Canadians, who paddled off, singing, into the Slave River. This is a magnificent stream, three quarters of a mile wide, but interrupted by occasional rapids. Their voyage down it was without incident, and in six days they reached the trading post on Moose Deer Island, in Great Slave Lake. Here Franklin engaged St. Germain, an interpreter for the Copper Indians, and obtained five hundred and fifty pounds of dried meat. He then crossed the lake to Fort Providence, on the northern side, where he found Mr. Wentzel, one of the Company's clerks, who intended to accompany the expedition to the Coppermine River, together with Adam, an interpreter, and one of the Indian guides. The chief of the tribe, who was encamped in the neighborhood, was at once sent for, and a grand council was held on his arrival, which terminated in his agreeing to accompany Franklin. His name was Akaitcho, or Big-foot. After the council was over, presents were distributed to him and his braves, and the ceremonies terminated with an Indian dance.

The party left Fort Providence on the 2d of August. "Our stores," says Franklin, "consisted of two barrels of gunpowder, one hundred and forty pounds of balls and small shot, four fowling-pieces, a few old trading-guns, eight pistols, twenty-four Indian daggers, some packages of knives, chisels, axes, nails, and fastenings for a boat, a few yards of cloth, some blankets, needles, looking-glasses, and beads, together with nine fishing-nets, having meshes of different sizes." There were twenty-eight persons in all, including the wives of three of the voyageurs, who went along for the purpose of making shoes and clothes for the men in their winter quarters. Fort Providence is the last trading establishment, and the country beyond it had never before been visited by any European. They ascended Yellow-knife River, which flows into Great Slave Lake from the north-east, a distance of one hundred and fifty-six miles, passing through a chain of lakes, between which there were many rapids, requiring portage of the canoes. They then crossed a barren water-shed for thirty miles, carrying their canoes from lake to lake, until, on the 20th, they reached a river running to the north-west, on the banks of which the chief, Akaitcho, proposed they should establish their winter quarters. "We found that the situation they had chosen possessed all the advantages we could desire. The trees were numerous, and of a far greater size than we had supposed them to be on a distant view, some of the pines being thirty or forty feet high, and two feet in diameter at the root. We determined on placing the house on the summit of the

de up into bales,  
e 18th of July."  
e day's consump-  
preserved meats,  
, which they had  
their exploring tour  
did not in the least  
to the Slave River.  
le wide, but inter-  
as without incident,  
se Deer Island, in  
main, an interpreter  
and fifty pounds of  
Providence, on the  
of the Company's  
to the Coppermine  
one of the Indian  
n the neighborhood,  
on his arrival, which  
in. His name was  
r, presents were dis-  
terminated with an

gust. "Our stores,"  
powder, one hundred  
ling-pieces, a few old  
ggers, some packages  
boat, a few yards of  
beads, together with

There were twenty-  
f the voyageurs, who  
clothes for the men in  
trading establishment,  
visited by any Euro-  
flows into Great Slave  
ed and fifty-six miles,  
ere were many rapids,  
ed a barren water-shed  
to lake, until, on the  
west, on the banks of  
establish their winter  
d chosen possessed all  
numerous, and of a far  
n a distant view, some  
two feet in diameter at  
on the summit of the

bank, which commands a beautiful prospect of the surrounding country. In the afternoon we read divine service, and offered our thanksgiving to the Almighty for his goodness in having brought us thus far on our journey."

Akaitechq, however, broke his promise of accompanying Franklin to the Coppermine River, alleging that the season was now too far advanced, and his tribe were obliged to procure deer-skins for the winter. No persuasion could induce him to change his decision; so, after mature deliberation, Franklin gave up the idea of reaching the sea until the next summer. He thought it prudent, however, to send a party to explore the upper waters of the Coppermine, and ascertain its rapids, etc., and dispatched Back and Hood, with St. Germain, the interpreter, and eight Canadians, on this duty. Soon after they left, he left Mr. Wentzel to superintend the building of the fort, and started with Dr. Richardson on a pedestrian journey to the Coppermine. Both parties were only absent about ten days, and on their return found that the winter-house, which they named Fort Enterprise, was already roofed in.



FORT ENTERPRISE.

"On the 6th of October," says Franklin, "the house being completed, we struck our tents, and moved into it. It was merely a log building, fifty feet long and twenty-four wide, divided into a hall, three bed-rooms, and a kitchen. The walls and roof were plastered with clay, the floors laid with planks rudely squared with the hatchet, and the windows closed with parchment of deer-skin." They now went to work to secure a good supply of provisions for the winter, and, with the assistance of the Indians, had stored away, by the middle of October, one

hundred and eighty deer, together with one thousand pounds of suet, and some dried meat. On the 18th, Messrs. Back and Wentzel set out for Fort Providence, with two Canadians and two Indians, to attend to the transporting of the stores which Franklin expected to receive from Cumberland House. In the following month one of the Canadians returned, stating that the supplies had not arrived; that Mr. Weeks, the company's agent at Fort Providence, was endeavoring to prejudice the Indians against them, and that Mr. Back would probably be obliged to continue his journey to Fort Chipewyan to obtain supplies. All these disappointments were very embarrassing to Franklin, and they no doubt had an effect on the fortunes of the expedition.

The weather during December was the coldest they experienced. "The thermometer sank on one occasion to  $57^{\circ}$  below zero, and never rose beyond  $6^{\circ}$  above it; the mean for the month was  $-29^{\circ}.7$ . During these intense colds, however, the atmosphere was generally calm, and the wood-cutters and others went about their ordinary occupations without using any extraordinary precautions, yet without feeling any bad effects. They had their reindeer-shirts on, leathern mittens lined with blankets, and furred caps; but none of them used any defense for the face, or needed any. The intense colds were, nevertheless, detrimental to us in another way. The trees froze to their very centers and became as hard as stones, and more difficult to cut. Some of the axes were broken daily, and by the end of the month we had only one left that was fit for felling trees. A thermometer, hung in our bed-room at the distance of sixteen feet from the fire, but exposed to its direct radiation, stood even in the day-time occasionally at  $15^{\circ}$  below zero, and was observed more than once, previous to the kindling of the fire in the morning, to be as low as  $40^{\circ}$  below zero.

"A considerable portion of our time was occupied in writing up our journals. Some newspapers and magazines, that we had received from England with our letters, were read again and again, and commented upon at our meals; and we often exercised ourselves with conjecturing the changes that might take place in the world before we could hear from it again. We occasionally paid the woodmen a visit, or took a walk for a mile or two on the river. In the evenings we joined the men in the hall, and took a part in their games, which generally continued till a late hour; in short, we never found the time to hang heavy on our hands; and the peculiar occupations of each of the officers afforded them more employment than might at first be supposed. Our diet consisted almost entirely of reindeer meat, varied twice a week by fish, and occasionally by a little flour, but we had no vegetables of any description. On Sunday mornings we drank a cup of chocolate, but our greatest luxury was tea (without sugar), of which we regularly partook twice a day. With reindeer's fat, and strips of cotton shirts, we formed candles; and Hepburn acquired considerable skill in the manufacture of soap, from the wood-ashes, fat, and salt."

and pounds of suet, and Wentzel set out Indians, to attend to ed to receive from the Canadiens re- that Mr. Weeks, voring to prejudice orobably be obliged supplies. All these and they no doubt

t they experienced. low zero, and never as  $-29^{\circ}.7$ . During generally calm, and ry occupations with- out feeling any bad mittens lined with any defense for the rtheless, detrimental centers and became e of the axes were d only one left that our bed-room at the o its direct radiation, w zero, and was ob- the fire in the morn-

upied in writing up hat we had received and again, and com- d ourselves with con- the world before we he woodmen a visit, ne evenings we joined mes, which generally und the time to hang of each of the officers st be supposed. Our ried twice a week by no vegetables of any of chocolate, but our we regularly partook tton shirts, we formed in the manufacture of

Thus the winter passed away, and on the 17th of March, 1821, Lieutenant Back returned, after an absence of five months, during which time he had traveled eleven hundred and four miles on snow-shoes, with no other covering at night than a blanket and deer-skin, with the thermometer frequently at  $40^{\circ}$ , and once  $57^{\circ}$ , below zero. Their provisions now gave out, and the months of April and May were spent principally in replenishing their supplies, in negotiations with the Indians, who, from the refusal of Mr. Weeks to pay Franklin's orders, had become unruly and discontented, and in procuring goods and ammunition for the summer voyage. The season was later than usual, and the expedition was not ready to leave before the beginning of June. Dr. Richardson was sent forward in advance, with part of the stores, to Point Lake on the Coppermine River, and on the 14th of the same month Franklin set out with the remainder of the party. He took the precaution of sending, previously, all his journals, dispatches, and other writings, to England, by way of Fort Providence and the other trading posts.

The first part of the journey was very fatiguing, as the ice on the smaller lakes was rotten, and the men broke through frequently. They traveled thus, without any serious accident, for seven days, when they reached Dr. Richardson's encampment on Point Lake. Here the ice was still six or seven feet thick, with no appearance of melting, and they were therefore obliged to drag the canoes and stores over its surface. The canoes were mounted on sledges, and drawn along by the combined efforts of dogs and men. Four days were required to cross Point Lake, as they did not make more than ten miles a day, and when this lake was passed, a short rapid conducted them to another, frozen in like manner. They were not able to launch the canoes on the Coppermine until the 2d of July, after which their voyage was less fatiguing, but much more dangerous, from the rapids in the stream and the masses of drift-ice. Their supplies of meat, however, which were quite exhausted, were now replenished from the herd of musk-oxen which they met with. On the 9th they passed safely through the Narrows of the Coppermine, a place where the river, for three quarters of a mile, is confined between precipices two hundred feet high, and shoots along in an arrowy mass of foam.

As they approached the mouth of the river, they kept a good lookout for the Esquimaux, whom they expected to find in that neighborhood. In order to secure a friendly reception from them, one of the Indian interpreters, named Augustus, was sent forward to communicate with them. He found some of them near the falls of the Coppermine, and as they seemed considerably alarmed at the news, the boats of the expedition halted a little short of that point on the 14th. "After supper Dr. Richardson ascended a lofty hill about three miles from the encampment, and obtained the first view of the sea; it appeared to be covered with ice. A large promontory, which I named Cape Hearne, bore north-east, and its lofty mountains proved to be the blue land we

had seen in the forenoon, and which had led us to believe the sea was still far distant."

They succeeded in establishing some intercourse with the Esquimaux, but found them rather shy and suspicious. They were at last able, however, to get upon a friendly footing with an old man named Terregauncuck, who had a fresh, ruddy face, a prominent nose, and a snow-white beard, two inches long. Upon showing him his face in a mirror for the first time, he exclaimed, "I shall never kill deer any more," and immediately put the mirror down. Here Akaitcho and his party left, to return to the grounds of their tribe. The expedition reached the sea on the 19th of July, when Mr. Wentzel left with four Canadians, to return to Fort Providence. The remainder of the party, including officers, now amounted to twenty men. Mr. Wentzel took Franklin's last dispatches to be forwarded to England, and was instructed to take charge of all the journals and collections left at Fort Enterprise, as well as to deposit there a quantity of supplies for Franklin's party, in case they should return by the same route. When his party had been supplied with ammunition, the remaining stock consisted of one thousand balls, with rather more than the requisite quantity of powder.

From this point their discoveries commenced. They embarked on the Polar Sea on the 21st, and turned their canoes eastward, hoping in these frail barks, to solve the problem of a north-west passage. Paddling along the coast, on the inside of a crowded range of islands, they encamped on shore after a run of thirty-seven miles, in which they experienced little interruption, and saw only a small iceberg in the distance, though that beautiful luminous effulgence emitted from the congregated ices, and distinguished by the name of the ice-blink, was distinctly visible to the northward. The coast was found of moderate height, easy of access, and covered with vegetation; but the islands were rocky and barren, presenting high cliffs of a columnar structure. In continuing their voyage, the dangers which beset a navigator in these dreadful polar solitudes thickened gloomily around them. The coast became broken and sterile, and at length rose into a high and rugged promontory, against which some large masses of ice had drifted, threatening destruction to their slender canoes. In attempting to round this cape the wind rose, an awful gloom involved the sky, and the thunder burst over their heads, compelling them to encamp till the storm subsided. They then, at the imminent risk of having the canoes crushed by the floating ice, doubled the dreary promontory, which they denominated Cape Barrow, and entered Detention Harbor, where they landed. Around them the land consisted of mountains of granite, rising abruptly from the water's edge, destitute of vegetation, and attaining an elevation of fourteen or fifteen hundred feet; seals and small deer were the only animals seen, and the former were so shy that all attempts to approach within shot were unsuccessful. With the deer the hunters were more fortunate, but these were not numerous; and while the ice closed grad-

believe the sea was  
 urse with the Esqui-  
 They were at last  
 th an old mar named  
 prominent nose, and a  
 ing him his face in a  
 never kill deer any  
 ere Akaitcho and his  
 ibe. The expedition  
 Wentzel left with four  
 remainder of the party,  
 Mr. Wentzel took  
 and, and was instruct-  
 ns left at Fort Enter-  
 supplies for Franklin's  
 ute. When his party  
 stock consisted of one  
 quantity of powder.  
 They embarked on  
 es eastward, hoping in  
 h-west passage. Pad-  
 range of islands, they  
 ules, in which they ex-  
 all iceberg in the dis-  
 emitted from the con-  
 the ice-blink, was dis-  
 as found of moderate  
 ation; but the islands  
 a columnar structure.  
 set a navigator in these  
 und them. The coast  
 into a high and rugged  
 ice had drifted, threat-  
 tempting to round this  
 e sky, and the thunder  
 camp till the storm sub-  
 ing the canoes crushed  
 ry, which they denomi-  
 bor, where they landed.  
 granite, rising abruptly  
 d attaining an elevation  
 mall deer were the only  
 all attempts to approach  
 the hunters were more  
 hile the ice closed grad-

ually around them, and their little stock of provisions, consisting of pemmican and cured beef, every day diminished, it was impossible not to regard their situation with uneasiness. Rounding Cape Kater, they entered Arctic Sound, and send a party to explore a river upon the banks of which they expected to find an Esquimaux encampment. All, however, was silent, desolate, and deserted; even these hardy natives, bred amid the polar ices, had removed from so barren a spot, and the hunters returned with two small deer and a brown bear, the latter animal so lean and sickly looking, that the men declined eating it; but the officers boiled its paws, and found them excellent.

Proceeding along the eastern shore of Arctic Sound, to which they gave the name of Banks' Peninsula, the expedition made its painful way along a coast indented by bays, and in many places studded with islands, till, on the 10th of August, they reached the open sea; and sailing, as they imagined, between the continent and a large island, found to their deep disappointment that, instead of an open channel, they were in the center of a vast bay. The state of the expedition now called for the most serious consideration upon the part of their commander. So much time had already been spent in exploring the sounds and inlets, that all hope of reaching Repulse Bay was vain; both canoes had sustained material injury; the fuel was expended; their provisions were sufficient only for three days; the appearances of the setting in of the arctic winter were too unequivocal to be mistaken; the deer, which had hitherto supplied them with fresh meat, would, it was well known, soon disappear; the geese and other aquatic birds were already seen winging their way to the southward; while the men, who had up to this moment displayed the utmost courage, began to look disheartened, and to entertain serious apprehensions for their safety. Under these circumstances, Franklin, with the concurrence of his officers, determined not to endanger the lives of his people by a further advance; and after spending four days in a minute survey of the bay, it was resolved to return by Hood's River to Fort Enterprise. Franklin's researches, as far as prosecuted at this time, favored the opinion of those who contended for the practicability of a north-west passage. It appeared probable that the coast ran east and west in the latitude assigned to Mackenzie's River, and little doubt could, in his opinion, be entertained regarding the existence of a continued sea in that direction. The portion over which they passed was navigable for vessels of any size; and the ice met with after quitting Detention Harbor would not have arrested a strong boat, while the chain of islands afforded shelter from all heavy seas, and there were good harbors at convenient distances. Having, with much severe privation, completed their course, from Point Turnagain, in Melville Bay, to the entrance of Hood's River, they ascended as high as the first rapid, and encamped, terminating here their voyage on the Arctic Sea, during which they had gone over six hundred and fifty geographical miles.



On the prospect of commencing their land journey, the Canadians could not conceal their satisfaction; and the evening previous to their departure was passed in talking over their past adventures, and congratulating each other in having at length turned their backs upon the sea, little anticipating that the most painful and hazardous portion of the expedition was yet to come. Before setting off, an assortment of iron materials, beads, looking-glasses, and other articles, was put up in a



WILBERFORCE FALLS.

conspicuous situation for the Esquimaux, and the English union was planted on the loftiest sand-hill, where it might be seen by any ships passing in the offing. Here also was deposited in a tin box a letter containing an outline of the proceedings of the expedition, the latitude and longitude of the principal places, and the course intended to be pursued toward Slave Lake. They now proceeded up the river in their canoes, and though upon a short allowance of provisions, the produce of their nets and fowling-pieces furnished for a few days enough to ward off absolute want; but they were often on the very brink of it. Their pro-

AR SEA.

y, the Canadians  
previous to their  
ventures, and con-  
r backs upon the  
ous portion of the  
esortment of iron  
was put up in a

English union was  
seen by any ships  
in box a letter con-  
on, the latitude and  
ended to be pursued  
ver in their canoes,  
the produce of their  
ugh to ward off ab-  
k of it. Their pro-

gress was much interrupted by shoals and rapids, and one evening they encamped at the lower end of a narrow chasm, the walls of which were upward of two hundred feet high, and in some places only a few yards apart. Into this the river precipitates itself, forming two magnificent cascades, to which they gave the name of Wilberforce Falls, and the combined height of which they estimated at two hundred and seventy-five feet.

On taking a survey of its further course from a neighboring hill, the river was discovered to be so rapid and shallow, that all progress in the large canoes seemed impossible. Two smaller boats were therefore constructed; and on the 1st of September they set off, with the intention of proceeding in as direct a line as possible to the part of Point Lake opposite their spring encampment—a distance which appeared comparatively trifling, being only one hundred and forty-nine miles. Their luggage consisted of ammunition, nets, hatchets, ice-chisels, astronomical instruments, clothing-blankets, three kettles, and the two canoes, each so light as to be carried easily by a single man. But disaster attacked them in their very first stage. A storm of snow came on, accompanied by a high wind, against which it was difficult to carry the canoes, which were damaged by the falls of those who bore them. The ground was covered with small stones, and much pain was endured by the carriers, whose soft moose-skin shoes were soon cut through. The cold was intense; and on encamping they looked in vain for wood; a fire of moss was all they could procure, which served them to cook their supper, but gave so little heat that they were glad to creep under their blankets.

Having ascended next morning one of the highest hills, they ascertained that the river took a westerly course, and Franklin, thinking that to follow it further would lead to a more tedious journey than their exhausted strength could endure, determined to quit its banks and make directly for Point Lake. Emerging, therefore, from the valley, they crossed a barren country, varied only by marshy levels and small lakes. The weather was fine, but unfortunately no berry-bearing plants were found, the surface being covered in the more humid spots with a few grasses, and in other places with some gray melancholy lichens. On encamping, the last piece of pemmican, or pounded flesh, was distributed, with a little arrow-root, for supper. The evening was warm; but dark clouds overspread the sky, and they experienced those sudden alternations of climate which occur in the polar latitudes at this season. At midnight it rained in torrents; but toward morning a snow-storm arose, accompanied by a violent gale. During the whole day the storm continued, and not having the comfort of a fire the men remained in bed, but the tents were frozen; around them the snow had drifted to the depth of three feet, and even within lay several inches thick on their blankets. Though the storm had not abated, any longer delay was impossible, for they knew every hour would increase the intensity of an arctic winter; and though faint from fasting, and with their clothes stiff-

ened by frost, it was absolutely necessary to push forward. They suffered much in packing the frozen tents and bedclothes, and could hardly keep their hands out of their fur mittens. On attempting to move, Franklin was seized with a fainting fit, occasioned by hunger and exhaustion, and on recovering refused to eat a morsel of portable soup, which was immediately prepared for him, as it had to be drawn from the only remaining meal of the party. The people, however, kindly crowded round, and overcame his reluctance. The effect of eating was his rapid recovery; and the expedition moved on.

Disaster now crowded on disaster. The wind rose so high that those who carried the canoes were frequently blown down, and one of the boats was so much shattered as to be rendered unserviceable. The ground was covered with snow; and though the swamps were frozen, yet the ice was often not sufficiently strong; so that they plunged in knee-deep. A fire, however, was made of the bark and timbers of the broken canoe; and, after having fasted three days, their last meal of portable soup and arrow-root was cooked. Each man's allowance at this melancholy dinner was exceedingly scanty; but it allayed the pangs of hunger, and encouraged them to press forward at a quicker rate. They had now reached a more hilly country, strewn with large stones, and covered with gray lichen, well known to the Canadians by its name, *tripe de roche*. In cases of extremity, it is boiled and eaten; but its taste is nauseous, its quality purgative, and it sometimes produces an intolerable griping and loathing. The party not being aware of this, gathered a considerable quantity. A few partridges also had been shot; and at night some willows were dug up from under the snow, with which they lighted a fire and cooked their supper.

Next day they came to Cracroft's River, flowing to the westward over a channel of large stones, which rendered it impossible to cross in the canoe. No alternative was left but to attempt a precarious passage over some rocks at a rapid; and in effecting this, some of the men, losing their balance, slipped into the water. They were instantly rescued by their companions; but so intense was the frost, that their drenched clothes became caked with ice, and they suffered much during the remainder of the day's march. The hunters had fallen in with some partridges, which they shot, and they found enough of roots to make a fire; so that their supper, though scanty, was comparatively comfortable. Next morning they pushed forward with ardor, and passed the River Congecathawachaga of Mr. Hearne. The country which lay before them was hilly, and covered with snow to a great depth. The sides of the hills were traversed by sharp angular rocks, where the drifted snow, filling up the interstices, presented a smooth but fallacious surface, which often gave way and precipitated them into the chasms with their heavy loads. In this painful and arduous manner they struggled forward several days, feeding on the *tripe de roche*, which was so frozen to the rocks that their hands were benumbed before a meal could be collected, and so

ward. They suf-  
and could hardly  
tempting to move,  
y hunger and ex-  
of portable soup,  
to be drawn from  
e, however, kindly  
effect of eating was

so high that those  
yn, and one of the  
nserviceable. The  
vamps were frozen,  
at they plunged in  
and timbers of the  
their last meal of  
n's allowance at this  
llayed the pangs of  
quicker rate. They  
h large stones, and  
adians by its name,  
and eaten; but its  
imes produces an in-  
being aware of this,  
also had been shot;  
the snow, with which

to the westward over  
ssible to cross in the  
ecarious passage over  
e of the men, losing  
antly rescued by their  
their drenched clothes  
ing the remainder of  
ome partridges, which  
e a fire; so that their  
table. Next morning  
river Congecathawha-  
efore them was hilly,  
des of the hills were  
ed snow, filling up the  
face, which often gave  
their heavy loads. In  
forward several days,  
zen to the rocks that  
l be collected, and so

destitute of nutritive juices, that it allayed hunger only for a very short time.

At length reaching the summit of a hill, they, to their great delight, beheld a herd of musk-oxen feeding in the valley below; an instant halt was made, the best hunters were called out, and while they proceeded with extreme caution in a circuitous route, their companions watched their proceedings with intense anxiety. When near enough to open their fire, the report reverberated through the hills, and one of the largest cows was seen to fall. "This success," says Franklin, in that simple account of his journey which any change of language would only weaken, "infused spirit into our starving party. The contents of its stomach were devoured upon the spot; and the raw intestines, which were next attacked, were pronounced by the most delicate of the party to be excellent. A few willows, whose tops were seen peeping through the snow in the bottom of the valley, were quickly grubbed, the tents pitched, and supper cooked and devoured with avidity. It was the sixth day since we had had a good meal. I do not think that we witnessed, through the course of our journey, a more striking proof of the wise dispensation of the Almighty, and of the weakness of our own judgment, than on this day. We had considered the dense fog which prevailed throughout the morning as almost the greatest inconvenience which could have befallen us, since it rendered the air extremely cold, and prevented us from distinguishing any distant object toward which our course could be directed. Yet this very darkness enabled the party to get to the top of the hill, which bounded the valley wherein the musk-oxen were grazing, without being perceived. Had the herd discovered us and taken alarm, our hunters, in their present state of debility, would, in all probability, have failed in approaching them."

On the following day a strong southerly wind blowing with a snow-drift, they took a day's rest, and as only enough remained of the musk-ox to serve for two days, they contented themselves with a single meal. Next morning, though the gale had not diminished, they pushed forward, and notwithstanding their rest and recent supply of animal food, the whole party felt greater weakness than they had hitherto experienced. The weather was hazy, but after an hour's march the sky cleared, and they found themselves on the borders of a lake, of which they could not discern the termination in either direction. In these circumstances they traveled along its banks to the westward, in search of a crossing-place. Credit, one of the Canadians, left the party in hopes of falling in with deer, but did not return; and on encamping in the evening, hungry and fatigued, they had to divide for supper a single partridge and some *tripe de roche*. This weed from the first had been unpalatable, but now became insupportably nauseous, and began in many to produce severe pains and bowel-complaints, especially in Mr. Hood. This solitary partridge was the last morsel of animal food that remained; and they turned with deep anxiety to the hope of catching some fish in

the lake, but discovered that the persons intrusted with them had improvidently thrown away three of the nets and burned the floats on leaving Hood's River. Things now began to look very gloomy; and as the men were daily getting weaker, it was judged expedient to lighten their burdens of every thing except ammunition, clothing, and the instruments necessary to guide them on their way. The dipping-needle, the azimuth compass, the magnet, a large thermometer, and the few books they carried, were therefore deposited at this encampment, after they had torn out from these last the tables necessary for working the latitude and longitude. Rewards also were promised by Franklin to such of the party as should kill any animals, and in the morning they prepared to go forward.

At this moment a fine trait of disinterestedness occurred: As the officers assembled round a small fire, enduring an intense degree of hunger which they had no means of satisfying, Perrault, one of the Canadians, presented each of them with a piece of meat out of a little store which he had saved from his allowance. "It was received," says Franklin, "with great thankfulness, and such an instance of self-denial and kindness filled our eyes with tears." Pressing forward to a river issuing from the lake, they met their comrade, Credit, and received the joyful intelligence that he had killed two deer. One of these was immediately cut up and prepared for breakfast; and having sent some of the party for the other, the rest proceeded down the river, which was about three hundred yards broad, in search of a place to cross. Having chosen a spot where the current was smooth, immediately above a rapid, Franklin and two Canadian boatmen, St. Germain and Belanger, pushed from the shore. The breeze was fresh, and the current stronger than they imagined, so that they approached the very edge of the rapid; and Belanger employing his paddle to steady the canoe, lost his balance, and overset the bark in the middle of it. The party clung to its side, and reaching a rock where the stream was but waist-deep, kept their footing till the canoe was emptied of water, after which Belanger held it steady, while St. Germain replaced Franklin in it, and dexterously leaped in himself. Such was their situation, that if the man who stood on the rock had raised his foot, they would have been lost. His friends therefore were compelled to leave him, and after a second disaster, in which the canoe struck, and was as expeditiously righted as before, they reached the opposite bank.

Meanwhile Belanger suffered extremely, immersed to his middle, and enduring intense cold. He called piteously for relief, and St. Germain re-embarking, attempted to reach him, but was hurried down the rapid, and on coming ashore was so benumbed as to be incapable of further exertion. A second effort, but equally unsuccessful, was made by Adam: they then tried to carry out a line formed of the slings of the men's loads, but it broke, and was carried down the stream. At last, when he was almost exhausted, the canoe reached him with a small cord of

with them had im-  
the floats on leav-  
loomy; and as the  
ent to lighten their  
and the instruments  
needle, the azimuth  
few books they car-  
after they had torn  
g the latitude and  
clin to such of the  
they prepared to go

occurred: As the  
intense degree of  
Perrault, one of the  
meat out of a little  
was received," says  
stance of self-denial  
forward to a river  
dit, and received the  
One of these was im-  
having sent some of  
the river, which was  
ce to cross. Having  
diately above a rapid,  
and Belanger, pushed  
current stronger than  
age of the rapid; and  
lost his balance, and  
clung to its side, and  
ep, kept their footing  
langer held it steady,  
dexterously leaped in  
an who stood on the  
t. His friends there-  
ond disaster, in which  
nted as before, they

sed to his middle, and  
elief, and St. Germain  
urried down the rapid,  
e incapable of further  
e, was made by Adam:  
e slings of the men's  
stream. At last, when  
with a small cord of

one of the remaining nets, and he was dragged to shore quite insensible. On being stripped, rolled in blankets, and put to bed between two men, he recovered. During these operations Franklin was left alone upon the bank, and it seemed a matter of the utmost doubt whether he should be ever rejoined by his companions. "It is impossible," says he, "to describe my sensations as I witnessed the various unsuccessful attempts to relieve Belanger. The distance prevented my seeing distinctly what was going on, and I continued pacing up and down the rock on which I stood, regardless of the coldness of my drenched and stiffened garments. The canoe, in every attempt to reach him, was hurried down the rapid, and was lost to view among the rocky islets, with a fury which seemed to threaten instant destruction; once, indeed, I fancied that I saw it overwhelmed in the waves: such an event would have been fatal to the whole party. Separated as I was from my companions, without gun, ammunition, hatchet, or the means of making a fire, and in wet clothes, my doom would have been speedily sealed. My companions too, driven to the necessity of coasting the lake, must have sunk under the fatigue of rounding its innumerable arms and bays, which, as we learned afterward from the Indians, are extensive. By the goodness of Providence, however, we were spared at that time, and some of us have been permitted to offer up our thanksgiving in a civilized land for the signal deliverance we then and afterward experienced."

On setting out next morning, Perrault brought in a fine male deer, which raised the spirits of the party, as it secured them in provisions for two days; and they trusted to support themselves for a third on the skin which they carried with them. Having ascended the Willingham Mountains, they entered upon a rugged country, intersected by deep ravines, the passage of which was so difficult, that they could only make ten miles with great fatigue. The deer was now picked to the last morsel, and they ate pieces of the singed hide with a little *tripe de roche*. At other times this meal might have sufficed; but, exhausted by slender food and continued toil, their appetites had become ravenous. Hitherto events had been so mercifully ordered, that in their utmost need some little supply of the *tripe de roche* had never failed them; but it was the will of God that their confidence should be yet more strongly tried; for they now entered upon a level country covered with snow, where even this miserable lichen was no longer to be found; and a bed of Iceland moss, which was boiled for supper, proved so bitter that none of the party, though enduring the extremities of hunger, could taste more than a few spoonfuls. Another distress now attacked them: the intensity of the cold increased, while they became less fit to endure it. Their blankets did not suffice to keep them warm, and the slightest breeze pierced through their debilitated frames. "The reader," says Franklin, "will probably be desirous to know how we passed our time in such a comfortless situation. The first operation after encamping was to thaw our frozen shoes, if a sufficient fire could be made; dry ones



were then put on. Each person then wrote his notes of the daily occurrences, and evening prayers were read. As soon as supper was prepared it was eaten, generally in the dark, and we went to bed, and kept up a cheerful conversation until our blankets were thawed by the heat of our bodies, and we had gathered sufficient warmth to enable us to fall asleep. On many nights we had not even the luxury of going to bed in dry clothes; for, when the fire was insufficient to dry our shoes, we dared not venture to pull them off, lest they should freeze so hard as to be unfit to put on in the morning, and therefore inconvenient to carry."

Hunger, fatigue, and disappointment, began now to have a calamitous effect upon the tempers of the men. One, who carried the canoe, after several severe falls, threw down his burden, and obstinately refused to resume it. It was accordingly given to another, who proved stronger, and pushed forward at so rapid a rate that Mr. Hood, whose weakness was now extreme, could not keep up with them; and as Franklin attempted to pursue and stop them, the whole party were separated. Dr. Richardson, who had remained behind to gather *tripe de roche*, joined him, and on advancing they found the men encamped among some willows, where they had found some pieces of skin and a few bones of deer which had been devoured by the wolves. On these they had made a meal, having burned and pounded the bones, boiled the skin, and added their old shoes to the mess. With this no fault could be found; but on questioning the person to whom the canoe had been entrusted, it was discovered that he had left the boat behind, it having, as he said, been broken by a fall, and rendered entirely useless.

To the infatuated obstinacy of the men in refusing to retrace their steps and fetch it, even in its shattered state, is to be ascribed much of the distress of their subsequent journey. Every argument and entreaty seemed entirely thrown away; and they had apparently lost all hope of being preserved. When the hunters, who had been out for some time, did not make their appearance, they became furious at the idea of having been deserted, and throwing down their bundles, declared they would follow them at all hazards, and leave the weakest to keep up as they best could. The remonstrances of the officers at length opened their minds to the madness of such a scheme; and on encamping in the evening, they found some pines seven or eight feet high, which furnished a comfortable fire, when they made their supper on *tripe de roche*. Next morning a herd of deer came in sight, and they killed five—a supply which, considering the extremity of hunger and despair to which they were reduced, was especially providential.

The Canadians now earnestly petitioned for a day's rest. They pleaded their recent sufferings, and that the enjoyment of two substantial meals, after eight days' famine, would enable them to press forward more vigorously. The flesh, the skins, and even the stomachs of the deer, were accordingly equally divided among the party, and some of

of the daily occur-  
supper was pre-  
t to bed, and kept  
awed by the heat  
th to enable us to  
luxury of going to  
to dry our shoes,  
ould freeze so hard  
efore inconvenient

to have a calami-  
carried the canoe,  
obstinately refused  
no proved stronger,  
od, whose weakness  
and as Franklin at-  
vere separated. Dr.  
*tripe de roche*, joined  
d among some wil-  
nd a few bones of  
On these they had  
es, boiled the skin,  
s no fault could be  
e canoe had been en-  
behind, it having, as  
y useless.

sing to retrace their  
be ascribed much of  
gument and entreaty  
rently lost all hope of  
en out for some time,  
at the idea of having  
declared they would  
at to keep up as they  
t length opened their  
ncamping in the even-  
gh, which furnished a  
*tripe de roche*. Next  
killed five—a supply  
despair to which they

a day's rest. They  
yment of two substan-  
them to press forward  
the stomachs of the  
e party, and some of

them suffered severely from too free an indulgence in the use of this food after so long an abstinence. Next morning the party resumed their journey, and after a walk of three miles, came to the Coppermine River. Its current was strong; but with a canoe there would have been no difficulty in crossing; and the reckless folly of the men, in abandoning their only means of transport, was now brought strongly to their mind. No ford could be discovered, and the plan was suggested of framing a vessel of willows, covered with the canvas of the tent; but the most experienced boatmen declared that willows were too small to bear the weight, and no pines could be found. Nothing remained but to resume their march along the borders of the lake; and looking out eagerly, but in vain, for some fordable place, they encamped at the east end. Anxious to adopt every possible means for preserving the party, Franklin sent Mr. Back forward with the interpreters to hunt. He was directed to halt at the first pines, and construct a raft; and if his hunters had killed animals sufficient to provision them, he was to cross immediately, and send the Indians with supplies of meat to the party behind.

At this time it was discovered that two of the men had stolen part of the officers' provision, though it had been doled out with the strictest impartiality, and they saw their leaders suffering more acutely than themselves. To punish this was impossible, except by the threat that they should forfeit their wages, which produced little effect. Despondency had deeply seized upon the party, and in the morning strict orders could not prevent them from straggling in search of the remains of animals; in consequence of which much time was lost in halting, and ammunition in firing guns to collect them. The snow, however, had disappeared, and pressing forward with more alacrity, they came to an arm of the lake running north-east. The idea of making the long circuit round it was distressing; and having halted to consult what was to be done, some one discovered in a cliff the carcass of a deer which had fallen into a chasm. It was quite putrid, but even in that state appeared delicious, and a fire being kindled, a large portion was rapidly devoured; while the men, cheered by this unexpected breakfast, regained their confidence, and requested leave to return to the rapid, insisting on the practicability of making a sufficiently strong raft of willows, though they had formerly pronounced it impossible. Their advice was followed; and having sent off Augustus, one of the interpreters, to inform Mr. Back of this change of plan, they commenced their retrograde movement, and encamped at night in a deep valley among some large willows, where they supped on the remains of the putrid deer.

Next day they regained the rapids, commenced cutting willows for the raft, and a reward of three hundred livres was promised by Franklin to the person who should convey a line across the river strong enough to manage the raft and transport the party. The willows when cut were bound into fagots, and the work completed; but the greenness of the wood rendered it heavy, and incapable of supporting more than one

man at a time. Still they hoped to be able to cross; but all depended on getting a line carried to the opposite bank, through a current one hundred and thirty yards wide, strong, deep, and intensely cold. Belanger and Benoit, the two strongest men of the party, repeatedly attempted to take the raft over, but for want of oars were driven back. The tent-staves were then tied together, and formed a strong pole; but it was not long enough to reach the bottom even at a short distance from the shore. Dr. Richardson next produced a paddle he had brought from the coast, but which was found not powerful enough to impel the raft against a strong breeze. The failure of every attempt occasioned a deep despondency, which threatened to have the most fatal effects, when Dr. Richardson, with a disinterested courage that made him forget his own weakness, threw off his upper garments, and attempted to swim with a rope to the opposite bank. Plunging in with a line round his middle, he at first made some way, but the extreme cold was too much for him, and in a few moments his arms became powerless; still, being an expert swimmer, he not only kept himself afloat, but made way by turning on his back and using his legs, so that he had nearly reached the other side, when, to the inexpressible anguish of those who watched his progress, his limbs became benumbed, and he sank. All hands now hauled on the line, and drew him ashore almost lifeless; but, placed before a fire of willows and stripped of his wet clothes, he gradually revived enough to give directions as to the mode of treating him. His thin and emaciated limbs, which were now exposed to view, produced an involuntary exclamation of compassion and surprise:—"Ah, que nous sommes maigres!" said the French Canadians; but it is probable that few of them would have presented so gaunt and attenuated an appearance as the brave and excellent man who had thus nearly fallen a sacrifice to his humanity, for it was discovered about this time that the hunters were in the practice of withholding the game which they shot, and devouring it in secret.

Soon after this the party were joined by Mr. Back, who had traced the lake about fifteen miles further up without discovering any place where it was possible to get across; and toward evening Credit, who had been out hunting, returned without any game of his own killing, but brought the antlers and backbone of a deer shot during the summer. These relics had been already picked clean by the wolves and birds of prey, but the marrow remained in the spine; and though completely putrid, and so acrid as to excoriate the lips, it was not the less acceptable. The bones were rendered friable by burning, and the whole eagerly devoured. St. Germain, one of the voyageurs, now suggested that a canoe might be made of the painted canvas used to wrap up the bedding, and offered to construct it upon a framework of willows. For this purpose he and Adam removed to a clump of willows, while another party proceeded to the spot where they had encamped on the 25th, to collect pitch among the small pines to pay over the seams. A

; but all depended  
ugh a current one  
ntensely cold. Be-  
arty, repeatedly at-  
s were driven back.  
a strong pole; but  
at a short distance  
dle he had brought  
nough to impel the  
tempt occasioned a  
most fatal effects,  
that made him for-  
a, and attempted to  
in with a line round  
xtreme cold was too  
ame powerless; still,  
afloat, but made way  
e had nearly reached  
of those who watched  
ank. All hands now  
less; but, placed be-  
he gradually revived  
g him. His thin and  
iew, produced an in-  
ise:—"Ah, que nous  
ut it is probable that  
attenuated an appear-  
s nearly fallen a sacri-  
ut this time that the  
ayne which they shot,  
Back, who had traced  
discovering any place  
evening Credit, who  
ame of his own killing,  
r shot during the sum-  
ean by the wolves and  
pine; and though com-  
ps, it was not the less  
burning, and the whole  
yageurs, now suggested  
anvas used to wrap up  
framework of willows.  
clump of willows, while  
y had encamped on the  
pay over the seams. A

snow-storm at this moment came on, and the sufferings of the men hourly increasing, a deep gloom settled upon their spirits. Mr. Hood was by this time reduced to a perfect shadow; Mr. Back required the support of a stick; Dr. Richardson was lame; and Franklin so feeble, that, after a struggle of three hours, he found himself utterly unable to reach the spot where St. Germain was at work, a distance of only three quarters of a mile, and returned completely exhausted. The Canadian voyageurs had now fallen into a state of despondency which bordered on despair, and, indifferent to their fate, refused to make the slightest exertion. The officers were unable to undergo the labor of gathering the *tripe de roche*, and Samandré, the cook, sullenly declined continuing his labors. At this miserable crisis the conduct of John Hepburn, the English sailor, was especially admirable, presenting a striking contrast to the gloomy selfishness of the Canadians. His firm reliance on the watchful goodness of God, and a cheerful resignation to His will, never for a moment forsook him; and, animated by this blessed principle, his strength appeared to be preserved as a means of preserving the party. He collected the *tripe de roche* for the officers' mess, cooked and served it out, and showed the most indefatigable zeal in his efforts to alleviate their sufferings.

A gleam of hope at length arose, when St. Germain completed the canoe. It was impossible not to feel that their last chance of escape seemed to hang upon this little bark; would it prove sufficient for its purpose? or, constructed of such wretched materials, would it not at once sink to the bottom? Amid this conflict of contending emotions it was launched on the river, and every heart bounded with exultation when it floated, and St. Germain transported himself to the opposite side. It was drawn back, and, one by one, the whole party were ferried over, though, from the leaky state of the little bark, their garments and bedding were completely drenched. Franklin immediately dispatched Mr. Back and three men to push on to Fort Enterprise in search of the Indians, while he himself followed with the rest.

Nothing could exceed the joy of the Canadian voyageurs at this unlooked-for deliverance. Their spirits rose from the deepest despondency into tumultuous exultation. They shook the officers by the hand, cried out that their worst difficulties were at an end, and expressed a confident hope of being able to reach Fort Enterprise in the course of a few days—a bolsterous and sudden confidence, to which the silent gratitude and quiet resolution of the pious Hepburn presented a striking contrast.

Their tents and bed-clothes were so much frozen, and the men, who had kindled a small fire, were so weary, that it was eight in the morning before the bundles were packed, and the party set forward. They traveled in single files, each at a small distance from his neighbor. Mr. Hood, who was now nearly exhausted, was obliged to walk at a gentle pace in the rear, Dr. Richardson kindly keeping beside him; while

Franklin led the foremost men, that he might make them halt occasionally till the stragglers came up. Credit, hitherto one of their most active hunters, became lamentably weak from the effects of *tripe de roche* on his constitution, and Vaillant, from the same cause, was getting daily more emaciated. They only advanced six miles during the day, and at night satisfied the cravings of hunger by a small quantity of *tripe de roche* mixed up with some scraps of roasted leather. During the night the wind increased to a strong gale, which continuing next day, filled the atmosphere with a thick snow-drift. Having boiled and eaten the remains of their old shoes, and every shred of leather which could be picked up, they set forward at nine over bleak hills separated by equally barren valleys.

In this manner they journeyed till noon, not without much straggling and frequent halts, at which time Samandré came up with the melancholy news that Credit and Vaillant had dropped down, and were utterly unable to proceed. Dr. Richardson went back, and discovering Vaillant about a mile and a half in the rear, assured him that a fire was kindled a little way on, and that he would recover if he could but reach it; the poor fellow struggled up on his feet, and feebly tried to advance, but fell down every step in the deep snow. Leaving him, Dr. Richardson retraced his steps about a mile further in a fruitless search for Credit. In returning he passed Vaillant, who had fallen down, utterly unable to renew his efforts to rejoin the party. Belanger went back to carry his burden and assist him to the fire; but the cold had produced such a numbness that he could not speak or make the slightest exertion. The stoutest of the party were now implored to make a last effort to transport him to the fire, but declared themselves utterly unable for the task. They eagerly requested leave to throw down their loads, and proceed with the utmost speed to Fort Enterprise—a scheme projected in the despair of the moment, and which must have brought destruction upon the whole.

Matters had now reached a dreadful crisis; it was necessary to come to an immediate decision regarding their ultimate measures, and a plan proposed by Mr. Hood and Dr. Richardson was adopted. These gentlemen consented to remain with a single attendant at the first spot where there were sufficient firewood and *tripe de roche* for ten days' consumption, while Franklin and the rest were to proceed with all expedition to Fort Enterprise, and to send immediate assistance. This scheme promised to relieve them of a considerable portion of their burdens—for one of the tents and various other articles were to be left; and it gave poor Credit and Vaillant a fairer opportunity, should they revive, of regaining their companions. On the resolution being communicated to the men, they were cheered with the prospect of an alleviation of their misery, and pressed forward in search of a convenient spot for the proposed separation. Near nightfall they encamped under the lee of a hill among some willows, which furnished a small fire, but not suf-



hem halt occasion-  
of their most active  
*tripe de roche* on  
was getting daily  
ng the day, and at  
quantity of *tripe de*  
During the night  
ng next day, filled  
led and eaten the  
er which could be  
eparated by equally

out much straggling  
with the melancholy  
ad were utterly un-  
discovering Vaillant  
a fire was kindled  
d but reach it; the  
ed to advance, but  
him, Dr. Richardson  
search for Credit.  
n, utterly unable to  
t back to carry his  
ad produced such a  
test exertion. The  
last effort to trans-  
unable for the task.  
loads, and proceed  
me projected in the  
ht destruction upon

as necessary to come  
measures, and a plan  
dopted. These gen-  
ant at the first spot  
*roche* for ten days'  
proceed with all ex-  
tate assistance. This  
portion of their bur-  
a were to be left; and  
unity, should they re-  
ation being communi-  
spect of an alleviation  
a convenient spot for  
amped under the lee  
small fire, but not suf-

ficiently strong to thaw their frozen clothes; and no *tripe de roche* having been found during the day, they lay down hungry, cold, and full of the gloomiest apprehensions, while sleep fled from their eyelids, and the images of their dying companions rose before their imagination in colors which made them shudder for a fate that might so soon become their own. Next morning the weather providentially was mild, and setting out at nine they arrived toward noon at a thicket of willows, in the neighborhood of some rocks bearing a pretty full supply of *tripe de roche*. Here Dr. Richardson and Mr. Hood determined to remain. The tent was pitched, a barrel of ammunition and other articles were deposited, and Hepburn, who volunteered the service, was appointed to continue with them. The rest of the party now had only to carry a single tent, the ammunition, and the officers' journals, in addition to their own clothes and a single blanket for Captain Franklin. When all was ready, the whole party united in thanksgiving and prayers to Almighty God for their mutual preservation, and separated with the melancholy reflection that it might in all probability be the last time they should ever again meet in this world.

On leaving their friends, Captain Franklin and his party descended into a more level country; but the snow lay so deep, and they were so little able to wade through it, that they encamped, after a painful march of only four miles and a half, in which Belanger, and Michel, an Iroquois, were left far behind, yet still struggling forward. In the evening they came in dreadfully exhausted, and Belanger, till now one of the strongest of the party, could not refrain from tears as he declared he was totally unable to proceed, and implored permission to return to Dr. Richardson and Mr. Hood. Michel made the same request, and it was agreed that they should do so. The cold of the night was excessive, and the men were so weak that they could not raise the tent; from its weight it was impossible to transport it from place to place, and it was cut up, the canvas serving them for a covering; but though they lay close together, the intense frost deprived them of sleep. Having no *tripe de roche*, they had supped upon an infusion of the Labrador tea-plant, with a few morsels of burned leather. Michel and Belanger, being apparently more exhausted in the morning than over night, were left, while the rest moved forward. After a very short progress, Perrault was attacked with a fit of dizziness; but on halting a little, again proposed to proceed. In ten minutes, however, he sunk down, and weeping aloud, declared his total inability to go on. He was accordingly advised to rejoin Michel and Belanger—a proposal in which he acquiesced. These examples of the total failure of the strongest in the party had a very unfavorable effect on the spirits of the rest, and the exertion of wading through the snow and crossing a lake on the ice, where they were frequently blown down, was so severe, that Fontano, after having repeatedly fallen, piteously complained that he was utterly unable to go further. Being not two miles from the others, it was thought best that he also should attempt



to rejoin them; and as he was much beloved, the parting was very distressing. They watched him for some time, and were comforted by seeing that, though his progress was very slow, he kept his feet better than before.

The whole party was now reduced to five persons, Captain Franklin, Adam, Peltier, Benoit, and Samandré, the interpreter Augustus having pressed forward by himself during the late frequent halts. They made that day only four miles and a half, and encamped for the night under a rock, supping again on an infusion of the Labrador tea-plant and some shreds of boiled leather. The evening was comparatively mild, the breeze light, and having the comfort of a fire, they enjoyed some sleep. This was of infinite advantage; it gave them new spirits, which were further invigorated by a breakfast of *tripe de roche*, this being the fourth day since they had a regular meal. On reaching Marten Lake they found it frozen over—a circumstance which they knew would enable them to walk upon the ice straight to Fort Enterprise.

It may be easily imagined what were the sensations of the party in approaching the spot which they trusted would be the end of all their toils and privations. From the arrangements previously made, it was judged certain that they would here find relief, and be able to send assistance to their unfortunate companions. It was a spot where they had enjoyed, at a former period of the expedition, the greatest comfort; but it was possible, though they scarcely permitted themselves to contemplate so dreadful an idea, that circumstances might have occurred to defeat their present expectations. On approaching the house their minds were strongly agitated between hope and fear, and contrary to their usual custom, they advanced in silence. At length they reached it, and their worst apprehensions were realized. It was completely desolate. No provisions had been deposited—no trace of Indians could be discovered—no letter lay there from Mr. Wentzel to inform them where the Indians might be found. On entering, a mute despair seized the party. They gazed on the cold hearth, comfortless walls, and broken sashes, through which the wind and snow penetrated, and awakening to a full sense of the horrors of their situation, burst into tears. On recovering a little, and looking round with more attention, a note was found from Mr. Back, stating that having two days before this reached the house, he had proceeded in search of the Indians; but described his party as so debilitated that it was doubtful whether they would be able to reach Fort Providence. The sufferings endured by this officer and his little party, one of whom was frozen to death, were equally dreadful with those which fell to the share of his commander.

The poor sufferers thus grievously disappointed, now examined the deserted habitation for the means of subsistence, and found several deer-skins thrown away during their former residence at the fort. The heaps of ashes were carefully raked, and a considerable collection of bones discovered, which were hoarded up for the purpose of being pounded and

starting was very dis-  
were comforted by  
kept his feet better

s, Captain Franklin,  
ter Augustus having  
t halts. They made  
for the night under a  
r tea-plant and some  
paratively mild, the  
enjoyed some sleep.  
v spirits, which were  
this being the fourth  
g Marten Lake they  
knew would enable  
rise.

tions of the party in  
the end of all their  
viously made, it was  
and be able to send  
as a spot where they  
the greatest comfort;  
ed themselves to con-  
might have occurred to  
the house their minds  
and contrary to their  
h they reached it, and  
s completely desolate.  
Indians could be dis-  
to inform them where  
ite despair seized the  
less walls, and broken  
ted, and awakening to  
rst into tears. On re-  
attention, a note was  
ays before this reached  
ians; but described his  
ner they would be able  
red by this officer and  
were equally dreadful  
ler.

ted, now examined the  
and found several deer-  
at the fort. The heaps  
collection of bones dis-  
of being pounded and

manufactured into soup. The parchment originally employed instead of glass had been torn from the windows, and the place was exposed to all the inclemency of an arctic winter; but they succeeded in filling the sashes with loose boards, and as the temperature of the outer air was now from 15° to 20° below zero, this precaution was especially necessary. To procure water, they melted the frozen lumps of snow, and the flooring of the neighboring apartment was broken up for fuel.

Having completed these arrangements, they assembled round the fire, and were busy singeing the hair off a deer-skin, when they were cheered by the entrance of the interpreter, who had made his way to the fort by a different route, through a country he had never traversed before. Though by far the strongest of the party, he was now so enfeebled by famine that he could not follow two deer which he had seen on his way. Next morning there was a heavy gale from the south-east, and the snow drifted so thick that no one ventured abroad. On the evening of the succeeding day, a figure covered with ice, benumbed with cold, and almost speechless, staggered into the house. It was one of the Canadians, who had been dispatched with a note by Mr. Back, and having fallen into a rapid narrowly escaped being drowned. To change his dress, wrap him in warm blankets, and pour some soup down his throat, was their first care; and after a little he revived enough to answer the anxious questions with which he was assailed. From his replies but little comfort was derived. Mr. Back had seen no trace of the Indians, and the messenger's recollection appeared confused with regard to the part of the country where he had left his officer, who, as he stated, intended to proceed to the spot where the Indian chief, Akaitcho, had encamped last summer—a distance of about thirty miles. Thither he proposed to follow when he was a little recruited; and, though dissuaded from the attempt, persisted that as the track was beaten he would be able to make it out, and to convey intelligence of the situation of Captain Franklin's party. Accordingly, the fifth day after his arrival, he departed from the fort with a small supply of singed hide.

Not long after, Adam, one of the five men who now remained with Captain Franklin, became so ill that he was utterly incapable of moving, and it was discovered that he had been for some time afflicted with cedematous swellings in various parts of his body, which he had hitherto generously concealed, from a wish not to impede the movements of his companions. As it was impossible for this poor man to travel, it was necessary to abandon the original intention of proceeding with the whole party to Fort Providence, and Peltier and Samandré, who were in almost as weak a state, having expressed a wish to remain with Adam, Captain Franklin, along with Augustus and Benoit, determined to press on to Fort Providence, and to send relief to their companions by the first party of Indians they should meet.

Having accordingly given directions regarding the journals and charts which were left in their custody, and the best mode of forward-

ing succor to Mr. Hood and Dr. Richardson, Franklin set forward with his two attendants; but so feeble had they become, that the distance accomplished in six hours was only four miles. They encamped on the borders of Round Rock Lake, and, unable to find any *tripe de roche*, made their supper upon fried deer-skin. The night proved intensely cold, and although they crept as close to each other as possible, they shivered in every limb, and the wind pierced through their famished frames. Next morning was mild, and they set out early, but had scarce proceeded a few yards, when Franklin fell between two rocks, and broke his snow-shoes, an accident which incapacitated him from keeping up with Benoit and Augustus. In a very short time his attempt to press forward completely exhausted him; and as the only hope of preserving the lives of the party appeared to rest on their speedily reaching Fort Providence, he determined, rather than retard them, to retrace his steps to the house, while they proceeded for assistance. Calling a moment's halt, he addressed one note to Mr. Back, requesting an immediate supply of meat from Reindeer Lake, and another to the commandant at Fort Providence, with urgent entreaties for assistance. This done, Augustus and Benoit resumed their journey, and Franklin returned to the house.

On arriving, he found Adam, Samandré, and Peltier still alive; but the two first, whose minds seemed quite enfeebled, could not be prevailed on to leave their bed, and their nervous weakness was so great, that they scarcely ceased shedding tears all day. It was even with difficulty that they were prevailed on to take any nourishment; and the labor of cutting and carrying fuel, gathering the *tripe de roche*, and cooking, fell entirely upon Franklin and Peltier. The frost was now so severe, that it was evident this lichen would soon be bound up in ice, and as their strength daily declined, every exertion became irksome. When once seated, it required a painful effort to rise up, and not unfrequently they had to lift each other from their chairs. This miserable condition could not last long. Peltier soon became almost incapable of holding the hatchet; the bone-soup had become so acrid as to corrode the inside of their mouths; the *tripe de roche*, covered with ice, defied all efforts to detach it from the rock; and though the reindeer sported on the banks of the river, no one had strength to go after them, or to hold a gun so steadily as to secure an aim.

Still the hopes and cheerfulness of Franklin did not desert him. From his knowledge of the places most frequented at that season by the Indians, he was sanguine as to the likelihood of their being found; and their speedy arrival formed a constant subject of conversation. At length, on the evening of the 29th, when talking of his long-looked-for relief, and sitting round the fire, Peltier suddenly leaped up and uttered a joyful exclamation, imagining he heard the bustle of the Indians in the adjoining room. It was not the Indians, however, but Dr. Richardson and Hepburn, who came in, each carrying his bundle. The meeting

et forward with  
that the distance  
encamped on the  
y *tripe de roche*,  
proved intensely  
as possible, they  
their famished  
y, but had scarce  
two rocks, and  
him from keeping  
attempt to press  
ope of preserving  
ly reaching Fort  
retrace his steps  
lling a moment's  
an immediate sup-  
commandant at  
This done, Au-  
returned to the

er still alive; but  
d not be prevailed  
as so great, that  
ven with difficulty  
and the labor of  
, and cooking, fell  
ow so severe, that  
ice, and as their  
me. When once  
unfrequently they  
le condition could  
le of holding the  
corrode the inside  
defied all efforts to  
orted on the banks  
to hold a gun so

l not desert him.  
at that season by  
their being found;  
conversation. At  
his long-looked-for  
ed up and uttered  
of the Indians in  
, but Dr. Richard-  
dle. The meeting

was one of mingled joy and sorrow. Poor Hood's absence was instantly perceived, and their saddest anticipations were confirmed by Dr. Richardson declaring that this young officer and Michel were dead, and that neither Perrault nor Fontano had reached the tent, or been heard of. Such news could not fail to create despondency. All were shocked at the emaciated countenances and hollow voices of Dr. Richardson and his companion, while Captain Franklin and his fellow-sufferers, having become gradually accustomed to the dreadful effects of famine upon each other, were not aware that, to the eyes of their friends who had just arrived, the alteration upon themselves was equally melancholy. "The doctor," says Franklin, "particularly remarked the sepulchral tone of our voices, which he requested us to make more cheerful if possible, not aware that his own partook of the same key."

The arrival of these friends, however, was soon attended with a favorable change. Though greatly reduced, they were still in a better condition than their unfortunate companions, and it was not long till Hepburn shot a partridge. Dr. Richardson speedily tore off the feathers, and having held it for a few minutes at the fire, divided it into six pieces. Franklin and his companions ravenously devoured their portions, "being the first morsel of flesh that any of them had tasted for thirty-one days;" and Dr. Richardson cheered them with the prospect that Hepburn might possibly bring in a deer in his next expedition. The counsels and example of this pious and intelligent man produced the best effects on the spirits of the party. He had brought with him his Testament and Prayer-book, and by reading portions of Scripture appropriate to their situation, and encouraging them to join in prayer and thanksgiving, he led them to the only source whence, under the awful circumstances in which they were placed, they could derive hope or consolation. He taught them the necessity of exertion, whatever pain it might at first cost; roused them to pay some attention to the cleanliness of their apartment, and insisted particularly, that during the day they should roll up their blankets, which they had been in the practice of leaving beside the fire where they slept. Their several tasks were now allotted to each: Hepburn and Richardson went out in search of deer; while Franklin, being unable to walk far, remained nearer the house, and digged under the snow for skins, which, during their former happy winter residence at this station, when they killed and ate abundance of game, were thrown away as useless, but now in their almost putrid state formed their principal support. The cutting of firewood was intrusted to Peltier and Samandré; but both were so weak and dispirited, that it was generally performed by Hepburn on his return from hunting; as for Adam, his legs were still so severely swollen that he kept his bed, though an operation performed by Dr. Richardson gave him some ease. In the midst of these necessary cares, all seemed for a while to dread approaching the subject of Hood and Michel's death; but at length one evening, on the return of the doctor from hunting, and after having

dispatched their usual supper of singed skin and bone-soup, they requested him to relate the particulars; and a more afflicting, or, in some respects, a more terrific story, as it appears in his published narrative, could not well be conceived.

He stated that after being left by Captain Franklin, they remained beside the fire as long as it lasted. Having no *tripe de roche*, they supped on an infusion of the country tea-plant, which was grateful from its warmth, but afforded no nourishment, and retired to rest. Next day proved stormy, and the snow being so deep that a fire could not be kindled with the green willows, they lay in bed reading some religious books with which the party had been furnished before leaving England by the affectionate and pious care of a lady. "They proved," says Richardson, "of incalculable benefit to us. We read portions of them to each other as we lay in bed, in addition to the morning and evening service, and found that they inspired us on each perusal with so strong a sense of the omnipresence of a beneficent God, that our situation in these wilds appeared no longer destitute; and we conversed not only with calmness, but with cheerfulness, detailing with unrestrained confidence the past events of our lives, and dwelling with hope upon our future prospects."

The weather clearing up, Dr. Richardson went out in search of *tripe de roche*, leaving Mr. Hood in bed, and Hepburn cutting willows for a fire; but the rocks were covered with ice and snow, and he was unsuccessful. On his return he found Michel, the Iroquois, who delivered the note from Franklin. All were surprised to see him alone; but he stated that Belanger had separated from him, and, as he supposed, lost his way, he himself having wandered far from the straight road. They had afterward good reason to suspect the truth of this story, but believed it at that moment, and were rejoiced to see him produce a hare and a partridge—an unlooked-for supply, which they received with humble thankfulness to the Giver of all good. Franklin's note advised them to advance to a little wood of pines which would afford better fuel; and to this they removed under the guidance of Michel, who led them straight to the spot.

As he had declared himself so little acquainted with the country as to lose his way, it seemed strange that he should at once conduct them to the thicket. This roused their attention, and made them feel rather uneasy as to his honesty; and various circumstances occurred to increase their suspicions. He requested the loan of a hatchet, when any other hunter would have taken only his knife. He remained abroad all day without any definite employment. He brought them some raw meat, saying it was part of the carcass of a wolf, but which they had afterward reason to believe was a portion of the bodies of Belanger and Perrault, whom they suspected him to have murdered. He shunned the society of Dr. Richardson and Mr. Hood, refusing to sleep in the tent, and preferring to lie alone at the fire. On going out with the purpose of re-

ce-soup, they re-  
ing, or, in some  
ished narrative,

, they remained  
roche, they sup-  
grateful from its  
rest. Next day  
re could not be  
; some religious  
leaving England  
ey proved," says  
ortions of them  
ning and evening  
with so strong a  
situation in these  
d not only with  
ained confidence  
upon our future

in search of *tripe*  
ing willows for a  
r, and he was un-  
is, who delivered  
im alone; but he  
he supposed, lost  
ight road. They  
this story, but be-  
m produce a hare  
ey received with  
elin's note advised  
ould afford better  
f Michel, who led

with the country as  
once conduct them  
e them feel rather  
ccurred to increase  
et, when any other  
ed abroad all day  
n some raw meat,  
they had afterward  
nger and Perrault,  
unned the society  
the tent, and pre-  
the purpose of re-

maining a whole day, he often returned abruptly, and when questioned gave vague answers. In a few days he began to regret that he had left Captain Franklin's party, refused to take any share in the labor of cutting wood, talked in a surly and insolent manner, and could scarcely be prevailed upon to go out and hunt at all. These symptoms of gloomy dissatisfaction increased; he resisted all entreaties, and when Mr. Hood, who was now reduced by famine to the last extremity, remonstrated with him, he flew into a violent passion, and exclaimed, "It is of no use hunting; there are no animals; you had better kill and eat me." He afterward, however, consented to go out, but returned upon some frivolous pretense; and on the succeeding day that dreadful catastrophe took place, which will be best given in the words of Dr. Richardson's journal:

"In the morning," says he, "being Sunday, October 20th, we again urged Michel to go a-hunting, that he might, if possible, leave us some provision, to-morrow being the day appointed for his quitting us; but he showed great unwillingness to go out, and lingered about the fire under the pretense of cleaning his gun. After we had read the morning service, I went about noon to gather some *tripe de roche*, leaving Mr. Hood sitting before the tent at the fireside arguing with Michel. Hepburn was employed cutting down a tree at a small distance from the tent, being desirous of accumulating a quantity of firewood. A short time after I went out, I heard the report of a gun, and about ten minutes afterward Hepburn called to me in a voice of great alarm to come directly. When I arrived, I found poor Hood lying lifeless at the fireside, a ball having apparently entered his forehead. I was at first horror-struck with the idea that in a fit of despondency he had hurried himself into the presence of his Almighty Judge by an act of his own hand; but the conduct of Michel soon gave rise to other thoughts, and excited suspicions which were confirmed, when, upon examining the body, I found that the shot had entered the back part of the head and had passed out at the forehead, while the muzzle of the gun had been applied so close as to set fire to the nightcap behind. The gun, which was of the longest kind supplied to the Indians, could not have been placed in the position to inflict such a wound except by a second person. Upon inquiring of Michel how it happened, he replied that Mr. Hood had sent him into the tent for the short gun, and that during his absence the long gun had gone off, he did not know whether by accident or not. He held the short gun in his hand at the time he was speaking. Hepburn afterward asserted, that previous to the report of the gun, Mr. Hood and Michel were speaking to each other in an elevated, angry tone;—he added, that Mr. Hood being seated at the fireside, was hid from him by intervening willows; but that on hearing the report he looked up, and saw Michel rising up from before the tent-door, or just behind where Mr. Hood was seated, and then going into the tent. Thinking that the gun had been discharged for the purpose of cleaning it, he did not go



to the fire at first; and when Michel called to him that Mr. Hood was dead, a considerable time had elapsed. \* \* \* Bickersteth's Scripture Help was lying open beside the body, as if it had fallen from his hand, and it is probable he was reading it at the instant of his death."

Such was the melancholy fate of Mr. Hood, a young officer of the highest promise, who, by his conduct, had endeared himself to every member of the expedition, and whose sufferings, as they were more intense, from the peculiarity of his constitution, were borne with a placid and unpretending fortitude, which it was impossible to contemplate without emotion. Both Dr. Richardson and Hepburn were convinced he had met his death from the hands of Michel; but to have accused him at that moment would have been the extremity of rashness. They were so reduced by famine that he could easily have overpowered both. His appearance showed that he possessed secret supplies of food; he was of great bodily strength, and was armed to the teeth, carrying, besides his gun, a brace of pistols, an Indian bayonet, and a knife. To have hinted a suspicion, therefore, might have been instantly fatal, and they affected to consider the death of their companion entirely accidental. As his weakness had been the chief cause of delaying their journey, they now set out for the fort, having first paid the last rites to the dead in the only way which their situation would permit. The ground was so hard, and their strength so exhausted, that to dig a grave was impossible; so they carried the body into the willow grove behind the tent, and returning to the fire, read the funeral service in addition to their evening devotions.

In the morning, having singed the hair off a portion of Mr. Hood's buffalo robe, they boiled and ate it for breakfast. Meanwhile, the conduct of Michel was so extraordinary, that had they not been already convinced of his guilt, no doubt of it could have remained. Though not a breath of their suspicions reached his ears, he repeatedly protested that he was incapable of committing such an act; he kept constantly on his guard, appeared fearful of leaving Dr. Richardson and Hepburn alone even for the shortest time, and when Hepburn spoke he listened anxiously, though very imperfectly acquainted with the English language, fixed his eyes keenly upon him, and asked fiercely if he accused him of the murder. He evinced great unwillingness to set out for the fort, and wished Dr. Richardson to proceed to the Coppermine River, where he said the woods would supply plenty of deer. On finding this advice disregarded, his conduct became more and more alarming; he muttered to himself, fell into sullen fits of abstraction, and used those convulsive and abrupt gestures often involuntarily exhibited by a person whose mind is full of some dreadful purpose. Suddenly awakening from this reverie, he again expressed his unwillingness to return to the fort, and renewed his solicitations to Dr. Richardson to repair to the southern woods, where they would find ample subsistence. On being requested to pursue his own plan alone, and leave them to continue their journey,

Mr. Hood was  
th's Scripture  
from his hand,  
death."

officer of the  
self to every  
were more in-  
e with a placid  
o contemplate  
were convinced  
have accused  
ashness. They  
powered both.  
f food; he was  
rrying, besides  
nife. To have  
fatal, and they  
rely accidental.  
r journey, they  
to the dead in  
ground was so  
ave was impos-  
behind the tent,  
ddition to their

of Mr. Hood's  
while, the con-  
t been already  
ained. Though  
stedly protested  
ot constantly on  
a and Hepburn  
oke he listened  
he English lan-  
ly if he accused  
o set out for the  
ppermine River,  
On finding this  
re alarming; he  
and used those  
ited by a person  
awakening from  
urn to the fort,  
to the southern  
being requested  
ue their journey,

he broke into an ungovernable fury, accused Hepburn of having told stories against him, and assumed such airs of superiority as showed that he knew they were both in his power, at the same time giving vent to expressions of hatred against the white people, calling them deadly enemies, and affirming they had killed and eaten his uncle and two of his relations.

None of these menaces were lost upon Richardson and Hepburn; both felt they were not safe in this man's company; and these dreadful surmises rose into certainty when he threw out hints that he would free himself from all restraint on the morrow. Being now convinced that, as he had cruelly murdered Hood, he was resolved also to sacrifice them, they ascribed his not having already done so to the circumstance of his not knowing the way to the fort, and requiring their guidance. They came to this conclusion without any communication with each other; for their fierce companion would not leave them a moment, watching them with a malignant look, and frequently muttering threats against Hepburn. Toward evening, as they approached the spot where it would be necessary to stop for the night, Michel halted to gather *tripe de roche*, and to their surprise bade them walk on, and he would soon overtake them. Hepburn and Dr. Richardson, now left alone together for the first time since Mr. Hood's death, rapidly opened their minds to each other. In addition to the facts already mentioned, others came to light, which left not the slightest doubt as to Michel's guilt; and so convinced was Hepburn of there being no safety for them but in his death, that, though a man of extreme benevolence and deep religious principle, he offered to be the instrument of it himself. "Had my own life," says Dr. Richardson, "alone been threatened, I would not have purchased it by such a measure; but I considered myself as intrusted also with the protection of Hepburn's, a man who by his humane attentions and devotedness had so endeared himself to me, that I felt more anxiety for his safety than for my own." Animated by such feelings, and convinced that Michel's death was necessary to self-preservation, he determined that it ought to be by his own and not by Hepburn's hand, and on his coming up shot him through the head with a pistol. It appeared that he had gathered no *tripe de roche*, and had halted to put his gun in order, no doubt with the intention of attacking them when in the act of encamping.

Dr. Richardson and Hepburn now pursued their way to the fort; but fatigue, and want of food and fuel, had nearly proved fatal to them. They remarked, however, that repeatedly when death seemed inevitable, an unexpected supply of provisions again restored them; and the confidence that, when no human help was nigh, they were supported by a merciful God, inspired them with renewed hope. At last they had the delight of beholding from an eminence the smoke issuing from the chimney of the fort, and immediately after, embracing those friends for whose

fate they had entertained so many melancholy forebodings. So ended this interesting narrative.

The whole party were now once more united, but under circumstances of the most distressing privation; all emaciated to such a degree as to look like living skeletons; their hands shook from weakness, so that to take an aim was impossible; and the reindeer, partridges, and other game, flew or bounded past in joyousness and security, while the unhappy beings who beheld them were gaunt with hunger. The winter was closing in with all its horrors; it became daily more difficult to procure fuel, the labor of cutting and carrying the logs being so grievous that only Dr. Richardson and Hepburn could undertake it; and to scrape the ground for bones, and to cook this miserable meal, was all Captain Franklin could accomplish. On the 1st of November the doctor obtained some *tripe de roche*; and as Peltier and Samandré were in the last stage of exhaustion, it was hoped a little of the soup might revive them. All was in vain; they tasted a few spoonfuls, but soon complained of a soreness in their throats, and both died in the course of the night, apparently without pain. To inter the bodies, or even carry them to the river, was a task for which the united strength of the survivors was inadequate; all they could do was to remove them into an opposite part of the house; and the living and the dead remained in awful contiguity under the same roof.

The party was now reduced to four—Franklin, Richardson, Hepburn, and Adam. The last had become dreadfully low since the death of his companions, and could not bear to be left alone for a moment. Their stock of bones was exhausted, and in a short time it was evident that the severity of the frost must render the gathering of the *tripe de roche* impossible. Under these circumstances, with death by famine approaching every hour, this little band of pious and brave men were supported by an unwavering reliance on the mercy of God. "We read prayers," says Captain Franklin, "and a portion of the New Testament in the morning and evening, as had been our practice since Dr. Richardson's arrival; and I may remark, that the performance of these duties always afforded us the greatest consolation, serving to reanimate our hope in the mercy of the Omnipotent, who alone could save and deliver us." Hitherto Dr. Richardson and Hepburn had been the healthiest of the party, but they had overwrought themselves, and both sank rapidly. Owing to their loss of flesh, the hardness of the floor, from which they were only protected by a single blanket, rendered the whole surface of their bodies sore; yet the labor of turning from one side to the other was too much for them. As their strength sank, their mental faculties partook of the weakness of their frame; and, to employ the candid and simple expressions of the excellent leader, "an unreasonable pettishness with each other began to manifest itself, each believing the other weaker in intellect than himself, and more in need of advice and assistance." During this gloomy period, after the first acute pains of hunger, which lasted

ings. So ended

t under circum-  
to such a degree  
om weakness, so  
partridges, and  
curity, while the  
er. The winter  
e difficult to pro-  
eing so grievous  
t; and to scrape  
was all Captain  
the doctor ob-  
dré were in the  
up might revive  
but soon com-  
the course of the  
even carry them  
of the survivors  
into an opposite  
ned in awful con-

ardson, Hepburn,  
the death of his  
moment. Their  
s evident that the  
*tripe de roche* im-  
mine approaching  
ere supported by  
ead prayers," says  
nt in the morning  
ardson's arrival;  
es always afforded  
hope in the mercy  
as." Hitherto Dr.  
he party, but they  
Owing to their  
ey were only pro-  
ce of their bodies  
her was too much  
ies partook of the  
and simple expres-  
ishness with each  
er weaker in intel-  
istance." During  
nger, which lasted

but three or four days, had subsided, they generally enjoyed the refreshment of sleep, accompanied by dreams which for the most part partook of a pleasant character, and very often related to the pleasures of feasting.

On November 7th, Adam had passed a restless night, being disquieted by gloomy apprehensions of approaching death, which they tried in vain to dispel. He was so low in the morning as scarcely to be able to speak, and Captain Franklin remained by his bedside to cheer him as much as possible, while the doctor and Hepburn went out to cut wood. They had hardly begun their labor when they were amazed at hearing the report of a musket, and could scarcely believe that there was any one near till they heard a shout, and espied three Indians close to the house. Adam and Franklin heard the latter noise, and were fearful that some part of the house had fallen upon one of their companions—a disaster which had been thought not unlikely. The alarm was only momentary; for Dr. Richardson came in to communicate the joyful intelligence that relief had arrived. He and Captain Franklin immediately addressed their thanksgivings to the Throne of Mercy for this deliverance; but poor Adam was in so low a state that he could scarcely comprehend the information. When the Indians entered, he attempted to rise, but immediately sank down again. But for this seasonable interposition of Providence, his existence must have terminated in a few hours, and that of the rest probably in not many days.

The Indians who had been dispatched by Mr. Back, had traveled with great expedition, and brought a small supply of provisions. They imprudently presented too much food at first; and though aware of the effects which might arise from a surfeit, and warned by Dr. Richardson to eat very sparingly, the sight of the venison was irresistible; and it was devoured by them all, not excluding the doctor himself, with an avidity that soon produced the most acute pains, which during the night deprived them of rest. Adam, whose weakness rendered him unable to feed himself, was not subjected to the same inconvenience, and taking moderate meals, revived hourly. All now was thankfulness and cheerful activity. Boudel-kell, the youngest Indian, after an hour's rest, returned to the encampment of Akaitcho, the Dog-rib chief, carrying a note from Captain Franklin, and a request for another supply of provisions. The two others, named in their familiar manner Crooked Foot and the Rat, remained to nurse the white men. Under their care the apartment lately so desolate, and something between a sepulcher and a lazar-house, assumed a gladdened look, which had the best effect. The dead bodies were removed, the room cleaned of its filth and fragments of pounded bones, and large cheerful fires produced a sensation of comfort to which they had long been strangers. The poor sufferers had often cast a wishful eye on a pile of dried wood near the river, but were utterly unable to carry it up the bank. When pointed out to the Indians, they fetched it home with a rapidity which astonished their feeble friends. "They

set about every thing," says Franklin, "with an activity which amazed us. Indeed, contrasted with our emaciated figures and extreme debility, their frames appeared to us gigantic, and their strength supernatural."

Under the care of the Indians, and the blessing of wholesome and regular meals, the strength of the party was so far restored, that, although still feeble, on the 16th, after having united in prayer and thanksgiving to God for their deliverance, they left Fort Enterprise—a spot where, as they had formerly enjoyed much comfort if not happiness, they had latterly experienced a degree of misery scarcely to be paralleled. The Indians treated them with unremitting kindness, gave them their own snow-shoes, and walked at their side to be ready to lift them up when they fell. In this manner they pushed forward to the abode of Akaitcho, the Indian chief, who welcomed them with the utmost hospitality. Soon after they received letters from their friends at Fort Providence, and the messenger also brought two trains of dogs, a package of spirits and tobacco for the Indians, and a supply of shirts and clothes for Captain Franklin and his companions. The gratification of changing their linen, which had been uninterruptedly worn ever since their departure from the sea-coast, is described as conveying an intensity of comfort to which no words can do justice. From this spot their progress to Fort Providence and thence to Montreal was prosperous and easy; and thus terminated their long, fatiguing, and disastrous travels in North America, having journeyed by water and by land, including their navigation of the Polar Sea, five thousand five hundred and fifty miles.

Notwithstanding the appalling sufferings which he had endured, Franklin had not been at home a year, before, hearing of the determination of the government to make another effort at discovering a northern passage, he volunteered his services. Dr. Richardson, also, offered to accompany him, and undertake the survey of the coast between the Mackenzie and Coppermine Rivers, while Franklin made the attempt to reach Icy Cape. These offers were accepted, and the expedition was fitted out with a liberality and forethought which secured them against such terrible disasters as had befallen the former. They sailed from Liverpool in February, 1825, and proceeded to the Arctic regions by way of New York, Niagara, Lake Superior, and Lake Winnipeg. They did not reach the banks of Mackenzie's River before the middle of August, where, as it was too late to commence the work of exploration, they established their winter quarters, which they called Fort Franklin. Lieutenant Back superintended the erection of these buildings, while Franklin descended the Mackenzie to the Polar Sea, and Richardson set off on an exploring tour to the head waters of Denase's River. Both parties returned to the fort in September, and there passed the winter in comparative comfort.

They set out on the 15th of June, 1826, and descended the Macken-

y which amazed  
and extreme de-  
strength super-

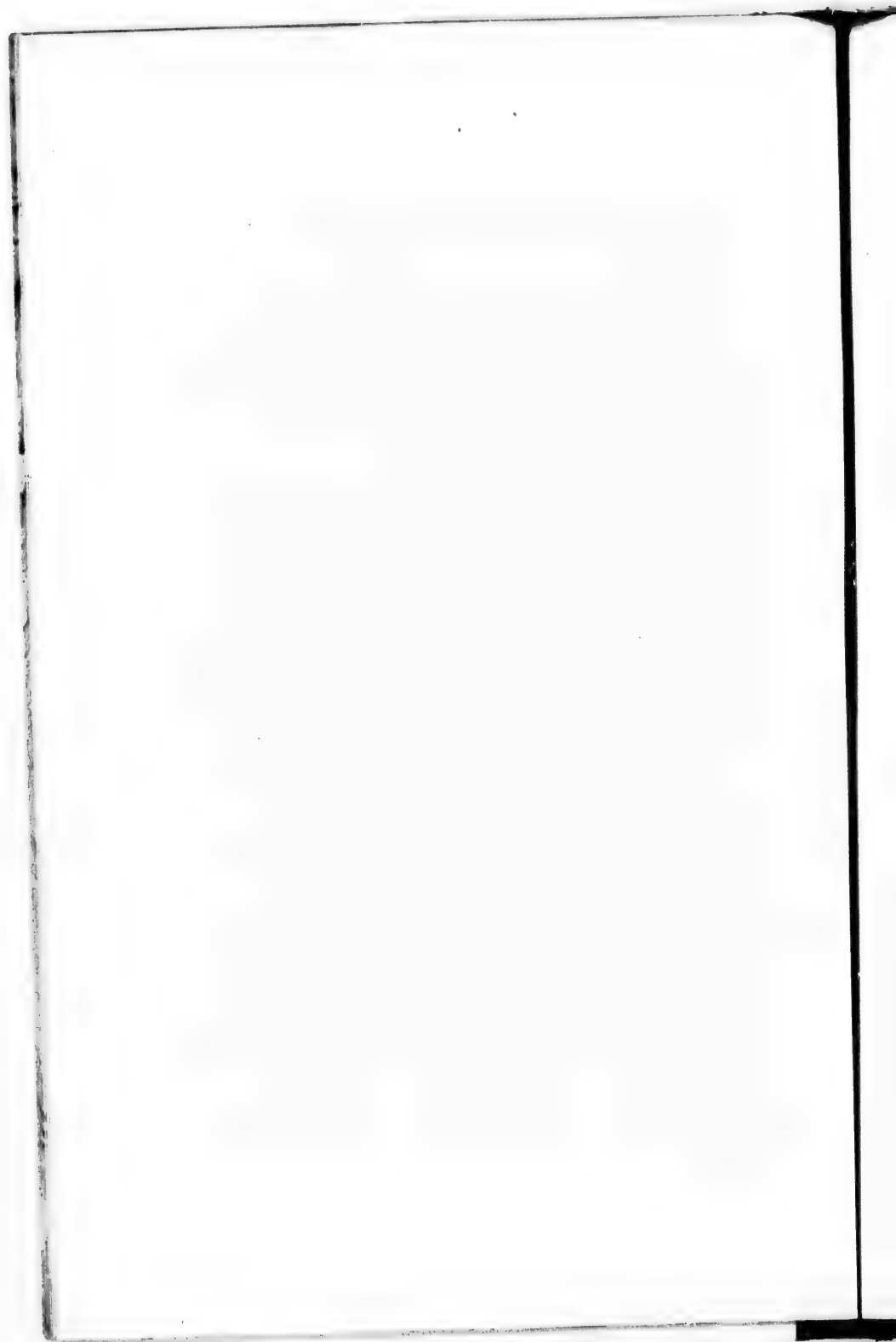
wholesome and  
restored, that, al-  
in prayer and  
ort Enterprise—  
ort if not happi-  
y scarcely to be  
g kindness, gave  
be ready to lift  
forward to the  
nem with the ut-  
a their friends at  
trains of dogs, a  
ply of shirts and  
gratification of  
worn ever since  
ying an intensity  
is spot their pro-  
s prosperous and  
disastrous travels  
y land, including  
undred and fifty

he had endured,  
of the determi-  
discovering a north-  
dson, also, offered  
oast between the  
de the attempt to  
ne expedition was  
ared them against  
They sailed from  
Arctic regions by  
Winnipeg. They  
he middle of Au-  
rk of exploration,  
ed Fort Franklin.  
e building, while  
a, and Richardson  
ase's River. Both  
passed the winter

ended the Macken-

zie River nearly to its mouth, when the two parties separated, Franklin making westward along the coast for Icy Cape, while Dr. Richardson steered eastward, for the mouth of the Coppermine. The former continued to advance along the coast until he had passed the boundary line between British America and the Russian possessions, when he encountered much drift ice. The weather was foggy and cold; his frail boats were leaky and unsafe, and signs of winter began to appear, so that he prudently commenced his return on the 18th of August. At this time Captain Beechey, who had been sent out by way of Behring's Straits, to effect a communication with him, was only a hundred and forty-six miles to the westward, but a large body of ice intervened. Dr. Richardson was more successful. He followed the coast for a distance of five hundred and fifty miles, reached the mouth of the Coppermine River without accident, and returned to Fort Franklin by the 1st of September. Franklin arrived soon afterward, and the united expedition returned to England. They reached Liverpool in September, 1827, having been absent two years and eight months. The most interesting portion of this journey was their intercourse with the various tribes of Esquimaux, on the shores of the Polar Sea; but the limits of this article will not permit us to copy the spirited narratives of the two commanders. They were frequently on the verge of hostilities, but fortunately extricated themselves without the shedding of blood. There was no serious accident during the whole course of the expedition, and if Franklin did not push his explorations as far westward as he hoped, he had certainly cause to be grateful to the Providence which preserved him and his party from the perils and sufferings of his first journey.





## MEYENDORFF'S

### JOURNEY TO BOKHARA.

---

THE commercial relations which have for a long time existed between Russia and the Kingdom of Bokhara—the most powerful state of what is called Independent Tartary—have been greatly extended during the present century. Envoys from the Khan of Bokhara had occasionally visited St. Petersburg, and when, in the year 1820, one of them expressed a desire, on the part of his master, to see a Russian embassy in Bokhara, the Emperor Alexander determined not to neglect so favorable an opportunity of developing more fully the commerce which was springing up between the two countries, as well as of obtaining information concerning a region which had rarely been visited by Europeans. He therefore appointed M. de Négri, acting Counselor of State, as Envoy to the Khan of Bokhara, accompanied by Baron Meyendorff, who was charged with the task of collecting geographical and statistical information concerning Tartary, Dr. Pander, naturalist, and three interpreters of Orenbourg. After the return of the mission, Baron Meyendorff wrote in French an account of the journey, which was published in Paris in the year 1827. The following abridgment is given in the author's own language, omitting merely those portions which are of little general interest:

We received orders to make our preparations in the month of June, 1820, and by the following August were in Orenbourg, a city fifteen hundred miles distant from St. Petersburg. As we were to traverse immense steppes, frequented only by wandering hordes, the government furnished us with an escort consisting of two hundred Cossacks and two hundred infantry, to which were added twenty-five Bashkir troopers. We took with us two pieces of artillery; three hundred and fifty-eight camels carried the baggage; altogether we had four hundred horses. It required six weeks at Orenbourg to make preparations for the journey and to supply our troop with every thing necessary for the passage of the desert. It was decided that the provisions should be transported on camels, and that but twenty-five chariots would be taken

along, for the men who might fall sick or be wounded on the route. Each chariot was drawn by three horses, and driven by a Bashkir. As we would have to cross some rivers in the steppe of the Kirghizes, we were furnished with two boats.

A two-month's march in the desert would require for each soldier one hundred and five pounds of biscuit, and for each horse four quintals of oats, besides the oatmeal for the troops; a double supply of ammunition for our two pieces of artillery; fifteen *kibitkas* or felt tents; two hundred casks for carrying water in the deserts; and finally, several kegs of brandy. Three hundred and twenty camels were loaded with the provisions of the escort, and thirty-eight with the baggage and provisions of the persons attached to the embassy. The export of Russian money being prohibited, it was necessary to procure ducats; but the merchants of Orenbourg had not a sufficient quantity of them; search was then made in Troïtsk, a city four hundred miles distant; but this attempt failing, a courier was finally dispatched to Moscow, who obtained the required sum at the exchange in that city, after an additional journey of a thousand miles.

Many unforeseen delays thus combined to prevent our departure until the fine season was past, and now the frosts appeared, the bad weather began, and rain, snow, and hail succeeded each other. We had several conferences with the Kirghizes, for the purpose of fixing the route we were to take, and learning the difficulties we might expect to encounter. Five of these people were selected as our guides. Finally, on the 10th of October, the whole escort, collected on the great square of Orenbourg, was reviewed by the Governor-General, who caused mass to be said, and gave the travelers a parting benediction. The solemnity of the religious ceremonies was heightened by a presentiment of the dangers to which the expedition might be exposed. It was possible that the Kirghizes, always eager for pillage, always dissatisfied at seeing the Russians explore their deserts, might attack us by night, or at least destroy all vegetation upon our route across the steppe. But the Khivans, who occupy a part of the territory south of the Aral Sea, were more to be feared than the Kirghizes themselves, for, not less adroit, and more united, they sometimes made excursions to the number of four or five thousand. Although such a mass of cavalry could inspire but little fear in our infantry, yet the escort would find it impossible to defend a convoy of seven hundred camels, including those of the Bokharian merchants which were placed under our protection. These people, in their sudden and unforeseen attacks upon caravans, endeavor, by cries and shouting, to terrify the camels, which, once dispersed, easily fall into their power. Besides the danger of the route, we might run some risk in Bokharia itself, a country inhabited by a barbarous and warlike people. Before our arrival at Orenbourg, some Bokharian merchants had said confidentially to their friends: "Perhaps none of the Christian travelers will return home. Should even the Khan of Khiva let them pass, our

TARA.

ed on the route.  
y a Bashkir. As  
he Kirghizes, we

for each soldier  
orse four quintals  
supply of ammu-  
r felt tents; two  
d finally, several  
were loaded with  
baggage and pro-  
xport of Russian  
ducats; but the  
of them; search  
distant; but this  
Moscow, who ob-  
fter an additional

at our departure  
ppeared, the bad  
other. We had  
of fixing the route  
ght expect to en-  
ides. Finally, on  
e great square of  
no caused mass to  
. The solemnity  
essentiment of the  
was possible that  
fied at seeing the  
ht, or at least de-  
But the Khivans,  
dea, were more to  
adroit, and more  
er of four or five  
pire but little fear  
e to defend a con-  
e Bokharian mer-  
se people, in their  
avor, by cries and  
asily fall into their  
run some risk in  
nd warlike people.  
erchants had said  
Christian travelers  
et them pass, our



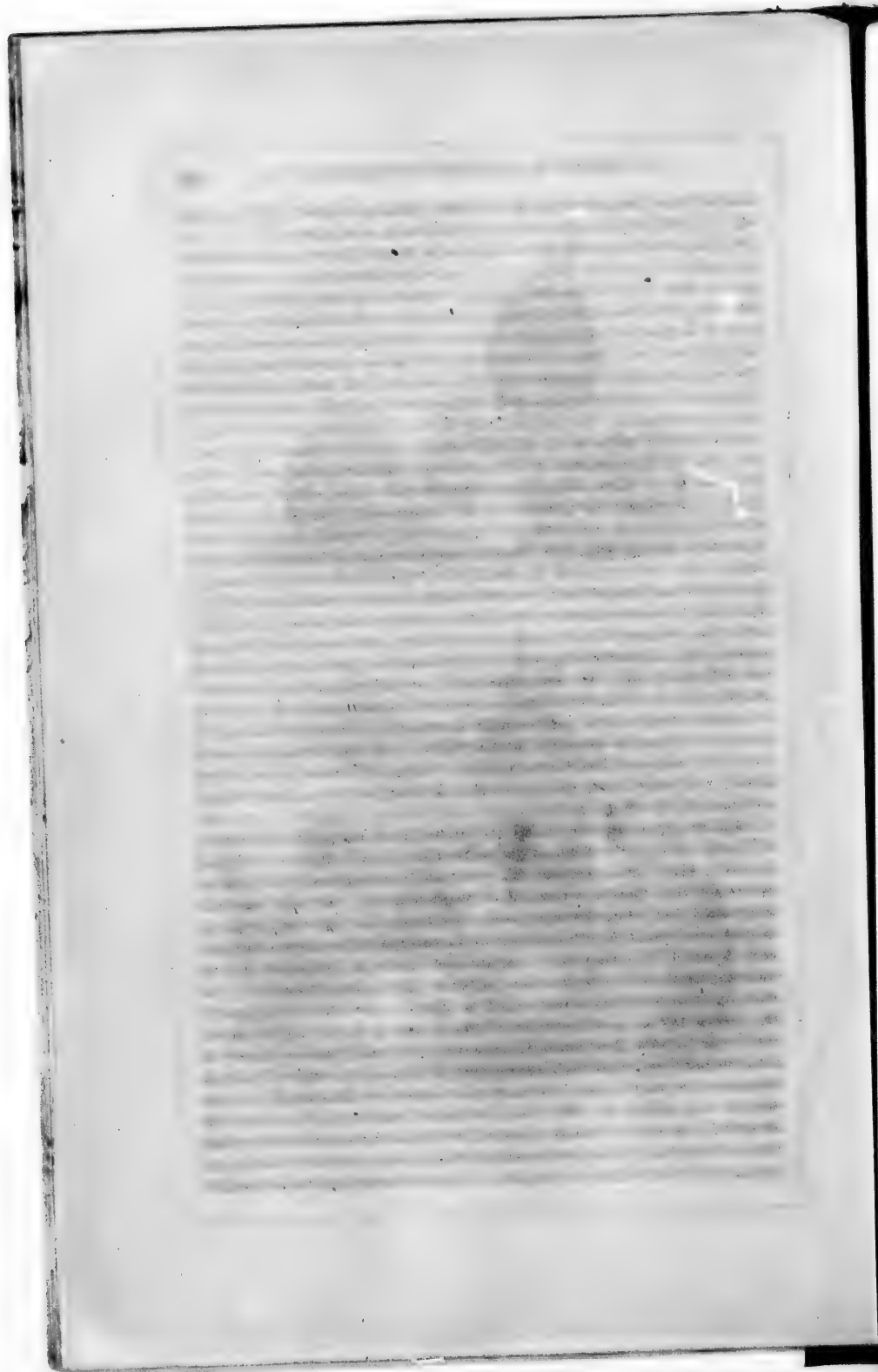


KIRGHIZ WITH BOTTLE AND BOWL.



IN THE CAMP OF HAROUN GHAZI. Page 335.





khan will not commit the fault of allowing them to return. Why do you wish the Christians to become acquainted with our country?"

From Orenbourg to the mountains of Mughodjar the appearance of the country is mostly uniform. The surface is undulating and broken by chains of hills, whose slopes often extend from ten to fifteen miles. The absence of wood and the slight elevation of the hills, expose to view a widely-extended horizon, where the eye seeks in vain for some object on which to rest. Aridity, uniformity, and silence characterize a steppe. Toward the end of May the rays of a burning sun have scorched the vegetation of these regions, and thenceforth the ground becomes of a dirty yellow color.

On arriving at the banks of the Ilek we saw, for the first time, a large village or *aoul*, formed of Kirghiz tents. Flocks of sheep, numbering from five to six thousand, first attracted our attention. In approaching this village we saw tents of white or brown felt, of every size; there were about fifty of them, placed irregularly in groups of three, four, and even six. We soon learned that this was the camp of the sultan, Haroun Ghazi, one of the principal Kirghiz chiefs. He was awaiting our arrival in order to accompany us to the Sir, and, by this act of kindness, to give evidence of his attachment to the Russian government, whose assistance in fact he greatly needed, on account of his quarrels with the Khan of Khiva. The day following our arrival the sultan came on horseback to visit M. de Negri. He was surrounded by a hundred Kirghizes, and wore a turban, which is not customary in this desert, but is regarded as a sign of piety on the part of a Mohammedan, who wishes to be distinguished from the mass of the Kirghizes. All these nomadic people wished to penetrate into the tent of the *Chargé d'Affaires*; in fact they crowded in while there was any room to be had, and immediately squatted upon the ground.

The interior of the tent, filled with these ill-looking figures, presented a strange scene. The sultan alone had a fair complexion, with large and beautiful black eyes; his bearing was mild but serious. We readily perceived that he was a man of very good sense. His visit lasted an hour and a half. On the morrow I went to see him; meeting with an assembly of about fifty Kirghizes on my way, I approached them and soon learned that they had assembled to execute the sentence pronounced by the sultan against one of their fellow-countrymen who had stolen a horse. He was condemned to death according to the laws of the Koran, but some of the older Kirghizes prayed the prince to pardon him, in order that Providence might favor the expedition he was about to undertake, and that his clemency might be a happy augury for their reunion with the Russians. The sultan yielded to this appeal, and the penalty was mitigated. The thief, half-naked, with a piece of black felt around his neck and hanging upon his shoulders, was forced, by two men on horseback armed with whips, to run to the next tent, where his figure was blackened with soot, after which he was again driven through

the crowd of Kirghizes. They then fastened to the tail of a horse a rope which the thief was compelled to hold in his teeth, and he ran thus behind the horse while two men made it trot; others followed, striking the thief heavy blows with whips. The greater part of the Kirghizes who assisted in this punishment laughed aloud, while others swore. Finally, after a race of several minutes, they desisted; he went to thank the sultan, who had not witnessed the castigation, and promised him never to commit theft again. Meanwhile the horse of the thief suffered the fate which had been destined for his master. His throat was cut, and he was instantly dismembered and divided, not without loud shouts and uproar, and the cracking of whips.

After witnessing this scene I went to the sultan, who obliged me to wait a few minutes while he had his tent decorated. At length I entered and found him seated near the middle of a large round tent; his friends were sitting in a semicircle on one side, while on the other were places prepared for us. The sides of the apartment were adorned with tapestry; suspended to a cord were articles of clothing, some tiger-skins, exposed for sale, a rich diadem of gold set with turquoises and rubies, and the head-dress of a Kirghiz female. There were likewise dried meats, large skin bags of mare's milk, and wooden vessels. Objects of luxury were thus mingled with those of necessity, giving evidence of a love of display, combined with savage tastes and customs.

After leaving the waters of the Ilel we crossed the summit of the Bassagha range and then forded the Kubleili-témir, after having broken the ice with hatchets. I was walking along the bank, sometimes on the ice and sometimes on land, looking for petrifications or curious conglomerates, when suddenly I perceived in the air a large animal which had leaped from the top of the hill, and seemed about to precipitate itself upon me. I retreated and it fell at my feet upon the ice, which it broke, at the same time shattering its bones. It was a saïga, a species of antelope, the first that I had ever seen. It had been chased by some Cossacks of the convoy, who had pursued it over the plain to the brink of the precipice. In escaping them it had run upon its own destruction, through the effect of that blind terror which characterizes the saïgas, and which often delivers them up to the hunters. I have been assured by people worthy of credit that in the mountains of Guberlinsk and Ural, toward the month of June, the season of the great migrations of the saïga, they have seen flocks of eight or nine thousand of these antelopes. Their flesh is delicious, and their skin is made into garments. It is generally very difficult to approach them, except during the great heats of summer; this animal then seeks the shade, and frequently a score of saïgas stand behind each other with the head down, while the foremost of the flock conceals its own in a hole, or behind a rock. In this position they can easily be surprised; the hunter kills the foremost, the second usually takes its place and presents itself to his blows, until he kills several in succession.

of a horse and he ran thus  
owed, striking  
the Kirghizes  
others swoie.  
went to thank  
promised him  
the thief suffered  
throat was cut,  
out loud shouts

obliged me to  
At length I en-  
round tent; his  
the other were  
re adorned with  
ome tiger-skins,  
ises and rubies,  
likewise dried  
els. Objects of  
g evidence of a  
s.

the summit of the  
r having broken  
ometimes on the  
curious conglom-  
nimal which had  
precipitate itself  
e, which it broke,  
a species of ante-  
ed by some Cos-  
n to the brink of  
own destruction,  
erizes the saigas,  
ave been assured  
Guberninsk and  
eat migrations of  
and of these ante-  
into garments. It  
during the great  
and frequently a  
d down, while the  
hind a rock. In  
kills the foremost,  
to his blows, un-

From the Témir we bore toward the heights of Mussevil which resemble those of Bassagha, and we could see the Mugodjar Mountains, distant about forty miles. These mountains, which rise up majestically, and present a bold outline on the horizon, produce a very picturesque effect. Nevertheless, we had a great desire to see them behind us, that we might be no longer exposed to the great cold and the storms: for, from what the Kirghizes say, the southern slope of these mountains offers a much less rigorous climate. Thus far, however, the weather had been quite favorable. On leaving them, we first passed through a level country, afterward through deserts covered with moving sand, and over mountains naked and destitute of vegetation. If the reader will imagine several salt lakes and some level plains, the soil of which, formed of a soft blue clay, yields under the feet of the traveler, and which shows the ordinary indications of the diminution and retreat of the waters of the sea, he will have a sufficiently correct idea of the nature of the surface of this country.

On the 2d of November our chief guide, Emantchi-Bey, who had not for ten years traversed the country through which we were passing, advised us that after we had gone fifteen miles we should stop at Kaunjur, as he was confident that we would find water only in the Khoja-kul, a lake situated more than twelve miles further. We were unwilling to believe him, for the Kirghizes, who were interested in obstructing our march, had already frequently deceived us. We then continued our journey; the day was declining and nothing as yet indicated the proximity of the lake; the night surprised us, and as it was now the season when the nights are darkest, it was very difficult to find the way through the steppe, which presented no traces of a road. We could no longer distinguish the summits of the mountains, nor the hills, nor the tombs by means of which the natives direct their journey, and without which it would be very easy to go astray. Some prudent Kirghizes advised us to halt, to spare ourselves useless fatigue, and to sleep instead of searching for something to drink. But as we had announced that we would go to the lake, we determined to persevere. Several Kirghizes gave themselves all imaginary trouble in order not to lose the direction. Always on horseback, they dispersed themselves before us and sought to discover some little path, a certain index of the vicinity of water. A well, a hole filled with water, or a lake, are points of meeting for the wanderers of these deserts, and thus the paths are naturally formed. After having traveled several hours of an obscure night, we began to be tormented with the fear of losing our true route, when suddenly a Kirghiz struck a light a mile in advance of the column and produced by the sparks a magical effect—an expedient employed by the Kirghizes when, during the night, they are about to unharness their horses, and one of them, having found the true road, wishes to assemble his comrades there. We followed our new guide for two or three miles, and finally arrived, at eight o'clock in the evening, upon the banks of the Khoja-kul.

On leaving Khoja-kul we directed our course toward Cul-kuduk—the slave's well—situated on the edge of the desert of Borzouk. This desert is composed of moving sand, which is formed by the wind into steep hillocks, and is continually changing. We found it the more difficult to convey our chariots over these deep sands because the horses had been much enfeebled by poor feed. Arrived at Cul-kuduk we burned ten of our carriages, which kindled very easily and made so little smoke in comparison with the brambles which we had habitually used, that we loaded our camels with the wheels and planks, in order to prolong, for a few days, at least, the pleasure of enjoying a good fire.

We reached the hill of Sari-bulak on the 9th of November, and from the summit I perceived, fifty miles distant, the heights of Kuk-ternak, whose base is washed by the waters of the Aral. I spoke to our Kirghizes of the traces of water upon the Sari-bulak, and they assured me that their fathers had seen the Aral Sea extend to the foot of this hill, now forty miles distant. So large a number of Kirghizes have affirmed the same thing that I consider it as certain, which proves how considerable and rapid is the diminution of the Aral Sea.

Before arriving at the Sea of Aral we entered the desert of Kara-kum, or Black Sand. All these sandy deserts present nearly the same aspect. The Kara-kum is abundantly supplied with fresh water, which may be found nearly always at the depth of one or two fathoms. When we came to Camechlu-bash, a bay adjoining the Sir, I set out with a company of friends and a few Cossacks to visit the mouth of the Sir. The river expands as it approaches the Aral, and the whole delta thus formed is covered with reeds: the water is not more than four feet deep, while the river itself is navigable above, as far as Kokand, and is several fathoms deep throughout all this extent. In the neighborhood of the Sir are several canals from five to six feet deep, made at an epoch anterior to the dominion of the Kirghizes, whom I believe incapable of so laborious an undertaking. Here we saw very large fields in which the Kirghizes cultivate wheat and barley; they have also some fields of melons. They preserve their crops in little holes in the ground. The provision for the few horses and animals which they possess consists of the leaves of young reeds, the growth of which is accelerated by burning the plants the preceding year.

The embassy arrived on the 19th of November, after forty-one days' travel, at the banks of the Sir-déria, opposite the heights of Kara-tepéh. The sands of the Kara-kum, which reach almost to the Sir, and extend a hundred miles along its course, were now again visible. Near Sir-déria, the ordinary retreat of the poor, misery has multiplied the number of robbers, and in traversing these regions we observed on the summit of the hills some natives who seemed watching an occasion to seize upon a straggler or horse. The countries watered by the Sir form the paradise of the steppe of the Kirghizes, who are proud of possessing so large a river in their territory. The object of their most ardent desire

ARA.

Cul-kuduk—the  
zouk. This des-  
wind into steep  
more difficult to  
horses had been  
we burned ten of  
little smoke in  
ly used, that we  
to prolong, for a

ember, and from  
s of Kuk-ternak,  
poke to our Kir-  
they assured me  
e foot of this hill,  
izes have affirmed  
ves how consider-

e desert of Kara-  
t nearly the same  
fresh water, which  
o fathoms. When  
r, I set out with a  
mouth of the Sir.  
whole delta thus  
han four feet deep,  
and, and is several  
aborhood of the Sir  
t an epoch anterior  
capable of so labor-  
in which the Kir-  
ne fields of melons.  
nd. The provision  
nsists of the leaves  
d by burning the

fter forty-one days'  
ghts of Kara-tepéh.  
he Sir, and extend  
visible. Near Sir-  
multiplied the num-  
served on the sum-  
an occasion to seize  
y the Sir form the  
nd of possessing so  
most ardent desire



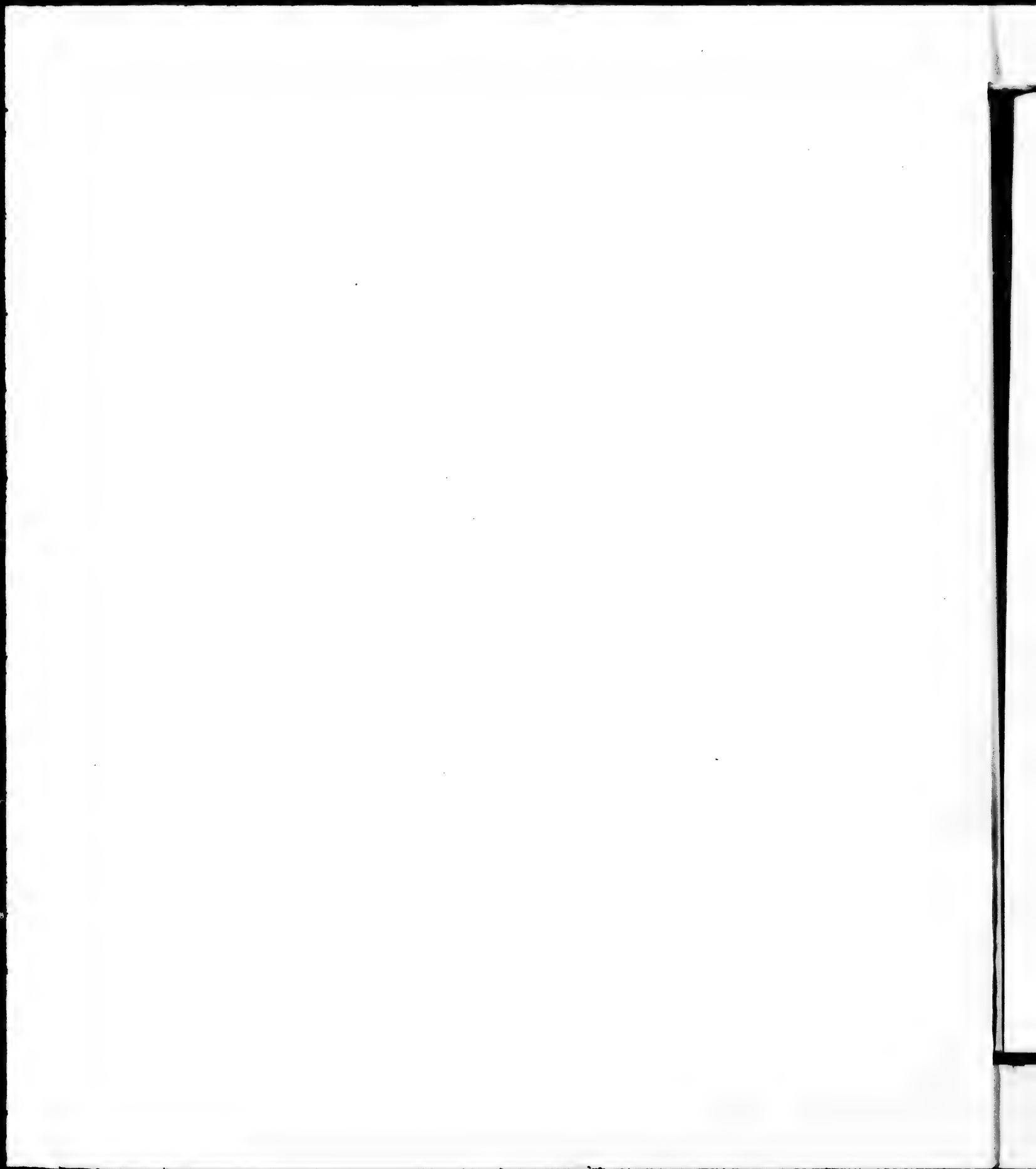


MUSIC AMONG THE KIRGHIZ. Page 320.



MUSIC AMONG THE KIRGHIZ. Page 340.





is to winter with their herds upon its borders, where the cold is less severe than on the banks of the Ileik, the Or, the Irghiz, or upon the mountains of the Mughojar and Durgatch, or among the sands of the Kara-kum. Along the Sir the frosts are never so severe as to destroy the animals, or incommode the people in their huts of felt; but for six years past the rich Kirghizes have been deprived of the pleasure of passing the winter upon these fortunate shores, for their enemies, the Khivans, come thither to plunder them whenever they find an opportunity.

The Kirghizes delight to winter among the reeds which are thick enough to form a shelter against the storms. These wandering people appear to have a tendency to melancholy, and the murmur of the rapid waves of the Sir charms their frequent leisure hours. Nothing, indeed, contributes more to reverie than the sound of the waters of a river which flows, like time, with a monotonous rapidity. The Kirghizes often pass half the night seated upon a stone looking at the moon, and improvising sad words, set to airs as sad. They also have historical songs which recount the high deeds of their heroes; but this sort of poem is sung only by professional minstrels. I very much regret not having heard any. I often said to the Khirgizes that I listened to their songs with pleasure; their impromptus were merely compliments, and were scarcely worth retaining, yet there remain a few fragments of songs in my memory. A Kirghiz bey, a rich and intelligent man, the head of a numerous family, sang to me these improvised words: "You who wish that I should sing to you a song, I will tell you that a bey, poor, but good, is better than a despised khan." These words perfectly expressed his thought, for he was the declared enemy of the Khan of the Kirghizes. The same bey, passing by us one day while we breakfasted, hummed these words: "See these Russians who breakfast in eating the flesh of swine, and drinking brandy. Ah! what men!"

A young Kirghiz one day chanted the following song, composed by a young girl: "Seest thou this snow? Ah, well! my body is more white. Seest thou flowing upon this snow the blood of this slaughtered sheep? Ah, well! my cheeks are more red. Pass this mountain, thou wilt there behold the trunk of a burned tree. Ah, well! my tresses are more dark. With the sultan there are scribes who write much. Ah, well! my eyebrows are darker than their ink." Another Kirghiz sang to me: "Behold this village of tents which belongs to a rich man; he has but one daughter, who remains at home by day; at night she walks forth, and has only the moon for her companion."

This is a sample of the ideas of the Kirghizes, the children of the desert, who, except as regards religion, have remained independent of all the influences of foreign civilization. After having seen them, we have a correct picture of a wandering people, cherishing their liberty, and despising all which tends to impose upon them any restraint. Unsubdued, warlike, ferocious, the Kirghiz, alone, and on horseback, courses through

the desert, and traverses hundreds of miles with astonishing rapidity, in order to visit a relative, or a friend belonging to a strange tribe. On the way he stops at every village; he there tells the news, and, always sure of being well received, even when not known, he partakes the food of his host. This consists usually of cheese, curdled goat's milk, meat, and, when it is to be had, *koumiss*, a drink extracted from the milk of mares, much esteemed in the desert. He never forgets the aspect of the country through which he has passed, and returns home after some days' absence, rich in new information, to repose among his wives and children. His wives are his only servants; they cook his food, make his clothes, and saddle his horse, while he with perfect coolness limits his labors to the quiet care of his flocks. I have seen the brother of a sultan, very much esteemed among the Kirghizes, tending his sheep, on horseback, dressed in a coat of red cloth, and traveling thus for a fortnight without thinking his dignity lowered thereby.

The Kirghizes are governed by elders, heads of families, beys, behadirs, sultans, and khans. The title of bey is properly hereditary, but if the possessor can not sustain it by his character and merits, he soon loses it; while he who is able to make himself esteemed obtains it, either from the custom which insensibly arises, of calling him sultan, or because an assembly meets expressly for the purpose of conferring upon him this honorable title. The Kirghizes are very irascible; the slightest cause, often merely a disappointed hope, is sufficient to spur them on to the most cruel revenge. A few years ago these people, having been several times disturbed by the Khivans, solicited the aid of the Bokharians, whose caravans had also been plundered by these robbers. The Kirghizes believed that the government of Bokhara could not refuse their assistance; disappointed in their hope, they became furious, and resolved to pillage the Bokharian caravans on the first opportunity. One of their chiefs cut off the tail of his horse, carried it to Bokhara, to the chief vizier, and said to him: "As this tail has been separated from this horse, so do I separate myself from you; henceforth I will be your implacable enemy." He left immediately with two or three friends, and carried off eight camels and two men. Such were the first hostilities of a war which he alone had declared against all Bokharia. The ferocity and violence of this man may give an idea of the untamed character of these people. I will conclude this digression upon the Kirghizes, by remarking that they never give themselves this name; they designate themselves by that of *Kasak*, which signifies 'man on horseback,' according to some, and 'warrior,' according to others. They say that the Bashkirs call them Kirghizes, but they do not know whence the name is derived, and they give it only to the wandering tribes of the great horde. The latter are in great fear of the Chinese, whose severe, or rather cruel policy, is nevertheless justified by necessity. A caravan having been pillaged not far from the frontiers of Tsungari, the Chinese, guarded by the Manchoo outposts, made reprisals, and thousands of Kirghizes, guilty or not, paid

ing rapidity, in  
nge tribe. On  
aws, and, always  
artakes the food  
at's milk, meat,  
om the milk of  
the aspect of the  
after some days'  
ves and children.  
ake his clothes,  
mits his labors to  
of a sultan, very  
ep, on horseback,  
fortnight without

amilies, beys, beha-  
hereditary, but if  
erits, he soon loses  
ains it, either from  
tan, or because an  
g upon him this  
he slightest cause,  
ur them on to the  
aving been several  
of the Bokharians,  
rs. The Kirghizes  
ot refuse their as-  
rious, and resolved  
nity. One of their  
khara, to the chief  
ted from this horse,  
be your implacable  
nds, and carried off  
ilities of a war which  
erocity and violence  
ter of these people.  
by remarking that  
nate themselves by  
according to some,  
e Bashkirs call them  
is derived, and they  
rde. The latter are  
rueful policy, is never-  
een pillaged not far  
led by the Manchoo  
s, guilty or not, paid

with their lives for this aggression. A few examples of this sort put an end to the incursions of the Kirghizes who live near the frontiers of the Chinese Empire.

At the time of our journey the river was frozen, and we crossed it with the greatest care; the ice was so brittle that it cracked upon the passage of our two cannon. A camel broke through by its weight, and was drawn out only with much difficulty. The Kirghizes burned some reeds, and spreading the ashes upon the ice, finally prevented the camels from slipping. After much exertion we crossed the Sir, celebrated in antiquity under the name of Jaxartes. On our return, the crossing was more difficult and slow. Two boats which we took with us were made into a raft, upon which the artillery and our company passed from one shore to the other, while the horses and camels crossed by swimming. It was a curious spectacle to see a dozen of the latter animals attached one behind another, and conducted by Kirghizes. The conductors, naked, and remarkable for their athlétic forms, sometimes clung closely to the camels, and sometimes swimming beside, urged them on by shouting. Three of these animals being drowned, were cast upon the banks. The natives turned them toward Mecca, and having cut their throats, reciting meanwhile the accustomed prayer, devoured them immediately.

In the plain bordering on the Jan-déria there are numerous groves in which various kinds of animals, such as wolves, wild cats, and even tigers, have their retreat. In hunting the tiger a score of men, armed with match-locks, surround the thicket in which he is concealed; they then set fire to it on the windward side, when the heat and flames drive the animal from his retreat and expose him to the balls of the hunters. We employed this method in hunting the wild boar near the shores of the Kouvan, and succeeded in killing a number of them. This hunt presented a singular spectacle. From the midst of a plain covered with burning reeds arose whirlwinds of smoke. Across the flames a hundred Cossacks were seen, galloping with us to the right and left; our horses carried us sometimes in advance, sometimes in the rear, and often very near the furious animals which were bounding through the marsh, disappearing at one moment, and dashing suddenly into sight the next. On all sides were heard the shots of pistols and guns: here lay wounded horses, there the furious Cossacks strove to pierce the wild boars with their spears. An officer of the Ural Cossacks, stung by hearing another say that he was afraid, dismounted and seated himself upon an enormous wounded boar, which he seized by the ears as it ran; then, to finish the exploit, he shot it through the head with a pistol. If one can imagine all these various objects he will have a good idea of our wild boar hunts in the desert. In this plain we perceived some traces of ancient canals, which prove that this country was once more populous than it is at the present day.

Leaving the Jan-déria on the 3d of December, we proceeded by the highway toward Bokhara; I say highway, for it was a road of about



three fathoms in width and much worn by frequent travel. It is the route of the caravans from Bokhara to Orsk and Orenbourg, and of the Kirghizes from the western part of the steppe, who take animals to the bazaars of the former place. This route leads across the desert of Kizil-kum (Red Sand), which is remarkable for its sterility; nor water nor springs are anywhere to be seen. It is said that formerly there were three wells near the road which we followed, and that they were filled up, in order that they might no longer be used by the robbers who usually kept themselves concealed among the neighboring hills. These brigands have been effectively expelled from the Kizil-kum, but now they hide in the gorges of the Bukhan Mountains, and when they have sufficient force make a descent upon the travelers and pillage them, or even kill them in case of resistance. In approaching this region we therefore kept strict guard and sent patrols into the defiles of the Bukhan. Happily the dangerous passage was made without accident, but ten days afterward a caravan of Bokharians and Kirghizes was pillaged by the Khivans, who fell upon them at the wells of Bukhan, and pursued the fugitives into the Kizil-kum, where, having encountered a troop of Kirghizes, they gave battle to them. On our return we found on the route more than a hundred dead bodies which were the food of dogs and a multitude of birds of prey. Fragments of china and porcelain ware, broken boxes and vases of bronze, scattered about on the sand, showed where the fugitives had been overtaken and defeated.

After leaving the borders of the Jan-déria we entered a vast uninhabited region which continued until within thirty miles of Bokhara, and which extends from the banks of the Sir-déria, opposite Turkestan and Tashkend, to the borders of the Amou-déria; this space, comprehending from eight to nine degrees of latitude, separates Bokharia from the steppe of the Kirghizes, and the Khanate of Kokand from that of Khiva. On the north of Bokharia we find habitable lands, but the fear of the Khivans, a bold and cruel race, prevents all settlers from establishing themselves there, while at the same time Bokharia itself offers better pastures. Every year several Khirgiz families, chiefly of the poorer classes, leave their native soil in order to settle in the deserts of Bokharia, where the undisturbed quiet and the milder climate promise them a happier fate.

Beyond the Jan-déria we traveled, as I have said, upon a much frequented route; almost every day we met Kirghiz caravans which were returning from Bokhara, and which, after having sold their sheep, carried back from that city barley, oatmeal, tobacco, cotton and linen clothing. We took great pleasure in talking with these Bazartchi—men returning from market—in asking the news from Bokhara, and when they had left the capital; we felt happy in the prospect of soon terminating a journey so long and toilsome, which was beginning to weary us very much. Our horses, which found but a very miserable living in the Kizil-kum, grew thinner every day; the Bashkir horses were emaciated;

travel. It is the  
urg, and of the  
animals to the  
the desert of  
ility; nor water  
erly there were  
they were filled  
he robbers who  
ng hills. These  
l-kum, but now  
when they have  
pillage them, or  
this region we  
e defiles of the  
without accident,  
Kirghizes was pil-  
of Bukhan, and  
g encountered a  
return we found  
ere the food of  
china and porce-  
ed about on the  
nd defeated.

tered a vast unin-  
miles of Bokhara,  
posite Turkestan  
his space, compre-  
es Bokhara from  
and from that of  
ands, but the fear  
ettlers from estab-  
haria itself offers  
es, chiefly of the  
in the deserts of  
r climate promise

upon a much fre-  
avans which were  
d their sheep, car-  
cotton and linen  
e Bazartchi—men  
okhara, and when  
ot of soon termin-  
ning to weary us  
rable living in the  
s were emaciated;

they were no longer able to draw the six chariots which remained of the twenty-five with which we set out from Orenbourg. It became necessary to replace them with Cossack horses which had hitherto carried the pack-saddles. All our people were extremely weak, especially the infantry; in a word, we were all in the greatest need of reaching the end of our journey. We took ice and water from the Jan-déria in leather sacks and casks; yet it was very difficult to carry with us water enough to supply so many men and horses for four days and a half.

After having passed the Kizil-kum, we traversed, for thirty miles, a plain covered with worm-wood, bounded on the right by the mountains of Bukhan. The Bokharians who accompanied us, fearing a surprise on the part of the Khivans, persuaded us to avoid the wells of Bukhan, which were very dangerous. At Kapkantash are several sulphur springs, fetid and very salt. Our horses scarcely tasted the water; but on our return in March, a horse drank five buckets of this tainted water. As the weather was by this time very warm, every body was thirsty, and we had much difficulty in restraining our soldiers a few minutes before permitting them to drink this wretched water, which was, however, very cool. Fifteen miles from Kapkantash we entered the sands of Batkak-kum, which extended for twenty miles; after leaving these we again entered a mountainous country, called Susiz-kara, or black without water, and at length arrived at Kara-aghatch. Before reaching this place, four Bokharian custom-house officers came to meet the embassy, and after saluting us with the usual formula of *Khosh amedid* (be welcome!), informed us that the khan, their sovereign, had sent provisions for us, to Aghatma, twenty-eight miles from Kara-aghatch. M. de Négri politely expressed to them our gratitude, and we proceeded with them to the former place.

As we drew near Aghatma a Bokharian *youz-bashi*, or centurion, followed by a score of horsemen, came to announce to the Chargé d'Affaires that the khan had sent him to receive the embassy and supply it with what provisions were needed; then several horsemen approached M. de Négri, took his hand in the oriental manner, and all repeated "*Khosh amedid*," after which the little party set off in a gallop. The greater part of the horses were very beautiful, large, light, and full of fire, and they vanished like lightning. At Aghatma we found fresh white bread, delicious grapes, water-melons, and pomegranates. One may judge of the pleasure which each of us experienced in eating this bread and fruit, by remembering that for seventy days we had lived on biscuit alone, which became harder every day. Our horses had now nourishing hay and *jagara*, a sort of white grain of the size and shape of lentils, which is given to beasts instead of barley.

About twelve miles from Odun-kuduk, we passed for a short distance through a range of sandy hills, among which we saw the remains of earthen walls and buildings. After having crossed these mounds, we entered, to our great surprise, a country entirely different; we might

have supposed ourselves a thousand leagues distant from the monotonous regions which we had been traversing for the last seventy days. The desert ends at these sandy hillocks, beyond which we were surrounded by fields and water-courses and avenues of trees. On all sides were houses, villages, gardens, vineyards, mosques, and minarets; in a word, one might believe himself transported into an enchanted land. We found ourselves in a country scarcely known to Europeans; every thing excited our curiosity. Let one imagine the interest with which we contemplated the thousands of Orientals, clothed in blue garments and white turbans, running to meet us, some on foot, others riding on horses or asses, but all pressing around us and saluting us in their manner. Many testified their joy by addressing friendly words to us in Russian; their signs of astonishment, their cries, and finally the tumultuous movement which animated all the crowd, gave to our entrance into Bokhara the aspect of a popular festival, the joy of which we should have shared, if the presence of the police, whose voices resounded above all this noise, and who with large clubs struck right and left indiscriminately to make way for us, had not reminded us that our own arrival had caused all this confusion, and that the eagerness to see so many Russians carried the people beyond the fear of the blows.

We were touched with sadness to see in the midst of this Asiatic populace a few Russian soldiers reduced to the condition of slaves. The greater number were aged and infirm, and at the sight of their fellow-countrymen they could not restrain their tears; they stammered a few words in their maternal language; they attempted to precipitate themselves into our midst, so lively an emotion did the pleasure of seeing our soldiers again create in them. These touching scenes, which rent the soul, can not be described.

At Khatun-kuduk we had learned that one of the principal officers of the Bokharian government was awaiting us at the next village. We had passed through a short stretch of cultivated country, when a *penjabashi* (captain of five hundred men) came to meet us with two hundred cavalry. He conducted us through the crowd, and our infantry marched, beating the drums, toward the tent of the *cush-beghi*. At the distance of fifty yards from the tent we dismounted in order to advance between two files of foot-soldiers seated upon the ground, who rose when the *Chargé d'Affaires* passed. Many tents of different colors were to be seen; a great many horses richly caparisoned were attached by the head and hind feet to pickets. Numerous slaves and officers surrounded the tents; in a word, every thing around us added to the solemnity of this first interview.

The *cush-beghi*, named Hakim-bey, was seated in his tent with four Bokharian noblemen; when M. de Négri had taken the place reserved for him, this officer, addressing the persons attached to the embassy, said: "Be seated. You are strangers; I am much pleased to see you." M. de Négri having spoken afterward of the ceremonial to be observed

when he should be presented to the khan, did not entirely agree on this point with the *cush-beghi*. The audience had commenced under favorable auspices, but before it was terminated the Bokharian character disclosed itself. The *cush-beghi* had the indiscretion to ask M. de Négri to make the khan a present of the two cannon which we had with us. When he saw that he should not be able to obtain them, he made no scruple of demanding for the khan the carriage of M. de Négri. All this time he was not ignorant that we had many camels loaded with presents for the Court of Bokhara. This officer was about fifty years of age; his long brown beard was beginning to whiten. He was tall, his countenance was agreeable and full of goodness; he expressed himself in Persian with great facility. He wore a turban formed of a white cashmere shawl, and a robe of sable ornamented with striped cashmere.

We passed the night of the 17th of December near Wafkend, a small city, after having passed through a populous and well-cultivated country. On the 18th we traveled through an equally fine district in order to reach Bazartchi, a large village situated a mile and a half from Bokhara. Since our interview with the *cush-beghi* we had traveled thirty miles; during these two days we were incessantly surrounded by a considerable crowd; the police scattered them with the strokes of their clubs; the curious suffered themselves to be beaten, fled, and returned. Our soldiers advanced in the greatest order; they were in complete uniform; the sound of the drum, which was heard from time to time, occasioned cries of surprise from the multitude. We advanced thus in the midst of the tumult and the public demonstrations of joy excited by our arrival.

After thirty-six hours of discussion on the ceremonial to be observed, we finally came to an agreement; the khan consented that M. de Négri should sit in his presence. At noon, on the 20th of December, we made our solemn entry into Bokhara, preceded by a detachment of Cossacks, and by the presents, which consisted of furs, porcelain, crystals, watches, and fire-arms. Other Cossacks and a party of infantry closed the procession. An Ouzbek nobleman, a very important personage, who spoke Persian perfectly, conducted the embassy to the palace. Advancing slowly with this procession, we passed under a large gate, and after having marched through a narrow, winding street, bordered by miserable clay houses with flat roofs, we finally arrived at a large square surrounded by mosques and colleges or *medresses*, where we saw the gates of the palace.

After having alighted, we ascended into a vaulted corridor, built of bricks. On each side was a file of soldiers to the number of nearly four hundred, armed with muskets of different dimensions. Thence we entered a small court, and afterward a passage, where there were a dozen unmounted cannon, and then a square court surrounded by walls, along which were seated three or four hundred Bokharians, wearing white turbans and vestments of gold brocade; then, turning to the right, we

passed into an antechamber, and finally into the hall of reception, where the khan was seated upon cushions covered with a carpet of red cloth richly embroidered with gold. On the floor was a Persian carpet of inferior quality; the walls were plastered, and the ceiling was covered with painted boards. This hall was in the form of a parallelogram. The khan sat near the wall opposite the entrance; on his left were his two sons, of whom the elder was probably fifteen years old, and on his right the *cush-beghi*. On each side of the door were five noblemen. Two chamberlains supported M. de Négri, who advanced within ten paces of the khan, addressed him in Persian, gave his credentials to the *cush-beghi*, and took his seat. The persons attached to the embassy remained standing against the wall on each side of the door. The *cush-beghi* at once presented the emperor's letter to the khan, who read it aloud; he then begged M. de Négri to allow a few soldiers to enter the antechamber, where they were ordered to lay down their arms. The khan, having seen them, began to laugh like a child. He was about forty-five years of age, not very intellectual in appearance; he had a beautiful beard, black eyes, an olive complexion, and appeared to be exhausted by the pleasures of the harem. He wore a vestment of black velvet, ornamented with precious stones, and a turban of muslin, surmounted by a heron's plume. A master of ceremonies held a kind of halberd, terminated above by a silver hatchet. The presents were carried to another chamber, in the presence of the khan. The audience lasted about twenty minutes; when it was ended, we rejoined our escort, which soon afterward returned to Bazartchi, where it bivouacked for the rest of the winter. M. de Négri and the persons attached to the embassy were lodged at Bokhara, in a large house belonging to the *cush-beghi*.

From what information I could gather, the Bokharians give to Chinese Turkestan the name of Alti-Shahar, or the country of the six cities. These are Cashghar, Yarkend, Khoten, Aksou, and the two cities of Ileh. Cashghar is a large city, guarded by a Chinese garrison, and is very difficult of access. It is situated on the Cashghar, a branch of the Kizil-sou (red water), which flows between Cashghar and Yarkend. In going from Cashghar to Cashmere, one passes Yarkend, where the Tartar language is still spoken; then by the cities of Great and Little Thibet. The country being mountainous, the caravans proceed only by short stages, and as it is impossible to employ camels, the journey is made altogether on horseback. Yarkend is distant four days' journey from Cashghar, and Great Thibet is thirty-five or forty days. Cashmere is twenty-two days from the latter city, and midway one passes Little Thibet. The river which bathes the walls of the latter, flows to the north of Cashmere, or rather, empties into the Cashmere River.

It is probable that the cities named Thibet are the same that were known by the name of Ladak and Draouse, or Dervazéh, yet it is remarkable that no Bokharian is acquainted with these names, while different merchants with whom I have spoken, called them Great and Little Thibet. The

ception, where  
et of red cloth  
an carpet of in-  
g was covered  
lelogram. The  
t were his two  
and on his right  
oblemen. Two  
hin ten paces of  
als to the *cush*-  
nbassy remained  
he *cush-beghi* at  
ead it aloud; he  
r the antecham-  
The khan, hav-  
about forty-five  
had a beautiful  
be exhausted by  
ack velvet, orna-  
surmounted by a  
f halberd, termi-  
arried to another  
ted about twenty  
which soon after-  
ne rest of the win-  
passy were lodged  
i.  
rians give to Chi-  
y of the six cities.  
he two cities of  
e garrison, and is  
r, a branch of the  
nd Yarkend. In  
where the Tartar  
nd Little Thibet.  
ed only by short  
urney is made al-  
ys' journey from  
ays. Cashmere is  
one passes Little  
flows to the north  
ver.  
ne same that were  
yet it is remark-  
hile different mer-  
Little Thibet. The

Russian merchants who have gone from Semipalatinsk to Cashmere, give them the same name. Between Cashghar and Cashmere, there are no other cities than those I have mentioned; near them there are a few villages scattered upon the declivities of the mountains. Great and Little Thibet are surrounded with gardens; I am told that the houses are of wood, as in Russia, and have very steep roofs. The inhabitants are believers in the Lama, and worship idols.\*

\* The manuscript of this work had been completed a long time, when I found, at St. Petersburg, in June, 1823, the account of a journey to India, by Raphael Danibeg, a Georgian gentleman, dedicated to his Majesty the Emperor Alexander, translated from Georgian into Russian, and printed in 1815. This work contains nothing of interest until the author's arrival in Cashmere; but the account of his journey from that city to Semipalatinsk, in Siberia, passing through Cashghar, surprised me the more agreeably that the information it contains very nearly agrees with that which I had obtained. The following is an extract of this account:

"From Cashmere I proceeded to Thibet, where I arrived after having traveled about a hundred and fifty miles in a march of twenty days. The city is built on hills, and surrounded with stony mountains, upon which nothing grows but a little oats. The inhabitants mix the oatmeal with milk, and cook it with the addition of butter. So poor are they that this food forms their only nourishment. I observed a custom here which is very discreditable and contrary to good sense: if there are several brothers in a house, a single woman will be the wife of them all; if a boy is born, he takes the name of the eldest. A large quantity of tea is consumed in this place; the wool for the shawls is brought from Lassa. All the merchandise is transported on the back of sheep, which are loaded with as much as they can carry; from this place to Cashmere the transportation is made with horses. These people bring from Lassa a large quantity of goat's wool, which is forwarded to Cashmere. It required three months to go from Thibet to Lassa.

"I stopped forty days to make an excursion from Thibet to Yarkend. The journey was very tedious; the sterility of the soil, the great depth of the precipices, the excessive height of the mountains, among which glaciers were seen, occasioned a sense of sadness which was augmented by the continual solitude of these uninhabited places. At length we perceived Yarkend; this city, surrounded by thick woods, presents a very pleasant aspect.

"The Chinese garrison consists of more than two thousand men, whose chief is termed Amban; beside these there are three thousand Chinese in Yarkend, engaged in commerce. The climate of this city is salubrious, but the water is bad. There are no fine edifices to be seen; the inhabitants enjoy a degree of competency. Although I have said that the climate is healthy, I must except the autumn; in no place have I ever found it worse. During the whole season the sky was covered with clouds. The great humidity of the atmosphere often produces a kind of red insect called *karbites*, whose sting is almost always fatal. A singular dust, from some unknown source, falls like rain, and renders this season very disagreeable. Where this dust falls, instead of rain, the people expect a good harvest, while they look for a bad one if they have only ordinary rain. This dust is so thick that the sun can not penetrate it; it sometimes continues thus for seven or eight days, and is so fine that it enters the smallest crevices.

"Beside Yarkend, the Chinese are masters of Khoten, Cashghar, Aksou, Duroban, and Ileh. They are very numerous in Ileh, or Kulja; there are supposed to be more than ten thousand of them. They are very proud and very indolent, and spend their time in smoking tobacco. No inhabitant is permitted to leave the city without a passport; it is difficult to escape this regulation, for the surveillance of the authorities is very active. This is one of the means which the Chinese have adopted to prevent disorders of all kinds.

"Thirteen days after leaving Yarkend, I arrived at Aksou. This city, which is not



In the mountainous country east of Bokharia and north of Hissar are the Ghalchas, a poor and independent people. They are Sunnite Mohammedans; some Russian travelers have called them Oriental Persians; their complexion is very tawny, and even more brown than that of the Bokharian Arabs. They live in miserable cabins, built in the low lands between the mountains; are all cultivators of the soil, and have some cattle and a very few horses. Going further east we enter a country which becomes more and more mountainous and is very little known. There is said to be a people here called Kafir or infidel, who are represented as very ferocious. The formidable Kafirs inhabit the city of Kaler-khum, also called Derwazéh, situated upon a river of the same name.

Gold is found in the waters of the Derwazéh; these riches excite the cupidity of the Bokharians, who, from time to time, risk their lives to procure a few particles of the precious metal. This is the manner of obtaining it: in Bokhara it is customary to carry water in skins, which preserve the form of the animals from which they were taken; the best are the skins of sheep and wild-goats. The mouth of this vessel corresponds to the neck of the animal. The Bokharians attach these skins to a cord and throw them into the Derwazéh; the furious river soon fills the skin with mud, sand, and gold, the last of which it is afterward easy to extract from the mixture; but as it is never without foreign matter, its value is to that of pure gold as eighteen to twenty-one. May not this process throw light upon a passage of Herodotus, in which the historian describes the means employed by the Indians in extracting gold from sand?

Bokharia lies between forty-one and thirty-seven degrees north latitude, and sixty-one and sixty-six degrees thirty minutes east of Paris, comprising a surface of about ten thousand square leagues. The eastern part is mountainous; all the western part is a plain extending as far as the eye can see, upon which small isolated hills rise to the height of ten or fifteen feet; these hillocks are of a clayey nature like the rest of the desert; above this clay the sands are moved by the winds, and formed into ridges. The oases of Bokharia present a most pleasing and cheerful aspect. There is no country better cultivated than these plains; they are covered with houses, gardens, and fields divided in small squares called *tanab*, the sides of which are raised a foot with turf, in order to retain the water which is conveyed thither for the purposes of irrigation.

large, contains many well-built houses; it is situated in a valley, and is divided into two parts, one inhabited by Chinese, the other by Mohammedans, who carry on an active trade with each other.

"Three days after leaving Aksou, I arrived at Turfan, an unsightly little town. As the inhabitants are very poor, nothing interesting is to be found here. Fifteen miles thence are the frontiers of the country of the Kirghizes.

"Leaving Turfan, I passed through many wandering tribes of Calmucks, Kirghizes, Kaisaks, and finally reached Semipalatinsk, after a journey of three months."

h of Hissar are  
re Sunnite Mo-  
iental Persians;  
han that of the  
n the low lands  
and have some  
enter a country  
ry little known.  
who are repre-  
bit the city of  
er of the same

riches excite the  
k their lives to  
e manner of ob-  
in skins, which  
taken; the best  
his vessel corre-  
h these skins to  
s river soon fills  
s afterward easy  
t foreign matter,  
y-one. May not  
in which the his-  
extracting gold

degrees north lati-  
es east of Paris,  
es. The eastern  
tending as far as  
e height of ten  
e the rest of the  
inds, and formed  
sing and cheerful  
ese plains; they  
in small squares  
turf, in order to  
ses of irrigation.

l is divided into two  
carry on an active

ty little town. As  
here. Fifteen miles

Calmucks, Kirghizes,  
months."

Thousands of water-courses intersect the plain, and like the roads, which are very narrow, they are usually bordered with trees. The waters of these canals not being all upon the same level, they are connected together by small cascades, which soothe the ear with an agreeable murmur. The great quantity of trees planted on every side form screens which prevent the view from extending to a distance.

The multiplicity of dwellings indicates a numerous population; perhaps it is too great to admit of a general competency. These dwellings usually form villages, which are half concealed by the fruit-trees of the gardens. I saw villages entirely surrounded by walls; they were a kind of fortresses; others are open, the gardens only being inclosed; and these walls, often indented and flanked with small turrets, add to the picturesque appearance of the country; they also indicate that the people are afraid of being pillaged; and the frequent incursions of the wandering tribes, lead us to suppose that the existence of these fortifications is a result of a sad necessity.

A Bokharian village usually contains a hundred houses, built of earth, and separated from each other by streets which are no narrower than those of the cities. In the center of the village is frequently a well, or a small reservoir, in which the water is replenished by means of a ditch. Each village is situated near a canal, by which means the gardens can be watered.

The climate of the mountain-regions of Bokharia is of course different from that of the western part of the country, which is mild and even: I shall here speak only in reference to the plains. The seasons there are very regular; by the middle of February the fruit-trees begin to bloom; the forest-trees put forth in the early days of March. Then the beautiful season begins, and the heavy rains cease, after having lasted nearly three weeks. Soon the heat becomes oppressive; it is the more perceptible as the atmosphere is rarely refreshed by storms. The fine season continues until October, when the rains usually prevail for two or three weeks. In November and December, slight frosts, and sometimes a little snow, announce the approach of winter; on the 20th of December we found melons still in the fields, which showed that the frosts could not have been heavy. The month of January is more rigorous; the usual degree of cold is about twenty-seven degrees Fahrenheit; it is sometimes as low as fourteen degrees, and water freezes from three to four inches thick. Snow has been known to remain a fortnight on the ground without thawing.

The winter which we passed at Bokhara was very mild; during four or five days only, the cold was so severe as to freeze the water two inches, and then the people hastened to break the ice and pile it in large heaps, which were covered with earth for preservation. The rains commence between the 7th and 15th of February, and continue until the close of the month. Every thing becomes green and flourishes in a few days. Nothing proves the warm climate of Bokhara better than the

heat of the sun; in the month of January we dined in the open air, when the temperature in the shade was fifty-five degrees, and ninety in the sun.

Violent winds prevail in winter and summer; they raise to a great height a fine dust, which hides every thing from view, and imparts a gray tint to the atmosphere. These clouds of dust, which spread over a whole district, may be seen more than fifteen miles distant. The climate of Bokhara is generally healthy; the winter and the rainy seasons refresh and purify the atmosphere, which is not vitiated by any noxious exhalations. The rheumatism which prevails is produced by the dampness of the houses, and the frequent sore eyes may be caused by those violent winds and the dust they raise. Blindness must be common in this country, for the father of the reigning khan erected in Bokhara the *fathabad*, a hospital, or rather monastery, of the blind, where about fifty of these unfortunates are lodged by twos and threes in small cells arranged around a mosque.

All the cities in Bokharia are built near the rivers, and consequently surrounded by cultivated fields; the drought is frequently so great in summer that the inhabitants can procure water only by digging holes; the plain of Bokhara is so low that water is found everywhere at the depth of from five to eight feet. This stagnant water produces worms which the people drink without perceiving it; from this results a malady named *rishta* by the Bokharians. The whole body becomes covered with pustules which occasion very painful sores. From these pustules come worms of the class *annelides*. The Bokharians know no remedy for this evil. A Russian prisoner, a slave in Bokhara, in speaking to me of the scarcity of water which was experienced there, said in a tone of vexation, "It is a country that God created in his anger."

Ourghenjè is a small fortress which I saw on our return to Russia. I could not obtain permission to enter the city; they closed the gates upon us, probably by command of the superior powers. It has the name of fortress because it is surrounded by an earthen wall about twenty feet high. We passed near Ourghenjè on the 25th of March; the wind was high, but not violent. But scarcely had we quitted the clayey soil when we found ourselves among sandy hillocks and the wind became more furious; the sand rose in whirlwinds and penetrated everywhere. I wore spectacles made expressly to keep off the dust, which I dreaded, but they protected my eyes but imperfectly. The sand produced a kind of cloud which so veiled the light of day that we could see but a short distance, and our Kirghiz guides no longer knew the route. Happily a Bokharian trooper of the garrison of Ourghenjè followed us to find out whether any Russian slave were mingled with our escort; we compelled him, by holding a pistol at his throat, to act as our guide; although he rendered us this service much against his will, he prevented us from going astray. Nothing can be more disagreeable than this sand; although coarse, it penetrates the eyes, the

n the open air,  
s, and ninety in

raise to a great  
, and imparts a  
h spread over a  
stant. The cli-  
the rainy seasons  
by any noxious  
ed by the damp-  
caused by those  
t be common in  
i in Bokhara the  
d, where about  
ees in small cells

and consequently  
ently so great in  
y digging holes;  
everywhere at the  
produces worms  
results a malady  
becomes covered  
om these pustules  
know no remedy  
a, in speaking to  
ere, said in a tone  
anger."

return to Russia.  
closed the gates  
wers. It has the  
rthen wall about  
e 25th of March;  
ad we quitted the  
ocks and the wind  
s and penetrated  
keep off the dust,  
imperfectly. The  
light of day that  
guides no longer  
e garrison of Our-  
lave were mingled  
stol at his throat,  
vice much against  
hing can be more  
erates the eyes, the

mouth, and the ears; all our eyes were inflamed, and I can easily conceive how the army of Nadir-shah, when crossing the deserts west of the Amou during a storm, lost a number of men from the effects of ophthalmia. It is thus that the deserts near Bokhara are a natural defense. The sand, driven by the winds, fills up the ditches, drifts against the walls, and soon rises to their level, fills the streets, and covers the houses, like the ashes of Vesuvius which buried Herculaneum and Pompeii.

Having spoken of several cities of Bokhara, I will describe the capital of that country. The cases of the surrounding region being covered with avenues of trees and numerous gardens, the view can not extend very far, hence Bokhara can be seen only within about two miles distance, in coming from Wafkend. The view is striking to a European. Domes, mosques, high gables, colleges, minarets, palaces rising in the midst of the city, the surrounding walls with their battlements, a lake near the walls, bordered by houses with flat roofs, or by neat country-houses within embrasured walls—finally, the fields, the gardens, the trees, and the activity which reigns everywhere in the vicinity of a capital, all contribute to produce a very agreeable effect; but the illusion ceases as soon as we enter the city, for with the exception of the baths, the mosques, and the temples, we see only dingy earthen houses, thrown beside each other without order, forming narrow, crooked streets, which are filthy and difficult to traverse. These houses, which front on courts, present to the streets only smooth walls, without windows, or any thing to relieve the eye of the passenger. Every thing we meet in this populous city seems to hint of mistrust; the countenances of the people are scarcely ever animated by an expression of gayety; there are no noisy festivals, no songs, and no music; nothing indicates that they sometimes amuse themselves there, nothing shows that the city is inhabited by a people enjoying an agreeable existence. Therefore the curiosity and the interest which we felt on first seeing edifices of oriental architecture, was soon followed by an impression of sadness and melancholy.

The houses are built of clay, mixed with cut straw. In order to give more consistence to this mixture, wooden posts are placed in the walls, and especially at the corners. The ceilings are usually of hard wood; they are covered with earth, and form the roofs, which are flat. In the handsomer houses the ceilings of the principal apartments are covered with boards, painted with different colors. The floor is of glazed earth among the common people, and brick among the rich. The front and the windows open upon the court, and a single door leads to the street. The windows are sometimes openings, closed simply with wooden shutters; sometimes they are arched openings which are never closed, and are covered only with a trellis of plaster. The latter kind of windows yield only an indifferent light; and in order to see distinctly it is necessary to open the shutters. But in winter the cold is often fifteen degrees above zero, so that the apartments without stoves, from

which the external air is not excluded, are cold and damp. It is not surprising then that rheumatisms prevail in this city, especially among the poor. In order to protect themselves from the cold, the Bokharians make use of braziers, above which they place, like the Turks, a small wooden table, covered with a wadded carpet; upon this they seat themselves and envelop themselves with it up to the chin. The heat of the burning charcoal effectively preserves the body from cold, but one can not write without having the hands frozen.

The city is about ten miles in circumference, and is said to contain almost eight thousand houses, and very nearly seventy thousand inhabitants. Three fourths of these are Tadjiks, the most part artisans. The remainder of the population is composed of Ouzbeks, Jews, Tartars, Afghans, Calmucks, Hindoos, merchants from neighboring cities, pilgrims, Persian and Russian slaves, and a small number of negroes. The Jews occupy eight hundred houses; they say they came from Samarcand about seven hundred years ago, after having left Bagdad. Of all the cities of Central Asia, Bokhara contains the greatest number of this race. They are permitted to inhabit only three streets in the city; among them there are two rich capitalists, the others are mostly in easy circumstances, and are generally manufacturers, dyers, and silk-merchants. They are prohibited from riding on horseback in the city, and from wearing silken garments; their caps must have a border of black sheepskin, which may be only two inches in width. They are not permitted to build a new synagogue, and have the right only to repair the old one.

These people are remarkable in their personal appearance, for a handsome beard, a countenance somewhat lengthened, a very fair complexion, and eyes which are large, lively, and full of expression. Having learned that the government feared the arrival of the embassy with its numerous escort, they regarded us as messengers from heaven, who came perhaps to alleviate their sufferings. They were fearful of compromising themselves in the eyes of the Bokharians; when they met us they saluted us in a friendly and propitiatory manner, but nevertheless with a sentiment of fear. The rabbi of Bokhara who was a native of Algiers and knew a little Spanish, told me that on his arrival in Bokhara he had found his brethren sunk in the most profound ignorance; only a very small number knew how to read. They possessed but two copies of the Holy Scriptures, and their manuscript contained only the first three books of the Pentateuch. This Algerine Jew, an intelligent old man, who almost wept for joy at again seeing Europeans, has neglected no means of disseminating instruction among the people of his religion. He has founded a school and procured books from Russia, Bagdad, and Constantinople; at present all the Jews of Bokhara know how to read and write; they study the Talmud.

The most remarkable edifice of the city is the palace of the khan; the Bokharians call it *Arck*. It is said to have been built more than ten

damp. It is not especially among the Bokharians, the Turks, a small tribe they seat themselves. The heat of the cold, but one can

is said to contain many thousand inhabitants of all sorts of artisans. The Persians, Jews, Tartars, laboring cities, pillars of negroes. The city came from Samarkand to Bagdad. Of all the best number of this city in the city; are mostly in easy, and silk-merchants in the city, and a border of black. They are not permitted only to repair the

appearance, for a handsome very fair complexion. Having the embassy with its from heaven, who were fearful of coming, when they met us, but nevertheless who was a native of the arrival in Bokharia and ignorance; only pressed but two copies gained only the first, an intelligent old means, has neglected people of his religion. Russia, Bagdad, and know how to read

palace of the khan; built more than ten

centuries ago, by Arslan-Khan; it is situated upon an eminence, and is surrounded by a wall about six feet high, which has but a single gate. The entrance is of brick, and has on each side a tower about ninety feet in height, formerly ornamented with green glazed tiles, some remains of which are still to be seen. From this gate leads a large corridor, the vaults of which have the appearance of being very ancient. Following this corridor, we arrive at the summit of a hill upon which are situated some clay houses which are inhabited by the khan and his court. Within this inclosure are a mosque, the dwellings of the khan and his children, the harem, surrounded by a garden and concealed by trees; a house in which the *cush-beghi* transacts his business and receives audiences, another one in which he dwells—this being a high mark of favor—and finally the apartments for the people and the slaves, the stables, etc. Some storks have built their nests upon the summit of the towers.

In Bokhara we see streets half a mile long, covered, and bordered on each side with shops; one row containing women's slippers only, another supplied with drugs and aromatics which perfume the air, a third with jewels, usually of little value, for example, turkoises of Persia, Tartar rubies from the lake of Badakhshan and from Arabia; diadems of gold ornamented with inferior turkoises, for the Kirghiz women. Large vaults are filled with nothing but dried fruits and tobacco; others with pistachios preserved in manna, with prunes, rose-colored or green, grapes, pomegranates, and melons suspended along the walls on cords; among these magazines are eating-houses in which are prepared rice cooked with butter or mutton-fat, and often colored yellow with saffron, and another dish consisting of hashed meat.

During my stay at Bokhara, six robbers, Persian slaves by birth, and two Tadjiks, were hung upon the gallows; some heads of Khivans, of Ouzbeks, from Kokand, and the environs of Balkh, and others, were set up on posts, or exposed upon the ground near the gibbet. The populace, accustomed to this spectacle, continued their traffic upon the square, without casting a look of compassion upon these terrible pictures; it was not thus with our soldiers, who looked upon these scenes for the first time in their lives.

Every thing in Bokhara shows that the city was formerly more flourishing than it is now;—the colleges and mosques are partly fallen, or are badly preserved. I saw large crevices in the arches of a temple entirely new; these accidents are attributed to earthquakes, but I think they may be charged to the ignorance of the architects. Nine or ten miles from Bokhara, in the direction of Wafkend, there has been a very ancient bridge, built of bricks, in a single arch across the Zer-afshân; it is fallen, and has not been reconstructed; the stone steps which lead to the wells are impaired, and no one thinks of repairing them. They no longer know how to make the blue tiles which adorn the public edifices; they construct no new buildings which indicate either taste or riches. A portion of the most beautiful street of Bokhara is encumbered with stones which



formerly composed the pavement. Even the private houses, of which only the ancient ones have basements of stone, prove that this capital is not so rich nor so well governed as it was in former times.

It is very difficult to estimate the population of a country inhabited by so many different nations, of which a part is nomadic, and where an enumeration has never been made. In order to present something satisfactory in this respect, we consulted in Bokharia all who could give us any certain information on the subject. The cultivated portion of the khanate may be estimated at twelve hundred square leagues, or three hundred thousand square miles. If we suppose each of these square miles inhabited by five thousand souls, as in the richest countries of Italy, we have as a result, in Bokharia, one million five hundred thousand inhabitants, living by agriculture, or semi-nomadic, and living in the cities, and by adding nearly a million of the wandering tribes, we find that the population of Bokharia is more than two millions of souls.

This population may be subdivided as follows :

Ouzbeks,	1,500,000
Tadjiks,	650,000
Turcomans,	200,000
Arabs,	50,000
Persians,	40,000
Calmucks,	20,000
Kirghizes and Kara-kalpaks,	6,000
Jews,	4,000
Afghans,	4,000
Lesghizes,	2,000
Bohemians,	2,000
Total,	2,478,000

The Khanates of Asia carry on with the Kirghizes and the Turcomans a trade in slaves, which is chiefly supplied by the robberies of these wandering tribes, and by the wars with the Persians. The taking of Mervé added twenty-five thousand to the number of Persian slaves in Bokharia, which is estimated at forty thousand. Five or six hundred Russians are held in slavery; they have been sold by Kirghizes, by Turcomans, who seize fishermen wrecked upon the eastern shore of the Caspian Sea, or by Khivans.

Among the slaves of Bokharia there are likewise Chettrars, Siapooshes, Hezaréhs, and even Georgians. The number scarcely diminishes, for they have Persian wives given to them, and their existence and well-being is connected with the interest of their masters. The price of an able-bodied man ranges from forty to fifty tellas (\$130 to \$160). If he is an artisan, for instance a joiner, a furrier, or a shoemaker, he brings as much as one hundred tellas (\$320). The women usually sell higher than the men, at least if they are young and beautiful; they are then worth from one hundred to one hundred and fifty tellas (\$320 to \$480). The condition of the slaves in Bokharia is horrible. The Russians nearly all

houses, of which  
that this capital is  
es.

country inhabited  
ic, and where an  
something satis-  
ho could give us  
d portion of the  
leagues, or three  
of these square  
countries of Italy,  
red thousand in-  
ing in the cities,  
we find that the  
ls.

. 1,500,000  
. 650,000  
. 200,000  
. 50,000  
. 40,000  
. 20,000  
. 6,000  
. 4,000  
. 4,000  
. 2,000  
. 2,000  
2,478,000

and the Turcomans  
ries of these wan-  
e taking of Mervé  
aves in Bokharia,  
dred Russians are  
Turcomans, who  
Caspian Sea, or by

etrars, Siapooshes,  
ly diminishes, for  
istence and well-

The price of an  
to \$160). If he  
aker, he brings as  
ly sell higher than  
ey are then worth  
20 to \$480). The  
Russians nearly all

complain of being badly fed and most cruelly beaten. I saw one whose master had cropped his ears, pierced his hands with a nail, cut the skin upon his back, and poured boiling oil upon his arms, in order to make him confess by what route his comrade had escaped. The *cush-beghi* finding one of his Russian slaves intoxicated, had him taken next day to the Registan to be hung. On reaching the gallows, the unhappy man was solicited to abjure his religion and become a Mohammedan, in order to obtain pardon, but he preferred to die a martyr to his faith. The greater part of the Russian slaves in the vicinity of Bokhara were locked up, and worked with irons upon their feet during the last weeks of our stay in the city. A single Russian slave succeeded in rejoining us seventy miles from Bokhara, after having wandered eighteen days in the desert; during this time he had subsisted on water and meal only. He expressed, in a most simple and touching manner, the alarms he had experienced on seeing us (for he feared lest we might be Kirghizes, Khivans, or Ouzbeks), and the extreme joy he felt when he recognized our Cossacks. I can not describe the unbounded happiness of a dozen Russian slaves whom we purchased in Bokharia, and during the journey. They shed tears of joy. The Bokharian government would have been so cruel as to prevent these Russians, who had been purchased, from returning to their country. It even forbade its subjects from seating any Russians to us, under the pretext that they would thereby diminish the number of proslaves which it might make.

In their salutations the Bokharians bend forward a little, place the right hand upon the heart, and pronounce the word *khosh*. This civility is often exaggerated in a most ridiculous manner, especially by the slaves; they make the accompanying gesture by turning the head several times, inclining it toward the left shoulder, raising the elbows, holding the two hands upon the heart, smiling in a silly manner, and pronouncing the word *khosh* with emphasis, as if they would split their sides with laughing.

In the streets the women wear a long mantle, the sleeves of which are connected behind, and a black veil which completely conceals the face. They see badly through this veil, but the greater part of them would slyly lift up one corner when they met one of us; the Tadjik women also took pleasure in allowing us to see their beautiful eyes. It became fashionable among the ladies of Bokhara to go and look at the Franks; the extremity of the roof of our house was a place of meeting for them, and the limit which decorum imposed upon their curiosity. There, less observed by the Bokharians, a few pretty women presented themselves to our gaze, and we frequently admired eyes full of fire, superb teeth, and a most beautiful complexion. The Bokharian severity soon put an end to this too worldly procedure; the police took measures for preventing the women from ascending our roof, and we lost the pleasure of a scene which enlivened our repasts.

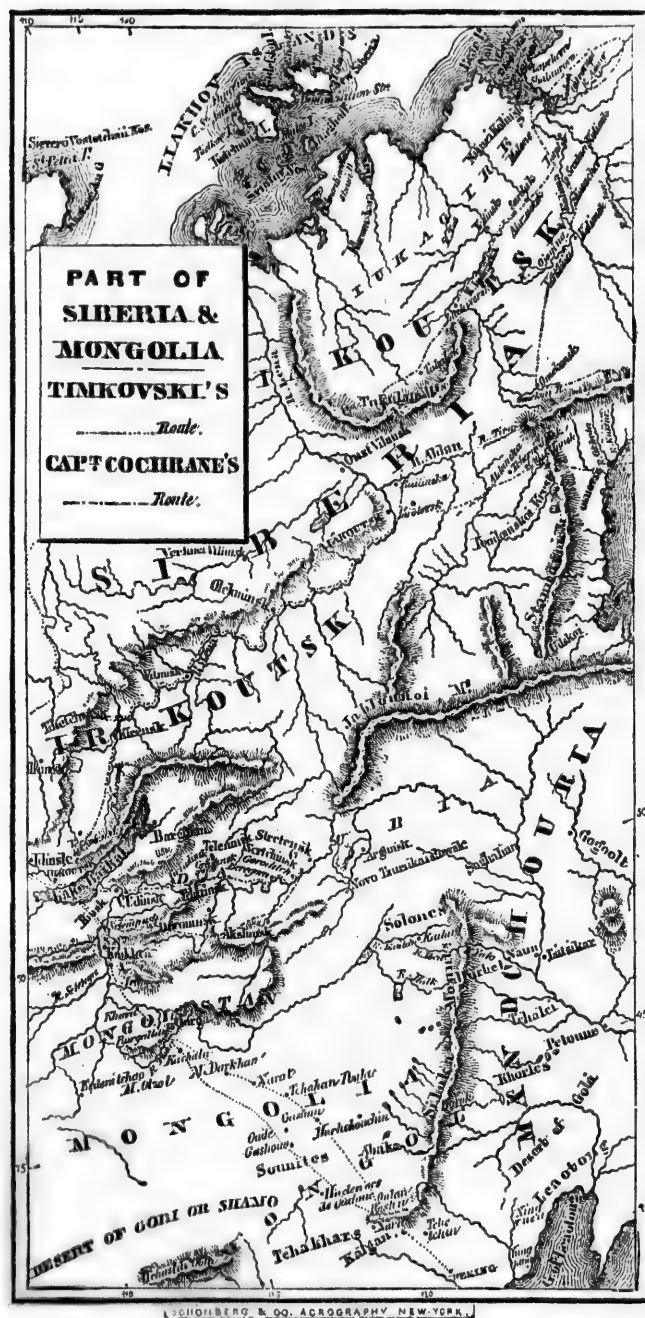
We remained in this city from the 20th of December, 1820, until the

10th of March, 1821: the weather having become very fine we then repaired to Bazartchi. The bivouac in the gardens of that place appeared to us far preferable to the sojourn in the gloomy houses of Bokhara.

On the 22d of March we set out from Bazartchi; on the 25th we left Bokhara, well pleased to have seen the country, but still better satisfied to get away from it.

R.A.

ine we then re-  
place appeared  
of Bokhara.  
on the 25th we  
till better satis-





## TIMKOVSKI'S

### JOURNEY FROM SIBERIA TO PEKIN.

For more than a century Russia has maintained at Peking a convent and a school for the instruction of interpreters in the Chinese and Manchoo languages. Every ten years the persons composing these two establishments are renewed, and new monks and pupils are sent from St. Petersburg to the capital of China. This little caravan is conducted by a Russian officer, commissioned to take charge of it, to install it upon its arrival in Peking, and then to lead back to their country the monks whose term has expired and the pupils who have completed their studies. It was on a mission of this kind that Timkovski, Attaché of the College of Foreign Affairs, set out in 1820 from Kiakhia, a fort situated on the frontiers between the Russian possessions and those of China. He traversed Mongolia, passed the Great Wall, and arrived on the 1st of December at Peking, where he remained until the 15th of May in the following year.

All the European embassies which have gone to Peking have made but a very short stay in the capital of the Chinese empire, and have been continually subjected to a most annoying surveillance, prompted by the distrust which the Chinese exhibit toward strangers. M. Timkovski visited Peking under much more favorable auspices; like all Russians he enjoyed full liberty, being allowed to pass through the various quarters of that immense city and to visit all its monuments and curiosities. Hence he was enabled to make more accurate observations than the travelers who had previously visited China; besides which, he had at his disposal several interpreters who were perfectly acquainted with the language of the country; consequently his remarks are worthy of greater confidence than those of the travelers who, being unacquainted with either Chinese or Manchoo, could not enter into conversation with the inhabitants of the empire.

On the 14th of June, 1728, a treaty of peace was concluded between Count Vladislavitch, ambassador extraordinary of Russia, and the ministers of China. The fifth article is as follows: "The Russians shall



henceforth occupy in Peking the *kuan*, or court, which they at present inhabit. In accordance with the wishes of the Russian ambassador a church shall be erected, with the assistance of the Chinese government. The priest who resides at Peking, and the three others who are expected, according to the articles of agreement, shall be lodged in the *kuan*, or court, above-mentioned. These three priests shall be connected with the same church, and receive the same provisions as the present priest. The Russians will be permitted to worship God according to the rites of their religion. There shall likewise be received into this house four young students, and two of a more advanced age, conversant with the Russian and Latin languages, whom the ambassador is desirous of leaving in Peking in order to learn the languages of the country. They shall be supported at the expense of the emperor, and shall be at liberty to return to their country as soon as they shall have completed their studies."

In accordance with this treaty, the Russian mission, consisting of six ecclesiastical members and four laymen, was established in Peking. The lay members were young men engaged in the study of the Manchoo and Chinese languages, and in acquiring correct information respecting the country. The usual sojourn of the mission at Peking is fixed at ten years, but the correspondence between the Russian minister of foreign affairs in the name of the controlling senate, and the tribunal of Peking, is subject to so many delays, that the stay of the mission usually continues for a longer period. In conformity with the fifth article of the treaty a new mission set out from St. Petersburg in 1819 to replace that which had been in Peking since the 10th of January, 1808. It arrived at Irkoutsk in February, 1820, and on the 15th of July at Troitsko-savsk, a fortress better known under the name of Kiakhta, where it made preparations to pass the frontiers within a month.

M. Timkovski was ordered to accompany the new mission from Kiakhta to Peking, and to bring back the one which had been there since 1808. His retinue was composed of an inspector of baggage, an interpreter of Mongolese and Manchoo, and a detachment of thirty Cossacks. The latter were to escort the baggage. From the time the mission passed the Russian frontiers, it was under the protection of the Chinese government.

The mission prepared to leave Russia as early as possible, in order to avoid the difficulties inseparable from a journey in the latter end of autumn across the cold and arid steppes of Mongolia, and especially in the desert of Gobi. The Chinese conductors did not arrive until the 27th of August at Maimatchin, which is the Chinese port of Kiakhta, situated immediately on the frontier, three miles from Troitsko-savsk. M. Timkovski repaired thither and hastened the preparations for the journey. The staff of the Chinese conductors consisted of an inspector and a *boshko*, or sergeant-major. The former, named Tsching, was a *bitkheshi*, or secretary of the seventh class, and was sixty years of age;

he wore upon his cap, but only out of the capital, a white button of opaque stone, which gave him the rank of mandarin of the sixth class. He was accompanied by Chackdor, a Mongolese interpreter aged twenty years, and two *nerbs*, or servants, father and son. Gurgentai, the boshko, was forty-seven years of age; out of the capital he wore on his cap a gilded button indicating the seventh class, and was attended by a servant. There was yet one important affair to be attended to before setting out. It was necessary to bestow a few presents upon the conductors to induce them, as the season was so far advanced, to provide the mission without delay with *yourtes*, or *kibitkas* (felt-tents), and other objects indispensable to so long a journey.

On the 30th of August the festival of the Emperor Alexander was celebrated by a *Te Deum* chanted in the church of Kiakhta. It was followed by a dinner given by the counselor of chancery, commissioner of the frontier, at which were present the Tsargoochee of Maimatchin, the boshko, the principal Chinese merchants, and the conductors of the mission. They drank to the health of the emperor and of the Bogdokhan (emperor of China), and to an eternal friendship between the two empires. These toasts were drunk to the sound of volleys of artillery and the ringing of bells; the soldiers of the garrison, in full parade, made the air resound with songs of rejoicing. The joy and freedom which reigned in this little festival of the Russians made a lively impression on the minds of their guests.

The preliminary arrangements being finally all completed, the mission set forward on the 31st of August. The baggage went in advance to the first station, about five miles from Kiakhta. The mission was accompanied by the dignitaries and principal citizens of Troitsko-savsk to Kiakhta, where they all repaired to church, after which they were entertained at a dinner by the merchants of the place. After dinner they went to thank God once more upon the soil of their country; then, accompanied by the clergy of Kiakhta, preceded by crucifixes, and attended by the ringing of bells, they arrived at the frontier. Notwithstanding the rain a large concourse of curious Russians and Chinese was assembled. After stopping awhile at the house of the Tsargoochee, they entered the Chinese empire at six o'clock in the evening, accompanied by the custom-house director, and the counselor of chancery. Arriving at some tents which the Chinese had erected at the distance of two miles, the Tsargoochee offered them tea; they then took leave of their fellow-countrymen and proceeded on their journey through a heavy rain. A detachment of twenty Mongolese troopers formed their advance-guard. Toward seven o'clock they halted, after having gone about three miles. They found four *yourtes* prepared for them; one was for the clergy, another for the students, the third for M. Timkovski and suite, and the fourth for the Cossacks. The baggage had already arrived; the horses and oxen fed; as to the camels, they were prepared for the journey by depriving them of food and drink for twelve days.

The horses which had been employed in transporting the baggage were deprived of food all night, in order to strengthen them, according to the custom of the Mongolese and the inhabitants of Siberia.

They made preparations for departing at an early hour next morning, but a long time passed before the camels were caught and loaded, as they were very wild; one of the horses started to run toward the frontier so swiftly that the Cossacks and Mongols could not recapture it. At length they succeeded in getting under way; the baggage went in advance, then the camels and the vehicles, an arrangement which was observed throughout the journey. The members of the mission then proceeded in equipages, and the horses followed slowly, in order to husband their strength. The oxen were left under the safeguard of a Mongolese, with five soldiers under him; at night three Cossacks watched alternately. In order to have an eye over all, M. Timkovski made the whole journey on horseback, having under his orders an inspector of baggage, the interpreter, and a Cossack. The summer having been rainy, the plain was covered with water and extremely muddy; after having traveled two miles they reached a more elevated place, whence they beheld Kiakhtha; the church, the houses of their friends and other places which were known to them, were the last objects which recalled their country, suggesting the hope of one day returning to it.

The koudoni of their next station, situated upon the right bank of the Ibitykh, came to meet them, and saluted them in the manner of the horsemen of the steppes; he dismounted from his horse, bent the left knee before Timkovski, rested his right arm upon his side, and supporting it with the left hand, cried, "*Amour !*" (peace). He then remounted and conducted them by a ford to the tents, where the mission arrived at four o'clock in the evening. During the night, the thermometer indicated twenty-five degrees Fahrenheit. In the valleys, surrounded by high mountains, the air is always cold; beyond Kiakhtha, which is quite elevated, there is a considerable ascent to the desert of Gobi; this they perceived in the continually increasing cold of the atmosphere. M. Struvé, who was in the southern part of the country of the Khalkhas, on the 20th of December, 1805, states that at twelve miles from Kiakhtha, the great elevation of that part of Mongolia obliged him to take a large quantity of hot tea; and yet his health did not suffer in consequence.

They found their linen tents quite useless, the texture not being compact enough; and they could not kindle a fire in them. Having no yourtes, which are so serviceable to those who traverse the steppes, and deprived of the time and means of obtaining water and argal, or fuel, which is used in the desert, they were sometimes obliged, by the habitual indolence of their Chinese conductors, to have recourse to the inhabitants for aid, especially in obtaining good pastures for their animals. M. Timkovski testified their gratefulness to the people for these favors by small presents. In the morning their departure was again delayed by the difficulty in harnessing the horses of the steppes, which were not ac-

N.

baggage were  
according to the

next morning,  
and loaded, as  
toward the front-  
capture it. At  
gave went in ad-  
which was ob-  
mission then pro-  
order to husband  
of a Mongolese,  
s watched alter-  
made the whole  
ector of baggage,  
been rainy, the  
after having trav-  
ence they beheld  
ther places which  
led their country,

right bank of the  
he manner of the  
orse, bent the left  
side, and support-  
e then remounted  
mission arrived at  
thermometer indi-  
ys, surrounded by  
hta, which is quite  
of Gobi; this they  
atmosphere. M.  
of the Khalkhas, on  
iles from Kiakhta,  
him to take a large  
in consequence.  
ure not being com-  
them. Having no  
se the steppes, and  
and argal, or fuel,  
ged, by the habitual  
urse to the inhabit-  
their animals. M.  
for these favors by  
as again delayed by  
which were not ac-



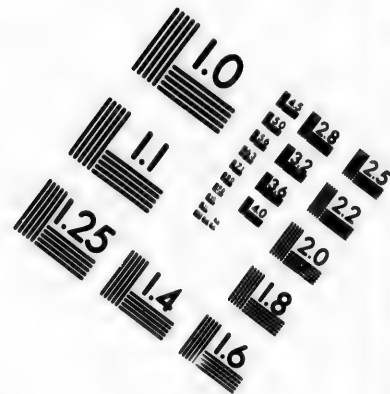
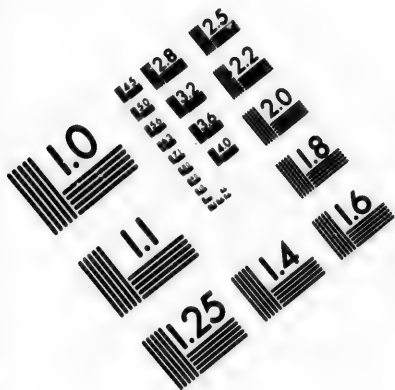
TEMPLE AND SCENERY IN MONGOLIA.



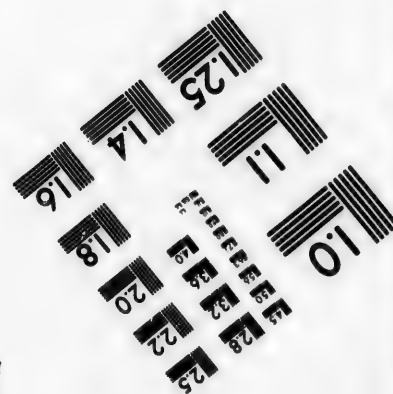
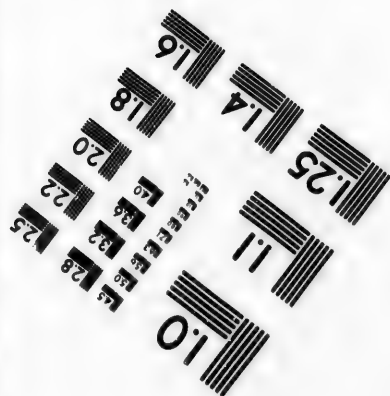
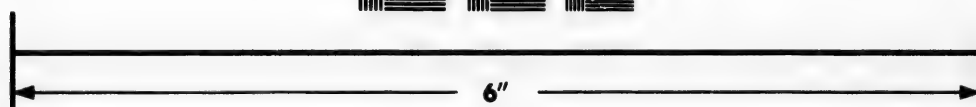
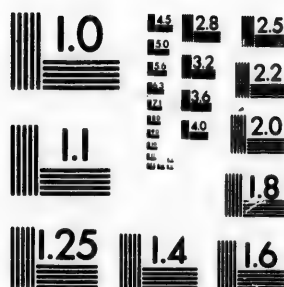
TEMPLE AND SCENERY IN MONGOLIA.







# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1983**



customed to drawing carriages. The Mongolese admired the dexterity and courage of the Cossacks, who managed three wild horses at a time.

At a short distance a mountain rose on one hand, and on the left extended a deep valley in which they saw some scattered yourtes and a few solitary birch-trees. They descended thither by a narrow path along the steep rocks of the Isagan-oola, or White Mountain, whose base was carpeted with luxuriant herbage. The rocks were covered with woods, chiefly of birch, whose yellow-tinted leaves announced the approach of autumn. The heat of the day frequently obliged the camels to stop, and greatly retarded their journey. From the summit of the mountains lying midway between the Ibitykh and the Irô, they perceived a plain of a few miles circuit, surrounded by mountains, and sprinkled over with fields of millet and other grain. On approaching this plain a lama of a very advanced age, who was going on horseback to visit his fields, accompanied them for a long time. He held in one hand a string of beads, which he raised toward the sky. This priest of Buddha was continually repeating these words: *Om ma ni bat me khom*; he accompanied them with deep sighs, and pronounced them in the tone adopted for the prayers, which greatly resembles the sound of a double-bass, or the humming of bees. Every follower of Buddha is obliged to recite this prayer as often as he can, while devoting himself to pious meditations. In order that it may not be forgotten, it is written upon linen, paper, wood, and stone, in the temples, in the tents, and by the wayside. The Mongolese lamas pretend that these words: *Om ma ni bat me khom*, to which they ascribe a mysterious and supernatural power, exempt the faithful from suffering in a future life, increase their good qualities, and bring them nearer divine perfection.

The inhabitant of these steppes, convinced of the existence of a supreme, incomprehensible, and all-powerful Being, whose power extends over all nature, believes that his beneficent spirit manifests itself most willingly in objects which appear in colossal forms. For this reason a huge rock, a lofty mountain, a large tufted tree, or a great river, is an object of reverence to a Mongolese. Before this he raises, with reverence, according to the direction of a lama, an abo, or altar of stone, sand, earth, or wood, before which he prostrates himself to adore the divinity. In time of war he desires aid to vanquish his enemy and to defend his country; he addresses it when sickness afflicts his family or his cattle, and in all misfortunes. A Mongolese who meets with an abo, descends from his horse, places himself on its southern side, turning his face toward the north, and, prostrating himself many times upon the earth, deposits something upon the altar. They often saw locks of hair upon the aboes, these being the votive offerings of wandering horsemen in behalf of their cattle, their inseparable companions.

Leaving the plain by a narrow passage between the hills, they descended to the meadows of the Irô, and reached the banks of that river

in the evening. A great number of the inhabitants, and the people attached to the service of the priests, were assembled there to aid the mission in crossing. The continual rains of summer had swollen the waters of the river, and increased the rapidity of the current. The most important effects were transported on *komygas*, or large beams of hollowed pines, somewhat resembling canoes, which were lashed together in pairs, for passing the water. The camels forded the stream higher up. With all their exertions, the transportation was not completed by ten o'clock. The people forded the stream next day, and one of the Cossacks caught a fever, from which he suffered a long time. In the evening, the *tsang-hin* of the place called upon M. Timkovski, and entreated him to exercise his authority in forbidding the students to continue the amusement of fishing, in which they were engaged. He hastened to comply with the wishes of the Mongolese, who regard the fishes as sacred, in accordance with their belief in metempsychosis, a dogma of their religion.

The night was mild, and the mission set forth early on the morning of the 3d. As soon as they had left their camp, some Mongolese women who had charge of the domestic affairs, came to fold up the tents; in a very short time they finished this work, loaded the camels, and retired. Throughout the journey the yourtes for the guides were prepared in advance, but those of the mission were borrowed from the inhabitants of the neighborhood, and mostly from the poorer classes. After traveling fifteen miles, they reached an elevation, upon which stood a colossal rock; to the right, rose the summit of Nareen Koundoo, covered with lofty pines; westward, near the mouth of the Selby, which empties into the Oekhon, Mount Mingadara reached the clouds. Near this mountain there are said to be a great number of temples, in the largest of which nearly four thousand lamas assemble on the days of solemn festivals. Descending by a narrow and difficult path, they reached a contracted gorge; thence proceeding by a short ascent, they came to the banks of the river Sharà, where they halted in a spot surrounded by mountains. Here they found four excellent yourtes all prepared; those for the abbot and Timkovski were hung with nankeen, with a colored border; the floor was covered with a felt carpet. For these attentions they were indebted to Idam Tsap, a venerable Mongolese who accompanied them. By his orders, some bricks of tea were prepared for the Cossacks.

The Mongolese, and the greater part of the wandering tribes of Middle Asia, make great use of this tea; it takes the place of both victuals and drink with them. The Chinese, who carry on a considerable trade in it, never drink it. In preparing the tea, they lay aside the leaves that are dried up, dirty, or spoiled, as well as the stems, and having mixed with them a glutinous substance, they inclose the mass in oblong molds, and dry them in ovens. The Mongolese, the Buriates, the inhabitants of Siberia, beyond Lake Baikal, as well as the Calmucks, take a lump of this tea, pound it in a mortar, and then throw the powder into a bronze vessel filled with boiling water, which they leave upon the fire for some

the people attached  
aid the mission in  
the waters of the  
most important ef-  
f hollowed pines,  
ther in pairs, fo-  
ther up. With all  
d by ten o'clock.  
e Cossacks caught  
vening, the *tsang-*  
ated him to excre-  
ue the amusement  
ed to comply with  
sacred, in accord-  
their religion.

ly on the morning  
Mongolese women  
up the tents; in a  
amels, and retired.  
ere prepared in ad-  
the inhabitants of  
s. After traveling  
od a colossal rock;  
covered with lofty  
ch empties into the  
Near this mountain  
the largest of which  
lemn festivals. De-  
a contracted gorge;  
e banks of the river  
untains. Here they  
the abbot and Tim-  
order; the floor was  
ey were indebted to  
d them. By his or-  
cks.

dering tribes of Mid-  
lace of both victuals  
a considerable trade  
aside the leaves that  
a, and having mixed  
ass in oblong molds,  
ates, the inhabitants  
ucks, take a lump of  
powder into a bronze  
oon the fire for some

time, adding to it a little salt and milk; they sometimes mix with it some flour fried in oil.

On encamping, the second evening afterward, a crowd of Mongolese immediately surrounded their equipages, the ironed wheels especially attracting their attention. The Mongolese carriage is usually constructed with two wheels, which turn with the axle. The wheel is formed of two small square blocks of wood, placed across each other, and having the angles rounded off. Next day, they crossed the Tumerkay, whose summit was crowned by a colossal abo of stones, and then passed by a rapid descent through the gorges of that mountain, and continued their route through narrow defiles where lofty mountains towered up on one hand, while on the other enormous rocks hung over their heads. Emerging from these, they passed over a dangerous declivity, and entered a plain which led to the Khará (black) River, on whose banks they encamped. It rained all night; the weather was continually cloudy. For the first time they were obliged to make use of their four yourtes and their tents, in order to shelter the baggage from the rain. After dinner they fished in the Khará. This exercise, unknown to the Mongolese, attracted a crowd of spectators. They were richly rewarded for their pains, but their venerable Mongolese friend, Idam Tsap, a zealous believer in metempsychosis, soon came with his nephew, and entreated them to throw the fish back into the water; which they thought it best to do.

It may be well to observe here in explanation of this circumstance that the moral code of Buddha reckons ten mortal sins, or *black actions*, divided thus:

*Sins of the body*:—Assassination, theft, fornication.

*Sins of speech*:—Lying, calumny, obscene words, and threatening expressions.

*Sins of the soul*:—Vengeance, envy, the abandonment of the true doctrine.

The ten supreme virtues, or *white actions*, consist in every thing which is opposed to these sins. Homicide alone is not the greatest sin, but, according to the ideas concerning the transmigration of souls, it is a sin to kill the smallest animal. No lama, no pious Mongolese, will take the life of an insect: still it is permitted to eat the flesh of animals slaughtered by another. This is probably because many of the steppes, not being adapted to tillage, offer only flesh for nourishment.

Toward evening several Mongolese, attracted by the singing of the Cossacks, gathered near to listen to them, and even the guides heard them with pleasure. It was evident that the melody was to their taste. Meanwhile the boshko was resting in the tent of the abbot and attempting to learn by heart some Russian words, such as: *Baran* (ram), *ovtsa* (ewe), *kon* (horse), *votka* (brandy), *riumka* (glass of wine), etc. As to *verbliud* (camel), and others like it, he could not pronounce them because of the accumulated consonants. For the rest, the Manchocs and



the Mongolese have much greater facility than the Chinese in pronouncing foreign words.

In the evening of September 10th, they encamped at the foot of Mount Noin, on the banks of the Boro. South-west from their tents rose a mountain which presented the appearance of a vast rampart, abruptly terminated by a steep rock, called Khorimtu, or the place of arrival. Westward a ravine formed a passage for the Boro, from a lake of the same name, and southward was seen the summit of Mount Ourghemyl, crowned by an abo. A few persons of the caravan, attracted by the beauty of the evening, started out with the intention of walking in the neighboring woods of Mount Noin. The tussulakhchi soon came to M. Timkovski, and begged him to prevent them from going, as the forest was infested by bears. He at once sent word to them by a Cossack, and they presently returned. It afterward came to light that the entrance to the forests of Mount Noin was prohibited to every body, except the *küun-vang*, and *amban* of the Ourga, who with their train come thither in the autumn to hunt.

In the morning they proceeded along Mount Ourghemyl, and continued their journey through a wild mountain region, frequently ascending and descending by toilsome and dangerous passes. In the afternoon they crossed by a long but easy ascent over Narassotü, or the mountain of pines, which derives its name from a tall pine upon its summit, greatly venerated by the Mongolese. This tree was decorated with pieces of linen, strings of beads, and all sorts of things, which the devotees suspend upon it. At three o'clock they arrived at a station in the midst of a marshy plain, surrounded by mountains which are partly covered with groves of birch-trees. Great numbers of sheep and buffaloes were scattered over the plain, among its rich pastures. The singular appearance of the latter animals, their black color and bushy hair, greatly terrified the horses of the caravan. They continually met with Mongolese returning from the Ourga, or residence of the Gheghen-khütükhtü, or grand-priest. A lama, aged a hundred years, came to see them; he was so feeble that he could hardly retain his seat on horseback, and was supported by two servants. Supposing M. Timkovski and the Cossack officers to be students, he wished them much success in the sciences, on their arrival at Pekin.

Among other adorers of the khütükhtü, or highest Buddhist priest, they met the lama of Ibitykh, before alluded to. He was returning from the Ourga, where he had been to pay homage to the deified child. As soon as he came near he leaped from his horse and drew from his bosom a khadák, in which was enveloped a paper-box containing small Chinese cakes which he presented to them and wished them a prosperous journey, and the blessings of the khütükhtü for life. In return for this kindness, M. Timkovski presented to him a knife. He was delighted with this mark of attention, and highly applauded their intention of seeing the temple of the khütükhtü, in passing the Ourga.

The khadāk is a yellow or pearl-colored band of silk, ornamented with small figures of the same color. The Mongolese and Thibetans suspend these khadāks before their idols to decorate their offerings, and attach their prayers to them. The young people present them to the more aged, as a proof of esteem and devotion, and they are exchanged by persons of the same age in token of friendship. They place a large arrow, enveloped in a khadāk, on the places where the remains of their relatives and friends repose. The khadāk must be blessed by a lama; it is only after this ceremony that it acquires supernatural virtues.

In the evening of the 13th, the north-west wind, the harbinger of a rainy season, began to blow with force. Several of the Mongolese sentinels sang their national songs. M. Timkovski called two of them to him and gave them some brandy, to induce them to continue singing. The airs of their songs resemble each other; they are generally plaintive and harmonious. The horse, the friend and companion of the inhabitant of the steppe, always takes a prominent place in these songs. Timkovski gives the following translations of some songs which he heard. "In this vast plain was born the dun-colored charger, swift as the arrow, the ornament of the herd, the glory of the whole tribe. Called to the chase by the ruler, Idam flies to the forest of Kharatchin, overthrows the goats and the stags, and fells the fierce wild boars and the terrible panthers. Every one admires the boldness of the rider and the fleetness of his steed."

"Behold the young Tsyren, armed for the service of the khan; he flies to the Russian frontier to guard Mendzin; he addresses his prayers to the household divinities; he takes leave of his father and mother: with sadness his wife saddles his black horse. With a sad and dreamy air the cavalier speeds away toward the north. The wind of the desert scarcely moves the plumes of his arrows, and his elastic bow resounds upon his saddle. Tsyren rides through gloomy and unknown forests; in the distance he beholds blue mountains which are strange to him; the friendly words of the Cossacks, his valiant companions, cheer his saddened soul; but his thoughts ever return to the paternal mountains."

"With unquiet soul, with a spirit bowed under an unknown weight, the young Mongol sees in his dreams the shades of warriors, his ancestors, pass before his eyes."

"Where is our Genghis-khan, menacing and fearless? His high deeds resound in melancholy songs amid the rocks of Onon and upon the green banks of Khérulun. \* \* \* Who advances upon the pleasant road beside the Sharà, singing in a low voice some cherished words? Whose is this bay-brown courser that runs so swiftly? What seek the eyes of this brave youth, passing before the white tents? his heart knows well who is she that dwells there. Soon will he cease to traverse these mountains; soon will his fiery courser win for him a bride. \* \* \* This bay steed, this steed like a whirlwind, he is prepared for the course. \* \* \* The abo is covered with spectators.

He neighs; with his light feet he grazes the pointed flints. The signal is given, all rush toward the goal. Clouds of dust cover the racer; and the bay charger, always victorious, arrives first, leaving his rivals in the distance."

On the 14th of September, at the break of day, the rain fell abundantly; the summits of the mountains were concealed in a thick mist. In passing over the heights of Mount Nareen they met a number of lamas and Mongolese of inferior rank, returning from the Ourga; among them was a wealthy old officer, the commander of a body of wandering Mongolese. His tent, which was well-finished, was carried by several camels, surrounded by saddle-horses; his wife was seated in a chariot, drawn by one horse. For a long time the rain fell incessantly, accompanied by a cutting wind from the north; and at length a damp snow completely spoiled the roads. The camels slipped and fell. Finally they reached a station on the banks of the Arashân, where they halted at two o'clock. Shortly afterward the boshko set out for the Ourga, to announce the arrival of the mission.

Meanwhile the tussulakhchi, Idam, told them he had received official intelligence of the death of the Emperor of China, who had died on the 23d of August, aged sixty-one years. This news was alarming to M. Timkovski; the death of the emperor might prevent the continuation of their journey. He hastened to inform the chief of the mission of this circumstance. The abbot recalled to mind, among others, a Chinese dignitary, who was accompanying an embassy of Tsungarian Calmucks, and who, hearing by the way of the death of the Emperor Khang-hi, was so much afflicted by it that he retired into the mountains in order to mourn the great loss, and at the same time conceal his grief from his fellow-travelers, and who did not leave his retreat until he had received from the new emperor, Yung-ching, the order to continue his route to Peking. They observed that the silk tassels and the balls were removed from the caps of the Chinese and Mongolese dignitaries; even the servants had taken off their silk tassels. All were obliged to clothe themselves in white, and suffer their hair to grow. This was in token of mourning, which continues one hundred days.

The inhabitants of this region were poor; the travelers were beset by a crowd of beggars, who ate with avidity the bread and meat which they gave them. These miserable creatures came from the most remote countries to adore the Grand Lama. When at length the caravan set out the rays of the sun were melting the snow, and the road became muddy and slippery. Their route led over Mount Guntoo, the highest they had yet passed in their journey. The passage of the mountain was very fatiguing. The camels slipped and fell continually; it was only with the greatest difficulty that the carriages were drawn up. The summit bears a colossal abo, raised by the devotion of the pilgrims who go to adore the Grand Lama, and small columns of stone and wood, with inscriptions in the Thibetan language upon them. These were unintelli-

gible to the Russians, and even to the Mongolese lamas; probably they contained the mysterious prayer before alluded to. On the mountain they met a young man of rank, who had been at the Ourga, adoring the lama. He was surrounded by Mongolese followers, armed with bows and arrows; while his family and kindred and a numerous retinue accompanied him, all mounted on beautiful black horses. This troop was distinguished by its luxury and wealth; the women were especially remarkable for their fine forms, painted complexions, and for the splendor of their attire. Their robes were of fine blue satin, their caps of sable, their silken girdles interlaced with silver and adorned with cornelians. Even their saddles were ornamented with these stones. These beautiful amazons approached the strangers without timidity, and seemed willing to honor them with their attention. The descent from the mountain was steep and difficult. They followed the course of the Selby, a small but rapid stream, which led through a narrow defile between two lofty mountains. Within five miles of the Ourga they passed some small temples, and further on a very large one, of Thibetan architecture, in the midst of an amphitheater of mountains. Upon the highest rocks around they read several characters of colossal size, carved in the Thibetan language upon the white rock. The Mongolese conductors said they contained the celebrated prayer: *Om ma ni bat me khom*.

It was sunset when they arrived at the Ourga and entered the Russian court, situated eastward of the residence of the Gheghen-khütükhtü, or Grand Lama. The Ourga consisted of yourtes. The Mongolese sentinels who guarded the doors, armed with bows and arrows, restrained the people who gathered in crowds to see the Russian travelers. On the morning of the 16th, the Tsargouchee Hoai came from the Mai-machin, or mart of the Ourga, to present the compliments of the *vang* and the *amban* to the abbot and M. Timkovski, on their happy arrival. He was introduced by the Mongolese conductors, and accompanied by two Manchoo bitkhechis, members of the yamoun or tribunal of the Ourga, and another public functionary. Hoai and the two former were clothed in deep blue robes, above which they wore the white robe of mourning, and a short cloak of lambskin, with large sleeves. These personages were followed by a numerous train of domestics. They conversed with the Russians in Mongolese by the aid of the interpreter, and after inquiring if their journey had been pleasant, they asked if they intended to make a long stay at the Ourga. Timkovski replied that, considering the lateness of the season, and the liability of encountering delays, they would remain but four or five days at furthest. The dignitaries kindly replied by inviting them to take the time needed for rest. They likewise announced that the *vang* and the *amban* would be ready to receive the mission on the morrow, to which Timkovski replied that they would be glad to avail themselves of this permission, and stated further that he was authorized by the governor of Irkoutsk to tender his respects in connection with some presents, to the authorities of the Ourga. The interview

was continued with many civilities, and after their departure other visitors were presented, when at length Khartsagai, a kinaman of the vang, entered to announce that he had been commissioned to aid them in passing the time pleasantly, which might otherwise seem tedious among strangers. He informed them, among other things, that when intelligence of the emperor's death was received, the vang had at first intended to suspend their journey, and even send them back to Kiakhta; but, considering the fatigues they had already undergone, and the expense their government had incurred, he had concluded, on his own responsibility, to allow them to proceed. They learned, however, from Idam, that the vang had sent a courier to Peking, to know what he should do, and that they would be obliged to remain at the Ourga until the decision of the court should arrive. Such were the real motives of the repeated invitations they received to be at their ease in Ourga.

Kartsagai left them an instant, then returned with Idam and Demit (the latter one of the inspectors appointed for the mission during its stay), and inquired what were the presents which they had brought. Timkovski replied that he did not know, and expressed the desire of presenting these gifts himself to the vang and the amban. The Mongolese approved of his intention. They afterward questioned him with interest concerning the countries bordering on Russia; they wished to know if the terrible war with the French was terminated; if England was very far from Russia.

On the 17th, the mission visited the vang and the amban, the highest dignitaries of the Ourga. Twelve Cossacks mounted on Mongolese horses, and advancing two by two, opened the procession; M. Timkovski followed on horseback, with the inspector of baggage and the interpreter on either side; next came the carriages of the clergy, accompanied by the students and other priests; a centurion, followed by two Cossacks, closed the march. The public functionaries of the Ourga walked before the procession, and at the sides the conductors and other employees with their suite. The difference in features and costume between the Mongolese and the Russians, and even the dissimilarity of their horses, gave to this train a singular appearance, which was not without interest: on one hand the white plumes of the Cossacks waving in the air, their glazed belts, and the blades of their sabers glittering in the sun; on the other, the bright colored satin robes of the Mongolese, and the ribbons of their caps flowing in the wind. They alighted at the dwelling of the vang, a modest wooden structure in the Chinese style, and entered the court. The entrance was protected by twenty of the prince's body guard, clothed in white robes; they were without belts, and held their swords in their left hands.

Hoai came to meet them, and placing himself on the left (the place of honor in China), conducted the abbot; Timkovski followed, accompanied by the bitkheshi; Tsing, and the rest of the company came after them. After traversing a court, they passed into a kind of corridor,

very narrow, which was the hall of reception. One side of the apartment was taken up with a large window, trimmed with white paper, in the middle of which was a large glass plate. Near the window the vang and the amban were sitting cross-legged upon a common sofa. They wore short cloaks, white, and trimmed above with lambskin. Upon a small table near the window were some English clocks, which were not wound up. After the ceremonies of introduction, M. Timkovski, through the interpreter, addressed the governors of Southern Mongolia, then the boxes containing the presents were brought in, and, according to custom, placed before the vang and the amban; the former thus expressed his thanks: "The custom of exchanging gifts between neighbors and friends is very ancient among us; therefore, when you return to your country, we will also give you some presents for the governor of Irkoutsk." He then caused them to be seated before him, and calling the other persons of the mission to approach him, he addressed them successively as follows: "These are the khara-lamas (black priests, the monks); these are the students. He advised the latter to be diligent to overcome all obstacles and fulfill the wishes of their government; to conduct themselves as people well-born, respectable, and worthy to do honor to their country." Each one was then served with a cup of tea with sugar. Afterward, the vang complimented the abbot, adding that he still remembered having seen him among the young students on the way to Peking. When he had thus severally greeted and addressed the travelers, M. Timkovski and the abbot proffered him and the amban some presents of Russian manufacture, which he politely accepted, and appeared much pleased with them.

An hour after their return the vang sent to the abbot and Timkovski seventeen trays of sweetmeats, three flagons of Chinese wine, called *chaoussin*, made of rice, six pounds of black tea, and to each two pieces of silk stuff. The other members of the mission received each one piece of the same stuff. Each present bore his address. The Cossacks received two boxes of tea in cakes, containing thirty-six cakes in each. The vang was a Mongolese prince, descended from Genghis-khan, and was a near relative of the late Emperor Kia-khing, by his wife. He was amiable and intelligent, polished in his manners, and appeared to be a lover of the arts and sciences, and literature. Having lived a long time at the court of Peking, he had often held intercourse with Europeans, and had acquired a decided predilection for every thing European. The amban was a subordinate officer, sent out from Peking to assist the vang during a term of three years.

On the 18th the mission visited the Mai-ma-chin, or mercantile quarter, and the Tsargoochee; the clergy riding in carriages, the rest on horseback. On their arrival the crowd pressed around them in spite of the cries of two civil officers, who, in conformity with the custom in China, drove back the intruders with heavy blows of the whip. They dined with the Tsargoochee, who received them with great civility, and



entertained them kindly. In the course of conversation they remarked that they wished to prepare for their departure in four days, upon which he counseled them anew to rest awhile, adding that the weather was cold and rainy, and that by the rules of Chinese astrology he had selected a propitious day for their departure, concerning which he would speak to the governors of the Ourga. They thanked him for this proof of his good intentions toward them.

On their return they saw a number of tents, newly erected; these belonged to some Mongolese, who were going to worship the new khütükhtü, or lama, and more were expected to arrive. An idea of the festival celebrated by the Mongolese on the manifestation of the new Gheghên-khütükhtü, may be obtained from the following details, given by Pallas, of the one which took place in 1729, in the ancient Ourga situated on the Iben, a tributary of the Orkhon:

On the 22d of June, at the second hour of the day, that is, at sunrise, the chief temple of the Ourga was decorated for the festival. Opposite the entrance was placed the idol *bourkhan ayücha*; to the left a throne, adorned with precious stones and rich stuffs, had been erected, and wooden seats had been arranged in the temple for the lamas. The sister of the deceased khütükhtü, three Mongolese khans, an amban who wore a peacock feather in his cap, and was sent from Pekin by the Emperor Yung-tsing, the father of the new khütükhtü, the three khans of the Khalkhas, and several other Mongolese of distinction, were present at the festival. The number of lamas amounted to nearly twenty-six thousand, and of the people, men, women and children, to more than one hundred thousand. When the most important personages had entered the temple, two hundred lances with gilded points and adorned with bronze figures of wild beasts, were placed in two rows before the door. At the same time a line of two hundred Mongolese was formed, bearing drums and large copper trumpets. When all was ready, six lamas were seen to come out from the temple, bearing upon a chair the sister of the deceased khütükhtü; she was followed by the khans, the vangs, and all the dignitaries, very richly clothed. The cortège moved in silence to the tent of the new khütükhtü, who was living with his father, Darkhan-chin Chan-vang, at the distance of a mile from the temple. An hour afterward the regenerated khütükhtü appeared, conducted by the principal Mongolese nobles and the oldest lamas, who held him by the hands and under the arms. They seated him on a horse magnificently harnessed: the bridle was held on one side by a khubilgan, or priest of high rank, and on the other by the ta-lama or senior lama. When the khütükhtü came out of the tent, the lamas began to sing hymns in his honor, accompanied by the sound of instruments. Then the nobles and the people bowed down very low, and raised their hands toward heaven. The train of the khütükhtü advanced slowly toward the temple; the sister of the deceased khütükhtü, whom the newly chosen also called his sister, followed him in a sedan chair. Then came the

most aged lama, Nomeen-khan, the Chinese amban, all the lamas, the vang, and the other Mongolese of distinction. The people followed on both sides.

The inclosure before the temple contained six tents, ornamented on the top with gilded points from which hung rich stuffs of different colors. The cortège stopped at the entrance; the lamas lifted the khütükhtü from his horse with tokens of the most profound reverence, and took him into the inclosure by the southern gate. After having remained there half an hour, the most aged lamas led him by the hand into the temple, where his sister and all the dignitaries likewise entered. The deputy of the dalay-lama, Nomeen-khan, assisted by the persons of his suite, seated him on the throne, after which the amban announced to the people the emperor's order that the khütükhtü should receive the honors due to his rank. Then the whole assemblage prostrated themselves three times upon the ground; after which they placed on a table before him several khonkhôa, or small silver bells, which the lamas make use of during the religious ceremonies. Care had been taken to keep back the bell which the khütükhtü had used before his regeneration, in order to see whether he would perceive that it was not among them. The khütükhtü, after having cast his eyes over the bells, said to the lama who was next to him: "Why have you not brought me my own bell?" These words being heard, the khans, the vangs, the lamas, and all the people, cried out: "He is the true head of our religion; he is our khütükhtü!"

On the 23d of June, one hour after midnight, the amban and the other nobles returned to the temple, around which the people were already assembled. At the third hour (sunrise), the khütükhtü was conducted thither by the most aged lamas and seated upon his throne. The amban offered him the presents of the emperor, which consisted of a plate of gold, weighing about twenty-eight pounds, in the middle of which eight precious stones were set. On the plate were placed some khadaks, worth two thousand rubles, and eighty-one pieces of gold and silver cloth. A note written upon each indicated that the manufacture had cost six hundred rubles. Finally, the amban presented eighty-one trays loaded with sweetmeats, and various other things. While offering these things he showed the most profound tokens of reverence to the khütükhtü, and accompanied them with felicitations in the name of his sovereign. He concluded by soliciting the benediction of the khütükhtü, in the name of the emperor, and addressed him with these words: "Great pontiff, thou who art incorruptible as gold, and whose splendor equals the sparkling of diamonds, protect the empire as thou didst in the time of my father, and shed thy grace and thy protection over my reign."

The khütükhtü accepted the presents of the emperor and gave him his benediction by placing his hands upon the head of the amban; afterward he gave his blessing to the lamas and the people; each one, pene-

trated by the consoling idea of receiving it from the deity himself, advanced one after the other, and manifested a reverence, fervor, and awe, which were most exemplary.

In the afternoon four large tents and an infinite number of small ones were erected a few hundred yards from the temple, inclosing a large space for the exercise of wrestling. The large tents were occupied by the khans and other nobles; the combatants numbered two hundred and sixty-eight on each side, and the struggle continued until evening; the names of the victors were proclaimed, and the vanquished were obliged to leave the inclosure. In the end there remained but thirty-five victors. The wrestling recommenced on the 27th. The weather was extremely warm and the combatants were exhausted with fatigue. Then the khans prayed the lamas to cause it to rain. In half an hour the sky became overcast, and a few drops of rain fell. The faithful attributed this to the power of the lamas, although the heat was but little abated thereby. The wrestling was continued every day until the 3d of July, when the khans and the other nobles, accompanied by the people, repaired with the thirty-five victors to the district of Ourakhoo, on the banks of the Orkhon, thirty-five miles distant.

On the 5th of July there was a horse-race on the banks of the Orkhon, which passed over a distance of twelve miles. There were eleven hundred and ten horses on the course at one time, of which one hundred were declared the best. They received distinguished names, and their masters obtained presents and some privileges. Next day there was at the same place a race of sixteen hundred and twenty-seven horses, six years old. The goal was but ten miles distant. The owners of the hundred which first arrived in like manner received presents. On the 7th a third race took place between nine hundred and ninety-five horses, four years old. They had to pass over a space of eight miles. The owners of the first hundred were likewise rewarded. These three thousand seven hundred and thirty-two horses all belonged to Mongolese of the tribe of Khalkhas. On the same day, after the race, the thirty-five victors of the wrestling-match divided into two parties and contended with each other. The seven best among these were conducted back to the Ourga.

During these contests three hundred archers shot with arrows at a target one hundred and fifty feet distant. Each one shot four times in succession; twenty-five who hit the mark every time, or even three times only, were declared excellent archers. The victors had a contest among themselves next morning. On the 8th they erected, near the dwelling of the khütükhtü, a richly-decorated tent, into which he was conducted by the hand. They then brought in several idols and placed before him, and burned perfumes in silver censers. He was seated on his throne and the others took their seats around, when tea was served. After the khütükhtü had tasted it, it was poured out in silver cups to the rest; all who had no cups received it in the hollow of the hand.

Each one drank it with intense satisfaction, as holy water, actually received from the hands of the khütükhtü. Afterward the seven wrestlers recommenced their combat, which lasted from ten in the morning until midnight. A Mongolese, named Bahay Ikaidzan (the great solid elephant), of the troop of the vang Tsétsen, was the final victor. The wrestling ended, the khütükhtü was conducted back to his habitation with the same ceremonies by which he had been taken to the tent; then every one retired to his home.

On the 11th of July, at four o'clock in the morning, the khans and the other nobles assembled in the dwelling of the khütükhtü and deliberated until evening upon the names to be given to the victors in archery and wrestling, names destined to make them known to the nation and to preserve their glory for posterity. The name of *Lion* was unanimously given to the first wrestler, who already bore that of *great solid elephant*; the others in like manner received, in order, the names of courageous animals or birds. The first wrestler received a gun, a coat of mail, fifteen oxen and cows, fifteen horses, a hundred sheep, a camel, a thousand bricks of tea, some pieces of satin, and several skins of foxes and otters. The others had gifts proportioned to their strength and agility. Similar prizes were distributed among the archers; the last wrestler and the last archer each received two cows and two sheep. The festival terminated on the 12th of July.

M. Timkovski applied to be presented to the khütükhtü, but was informed through his messengers by the vang that the pontiff was too much fatigued by the long journey he had just completed, during which he had given his benediction to more than a hundred thousand of the faithful. At the same time Timkovski requested that the mission be furnished with four yourtes, and with wood and water, at each place of encampment between the Ourga and Khalgan; but the request was not granted. When Idam came in afterward he explained that the vang had neither the power nor the right to order that the mission be furnished with yourtes, first, because they traveled by a route upon which there were no fixed stations; secondly, because his authority as governor-general of Khalkha did not extend beyond the territory bordering on the Russian frontier. Idam assured them, however, that they should not be in want of yourtes on the route. As to the interview with the Ghegèn-khütükhtü, he said it was not forbidden to strangers, but they were aware he was only a child without experience, who knew only his native tongue; how then would they render their homage to him? Besides, this divine child, like all the people, was in mourning for the emperor. Next year, on their return, they might see him; he was now occupied in receiving the faithful, and the offerings which they brought.

On the 20th, the travelers of the mission went to see the city, mounted on Mongolese horses, and accompanied by their friends of the place. They

first visited the temple and the habitation of the khûtúkhú. The inclosure was so high that it prevented them from seeing the structure of the buildings. The temples were built in a north and south direction, and the roofs were painted green; one of them was surrounded by gilded palisades. At some distance from the temples was a large wooden edifice, the school in which the lamas learn to read Thibetan, and to play upon the instruments employed in their religious music. These temples and other public edifices are on a large square. The inhabitants of the city live in yourtes, some of which are shaded by willow-trees. The streets are so narrow that two men on horseback can scarcely pass each other. On the 24th, the conductors came to them from the yamoun, or tribunal, with the information that the vang, on consideration that they had entered the Celestial Empire in virtue of an inviolable treaty, made under the reigning dynasty, had resolved to let them continue their journey, and that in case he should receive from Pekin any orders concerning them, he would make them known to them on their route. This intelligence was received with great joy; M. Timkovski immediately gave orders that all preparations should be made for setting out on the morrow.

From Kiakhta to the Ourga they seemed to be still in the provinces bordering on the Russian frontier, from the great similarity in the scenery and productions, but as soon as they had passed the Tola, they found themselves on a different soil. They here drank a glass of fresh water, the last that was to moisten their lips in the vast space to be traversed before reaching the Great Wall of China. They were now in the arid and gloomy deserts of Mongolia. They left the Tola by a valley ascending between high mountains, from which they emerged on an elevated position commanding the view of an immense plain, covered with stones. To the left, rose the naked rocks which border on the Tola. The Mongolese believe that one of the caverns of these mountains contains immense treasures of gold and silver, which the robbers concealed there in former times; but that frightful precipices and noxious vapors effectually cut off all approach. As they advanced, the mountains became lower and less difficult; they no longer saw deep precipices or lofty heights; every thing indicated the vicinity of the plain of Gobi, the most extensive of Middle Asia.

In the evening of October 1st, Idam visited them at their tent, and in the course of conversation related some events of the life of Khung-ming, a famous Chinese general. The kingdom of Chu being invaded by the enemy, Khung-ming erected a statue of stone, which held a sword in one hand, and in the other a book with poisoned leaves. The hostile general, on arriving at the statue, went to it and began to read the book, which he found interesting. As he frequently touched his fingers to his mouth, to moisten them with saliva in order to turn the leaves more easily, he soon felt the effects of the poison. When he wished to go away he could not, his coat of mail being attracted by the pedestal, which

was of loadstone. Enraged at his embarrassing situation, he laid hold of the sword which the statue held in the other hand, and struck it. This act was still more disastrous to him; the blow struck out sparks, which set fire to some combustible matter in the statue, and the explosion killed him. His affrighted army was forced to retreat.

On one occasion, Khung-ming was in front of the enemy, from whom a river separated him. His camp being up the stream, he sent down in the night, in boats, some straw mannikins of natural size, each of which held a kindled match in his hand. The boats were borne by the current to the camp of the enemy, who, seeing them filled with armed soldiers, made such haste to attack them with arrows, that they soon emptied their quivers. Khung-ming, who had foreseen this, passed the river and gained a complete victory over the troops which no longer expected an attack.

October 3d, at three o'clock, they reached the station of Boro khujir, situated among narrow defiles near Mount Darchan. The weather being fine, M. Timkovski determined to visit this mountain, which is associated, by the Mongolese, with the memory of Genghis Khan. He set out at six o'clock, accompanied by monk Israel and a Cossack officer. On leaving the station, they followed with much difficulty some ravines formed by the rains, and then passed over immense beds of granite blocks to the summit. This mountain extends from north to south, and its lofty back is composed of steep rocks of red granite, among which grow the altagan (*robinia pygmaea*) and other shrubs. Upon its southern height, to the foot of which they had ascended, stood an *abo* of stones, built by the Mongolese, who repair thither every summer to celebrate the memory of Genghis Khan. From this point the view was very extensive; to the eastward were eight salt lakes, and beyond them rose the blue mountains of Kherrulun; on the west, was an immense extent of country, covered with pointed elevations.

On the afternoon of the 10th, M. Timkovski visited some ruins of ancient Mongolian architecture, near the station of Tsulghetoo, where they had encamped for the night. Having gone two miles across a plain opening to the east they reached a mountain whose declivity, for the space of a mile and a half, was covered with the ruins of stone edifices. Idam informed them that three hundred years ago or more, a Mongolese Taidzi, or descendant of princes, named Sainkhung (beautiful swan), inhabited these places. These remains had been his temples. Several altars and other edifices of colossal dimensions, indicated the wealth and magnificence of that prince. These crumbling structures were covered with moss and weeds; the foundations were granite, the walls of sun-dried bricks, cemented with clay mixed with gravel, instead of lime. The changes of heat and moisture had worn away the clay while the gravel remained. One building, of a circular form, was ornamented with a stone cornice, composed of three rows. In a large temple, and in other edifices were vaulted niches, probably destined for



the reception of offerings. In the court, which was paved with stone, they saw broken tiles of a green color, and a stone vat. These ruins, once inhabited by some descendant of Genghis Khan, now served as a retreat for herds of cattle; the subjugated Mongolese rarely visit these places, which remind them of their ancient splendor and independence.

On the 15th of October they encamped at Soumé, that is to say, the Temple on the Mountain of Serpents. To the left of the station was a temple upon the declivity of the Abourgà (Serpent). It is said that these reptiles were formerly found there, but they saw none. They visited the temple which, according to the rules of Thibetan architecture, fronted the south. The nephew of Idam, who was our guide, sent for the warden, who conducted them by the principal entrance into the vestibule, where they saw four wooden idols of colossal size. Two were covered with armor, like warriors; the first was red, and held in his hands a twisted serpent; the second was white, having in his right hand a parasol, which in China distinguishes rank, and in the left a mouse; the third had a blue face, and held in his hand a sword; the fourth which was yellow, played upon the lute. These were *Tengrees* or *Maharansa khans*, who live two thousand and five hundred years. They are seven hundred and eighty feet in height; they watch over the happiness of men upon the earth, and dwell in four different regions of Mount Soumé, which is the center of the universe and the abode of tutelary divinities. This mountain has seven gilded summits and extends seventy thousand miles toward each of the four quarters of the world.

On the 19th they reached Erghi, the last station of the country of Khalkha. Toward evening Idam came to give notice of his departure for the Ourga. They experienced a deep regret at parting with a man who by his zeal in their behalf had acquired a claim upon their gratitude. Before their departure on the 21st, the *bitkheshi* begged M. Timkovski to prevent his people from shooting the crows, as they had done on their arrival at Erghi, pretending that the storm of the preceding day had been caused by this slaughter. In order to satisfy this old man they promised to kill no more, although these birds were very annoying to the camels, for when they saw from a distance the blood that came from the wounds caused to these animals by the rubbing of their burdens, they straightway descended upon their backs. The wind still continued to blow so hard that they could not remain on horseback. On approaching Mount Argali they saw on the heights a troop of gazelles. The ascent was through deep ravines, amid bold mountain scenery, but when they had attained the heights they saw the steppe spread out before them as far as the eye could reach. The places which were more than twenty miles distant presented a blue appearance, so that the plain bore some resemblance to an agitated sea. They had before them the ascent to the highest plateau of middle Asia, which properly

bears the name of Gobi. The rainy summer of this year had caused a little herbage to grow upon this steppe, usually naked and sterile; but in a time of drouth, it is truly the country of affliction; the cattle die of hunger and thirst.

On the 27th M. Timkovski visited Mount Bathkai, near the station of that name. From its summit, as from that of Darkhàn, were seen on all sides vast plains upon which numerous herds were pasturing; in some places they saw black yourtes, like islands on an immense lake. In looking over these deserts it is difficult to believe that the inhabitant of the Gobi enjoys a tolerable existence; he is deprived of wood, and has not the things most necessary to the simplest wants of life. At the beginning of summer he prays heaven to grant him rain, which rarely waters the steppes. During that season the drouth destroys his cattle, his only resource. The same misfortune threatens him in winter; snow and frost cover the earth and deprive his animals of the only herbage which can furnish them the means of subsistence. The Mongolese informed them that five years before, the whole steppe of Gobi was afflicted with a mortality among the cattle so great that many proprietors saved but twenty-five horses out of five hundred, and four oxen out of two hundred. The inhabitants had not yet recovered this unusual loss.

This unpleasant passage continued for seven stations, or one hundred miles; until reaching the dwellings of the Tsakhar Mongolese, they saw on all sides nothing but a sea of sand and pebbles. Such is the steppe of Gobi; like the African desert of Sahara. The road passed over on the 1st of November was the most fatiguing of the whole journey. The country was mountainous; the surface, formed of mingled sand and clay, was almost impassable on account of the rain; the mountains were covered with snow; the horses and camels were so fatigued by the violence of the wind, by the cold, the long stages, the bad food and briny water, during the eleven days' passage across the territory of the Sunites, that six of the camels sunk beneath their loads, and six draught-horses were entirely worn out. The cold still increased; the mercury sank to zero on the morning of the 3d, and on the 4th it was two degrees below. They crossed a sandy mountain this day, over which the road was uneven and toilsome. They frequently saw yourtes by the way, and a great many cattle; they also met large caravans, loaded with tea, on their way to Kiakhta.

One day they were much surprised to find lying in the road, in a leather sack, the body of an infant one year old. Upon the sack was a small piece of sheepskin, a little millet, and a small loaf of bread. This was an ordinary mode of burying the dead among the Mongolese. The priests of Buddha, to subjugate the minds of their followers, have represented death under a frightful image. The dying devotee sends for a lama, to secure the welfare of his body and the salvation of his soul; the priest, after making inquiries respecting the day and the hour of the pa-

tient's birth, the accompanying circumstances, and all the events of his life, pronounces, according to the sacred books and the laws of astrology, whether the body shall be burned or cast into the water; whether it shall be exposed in a kind of cage, or covered with stones, etc. There are some exceptions: for instance, they do not bury a man who has been hung; whoever dies in consequence of tumors, can not be burned; they do not cast into the water those who have been drowned in an inundation, or struck by lightning, or devoured by the flames; they do not bury upon a mountain any one who has died of a contagious disease; in a word, one can not without a reason, throw wood into the fire, fire and earth into water, carry wood upon a mountain or into a forest. Such are the laws of the Buddhists. The most usual manner of disposing of the dead is to transport them into a steppe, and there leave them, abandoned to wild beasts and birds of prey. But even in this case the lama decides which quarter of the world the head must be turned toward; a weather-vane is planted in the ground, and the direction given to it by the wind determines that in which the deceased shall be placed. For the rest, every thing depends wholly upon the lama, who prescribes in like manner how the corpse must be buried, whether it shall be clothed or left naked, placed in the open air or in an old tent, and determines which of his effects or what objects should be added as offerings.

In the night of November 13th two of their horses perished with cold and fatigue. On the summits of the chain of Khinkhan-dabagan mountains, in the south, they could distinguish towers; these were on the frontier between China and Mongolia, which they now perceived for the first time, and with extreme satisfaction. At ten o'clock they reached a small, half-ruined fortification, called Tsagan-balgassoo, or white-walled city, where they rejoiced in having happily passed over the steppes, with their snows and sands and impetuous, icy winds. Here they made inspection of their horses, camels, and oxen, a part of which were to be left until March, in the following year. On the morning of the 16th they entered a deep valley among the Khinkhan mountains, and passed a fort on a small elevation. The animals went on with great difficulty; the cold became so intense that it was impossible to keep warm, even by walking. Still they had fifteen miles to go before reaching a station. Their embarrassment increased when a few miles further they were obliged to cross over mountains where their animals slipped and fell at every step on the ice, or plunged into deep snows. At this place they passed a post of Mongolese sentinels, in several yourtes. They began to see indications of the vicinity of a commercial city; they continually met caravans, chariots, and riders mounted on camels and horses. Soon afterward they reached the chain of mountains which separates Mongolia from China. On their summits extends a stone rampart, with square brick towers at equal distances from each other.

From this point China appears in colossal forms. Southward, eastward, and westward, nothing was seen but snow-covered mountains,

the events of his laws of astrology, water; whether it tones, etc. There y a man who has an not be burned; drowned in an in- e flames; they do a contagious dis- wood into the fire, in or into a forest. manner of disposing there leave them, ven in this case the l must be turned the direction given ed shall be placed. na, who prescribes hether it shall be old tent, and deter- added as offerings. orses perished with Khinkhan-dabagan ers; these were on now perceived for ten o'clock they sagàn-balgassoo, or billy passed over the icy winds. Here en, a part of which On the morning of inkhan mountains, went on with great impossible to keep to go before reach- a few miles further their animals slipped eep snows. At this in several yourtes. mercial city; they ted on camels and f mountains which ts extends a stone from each other. Southward, east- covered mountains,

whose pointed summits reached the clouds. The descent for three miles to the Chinese village of Nor-tian, is by a narrow road which was very dangerous at that season; beyond that village the traveler sees high mountains whose threatening summits give a wild character to the district. Such is the aspect of the country at the place where they descended from the high steppes of Mongolia to the lower heights of China. They halted at the first Chinese village; it was with pleasure they entered a house, having seen nothing since leaving the Ourga, a journey of more than seven hundred miles, that reminded them of the customs of sedentary life.

It is about fifteen miles from the first Chinese village to Chang-kia-khéou, or Khalgan. The road is at first narrow and intersected with hills, which are rather steep. The boldness and indefatigable activity of the Chinese laborers attracted the attention of the travelers; the summits of the highest mountains were covered with cultivated fields, and the naked and inaccessible rocks seemed to have been rendered fertile. There were villages and temples on the declivities of the mountains, and several cabins were built against the rocks like birds' nests.

They first saw Khalgan when they arrived at the Great Wall, which is built of bricks between two steep rocks, and is now half-ruined.

At Khalgan, as at the Maimatchin of Kiakhta and the Ourga, it was the custom to fire a cannon at six in the morning and nine in the evening; at the former report every inhabitant is allowed to leave his home, and even, if necessary, to go and see the city authorities, but at the latter this right ceases, except in extraordinary cases. A river divides the city into two parts, the upper and lower town; the former is on the Mongolian frontier, and has its gates in the great wall, which extends across the mountains. Khalgan is not large, and has no remarkable edifices, but is very populous. The inhabitants appeared to have a great curiosity to see the strangers: all day they besieged the doors of their house, and the neighboring roofs were covered with spectators.

On the route from Khalgan to Pekin they gained a good idea of the people of China and their industrious habits. At every step they met people transporting cut straw on mules and asses. Sentinels are placed at regular intervals in a kind of watch-houses which rise like towers, near five small conical columns upon which the distances are marked. The exterior of the watch-towers is embellished with paintings, representing horses, guns, bows and quivers of arrows. These watch-towers serve likewise as telegraphs: if the northern frontier of China is threatened the news is immediately transmitted to Pekin, and the army is at once marched against the enemy. The route led southward, along the banks of the Yang-ho, a shallow river with a very rapid current which, except at the rapids, was now bound in with ice. A portion of the way passes through rugged rocks, which often rise abruptly from the river, whose waters leap tumultuously down the precipice below, while other rocks from the opposite side threaten to crush the traveler. Beyond the

river rises the Whang-yang-chang, a granite mountain whose pointed peaks are lost among the clouds. The wild and majestic aspect of this region is most impressive to the traveler who has just left the dry and desolate steppes.

After passing the town of Yu-lin-fu on the 28th, the ground was covered with stones and no cultivated fields were seen. They arrived at the foot of high mountains, where they saw a number of ruined tombs. On the summit of the mountains, which rose nearly to the clouds, the great wall appeared. This grand monument, unique in its kind, produces an imposing effect, when we consider that it has existed for several centuries, and that it extends to a great distance over inaccessible mountains.

Two miles from Chah-tao they came to the Great Wall, which they inspected. After passing an arched entrance in the principal tower, they entered a large court, from which they ascended by steps to the top of the Wall. Notwithstanding the centuries which have passed since this structure has been in existence, it is built with such skill and care, that instead of falling in ruins, it is like a stone rampart raised by the hand of nature to protect the northern provinces of China from the invasions of the Mongols, who have not yet wholly lost their warlike character. The Great Wall is composed of two parallel walls with embattled tops, and the interval is filled with earth and gravel. The foundations consist of large rough stones; the rest of the wall is of bricks. It is twenty-six feet high and fourteen wide. The towers, in which there are several brass guns, are about one hundred paces apart. The great tower is falling into decay; the entrance is much damaged, as well as the adjoining wall. There is no longer any thought of repairing it. To give a just idea of this immense structure, it may not be amiss to refer to a calculation of Mr. Barrow, who visited China with Lord Macartney in 1793 and 1794. He reckons the number of houses in England and Scotland to be eighteen hundred thousand. Estimating the mason-work of each at two thousand cubic feet, he supposes that they do not contain as much material as the Great Wall of China, which he says would be sufficient to construct a wall that would reach twice around the earth.

They descended from the mountains on the 30th, and entered the well-cultivated plains of Pe-chee-le, over which they proceeded toward the capital. After passing the suburban city of Cha-ho, the opulence indicating the approach to a large city, began to appear. For several miles before reaching the market-town, Tsing-ho, they passed pleasant country-houses, and the cemeteries of persons of distinction in Peking. These were characterized by elegant simplicity rather than grand luxury; everywhere they saw the white trunks of cypresses, thick groves of aged willows, and of junipers, which attain the height of the tallest pines. They saw by the way, fifty Mongolese camels, which were carrying butter to the Imperial Court; the foremost camels were ornamented with small strips of yellow cloth fastened to sticks, like flags.

At nine o'clock next day, they set out from Tsing-ho for Peking. For nearly four miles they followed an avenue of ancient willows, passing villages and cemeteries on the right hand and left. They soon reached the suburbs of Peking. Two students of the old mission came to meet them, with four Chinese calashes for the new members, and a saddled horse for M. Timkovski. In the suburbs the noise, the tumult, and the crowd, announced the vicinity of the most populous city of the globe. They soon came out on a large plain, and the walls of Peking in their full extent lay spread out before them. "Finally, the immense distance between St. Petersburg and the capital of China was passed over. At once forgetting all our fatigues," observes Timkovski, "we, inhabitants of the shores of the gulf of Finland, fancied ourselves transported in an instant, by some supernatural power, to this city which had so long been the object of the dreams of our imagination, and the aim of our desires. With a sentiment of joy each one of us cast his eyes upon the embrasured walls, whose origin is enveloped in the thick shadows of antiquity."

Northward of the plain, they saw the red walls of a temple of Fohi, and at a short distance observed the funeral of a rich Chinese. Two miles from the entrance to this plain they passed the Russian cemetery, where the members of their mission, who die in Peking, are interred. A little further on, the mission entered with ceremony by the gate Ngangting-meng into the capital of China. A crowd of gazers surrounded them. They followed the broad street leading from the gate for a mile and a half, then proceeded by a cross-street to the street Ta-fo-szu, which they traversed in a southern direction two miles to a triumphal arch of wood; thence to the right, along the street Chang-ngang, they passed the temple of Manchoo worship on the left, and the tribunal of foreign affairs on the right. They then crossed the canal, or small river, Yu-ho, on a marble bridge called Pe-khiao, passed the Imperial Palace on the right, went southward along the canal for nearly a mile, then crossed the bridge Chung Yu-ho-khiao, turned up the street Tung-kiang-me-kiang, and, at noon, finally entered the Russian court, where they were received by several members of the old mission.

After their arrival, M. Timkovski's health was impaired, partly from the dampness of the house of the embassy, and the exhalations of the coal burned in the apartments; the abbot therefore gave him a room in the convent, which he occupied during the cold weather. The chambers of the convent were heated from beneath the floor; the occupants lived very warm, but the continual heat injured the feet.

All the dwellings of Peking, from the cabin of the artisan to the palace of the rich man, are of one story, and built of bricks; the court is surrounded by a high stone wall, so that from the street one can see nothing but the roofs. The shops, however, have large paper windows, which occupy nearly the whole front. In most of the houses, in all the shops, and even in the palace of the emperor, remarkable sentences from the philosophers or the celebrated poets are written upon the tapestry of the



windows, as well as upon paper of various colors. Among the rich the partitions and doors are of precious wood, as camphor, cypress, etc., and adorned with sculptures. Beside the agreeable impression which they make upon the sight, they diffuse a pleasant odor through the apartments. All the roofs are of tiles, green, red, or yellow, which are arranged, like every thing in this country, by fixed rules. Thus the imperial edifices and the temples can alone be covered with yellow tiles; green is for the palaces of personages of high rank; gray tiles are used for other houses.

The Manchoo language is not difficult to learn. Like other Asiatic languages it has its alphabet and grammar; the former resembles the Mongolese; the pronunciation is much more sonorous. The Manchooks, after the conquest of China in 1644, were obliged to complete their language, hitherto poor, as that of a nomadic people, and to perfect it according to the rules of Chinese literature. After two hundred years of sojourn among a numerous and partially civilized people, the Manchooks have become accustomed to their manners and customs, and their language; so that, at present, all classes of them speak Chinese. Even in Peking there are but few people who understand the Manchoo language; it is employed only in the affairs of state.

On the 3d of January, 1821, the travelers visited the shops of the merchants, situated mostly in the suburb called Vaile-ching. At the commencement of the street Leoo-le-chang, which is very short and very filthy, there are several book-stores, which sell Chinese and Manchoo books, all bound and well arranged; but on examining them we soon find that many of them are very defective. The Chinese booksellers have a habit of asking five times as much as the books are worth; they endeavor to sell copies in which leaves are missing, or books which are composed of the leaves of three or four different works. One must be wide awake if he would not be cheated by the rascality of the Chinese booksellers; and in fact this distrust is equally necessary in the purchase of other goods. The best books, and principally the historical books, are issued from the imperial press, where the booksellers of Peking and other cities buy them at a price fixed by government. This press also publishes every other day a gazette containing the extraordinary events which happen in the empire, the ordinances, and especially the list of promotions, the favors granted by the emperor, such as yellow robes and peacock feathers (equivalent to the orders of knighthood, etc., in Europe), the punishment of delinquent mandarins, etc.

Further on, in the same street, are jeweler's shops, where pictures and objects carved out of jasper, ivory, and precious woods, for the decoration of apartments, are sold. The work is well finished. They have also glassware, glazed porcelain, etc., all of the best quality. In like manner one meets with a quantity of articles from the imperial palace, which the eunuchs have the dexterity to carry off, and sell at a mean price to the merchants; they likewise saw English goods, which came by way of Canton.

among the rich the  
hor, cypress, etc.,  
impression which  
through the apart-  
low, which are ar-  
Thus the imperial  
tiles; green is for  
d for other houses.  
Like other Asiatic  
nor resembles the  
The Manchooks,  
to complete their  
, and to perfect it  
two hundred years  
people, the Man-  
customs, and their  
Chinese. Even  
the Manchoo lan-

the shops of the  
le-ching. At the  
is very short and  
Chinese and Man-  
examining them we  
The Chinese book-  
e books are worth;  
ng, or books which  
works. One must  
ality of the Chinese  
ary in the purchase  
historical books, are  
of Pekin and other  
his press also pub-  
traordinary events  
specially the list of  
h as yellow robes  
nighthood, etc., in

where pictures and  
ods, for the decora-  
ished. They have  
t quality. In like  
he imperial palace,  
and sell at a mean  
goods, which came

Near each of the city gates donkeys are kept saddled for public service. The Chinese mount these animals in order to go from one gate to another; light burdens are also transported upon them. In winter they also pass upon the canal, which is covered with ice. Several persons take places on a kind of sleigh, made of boards, and drawn by a man. It is said that even in summer one can pass from Pekin to the southern provinces in small chariots drawn by men. The vaults near the city walls are inhabited by the poor. It is impossible to form an idea of the miserable and disgusting aspect of these unfortunate beings: almost naked, or covered with matted rags, they drag themselves about among the shops of the commercial quarter to beg alms; after having received a few *chokki* they return to conceal themselves in their caves.

The Chinese army is composed of four divisions corresponding to the nations which the empire contains. The division composed of Manchooks, numbering nearly sixty-eight thousand men, occupies the first rank. The second division embraces the Mongolese, who entered China with the Manchooks at the epoch of the conquest; it numbers twenty-one thousand. The third division is composed of the Chinese who joined the Manchooks toward the close of the last Chinese dynasty, and numbers twenty-seven thousand. To this division belongs the artillery of the company, consisting of four hundred cannon. These three bodies, numbering over one hundred thousand men, form the Manchoo army, properly speaking, the principal part of which is cavalry. The fourth division is composed of other Chinese, recruited annually; it occupies the garri- sons of the interior, and comprises about five hundred thousand men. There are besides nearly twenty-five thousand men of irregular troops, or militia; making a total of six hundred and twenty-five thousand men, of whom nearly one hundred and seventy-five thousand are cavalry. The Chinese soldiers are all married. Their sons are, at their birth, en- rolled on the army list; when they are of age they fill the vacant places in the companies.

One day a soldier of the corps of Ojen-chokha, of Pekin, called on the chief of the new mission. He was about forty years of age, the son of a poor soldier, and brought up at the convent of French Jesuits in the city. The latter, who destined him to the station of a Roman Catholic preacher, in the interior provinces of China, wished to send him to Europe to complete his studies, as had been done with his uncle, who had become a distinguished priest among his fellow-countrymen. But during the last persecution of the Jesuits he renounced his calling as priest, believing it his duty to return to his regiment. Besides Chinese, he spoke and wrote Latin and French well, and was otherwise well edu- cated. It was singular to hear a Chinese, clothed and armed in the style of the country, speaking French with fluency. The students of the new mission employed him as private tutor in Chinese, because he spoke Latin well. M. Timkovski presents to his readers a long letter in Latin, written by this soldier to the abbot, in which he transcribes some Chi-

nese rules of hygiene, containing directions for preserving and prolonging life.

On the 11th of January they visited the temples of Whang-szu. They first passed the temple of the Earth, in a large inclosure surrounded by high walls, where the emperor repairs at the summer solstice to give thanks to the Supreme Being, and to pray for a good harvest. Then they came to the grand central temple, near which were a number of convents, or residences of the priests, and many smaller temples. In the vicinity of the temples stands an obelisk of white marble, which, from the sculptures on its sides, drawn from the history of Buddha, or Fohi, appears to have been raised in honor of that prophet, whose doctrines are followed in Thibet, China, Mongolia, and by the Buriates and the Calmucks. It is an octagonal tower, ninety-four feet high. The top is slender, and is surmounted by a large cap of massive gold, which resembles the hat of the dala-lama. On the four sides are sculptured marble columns. The obelisk is a beautiful work and cost a large sum of money. Near it is a small chateau where the emperor rests when he goes to bear his offerings to the temple of the Earth.

In the night preceding January 22d, the dull sound of kettle-drums in the temples announced the new year of the Chinese, which begins with the new moon. In the temple in the Russian court torches of odoriferous wood were kindled, and a lama recited prayers, beating the while on a copper vessel. Toward midnight the princes of the blood and the most distinguished personages assembled in the palace. At sunrise they followed the emperor to the temple of his ancestors, where he performed his devotions according to the prescribed ritual, then returned to the palace to receive the felicitations of the grandees of the empire, and the members of the tribunals of Peking. On the occasion of the new year the tribunals throughout China are closed for a month, and the great seal of the empire is locked up during the time.

The festival of the new year continues till the middle of the first month. During this time a bell of extraordinary size is exhibited; it is in a convent of the *ho-changs*, or priests of Fohi, two miles south of Peking. Curious to see all that is permitted to a stranger in this distant country, M. Timkovski, with several of his countrymen, repaired to the convent on the 5th of February. A great number of men and women assembled there during the festival. The inquisitive crowd pressed around the strangers on all sides; happily the soldiers of the police, by the aid of whips, opened the way. Passing a two-story building containing the apartments of the monks, they came to the belfry, in which hangs the bell so renowned in China. It is of copper, and quite blackened by time; its height is thirteen feet, its form conical. It is covered with Chinese characters and weighs about a hundred thousand pounds. The ascent to it is by a rude, dark stairway. Near the top is a small orifice through which the devotees throw copper coins; he who succeeds in passing them through this hole, finds a happy presage in the circumstance. The

pieces fall on the floor beneath the bell, and during the festival amount to a considerable sum.

They returned by the imperial court of elephants, which a hundred pieces of copper, applied to the sentinels, enabled them to see. The court is very large, and contains a temple, a well, four large buildings for the elephants, and several houses inhabited by the employées of the establishment. The elephants are employed in transporting the vessels with which the emperor performs the sacrifices. These vessels are placed on very large litters, made for the purpose. Four elephants are also taken daily to the court. One of them, in obedience to the voice of his leader, strikes with his trunk upon the floor as many times as he is ordered, another makes a rumbling like the muffled sounds of a drum and utters piercing cries. The greater part of these animals are aged and infirm; many are so gentle that they walk peaceably about the court. The elephants of Pekin are usually brought, at a great expense, from the Birman empire.

On the 12th of February, the abbots Hyacinth and Peter, accompanied by M. Timkovski and a party of Cossacks, proceeded on horseback to visit the Portuguese missionaries, of the convent of the south. Father Ribeira, the superior of the convent, entertained them kindly, and showed them the chapel and other apartments. They had just entered the hall of reception when an officer of the Manchoo police rushed in with a terrible outcry; without waiting for an invitation from the superior he sat down, and addressing the bishop reproached him bitterly for having received visits, although he well knew the access to the convent was forbidden to strangers. The bishop having replied that this did not concern him, the officer, who was much excited, blamed the superior for having exposed him to the danger of losing his place, for the populace, in their curiosity to see the Russians, had assembled before the convent; the crowd had become so great that it was impossible to pass along the street, and disagreeable consequences might result if one of the attorneys-general should be informed of it. Ribeira, mortified at being treated thus in the presence of his guests, after having invited them, in a manner, to show the inhabitants of Pekin how the Portuguese are esteemed by the other Europeans, attempted to calm the officer, but without success. The Manchoo seized a Franciscan monk and led him off to the police to answer for the disorder which the visit of the Russians had caused. Seeing the audacious effrontery of the Manchoo, and the low credit of the Catholics in China, the visitors rose and asked leave to retire and return at a more favorable moment; but the bishop begged them to remain, saying that the Manchoo was drunk, and that such vexations on the part of the Chinese happened frequently.

The 21st of March was the first day of the third moon, in the Chinese calendar; the weather was very bad. Spring, in Pekin, is usually accompanied by impetuous winds. The winter which had just closed,

and the beginning of the spring were unusually cold for the climate. On the 23d, a great concourse of devotees assembled in the temple to celebrate the first day of the festival of spring. The priests carried the idols to their places and burned perfumes before them, reciting meanwhile the prayers established for the ceremony.

On the 25th of April M. Timkovski sent to the tribunal of foreign affairs a petition relative to their departure from Peking. They had fixed it, at the latest, on the twenty-sixth day of the fourth moon (15th of May). The petition was taken by the inspector of baggage and the interpreter, accompanied by M. Sipiakov and two Cossacks. It was graciously received by the members of the tribunal, who promised a prompt and favorable decision. After some delays the permission was accorded, and the mission proceeded at once to make preparations for their departure. These were at length completed, and on the 14th of May they were wholly occupied with the final arrangements for setting out; they had now spent five and a half months in the capital of the Chinese Empire.

---

The climate of Peking, as described by M. Timkovski, is similar to that of America in the same latitude. The air is salubrious, even for strangers. Epidemic diseases are rare, and the ravages of the pestilence are unknown; every year the waters are covered with ice, from the middle of December until March, sometimes for a shorter period; but the cold is never very severe. When the thermometer ranges from ten to five degrees above zero, Fahrenheit, one suffers less than at St. Petersburg with the same temperature. Spring is the season of squally winds; the heats of summer are oppressive, chiefly in the months of June and July; these heats are accompanied with abundant rains, which moisten the soil, composed of clay and sand; sometimes the waters, in sweeping down from the mountains, destroy villages and commit great ravages. The autumn is the most agreeable season, especially in the months of September, October, and November; then the air is mild, the sky serene, and the weather calm.

Peking is divided by a high wall into two parts, called King-ching, or Imperial City, and Vai-lo-ching, or southern suburbs. The entire circumference is about fifteen miles. The walls, which are built of bricks, are forty feet high including the battlements, which are about five and a half feet. The thickness of the walls is twenty-one feet, and they are arranged to admit horsemen to ride upon them. There are sixteen gates, nine leading into the Imperial City, and seven to the Chinese town.

The streets are long, wide, and straight; they are not paved, but the earth is solid. The principal ones are about one hundred and twenty-five feet wide; the street named Chang-ngang-kiai, or Great Street of

ld for the climate.  
t in the temple to  
The priests carried  
ore them, reciting

tribunal of foreign  
Pekin. They had  
fourth moon (15th  
of baggage and the  
Cossacks. It was  
al, who promised a  
the permission was  
ke preparations for  
and on the 14th of  
gements for setting  
in the capital of the

kovski, is similar to  
salubrious, even for  
ages of the pestilence  
with ice, from the mid-  
winter period; but the  
er ranges from ten to  
ss than at St. Peters-  
ason of squally winds;  
e months of June and  
rains, which moisten  
e waters, in sweeping  
commit great ravages.  
ally in the months of  
air is mild, the sky

, called King-ching, or  
burbs. The entire cir-  
which are built of bricks,  
which are about five and  
y-one feet, and they are  
m. There are sixteen  
seven to the Chinese

y are not paved, but the  
e hundred and twenty-  
xial, or Great Street of

Tranquillity, is full one hundred and eighty feet in width. It is the most beautiful street of Pekin; it runs from east to west, and is bordered on the north, in part, by the walls of the imperial palace, on the south by several palaces and tribunals. The houses of the city are very low, often containing only the ground floor; they are of bricks and covered with gray tiles. The tribunals and the palaces of the princes are elevated on a base, and have beautiful entrances; the palaces are covered with green-glazed tiles. The most beautiful edifices of Pekin are the temples; they are large and magnificent, ornamented with columns and covered with superb roofs of white marble. The streets are bordered with shops finely decorated; the splendor and variety of merchandise exposed to the public eye present, in many quarters of the city, a very agreeable sight. It is almost impossible for a stranger to know any thing positive in regard to the population of the capital of China, or that of the empire itself, for the government does not keep correct lists of births and deaths, as is done in Europe; but from various means of information which he obtained, and from his own observations, M. Timkovski estimates the population of Pekin at two millions.

On the 15th of May, 1821, the travelers left Pekin on their return home. The thermometer indicated eighty-four degrees, Fahrenheit, and next day the heat was very great. As they proceeded they perceived mountains in the distance, especially the heights of Kiang-ching, occupied by a brigade of artillery from Pekin; they likewise saw the white walls of the castle of Ming-yuan, and the pyramid near the fountain at which water is drawn for the emperor.

On their journey to Pekin they had seen an ancient temple situated on a mountain near the fortress of Kee-ming, to which the access was very difficult; but as it was near the road, and the weather was now pleasant, they determined to visit it. They accordingly set out from the fort under the guidance of a peasant, but lost their way, and were soon stopped by precipices and rocks. M. Timkovski with several of his companions took a road to the east, and after great difficulties finally reached the temple. The rest of the party, who took a southern route, returned without seeing any thing. The steepness of the mountain, the projecting rocks, the numerous precipices, and the violence of the wind, made them almost despair of attaining their object. Overcome with fatigue they took each other by the hand and were thus continuing their ascent, when the barking of a dog apprised them of their approach to habitations. After another difficult passage, by a route which led to other temples further up, they finally reached the one they were seeking. This temple, like all others, is built of bricks, and composed of several chapels separated from each other and filled with idols; near it was a garden. A gigantic rock seemed ready to fall down upon the temple and crush it. They met with no one but the guardian, who spoke a little Mongolese. A steep, winding path, cut in the rock, led to the top of the mountain. It is difficult to conceive the motives which led to the



erection of such a monument upon this narrow ledge of the mountain, surrounded by precipices and exposed to tempests. The transportation alone of the materials from the foot of the mountain, two miles distant, would cost a vast amount of labor and enormous expense.

The travelers met with poor lodgings at Khalgan; their neighbors were playing cards and making a great deal of noise. Here they likewise received the disagreeable intelligence that for want of orders from the tribunal of Peking for the continuation of their journey they would be obliged to remain three or four days. On the 24th of May, having received their permission, they set out upon the route by Nor-tian. They crossed over mountains where there was still a quantity of snow, which had fallen in abundance a few days before. It was still cold on the heights; the wheat and rye had only just sprouted from the ground, while at Peking the wheat was already in bloom. When they left Nor-tian next morning a thick fog obstructed the view; it cleared away toward noon, and the steppe lay spread out before them. The freshness of the atmosphere and the song of the larks revived in them the hope of soon beholding their native country again.

On the 4th of June they emerged from the high mountains and entered a sandy plain which forms the commencement of the steppe of Gobi. At daybreak next morning the wind blew from the north, and the cold was perceptible, the thermometer indicating forty-three degrees. At the station of Khujir, which they reached on the 9th, the sandy steppe terminated; it has an extent of eighty miles. Beyond this for fifty miles the surface is gravelly and sterile. On the steppe the cold was at times keen and cutting, and at others the heat was oppressive; they sometimes passed over stony heights, sometimes through small valleys inclosing the bed of a dried-up stream. After some days of this kind of traveling they came, on the 19th, to Mount Oolan-khadah, which separates the country of the Sunites from that of the Khalkas. Just before reaching the station of Gashoon that evening they were met by their old friend, the Tussulakhchi Idam.

At length they approached a chain of mountains which seemed to bar up the way before them. At the extremity of a defile they found, on the 21st, the station of Oudé, situated in a stony valley, surrounded by mountains. Oudé, in Mongolese, signifies gate; the name of the defile by which one enters the mountains. North of this defile the desert of Gobi is said properly to begin: a steppe devoid of water, of wood, and of vegetation, which extends two hundred miles, to the habitations of the wandering Tsakhars. After pursuing their route for nearly a month through this desolate region, where the surface is often interrupted by granite hills and stony valleys, they finally, on the 14th of July, discovered the summit of Mount Khan-oola. This mountain is remarkable as the last one in Mongolia, going southward, and the first in returning, that is covered with woods. A few miles further they reached Mount Seoudji, one of the highest of the chain, which they

KIN.

of the mountain,  
The transportation  
two miles distant,  
ense.

an; their neighbors  
e. Here they like-  
ant of orders from  
journey they would  
th of May, having  
route by Nor-tian.  
a quantity of snow,  
It was still cold on  
ed from the ground,  
When they left Nor-  
w; it cleared away  
them. The freshness  
ed in them the hope

h mountains and en-  
nt of the steppe of  
from the north, and  
ating forty-three de-  
shed on the 9th, the  
miles. Beyond this  
n the steppe the cold  
heat was oppressive;  
es through small val-  
er some days of this  
Oolan-khadah, which  
ne Khalkas. Just be-  
ng they were met by

ins which seemed to  
of a defile they found,  
a stony valley, sur-  
nifies gate; the name

North of this defile  
ppe devoid of water,  
hundred miles, to the  
rsuing their route for  
e the surface is often  
ey finally, on the 14th  
ola. This mountain is  
uthward, and the first  
ew miles further they  
the chain, which they

ascended with much difficulty by a steep and rocky road; thence by a dangerous descent they came to the station of Seoudji.

It was with extreme satisfaction that they beheld the rapid current of the Tôla, upon whose banks they arrived next day; it formed the boundary of the desert steppes which they had been so long traversing. At five in the evening they arrived at the Ourga. Here they rested a while from the fatigues of the journey, and were meanwhile received in a friendly manner by the vang.

On the 19th of July, they continued their journey. As an especial honor they were escorted to the first station by a dzanghin and ten Mongolese, armed with bows and arrows. The mountains and valleys near the banks of the Burgultai were carpeted with flowers and beautiful verdure; a sight which they had not beheld south of the Ourga. They crossed the Mantagai Mountains, whose rocky sides are covered with pines, birch, aspen, and a variety of shrubs, and came to the Bainoola River on the 25th. Mount Oulou, which they passed on the 27th, is very picturesque. Its sides are covered with pines, birch and aspen trees, wild roses, etc. The Sharà-gol bathes its foot; the neighboring plain abounds in luxuriant vegetation, sprinkled with elms. Beyond, they saw a temple with its red roof, above which rose a chain of mountains, crowned with forests of pine. In all Mongolia they saw no district so well adapted to agriculture.

On the 31st they reached Ghilan-nor, the last station before Kiakh-ta. At the extremity of a forest they came in sight of the town. This view made them forget all their toils. The weather was becoming very warm; the mountains around were covered with wheat ready for harvest. Arrived at the station, two interpreters of the custom-house of Kiakh-ta, in behalf of the director, brought them bread and salt, in congratulation of their happy arrival.

At eight o'clock on the morning of August 1st, they were visited by M. Goliakhovski, the director of the custom-house, and other employés, the ataman of the Buriate light-guard, and two taidzi of Sélengthinsk, in company with whom, at ten o'clock, they finally entered Kiakh-ta, and found themselves again on Russian soil.



## CAPTAIN COCHRANE'S

### PEDESTRIAN JOURNEY THROUGH SIBERIA.

---

IN the month of January, 1820, Captain John Dundas Cochrane, of the British navy, addressed a letter to the secretary of the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty, offering to undertake a journey into the interior of Africa, which should have for its object the ascertaining of the course and termination of the Niger. Captain Cochrane had already traversed France, Spain, and Portugal, on foot, and had been for years accustomed to undergo great fatigues and privations, among which he enumerates two trips from Quebec to Lake Ontario in company with six hundred seamen, whose wry faces and swollen feet told him that he was more of a pedestrian traveler than they. He was therefore confident of success in his undertaking, in which he intended to go alone, requiring only to be furnished with the countenance of some constituent part of the government.

The answer from the Admiralty was unfavorable, but the captain, who thought his plan more than ordinarily feasible to one "who had been roasted in some of the worst corners of the West Indies, during a period of nearly ten years' service, without so much as a headache," was not wholly disheartened. "Finding, however," says he, "that a young commander like myself was not likely to be employed afloat, much less ashore, I determined to undertake a journey, varying only the object and the scene, similar to that of the unfortunate Ledyard, viz., to travel round the globe, as nearly as can be done by land, crossing from Northern Asia to America, at Behring's Straits; I also determined to perform the journey on foot, for the best of all possible reasons, that my finances allowed of no other. Having procured two years' leave of absence I prepared to traverse the continents of Europe, Asia, and America."

Having filled his knapsack with such articles as seemed requisite to enable him to wander among the wilds of three quarters of the globe, he left London in the packet-boat for Dieppe, and on the 14th of February set forward through France and Germany, toward St. Peters-

burg, where he arrived on the 30th of April (O. S.) His route lay through Paris, Frankfort, Leipsic, Berlin, Dantzic, Königsberg, and other important cities, in which he halted to repose from the great fatigues of the journey, and to examine the objects of interest that were to be seen. His clothes were in tatters, and his shoes worn out by this trip of sixteen hundred miles, during an inclement season, yet on his arrival at the Russian capital he cheerfully continued the arrangements for pursuing his journey into the remotest wilds of that empire.

Through the influence of Sir Daniel Bailey, the British Consul General, who was an able advocate of his plans, Captain Cochrane gained the favor of Count Nesselrode, the Foreign Minister, and of Count Kochoubey, to whom his affair was intrusted. He not only obtained the customary passport and a letter to the Governor General of Siberia, but also two official documents signed by the minister, calling upon the authorities of all the towns and provinces lying on his route from St. Petersburg to Kamtchatka, to aid him on his journey, and afford him lawful defense and protection in case of need. The emperor likewise offered him pecuniary assistance in the outset, which he declined.

On the 24th of May (O. S.), he set out from St. Petersburg. He carried a letter of introduction to Prince Theodore Galitzin, who occupied the Imperial Palace at Tzarsko Selo, but on his arrival at midnight, he found the palace wrapped in flames. After mingling awhile with the crowd in extinguishing the conflagration, he retired to the gardens, and spent a few hours of the first night of his journey lying in the open air upon the grass. Having breakfasted with Prince Theodore, he proceeded toward Tosna, where he arrived at seven in the evening. He thus continues the narrative of his adventures next day: "I passed the night in the cottage of a farmer, resigning myself to the attacks and annoyance of such vermin as generally haunt impoverished dwellings, and was therefore proportionably pleased in the morning to pursue my journey. My route was toward Liubane, at about the ninth mile-stone from which I sat down, to smoke a segar or pipe, as fancy might indicate; I was suddenly seized from behind by two ruffians, whose visages were as much concealed as the oddness of their dress would permit. One of them, who held an iron bar in his hand, dragged me by the collar toward the forest, while the other, with a bayoneted musket, pushed me on in such a manner as to make me move with more than ordinary celerity: a boy, auxiliary to these vagabonds, was stationed on the road-side to keep a look-out.

"We had got some sixty or eighty paces into the thickest part of the forest, when I was desired to undress, and having stripped off my trousers and jacket, then my shirt, and, finally, my shoes and stockings, they proceeded to tie me to a tree. From this ceremony, and from the manner of it, I fully concluded that they intended to try the effect of a musket upon me, by firing at me as they would at a mark. I was, however, reserved for fresh scenes; the villains, with much *sang froid*, seated

) His route lay  
Siberia, and other  
great fatigues of  
that were to be  
out by this trip of  
et on his arrival at  
engements for pur-  
are.

British Consul Gene-  
ochrane gained the  
of Count Kochou-  
y obtained the cus-  
of Siberia, but also  
g upon the author-  
from St. Petersburg  
ord him lawful de-  
likewise offered him

St. Petersburg. He  
Galitzin, who occur-  
arrival at midnight,  
ling awhile with the  
to the gardens, and  
lying in the open air  
Theodore, he pro-  
in the evening. He  
day: "I passed the  
to the attacks and an-  
rished dwellings, and  
g to pursue my jour-  
ninth mile-stone from  
ey might indicate; I  
whose visages were as  
uld permit. One of  
e by the collar toward  
sket, pushed me on in  
n ordinary celerity: a  
the road-side to keep

the thickest part of the  
stripped off my trow-  
es and stockings, they  
y, and from the man-  
ry the effect of a mus-  
ark. I was, however,  
ch *sang froid*, seated

themselves at my feet, and rifled my knapsack and pockets, even cutting out the linings of the clothes in search of bank-bills or some other valuable articles. They then compelled me to take at least a pound of black bread, and a glass of rum, poured from a small flask which had been suspended from my neck. Having appropriated my trowsers, shirts, stockings, and English shooting shoes, as also my spectacles, watch, compass, thermometer, and small pocket-sextant, with 160 roubles (about £7), they at length released me from the tree, and, at the point of a stiletto, made me swear that I would not inform against them—such, at least, I conjectured to be their meaning, though of their language I understood not a word.

"Having received my promise, I was again treated to bread and rum, and once more fastened to the tree, in which condition they finally abandoned me. Not long after, a boy who was passing heard my cries, and set me at liberty. I did not doubt he was sent by my late companions upon so considerate an errand, and felt so far grateful; though it might require something more than common charity to forgive their depriving me of my shirt and trowsers, and leaving me almost as naked as I came into the world.

"To pursue my route, or return to Tzarsko Selo, would, indeed, be alike indecent and ridiculous, but being so, and there being no remedy, I made therefore 'forward' the order of the day; having first, with the remnant of my apparel, rigged myself *à l'Ecossaise*, I resumed my route. I had still left me a blue jacket, a flannel waistcoat, and a spare one, which I tied round my waist in such a manner that it reached down to the knees: my empty knapsack was restored to its old place, and I trotted on with even a merry heart."

Within a few miles he passed between files of soldiers, employed in making a new road, under the orders of General Woronoff. The general received him with kindness, administered food and refreshments, and then offered him clothing, but the captain declined and soon afterward proceeded on his journey. He rode in the general's carriage, which was directed to take him to the first station, but finding carriage-riding cold he preferred walking, barefooted as he was, and in this manner he approached Novgorod next day, passing by the way through many large villages and a fertile and populous country. "Crossing the bridge," he continues, "I entered the city at two o'clock, and immediately waited on the governor. He would have provided me with clothing on the instant; I was, however, hungry, and requested food. The governor smiled, but assented, and I then accepted a shirt and trowsers." Meanwhile he obtained good quarters at the house of a merchant to whom he had a letter of introduction, and who kindly furnished him with a complete refit. As he was pursuing his journey, a few days afterward, he received two rubles as charity from the master of a post-house, from whom he had also received refreshment gratis. "Knowing as I did," says he, "that assistance was at hand, I declined



the money, although my then distressed state might have warranted my open acceptance of it. I continued my route, and upon my arrival at the next station I found the money in my cap.

"I entered Moscow at eight o'clock on the morning of June 5th, the last stage being distressingly fatiguing. Much rain fell and I was not a little happy to reach the hospitable abode of Mr. Rowan in time for breakfast. The last thirty-two hours I warrant as bearing witness to one of my greatest pedestrian trips—the distance is one hundred and sixty-eight versts, or about ninety-six miles; I have, however, done the same in Portugal."

After leaving Moscow he sometimes traveled by night to avoid the heat of the sun. His way of life seems to have excited an interest among the peasants, who frequently divided their meals and shared their dwellings with him, with the most cordial good will. When he showed them his passports they thought such a favor had never before been granted. At one time we find him washing his linen by the wayside, and then lying down under a bridge to enjoy a sound sleep, while his clothing was dried in the sun; at another sleeping contentedly in the open air, or under such shelter as he chanced to find, after having spent the day without food. Once he halted at midnight near a pretty village on the banks of a lake, where he was greatly charmed with the singing of some boys and girls, accompanied by a simple two-stringed instrument; "but," he continues, "the beauty of the night prompted me to continue my route, and I left the happy villagers for Pogost, twenty-four miles, where I arrived half famished and quite fatigued, not having tasted food during twenty-four hours, and a march of forty miles. Being too jaded to proceed further I thought myself fortunate in being able to pass the night in a *cask*; nor did I think this mode of passing the night a novel one; often, very often, have I, in the fastnesses of Spain and Portugal, passed the night in a similar style. Here I usurp the place of crockery, there I usurped that of wine; here in the land of liberality, there in that of nonentity."

At Lower Novgorod he was entertained by Baron Rode, to whom he carried a recommendatory letter. "He received me kindly," says Captain Cochrane, "placing me for board in his own house; while for lodging I preferred the open air of his garden; there, with my knapsack for a pillow I passed the night more pleasantly than I should have done on a bed of down, which the baron most sincerely pressed me to accept. His excellency the governor received me with customary attention; but I was not so fortunate as to meet his amiable lady, an Englishwoman. The truth was, her servant would not admit me, judging, no doubt, from the length of my beard and the shabbiness of my dress, that I must be a Jew, or something worse. Thus denied, I embarked, in a freak of fancy, on board a lighter bound to Kazan, the better to enjoy the beautiful scenery of the Volga." The captain en-

have warranted my  
upon my arrival at

ning of June 5th,  
rain fell and I was  
Mr. Rowan in time  
as bearing witness  
one hundred and  
however, done the

night to avoid the  
an interest among  
shared their dwell-  
on he showed them  
fore been granted.  
wayside, and then  
while his clothing  
dly in the open air,  
aving spent the day  
pretty village on the  
the singing of some  
ringed instrument;  
ompted me to con-  
Pogost, twenty-four  
tigated, not having  
rch of forty miles.  
if fortunate in being  
his mode of passing  
n the fastnesses of  
style. Here I usurp  
here in the land of

aron Rode, to whom  
ed me kindly," says  
own house; while for  
here, with my knap-  
y than I should have  
accerely pressed me to  
e with customary at-  
his amiable lady, an  
ould not admit me,  
and the shabbiness of  
orse. Thus denied, I  
bound to Kazan, the  
ga." The captain en-

tered as one of the crew, working his passage, and arrived at Kazan on the 22d of June, after a passage of twelve days.

On the 25th he set forward in a vehicle furnished by the governor, which conveyed him to Perm in four days. He was so thoroughly fatigued by the jolting, and was, moreover, so little pleased with the severity of the postillion toward the peasantry, that he was glad to resume his journey on foot. In a few days he reached the Ural Mountains, and crossing the boundaries between Europe and Asia, arrived at Jekatharinenburg.

"On reaching the Asiatic side of the Ural chain," he observes, "I could not help remarking that the inhabitants of all the villages were much more civil, more hospitable, and more cleanly dressed; and in no one instance would they accept of money for the food I had occasion to procure. I never entered a cottage but *shtashe* (a cabbage soup), with meat, milk, and bread were immediately placed before me unasked; nor could any entreaty of mine induce them to receive a higher reward than a pipe of tobacco, or a glass of *vodka* (whisky). In short, to prevent uselessly troubling the inhabitants, I was obliged to consign my nearly exhausted purse to the care of my knapsack, renouncing the hackneyed and unsocial custom of paying for food. Among other proofs of their civility, or rather of the interest which Russians take in foreigners, as well as the means they have of making themselves understood, one very strong one occurred to me in a small village. I had learned so much of the language as to know that *kchorosho* is the Russian word for *well*, but not that *kchudo* was the translation for *bad*. My host being a good sort of a blunt fellow, was discoursing upon the impropriety of traveling as I did. As I could not comprehend him, I was impatient to go, but he persisted in detaining me till he had made me understand the meaning of *kchudo*. My extreme stupidity offered a powerful barrier to his design; but a smart slap on one cheek and a kiss on the other, followed by the words *kchudo*, and *kchorosho*, soon cured my dullness, and I laughed heartily in spite of this mode of instruction."

After reaching Tobolsk, he resolved to make an excursion, by way of Omsk, to the Chinese frontier. The Governor General accordingly supplied him with a Cossack, as well as a special order for horses, if he should deem them necessary, and for every assistance he might require. At the Tartar villages beyond Tobolsk, he was hospitably received, but after he had advanced into the steppe he met with an unpleasant incident, which he thus relates: "At Toukalinsk, I had the misfortune to lose what was to me my all—my passport, papers, and every protection in Siberia. In vain I addressed the commissary; in vain I offered a guinea for their recovery; in vain I pointed out the rogue who had taken them in the tin case from the seat while I was at dinner. I begged, intreated, insisted, threatened, abused; all was to no purpose; and I was finally constrained to go without them. By this terrible disaster I

was entirely deprived of all testimony of myself, my connections, or the object of my journey, and lay at the mercy of any one who might choose to provide me with large but cheap lodgings.

"On my arrival at Omsk, I of course presented myself to the ispravnik, or head commissary, and made known my loss in as good language as I could. I failed in making him understand me, but he humanely gave me good lodgings until he could procure the presence of one of the military officers, to act as an interpreter. This was done the next day. In the mean time, I addressed a letter to the Governor General and governor of Tobolsk, requesting an attested copy of the documents I had lost, and which I had taken the precaution to have made there. The police-master invited me to dine with him, though he confessed he could not understand either my object or character. He was, however, soon satisfied by the arrival of an express with my passports, etc., all complete. Thus was I, from a state of suspicion and surveillance, again restored to society. I should be very ungrateful, were I not to do justice here to the conduct of the commissary, who kindly went eighty miles, upon my account, to enforce the return of the papers, which, being in a tin case, induced the party to suspect money was there. All that I had, was, however, in my knapsack, and that did not amount to £5.

"Omsk is situated on the eastern bank of the Irtysh, at the junction of the Om. The surrounding country is a vast, level plain, the soil of which is fertile, though not extensively cultivated. Opposite, is the territory of the wandering Kirghiz; presenting no appearance of cultivation or dwellings. A considerable trade is carried on with them, as also with the Calmucks to the south, which consists in the barter of cattle, etc., for tobacco and spirits. Several children of each of these tribes are to be seen in Omsk, who are slaves, having been sold by their parents for a pound of tobacco or a glass of spirits.

"The Calmucks, who, like the Kirghiz, make no scruple to dispose of their children upon any momentary distress or want of spirits, are yet a different race, both with respect to features and origin. They are, however, their equals in idleness, and filth, and follow the same vagabond way of life. The Calmucks are, notwithstanding, the direct descendants of the Mongolese, who emigrated hither after the destruction of their empire. Very few are subject to Russia, a great part of them living in Chinese Mongolia, while the rest of them, under the protection of Russia, roam about the countries situate between the Don and Volga and the Ural mountains. Their features will forever mark them, in whatever part of the world; the flat face, small and elongated eyes, broad nose, high cheek bones, thick lips, and brownish yellow complexion, are sure signs of their Mongolian descent. They are obliging, but inquisitive and dishonest; yet, with a little Russian education and discipline, they make good servants. I ate and drank with them, as also with the Kirghiz, upon roasted meat, without bread, or any thing else, save a glass of spirits and a pipe of tobacco."

connections, or the  
who might choose  
self to the isprav-  
as good language  
ut he humanely  
nce of one of the  
he the next day.  
eneral and gover-  
ments I had lost,  
ere. The police-  
ed he could not  
wever, soon satis-  
etc., all complete.  
again restored to  
o justice here to  
miles, upon my ac-  
g in a tin case, in-  
I had, was, how-  
sh, at the junction  
plain, the soil of  
pposite, is the ter-  
earance of cultiva-  
with them, as also  
e barter of cattle,  
of these tribes are  
d by their parents  
scruple to dispose  
t of spirits, are yet  
origin. They are,  
the same vagabond  
direct descendants  
ruktion of their em-  
them living in Chi-  
rotection of Russia,  
Volga and the Ural  
n whatever part of  
ad nose, high cheek  
e sure signs of their  
ive and dishonest;  
ey make good serv-  
irghiz, upon roasted  
of spirits and a pipe

Leaving Omsk, Captain Cochrane, attended by a military Cossack, proceeded southward by the line of fortresses on the right bank of the Irtysh, and in a few days reached Semipalatinsk, a fortress with nearly one thousand soldiers. "I quitted Semipalatinsk late in the evening," he writes, "and directed my steps for Ubinsk, along the banks of a little stream which gives name to the fortress, and which unites with the Irtysh. I had entered a kибitka which was passing the same way, and at some distance observed the postilion turn off suddenly to the right. My mind misgave me, because in no instance before had I deviated from the high-road. I recollected, also, that the Cossack and postilion were both half drunk, and had been in earnest and secret conversation; I therefore determined to quit by a short movement. It was ten at night, and we were in a low thick brushwood, when, taking my knapsack, I suddenly quitted the vehicle, informing them, as well as I could by signs, and an obstinate persistence not to go their way, that if they were bound as they had pretended they would follow me. I continued alone, and regained the main road; the vehicle also tacked and came after me, but I refused to re-enter it, and marched on to the next station, keeping them at a respectful distance all the way. On my arrival I discharged the Cossack, without, however, reporting his conduct to the German commandant, as I perhaps ought to have done."

At Bukhtarminsk he procured a guide and went on toward the boundary. Having arrived at Macaria, he thus proceeds: "The night was so beautiful, the moon just ascending above the hills, that, in spite of a good supper which was ready and inviting my attack, I resumed my journey on horseback, in company with the landlord, to Malaya-Narynka, the last Russian spot on the frontier. An officer and a few men placed here, are all that are left to mark the boundaries of two such mighty empires as Russia and China. I forded the little stream which forms the actual limit, and seating myself on a stone on the left bank, was soon lost in a reverie. It was about midnight; the moon, apparently full, was near her meridian, and seemed to encourage a pensive inclination. What can surpass that scene I know not. Some of the loftiest granite mountains spreading in various directions, inclosing some of the most luxuriant valleys in the world; yet all deserted!—all this fair and fertile tract abandoned to wild beasts, merely to constitute a neutral territory! To the first Chinese settlement it is eighty miles; I would fain have visited it, but durst not without previous notice, and for this ceremony could ill spare the time."

Returning, he embarked on the Irtysh and descended the river by stages to Udinsk, whence he proceeded, with a Cossack, to Barnaoul. On his arrival he found great preparations for receiving the Governor General Speranski, whom he was anxious to meet. His excellency arrived on the second day, and Captain Cochrane met him at the public dinners given in his honor, where he himself became a conspicuous object. His hair and beard were long, he wore a long swaddling gray

nankeen coat, and a silken sash around his waist: "Indeed," remarks the captain, "so great a buck had I become of late that I hardly knew myself." Having laid his plans before the Governor General, the captain continues: "He told me that there was an expedition on the river Kolyma, fitted out purposely to solve the question regarding the north-east cape of Asia; and his excellency kindly offered me his permission to proceed with it. Too glad to accept a favor of the kind, I instantly closed with the offer, and determined not to wait a moment in Irkutsk and Yakutsk beyond the necessary time, but to proceed immediately to the Frozen Sea, either to share the fortune, good or bad, of the expedition, or, in case of any impediment from jealousy, to withdraw and follow some other plan. The Governor General supplied me with various orders and recommendations for whatever places I should visit."

With this valuable recommendation he hastened forward, attended by a Cossack. At Tomsk, the governor presented him with fifty rubles, a watch, a pair of spectacles, and a few articles of wearing apparel, making part of the effects of which he had been robbed near St. Petersburg. Beyond Tomsk, the route lay through a dreary, woodless waste, where the villages were numerous, but miserable in the extreme, excepting those inhabited by Tartars; and afterward, as the country became more hilly, the roads grew worse, until on approaching Krasnojarsk they were so nearly impassable that he preferred walking. In the government of Irkutsk the road improved, and the country appeared more fertile.

On arriving at Irkutsk, he was received in a flattering manner by the commandant of the navy, and was induced to take up his abode with him. "Having made myself as decent as my limited wardrobe would allow," he continues, "I called on the vice-governor, who made great promises, and exceeded them in performance. Upon quitting his excellency, I made some visits, and delivered my letters of recommendation, made inquiries as to my future movements, and then returned to an elegant dinner with my host, who had invited a party of twenty persons to meet me.

"Next morning, in company with Captain Koutigin, I left the Admiralty House, which is two miles from the city, to view whatever is notable in Irkutsk. Fifteen thousand inhabitants, including three thousand of the military, are said to compose the population. Irkutsk indeed scarcely deserves the name of city, except for its public buildings, which are good; yet, though I confess it is upon the whole a fine town, I could not but feel disappointment from its total want of original plan, as well as its present want of regularity, which must retard its advancement for a long time to come. Tobolsk is certainly its superior in every thing except its situation, and the singularly fine appearance of a few buildings, public and private.

"My stay in Irkutsk was but a week, when, being furnished with a fresh Cossack, and with every assistance I desired to enable me to reach the river Lena, I set out, a little melancholy at parting with such kind

indeed," remarks  
at I hardly knew  
neral, the captain  
on on the river  
arding the north-  
ne his permission  
kind, I instantly  
oment in Irkutsk  
I immediately to  
bad, of the expe-  
to withdraw and  
I me with various  
uld visit."

forward, attended  
with fifty rubles,  
ing apparel, mak-  
r St. Petersburg.  
less waste, where  
treme, excepting  
try became more  
nojarsk they were  
e government of  
more fertile.

ng manner by the  
is abode with him.  
obe would allow,"  
le great promises,  
his excellency, I  
amendation, made  
ned to an elegant  
twenty persons to

n, I left the Admi-  
whatever is notable  
three thousand of  
sk indeed scarcely  
s, which are good ;  
n, I could not but  
plan, as well as its  
ncement for a long  
ry thing except its  
w buildings, public

g furnished with a  
enable me to reach  
ng with such kind

friends. At seven miles I had a last view of the city. The country be-  
came very elevated, and the road lay over hill and dale as far as the fifth  
station. With the exception of some little corn, the land is one uninterru-  
pted pasture. The inhabitants, Russians, are pretty numerous, and  
their villages, though small, occur at frequent intervals. The post-houses  
are good and convenient halting-places.

"I soon reached Vercholensk, a large and populous town, distant one  
hundred and fifty miles from Irkutsk. The road is by dangerous preci-  
pices, and at this place the communication by land ceases, a circumstance  
at which I was not a little rejoiced, longing to be again upon my own  
element. I soon procured a canoe and a couple of hands, who, with the  
Cossack and myself, paddled down the stream. Proceeding day and  
night in my open canoe, I generally made one hundred to one hundred  
and twenty miles each day, and wherever I went, fared well from the  
hospitality of the Russian colonists, as well as from that of my friends at  
Irkutsk, who had provided me, according to the Russian proverb, with  
plenty of *bread and salt*. This simple sounding provision also included  
some fine partridges, a hare, a large piece of roast beef, and a quantity  
of meat pies; not omitting wine and rum. A traveler in Russia, whether  
native or foreigner, on taking leave of his friends previous to his depart-  
ure, uniformly finds at his lodgings all the provisions requisite for his  
journey, with another lodging pointed out at some friend's upon his  
next route, for as long as he pleases. Indeed I have no doubt, as the se-  
quel will justify the assertion, that a man may travel through the Rus-  
sian Empire, as long as his conduct is becoming, without wanting any  
thing—not even horses and money; excepting only the *civilized* parts  
between the capitals.

"Pursuing my voyage, I reached Vittim, which is half way to Ya-  
kutsk, upon the eighth day. Here I was first overtaken by the ice floating  
down the river, yet not so as to incommode me, and I had enjoyed the  
luxury of fine autumnal, though cold, weather. Sometimes the boat  
was so much entangled in the ice, that the poor fellows were compelled  
to strip and track her, up to their waists in water, while the atmosphere  
was twenty-five degrees of Fahrenheit; I could perceive that they suf-  
fered a good deal in consequence, for upon their return to the boat, they  
could not tell which part of their body to restore first to proper anima-  
tion. Their great resort, I invariably found, was to take a mouthful of  
smoke from their pipe—not, however, of tobacco; the greater part at  
least being birch-wood dust, or fine shavings, mixed with a very scanty  
portion of tobacco, the latter article being extremely dear: if to this  
luxury can be added, however small, a drop of brandy, they will cheer-  
fully, and even thankfully, undergo the repetition of the suffering. At  
one of these villages, I resumed my knapsack, and in three days reached  
Olekminsk, the last thirty miles on horseback.

"From Olekminsk to Yakutsk is about four hundred miles, which,  
except the two last stages, I completed in the canoe. It was on the 1st of



October that I left, and the 6th when I arrived. The weather proved very cold, and snow fell heavily; the atmosphere dark, and having every appearance of winter: yet, upon the whole, the season is considered backward, as on the 1st of October the Lena is generally frozen over, and in three weeks more admits of travelers with sledges; but at this time I was enabled to reach within fifty or sixty miles by water, although with some risk and difficulty.

"Yakutsk, although a considerable place of trade, and a great pass for the American Company, is ill built, and more scattered even than Irkutsk, in the most exposed of all bleak situations, on the left bank of the Lena, which is in summer four miles, and winter two miles and a half wide, appearing, as it really is, one of the finest streams in the world, running a course of more than three thousand miles from its source, near Irkutsk, to the Frozen Sea, which it enters by several mouths. There are seven thousand inhabitants in the city, of whom the greater part are Russians, and the rest Yakuti. Half a dozen churches, the remains of an old fortress, a monastery, and some tolerable buildings, give it some decency of appearance, yet I could not help thinking it one of the most dreary-looking places I had seen, though I was in the enjoyment of every comfort, and therefore the less disposed to complain.

"I remained in Yakutsk three weeks, making the needful preparations for my journey during so severe a season of the year. In particular I looked to the nature of my dress, for the accounts of the cold which I should have to encounter were such, that I considered myself exposed to death, without even the satisfaction of expecting to be buried, from the eternal frost that prevails here. Could, however, this feeling be gratified, the satisfaction would be materially increased by the knowledge that the body itself would enter the next world in the same state that it left this; for everywhere to the north of Yakutsk, the earth, two feet and a half below the surface, is perpetually frozen; consequently a carcase buried in it at that depth must remain perpetually the same.

"The way I passed my time at Mr. Minitsky's was sufficiently regular; I rose early, and always went early to bed; occupied, while daylight lasted, with bringing up my journal; then at a game at billiards; afterward at dinner, always on the most excellent fare, with wine, rum, and other delicacies. In the evening, with a party of the natives, male and female, at the house of the chief; the ladies to all appearance dumb, not daring to utter a word, and solely employed in cracking their nuts, a very small species of the cedar-nut, which abounds in such quantities as to be made an article of trade to Okotsk and Kamtchatka. I am not exaggerating, when I say that half a dozen of females will sit down and consume each many hundreds of these nuts, and quit the house without having spoken a word—unless a stolen one, in fear it should be heard. While the ladies are thus cracking their nuts, staring, and listening, and speechless, the gentlemen are employed in drinking rum or rye-brandry punch, as their tastes may dictate. Nor is even good rum a scarce

weather proved  
and having every  
n is considered  
frozen over, and  
at this time I  
e, although with

and a great pass  
tered even than  
the left bank of  
two miles and a  
streams in the  
d miles from its  
nters by several  
ity, of whom the  
dozen churches,  
tolerable build-  
not help thinking  
ugh I was in the  
osed to complain.  
needful prepara-  
e year. In par-  
ounts of the cold  
onsidered myself  
ing to be buried,  
ever, this feeling  
sed by the knowl-  
n the same state  
sk, the earth, two  
; consequently a  
lly the same.

as sufficiently reg-  
upied, while day-  
ame at billiards;  
, with wine, rum,  
the natives, male  
appearance dumb,  
acking their nuts,  
in such quantities  
chatka. I am not  
will sit down and  
the house without  
should be heard.  
and listening, and  
um or rye-brandy  
od rum a scarce

article here, coming as it does by way of Kamtchatka. I was one feast-day on a visit to a respectable old gentleman, one of the council; there were no chairs, but a long table was spread, with fish pies, a piece of roast beef, boiled deers' tongues, and some wild berries in a tart. The first thing presented is a glass of brandy, which I refused, knowing the chief to have sent some good wine; this I was offered, and accepted, when I was told by my friend the chief, that it was not the custom to accept any thing of that kind the first time, but to await the third. Relying upon the chief's better knowledge of the Siberian world, I refused the next glass of wine, which was offered me twice, and need not say I ultimately lost it, probably from the practice of economizing good wine in a place where it can seldom be purchased.

"My dresses completed, and the river having, according to custom, been passed and declared closed, I packed up my knapsack and other baggage, as I was provided also with a couple of bags of black biscuit through the kindness of my host, with a piece of roast beef, a few dried fish, half a dozen pounds of tea, and twenty pounds of sugar-candy, besides fifty pounds of tobacco, and a keg of vodkey (corn-brandy), a most indispensable article on such a journey, whether for my own or others' consumption. I had besides a pipe, flint, steel, and ax, and, what was of most importance, a Cossack companion, who indeed proved invaluable to me. My destination was Nishney Kolymsk, distant about one thousand eight hundred miles, which were to be traveled over in the coldest season of the year, and in what is esteemed the coldest part of the north-east of Asia."

He left Yakutsk on the last day of October, the thermometer being at twenty-nine degrees below zero, and after a wearisome journey of two days, alternately walking and riding, alike to escape the fatigue and the cold, he arrived at the banks of the Aldan, where he thus proceeds with his narrative: "On the 6th of November I crossed the Aldan, and breakfasted at a solitary yourte (at ten miles), completing in the evening thirty miles, where we halted in a cabin about ten feet square. Had it, however, been much worse or smaller, I must have felt thankful, for I had been severely pinched by the effects of the cold and the wind in my face. A good fire, a cup of tea, and a sound slumber, with pleasant dreams, perfectly refreshed me by the ensuing morning. The country had of late been level, but at twenty miles I became enveloped in a lofty chain of mountains, which I had been for some time gradually ascending, and which are called the Toukoulou chain, from the word Touku, which, in the Yakut language, signifies "noisy;" as indeed the river of that name does roar down its precipitous banks. We halted for the night at the foot of a mountainous peak, sheltered from the cold north wind; and as this was the first night which I was to pass in the open air, I shall describe the manner of it, in order that it may be known how far (contrary to my calculations) our situation was susceptible even of comfort.

"The first thing on my arrival was to unload the horses, loosen their saddles or pads, take the bridle out of their mouths, and tie them to a tree in such a manner that they could not eat. The Yakuti then with their axes proceeded to fell timber, while I and the Cossack, with our lopatkas, or wooden spades, cleared away the snow, which was generally a couple of feet deep. We then spread branches of the pine-tree, to fortify us from the damp or cold earth beneath us: a good fire was now soon made, and each bringing a leathern bag from the baggage, furnished himself with a seat. We then put the kettle on the fire, and soon forgot the sufferings of the day. At times the weather was so cold that we were almost obliged to creep into the fire; and as I was much worse off than the rest of the party for warm clothing, I had recourse to every stratagem I could devise to keep my blood in circulation. It was barely possible to keep one side of the body from freezing, while the other might be said to be roasting. Upon the whole, I passed the night tolerably well, although I was obliged to get up five or six times to take a walk or run for the benefit of my feet. While thus employed, I discovered that the Yakuti had drawn the fire from our side to theirs, a trick which I determined to counteract the following night. I should here observe, that it is the custom of the Yakuti to get to leeward of the fire, and then, undressing themselves, put the whole of their clothes as a shelter for the outer sides of their bodies, while the inner side receives a thorough roasting from exposure to the fire; this plan also gives them the benefit of the warmth of their own bodies. The thermometer during the day had ranged from fifteen to twenty-five degrees below zero, according to the elevation of the sun.

"The following day, at thirty miles, we again halted in the snow, when I made a horse-shoe fire, which I found had the effect I desired, of keeping every part of me alike warm, and I actually slept well without any other covering than my clothes thrown over me, whereas before I had only the consolation of knowing that if I was in a freezing state with one half of my body, the other was meanwhile roasting to make amends. On the third night I reached the foot of the mountainous pass which may be said to lead to Northern Siberia. My route had hitherto lain generally on the banks of the Toukoulán, which runs along a picturesque valley on the western range of the mountains, and is well wooded with fir, larch, and alder. Upon reaching thus far, I looked up at what I had yet to perform, and, I confess, felt astonished, not at the height, but how it could be practicable to get up a slippery and almost trackless road. However we commenced, and mainly by preferring the deep snow, as I uniformly did, at last gained the summit, but not without great fatigue; a horse could not carry a person up under a considerable time, and it took me two hours at least. We sat down, my Cossack and I, to gain breath and wait for the Yakuti with the baggage, in the mean time smoking a pipe; but it was too cold to remain; we therefore prepared to descend. As to keeping my feet, however, that was impos-

horses, loosen their  
and tie them to a  
e Yakuti then with  
Cossack, with our  
which was generally  
of the pine-tree, to  
a good fire was now  
the baggage, fur-  
ttle on the fire, and  
weather was so cold  
and as I was much  
g, I had recourse to  
circulation. It was  
freezing, while the  
e, I passed the night  
or six times to take  
thus employed, I dis-  
our side to theirs, a  
ing night. I should  
yet to leeward of the  
e of their clothes as  
the inner side receives  
plan also gives them  
thermometer during  
degrees below zero, ac-

halted in the snow,  
the effect I desired,  
ually slept well with-  
er me, whereas before  
as in a freezing state  
le roasting to make  
the mountainous pass  
My route had hitherto  
ich runs along a pic-  
ins, and is well wood-  
a far, I looked up at  
stonished, not at the  
slippery and almost  
only by preferring the  
summit, but not with-  
up under a consider-  
at down, my Cossack  
the baggage, in the  
remain; we therefore  
ever, that was impos-

sible; I therefore laid down, and slid to the bottom of the most dangerous part, a feat for which I had nearly paid dear, by coming in contact with a horse which had taken the same expeditious mode of descending. The path was so narrow, that one error would have pitched me forever into the abyss of snow beneath; and, although not deep, would have prevented a return, unless I had fortunately fallen with my feet downward; the half-frozen surface of the snow serving in some manner to bring the person up: falling on one side I found very dangerous, unless somebody was near to render assistance. I soon reached what I may term a charity yourte, being erected by the community in general for the accommodation and preservation of travelers. It consists of a twelve feet square room, with a small ante-room which serves as an entry, and may be properly termed a log-house, having no window, unless a large opening in the roof may be so termed."

In this manner they arrived at Baralass in six days by a route leading through magnificent scenery, but a dreary and desolate region, "where," observes Captain Cochrane, "there is not an individual dwelling in the whole extent from Aldan to Baralass, a distance equal to half the length of England." They reached Tabalak on the sixth day from Baralass, a distance of two hundred and thirty miles. "The third day," he writes, "was the coldest I had experienced, the thermometer ranging from thirty to thirty-five degrees below zero, attended with some snow. We passed several habitations of the Yakuti, who invariably offered us a lodging and provision for the day; and always appropriated to me the best berth, which is in that corner of the room under the image, and opposite to the fire.

"At Tabalak I had a pretty good specimen of the appetite of a child, whose age (as I understood from the steersman, who spoke some English and less French) did not exceed five years. I had observed the child crawling on the floor, and scraping up with its thumb the tallow-grease which fell from a lighted candle, and I inquired in surprise whether it proceeded from hunger or liking of the fat. I was told from neither, but simply from the habit in both Yakuti and Tongousi, of eating whenever there is food, and never permitting any thing that can be eaten to be lost. I gave the child a candle made of the most impure tallow, a second, and a third—and all were devoured with avidity. The steersman then gave him several pounds of sour, frozen butter; this also he immediately consumed; lastly, a large piece of yellow soap;—all went the same road; but as I was now convinced that the child would continue to gorge as long as it could receive any thing, I begged my companion to desist as I had done.

"For an instance in confirmation of this, no doubt, extraordinary statement, I shall refer to the voyages of the Russian admiral, Saritcheff. 'No sooner,' he says, 'had they stopped to rest or spend the night, than they had their kettle on the fire, which they never left until they pursued their journey, spending the intervals for rest in eating, and, in

consequence of no sleep, were drowsy all the next day.' The admiral also says, 'That such extraordinary voracity was never attended with any ill effects, although they made a practice of devouring, at one meal, what would have killed any other person. The laborers,' the admiral says, 'had an allowance of four poods, or one hundred and forty-four English pounds of fat, and seventy-two pounds of rye-flour, yet in a fortnight they complained of having nothing to eat. Not crediting the fact, the Yakuti said that one of them was accustomed to consume at home, in the space of a day, or twenty-four hours, the hind-quarter of a large ox, twenty pounds of fat, and a proportionate quantity of melted butter for his drink. The appearance of the man not justifying the assertion, the admiral had a mind to try his gormandizing powers, and for that purpose he had a thick porridge of rice boiled down with three pounds of butter, weighing together twenty-eight pounds, and although the glutton had *already breakfasted*, yet did he sit down to it with great eagerness, and consumed the whole without stirring from the spot; and, except that his stomach betrayed more than an ordinary fullness, he showed no sign of inconvenience or injury, but would have been ready to renew his gluttony the following day.'

After nine days of this toilsome kind of traveling, they at length got clear of the desert of snow, and descended from the hills; then passing along a well-wooded valley to the Indigirka, they entered the town of Zashiversk. "Of all the places I have ever seen, bearing the name of city or town," observes Captain Cochrane, "this is the most dreary and desolate: my blood froze within me as I beheld and approached the place. All that I have seen in passing rocky or snowy sierras or passes in Spain, in traversing the wastes of Canada, or in crossing the Cordilleras or Andes in South America, the Pyrenees, or the Alps, can not be compared with the desolation of the scene around me! The first considerable halting-place from Yakutsk, the half-way house, is nine hundred or one thousand miles removed from a civilized place. Such a spot gives name to a commissariat, and contains seven habitations of the most miserable kind, inhabited severally by two clergymen, each separate, a non-commissioned officer, and a second in command; a postmaster, a merchant, and an old widow. I have, during my service in the navy, and during a period when seamen were scarce, seen a merchant ship with sixteen guns, and only fifteen men, but I never before saw a town with only seven inhabitants.

"On the 23d of December, I quitted the town of Zashiversk, not ungrateful for the hospitality of its poor inhabitants, who had supplied me with plenty of fish, here eaten in a raw state, and which to this hour I remember as the greatest delicacy I have ever tasted. Spite of our prejudices, there is nothing to be compared to the melting of raw fish in the mouth; oysters, clotted cream, or the finest jelly in the world is nothing to it; nor is it only a small quantity that may be eaten of this precious commodity. I myself have finished a whole fish which, in its

day? The admiral never attended with pouring, at one meal, borers, the admiral hundred and forty-four e-flour, yet in a fort- not crediting the fact, to consume at home, d-quarter of a large quantity of melted butter justifying the assertion, powers, and for that with three pounds s, and although the down to it with great y from the spot; and, ordinary fullness, he could have been ready

ing, they at length got the hills; then passing entered the town of bearing the name of the most dreary and and approached the snowy sierras or passes crossing the Cordil- the Alps, can not be d me! The first con- house, is nine hundred ce. Such a spot gives ions of the most miser- each separate, a non- a postmaster, a mer- rvice in the navy, and a merchant ship with before saw a town with

of Zashiversk, not un- who had supplied me d which to this hour I sted. Spite of our prej- the melting of raw fish est jelly in the world is at may be eaten of this whole fish which, in its

frozen state, might have weighed two or three pounds, and, with black biscuit and a glass of rye-brandy, have defied either nature or art to prepare a better meal. It is cut up or shaved into slices with a sharp knife, from head to tail, and thence derives the name of Stroganina. My first day's journey made me better acquainted with the power and use of dogs; water or ice, fish, firewood, travelers and their goods, and every thing, being here drawn by these animals. I continued over a flat country, and lakes communicating with one another by small streams, suffering much at times from the cold, especially in the knees, which, although not sensibly cold, had a feeling of deadness and painful fatigue which I could not account for, till a peddler explained to me, by signs and words, that, if I did not alter my plan, I should certainly lose both my legs above the knees. They appeared indeed a little inflamed, owing, as he said, to the inadequate protection of the knee-joints, which, on horse-back, are more than ordinarily exposed, all the defense they had being a single leather, in sometimes sixty-eight degrees below zero, Fahrenheit. I considered that I was still bound to the northward, and that the extreme of winter had not yet come upon me, and therefore thought it better to accept a pair of souturee (knee-preservers, made of the skins of reindeer's legs), which he very kindly offered. The service they did me is astonishing; from that moment I had less pain and more heat, and became fully satisfied that the extremities are alone to be taken care of."

At length the traveler's eyes became painful from the effects of the snow on the eye-lashes, but he still pushed on over a miserable road, the fatigues of which need not be repeated, and on the eighth day reached Sordak, three hundred and twenty miles from Zashiversk. In the few wretched abodes which they passed on the route, they sometimes found the occupants in a state of starvation. "Having well refreshed ourselves with the flesh of a wolf and a horse, which had the day before fought each other to death," continues the captain, "we departed on the 14th toward the Kolyma. The first night we put up at a yourte, forty miles, encompassed by squalling children, growling and howling dogs, and a scolding and tyrannical hostess. Having procured wood for the night, on the morrow we departed, but not before I had got into a scrape, for hanging my cap and gloves upon the pins which bear the images of worship. The infuriated woman complained to the Cossack of the insult. The Cossack told her I was an English pope, or priest, and that I was privileged; the length of my locks, as well as beard, was proof positive, and thenceforward I was called the English priest.

"On the 19th of December, I reached Sredne Kolymsk. The priest having, with the commissary and principal people of the place, paid me a visit, the former entered my habitation crossing himself, as is customary; then advancing to me, who stood offering him my hand in the English style, I was honored with his blessing, which I acknowledged by an exchange of the compliment. The old gentleman retreated in astonishment, and, demanding who and what I was, my Cossack answered that



I was an English priest; upon which the reverend gentleman observed he was in error, as one priest could not give benediction to another. He then shook hands, and expressed his friendship for me. Another instance of the effects of my beard, and of more value to me, though less to the priests of Siberia, arose from the circumstance of the Yakuti coming to me frequently with the right hand open, and supported by the left, which I interpreted into an asking of alms, and accordingly gave them something to eat. This, however, they evidently declined, and still continued their supplicating posture. My Cossack afterward gave me to understand that I was mistaken, for that they were begging a blessing. I therefore determined to satisfy the next Yakut who appeared during one of my rambles along the river; and when a well-dressed Yakut knez, or prince, demanded my blessing in passing, I gave it to him in the Russian style, as well as to his family. When I left them the prince began to unload a sauma, or leathern bag, and following me, kissed my hand, and insisted upon my accepting a couple of sables; nor could all my entreaties induce him to take them back, that being considered the greatest insult; nor, indeed will any return be received for a religious offering on the spot; afterward, a little tobacco, a knife, or flint and steel, is considered an acceptable present.

On Christmas day he set forward, and after a journey of five days over a flat country, with the temperature at from forty-five to fifty degrees below zero, he arrived at the station called Malone. On the last day he traveled sixty miles, "although," he observes, "I was obliged from the cold to dismount at least twenty or thirty times to take a run for mere self-preservation. At Malone the track for horses is in general finished, though they do sometimes go as far as Nishney Kolymsk, and even to the Frozen Sea, in search of sea-horse and mammoth's tusks. I was now provided with thirteen dogs and a driver, and a vehicle covered over with a sort of frame and oil-cloth, to keep out the cold, as it was thought too great for me to withstand. A bear-skin and warm blanket and pillow were also placed in it, in such a manner that I might lie down, be warm, and sleep at my pleasure. I got in, and it was closed after me; not a breath of air could enter; so that, notwithstanding the intense cold prevailing on the outside, I was obliged to make my escape from the suffocation within, by taking out my knife and cutting a way through to gain fresh air.

"We reached fifty-five miles with the same dogs, and put up for the night at a Yukagir hut. Resumed next morning, with increased cold, though calm weather, and reached Nishney Kolymsk at noon, amid a frost of sixty-two and a half degrees below zero, according to many spirit thermometers of Baron Wrangel's, on the last day of December, 1820, after a most tedious, laborious, and to me perilous, journey of sixty-one days, twenty of which were passed in the snow, without even the comfort of a blanket; nor had I even a second coat, or parka, nor even a second pair of boots, and less clothing than even the guides and

gentleman observed  
on to another. He

Another instance  
though less to the  
e Yakuti coming to  
d by the left, which  
ly gave them some-  
t, and still continued  
ve me to understand  
lessing. I therefore  
d during one of my  
akut knez, or prince,  
n the Russian style,  
nce began to unload  
my hand, and insisted  
my entreaties induce  
greatest insult; nor,  
offering on the spot;  
l, is considered an ac-

journey of five days  
forty-five to fifty de-  
Malone. On the last  
erves, "I was obliged  
y times to take a run  
for horses is in general  
Nishney Kolymak, and  
mammoth's tusks. I  
e, and a vehicle covered  
out the cold, as it was  
kin and warm blanket  
anner that I might lie  
ot in, and it was closed  
t, notwithstanding the  
ged to make my escape  
hife and cutting a way

ogs, and put up for the  
ng, with increased cold,  
olymak at noon, amid a  
ero, according to many  
e last day of December,  
he perilous, journey of  
the snow, without even  
ond coat, or parka, nor  
han even the guides and

attendants of the poorest class. I met, at Nishney Kolymak, the Baron Wrangel, and his companion, Mr. Matiushkin, a midshipman. It was the last day of the old year, and in the present enjoyment of a moderate meal, a hearty welcome, and excellent friends, I soon forgot the past, and felt little concern for the future. Quarters were appropriated me in the baron's own house; and with him, on the shores of the Frozen Sea, I enjoyed health and every comfort I could desire.

"On the morning after my arrival at Nishney Kolymak, and while at breakfast I received, as a new year's gift, a couple of large fish in a frozen state, weighing each five or six poods, or about two hundred pounds weight. I inquired for what they were intended, and learned, that I could not be supposed to have brought fish with me for subsistence; and that, as the season had already passed for laying in a stock, the inhabitants of course knew that I must be in want. During the forenoon I also received a parka, or leather frock, to be worn during my stay in the Kolyma. It was a handsome one, mounted with sables and martins. To these were added trowsers, cap, boots, and leather hose; in short, every article of dress that could be desired, and sufficient to have served me at least a twelvemonth. Besides these articles, I was also provided with a bear's skin for a bed, and a leather covering for a blanket, lined with hare's skins.

"Baron Wrangel's expedition I found in a state of much forwardness, great exertions having been used in collecting dogs and drivers, and provisions, as well as in making new nartes, or sledges. I learned that it would depart from the Kolyma in the month of March, in two divisions—one having for its object the solution of the question regarding the latitude and longitude of the north-east cape of Asia; and the other, a journey due north from the mouth of the Kolyma, in search of a real or supposed continent, or rather the continuation of Asia to where it was imagined by some to join the continent of America. I did not hesitate to volunteer my services; but in consequence of my being a foreigner, I found my services could not be accepted without special permission from the government. I therefore made up my mind to set out for the fair of the Tchukchi, and to try my fortune in getting a passage through their country, and so to cross over Behring's Straits for America.

"Nishney Kolymak may be termed a large town in this part of the world, containing, as it does, near fifty dwellings and about four hundred people (or eighty families), which is three times the number of any place betwixt it and Yakutsk. No cultivation can of course be expected in a climate wherein scarcely a blade of grass is to be seen; the horses, which do sometimes tarry in its vicinity for a few days, feeding upon the tops, stumps, and bark of the bushes, or upon the moss. The inhabitants manage, notwithstanding, with great labor to feed a couple of cows; though to do this they are obliged to bring the hay eighty miles."

The town and district of Kolyma are subject to the ravages of many

diseases, such as leprosy, apoplexy, scurvy, and others, which the captain enumerates, and then proceeds as follows: "The complaints called *diable au corps*, and *imerachism*, must also be specified; the former is a most extraordinary one, and consists in an idea that the body of the patient is possessed with one or more devils, attended with incessant hiccoughs. The parties afflicted with it are generally most delicate and interesting in their appearance; and it is seldom indeed that any individual is cured. In females it prevails to such an extent as utterly to prevent pregnancy. I have seen them hiccough to so great an extent, as to induce me to strike them on the upper part of the spine, in the hope of relieving them from the pain by a surprise of the moment. They persist in believing that a devil is in the body of the person afflicted, and that, until he be removed, the person will never regain health. The complaint, whatever it may be, the natives consider as an inheritance from their fathers. Imerachism, to which not only the people of the Kolyma, but those also of more southern countries are subject, is equally unaccountable. Instead of exciting serious fits, like the last-mentioned disorder, it carries with it an air of merriment, as it by no means affects the health of the person, though it subjects him to the most violent paroxysms of rage, fear, and mortification. Whatever is said or done in the presence of an *imerach*, will be repeated by him at the moment, however indecorous, improper, or violent the act may be. I have seen the dog-master of Baron Wrangel's expedition commit acts sufficient to frighten the person in company with him. While in an adjoining room conversing on points of duty, a slight knock at the bulkhead was sufficient to set him pummelling the person with him merely from a principle of self-defense. Of this same dog-master, by the way, a highly amusing anecdote is related, and which was confirmed to me, not only by himself personally, but also by Mr. Gedenstrom, of Irkutsk, who commanded the expedition. The theater was the Frozen Ocean, and the *imerach's* dogs and narte were the headmost. One forenoon they encountered a large white bear; the dogs immediately started toward the animal, and the driver, being the dog-master of whom I am speaking, steadfastly kept his place, prudently remaining by those who only could assist him. In the eagerness of the dogs, sharpened probably by hunger, they became entangled with one another, and were almost rendered useless. The driver seeing the state to which he was reduced, resolved to attack the bear with his *ostol* (a stout ironed stick with small bells, which serves to stop the narte), and accordingly presented himself to the enraged bear, who immediately raised himself upon the hind legs, and began to cry and roar most bitterly; the *imerach* followed his example. The bear then began to dance, and the driver did the same, till at length the other nartes coming up, the bear received a blow upon the nose and was secured. Two old ladies in Kamchatka, one, the mother of a Mr. Tallman, an American, who had married a Russian girl, the other, the wife of a Russian, who were both afflicted with the disease,

which the captain  
complaints called  
the former is a  
body of the pa-  
th incessant his-  
most delicate and  
ed that any indi-  
cent as utterly to  
great an extent,  
the spine, in the  
of the moment,  
the person afflict-  
ver regain health.  
sider as an inherit-  
ly the people of  
ries are subject, is  
fits, like the last-  
riment, as it by no  
subjects him to the  
ion. Whatever is  
repeated by him at  
nt the act may be.  
dition commit acts  
n. While in an ad-  
t knock at the bulk-  
on with him merely  
master, by the way,  
is confirmed to me,  
enstrom, of Irkutsk,  
the Frozen Ocean,  
ost. One forenoon  
immediately started  
aster of whom I am  
aining by those who  
sharpened probably  
er, and were almost  
hich he was reduced,  
oned stick with small  
gly presented himself  
lf upon the hind legs,  
each followed his ex-  
ver did the same, till  
lived a blow upon the  
atka, one, the mother  
d a Russian girl, the  
ted with the disease,

were sitting at tea opposite to one another, when Mr. Tallman, in a gentle manner, put his hands behind their backs, propelling the old ladies toward each other, upon which they instantly exchanged tea-cups and saucers, while the really offending party stood enjoying the mischief."

Captain Cochrane remained at Lower Kolyma during the months of January and February. The weather was exceedingly cold. Meanwhile the preparations for the expedition were completed, and Baron Wrangel and his party set out on the 27th of February. On the 4th of March, the Captain left the Kolyma on a visit to the Tchuktchi. He traveled in company with Mr. Matiushkin, the midshipman, and some merchants, whose nartes were loaded with tobacco and iron utensils for the fair of the Tchuktchi, to be held at the fortress of Ostrovnaya. The weather was fine, being but twenty-five degrees below zero. On the 8th they reached the fortress, situated on the Aniuy, one hundred and fifty miles from the Kolyma.

"Having settled ourselves in a small Yukagir yourte," continues the captain, "Mr. Matiushkin and I received a visit from one of the Tchuktchi, a most empty countenanced and wild looking savage. He entered the room where we were, tumbled himself down upon a stool, smoked his pipe, and then quitted the room, without once looking at, or taking the least notice, either of us or any thing about us. The commissary having made his appearance, it was determined to commence the fair, by first installing two of the chiefs with medals and swords, baptizing them, and receiving a nominal tribute. The morning was ushered in by the arrival of these persons in state, dressed in their gayest apparel, and seated in a beautiful narte drawn by two rein-deer, the whole forming a cayalcade of twenty-five or thirty pairs. Having reached a large storehouse, to which the altar and images were carried, the priest proceeded to baptize the two men, their wives, and three children; but instead of being merely sprinkled with water, they, men and women, were obliged one and all to strip, and to be three times plunged into a large iron caldron of ice-water, with the thermometer on the spot at forty-seven degrees below zero, with no part of their dress on except their trowsers; and were afterward directed to bathe their feet in the same cold water. I could not help pitying the women and children, the former of whom, having long hair, became, as it were, enveloped in icicles. A small cross suspended round the neck, with many difficult and almost useless injunctions how to pronounce their newly-acquired names, completed the ceremony. A quantity of tobacco was then given as a present to each of the new converts, by way of inducing others to follow the example.

"I next day visited their camp, distant about two miles and a half. It consisted of three large and three small tents. The former contained the bulk of the Tchukskoi people, and the latter were appropriated to the chiefs and more considerable people. The large tents were disgustingly dirty and offensive, exhibiting every species of grossness and in-

delicacy. But the smaller were, on the contrary, very neat, clean, and warm, although without a fire, at forty-seven degrees below zero. Indeed they were to me almost suffocating, being only eight feet long, five broad, and about three feet high; and containing three or four people huddled together in one bed, which is made of rein-deer skins, and the coverings lined with white foxes'. The small tents are made also of the old and hard skins doubled, so that the hair is both on the inside and out; a large lamp, with whale oil or fat, which serves them for a light, communicates also considerable warmth. On entering one of these small dwellings, I found the chief and his wife perfectly naked, as was also a little girl, their daughter, of about nine years old—nor did they seem to regard our presence (Mr. Matiushkin was with me), but ordered the daughter to proceed and prepare some rein-deer's meat for us, which she did, in that state of nudity, by a fire close to the tent. Having lolled upon the bed about a quarter of an hour, we were treated with the rein-deer meat half boiled, of which we of course partook of our complement. I was, however, obliged to cut short my visit, from want of air and the most offensive smell I had ever endured for so long a time.

"The toion, or chief, was a little angry with me for quitting him, and imputed it to his having the previous day opposed my design of going through his country. Their furniture consists of a large kettle, knife, wooden bowls, platters, spoons or ladles, and an ax, with flint and steel. Having thus informed myself of the savage state in which they live, I returned to the fortress, driven by one of the chiefs in a neat narte, drawn by a couple of rein-deer in a pretty style. They use regular reins, made of leather thongs, and a long springing cane with an ivory knob to it, of the tooth of a sea-horse; the latter is exercised occasionally upon the rump of the animal, on which it is capable of inflicting a pretty severe blow. I must, however, do justice to the Tehuktehi for their very kind treatment and conduct to their brutes, whether dogs or rein-deer—appearing quite to consider them as pets. Nay, to so great a degree is this feeling carried, that among this savage nation it is considered unmanly even to ride; in all ordinary cases they prefer to walk, and in every other way appear solicitous to lessen the labor of the animal, permitting only the women and children to sit in the nartes when upon a journey. The persons of the Tehuktehi are not peculiarly large, though their dress, which is clean but of enormous size, gives them almost a gigantic appearance. They have fair or clear skins, but ordinary though masculine features. In conduct they are wild and rude. They have no diseases, and live to a great age; two of the chiefs at the fair being past seventy, as calculated by the number of voyages they had made ere they accompanied Captain Billings."

The fair at length finished, Captain Cochrane prepared to depart for Nishney Kolyma. "My return to the Kolyma," he writes, "occupied me only two days, partly from the lightness of the carriage, and partly from the hunger of the dogs, there being little or none of their

neat, clean, and below zero. In eight feet long, three or four people-deer skins, and are made also of on the inside and them for a light, one of these small ed, as was also a did they seem to but ordered the t for us, which she t. Having lolled ated with the rein- of our complement. ant of air and the time.

for quitting him, posed my design of s of a large kettle, n ax, with flint and state in which they he chiefs in a neat le. They use regu- ging cane with an er is exercised occa- capable of inflicting to the Tehuktehi for es, whether dogs or s. Nay, to so great age nation it is con- they prefer to walk, the labor of the ani- t in the nartes when not peculiarly large, ous size, gives them lear skins, but ordin- are wild and rude. o of the chiefs at the r of voyages they had

prepared to depart ma," he writes, "oc- ss of the carriage, and ttle or none of their

common food offering for sale on the banks of the Aniuy. I was most happy to meet with the Baron Wrangel, who had returned from his expedition around Skelatskoi Noss."

Captain Cochrane now prepared for the journey to Okotsk. He had attempted to persuade the Tehuktehi to convey him through their country, but failing in this, he resolved to proceed by the direct route, which was most difficult and dangerous, rather than retrace his steps a long distance, and follow a monotonous road by the more circuitous one. The commissary, Cossacks, and Yakuti, who were ordered to attend him, all remonstrated; the latter were so fearful of a journey of the kind that they even attempted to bribe him by presents to take another, but the captain was resolute. "To me," he remarks, "the hardest day's work was followed by the happiest evening and the soundest sleep as I lay down on my snow pillow."

He left Lower Kolymsk on the 27th of March in a narte drawn by thirteen dogs, who took him eighty miles a day, and on the fifth day he arrived at Sredne, or Middle Kolymsk. Here he remained two days awaiting a fresh Cossack, who was to attend him to Okotsk. "I felt most happy," he observes, "in preparing once more to tread a new road, and throw aside the difficulties which were forever thundered in my ears." Finally they set out; on the second day they were thrown into a snow pit, and the horses becoming disengaged from their burthens, scrambled up the pit, leaving the travelers and baggage to shift for themselves. After ten miles' walk they reached a yourte, whose owner sent for the baggage, the Yakuti having gone for the horses.

At Verchne (Upper) Kolymsk he left the Kolyma, and at length reaching the Zyzanka, pursued his route through the defiles of a mountainous region. The party subsisted on partridges and hares found in traps by the wayside. "We at length entered upon the Hokusolbetie and Bochiera, two rivers, which, entering the Zyzanka at a narrow defile, form a sort of frozen torrent, over which the horses had great difficulty to pass, as piles of ice lay in every cross direction. The Cossack and guide now began also to suffer, while I was gaining ground from habit and superior strength of constitution. The guide was almost blind, while the Cossack was afflicted with a severe diarrhœa arising from want of food, for our game had failed us, and he was too much a Greek to eat horse-meat. It was, however, his own fault, for he always ate voraciously whenever an occasion offered.

"The snow was deep but soft, the noon-day heat melting the surface, and the night's frost again freezing it, just sufficiently to bear a man with snow-shoes; so that, in addition to our other difficulties, the horses began to fail. We nevertheless continued our route, gaining the Zyzanka, and laterally crossing the mountains which confine it. We then entered the most dismal, dreary, and inhospitable valley I have ever seen; not a blade of grass, nor moss, not a shrub, tree, nor even a morsel of drift wood, to be seen, but one tremendous slate mountain



valley. We encamped on the banks of the stream, firing upon our frozen horse-flesh and a little biscuit; our stock of spirits was all consumed, and I longed to reach some habitation. My poor Cossack now grew worse, having been three days without food, and so weak that it was necessary to lash him to the horse. The guide was almost blind, being unable even to bring the horses in from the pasture. I was thus compelled to perform the functions of ostler, wood-cutter, guide, doctor, cook, and traveler; regretting only the necessity that compelled me so to act, for otherwise I took so little heed of it, that I slept the sounder.

"I remained at a miserable yourte five days, to see what I could do in restoring the Cossack, but in vain, and departed with a Yakut, six feet high, and stout in proportion, the largest I have ever seen. He was, however, a mere brute, not knowing a word of the Russian language, a great glutton, stupid, obstinate, and immovably lazy. On the fifth day after starting again we ascended a stupendous path, which overlooks not only the surrounding country but also the other mountains; it is almost a bare rock, and was so slippery that the horses got very severe falls in the ascent, rolling back in one moment as much as it had taken ten minutes labor to achieve. I almost despaired of gaining the summit, but we at length succeeded, and then the horses actually slid down the opposite precipice of one hundred feet high, the rock being covered with frozen snow. For myself I considered it, as it really was, an ice mountain, and desiring the guide to follow, passed down without any accident. I was now indeed in a desperate dilemma; but Providence, which ever watches the wants of all creatures, sent to my assistance the sick Cossack, who, having got better, and being without baggage, had followed our track with a couple of horses. He came in time also to tell us that we had mistaken the route. His duty pointing out the necessity of seeing me safe to Okotsk, I did not feel so thankful as I else should, because I suspected that most of his illness was pretended, and that conscience had told him he was acting wrong, or he might not have returned, having already received permission from me to proceed to the Kolyma.

"We passed the night in a dreary situation, without any fire. My tea and bread were both consumed; nothing in short remained but horseflesh, which I found very good. The Cossack had brought a few birds, but as I knew that such dainties were all he could, or would eat, of course I gave them up to him. Next day we considered how to ascend the mountain; the snow was solid and slippery, and there appeared no other mode than the one which we adopted—creeping up the side, and chopping the surface with a hatchet, at frequent intervals, to obtain some sort of footing. In this manner I and the Cossack ascended, and making all the leather thongs fast together, we hauled up the baggage and let it down on the opposite side; thus placing ourselves between it and the horses. To get up the latter required more management; for,

firing upon our  
rits was all con-  
poor Cossack now  
d so weak that it  
was almost blind,  
pasture. I was  
wood-cutter, guide,  
ity that compelled  
it, that I slept the

ee what I could do  
with a Yakut, six  
ve ever seen. He  
of the Russian lan-  
vably lazy. On the  
endous path, which  
o the other mount-  
that the horses got  
moment as much as  
despaired of gaining  
the horses actually  
t high, the rock being  
ed it, as it really was,  
passed down without  
dilemma; but Provi-  
res, sent to my assist-  
d being without bag-  
ses. He came in time  
He duty pointing out  
ot feel so thankful as  
illness was pretended,  
rong, or he might not  
a from me to proceed

without any fire. My  
in short remained but  
ck had brought a few  
he could, or would eat,  
considered how to as-  
ery, and there appeared  
-creeping up the side,  
uent intervals, to obtain  
e Cossack ascended, and  
hailed up the baggage  
ng ourselves between it  
more management; for,

accustomed as the horses are to the most laborious and dangerous jour-  
neys, and with all their sagacity and tameness, I found they could not  
ascend above half the mountain, the fatigue was too great; in short,  
they were compelled to give it up, and recoil once more to the base in  
a state of perfect agony. Thus passed the day! Our situation now  
seemed desperate; the horses had received no food for two days, with  
more than ordinary hard work, during which we had enjoyed no fire;  
yet still "neboice avoce lebo" (fear not—perhaps) were the rallying  
words, and these alone served us for supper. Our monster of a guide  
was quite insensible to our situation, and sat grumbling that he had not  
more than twenty pounds of meat a day, with such hard work.

"This night was passed even more miserably than the last, as we had  
not even the benefit of our bedding or clothing, both of which had been  
hurled down the opposite valley, without respect to whom they belonged.  
We rose the third morning, prepared for hard work; and our first at-  
tempt was to haul the horses up the precipice. We in part succeeded,  
as the strongest were actually received, and cast adrift on the opposite  
side to feed. This occupied us all day, and the third night was passed  
with the cheering hopes of resuming our journey the following day;  
but these were frustrated, as it was not until late in the evening that  
we succeeded in passing all the horses we designed to keep; one we  
were obliged to kill and carry with us as food. Our bully-headed Yakut,  
too, became wonderfully alert on this occasion, knowing he should re-  
ceive an extra allowance of meat, were it for no other reason than to  
lighten the other brutes. I, however, determined to make some reserve,  
and accordingly taking a quantity of the slaughtered animal, sufficient  
to serve the Yakut on his return, I buried it in the snow, which I thought  
would continue unmelted for ten or twelve days, and marked the place  
with a cross. This precaution I considered was more than ordinarily  
necessary with my gigantic companion, who had infinitely less concern  
toward the prevention of future starvation than to the support of pres-  
ent gluttony.

"The only mode of passing the last three horses was by making a  
regular staircase up the hill, by means of axes, and strewing it with  
earth; myself and the Cossack, who were on the hill, holding a rope  
attached to the horse's head, while the guide behind, whose task it was  
to flog the beast, had no sinecure, as from his immoderate size he was  
almost himself incapable of moving. The result of the last five days was  
that we had lost five days' traveling, five days of the best season, and  
five days which were worth fifty of those which followed: the fault was  
not mine! The weather was still very cold, and I felt some relief in  
getting close to a cheerful fire. Next day I directed my course by a  
compass, for the guide knew nothing about west-south-west, intending,  
if possible, to gain the river Indigirka."

By continual exertions, walking, wading across streams, and some-  
times swimming the rapid currents of rivers, he at length reached the

Omekon district, where he again entered an inhabited region. "We were now," he observes, "renewed with fresh courage, and my Cossack particularly inspirited with a regale of beef which had been given him at the first yourte. For myself I preferred to partake of the old horse-meat I had still left; having a mind to shame the Cossack and show him that he ought to eat any thing when necessity dictated. I had passed twelve days without any other food than the horse-meat we had brought, generally eaten in a raw state, and a small part of the animal we had killed; yet I was never in better health. I remained three days at the Omekon, and was again obliged to leave my Cossack, from ill health and fatigue. Having procured in his stead a young lad, born in the valley of Omekon, with him, and four of the native princes in my train, I departed along the banks of the river."

Following this stream to its confluence with the Indigirka, he then crossed the mountains to the country watered by the Tourrourak, and halted at the last yourte in the government of Yakutsk. Here he applied to a prince of the wandering Tongousi, for reindeer and further assistance on his journey. After some delay the prince finally consented to take him, and on the third day they set out with fifty head of reindeer. They made good progress for a few days, but at length the reindeer began to lag and droop, the weather became bad, and the prince having lost several of his animals, threatened to leave the captain or carry him back. To this the latter was not disposed to submit. They had reached an elevated pass in the mountains, leading to the vicinity of Indgiga, but were unable to cross it, owing to the state of the snow. On the sixth day they renewed the attempt, but were obliged to give it up, three laden reindeer being dead and the rest too weak to convey the carcasses or the baggage. They remained three days to recruit the reindeer, and then resolved to return to the Omekon and attempt the long passage with horses. The prince now complained that he had not force sufficient to carry the baggage, and Captain Cochrane was obliged to destroy the greater part of it. When the Tongousian saw what he was about, he remonstrated, asking why he did not give the things to him. As it was evident, however, that the prince had been duping him, and, as he thought, compelling him to forsake his baggage, the captain reluctantly persisted in burning his clothing and bedding, in spite of the violent demonstrations of the latter, who brought forward the image of the virgin and his patron saint, and spit, swore, stamped, and crossed himself like a madman. At length he told the captain it had been previously arranged that the latter should return to the Omekon, to which place he actually returned on the eighteenth day, recrossing the Tourrourak and Boulabot rivers with much difficulty.

Procuring fresh horses the captain again left the Omekon. The snow was now softened by heavy rains, but was still so deep as to impede their progress and to deprive the horses of their accustomed nourishment. "The Yakuti," says the captain, "put on long faces at the ob-

structions we met with, never having witnessed such deep and difficult roads, for in ordinary times good pasturage is to be had in this part of the valley. The horses having to contend with such difficulties, our journey was continued on foot. My snow-shoes I gave up to one of the guides, in consideration of his being very heavy, while, for myself, with a quick motion, my weight was not sufficient to permit my sinking in the snow;—in case I had, the guide with snow-shoes was near to render me assistance. We were now frequently compelled to wander about on the borders of precipices, directing our route by the shade or appearance of the snow; habit having accustomed me, as well as the people of the country, to a pretty accurate calculation whether or not the snow would bear me. I have even seen the horses refuse to proceed, their sagacity in that case being equal to man's; nor will the leading dog of a narte, if he is good, run the vehicle into a track where there is deep snow or water.

"At length, by great labor, we reached the fording-place at the Okota. It was, however, impossible to attempt it, the guides observing that the horses might pass the river, but not loaded. We therefore halted, and next morning found a place where there was a canoe on the opposite bank. Thereupon unloading the horses, we turned them into the river, and they all reached the opposite bank in safety. The question then was how to get the canoe over; I was the only person who could swim, but the water was still so cold that I felt no preference to that mode. Necessity at last compelled me, and having procured a short stout piece of drift wood, which was very buoyant, I crossed at a narrow part of the stream, with a leather thong fast to my waist. The rapidity of the stream carried me down above a hundred yards, but the Yakuti, keeping, by a sort of run, in a parallel line, were ready to haul me back, if necessary. I, however, reached in safety; and, instantly throwing off my clothes, took violent exercise. The breadth of the swimming part might only have been fifteen or twenty yards, and across the strength of the stream possibly not more than four or five yards; yet I barely accomplished it. The feat was thankfully acknowledged by the astonished Yakuti when I returned with an excellent canoe."

The Okota was so much swollen by the rains, that the Captain left a Yakut with the horses, and decided to take to the water. "To starve on one side of the river, be drowned in it, or die upon the other side, appeared alike to me," he says, "and I accordingly embarked our little baggage upon the raft, composed of ten logs of trees about fifteen feet long, crossed by five others, and again crossed by two more, to form a seat for the person taking charge of the baggage, which was lashed to the raft.

"It was with difficulty we moved our vessel into the main channel, from the number of eddies; but having once reached it, we descended in a most astonishing manner, sometimes actually making the head giddy as we passed the branches of trees, rocks, or islands. No accident hap-

pening, and the river widening, I began to congratulate my companions on the probability of breakfasting the next day in Okotsk; but as yet I had not got upon the proper side of the stream, the islands and shoals perpetually turning us off. The Cossack and Yakut continued in a state of alarm, not entirely without cause, for upon rounding a point of land, we observed a large tree jutting into the river, with a tremendous and rapid surf running over it, the branches of the tree preventing the raft from passing over the body of it, which was so deep in the water as to preclude a hope of escaping with life—it was at least impossible to avoid being wrecked. The Cossack and Yakut crossed themselves, while I was quietly awaiting the result in the bow. We struck, and such was the force of the rebound, that I was in hopes we should have been thrown outside the shaft in the subsequent approach. I was, however, disappointed, for the forepart of the raft was actually sucked under the tree, and the afterpart rose so high out of the water, that it completely turned over, bringing the baggage under water; the whole then, with the Yakut and Cossack, proceeded down the stream, and fortunately brought up upon an island about one hundred yards below. In the mean while my situation was dangerous; being in the bow, I could not hold on the raft as my companions had been able to do, for fear of being jammed in between the raft and the tree. I therefore quitted my hold, and, with infinite difficulty, clung to the outer branches on the rapid side of the tree; my body was sucked under, and no part of me was out of the water but my head and arms. I could not long remain in such a state; and making, therefore, one vigorous effort, on the success of which it was clear my life depended, I gained the top of the tree. I was throwing off my upper parka, when the branch gave way, and I dropped down, half drowning, to the island. It was a fortunate circumstance that the raft upset, as otherwise it could not have brought up at the island; which it did in consequence of the baggage lashed to the raft being so deep in the water.

Our situation, notwithstanding, upon the island, was by no means pleasant. On either side of us was a rapid channel, and I was as far as ever from accomplishing the object I had in view; which was that of getting upon the right bank of the river; for then I might expect to reach some habitation, there being none upon the left bank nearer than six hundred miles, half way to Idgiga. My first care was to change my wet clothes, and warm myself by exercise; the next was to unlash and land the baggage, and to save as much of the raft as possible, our deliverance depending upon it. By hard work we accomplished it ere the sun had set; after which it soon began to be very cold. The appearance of the night was unfavorable, as it foreboded rain; it would therefore have been highly indiscreet to remain longer than necessary; as the river might, in one night, so increase as to cover the island.

To launch a raft into the channel I could not attempt, as by that time it would be dark, and we should certainly meet with the same accident, and probably worse results. I therefore walked toward the end

my companions  
tsk; but as yet I  
lands and shoals  
continued in a state  
g a point of land,  
tremendous and  
reventing the raft  
n the water as to  
possible to avoid  
emselves, while I  
uck, and such was  
have been thrown  
s, however, disap-  
ed under the tree,  
completely turned  
le then, with the  
ortunately brought  
In the mean while  
d not hold on the  
f being jammed in  
hold, and, with in-  
id side of the tree;  
ut of the water but  
a state; and mak-  
which it was clear  
s throwing off my  
d down, half drown-  
hat the raft upset,  
nd; which it did in  
o deep in the water.  
was by no means  
and I was as far as  
which was that of  
I might expect to  
t bank nearer than  
e was to change my  
t was to unleash and  
s possible, our deliv-  
mplished it ere the  
ld. The appearance  
it would therefore  
cessary; as the river  
d.

attempt, as by that  
et with the same ac-  
ked toward the end

of the island, till I came opposite to a large tree which had fallen from the continent nearly half way across the narrowest part of the channel, which might be about fifty or sixty feet. To swim through the central part of it was impossible; but it appeared to me probable, with the help of nautical ingenuity, to save not only ourselves, but also the baggage; and this I accomplished in a true sailor-like fashion."

He constructed a floating bridge from the timbers of the raft, by first fastening some of the pieces to the shore, and securing the outer ends against the current by means of lines fastened up the stream, then lashing other pieces to the ends of these and securing them in the same manner, until the third course rested against the tree. Over this rude structure he passed in safety, followed by the Cossack, but the Yakut would not venture. The captain then returned, and making a raft of the bridge, ferried over the Yakut, baggage, and lastly himself, assisted by the Cossack with a line from the opposite shore. On the last passage the raft upset, and the captain was pulled ashore with his clothes surrounding him in a casing of ice.

A fire was now kindled, but the height of the grass and the dryness of the wood was such that the whole forest was soon enveloped in flame, and they were obliged to work hard to prevent it from being fatal to them. The great fire induced the other guide to swim the horses across to their relief. All were now reunited, and after spending the night in drying their clothes, they resumed the journey next morning. This was the third day without food, and on the sixth, with little else than berries to keep their spirits up, they arrived at the habitation of a Yakut prince, upon an island in the Okota. "My host," says the captain, "was neither civil nor hospitable; but by a sort of force I got some horse-meat from him, and which I considered, at that time, a great delicacy, added to some bread which I procured from the sailors and carpenters employed in felling timber for the dock-yard of Okotsk.

"Fresh horses were given to me at this station, and I proceeded on to Okotsk. The route lay through some fine park-like scenery, and then over a thick sandy forest of tall pine-trees; the weather was most unfavorable, as it rained hard. At length I reached the eastern sea-coast, that is, the North Pacific Ocean, and was compelled to halt at a miserable hut, affording scarcely a shelter from the elements. The following morning, to assist the Yakuti, who begged of me to leave their horses in the pasture, I paddled along the stream to the old town of Okotsk; and calling on the police-master, was by him, in the government boat, carried over, with all the formality and respect due to my rank, to the abode of the chief of Okotsk, Vladimir Ushinsky."

It was on the 19th of June, 1821, that Captain Cochrane arrived at Okotsk. His object in undertaking this long and painful journey, had been first to ascertain the situation of Skelatskoi Noss, then to trace the American continent as far as possible to the north-east. But the first problem being solved by Baron Wrangel's expedition, and a fleet hav-



ing already gone to America, he accordingly gave up his design and resolved to retrace his steps to Europe, after spending a winter in Kamtchatka. He embarked on the 24th of August, and in two weeks arrived in the harbor of Petropaulovsk. While in Kamtchatka he married a native, and after a stay of eleven months, during which he made the circuit of the peninsula, he embarked with his wife for Okotsk, on the 5th of July, 1822, on his homeward journey.

After a toilsome return journey he reached Irkutsk in the beginning of December, and remained there until the 7th of January, when he set out on an excursion along the Chinese frontier. He was absent a month on this journey, and on the 11th of February took his departure from Irkutsk. His homeward route was over the same ground which he had traversed on his outward journey, and was marked by few adventures. "Descending the western branch of the Ural Mountains," he says, "I soon found myself again in Europe: the land of malt, the fire-side home, again had charms for the traveler. The sensations I experienced upon quitting the most favored quarter of the globe, were nothing when compared to the present. Then I thought I was going only to the abode of misery, vice, and cruelty, while now I knew I had come from that of humanity, hospitality, and kindness. I looked back to the hills, which are, as it were, the barrier between virtue and vice, but felt, in spite of it, a desire to return and end my days. And so strong is still that desire, that I should not hesitate to bid adieu to politics, war, and other refined pursuits, to enjoy in Central Siberia those comforts which may be had without fear of foreign or domestic disturbance.

"At length I arrived safely in St. Petersburg, from which I had been absent exactly three years and three weeks, and to which I had returned in infinitely better health than when I left it."

ERIA.

his design and  
winter in Kamt-  
two weeks ar-  
atka he married  
ch he made the  
Okotsk, on the

n the beginning  
ry, when he set  
absent a month  
departure from  
ad which he had  
few adventures.  
ins," he says, "I  
e fire-side home,  
experienced upon  
thing when com-  
r to the abode of  
me from that of  
the hills, which  
t felt, in spite of  
g is still that de-  
s, war, and other  
aforts which may

om which I had  
to which I had

## GOLOWNIN'S

### CAPTIVITY IN JAPAN.

CAPTAIN WASSILI GOLOWNIN, while commanding the Russian sloop-of-war *Diana*, lying in the harbor of Petropaulovsk, in Kamtehatka, received an order from the Russian Minister of Marine, directing him to make a minute survey of the Southern Kurile Islands and the coast of Tartary, from latitude 53° 38' north, to Okotsk. He accordingly sailed on the 4th of May, 1811, and after a voyage of ten days reached Nadeshda Straits, between two of the Kurile Islands, where his surveys were to commence. He had determined, on approaching the northern shore of the Japanese island of Jesso, to hold no intercourse with the Japanese, fearful that any such attempt might excite suspicion and distrust. The Chamberlain Resanoff, who was sent to Japan by the Emperor Alexander in the year 1803, had been obliged to return unsuccessful, and out of a silly revenge for this repulse, Lieutenant Chwostoff, who commanded the vessel in which Resanoff was taken from Nagasaki to Okotsk, attacked and destroyed several villages in the Japanese Kurile Islands. This wanton outrage had provoked the hostility of the Japanese government, and Captain Golownin therefore felt the necessity of caution in approaching the coast.

On the 17th of June his vessel reached the Kurile island of Eetoo-roop, where he accidentally fell in with some Japanese, to the chief of whom he explained that his intentions were entirely pacific, as he was merely looking for a safe harbor where he might procure a supply of wood and water. To this assurance, the officer replied: "The Japanese can not be entirely tranquil and free from apprehension on the appearance of a Russian ship, for some years ago Russian vessels twice attacked Japanese villages, and carried off or burnt every thing they found, without sparing the houses, temples, or provisions. Rice, which is brought from Japan to these islands, forms the principal food of the inhabitants: but the first attack having taken place late in autumn, when no vessels could be sent to sea to bring back a fresh supply for winter, and the second having followed early in spring, before the usual rice ships could

arrive, these circumstances, joined to the destruction of their houses, caused great distress to the Japanese, many of whom fell sacrifices to hunger and cold." With such awkward interpreters as the Kuriles, it was not an easy matter for Captain Golownin to vindicate himself against so serious a charge, but he finally succeeded, as he supposed, in convincing the Japanese that Chwostoff's proceedings were entirely unauthorized by the Russian government.

"While I was conversing with the chief on the shore," says Golownin, "an old man advanced toward me with demonstrations of the greatest respect. He was a Toion, or chief of the hairy Kuriles of this part of the island, of whom there were here about fifty individuals of both sexes; and they seemed to be so oppressed by the Japanese, that they dared not move in their presence. They all sat crowded together, regarding their rulers with looks of terror; and whenever they had occasion to speak to them, they threw themselves upon their knees, with their open hands pressed closely upon their sides, their heads hanging downward, and their whole bodies bowed to the ground. Our Kuriles observed the same ceremony when they addressed us. After the latter had been invited to come on board our vessel, they informed us that the Japanese persisted in believing that plunder was the only motive which had induced us to visit their shores; and that the conduct of the crews of the Company's ships had excited their suspicions. Whenever they spoke of the violent proceedings of Chwostoff, they usually said: 'The Russians attacked us without cause, killed many of our countrymen, took several prisoners, plundered us, and burned all we possessed; they not only carried off our goods, but likewise all our rice and sagi, and abandoned us to all the misery of hunger.'"

Previous to leaving the island, a Kurile named Alexei, who spoke some Russian, came on board, and was retained, at his own request, as an interpreter. Golownin then sailed to the island of Oorooop, which he surveyed, and afterward, at Alexei's recommendation, proceeded to Kunashir, the twentieth island of the Kurile chain. On the morning of the 5th of July he sailed into the harbor of Kunashir, where there is a fortified village, with a Japanese garrison. As they advanced, guns were fired from the port; from which circumstance he concluded that the Japanese on the island of Eetooroop had not yet made known to those of Kunashir his friendly intentions. As he stood in nearer, however, the firing ceased. The fortifications were masked with screens of striped cloth, so that he could perceive neither walls nor palisades. After coming to anchor at the distance of a mile and a quarter, Golownin got into a boat with some men, and rowed toward the shore. They had approached within a hundred yards, when the firing again began, and came near proving fatal. They immediately put about and rowed quickly back to the vessel.

"A thought now suddenly came across my mind," observes Golownin. "I imagined that by means of signs I might make myself under-

of their houses, fell sacrifices to as the Kuriles, it indicate himself he supposed, in were entirely un-

ore," says Golownin of the great-uriles of this part dividuals of both panese, that they ded together, re- ever they had oc- their knees, with air heads hanging nd. Our Kuriles

After the latter ormed us that the nly motive which duct of the crews

Whenever they usually said: "The our countrymen, ve possessed; they rice and sagi, and

Alexei, who spoke is own request, as Oorop, which he ion, proceeded to On the morning of , where there is a ey advanced, guns he concluded that et made known to od in nearer, how- ed with screens of or palisades. After rter, Golownin got shore. They had g again began, and and rowed quickly

," observes Golow- nake myself under-

stood by the Japanese. For this purpose, on the 6th of July, I caused a cask to be sawed in two, and set both parts afloat in the water in front of the town. In the inside of one half of the cask were placed a glass containing fresh water, a piece of wood, and a handful of rice, to denote that we were in want of these articles; the other half contained a few piastres, a piece of yellow cloth, and some crystal beads and pearls, meaning thereby to intimate that we would give them either money or other articles in exchange for provisions. Upon this half of the cask we fixed a drawing of the harbor, the fortress, and the sloop; which was very skillfully executed by the Midshipman Moor. In this drawing the sloop's guns were very distinctly marked, but fixed in the ports with their tompions in; but the guns in the garrison were represented as firing, and the balls flying over the sloop. By this means I wished, if possible, to make the Japanese sensible of their perfidy. No sooner had we set the cask afloat and rowed away, than the Japanese immediately seized it, and carried it into their fortress. On the following day we approached within gun-shot of the castle, for the purpose of receiving an answer; having, however, previously made every preparation for an engagement; but the Japanese did not seem to notice us. No one appeared near the works, which were still hung round with cloth."

Captain Golownin called a council of his officers, at which the decision was, that they should not heed the attack of the Japanese, nor take any further measures for communication with them. As, however, both water and provisions were needed, a boat was sent to the mouth of a creek for a supply of the former, while Lieutenant Rikord crossed the bay in another boat, to a fishing village which they had observed. The place was deserted, but Rikord carried off some wood, rice, and dried fish, and left behind him various European articles, which Alexei declared to be far more valuable than what he carried away. In the afternoon curiosity induced Golownin to go ashore to try to discover the plans of the Japanese, and he was highly pleased to observe that all the articles which Lieutenant Rikord had left were removed. "On the 8th of July," he continues, "we observed a cask floating before the town. I immediately weighed anchor in order to take it up. We found that it contained a little box wrapped up in several pieces of oil-cloth. The box contained three papers; one of which was a Japanese letter, which we could not read, and the other two were drawings. Both these sketches represented the harbor, the castle, our sloop, the cask with a boat rowing toward it, and the rising sun, but with this difference, that in one the guns of the castle were firing, while in the other the muzzles of the cannon were turned backward. We were a long time occupied in considering these hieroglyphics, and each explained them after his own way; but this will not be thought wonderful, as the same thing frequently happens among better scholars. We all, however, agreed that the Japanese declined holding intercourse with us."

The next day a boat containing several Japanese officers and a Kurile

interpreter, rowed toward the vessel. The conference began on their side, with an apology for having fired upon the Russians when they first attempted to land. To justify this proceeding, they declared that their distrust had been excited in consequence of an outrage committed upon them some years before, by the crews of two Russian vessels, who had at first landed under pretense of the same motives. They, however, perceived the difference between Golownin's conduct and that of their former visitors; every suspicion had now vanished, and they declared their readiness to do all they could to serve him. On the 10th the requisite amount of water was on board, and Golownin was ready to sail, when he received an invitation to come on shore. He thought it his duty to comply, in order to acquaint the Japanese that the outrage of Chwostoff was entirely disowned by the Russian Government. He therefore landed, accompanied only by Alexei, the interpreter, and was met by an officer with whom he conversed for some time. This person promised to furnish the vessel with more provisions, but wished Golownin first to consult with the governor. In the evening a large number of fresh fish were sent on board, and the invitation to visit the governor renewed.

Golownin gives the following account of what happened on this visit: "Next morning, July the 11th, at eight o'clock, I landed with the above-named officers, the Kurile Alexei, and four seamen. So fully was I persuaded that we stood on a friendly footing with the Japanese, that I had not ordered the men to arm themselves. The officers, three in number, including myself, had each a sword, in addition to which Mr. Chlebnikoff brought with him a pocket-pistol, to use as a signal, in case of fog. On entering the castle gate, I was astonished at the number of men I saw assembled there. Of soldiers alone, I observed from three to four hundred, armed with muskets, bows and arrows, and spears, sitting in a circle, in an open space to the right of the gate; on the left a countless multitude of Kuriles surrounded a tent of striped cotton cloth, erected about thirty paces from the gate. This small, insignificant place, seemed incapable of containing so many men, and I concluded that they must have been collected from all the neighboring garrisons since we appeared in the harbor.

"While the conference was going on, Mr. Moor had observed that naked sabers had been distributed among the soldiers who were sitting in the open space. He immediately mentioned this to me; but I supposed that a saber or two might have been accidentally out of the sheaths; and I asked him whether he had not made a mistake, as the Japanese always carry swords, and could at present have no reason for drawing them. This remark appeared to satisfy him; but circumstances soon occurred which roused all our suspicion, and convinced us that some mischief was intended against us. The lieutenant-governor having withdrawn for a short time, as if to make some arrangement, returned, and whispered to the governor, who immediately rose up to go away. We

began on their  
s when they first  
clared that their  
committed upon  
vessels, who had  
They, however,  
and that of their  
nd they declared  
On the 10th the  
was ready to sail,  
fo thought it his  
t the outrage of  
overnment. He  
erpreter, and was  
ime. This person  
ut wished Golow-  
g a large number  
visit the governor

ened on this visit :  
I landed with the  
men. So fully was  
the Japanese, that  
e officers, three in  
ition to which Mr.  
as a signal, in case  
at the number of  
rved from three to  
and spears, sitting  
ate; on the left a  
triped cotton cloth,  
insignificant place,  
oncluded that they  
garrisons since we

had observed that  
rs who were sitting  
to me; but I sup-  
plementally out of the  
e a mistake, as the  
have no reason for  
; but circumstances  
vinced us that some  
overnor having with-  
ment, returned, and  
p to go away. We

got up also to take our leave; and I repeated my question respecting the price of provisions, and also asked whether he intended to supply us with any? On hearing this he sat down, invited us to do the same, and, though it was early in the day, ordered dinner to be served up.

"We accepted his invitation, and waited with impatience to see what would next occur, as it now appeared we were caught in a snare from which it would be difficult to escape. But the kind behavior of the Japanese, and their assurances that we had nothing to fear, again tranquillized us, and banished any suspicion of their treachery. They entertained us with rice, fish in a green sauce, and other savory dishes, the ingredients composing which we did not know. They also gave us *sagi*. After we had dined, the governor was again about to withdraw. I now declared that we could wait no longer, but must return immediately on board.

"The governor, who had hitherto conversed in a mild and gentle tone, now altered his manner. He spoke loudly, and with warmth; frequently mentioned Resanoto (Resanoff), and Nicola-Sandrejetsch (Nicolai Alexandrovitch, meaning Chwostoff, the Captain of the Company's ship), and struck his hand several times on his saber. In this manner he made a long speech, of which the terrified Alexei interpreted to us only the following sentence:—"The governor says that if he lets a single one of us out of the castle his own bowels will be ripped up." This was brief and decisive! We instantly made all the haste we could to escape. The Japanese did not venture to close upon us, but set up a loud cry, and threw oars and large pieces of wood at us, to knock us down. On our reaching the gate they fired several times on us, but without effect, though one of the balls whistled past the head of Mr. Chlebnikoff. We now found that they had succeeded in detaining Mr. Moor, the seaman Makaroff, and our Kurile Alexei, in the castle. We ran, however, to our landing-place; but on arriving there, perceived with dismay that the tide had ebbed above five fathoms, and left the strand quite dry. As the Japanese saw that it was impossible for us to get the boat afloat, and had previously assured themselves that it contained no arms, they gained confidence, advanced upon us with drawn sabers, which they held in both hands, muskets and spears, and surrounded us. I cast a look upon the boat, and said to myself: "It must be so—our last refuge is lost—our fate is inevitable!" I surrendered. The Japanese seized me by the arms, and conducted me to the castle, into which my companions were also conveyed.

"We were conducted into the same tent in which we had held the conference, but neither of the commanders with whom we had communicated were now there. The first thing done was to tie our hands behind our backs, and conduct us into an extensive but low building, which resembled a barrack, and which was situated opposite to the tent in the direction of the shore. Here we were all, except Makaroff—whom we had not seen since our separation—placed on our knees, and bound



in the cruelest manner, with cords about the thickness of a finger; and as though this were not enough, another binding with smaller cords followed, which was still more painful. The Japanese are exceedingly expert at this work; and it would appear that they conform to some precise regulation in binding their prisoners, for we were all tied exactly in the same manner. There were the same number of knots and nooses, and all at equal distances, on the cords with which each of us was bound. There were loops round our breasts and necks; our elbows almost touched each other, and our hands were firmly bound together: from these fastenings proceeded a long cord, the end of which was held by a Japanese, and which on the slightest attempt to escape required only to be drawn to make the elbows come in contact, with the greatest pain, and to tighten the noose about the neck to such a degree as almost to produce strangulation. Besides all this, they tied our legs in two places, above the knees and above the ankles: they then passed ropes from our necks over the cross-beams of the building, and drew them so tight that we found it impossible to move. Their next operation was searching our pockets, out of which they took every thing, and then proceeded very tranquilly to smoke tobacco."

After a delay of an hour, the Japanese removed the cords from the ankles of their captives, and led them into the country. On ascending a hill they beheld the *Diana* under sail. This sight plunged them into despair, and they gave up all hope of ever seeing their native country again. After walking some distance, they heard a cannonade. They could easily distinguish the firing of the sloop from that of the castle; but the strong garrison of the Japanese, and the thick earthen wall which formed their fortification, afforded the Russians no reason to expect any fortunate result from the contest.

To resume Golownin's narrative: "I was so tightly bound, particularly about the neck, that, before we had traveled six or seven versts, I could scarcely breathe. My companions told me that my face was swollen and discolored. I was almost blind, and could not speak without the greatest difficulty. We made signs to the Japanese, and requested them, through the interpretation of Alexei, to loosen the cord a little, but the cannonade so frightened them, that they paid no attention to our remonstrances; they only urged us to move faster, and kept constantly looking behind them. Life now appeared a heavy burden to me, and I resolved, in case we should pass a river, to make a sudden spring into the water, and thus terminate a painful existence. I soon saw, however, that it would not be easy to execute this purpose, as the Japanese always held us fast by the arms when we had occasion to cross even a little brook. I fell at length senseless on the ground; when I recovered, I found some persons sprinkling me with water, and the blood flowing from my mouth and nose. My companions, Moor and Chlebnikoff, were in deep distress, and imploring some persons to loosen the cords with which I was bound. They at last, with the greatest diffi-

N.

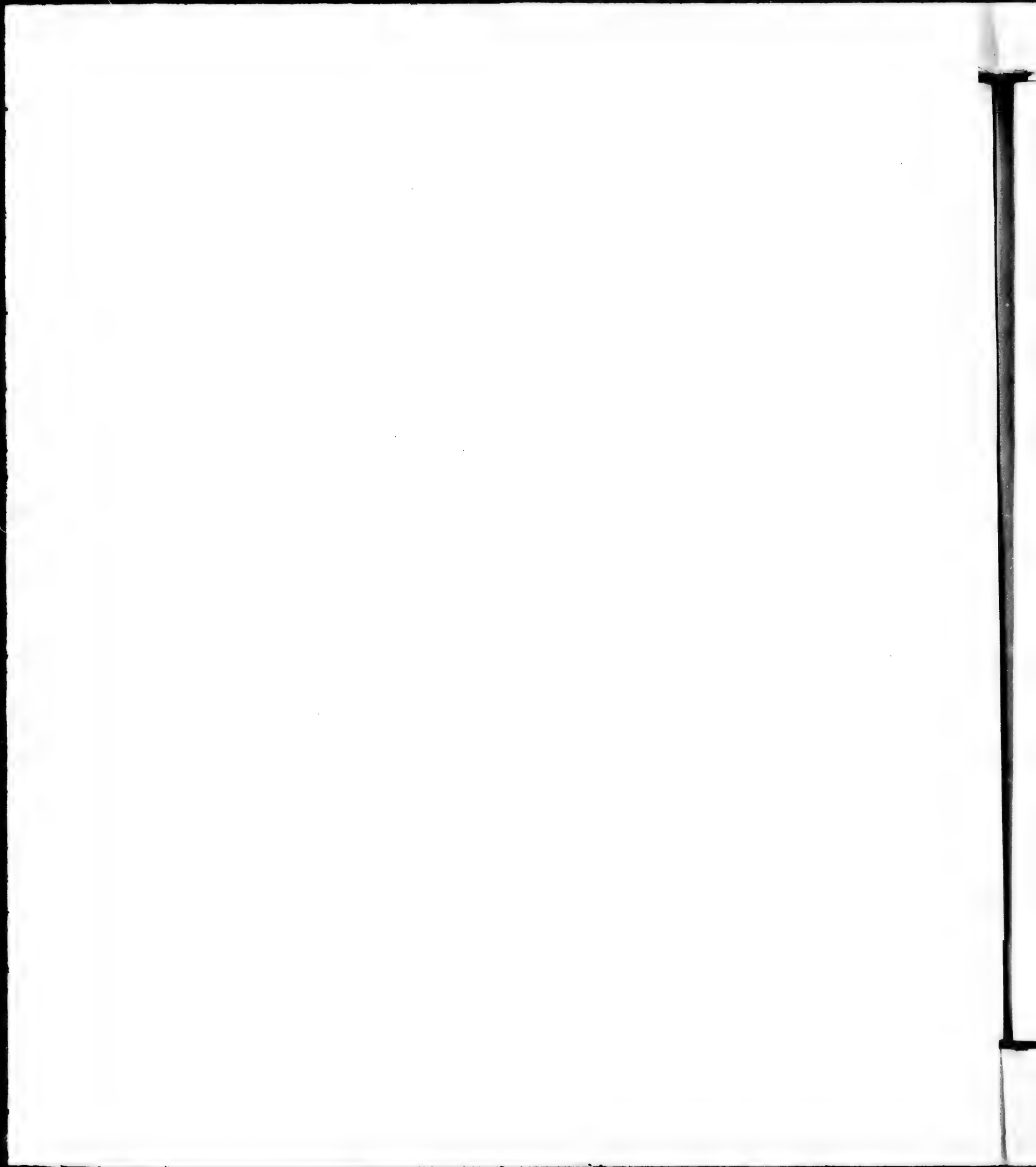
of a finger: and  
smaller cords fol-  
lowing exceedingly ex-  
posed to some pre-  
sures tied exactly in  
knots and nooses,  
of us was bound.  
Our elbows almost  
tied together: from  
which was held by a  
rope required only to  
the greatest pain,  
agree as almost to  
knots in two places,  
and ropes from our  
feet so tight that  
the pain was searching  
I then proceeded

to free the cords from the  
yoke. On ascending  
I plunged them into  
their native country  
cannonade. They  
thought of the castle;  
thick earthen wall  
gave no reason to ex-

ceed, particularly  
even versts, I could  
bear was swollen and  
without the great-  
est requested them,  
I said a little, but the  
attention to our re-  
quest kept constantly  
burden to me, and  
sudden spring into  
action saw, however,  
as the Japanese al-  
lowed to cross even a  
river; when I recov-  
ered, and the blood  
Moor and Chlebn-  
rsons to loosen the  
with the greatest diffi-







culty, prevailed on them to comply. I then found myself much eased, and was soon able to make an effort to proceed.

"After a journey of about ten versts, we arrived at a small village, situated on the straits which divide the island of Kunashier from Matsmai. We were conducted into a house, where boiled rice was offered us, but we felt no desire to partake of food of any kind. On our declining to eat, we were taken into another apartment, in which we were laid down close to the walls, so as not to touch each other. The ropes by which we had been led were attached to iron hooks, driven into the wall for that purpose. Our boots were pulled off, and our legs tied as before in two places: having secured us in this way, our guards sat down in the middle of the room round a chafing-dish, and drank tea and smoked. Any man might have slept tranquilly beside lions, bound as fast as we were, but it would seem that our guards did not think themselves secure. The cords with which we were tied were inspected every quarter of an hour.

"At the approach of twilight, our guards began to bestir themselves, and seemed to be preparing for a journey. About midnight, a broad plank was brought in, to the four corners of which ropes were attached: these ropes were fastened at the top, and slung across a pole, the ends of which were laid on men's shoulders; and thus the whole was suspended. I was placed upon this plank, and immediately borne away. We now concluded that we were to be separated forever, and that we could entertain no hope of seeing each other again. Our farewell was like the parting of friends at the hour of death.

"The sailors wept aloud as they bade me adieu, and my heart was wrung on leaving them. I was conveyed to the sea-side, and placed in a large boat, with a mat beneath me. In a few moments, Mr. Moor was likewise brought to the shore in the same way as I had been, and was placed in the boat beside me. This was indeed an unexpected happiness. I was so overjoyed, that for a few moments I experienced a diminution of my torment. Moor was soon followed by Mr. Chlebnikoff, and the sailors Simanoff and Wassiljeff; the rest were placed in another boat. A soldier under arms was stationed between each of us. We were then covered over with mats, and the boats were rowed from the shore."

At break of day, on the 12th of July, the captives were landed near a little village, on the coast of the island of Matsmai or Jesso. Here they were removed into other boats, which were drawn with ropes along the shore in a south-easterly direction. In this way they were dragged the whole of that day and the following night. There was no halting, except at certain fixed places, where the men, who were employed in the dragging, and who came from the neighboring villages, were relieved. At one of the villages, a venerable, gray-haired man, begged permission of the guards to furnish the Russians with breakfast. This was granted, and the old man stood near them during the repast, to see



that they wanted nothing, the expression of his countenance plainly showing his pity. They were kept so severely bound that their wrists were covered with painful sores, and one of the seamen was seized with dangerous bleeding at the nose. At night they lay in the boats, still bound, and were frequently wet to the skin by showers of rain.

After five days of this painful travel, they were put on shore, their feet untied, and the cords about their knees loosened so that they could walk. Their journey thenceforth was entirely by land. "The Japanese oyagoda, or commander of the district," says Golownin, "took a considerable time to determine on the order of our procession; however, he at length disposed of us in the following manner: two Japanese from the neighboring village proceeded first, walking side by side, and carrying staves of red wood, very handsomely carved: their business was to direct our course. These were relieved, on entering the next district, by two new guides, carrying staves of the same description. The guides were followed by three soldiers. Next came my turn, with a soldier on one side, and on the other an attendant, who, with a twig, kept the gnats and flies from fixing upon me. Behind me was a conductor, who held together the ends of the ropes with which I was bound. We were followed by a party of Kuriles, carrying my litter; and after them came another party, destined to relieve the others when fatigued. Next came Mr. Moor, guarded in the same manner as I was; after him Mr. Chlebnikoff; then the sailors, one following another; and last of all Alexei. The whole retinue was closed by three soldiers, and a number of Japanese and Kurile servants, carrying provisions, and the baggage of our escort. The party must have amounted to between one hundred and fifty and two hundred men. Each individual had a wooden tablet suspended from his girdle, on which was an inscription, stating with which of us he was stationed, and what were the duties of his office.

"During the whole journey, the Japanese uniformly observed the same regulations. At daybreak we prepared for our departure, breakfasted, and then set out. Our conductors frequently stopped in villages to rest, or to drink tea and smoke tobacco. At noon we dined. Having rested for one hour after dinner, we again proceeded, and an hour or two before sunset we halted for the night, usually in a village furnished with a small garrison. These night-quarters, when we first entered, were generally hung round with striped cotton cloth. We were always conducted to a neat house, and placed altogether in one apartment, where our guards never failed to fasten us to iron hooks which were fixed into the walls.

"When we arrived at the station where we were to pass the night, we were always conducted to the front of the house belonging to the person possessing the highest authority in the place; we were there seated on benches covered with mats, and he came out to inspect us. We were then taken to the house allotted for our lodging; on entering which our boots and stockings were taken off, and our feet bathed with

warm water, in which there was a solution of salt. We were regularly provided with meals three times a-day; viz., breakfast in the morning before we set out on our journey, dinner about noon, and supper in the evening, in our night-quarters. There was, however, little variety in our diet; it consisted usually of boiled rice instead of bread, two pieces of pickled radish for seasoning, broth made of radishes or various wild roots and herbs, a kind of macaroni, and a piece of broiled or boiled fish.

"In every village, on our arrival and departure, we were surrounded with crowds of both sexes, young and old, who were drawn together by curiosity to see us; and yet on these occasions we never experienced the slightest insult or offense. All, particularly the women, contemplated us with an air of pity and compassion. If we asked for drink to quench our thirst, they were emulous to supply us. Many solicited permission of our guards to entertain us, and on their request being granted, brought us *sagi*, comfits, fruits, or other delicacies. On one occasion, the chief of a village treated us with some very good tea with sugar. They often inquired respecting an European nation called *Orando*, and a country to which they gave the name of *Kabo*. We assured them that we knew of no such people or countries in Europe; upon which they expressed surprise, and testified distrust at our answer. Sometime after we learned that the Japanese called the Dutch, *Orando*, and the Cape of Good Hope, *Kabo*."

During all this time they remained bound, until their flesh became so chafed that the Japanese guards finally called in a physician who applied plasters to the wounds. They refused to allow them liberty, from fear that they would commit suicide. They even held the pipes which the prisoners smoked, lest they should attempt to injure themselves with the stems; but afterward, having fitted enormous mouth-pieces to them, as a precautionary measure, allowed the Russians to take them in their own hands. Captain Golownin and the officers were constantly applied to by the natives to write some lines for them as curious souvenirs. The Japanese considered a specimen of Russian writing as great a curiosity as an inscription in Japanese would be looked upon in Europe, and they showed a fan upon which were inscribed four lines of a popular Russian song, signed by a person named *Babikoff*, who, it appeared, had visited Japan along with *Laxman*. Though these lines must have been written twenty years before, yet the fan was as clean and fresh as if perfectly new. The owner kept it wrapped up in a sheet of paper, and set so much value upon it, that he would scarcely suffer it to be opened.

After a journey of nearly four weeks, the prisoners at last, on the 7th of August, saw from an eminence the city and harbor of *Hakodadi*\*

\* The port of *Hakodadi*, in the straits of *Sangar*, at the southern extremity of the island of *Jesso*, is one of the ports opened to the vessels of the United States by the treaty concluded at *Yoko-hama* by *Commodore Perry* in 1854. The harbor is safe and commodious, and has already become a favorite place of resort for American whalers, for the purpose of refitting and procuring supplies. Captain *Golownin* spells the name "*Chakodadé*," which is probably the Russian mode of representing the same sounds.

spread out before them. The next morning, the guards made preparations for their formal entrance into the city; they put on new clothes, and armed themselves with coats of mail and helmets. As the procession approached the gates, a great number of persons came out to see them. "We at length entered the city," says Golownin, "where the concourse of people was so immense, that our guards had great difficulty in clearing a passage for us. Having proceeded the distance of half a verst along a narrow street, we turned down a cross-street on our left, which led us into the open fields. Here, upon a rising ground, we first beheld the building that was destined to be our prison. The sight filled us with horror. We observed only the long roof; but that sufficiently enabled us to form a notion of the extent of the edifice. A high wooden inclosure or fence, of great strength, and well provided with *chevaux-de-frise*, concealed the body of the building. This wooden fence was surrounded by an earthen wall, somewhat lower, which on this occasion was hung with striped cloth. There was a guard-house near the gate, in which several officers were seated. Along the path leading to our prison, soldiers were stationed in full military uniform: they stood at the distance of two fathoms from each other, and were armed in various ways: some with muskets, some with bows and arrows, others with spears, etc. A party of officers were stationed in front of the building. On arriving at the gate, we were received by an officer, to whom a list of our escort had previously been handed, and we were then conducted into a sort of court or yard. Here our future gloomy and horror-stirring domicile presented itself fully to our view. It was a large dark building, resembling a barn, and within it were apartments formed of strong thick spars of wood, which, but for the difference of size, looked exactly like bird-cages.

"I was led into a passage or lobby in the building, where my boots were drawn off, and the ropes with which I was bound removed. I was then directed to enter a small apartment, which was divided from the passage by wooden palissades. I now looked around me in quest of Mr. Moor and Schkajeff; but how great was my dismay to find that I could neither see nor hear them! The Japanese, without saying a word, closed the door of my apartment, and quitted the lobby, the door of which they likewise closed after them. I was now alone. The thought of being separated from my companions, and probably forever, completely overpowered me, and, in a paroxysm of despair, I threw myself upon the ground.

"I remained for some time in a state of insensibility. At length, raising my eyes, I observed at the window a man, who beckoned me to approach him. I complied with his wish; and extending his hand through the railing, he presented me with two little sweet cakes; at the same time entreating me, by signs, to eat them quickly, as a punishment awaited him if he should be observed. At that moment I loathed the very sight of food; but I made an effort to eat the cakes, lest refusal

is made prepara-  
on new clothes,  
As the proces-  
came out to see  
min, "where the  
d great difficulty  
distance of half a  
reet on our left,  
ground, we first  
The sight filled  
that sufficiently  
A high wooden  
with *chevaux-de-*  
den fence was sur-  
this occasion was  
near the gate, in  
ding to our prison,  
y stood at the dis-  
l in various ways:  
rs with spears, etc.  
ing. On arriving  
a list of our escort  
cted into a sort of  
r-stirring domicile  
k building, resem-  
strong thick spars  
d exactly like bird-

g, where my boots  
ad removed. I was  
s divided from the  
me in quest of Mr.  
to find that I could  
ut saying a word,  
lobby, the door of  
alone. The thought  
bably forever, com-  
pair, I threw myself

ity. At length, rais-  
beckoned me to ap-  
ing his hand through  
cakes; at the same  
ly, as a punishment  
moment I loathed the  
the cakes, lest refusal

might give offense to my kind visitor. His countenance now brightened up, and he left the window, with a promise to bring me more at a future time. I thanked him as well as I was able, and was greatly astonished that this man (who from his dress apparently belonged to the very lowest class) should be so far actuated by benevolence, as to hazard his own safety for the sake of conveying comfort to an unfortunate stranger.

"My guards now brought me some food; but I felt not the least inclination to partake of it, and sent it all away. In this state I remained until evening. I sometimes threw myself on the floor, or upon a bench, and occasionally walked about the apartment, meditating on the means of effecting my escape. I attentively inspected the construction of my cage. It was six feet in length and breadth, and about eight feet in height. It was divided from the lobby by wooden palissades of tolerable thickness, and the door was fastened by a lock. On one side, near the door, was a small recess fitted up as a water-closet. There were two windows, both secured externally by strong wooden gratings, and in the inside furnished with paper screens, which I could open and shut at pleasure. One window faced the wall of a building about two feet distant from that in which I was confined, and the other looked to the southern side of the fence which surrounded our prison. From this window I had a view of the neighboring hills and fields, part of the straits of Sangar, and the opposite coast. In the interior of the chamber stood a wooden bench, which, however, was so small, that I could not stretch myself upon it; and three or four mats lay in one corner on the floor. The place contained no other furniture."

After being confined for a day or two, Golownin was allowed to select one of the sailors for a companion. He chose Makaroff, who, on being conducted to him, stated that the other prisoners were confined in small cages, perfectly dark, and with such low entrances that they were obliged to crawl in on their hands and knees. Two days afterward, they were all taken before the governor of the city, by whom they were closely questioned, but received no intimation as to their future fate. They were then conducted back again to their cages, where they remained eighteen days before they were again summoned. Their condition was a little improved, inasmuch as they were allowed to speak to each other, a partition between the cages having been removed. Golownin observes: "The chief trouble we experienced from both officers and soldiers, who did duty as guards, arose from their requests to write on their fans and pieces of paper; but as they always solicited the favor with great courtesy, and invariably returned thanks with very humble reverences, we never refused. Some, however, imposed so far on our complaisance as to bring us ten or twenty fans at a time. These tedious labors fell chiefly on Messrs. Moor and Chlebnikoff, as their hand-writing was very fine. The former wrote more than seventy sheets of paper for one of the soldiers; and from their unceasing applications we at

length concluded that they must have sold these manuscripts as articles worthy of being preserved in the cabinets of the curious. This task was the more laborious, as the officers were always desired to give a translation of what was written. When we translated any thing for them, they carried it to Mr. Chlebnikoff, to compare his translation with ours; and if he wrote any thing, they brought it for the same reason to us."

On the 25th of August the deputy-governor, Otachi-Koeki, came to visit them, followed by a numerous retinue. Mats were spread in front of the cages, and Golownin was thunderstruck at seeing his own chest of clothing, the portmanteaus of Moor and Chlebnikoff, and the bundles of the sailors, deposited thereupon. His first thought was that the sloop had been wrecked, but the Japanese soon informed him that the articles had been sent ashore at Kunashir. "This day," he says, "was doubly memorable to me: first, on account of the great surprise and alarm which the appearance of our baggage occasioned; and secondly, because the want of paper and ink, or any thing by which I could make notes, induced me to fall on the following singular method of keeping a journal. When any thing happened that was agreeable to us, I tied a knot on a white thread, which I drew out of the frill of my shirt: when any unpleasant event occurred, I made a memorandum of it by tying a knot on a thread of black silk, taken out of my neck-handkerchief. With regard to other circumstances which, though remarkable, had occasioned us neither joy nor sorrow, I recorded them on a thread of green silk, which I abstracted from the lining of my uniform coat. Often did I count over these knots, and recall to my mind the events they served to denote."

Four days afterward they were again conducted before the governor, and were surprised by the reception of a letter from Lieutenant Rikord, who informed them that he intended sailing to Okotsk, and returning the next summer with a stronger force. The Japanese desired Golownin to translate this letter, which he did in a cautious manner, softening the threatening expressions which it contained. After they were taken back to their cages, they noticed that the officers and soldiers were more kind and friendly. They were allowed to have some articles of clothing from their trunks, and were furnished with a tub of warm water, that they might wash themselves. Golownin thus describes the latter proceeding: "The tub was extremely large, and the water was heated by means of a copper pipe, communicating with a kind of stove. I washed first, and the rest were obliged to make use of the same water. This was not a little annoying. We looked upon such treatment as below what was due even to common criminals. We were, however, soon set at ease on this particular; for, to our great astonishment, after we had all finished washing, some of the imperial soldiers, by whom we were guarded, very contentedly followed our example, and washed themselves in the same water. These soldiers, as I have before observed, are held in the utmost respect in Japan. It is, therefore,

evident, that the Japanese entertain no disgust or horror of Christians; and do not, like other Asiatics, regard them as unclean.

"On the 5th of September, we were conducted to the governor of Hakodadi, for the last time. We sat a long time in the court-yard, drinking tea and smoking tobacco. The interpreter, Kumaddschero, went continually backward and forward, asking us Russian words, which he wrote down. We were at length conducted into the hall. Here one of the officers, a gray-haired man, apparently about seventy years of age, who in Laxman's time had been employed in compiling a Russian dictionary, unrolled a large sheet of paper, filled with Japanese characters, which he began to read in a style very much resembling singing. We were totally unable to comprehend the first ten or twenty words; but we at length discovered that he fancied he was reading Russian, and from some of the words we conjectured that the paper contained an account of our affair, translated into Russian. We could not refrain from laughing, and told the Japanese that we understood only a few words here and there: upon which they all joined in the laugh, not excepting the translator, who laid the paper aside. The governor then took leave of us, and we left the castle."

Toward the end of September they ascertained from the soldiers that they were to be taken to the city of Matsmai, at the western extremity of the Straits of Sangar. About the same time Simanoff, one of the sailors, obtained possession of a large knife, which Golownin advised him to preserve very carefully, in order to furnish them with a means of escape, if an opportunity should present itself. The journey to Matsmai occupied four days, and on the afternoon of the 30th of September, "we halted," says the narrative, "in a village about three versts distant from the city, where we were met by a party of soldiers and a vast crowd of people. We remained there about half an hour, during which time our conductors put on their best clothes, and we then entered the city with the same formalities as had been observed at Hakodadi: the number of spectators was, however, considerably greater, owing to the vast population of the city. Having proceeded through the town, to the distance of about four or five versts along the shore, we entered a large open space, crowded with men, who stood behind ropes, which had been fixed for the accommodation of the procession. Thence we ascended a tolerably high hill, passed along the rampart which encompassed the castle, and entered a court-yard, surrounded by a high wooden fence, entirely new. Here we met a detachment of soldiers in their military uniforms. From this court-yard a little door led through another fence, higher than the preceding one. We now entered a dark edifice like a barn. Mr. Moor, Mr. Chlebnikoff, and myself, were shut up together in a cage; the sailors and Alexei were confined in another.

"The whole structure must have occasioned the Japanese government no inconsiderable cost. We could not believe that so much labor



and expense would have been incurred had it been intended to set us soon at liberty. The strength and the plan of this prison appeared to denote that it was to be our dwelling-place during the remainder of our existence. This idea distressed us not a little. We sat long in profound silence, gazing at each other, and giving ourselves up for lost. A servant at length brought in our supper, which consisted of boiled rice, a piece of fish, and a few beans with syrup."

Two days afterward they were taken before the *bunyo*, or governor, who interrogated them for some time concerning their names, rank, families, and relations. After they had retired, he announced his intention of presenting them with dresses, which were afterward made by a Japanese tailor. Their food was also better than it had been in Hakodadi. According to the Japanese custom, stewed rice and pickled radishes served them instead of bread and seasoning. They were besides frequently furnished with good fresh and salt fish, boiled or fried; soups, in which there were various wild herbs or macaroni; and sometimes there was prepared for them a kind of Russian soup or sauce, made with white fish and muscle broth. The fish were fried in oil of poppies, and were seasoned with grated radish and soy.

For upward of a month after their arrival they were taken before the *bunyo* every day, regularly, and questioned for many hours in succession. Captain Golownin's account of this propensity of the Japanese is very curious. "The number of questions which the *bunyo* asked," he says, "was incalculable. If he put one interrogatory concerning any circumstances connected with our case, he asked fifty which were unimportant, and many which were ludicrous. This so puzzled and tormented us, that we sometimes made very irritable replies. On one occasion, we stated plainly, that we had rather they would put an end to our existence at once than torture us in the way they did. When we were captured, I had about me ten or twelve keys belonging to my desk and drawers and to boxes containing the astronomical instruments used on board the ship. The *bunyo* wished to be informed of the contents of every drawer and every box. When I pointed to my shirt, and told him that my drawers contained such things as those, he asked me how many I had. I replied that I did not know; and that it was my servant's business to keep that reckoning. Upon this he immediately inquired how many servants I had, and what were their names and ages. I lost all patience, and asked why I was teased with such questions, and what use there could be in answering them since my property was not with me. The governor then, with great mildness, observed that he hoped we were not offended by his curiosity; that he did not intend to force any answers from us, but merely questioned us like a friend.

"To enable the reader to form some notion of the questions which the Japanese put to us, and the trouble it cost us to explain the various matters which excited their curiosity, I may here subjoin a few of their interrogatories, scarcely, however, the hundredth part of the frivolous

inquiries which they were accustomed to make in the course of one day. It must, moreover, be considered that we had to make ourselves understood to them by means of the half-wild Kurile, who knew scarcely any thing of the subjects on which we conversed, and who was acquainted with no words in the Kurile language to express many of the terms which we made use of. The Japanese interrogated us without any kind of regularity, and often jumped from one subject to another. The following is a specimen of one of our examinations:

"What kind of dress does the Emperor of Russia wear—what does he wear on his head—what kind of birds are found in the neighborhood of St. Petersburg—how many times do the Russians go to church in one day—what would be the price in Russia of the clothes we were then wearing—how many pieces of cannon are planted round the imperial palace—what wool is made use of in Europe for manufacturing cloth—what quadrupeds, birds, and fish are eaten in Russia—in what manner do the Russians eat—what sort of dresses do the ladies wear—what kind of horse does the Emperor usually ride—who accompanies him when he goes abroad—are the Russians partial to the Dutch—how many foreigners are there in Russia—what are the chief articles of trade in St. Petersburg—what are the dimensions in length, breadth, and height, of the imperial palace—how many windows does it contain—how many festivals do the Russians observe in the course of the year—do the Russians wear silk clothes—at what time of life do the Russian women begin and cease to bear children? They besides inquired the names of the Emperor, and of all the branches of the imperial family; the names of the governors-general of Siberia and Irkutsk, and of the commandants of Okotsk, Kamchatka, etc.

"But they vexed us most of all by their inquiries respecting barracks. I have already observed that in Hakodadi they insisted on knowing how many men were under our command, according to our rank, when we were ashore. This question was again repeated, together with a request to know where the sailors lived in St. Petersburg. In barracks, we replied. They then requested Mr. Moor to sketch, from the best of his recollection, a plan of St. Petersburg, and to point out in what part of the town the sailors' barracks were. This demand was no sooner complied with, than they made inquiries respecting the length, breadth and height of the barracks; the number of their gates, windows, and doors; into how many stories they were divided; in what part of the building the sailors lived; how they employed their time; how many men were employed to guard the barracks, etc.

"But this was not all: they questioned us about the military barracks; asked how many buildings of that kind there were in St. Petersburg, in what part of the town they were situated, and what number of men they contained. We thought it best to plead ignorance of most of these matters; but this did not exempt us from the continuance of these interrogatories. We were asked in what part of the city our dwellings

were situated, how far they were from the palace, and requested to point out the spot on the sketch which Mr. Moor had drawn. At length they wished to know how large our houses were, and how many servants we kept. I frequently thought that the Japanese took a pleasure thus to torment us; for to reply to all the questions which their insatiable curiosity induced them to put to us, was a positive martyrdom. We sometimes absolutely refused to answer them, and told them they might, if they pleased, put us to death. The bunyo would then endeavor to soothe us by expressions of regard, and by making inquiries respecting matters relative to our imprisonment, but he would soon resume his trifling. We avoided by every possible manœuver giving any opportunity for unnecessary questions; we returned short replies, and sometimes only half an answer. But every word brought with it a train of interrogatories."

After the prisoners had been driven to desperation by this continued questioning, and refused to gratify any longer the curiosity of the Japanese, the latter asked them to write out an account of what had happened to them since they left Russia. In doing this, they took occasion to relate minutely the occurrences at the island of Kunashir. A great deal of time was consumed in translating this document into Japanese, and the work was not accomplished until the middle of November, with the help of the interpreters, Alexei and Kumaddschero. They then sent it to the bunyo, accompanied by a petition, in which they requested that the Japanese government would set them at liberty, and send them back to Russia. Alexei was honest enough to confirm the truth of every thing which they stated, contrary to the declaration of some other Kuriles whom the Japanese had seized, and his testimony was not without its value.

A few days afterward, they were summoned before the bunyo, who addressed them in a speech of considerable length, which was thus translated to Golownin: "The Japanese at first supposed we intended to plunder and burn their villages. For this reason they had enticed us into their garrison, and had detained us by force, with the view of ascertaining what had induced the Russians to commence hostilities, as the Japanese had uniformly entertained friendly dispositions toward them. The bunyo, however, gave credit to our explanation of the affair, and regarded us as innocent: he had accordingly given orders for removing the ropes with which we were bound, and would do all that lay in his power to better our condition. If it depended on him to grant us our freedom, and send us back to Russia, he would do so without hesitation; but we must be informed that the bunyo of Matsmai was not the chief individual of the state, but that Japan was ruled by an emperor and a superior government, whose commands he was bound to obey in all cases of importance, and without whose consent he could not grant us our freedom. On his part, however, he would use all his influence with the government in our favor, and to facilitate our return to Russia. With this view, he had sent one of the principal officers of Matsmai to Yeddo, the

capital, to endeavor to bring our affair to the wished-for issue. In the mean while he entreated us not to give way to despair, but to offer up prayers to Heaven,\* and patiently to await the decision of the emperor of Japan. When Alexei had finished his explanation, and the Japanese perceived that we understood him, our ropes were immediately taken off, and they all sincerely congratulated us. Two of the Japanese, present at this scene, were so moved that they shed tears.

"On returning to our prison, we found, to our astonishment, every thing changed; and we could scarcely comprehend how so complete an alteration could have been effected in so short a time. The spars or railings in front of our cages were removed; the spaces which before served us for passages were thrown into the cages; the floor was laid with planks in the direction of its length, and covered with new mats, so that our prison was converted into a roomy hall, in which we could walk about and converse at our ease. Near the fireplace, wooden compartments were formed, and in them a teacup for each of us was placed; on the hearth stood copper kettles with water for tea, and a pipe, with a little pouch of tobacco, was laid ready for each. Instead of lamps with fish-oil, we were allowed candles. We wondered not a little at this unexpected and rapid metamorphosis.

"We had scarcely recovered from our astonishment, when several civil functionaries, accompanied by their children, came to visit us. They offered us their congratulations, seated themselves by the fire, and smoked and chatted with us. In a word, we seemed no longer prisoners, but guests. Supper was not handed to us as usual, in cups or basins, but was served up, according to the Japanese custom, on trays. The vessels used were entirely new, and a finer sort was allotted to the officers than to the sailors. The aliments were better than before, and the sagi was no longer dealt out to us in certain portions, in cups, but was placed before us, that we might fill it out as we pleased. This kind treatment revived the hope of again seeing our country, and we passed a tranquil night, for the first time since our imprisonment. The two following days were spent in a manner equally gratifying, and we considered our speedy return to Russia as certain. But this pleasant state of things was not of long duration. New occurrences induced us to doubt the sincerity of the Japanese. We soon had to revert to our old meals, and nothing remained except the new utensils."

Matters remained in this condition during the whole winter. The captives were sometimes treated kindly, and consoled with the hope of a speedy release, while at other times the aspect of the Japanese was unfriendly and threatening. They finally became weary of this fluctuat-

\* Whenever he said any thing to console us, he recommended us to rely on God, a circumstance with which we were particularly pleased. It was satisfactory to reflect, that the people into whose power fate had consigned us, entertained a just idea of the Supreme Being, and placed faith in the Almighty Ruler of nations, before whom all must sooner or later render an account of their actions.—GOLOWNIN.

ing, uncertain state, and determined to make the attempt to escape. They were partly led to this conclusion, by the conviction that the Japanese intended to retain them as teachers, in order to gratify their boundless curiosity. A new interpreter, named Teske, was sent to them from the capital, to learn the Russian language; he was followed by an astronomer, who wished them to teach him how to make observations for the latitude and longitude. All were at first agreed upon the necessity of escaping, but in the beginning of March, Mr. Moor, the midshipman, suddenly declared that he would have nothing to do with the plot. From that moment a complete change took place in his manner and behavior. He began to imitate the customs of the Japanese; he was obsequious toward them to such a degree that their laughter was excited, and began to watch his fellow-captives, evidently with the design of giving information against them. Golownin soon became convinced that it would be unsafe to trust him; he therefore pretended to have given up the idea of escaping, while, with the concurrence of all the others, the preparations for it were secretly going on.

On the 1st of April they were all taken out of the cages and conducted to a house which had been expressly prepared for them. "Our residence," says Golownin, "was in various respects changed for the better. We could at least enjoy the sight of the sky, the stars, and many other objects; and we could, when we chose, walk out into the yard and enjoy the fresh air. We had before been debarred from all these enjoyments. Our food was likewise considerably better. But, nevertheless, we were inconsolable whenever we thought of the last words of the bunyo. He desired us to regard the Japanese as our brethren and countrymen, and mentioned not a word about Russia, as he had been before accustomed to do. We could construe this in no other way than that we must make up our minds to remain in Japan, and banish every thought of Russia. But we had firmly resolved that such should not be our fate; and had even bound ourselves by an oath, that, whatever might be the consequence, we would attempt either to liberate ourselves by force from the power of the Japanese, or to escape secretly during the night. We had all, with the exception of Mr. Moor, formed a determination to perish rather than remain forever in Japan.

"In one of our walks in the outskirts of the city we found a piece of steel, which one of the sailors picked up, under pretense of drawing up his boot, and slipped it into his pocket; we likewise found means to provide ourselves with some flints, unperceived by our attendants. The fragments of an old shirt, which we threw upon the fire as if by accident, served us for tinder; we besides daily increased our store of provisions, by secreting a portion of our allowances. We did not neglect defensive precautions. Having had the good fortune to find among the grass in our yard a large chisel, which had probably been left by the carpenters who repaired our house, we carefully hid it, and resolved, on the first

favorable opportunity, to fasten it to a long pole, so that it might serve as a pike. To a similar purpose we destined a spade, which had also been left by accident in our yard, and which we appropriated. The proverb, that necessity is the mother of invention, was in our case fully verified, for Mr. Chlebnikoff actually managed to make a compass. We requested our attendants to let us have two large needles for mending our clothes, and afterward pretended that we had lost them. The Japanese sometimes fasten together the beams of their houses with copper; this had been done in our house, although the copper was very rusty. Mr. Chlebnikoff cleaned a piece of this copper, in the middle of which he bored a hole, so that a needle might be placed upon it. By frequently rubbing this needle on a stone which he selected for the purpose, he succeeded in magnetising it, and finally gave it such a degree of polarity, that it pointed with tolerable accuracy to the north. The case was composed of a few sheets of paper pasted together with rice."

Their plan was to escape by night, travel northward along the shore, and take possession, at some of the fishing villages, of a boat large enough to convey them across to Tartary. On the 23d of April, 1812, they were conducted to the outskirts of the city for a walk, and made use of the opportunity to observe the foot-paths leading to the hills. On their return to their house the same evening, they threw themselves upon their beds, as if much fatigued. "During the twilight," says the narrative, "the sailors entered the kitchen, and carried off two knives, without being perceived. About half an hour before midnight, Simanoff and Schkajeff stole into the yard, and concealed themselves under the steps. When twelve o'clock struck, and the Sangar soldiers had gone their rounds, they began to make a hole under the fence, through which we all (Mr. Moor and Alexei excepted) crept one after another. I stumbled in going out, slipped down, and struck my knee against a stake which was sunk in the ground close to the gap. The blow was extremely violent, but the pain soon diminished. We found ourselves on a very narrow path between the fence and the hollow, and with great difficulty we succeeded in gaining the high road. With hasty steps we then passed between the trees, crossed the mound and the cemetery, and, in about half an hour, reached the foot of the first hill which we had to ascend.

"Proceeding in our hazardous enterprise, we began, at the distance of about five versts from the shore, to climb the hills, and we endeavored, wherever it was possible, to direct our course northward. The stars served to guide us. While we were ascending the first hill I felt a violent pain in my knee, which in a short time swelled prodigiously. When we proceeded along level ground, I could, with the assistance of a stick, walk without much difficulty; but I experienced severe pain either in ascending or descending, as I was then obliged to tread heavily with the leg which had been hurt. Being thus unable to make an equal use of both feet, I was quickly overcome with fatigue. My companions

AN.

attempt to escape. action that the Ja- er to gratify their e, was sent to them was followed by an make observations eed upon the nece- Moor, the midship- to do with the plot. his manner and be- panese; he was ob- aughter was excited, with the design of eame convinced that ended to have given ce of all the others,

f the cages and con- ed for them. "Our ects changed for the e sky, the stars, and e, walk out into the e been debarred from all derably better. But, y thought of the last the Japanese as our word about Russia, as d construe this in no s to remain in Japan, d firmly resolved that ourselves by an oath, ould attempt either to Japanese, or to escape the exception of Mr. than remain forever in

ty we found a piece of retense of drawing up ewise found means to y our attendants. The e fire as if by accident, our store of provisions, d not neglect defensive nd among the grass in left by the carpenters d resolved, on the first



were, therefore, under the necessity of stopping every half hour, to enable me to recover myself and ease my knee by resting. Our object was to reach, before daybreak, some hills, across which a thick forest extended, so as to conceal ourselves from the observation of the enemy; for we had now reason to regard the Japanese in that character. During our walks in the vicinity of the town, this forest appeared to us to be at no very considerable distance, but we soon found how greatly we had mistaken its situation. We could trace no footpath leading to it, and we therefore advanced to it in as straight a direction as we could. Owing to the darkness of the night, we could see no further than a few paces around us, and we sometimes unexpectedly found ourselves at the foot of a steep precipice, which it was impossible to climb. We had then to search for a more practicable road; which, when found, we continued to ascend until new obstacles presented themselves."

After having traveled for three hours in this manner, they reached the top of the ridge, and discovered a beaten road, leading directly toward the forest, where they might walk without fear of being tracked. They had almost reached the forest, where they would have been tolerably secure, when the sailor Wassiljeff, happening to look behind him, exclaimed: "They are pursuing us on horseback with lanterns!" and immediately descended into a deep hollow on one side of the road. The others followed his example, but by the time they had reached the bottom of the hollow, which was surrounded with precipices, the sun had risen. Perceiving at last a small aperture in the rock, which had been hollowed out by the action of a waterfall, they crept into it, and although the place was not large enough to allow them to sit down, they remained there until sunset. As soon as the stars appeared they climbed the hill again, and proceeded northward. Captain Golownin suffered so much pain, from the leg which had been injured, that he found it almost impossible to advance, and requested the others to leave him. This they refused to do, and the sailors took turns in dragging him along.

During the whole of the night they advanced northward over rugged hills, suffering greatly from the cold, and at daybreak halted among some bushes, for the purpose of cooking a little rice which they had brought with them. The day was cold and stormy, and as the mountains appeared to be entirely deserted, they determined to proceed. The sailors were still obliged to drag Golownin, whose sufferings were so great that he preferred lying down on the snow, and sliding down the steep sides of the hills. On this day he had a fearful adventure, which he thus describes; "Having ascended to a considerable height, we suddenly found ourselves at the foot of a steep rock, which we could not climb without the greatest difficulty and danger. I had nearly reached the top of the rock, when I found myself under the necessity of loosening my hold of the girdle of Makaroff, who otherwise, overburdened as he was, would not have been able to have gained the summit. I therefore placed the toes of my sound foot firmly against a stone, and throwing

my right arm round a young tree, which was so much bent down that it inclined almost horizontally, I resolved to wait until Makaroff should reach the top, and be able to release me from my perilous situation. But, powerful and vigorous as Makaroff was, his great exertions had so overcome him, that he no sooner reached the summit, than he fell to the ground almost in a lifeless state. At this moment, the stone against which I rested my foot detached itself, and rolled to the bottom of a deep hollow which the rock overhung. I was thus left hanging by one hand, without the possibility of obtaining any other support, owing to the excessive smoothness of the rock.

"The rest of the sailors were at no great distance, but fatigue rendered them unable to afford me any assistance. Makaroff still lay stretched upon the ground, and Mr. Chlebnikoff was laboring to climb the rock at another point. Having remained in this dreadful situation for several minutes, my hand began to smart severely, and I was on the point of ending my sufferings by precipitating myself into the gulf, more than a hundred fathoms beneath me, when Makaroff, suddenly recovering, beheld my situation, and hastened to my assistance. Resting his foot upon a stone which projected from the rock under my breast, he with one hand grasped a branch of the tree. With my hand which was free I then seized his girdle, and, by a great effort on his part, I was drawn to the top of the rock. We were no sooner both safe, than Makaroff again fell down in a state of insensibility. Had either the stone or the branch of the tree given way, we must both have been precipitated to the bottom, and have perished."

"Meanwhile, Mr. Chlebnikoff had climbed to the middle of the rock, when such obstacles presented themselves that he could neither move backward nor forward. The sailors immediately tied together the sashes they wore as girdles, and, having lowered one end until he was enabled to take hold of it, drew him from his perilous situation."

They passed the night on the summit of one of the highest mountains of Matsmai, but were not able to sleep much on account of the intense cold. Next morning they cooked some garlic and sorrel for breakfast, and then descended toward the sea-shore, by the bed of a torrent—a path so difficult, that a single false step would have dashed them to pieces. Toward evening they found some deserted huts, in which they passed the night with tolerable comfort. On the 27th they emerged from the hills, and were cautiously making their way northward at some distance from the shore, when they suddenly saw a party of soldiers on horseback. They had barely time to conceal themselves among some bushes, and the men passed on without discovering them. After dark they descended to the shore, which they followed all night, passing through a number of fishing villages, without being seen by any one. They found several boats, but all were too small for their purpose.

The two following days were spent in the same manner, the fugitives proceeding along the sea-shore at night, and hiding themselves among

the hills by day. But they now began to suffer severely from hunger, and felt more than ever the necessity of procuring a boat. They were thoroughly exhausted by the fatigues they had undergone, and yet were unable to make much progress on account of the distance between the shore and the hills, which they were obliged to traverse twice a day. On the night of the 29th, while traveling over the ridges in the dark, Mr. Chlebnikoff slipped and fell into a deep hole. They called, but received no answer. "We then tied our girdles together," says Golownin, "and fastening the one end about Wassiljeff, let him down into the hole into which Mr. Chlebnikoff had fallen. We lowered him gradually as far as the length of our united sashes would admit, and then drew him up again. Wassiljeff informed us, that, notwithstanding the depth to which he had descended, he could not discover the extent of the hole; and that he called Mr. Chlebnikoff, but received no answer. We therefore resolved to remain on the spot until daylight, and then to lower another of our party into the hole, to ascertain whether Mr. Chlebnikoff was yet living.

"We remained for two hours in a state of the most painful uncertainty respecting the fate of our companion. We at length heard a rustling among the grass, and on looking round, to our great joy and astonishment, we beheld him. It appeared that he had first rolled down about two fathoms from the surface, when something stopped him, and he endeavored to climb up again; he however slipped a second time, and fell perpendicularly into a pit, to the depth of some fathoms. Fortunately there were no stones at the bottom of the pit, but he was, nevertheless, severely bruised. He at length succeeded in climbing up the side of the pit, and reached the spot where he surprised us by his unexpected appearance. After resting for a short time, he again walked on, though complaining of severe pain in every part of his body. Even now, my memory never reverts without horror to the frightful gulfs and huge rocks of Matsmai."

On the night of the 1st of May, while passing through a village on the shore, they observed a boat in the water, and a tent near it. They advanced to inspect the boat, but Schkajeff, hoping to find some provisions in the tent, entered, thrusting out his hand, and grasped the head of a man who was sleeping there. The man cried out loudly, and the fugitives ran off and concealed themselves behind a stone wall. On returning some time afterward, they found a man sitting up in the boat, and keeping watch. The approach of morning drove them once more among the hills. Daylight surprised them on the side of a barren mountain, covered only here and there with a few scanty bushes. They beheld footpaths on every side, and villages along the shore, as far as the eye could see. They concealed themselves as well as they could, but soon after sunrise observed a woman on an opposite hill, who was looking at them and making signals to some persons whom they could not see. In a few minutes they were surrounded, and though Golownin and Maka-

roff escaped at first, they were all ultimately recaptured, bound, and taken back to Matsmai under a strong guard.

They were immediately taken before the bunyo and examined. Mr. Moor, who was present, took the part of the Japanese, and gave Golownin and his companions much trouble, by contradicting many of their statements. After this examination, they were sent to the city prison, in which the Japanese criminals were confined. Here, after being stripped and searched, Golownin and Chlebnikoff were put into separate cages, and the four sailors in a third, which was larger and better supplied with light and air. Golownin had taken upon himself the whole responsibility of the flight, informing the Japanese that the sailors were bound to obey him, and were therefore not to blame. Nearly every day they were carried before the bunyo and subjected to weary and perplexing interrogatories. Toward the last of June a new bunyo arrived from Yedo, and matters apparently became more favorable, for on the 9th of July they were removed from the city prison to the house which they had occupied previous to their flight.

They were now also treated with more kindness than formerly. "Our guards," says Golownin, "treated us with much civility, giving us sometimes sagi, fruit, etc., and these acts of kindness were no longer performed by stealth. An old man, seventy years of age, brought some fans and lackered spoons for Mr. Chlebnikoff and me, and an ink-stand, ink, and pencil, for Schkajeff, who, though suffering from severe illness, was exceedingly anxious to practice reading and writing. This man, though arrived at the age of thirty-two in total ignorance, had, while on board the sloop, by extreme application, learned to read, and likewise to write a little. To pass away the time, Mr. Chlebnikoff and I took upon ourselves the task of instructing the sailors. Schkajeff, who suffered severely from indisposition, feared lest the others might advance more rapidly than he, and, whenever he experienced the least mitigation of his illness, never failed to employ himself either in reading or writing. He applied to both with unremitted assiduity, while his companions regarded the task of learning to read as too difficult, and abandoned it before they had acquired the alphabet. Mr. Chlebnikoff gave him instructions every evening, so that in time he could read and write tolerably well.

"Nothing remarkable occurred until September; but I can not omit mentioning a circumstance which is characteristic of the customs of the Japanese. One day, a dinner was sent to us of far better quality than that to which we had been accustomed, and it was served in elegant dishes. Every person who visited us congratulated us on receiving this compliment, which we concluded came from the bunyo; but we afterward learned that the dinner had been sent by a rich man, who was suffering under a dangerous fit of illness; and that in such cases it was customary for the Japanese to send presents of that sort to the poor and unfortunate."

On the 6th of September they were conducted to the castle, and to their surprise and joy, received a letter from Lieutenant Rikord, stating that he was at the island of Kunashir with the *Diana*; that he knew not whether they were dead or living, but would not leave until he had received news of them. This letter was accompanied with an application to the Japanese government for their release. These papers were translated and forwarded to Yedo; but in a fortnight afterward the Japanese interpreters announced to Golownin that Rikord had sailed back to Siberia, taking with him five of the crew of a Japanese vessel which he had encountered. About the middle of October another letter was delivered to Golownin. It was from Lieutenant Rudakoff, and stated that on first arriving at Kunashir they were informed that the prisoners had been put to death. They then determined to commence hostilities, and accordingly captured a Japanese junk, from the crew of which they learned that their friends were still alive. They had, nevertheless, taken the master of the junk and four sailors with them, and would return early the next year, to procure Golownin's liberation.

"A ray of hope now began to dawn upon us," says Golownin, "and seemed to rescue us from utter despair. Thus perplexed between the expectation of liberty and distrust of the Japanese, we entered upon the new year, 1813." During the winter and spring, they lived in a state of great trouble and perplexity, on account of the singular conduct of Mr. Moor, who sometimes appeared to repent of his past baseness, and to desire to regain their confidence, while at other times, he did all in his power to prejudice the Japanese against them. His behavior was so extraordinary that Golownin was forced to believe that his mind was disordered, and subsequent occurrences confirmed him in his opinion. "On the 10th of May," says the narrative, "the note which we had requested permission to dispatch to the different fortified harbors, to inform our friends that we were living and well, was returned from the capital. The government had approved of its contents, and consequently not a single letter could be altered. Having made five copies, and affixed our signatures to each, they were dispatched on the same day to their several destinations. This note was to the following effect:

"We are all, both officers and seamen, and the Kurile Alexei, alive,  
and in Matsmai. WASSILY GOLOWNIN.  
"May 10, 1813. FEDOR MOOR."

"Mr. Chlebnikoff was unable to sign the notes on account of severe illness."

On the 20th of June they received information of the arrival of the *Diana* at Kunashir, and on the following day the interpreters received orders to ask Golownin which of the sailors he wished to send on board. To avoid showing any preference to one more than another, he determined that chance should decide the matter, and the lot happened to

fall to Simanoff. He also requested that the governor would permit Alexei to accompany him. To this the latter consented, and they received orders to prepare for their departure. They left Matsmai on the 24th, accompanied by Kamaddschero, the interpreter, and Sampey, the deputy governor.\*

Nothing further happened until the 19th of July, when a letter was received from Captain Rikord, stating that he should sail immediately for Okhotsk, and return in September, bringing the declaration required by the Japanese government, that Chwostoff's attack was an act of private aggression merely. A few days afterward, Simanoff and Alexei were brought back to Matsmai, the *Diana* having sailed. From this time forward the prisoners were kindly treated. The Japanese government appeared to have decided to liberate them, and they were relieved from the torturing suspense which they had suffered for nearly two years. On the 30th of August they left Matsmai, for Hakodadi; previous to their departure, the officers came, with their children, to bid them farewell, and offered them farewell cards. The people, who had assembled in great multitudes in the streets, all pressed forward to bid them adieu. On the 2d of September, they entered Hakodadi, and were quartered in an imperial building, near the garrison.

On the 16th, they were rejoiced with the news that a foreign vessel

\* In Captain Rikord's account of his negotiations with the Japanese for the release of Golownin and his companions, he gives the following description of Simanoff's arrival. Tatchatay-Kachi, the Japanese junk owner, whom Rikord had carried off the previous summer, informed him on the 26th of June, that an imperial vessel was about to arrive from Matsmai, with the deputy of the bunyo. The next evening the vessel came into port, and Kachi went on shore to meet the deputy, promising to return in the morning. Rikord then continues: "Faithful to his appointment, we saw him in the morning coming down to the shore, in company with another man. Kachi was instantly recognized by the white handkerchief which he always waved at the end of his saber; and with respect to the other, we did not remain long in uncertainty, for as they advanced, our worthy little friend occasionally vanished from our view, in consequence of falling behind his more bulky companion. We all exclaimed, 'That is one of our Russians.'

"It is impossible for me to describe the moving scene which followed, when our sailors beheld their comrade returned from captivity. A part of the crew were filling water-casks at the rivulet. When the prisoner saw Russians on the other side of the stream, and probably recognized among them some of his old messmates, he made but one step to its banks, leaving Kachi at least nine paces behind him. Surprise and joy made our sailors forget that they were prohibited from crossing the rivulet. They waded through it, and embraced the welcome visitor in the most affectionate manner. The officer who had the command of the party on shore informed me, that at first he did not know the stranger, he was so altered by the sufferings he had undergone. At last, all the men cried out with one voice, 'Simanoff!' for that was his name. He then threw off his hat, knelt down, and could not utter a word; but the tears rolled fast down his cheeks. This affecting spectacle was renewed when he came on board the ship. I saluted him first, and asked whether our friends in Matsmai were well. 'God be praised,' he replied, 'they are in life, though not all quite well. Mr. Ohlebnikoff, in particular, is dangerously ill.' I repressed my desire to ask further questions, knowing the impatience with which the men were waiting for a talk with him."



had been seen off the coast. This was the *Diana*, but she did not enter the harbor of Hakodadi until the 28th. Captain Rikord immediately sent on shore the declaration of the commandant of Okhotsk, which was satisfactory to the authorities; for, after some further negotiations and ceremonies, the prisoners were finally summoned before the bunyo on the 6th of October, to receive the official notice of their liberation. The bunyo presented them with the following congratulatory address: "You have now lived three years in a Japanese frontier town, and in a foreign climate, but you are now about to return to your native country. This affords me great pleasure. You, Captain Golownin, as the chief of your companions, must have endured extreme anxiety of mind, and I sincerely rejoice that you have attained your happy deliverance. You have, in some measure, become acquainted with the laws of our country, which prohibit us from maintaining any commerce with the people of foreign nations, and require that we should banish all foreign vessels from our coasts. Explain this to your countrymen on your return home. It has been our wish, while you remained in Japan, to treat you with all possible kindness; but, before you became acquainted with our customs, our behavior may have appeared to you the very opposite of what we intended. Each nation has its peculiar customs, but good conduct will everywhere be esteemed as such. On your return to Russia, inform your countrymen of this likewise. I wish you all a safe voyage."

"On the following day, the 7th of October, we put on our best dresses. The servants and guards packed up our other clothes in boxes, without omitting the least trifle, and placed them in the portico of the house. At mid-day we were conducted to the shore. Our clothes, the presents we had received, and the provisions for our voyage, were carried behind us by a number of attendants. On reaching the harbor, we entered a building near the custom-house, where Mr. Moor, Mr. Chlebnikoff and I, were shown into one apartment, and the sailors into another. We had been only a few moments in this place, when Captain Rikord came ashore, accompanied by Mr. Saweljeff, the interpreter, and some other individuals. Rikord and his two companions were conducted to the same apartment in which, a few days before, my interview with him had taken place, and which Mr. Chlebnikoff, Mr. Moor and I, were now requested to enter.

"Every thing being in readiness for our departure, we were conducted to the bunyo's barge, in which we embarked, accompanied by Tachatay-Kachi; our clothes, provisions, and the presents, being placed in separate boats. On our way from the custom-house to the boats, all the Japanese, not only those with whom we were acquainted, but the strangers who were looking on, bade us adieu, and wished us a safe voyage.

"The officers and seamen on board the *Diana*, received us with a degree of joy, or rather enthusiasm, which can only be felt by brothers or dear friends after a long absence, and a series of similar adventures. With regard to ourselves, I can only say, that after an imprisonment of two years, two months, and twenty-six days, on finding ourselves again

ut she did not enter Rikord immediately Okhotzk, which was er negotiations and before the bunyo on their liberation. The story address: "You own, and in a foreign ative country. This , as the chief of your mind, and I sincerely rance. You have, in our country, which the people of foreign ign vessels from our return home. It has eat you with all possi- with our customs, our osite of what we in- ut good conduct will urn to Russia, inform a safe voyage."

we put on our best other clothes in boxes, n in the portico of the ore. Our clothes, the our voyage, were car- eaching the harbor, we Mr. Moor, Mr. Chleb- the sailors into another. when Captain Rikord interpreter, and some ons were conducted to my interview with him Moor and I, were now

eparture, we were con- arked, accompanied by presents, being placed n-house to the boats, all ere acquainted, but the wished us a safe voyage. ana, received us with a only be felt by brothers s of similar adventures. fter an imprisonment of a finding ourselves again

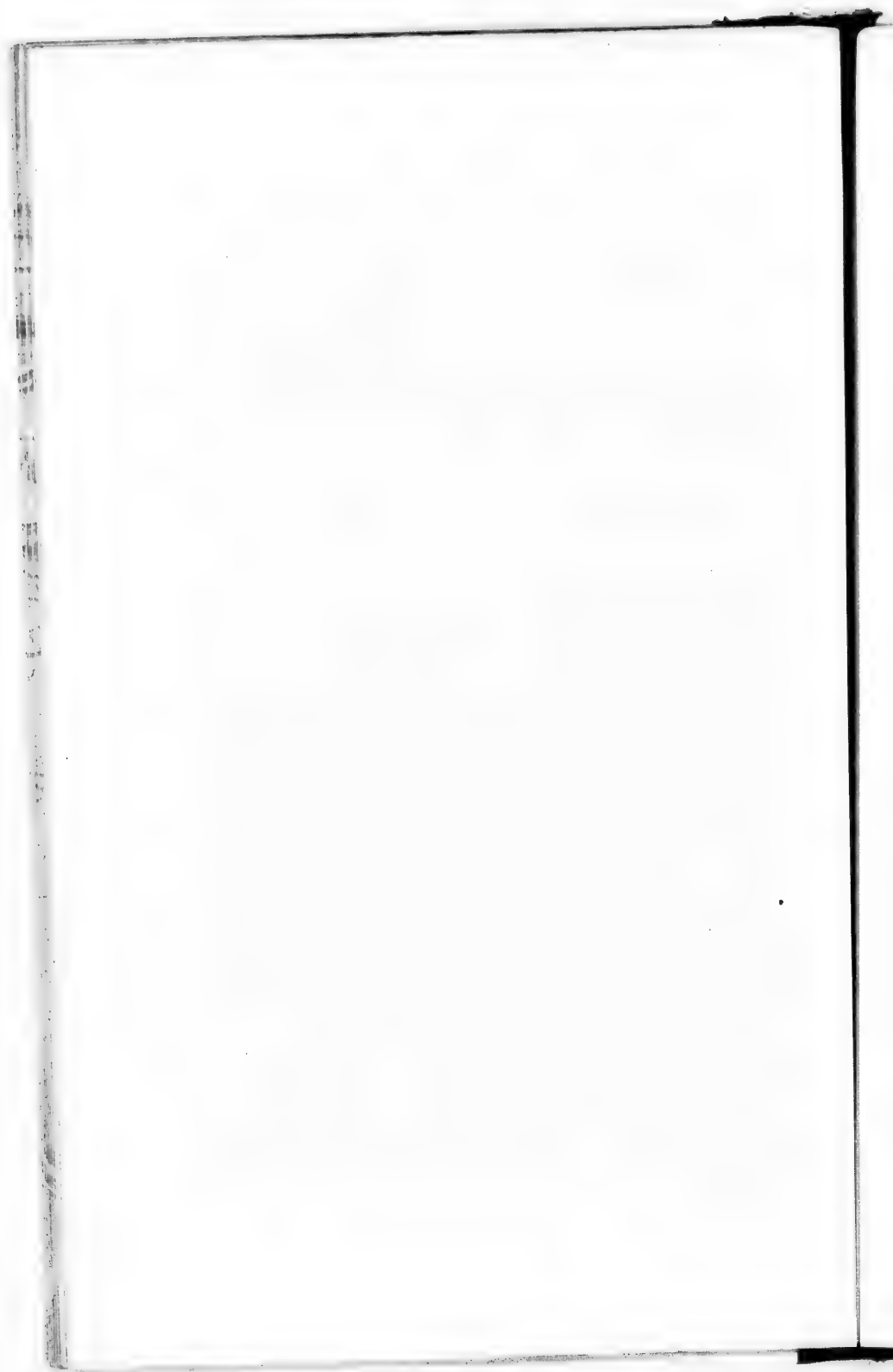
on an imperial Russian ship, surrounded by our countrymen, with whom we had for five or six years served in remote and dangerous voyages, we felt what men in such circumstances are capable of feeling, but which can not be described.\*

The *Diana* sailed from Hakodadi on the 10th of October, and reached Kamtschatka on the 2d of November. Twenty days afterward, Mr. Moor, who had been plunged in melancholy since his liberation, committed suicide. Captain Golownin lost no time in proceeding to St. Petersburg, where he arrived on the 14th of July, 1814, after an absence of seven years. He and Rikord were made Captains of the second rank, and received pensions of 1500 rubles annually; Mr. Chlebnikoff received a pension equal to his yearly pay, while the sailors who had been prisoners in Japan, received permission to retire from the service, and were allowed annual pensions, amounting to their full yearly pay. The Kurile, Alexei, as a reward for his good conduct, was presented with a hanger, and received, instead of a pension, twenty pounds of powder, and forty pounds of shot.

\* Captain Rikord, in his narrative, gives the following account of this scene: "At twelve o'clock I went on board the barge, accompanied only by Saveljeff and Kisseleff, and we rowed, under white flags, to the well-known building, where the Japanese were in waiting to receive us. Our prisoners immediately appeared at the door. They all wore yellow dresses, with seamen's trousers, and waistcoats of various colors. On any other occasion we should have been highly diverted by the singularity of their appearance, but now it did not even excite a smile. Friend gazed at friend with emotion and joy, and our thoughts were expressed more by looks than by words. Tears of gratitude to Providence glistened in the eyes of our liberated countrymen. The Japanese retired and left us for some time alone, in order that we might give vent to our feelings. My countrymen were then formally delivered over to me. The papers of the Japanese government, which I was to lay before the authorities on my arrival in Russia, were presented to me, and refreshments were then handed to us in the usual manner.

"Having once more expressed our sincere thanks, we rowed from the shore at two o'clock, accompanied by a countless number of boats, crowded with Japanese of both sexes. Notwithstanding a violent adverse wind, none of the numerous boats by which we were surrounded put back. The *Diana* was decorated with flags, and all her yards were manned by the crew, who saluted us with three cheers. The enthusiasm of the seamen, on once more beholding their beloved commander and his companions in misfortune, after a separation of two years and three months, was boundless. Many melted into tears. This scene, so highly honorable to the whole crew, can never be effaced from my recollection. Golownin and his companions, who were moved to their inmost souls, knelt down before the sacred image of the ship (the miracle-working Saint Nicolas), and returned thanks to heaven.

"Golownin presented to me his sword; the same which, during his captivity, the emperor of Japan had expressed a wish to see, and I now preserve it as the most valuable reward of my enterprise. To the officers he gave his telescopes, pistols, and astronomical instruments. He gave to the senior non-commissioned officer one hundred rubles; to the juniors seventy-five; to each seaman twenty-five; and to the sailors who had been his companions in captivity five hundred rubles each. But to Makaroff, who, as the reader knows, was of particular use to him, he besides granted a pension, amounting to a seaman's annual pay, from his estate in the government of Kasan. To the Kurile, Alexei, he gave a set of carpenters' tools, a rifle, powder, shot, tobacco, and two hundred and fifty rubles in money."



## DE LASCARIS'S

### SECRET MISSION AMONG THE BEDOUINS.

---

M. DE LASCARIS was a Piedmontese, of one of those Greek families which settled in Italy after the conquest of Constantinople; he was a knight of Malta when Napoleon conquered the island. He was then a very young man: he followed the Corsican to Egypt, attached himself to his fortunes, and was fascinated by his genius. Foreseeing Napoleon's future eminence, he endeavored to impress upon his mind that Asia was a far grander field for his ambition than Europe. It appears that some conversations were held on the subject: Napoleon did not entirely embrace the idea of a magnificent oriental empire which was the bewildering dream of De Lascaris; but, on the eve of his departure for Europe, he appointed the latter his secret agent, gave him instructions and supplied him with ample means.

De Lascaris settled himself at Aleppo, to acquire a thorough knowledge of Arabic, and form acquaintances with the Arab chiefs of the Syrian Desert who came to that city. After some years' preparation, he commenced his perilous enterprise; he passed, at great risk, and under different disguises, through all the tribes of Mesopotamia and the Euphrates, and returned to Aleppo, rich in the knowledge he had acquired, and in the political relations he had prepared for Napoleon. But while accomplishing his mission, fortune overthrew his hero, and he learned his downfall on the very day when he was about to carry to France the fruits of his danger and devotion. This disappointment was fatal to him; he went into Egypt, and died at Cairo, alone, unknown, and abandoned. His journals and notes are supposed to have fallen into the hands of Mr. Salt, then English Consul at Cairo, and were never afterward heard of.

While M. de Lamartine was traveling in Syria, he learned, accidentally, that an Arab named Fatallah Sayeghir, who was the companion of De Lascaris on all his journeys, and who had kept a journal of all his experiences and adventures, was then living at Latakia. Lamartine immediately sent a messenger to Fatallah, offering him two thousand piastres.

ters for the journal. The offer was accepted in the course of time, the volume translated into Italian by Lamartine's interpreter, and finally into French by the poet himself. Although exaggerated and romantic in parts, it is valuable for its illustrations of the life and habits of the wandering Bedouin tribes of the Syrian Desert, and its descriptions of some localities (especially in the district of Nedjid), which no European traveler has yet reached. Many of the adventures related have a strong tinge of improbability about them, and the reader must bear in mind that the narrator is an Arab, and not likely to be free from the habit of exaggeration peculiar to his race. Lamartine, however, seems to entertain no doubt of the truth of his story.

Fatallah Sayeghir first met with M. Lascaris de Ventimiglia in Aleppo, in 1809, when he was engaged to give him lessons in Arabic. When M. Lascaris had learned to read and write tolerably well, he gave Fatallah some money and told him to buy goods, such as were saleable at Homs, at Hama, and the neighborhood, saying that they would trade in the countries least frequented by merchants. Fatallah had become attached to M. Lascaris, and accordingly made the purchases, for which M. Lascaris paid eleven thousand piasters. From his dress and manners the people of Aleppo thought M. Lascaris mad. He wore his beard long and ill-combed, a very dirty white turban, a shabby robe, with a vest, a leather belt, and red shoes without stockings; when spoken to he pretended not to understand what was said. But Fatallah had confidence in his integrity and good sense, and, in compliance with his request, promised to obey him in every thing.

They left Aleppo on the 18th of February, 1810, with a caravan bound for Hama. While at the latter place, M. Lascaris was viewing the half-ruined castle, and had begun to take a sketch of it, when some vagabonds ran out upon him from a broken arch and threatened to denounce him for wishing to carry off treasures and introduce the *giaours* into the castle. He defended himself and escaped with difficulty, but soon afterward he and his companion were arrested and thrown into a dungeon. Fatallah sent for a Christian writer named Selim, by whose interference they were enabled to purchase their liberty. They remained three weeks with Selim and his friends, and on the 25th of March proceeded with a caravan to Homs. During a stay of thirty days at this place, M. Lascaris obtained much information respecting the Bedouins, from a locksmith who passed much of his time with them, arranging their arms. They then pursued their route to Sadding, where they unpacked their goods, to sustain their character of merchants. The shekh and people of the village endeavored to dissuade them from visiting the Bedouins, whom they represented as most cruel and rapacious; but the travelers, nothing daunted, continued their journey to Corietain, still hoping to meet with a detachment of Bedouins, who pass this region in their annual migrations. Meanwhile, the locksmith Naufal, who accompanied them from Homs, advised them to change their names, as their

course of time, the preter, and finally stated and romantic e and habits of the its descriptions of which no European related have a strong must bear in mind from the habit of ver, seems to enter-

de Ventimiglia in lessons in Arabic. erably well, he gave ch as were saleable at they would trade atallah had become urchases, for which e dress and manners wore his beard long robe, with a vest, a spoken to he pre- llah had confidence ce with his request,

10, with a caravan ascaris was viewing ch of it, when some d threatened to de- troduce the giaours with difficulty, but and thrown into a ed Selim, by whose ty. They remained 25th of March pro- thirty days at this cting the Bedouins, ith them, arranging dad, where they un- rchants. The shekh em from visiting the d rapacious; but the ey to Corietain, still o pass this region in a Naufal, who accom- their names, as their

own would create suspicion in the Bedouins and Turks. Accordingly, M. Lascaris took the name of Shekh Ibrahim el Cabressi (the Cyprian), and gave to Fatallah that of Abdallah el Katib. The Shekh Selim, of Corietain, likewise endeavored to discourage them from penetrating into the desert, and repeated a thousand alarming stories about the Bedouins, but when M. Lascaris consulted Fatallah, the latter encouraged him to proceed, saying that if he acted honorably there was nothing to fear.

"In a short time," says Fatallah, "we learned that the Bedouins were approaching Palmyra: some were seen even in the environs of Corietain. Presently there came one, named Selame el Hassan. We were at Selim's when he entered. Coffee was brought, and while we were taking it, many of the inhabitants came to the shekh, and said: 'Eight years ago, at such a place, Hassan killed our relative; and we are come to demand justice.' Hassan denied the fact, and asked if they had witnesses. 'No,' they replied; 'but you were seen passing alone on the road, and a little after we found our relative lying dead. We know that there existed a cause of hatred between you; it is therefore clear that you are his assassin.' Hassan still denied the charge; and the shekh, who from fear was obliged to exercise caution with the Bedouins, and besides had no positive proof in the case, took a piece of wood and said, 'By Him who created this stem, swear that you have not killed their relation.' Hassan took the wood, looked at it some minutes, and bent down his head; then raising it toward his accusers, 'I will not have,' said he, 'two crimes on my heart—the one of being the murderer of this man, the other of swearing falsely before God. It is I who have killed your kinsman: what do you demand for the price of his blood?' The shekh, from policy, would not act according to the full rigor of the law: and the persons present being interested in the negotiation, it was decided that Hassan should pay three hundred piasters to the relations of the dead. When it came to the payment of the money, he said he had it not about him, but that he would bring it in a few days; and as some difficulty was made of letting him go without security, 'I have no pledge,' said he, 'to give; but He will answer for me whose name I would not profane by a false oath.' He departed; and four days afterward returned with fifteen sheep, each worth above twenty piasters."

M. Lascaris being pleased with the character of Hassan, made his acquaintance; they became intimate friends, and when the travelers proposed to set out for Palmyra, he engaged to conduct them thither in safety. On their way M. Lascaris dislocated his ankle while mounting his camel, but he would not be detained, and they continued their route. Soon afterward they met a troop of armed Bedouins, who immediately gave battle. Hassan went forward to meet them, and sustained the attack for half an hour, but he was at length wounded by a lance and fell from his horse. The Bedouins then began to plunder the party, when Hassan, who lay bleeding upon the ground, thus addressed them: "What are you about, my friends?—will you then violate the laws of



Arabs, the usages of the Bedouins? They whom you are plundering are my brethren—they have my word; I am responsible for all that may befall them, and you are robbing them!—is this according to honor?" The Bedouins charged him with conducting Christians to Palmyra, without asking the permission of the shekh, Mehanna el Fadel, the chief of the country. He replied that the merchants were in haste, and Mehanna was far away; that he had pledged his word, and the strangers had confided in the laws and usages of his country. At his words the Bedouins desisted, and only took from the travelers what they chose to give. They then pursued their journey with difficulty, M. Lascaris suffering from his foot and Hassan from his wound, and arrived at Palmyra on the following day.

Here they hired a house and exposed their goods for sale, until M. Lascaris had recovered, when they went to visit the temples and magnificent ruins of the place. "One day," says Fatallah, "we saw many people engaged in surrounding with wood a beautiful granite column. We were told it was to burn it, or rather to cause it to fall, in order to obtain the lead which was in the joinings. Shekh Ibrahim, full of indignation, addressing me, exclaimed, 'What would the founders of Palmyra say if they beheld these barbarians thus destroying their work? Since chance has brought me hither, I will oppose this act of Vandalism.' And having learned what might be the worth of the lead, he gave the fifty piasters they asked, and the column became our property. It was of the most beautiful red granite, spotted with blue and black, sixty-two feet in length, and ten in circumference."

At length the approach of the Bedouins was announced, and one day a party of eleven horsemen arrived, among whom was the Emir Nasser, the eldest son of Mahenna, chief of the tribe of El Hassanee. M. Lascaris was overjoyed, and on being presented to the emir, received assurances of protection from all harm. He then invited Nasser to eat with him, as the Bedouins regard it an inviolable pledge of fidelity to break bread with any one. The dinner appeared excellent, and after coffee, when they began to speak of different things, M. Lascaris related to Nasser the adventure with six horsemen of his tribe. The emir wished to punish them and restore the money, but the travelers intreated him not to do so. They would have set out with him next day, but he induced them to await the arrival of his father, who was eight days' journey distant. He promised to send them an escort and camels to carry their baggage.

Eight days afterward three men came with the camels, and a letter from Mehanna el Fadel, bearing his welcome and the promise of his protection. Their preparations were soon made, and early next morning they left Palmyra. They met a great many Bedouins, who questioned their conductors, and passed on. After a march of ten hours, the plain appeared covered with tents, and they reached the camp of Mehanna. They entered the tent of the emir, who received them with proofs of

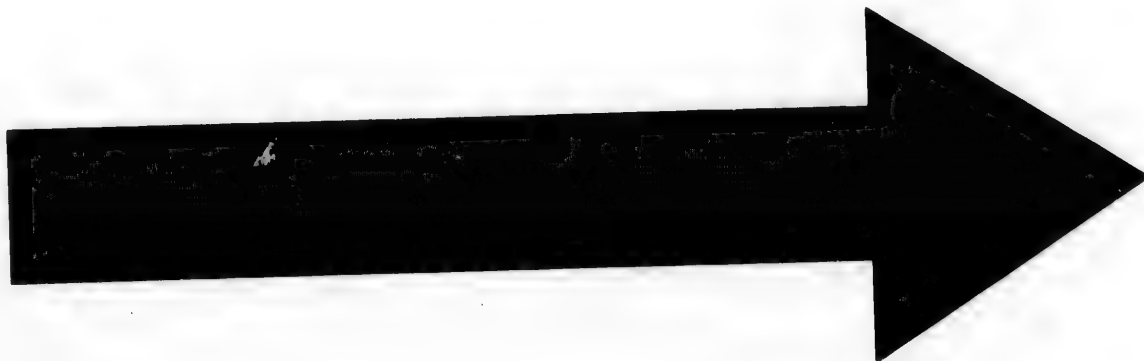
ON.

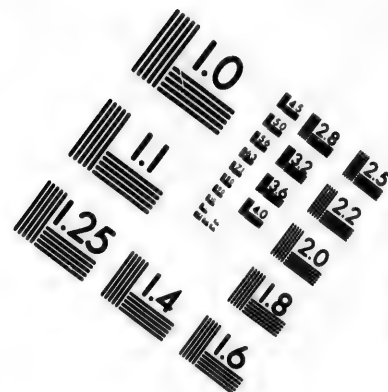
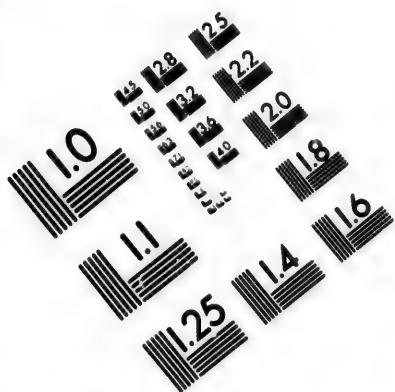
you are plundering  
nsible for all that  
this according to  
ing Christians to  
Mehanna el Fadel,  
ants were in haste,  
his word, and the  
country. At his  
ravelers what they  
difficulty, M. Las-  
und, and arrived at

s for sale, until M.  
temples and mag-  
ah, "we saw many  
ful granite column.  
to fall, in order to  
rahim, full of indig-  
ne founders of Pal-  
roying their work?  
act of Vandalism."  
ne lead, he gave the  
r property. It was  
nd black, sixty-two

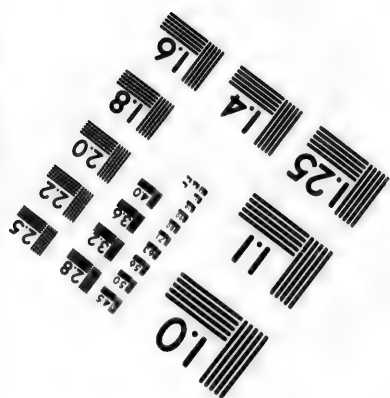
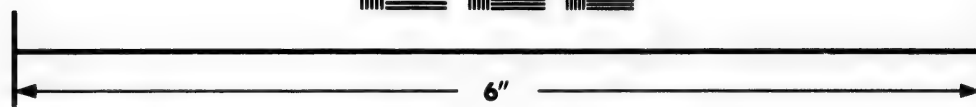
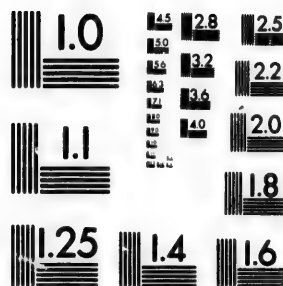
ounced, and one day  
as the Emir Nasser,  
Hassnnee. M. Las-  
emir, received assur-  
l Nasser to eat with  
of fidelity to break  
nt, and after coffee,  
Lascaris related to  
e. The emir wished  
velers intreated him  
next day, but he in-  
was eight days' jour-  
and camels to carry

o camels, and a letter  
ne promise of his pro-  
early next morning  
uins, who questioned  
f ten hours, the plain  
e camp of Mehanna.  
them with proofs of





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1983**



the highest consideration. Next day he had a camel killed to regale them, a mark of high respect, as the Bedouins measure the importance of the stranger by the animal they kill to welcome him.

After enjoying their hospitality for three days, the travelers opened their bales, and sold many articles, upon most of which they lost more or less. Fatallah did not understand this mode of dealing, but M. Lascaris reminded him of their conditions, and he continued to sell according to the wishes of his patron.

One day they saw fifty well-armed horsemen arrive, and hold a long consultation with Nasser and his cousin, Shekh Zamel. Fatallah carried a present to the wife of Nasser and learned that her husband had many enemies among the Bedouins, who hated him for humbling the national pride, and exalting the power of the Turks, with whom he sought alliance. The object of the meeting was to concert a plan of attack; the next day they would assail the tribe El Daffir, take their flocks, and do them all the mischief possible. This intelligence was perplexing to M. Lascaris, who, while endeavoring to attach himself to a tribe hostile to the Osmanlis, found himself with a chief allied to them. Next morning, a party of three hundred marched out; three days afterward, they made their triumphal entry, preceded by one hundred and eighty camels, taken from the enemy. Some time afterward, Nasser received from Soliman, the pasha of Acre and Damascus, a message, engaging him to come and receive the command of the desert, with the title of Prince of the Bedouins. Overjoyed, he departed for Damascus with ten horsemen.

Mehanna having ordered the departure of the tribe, the next morning by sunrise not a single tent was standing; all was folded up and loaded, and the departure began in the greatest order. Twenty chosen horsemen formed the advance guard; then came the camels with their loads, and the flocks; then the armed men, mounted; after these the women, those of the chiefs in rich *howdahs*; the camels loaded with baggage and provisions were behind. The line was closed by the Emir Mehanna, mounted on a dromedary, and surrounded by his slaves, the rest of the soldiers, and the servants, on foot. It was truly wonderful to witness the order and celerity with which the departure of eight or nine thousand persons was effected. M. Lascaris and Fatallah were on horseback, sometimes ahead, and sometimes by the side of Mehanna. When they halted, the Bedouins sprang to the ground, fixed their lances, and fastened their horses to them; the women ran on all sides, and pitched their tents near their husbands' horses; and thus, as if by enchantment, they found themselves in the midst of a large city.

On the fourth day, they were attacked by the tribe of Daffir, who sought to revenge themselves on Nasser, and succeeded in carrying off some of the flocks. The Bedouins murmured, attributing their mishap to the caprice and vanity of Nasser. Mehanna sent a courier to his son, who immediately returned with an officer of the pasha, and a letter threatening vengeance on all who should exhibit a rebellious spirit.



Nasser made such display of his new dignity that he still further offended the Bedouins. A young chief of a neighboring tribe, who had listened with impatience to his vauntings, rose hastily, and told him that the Bedouins detested him, and threatened to depart from Bagdad and join Ebn Chahllan, the Drayhy, or Destroyer of the Turks. On the following day, he actually set out with his tribe for the country of Geziri, and a combination against Nasser was talked of in all quarters. Mehanna remonstrated with his son, but the latter still endeavored to tranquilize him. The Bedouins meanwhile took sides with one or the other, the greater part, however, with the father. Mehanna was highly esteemed among the Bedouins; his influence arose from his noble and generous heart, and from being the chief of a very ancient and numerous family.

In October, they were in the neighborhood of Aleppo, and Fatallah rejoiced to find himself so near home, but his contract was such that he could not communicate with his friends. M. Lascaris wished to spend the winter at Damascus, and with great difficulty they succeeded in reaching Corietain, where they were cordially received by their friends. They reported an advantageous speculation, while in reality, between presents and horses, they had nothing left but some goods they had deposited at this place. After a long delay, they finally departed on their journey, as winter was setting in. M. Lascaris rode a miserable horse, and Fatallah a donkey, and they proceeded with four men of the village as guides. In a defile between two mountains they were attacked by twenty Bedouin horsemen, who stripped them of nearly all their clothing, leaving them their sorry beasts, which were hardly able to walk. "Night came on," says Fatallah, "and the cold was excessive, and deprived us of the use of speech. Our eyes were red, our skin blue; at the end of some time I fell to the ground, fainting and frozen. Shekh Ibrahim, in despair, made gesticulations to the guides, but was unable to speak. One of them, a Syrian Christian, took pity upon me and the grief of Shekh Ibrahim; he threw down his horse, which was also half dead with cold and fatigue, killed it, opened the belly, and placed me, without consciousness in the skin, with only my head out. At the end of half an hour, I regained my senses, quite astonished at finding myself alive again, and in so strange a position. Warmth restored my speech; and I earnestly thanked Shekh Ibrahim and the good Arab. I took courage and found strength to proceed. A little after, our guides cried out, 'Here's the village!' and we entered the first house. It belonged to a farrier, named Hanna el Bitar. He showed a lively sympathy in our situation, set about covering us both with camel-dung, and gave us a little wine—a few drops at a time; having thus restored our strength and warmth, he withdrew us from our dunghill, put us to bed, and made us take some good soup. After a sleep, which was indispensable, we borrowed two hundred piasters to pay our guides and carry us to Damascus, which we reached the 23d of December, 1810."

One day, in the bazaar, a Bedouin, with whom they had broken bread

in Nuarat el Nahaman, came to them, and after renewing their friendship, he invited them to visit the tribe of Waled Ali, to which he belonged, whose chieftain, Douhi, was known to them. They consented, and at the time agreed upon, he arrived with camels and guides, with which they set out on the 15th of March, 1811. The tribe was at Misarib, three days from Damascus, and after passing the nights in the open air, they were amid the tents of Waled Ali by sunset on the third day. The tents, surrounded by horses, camels, goats, and sheep, formed a pleasing scene. The Emir Douhi received them with marked distinction, and made them sup with him. He commanded five thousand tents, and three tribes, which were joined to his.

M. Lascaris was anxious to visit the drayhy, and had instructed Fatallah to gain every information respecting his character, mode of life, and the access to him, directing him at the same time to study the manners and customs of the Bedouins, to adopt their dress and imitate their usages, so as to pass absolutely for one of them, as he should depend on him to make the journey thither. For this purpose he prolonged their stay, and visited the three tributary shekhs of the Emir Douhi, directing Fatallah to take exact notes of all he saw and learned. Of these people Fatallah observes :

"The numerous tribes are often obliged to divide themselves into detachments of from two hundred to five hundred tents, and to occupy a large space, in order to procure water and pasturage for their flocks. We went successively through their encampments, until we could find means to transport ourselves to the drayhy, who was at war with the tribes of the territory of Damascus. We were universally well received. In one tribe it was a poor widow who showed us hospitality. In order to regale us, she killed her last sheep and borrowed bread. She informed us that her husband and her three sons had been killed in the war against the Wahabees, a formidable tribe in the neighborhood of Mecca. Expressing our astonishment that she should rob herself on our account, 'He that enters the house of the living,' said she, 'and does not eat, it is as though he were visiting the dead.'"

At length the drayhy arrived in Mesopotamia, and they engaged a Bedouin of a neutral tribe to take them to him, but when they went to Corietain for their goods, they heard of a victory gained by a son of the drayhy over Nasser, which gave renewed violence to the war. The tribe of Salkeh, to which their guide belonged, had been attacked by the drayhy, and no one dared to cross the desert. M. Lascaris was in despair; in his exasperation he even found fault with Fatallah. The latter then requested an understanding in their relations, declaring it madness to attempt this journey for the purpose of trading, but adding that if M. Lascaris had other motives adequate to the exposure of life, he must let him know them, and he would find him ready to sacrifice himself in his service. M. Lascaris then told him that this commerce

was merely a pretext to conceal a mission with which he was charged from Paris. These were his instructions :

- " 1. To set out from Paris to Aleppo.
- " 2. To find a zealous Arab, and to attach him to me as interpreter.
- " 3. To acquire a knowledge of the language.
- " 4. To go to Palmyra.
- " 5. To penetrate among the Bedouins.
- " 6. To become acquainted with all the chiefs, and to gain their friendship.
- " 7. To unite them together in the same cause.
- " 8. To induce them to break off all alliance with the Osmanlis.
- " 9. To get acquainted with the whole desert, the halting-places, and where water and pasturage are to be found, as far even as the frontiers of India.
- " 10. To return to Europe, safe and sound, after having accomplished my mission."

Fatallah resolved to go on foot to the drayhy. He went to Wardi, the man who had saved him from perishing on the way to Damascus. This man first tried to dissuade Fatallah from the rash undertaking, but afterward engaged to go with him as a guide.

"It was essential," says Fatallah, "that I should be covered with rags, in order not to excite suspicion or cupidity if we were discovered on the road. This was my costume for the journey: a coarse cotton shirt pieced; a dirty torn gombaz; an old caffé, with a bit of linen, once white, for a turban; a sheep-skin cloak with half the wool off, and shoes mended to the weight of four pounds: besides these, a leather belt, from which hung a knife worth two paras, a steel, a little tobacco in an old bag, and a pipe. I blackened my eyes and dirtied my face, and then presented myself to Shekh Ibrahim to take my leave. On seeing me, he shed tears. 'May God,' said he, 'give you strength enough to accomplish your generous design! I shall owe every thing to your perseverance. May the Almighty be with you and preserve you from all danger! may he blind the wicked, and bring you back that I may reward you!' I could hardly refrain from tears in my turn. At last, however, the conversation becoming more cheerful, Shekh Ibrahim said, smilingly, that if I were to go to Paris in this costume, I should get much money by showing myself. We supped; and at sunset we departed. I walked without fatigue till midnight; but then my feet began to swell. My shoes hurt me, and I took them off; the thorns of the plants the camels browse on pricked me, and the small stones wounded me. I tried to put on my shoes; and in continual suffering I walked on till morning. A little grotto gave us shelter for the day. I wrapped my feet in a piece of my cloak that I tore off, and slept without having strength to take any nourishment."

At sunrise, on the seventh day, they reached the Euphrates; some hospitable Bedouins took them into their tents, where for the first time

they made a hearty meal. They learned that the drayhy was three days distant, and that it was his intention to annihilate Mehanna and Nasser, and return to his desert near Bassora and Bagdad. Fatallah therefore took a guide and set forward. He represented himself as a merchant of Aleppo, having a correspondent at Bagdad who owed him twenty-five thousand piasters, and that in consequence of the war he was obliged to risk the journey himself, and put himself under the protection of the drayhy. The emir received him politely and welcomed him, but, according to custom, could not speak of business until after three days devoted to hospitality and repose. The emir happened to be in want of a secretary, and Fatallah, who offered to assist him for the moment, so gained his confidence by his information respecting the tribes he had visited, that the emir desired him to stay. Fatallah seemed to yield, and soon persuaded the emir to cross the Euphrates in order to gain over the tribes by his presence, and strike terror to his enemies. As this was his first march into Mesopotamia, the advice and information of Fatallah was a great resource to him.

"The departure," says Fatallah, "was superb to witness. The horsemen before, on horses of high pedigree; women on howdahs magnificently draped, and on dromedaries, surrounded by negro slaves. Men, loaded with provisions, were running throughout the caravan, calling out: 'Who is hungry?' and distributing bread, dates, etc. Every three hours a halt was made, to take coffee; and at night the tents were raised as if by enchantment. We followed the banks of the Euphrates, whose clear waters gleamed like silver: I myself was mounted on a mare of pure blood; and the whole journey appeared like a triumphal march, presenting a strong contrast with my former passage over the same country, in my rags and with my tortured feet."

They soon encamped on the Damascus territory, and kept advancing westward. The emir received a threatening letter from Mehanna, and replied in terms of defiance. By Fatallah's advice he sent word to the neighboring shekhs that he had come to free them from the yoke of the Osmanlis. Seven out of ten declared for him and came and encamped around him. Hearing that Mehanna had sent to the Turks for assistance, the drayhy immediately marched out his forces to attack him, and gained a brilliant victory. In a few days Mehanna returned with the Turks, but in their encounters the advantage was on the side of the drayhy, and Nasser fell in an engagement between his troops and those commanded by Zaher, the son of the drayhy.

As they were now very near Corietain, Fatallah proposed to go for Shekh Ibrahim, whom he had often spoken of as his master and superior in wisdom, when the emir had praised him for his sage counsels. The drayhy accepted the offer with eagerness, and gave Fatallah a strong escort. Fatallah was overjoyed at again seeing M. Lascaris, and spent the night in relating all that had passed. Next day they returned to

the camp, where Shekh Ibrahim was received with the highest distinction by the emir.

Soon afterward an attack of the Wahabees cost the drayhy some horsemen and much cattle. Next day M. Lascaris told Fatallah that the drayhy was just the man he wanted, but that it was indispensable he should become the chief of all the Bedouins from Aleppo to the frontier of India, and further that he looked to Fatallah to arrange the matter, by friendship, by threats, or by artifice. Fatallah set about the task imposed upon him by first endeavoring to inspire the Bedouins with a high idea of Shekh Ibrahim; to this end some chemical experiments were employed, and prophecies were conveyed by Fatallah to the drayhy, concerning his future greatness. The people began to regard Shekh Ibrahim as a superior being, and the drayhy made him and Fatallah eat with his wife and daughters-in-law, in the interior of their tent, instead of eating with strangers in the *rabha*, or outer apartment.

Meanwhile a peddler who was supplanted by the strangers, began to calumniate them before the Bedouins, beginning with the women, whom he persuaded that they were magicians, who wished to transport their daughters to a far country, and throw a spell around the women that they might have no more children; that thus the race of Bedouins would become extinct and the Frank conquerors take possession of the country. They soon felt the effects of this; the girls fled at their approach, the women called them opprobrious names, the elderly ones threatened them. At length these intrigues of Absi the trader were discovered, and the drayhy would have put him to death, but by the intercessions of Shekh Ibrahim and Abdallah he was only banished from the tribe. He now spread wider his aspersions, and even went to Damascus with the intelligence that two Frank spies had gained the confidence of the drayhy. From his aspersions Solyman Pasha sent an officer to the drayhy with a threatening letter ordering him to give up the two infidels to his officer, that they might be taken in chains to Damascus, and publicly executed. The drayhy was highly incensed, but Fatallah took him aside and begged permission to settle the affair. He knew that M. Lascaris had married a Georgian in Egypt, who proved to be a cousin of Solyman Pasha, and that subsequently at Acre his wife had made known her relationship to the pasha, and was loaded by him with kindness and presents, as well as her husband. M. Lascaris therefore wrote to Solyman Pasha, and the officer returned in two days with a most friendly answer, and another to the drayhy, recommending his well-beloved friend, the great Shekh Ibrahim.

The drayhy had been surnamed the exterminator of the Turks, from a grand victory, gained with great slaughter over the Osmanlis commanded by the pasha of Bagdad. From this and many other achievements which M. Lascaris heard of him, he devoted himself more and more to the project of making him master of all the other tribes. The Wahabees were formidable adversaries, who soon afterward fell upon

the highest distinction  
 the drayhy some  
 told Fatallah that  
 was indispensable he  
 Aleppo to the frontier  
 arrange the matter,  
 set about the task  
 the Bedouins with a  
 chemical experiments  
 by Fatallah to the  
 people began to regard  
 made him and Fa-  
 interior of their tent,  
 ter apartment.  
 e strangers, began to  
 with the women, whom  
 ed to transport their  
 ound the women that  
 ace of Bedouins would  
 ossession of the coun-  
 fled at their approach,  
 lderly ones threatened  
 ader were discovered,  
 at by the intercessions  
 ished from the tribe.  
 ent to Damascus with  
 the confidence of the  
 sent an officer to the  
 to give up the two in-  
 ains to Damascus, and  
 sed, but Fatallah took  
 affair. He knew that  
 proved to be a cousin  
 re his wife had made  
 led by him with kind-  
 ascaris therefore wrote  
 two days with a most  
 commending his well-  
 tor of the Turks, from  
 er the Osmanlis com-  
 d many other achieve-  
 ted himself more and  
 the other tribes. The  
 n afterward fell upon

the tribe Waled Ali, and spread over the desert to subdue the Bedouins. Many tribes, alarmed, were about to submit, when M. Lascaris persuaded the drayhy to take the field and declare himself the protector of the oppressed.

"The Wahabees were commanded by a doughty negro, a half-savage, whose name was Abu-Nocta. When he prepares for battle, he takes off his turban and boots, draws up his sleeves to his shoulders, and leaves his body almost naked, which is of prodigious size and muscular strength. His head and chin, never being shaved, are overshadowed by a bushy head of hair and black beard, which cover his entire face, his eyes gleaming beneath the shade. His whole body, too, is hairy, and affords a sight as strange as it is frightful. The drayhy came up to him three days from Palmyra, at a spot called Hieroualma. The battle was most obstinate on both sides, but ended in the flight of Abu-Nocta, who removed to the country of Nedjid, leaving two hundred slain on the field of battle. The drayhy searched out among the spoils all that had been taken from the tribe Waled Ali, and restored it. This act of generosity still further attached to him the affection of the other tribes, who were coming daily to put themselves under his protection. The report of this victory gained over the terrible Abu-Nocta was disseminated everywhere. Solyman Pasha sent the conqueror a pelisse of honor, and a magnificent saber, with his congratulations. Soon after this exploit we encamped on the frontiers of Horan.

"One day, a Turkish mollah arrived at the drayhy's; he wore the large green turban that distinguishes the descendants of Mohammed, a white flowing robe, his eyes blackened, and an enormous beard; he wore also several rows of chaplets, and an inkstand in the form of a dagger at his belt. He rode on an ass, and carried in his hand an arrow. He was come to instill his fanaticism into the Bedouins, and excite in them a great zeal for the religion of the Prophet, in order to attach them to the cause of the Turks. The Bedouins are of great simplicity of character, and remarkable for their frankness. They do not understand differences of religion, and do not willingly allow them to be spoken of. They are deists; they invoke the protection of God in all the events of life, and refer to Him their success or their failures with humble resignation; but they have no ceremonies or obligatory ritual, and make no distinction between the sects of Omar and of Ali, which divide the East. They never inquired what was our religion. We told them that we were Christians; their answer was, 'All men are equal in the sight of God, and are His creatures; we have no right to inquire what is the creed of other men.'"

Fatallah, after visiting Aleppo to procure goods and supplies, re-joined the tribe on the banks of the Euphrates. The chiefs of Bagdad and Bassora came daily to congratulate the drayhy on his victory, and to make acquaintance with Shekh Ibrahim, whose renown had reached them. They felt indebted to him for having counseled the war against



the Wahabees, whose rapacity had become intolerable; whose king, Ebn Sihoud, took the tenth of their flocks and their money, and exacted ablutions and prayers five times a-day, on pain of death. A treaty was concluded in which the chiefs bound themselves to wage a war of extermination against the Wahabees, to obey the great drayhy, Ebn Chahllan, and to listen to no calumnies against Shekh Ibrahim and Abdallah. Couriers were sent to other tribes, and the chiefs mostly signed the treaty willingly; while many who at first objected were prevailed upon by Fatallah, who became an efficient diplomatist of the drayhy.

After some days spent in festivities they passed an arm of the Euphrates and encamped near the tribe of El Cherarah, celebrated for its courage, and also for its ignorance and obstinacy. A friendship existed between its chief, Abed, and the minister of king Ebn Sihoud, and he accordingly refused to join the alliance. Sahen was sent out with five hundred men to attack him, and he returned in three days with one hundred and forty camels and other booty; a few men were killed, but a great number wounded on both sides.

Abed collected his allies and the war daily became more serious. The encampment of the drayhy being now at some distance from the river, the women were obliged to bring water on camels, and on the third day eight hundred of the camels were carried off by the enemy. To avenge this outrage the drayhy advanced rapidly on the tribe of Cherarah, and after marching a day and a half, pitched ten thousand tents near the camp of Abed. A bloody battle seemed inevitable, but Fatallah resolved to prevent it if possible. Knowing that the Bedouins hold women in great respect, and consult them on all their plans, he visited Arquia the wife of Shekh Abed, who was a very superior woman, and by dint of compliments and presents led her on to the subject of the war, and incidentally explained to her the advantages of an alliance with the drayhy. Meanwhile her husband returned to the camp and sent orders to Arquia ignominiously to dismiss the spy, as the rites of hospitality would prevent him from taking vengeance. She haughtily refused, and in the end prevailed on Abed to listen to the proposals of Fatallah. A few days afterward he set his seal to the treaty and exchanged the camels taken in the war.

Having come near Bagdad, M. Lascaris secretly repaired thither to the French consul, to negotiate for a large sum of money. After crossing the Tigris, they learned that a sanguinary war was raging between the Bedouins, who took part for or against the alliance. They pushed on, and on reaching the frontiers of Persia met a messenger from the chief, Dehass, who demanded the assistance of the drayhy against enemies numbering fifteen thousand tents. They were six days distant from this tribe, but by marching day and night, without halting to eat, they accomplished the distance in three days. The greatest fatigue fell on the women, who were obliged to make the bread, and milk the camels, without delaying the caravan. Fatallah thus describes this ambulatory kitchen:

erable; whose king, money, and exacted leath. A treaty was to wage a war of ex- great drayhy, Ebn kh Ibrahim and Ab- chiefs mostly signed ected were prevailed ist of the drayhy.

and an arm of the Eu- nah, celebrated for its

A friendship existed Ebn Sihoud, and he was sent out with five three days with one men were killed, but

became more serious. distance from the river, and on the third day the enemy. To avenge tribe of Cherarah, and ousand tents near the able, but Fatallah re- at the Bedouins hold their plans, he visited superior woman, and to the subject of the ages of an alliance with to the camp and sent y, as the rites of hospi- She haughtily refused, e proposals of Fatallah. aty and exchanged the

etly repaired thither to f money. After cross- ar was raging between alliance. They pushed a messenger from the he drayhy against ene- were six days distant without halting to eat, e greatest fatigue fell on and milk the camels, with- this ambulatory kitchen:

"At certain regulated distances women were placed, who were employed without relaxation. The first, mounted on a camel laden with wheat, had a hand-mill before her. The corn once ground, she passed the meal to her neighbor, whose business it was to knead it with water, carried in budgets suspended on the sides of her camel. The dough was then handed to a third woman, who baked it in the form of cakes on a chafing-dish, with charcoal and straw. These cakes she distributed to the division of warriors, whose food she was charged to provide, and who came every minute to demand their portion.

"Other women walked beside the camels to milk them into *cahahs*,—wooden pails, containing four litres: these were passed from hand to hand to slake the thirst of the troops. The camels ate as they marched, from bags hung round their necks; and when their riders wished to sleep, they lay at their length on the camels, their feet secured in the sacks to protect them from falling. The slow and measured step of the camels invites to sleep, and I have never slept better than on this march."

Next day a letter was sent to the five hostile chiefs, but their reply being warlike, Fatallah was dispatched with presents. With but a single guide he had nearly reached the tent of Mohdi when the advanced guard rushed upon them, stripped them of every thing, and left them upon the burning sand in chains. Soon afterward the perfidious Absi approached Fatallah, spit in his face, and insulted him with threatening words, then withdrew to excite the Bedouins, who came, men, women, and children, to overwhelm him with outrages. Toward the evening of the second day a young man came up and drove away the children, and afterward brought some food. In the night he loosed his fetters, and Fatallah returned to his friends. The battle raged with fury two days, after which the two armies lay facing each other inactive. On the third day of truce the chief Saker came with a single attendant to the camp of the drayhy, to ransom his son, who was among the prisoners. His presence led to explanations, the calumnies of Absi were removed, and he ended by signing the treaty. M. Lascaris told him their intention was to open a passage from the coasts of Syria to the frontiers of India, to an army of a hundred thousand men, under a powerful conqueror, who would relieve the Bedouins from the yoke of the Turks, restore to them the sovereignty of the country, and open to them the treasures of India. He also explained that the religious fanaticism of the king of the Wahabees would counteract their plans, as his love of dominion, which had already made him master of Yemen, Mecca, and Medina, would extend his pretensions to Syria. Saker entered fully into these views, and promised to use all his influence with the other tribes. It was agreed that he should be chief of the Bedouins of the country they were now in, as the drayhy was of those of Syria and Mesopotamia. Next day he sent word that the chiefs Mohdi and Duakhry no longer opposed their projects.

M. Lascaris deferred the project of pushing on to the frontiers of India, until the following year, when the Saker would have had time to prepare the tribes to second him. After a few days the army returned to Mesopotamia. As they continued their journey they learned that the tribe of El Calfa was encamped at Zualma, and Fatallah, with an escort of six men on dromedaries, was sent to negotiate with Jassem, its shekh. They arrived at the spot in three days, but found no traces of the camp. They now wandered three entire days without finding either water or food, and Fatallah's strength was failing, when his companions descried a well, and with a cry, darted forward. Fatallah fell to the ground in despair, and his companions had to return to assist him. "At length," he writes, "we arrived at the well, and one of them leaning over the parapet, drew his saber, declaring he would cut off the head of the first man who dared approach. 'Be governed by my experience,' said he, 'or you will all perish.' The authoritative tone he assumed had its effect upon us, and we all obeyed in silence. He called us one by one, beginning with me, and made us first lean over the margin of the well to inhale some of its moisture. Then drawing a small quantity of water, he wetted our lips with his fingers; by degrees he allowed us to drink a few drops, then a small cup full; and having pursued this rational treatment for three hours, he said, 'You may now drink without risk; but if you had not listened to me, you would have been all dead men; for drinking without precaution, after long privation, is certain destruction.' We passed the night on this spot, drinking continually, as much for nourishment as to slake our thirst, which, notwithstanding this indulgence, seemed insatiable."

After some time they discovered the tribe they were in quest of, and being kindly received by Jassem, Fatallah accomplished his mission satisfactorily, and returned to the drayhy. Fatallah, having learned that Mehanna el Fadel had formed a coalition against the drayhy, persuaded M. Lascaris to consult the Pasha Solyman, at Damascus. They repaired thither and obtained a firman requiring the governors of Homs and Hama to respect and obey the Drayhy Ebn Chahllan, supreme chief of the Desert of Damascus. Meanwhile Mehanna advanced nearer, certain of the co-operation of the Osmanlis; but the drayhy sent the pasha's firman to Homs and Hama, and the two governors placed their troops at his disposal, declaring Mehanna a traitor for calling on the Wahabees, the most inexorable enemies of the Turks. Mehanna made preparations for the struggle, and sent his son Fares to Homs for assistance which had previously been promised by the governor, but the latter threw Fares in prison, and Mehanna, dismayed, found himself precipitated from the supreme command, and obliged, not only to submit to the drayhy, but even to solicit his protection against the Turks. The drayhy at first refused to accept the submission of Mehanna, until M. Lascaris interposed in his behalf. Fatallah thus relates their reconciliation:

"The drayhy yielding at last, the principal men of the tribe marched

forward to meet Mehanna, an attention due to his years and rank. As soon as he alighted, the drayhy assigned him the seat of honor in the corner of the tent, and ordered coffee to be brought. Mehanna hereupon rose: 'I will drink none of thy coffee,' said he, 'till we shall be completely reconciled, and have buried the seven stones.' At these words the drayhy also rose; they drew and mutually presented their sabers to be kissed; after which they embraced, and the example was followed by their attendants. Mehanna with his lance made an opening in the ground, in the center of the tent, about a foot in depth; and choosing seven small stones, he said to the drayhy, 'In the name of the God of peace, for your guaranty and mine, we thus for ever bury our discord.' As the stones were cast into the hole, the two shekhs threw earth over them, and trod it down with their feet; the women signaling the ceremony with deafening shouts of joy: at its termination the chiefs resumed their seats, and coffee was served. From that moment it was no longer allowable to revert to the past, or to mention war. I was assured that a reconciliation, to be according to rule, ought always to be solemnized in this form."

Their united forces amounted to seven thousand and six hundred tents, and the drayhy now became chief of all the Bedouins of Syria. Saker went to Homs to solicit the deliverance of Fares, whom he brought back attired in robes of honor, to take part in the general rejoicing.

Some days afterward the drayhy marched against the Wahabees, who were besieging Palmyra, and encountered them at El Duah, without coming to a pitched battle. "Here," says Fatallah, "I had leisure to appreciate the advantage of the *mardoufs* in these wars of the desert, in which it is always necessary to carry about the commissariat of the army, and often for a considerable time. These camels, mounted each by two soldiers, are like moving fortresses, provisioned with every thing necessary for the nourishment and defense of their riders. A budget of water, a sack of flour, and another of dried dates, a jar of sheep's butter, and the munitions of war, are formed into a sort of square tower on the animal's back. The men, conveniently placed on each side on seats composed of cordage, thus carry with them every thing of which their temperate habits have need. When they are hungry, they knead a little of the meal with butter, and eat it in that state without baking; a few dates and a small quantity of water completing their moderate repast: nor do they quit their post to sleep, but throw themselves across the camel in the manner I have already described." The next day's engagement was more serious, and on the third the enemy fled, leaving the drayhy in possession of the field. Having no longer any enemies to fear in the Syrian Desert, M. Lascaris went to Homs to buy merchandize and write to Europe. They at length set out to return, and at night their guides persuaded them not to halt till they had completed the journey. In crossing a mountain at midnight, Fatallah's horse lost its footing, and he was hurled down a tremendous

precipice. He was picked up insensible, but life was not quite extinct, and though his recovery was despaired of for two or three months, he was finally restored to tolerable health.

The drayhy was obliged to pursue his migrations eastward, and M. Lascaris remained with Fatallah. Ten months passed away, and another spring had come, when a courier announced to them the approach of the Bedouins. In a few days they rejoined the drayhy, who was overjoyed at the recovery of Fatallah. It was now reported that the Wahabees, who intended the conquest of Syria, were approaching with a formidable army, which spread terror and devastation every where on its passage. The drayhy requested auxiliary troops of the Pasha of Damascus, and "while waiting for the expected reinforcements," says Fatallah, "he caused a solemn declaration of war to be made, according to the custom of the Bedouins on very particular occasions, in the following form: A white female camel was selected, and blackened all over with soot and oil; reins made of black hair were then put over her, and she was mounted by a young maiden dressed in black, with her face and hands also blackened. Ten men led her from tribe to tribe, and on reaching each she proclaimed aloud three times—'Succor! succor! succor! Which of you will make this camel white? she is a relic from the tent of the drayhy menacing ruin. Fly, fly, noble and generous defenders! The Wahabees are coming! they will carry away your allies and your brothers: all you who hear me, address your prayers to the prophets Mohammed and Ali, the first and the last!'

"Saying which, she distributed among the tribe handfuls of black hair, and letters from the drayhy, indicating the place of rendezvous on the banks of the Orontes."

The camp of the drayhy was soon augmented by the coalition of thirty tribes, and the Pasha of Damascus sent his nephew Ibrahim Pasha with ten thousand men to Hama, there to wait for other troops from Acre and Aleppo. When they had met, the drayhy and Ibrahim Pasha, assisted by Fatallah, arranged their plan of defense. In two days the enemy appeared and established their camp, composed of fifty tribes and seventy-five thousand tents, at one hour's distance from the allies.

"Ibrahim Pasha," continues Fatallah, "was in consternation, and sent in great haste in search of the drayhy, who, having succeeded in reanimating his courage a little, returned to the camp, to order the necessary entrenchments. For this purpose all the camels were assembled, bound together by their knees, and placed in double files in front of the tents; and, to complete the rampart, a trench was dug behind them. The enemy on his part did the same, and the drayhy ordered the Hatfe to be prepared. This singular ceremony consists in selecting the most beautiful among the Bedouin girls, to be placed in a houdah, richly ornamented, borne by a tall white camel. The choice of the maiden who is destined to occupy this honorable but perilous post is very important, for the success of the battle depends almost entirely upon

her. Placed opposite to the enemy, and surrounded by the bravest warriors, it is her duty to excite them to the combat: the principal action always takes place around her, and prodigies of valor defend her. All would be lost should the *hatfe* fall into the enemy's hands; and, to avoid so irreparable a misfortune, half the army must always be stationed about her. Warriors succeed each other on this point, where the battle is always hottest, and each comes to gather enthusiasm from her looks. A girl named Arkin, uniting in an eminent degree courage, eloquence, and beauty, was chosen for our *hatfe*. The enemy also prepared his, and the battle soon afterward commenced."

After several days of severe fighting, during which the drayhy's forces suffered heavy loss, a last, desperate effort was made, resulting in the total defeat of the Wahabees. The drayhy made a triumphal entrance into Hama, escorted by the chiefs of the allied tribes, and was received in a splendid manner by the governor and the agas.

Every day tribes arrived from the Nedjid country, deserting the Wahabees to join the drayhy; some attracted by his extraordinary reputation, others driven by dissensions with King Ebn Sihoud. M. Lascaris now saw his hopes realized beyond his most sanguine anticipations; but so long as any thing remained to be done he allowed himself no rest; they therefore crossed the Tigris and entered Persia. Here the fame of the drayhy had preceded him, and the tribes of the country came to fraternize with him, but as M. Lascaris required the co-operation of the great prince, chief of all the Persian tribes, the Emir Sabid el Bokhrani, whose command extends to the frontiers of India, they prolonged their journey to meet him. They dispatched couriers to notify the emir of their approach, and he came to meet them at the head of a formidable army. They were at first intimidated, but he received them cordially, entered readily into their views, and fully understood the importance of the commercial intercourse they were desirous of establishing with India. He promised them the co-operation of all the tribes of Persia under his dominion, and entered into a distinct treaty with them.

They returned by forced marches, and on arriving in Syria, received a courier from the king of the Wahabees, who brought a little piece of paper about three fingers in breadth, and twice as long. On this was a long and imperious letter, concluding with a command to come and see him without fear. On the reception of this letter, a council of war was held, and after having deliberately weighed the perils of the journey against the advantages of the alliance, the drayhy determined to comply with the authoritative invitation. He accordingly set out with a small retinue, accompanied by Fatallah.

In a few days, they overtook a tribe of Wahabees, from whom they were careful to conceal their pipes, for Ebn Sihoud prohibited smoking, and punished any infraction of his laws with death. They soon reached the Nedjid, a country intersected with mountains and valleys, studded



with nomad camps, and abounding in towns and villages, the former of which appear to be very ancient, and attest a former population much richer and more numerous than that by which they are now occupied. The villages are peopled with Bedouin husbandmen; and the soil produces corn, table vegetables, and dates, in abundance.

"At length," continues Fatallah, "after fourteen days' journey, at the pace of our dromedaries, which may be reckoned at triple the distance traversed by a caravan in the same space of time, we arrived in the capital of the Wahabees. The city is surrounded and concealed by a wood of palms, called the palm-trees of Darkisch, which serves it as a rampart, and is so thickly planted as scarcely to admit the passage of a horseman between the trunks of the trees. Having made our way through these, we came to a second barrier, composed of little hillocks of date-stones, resembling a bank of small pebbles, and behind it the town-wall, along which we rode to the entrance-gate, and, passing through it, soon reached the king's palace, a large edifice of two stories, built of white hewn stones.

"Ebn Sihoud, on being informed of our arrival, ordered us to be ushered into an elegant and well-furnished apartment, where a plentiful repast was set before us. This beginning seemed to augur well, and we congratulated ourselves upon not having yielded to the suspicions which had been suggested to us. The same night, having suitably attired ourselves, we were presented to the king; whom we found to be about forty-five years of age, with a harsh countenance, a bronzed complexion, and a very black beard. He was dressed in a robe fastened round the loins by a white sash, a striped turban of red and white on his head, and a black embroidered mantle thrown over his left shoulder, holding in his right hand the scepter of the king of Mahlab, the ensign of his authority. He was seated, surrounded by the grandees of his court, at the extremity of a large audience-chamber, richly furnished with mats, carpets, and cushions. The draperies, as well as the king's habiliments, were of cotton, or the wool of Yemen—silk being prohibited in his dominions, together with every thing that would recall the luxury or customs of the Turks."

Ebn Sihoud greeted them coldly, and when, after a long silence, the drayhy opened the conference, he fiercely replied in a series of charges against him, and growing more and more exasperated as he spoke, concluded by ordering them to leave his presence, and await his pleasure. The drayhy's eyes flashed, and his nostrils dilated, but recollecting himself, he slowly retired. For two days and nights they remained in their apartment, hearing and seeing nothing. On the third day, the drayhy sent a message to the king; his only reply was the sight of twenty-five armed negroes, who ranged themselves before the door. Again he sent to Ebn Sihoud, demanding the right to speak to him. The Wahabee granted an audience, but left them standing, and without responding to their greeting, roughly asked what they wanted. The drayhy replied

illages, the former of  
her population much  
ey are now occupied.  
en; and the soil pro-  
ce.

een days' journey, at  
ned at triple the dis-  
of time, we arrived in  
ded and concealed by  
n, which serves it as a  
limit the passage of a  
aving made our way  
posed of little hillocks  
es, and behind it the  
co-gate, and, passing  
edifice of two stories,

l, ordered us to be ush-  
t, where a plentiful re-  
to augur well, and we  
to the suspicions which  
ing suitably attired our-  
e found to be about for-  
a bronzed complexion,  
be fastened round the  
white on his head, and  
shoulder, holding in his  
ensign of his authority.  
s court, at the extremity  
with mats, carpets, and  
abiliments, were of cot-  
ted in his dominions, to-  
luxury or customs of the

after a long silence, the  
ed in a series of charges  
perated as he spoke, con-  
and await his pleasure.  
ed, but recollecting him-  
ts they remained in their  
the third day, the drayhy  
the sight of twenty-five  
the door. Again he sent  
k to him. The Wahabee  
nd without responding to  
ed. The drayhy replied

with dignity, saying that on the strength of his promises, he had come with only ten men while commanding thousands of warriors: he might crush them like ashes, but from the frontier of India to the frontier of Nedjid, in Persia, in Bussora, in Mesopotamia, Hemad, the two Syrias, Galilee, and Horan, every man who wore the kaftan would take vengeance for his death. He appealed to his honor, to restore him to his country, and openly contend with him, and continued his remarks with assurances that his death would not diminish his tribe, nor extinguish the race of Cholan. The king gradually calmed himself after this language, and said: "Go in peace; nothing but good will happen to you."

Next day, Ebn Sihoud sent for them, and received them very graciously, and presently asked the drayhy about the persons who accompanied him. Fatallah trembled, for he knew the prejudices of the Wahabee. When the drayhy named him, the king, turning toward him, said: "You are, then, Abdallah, the Christian?" On his answering in the affirmative, the king continued: "I see that your actions are much greater than your stature." After some further remarks, he demanded the object of the alliance they had been laboring so many years to accomplish. Fatallah stated the desire of uniting all the Bedouins of Syria under the command of the drayhy to resist the power of the Turks; that they had fought against the armies of Ebn Sihoud at Hama, simply because they were an obstacle to their projects. They were laboring for the drayhy; his power once established in Syria, Mesopotamia, and to the confines of Persia, they were willing to enter into alliance with the king, and become invulnerable in the possession of entire liberty. For this purpose they had now come, and had proved the sincerity of their intentions. The king's countenance cleared up as Fatallah spoke, and when he had ceased, he expressed his satisfaction. Then turning to his slaves, he ordered *three* cups of coffee, which, among the Bedouins, is a mark of the highest consideration. The rest of the visit passed off well, and they retired well satisfied.

"So delighted was I with the recovery of my liberty," says Fatallah, "that I spent all the next day in walking about and visiting every part of Darkisch and its environs. The town, built of white stone, contains seven thousand inhabitants, almost all kinsmen, ministers, or generals of Ebn Sihoud. No artisans are found there. The only trades exercised in the town are those of armorers and farriers, and few persons are engaged even in them. Nothing is to be purchased, not even food, for which every one depends on his own means—that is to say, upon an estate or garden, producing corn, vegetables, and fruits, and affording nourishment to a few fowls. Their numerous herds browse in the plain; and every Wednesday the inhabitants of Yemen and Mecca assemble to exchange their merchandise for cattle; a species of fair, which forms the sole commerce of the country. The women appear unveiled, but throw their black mantles over their faces—a very disgraceful custom: they are generally ugly and excessively dark-complexioned. The gardens,

situated in a charming valley near the town, on the opposite side to that by which we had entered, produce the finest fruits in the world—bananas, oranges, pomegranates, figs, apples, melons, etc., intermixed with barley and maize—and are carefully watered.

"The next morning, the king again summoned us to him, received us very graciously, and questioned me closely respecting the various European sovereigns, especially Napoleon, for whom he testified great admiration. Nothing delighted him so much as the recital of the emperor's conquests; and happily my frequent intercourse with M. Lascaris had furnished me with many details to entertain him with. At the account of every battle, he would exclaim—'Surely this man is an emissary of God: I am persuaded he must be in intimate communion with his Creator, since he is thus singularly favored.' His affability toward me having gradually but rapidly increased, he suddenly changed the subject of conversation, and said at last, 'Abdallah, I desire to hear the truth from you: what is the basis of Christianity?' Aware of the Wahabee's prejudices, I trembled at this question; but mentally praying for Divine inspiration, 'The basis of all religion, O son of Sihoud!' I said, 'is belief in God. The Christians deem, as you do, that there is one only God, the Creator of the universe; who punishes the wicked, pardons the penitent, and recompenses the good; that He alone is great, merciful, and almighty.' 'Very well,' said he; 'but how do you pray?' I repeated the *Pater-noster*; he made his secretary write at my dictation, read and re-read it, and placed it inside his vest; then, pursuing his interrogatory, asked me to which side we turned to pray. 'We pray on all sides,' answered I, 'for God is everywhere.' 'That opinion I entirely approve,' said he; 'but you must have precepts as well as prayers.' I repeated the ten commandments given by God to His prophet Moses, which he appeared to know, and continued his inquiries. 'And Jesus Christ—in what light do you consider him?' 'As the Incarnate Word of God.' 'But he was crucified?' 'As the Divine Word, he could not die; but as man, he suffered for the sins of the wicked.' 'That is marvelous. And the sacred book which God inspired through Jesus Christ, is it revered among you? do you exactly conform to this doctrine?' 'We preserve it with the greatest reverence, and in all things obey its injunctions.' 'The Turks,' said he, 'have made a god of their prophet, and pray over his tomb like idolaters. Cursed be those who ascribe to the Creator an equal! may the saber exterminate them!' The king appeared delighted with our conversation, and said to me—'I see that we may always learn something. I have hitherto believed the Christians to be the most superstitious of men; but I am now convinced that they approach much nearer to the true religion than the Turks.' "

For several days they met in secret conclave with Ebn Sihoud, and an alliance was concluded between him and the drayhy to their mutual satisfaction, the king declaring that their two bodies should be henceforth directed by one soul. He then invited them, for the first time, to

opposite side to that  
uits in the world—  
ns, etc., intermixed

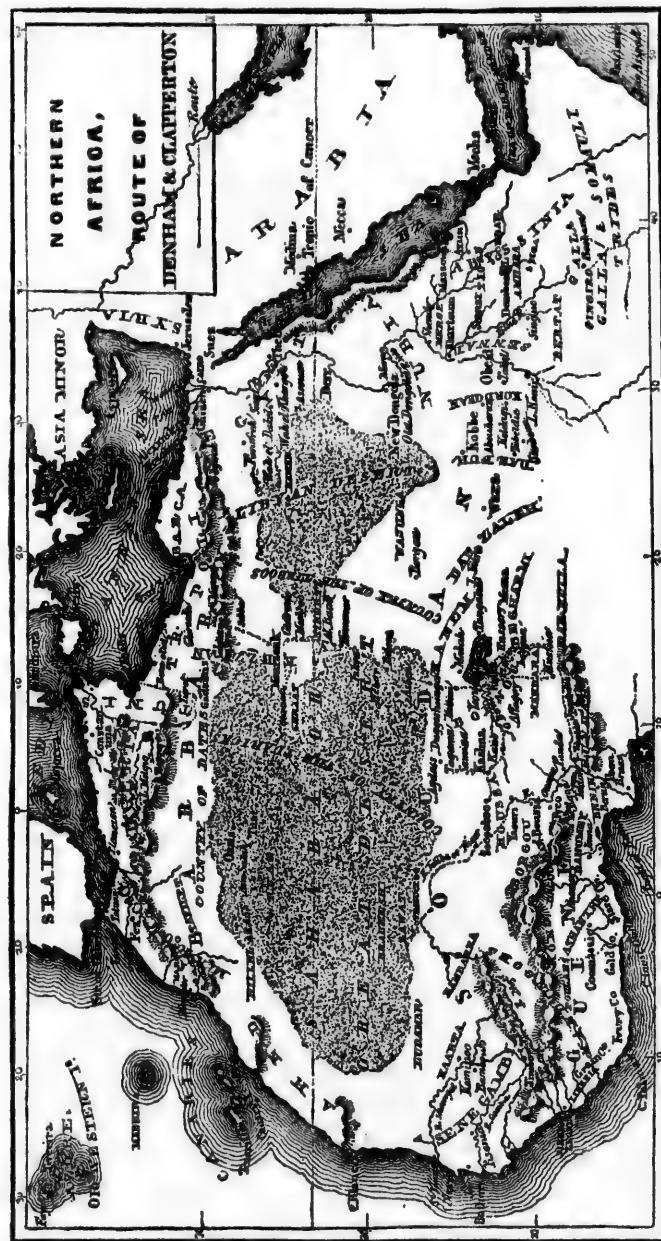
us to him, received  
pecting the various  
n he testified great  
he recital of the em-  
rse with M. Lascaris  
him with. At the  
this man is an emis-  
ate communion with  
affability toward me  
changed the subject  
e to hear the truth  
ro of the Wahabee's  
y praying for Divine  
ud! I said, 'is belief  
ere is one only God,  
ed, pardons the peni-  
e is great, merciful,  
o you pray?' I re-  
rite at my dictation,  
hen, pursuing his in-  
pray. 'We pray on  
hat opinion I entirely  
well as prayers.' I  
His prophet Moses,  
quiries. 'And Jesus  
the Incarnate Word  
Word, he could not  
ked.' 'That is mar-  
through Jesus Christ,  
m to this doctrine?'  
in all things obey its  
god of their prophet,  
those who ascribe to  
hem!' The king ap-  
o me—'I see that we  
ved the Christians to  
nvinced that they ap-  
urks.' "

with Ebn Sihoud, and  
ayhy to their mutual  
dies should be hence-  
, for the first time, to

eat with him, and tasted each dish before it was offered to them. "As he had never seen any one eat otherwise than with their fingers," says Fatallah, "I carved a spoon and fork out of a piece of wood, spread my handkerchief for a napkin, and ate my dinner after the European fashion, which highly diverted him. 'Thanks be to God!' said he, 'every nation believes its customs the best possible, and each is therefore content with its condition.'"

When they returned to their tribe and had recovered from their fatigues, M. Lascaris told Fatallah that all was accomplished and they must now return to give an account of their mission. They left their friends, in the hope of soon seeing them, at the head of the expedition to which they had opened the way. They reached Constantinople in April, after ninety days' traveling, frequently across tracts of snow. Constantinople was ravaged by the plague, and during three months spent in quarantine they heard of the burning of Moscow. M. Lascaris was in despair, and at length determined to return to Syria, there to await the issue of events. They embarked, but a violent storm drove them to Chios, where they again encountered the plague. Having lost their property in the tempest, and being cut off from external communication by the contagion, they were nearly without clothing, and exposed to the greatest privations. Communications being at length restored, M. Lascaris went to a conference with Generals Lallemand and Savary, at Smyrna, and allowed Fatallah meanwhile to visit his mother, whom he had not seen for six years.

While staying at Latakia with his mother, and daily expecting the arrival of a ship which might convey him to Egypt, whither M. Lascaris had ordered him to repair, Fatallah saw a French brig of war enter the port, and hastened to inquire for letters. But the letters only brought the afflicting intelligence of the decease of his benefactor at Cair





## DENHAM AND CLAPPERTON'S

### EXPEDITION TO CENTRAL AFRICA.

AFTER the unsuccessful attempt of Messrs. Ritchie and Lyon to penetrate to the interior of Africa, in 1819, the British government determined to fit out an expedition on a more liberal scale, for the purpose of establishing friendly and commercial relations with some of the almost unknown countries of Soudan. Dr. Oudney first volunteered his services, and, while his plan was under consideration, met with Lieutenant Clapperton, of the royal navy, in Edinburg, in the year 1820. He communicated his design to the latter, who immediately expressed his desire to be associated with him, and the offer was accepted by Lord Bathurst, then Secretary of State. While the preparations for the expedition were going forward, Major Denham volunteered to undertake a journey across the Desert to Timbuctoo, but was afterward, at his own request, associated with Oudney and Clapperton, and received the command of the expedition.

On arriving at Malta, Denham engaged the services of William Hillman, a shipwright in the dock-yard at La Valetta, the latter having volunteered his services on condition of receiving £120 a year. Oudney and Clapperton had already proceeded to Tripoli, where Denham arrived on the 18th of November, 1821. The three travelers immediately called upon the pasha, who received them kindly, and promised to forward the party safely into the interior. They were detained, however, for three or four months, before their preparations were completed, and a favorable opportunity occurred for proceeding to Mourzuk, the capital of Fezzan. "On the 5th of March, 1822," says Major Denham, "I left Tripoli for Benioloed, to join my two companions, who had advanced thither with our servants, horses, camels, and baggage. They had gone on to Memoom, a very pretty valley, which, at this season of the year, was green with herbage, and adorned by flowers of various hues and colors, richly scattered in beautiful disorder—but it was the last of the kind we were fortunate enough to meet with between this place and Bornou."



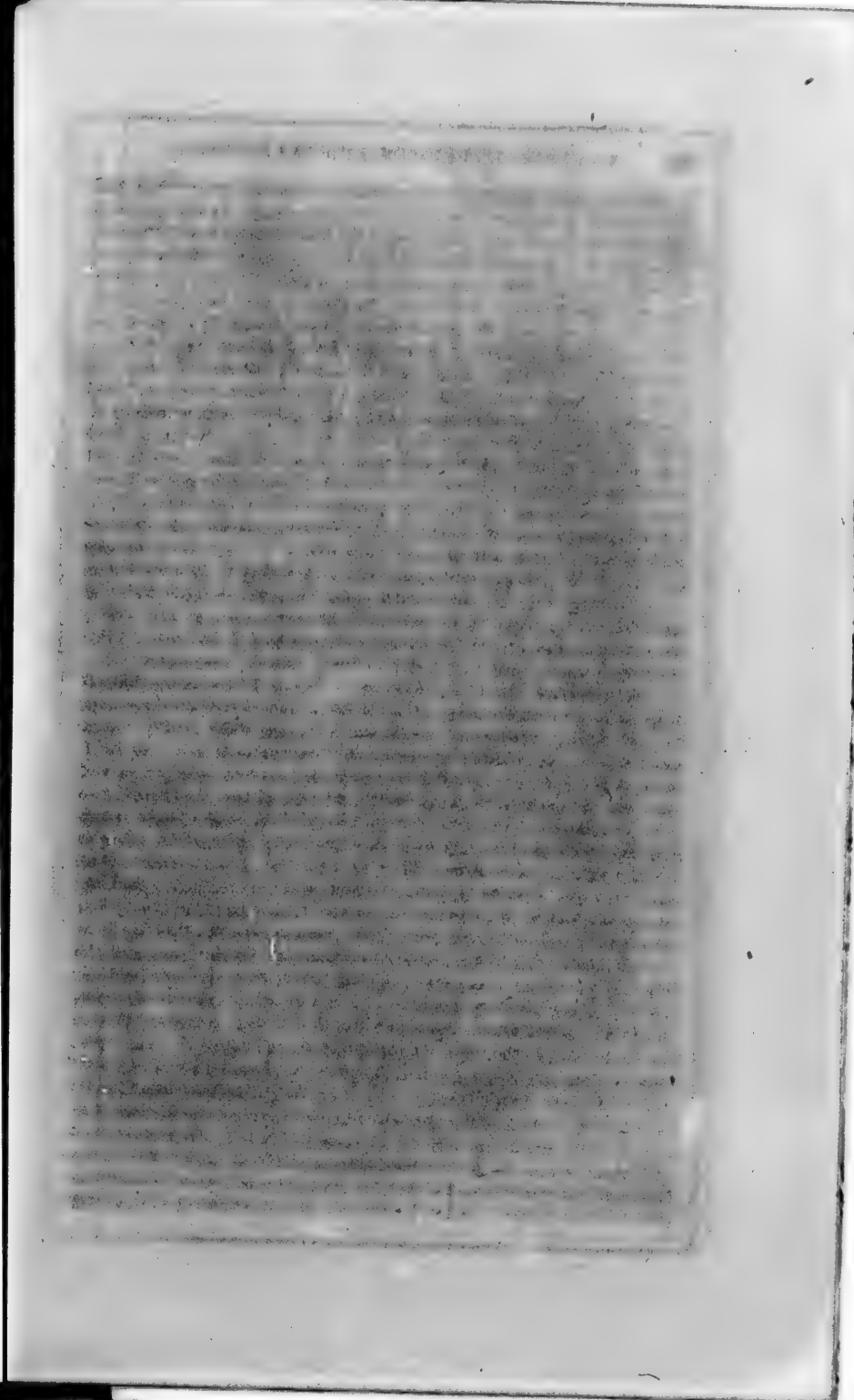
After fourteen days' travel they reached Sockna, a town about half way between Tripoli and Mourzuk. They were met by the governor and principal inhabitants, accompanied by some hundreds of the country people, who crowded around their horses, kissing their hands, and welcoming them with every appearance of sincerity and satisfaction. This reception was very encouraging to them, as they had determined, on setting out, to wear the Frank dress, and to pass for Englishmen and Christians, on all occasions. While walking in the streets of Sockna, two boys accosted them, saying that a beautiful woman wished to see them. "We put ourselves under their guidance," writes Denham, "and entering a better sort of dwelling-house, were quickly surrounded by at least half a dozen ladies, most of them aged; but who asked us a thousand questions, and, when satisfied we were not dangerous, called several younger ones, who appeared to be but waiting for permission to appear. Our dresses and ourselves were then minutely examined. The yellow buttons on our waistcoats, and our watches, created the greatest astonishment; and a pair of loose white trousers that I wore, into the pockets of which I accidentally put my hands, raised their curiosity to a wonderful degree: my hands were pulled out, and those of three or four of the ladies thrust in, in their stead; these were replaced by others, all demanding their use so loudly and violently, that I had considerable difficulty in extricating myself, and was glad to make my escape."

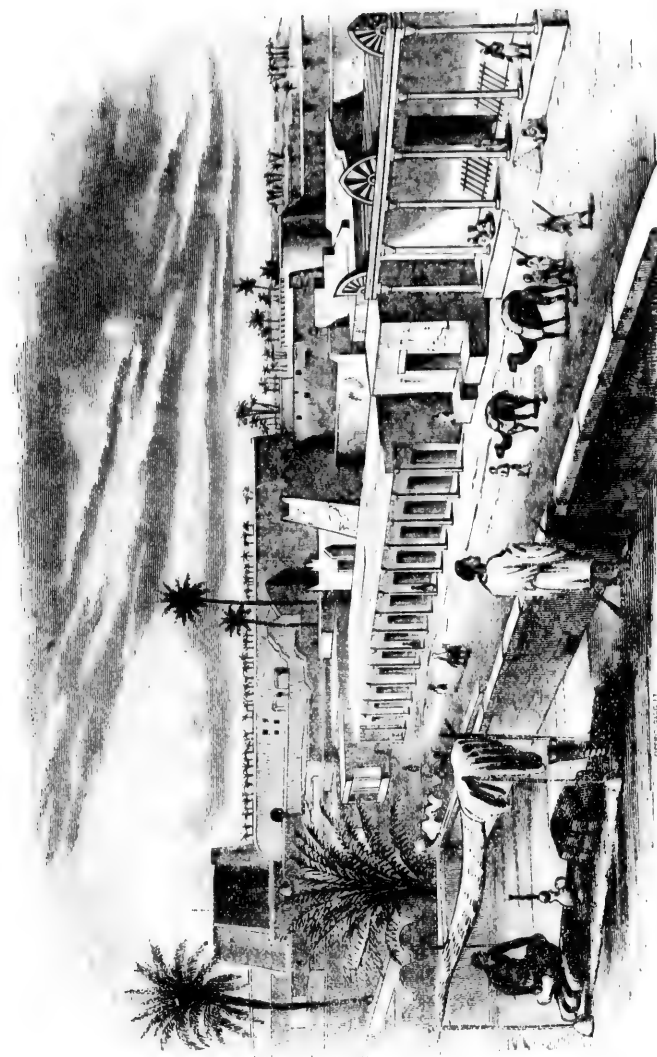
The remaining half of the journey to Mourzuk was more difficult and dangerous than the first. They were sometimes two or three days without finding a supply of water, which was generally muddy, bitter, and brackish; in addition to which they encountered a severe sand-storm. The spot was pointed out to them, strewed with bones and dried carcases, where, the year before, fifty sheep, two camels, and two men perished from thirst and fatigue, when within eight hours' march of a well which the travelers were then anxiously looking for. On the 7th of April they arrived at a village in the midst of a vast multitude of palm-trees, just one day's journey short of Mourzuk. They had neglected sending word to advise the Sultan of their approach, and their reception, consequently, was less brilliant than at Sockna. As they drew near the walls of the city, the next afternoon, they halted to await the return of a messenger whom they had dispatched to give notice of their arrival. After half an hour's delay, the governor of the town came out, and in the sultan's name requested that they would accompany him to the house which had been prepared for them, adding, to their great surprise, that the English consul was there already. "The fact was," Major Denham adds, "that a very ill-looking Jew servant of mine, mounted on a white mule, with a pair of small canteens under him, had preceded the camels and entered the town by himself. He was received with great respect by all the inhabitants—conducted through the streets to the house which was destined to receive us; and from the circumstance of the canteens being all covered with brass shining nails, a very

# PPERTON.

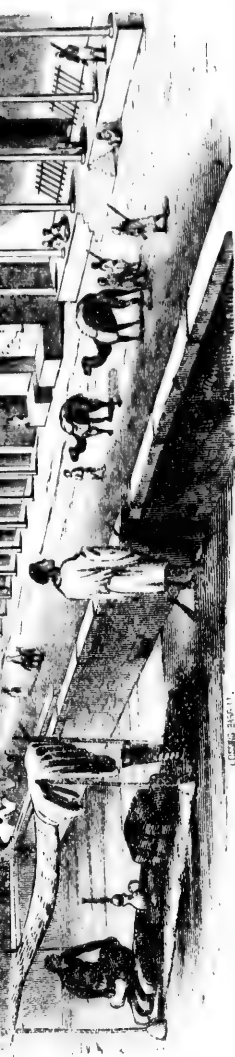
na, a town about half met by the governor hundreds of the coun- assing their hands, and erity and satisfaction. they had determined, ass for Englishmen and the streets of Sockna, woman wished to see writes Denham, "and ckly surrounded by at who asked us a thou- not dangerous, called aiting for permission to nutely examined. The es, created the greatest rs that I wore, into the ised their curiosity to and those of three or ere replaced by others, hat I had considerable make my escape."

zuk was more difficult imes two or three days enerally muddy, bitter, ntered a severe sand- rewed with bones and ep, two camels, and two thin eight hours' march y looking for. On the st of a vast multitude of ourzuk. They had ne- heir approach, and their Sockna. As they drew hey halted to await the ed to give notice of their or of the town came out, ould accompany him to a, adding, to their great eady. "The fact was," g Jew servant of mine, canteens under him, had himself. He was received actet through the streets ; and from the circum- rass shining nails, a very





MOURZUK. Pages 465 and 582.



MOURZUK. Pages 465 and 580.



high idea of his consequence was formed. He very sensibly received all their attentions in silence, and drank the cool water and milk which was handed to him: and we always had the laugh against them afterward, for having shown so much civility to an Israelite—a race they heartily despise. 'We thought the English,' said they, 'were better looking than the Jews—death to their race!—but then God made us all, though not all handsome like Mussulmen, so who could tell?'

Their interview with the sultan of Fezzan was any thing but encouraging. He told them that there was no intention, as they had been led to expect, of any expedition to proceed to the southward for some time to come; that an army could only move in the spring of the year; that the arrangements for moving a body of men through a country where every necessary must be carried on camels, both for men and horses, were so numerous, that before the following spring it was scarcely possible to complete them, as two camels were required for every man and horse, and one for every two men on foot. He read to them the letter of the Pasha of Tripoli, in which it was stated that they were commended to his protection, and were to be permitted to reside in Mourzuk, or any other part of Fezzan, until he (the sultan) had paid a visit to Tripoli. The travelers returned to their house with very disheartened feelings. The heat was intense, the thermometer standing at 97° in the shade.

In a few days after this their hopes were revived by a visit from a rich native merchant, named Boo-Khaloom, who was on the eve of starting for Tripoli, with handsome presents for the pasha. His secret errand was to obtain the removal of Mustapha, the sultan, who, he well knew, was employing his emissaries in Tripoli to have his head taken off after his arrival there. Boo-Khaloom desired to accompany the travelers to Bornou; his own caravan, with the merchants who would join him, would be sufficient protection for them. Soon after this conversation, he left for Tripoli, and was followed, in a few days, by the sultan, who not only stripped Mourzuk of its stores of supplies, but took with him all the camels that were to be had. Thus the expedition was deprived of the means of proceeding further, and it was immediately decided that Major Denham should return to Tripoli, in order to procure the necessary animals and supplies there.

Leaving Mourzuk on the 20th of May, accompanied only by his negro servant Barca, and two Arabs, he set out, making the journey in twenty days. Denham at once applied for an audience with the pasha, to whom he represented, in the strongest terms, their disappointment at the delay, and requested that he should fix a specified time for their departure for Bornou. "A voyage to Marseilles, on my way to England, was the consequence of our altercation with the pasha; and the promptitude with which it was decided upon and carried into effect, by means of a small French vessel, which, at the time, most fortunately lay in the harbor, was not without its good effects. The pasha sent three dispatches



after me, by three different vessels, to Leghorn, Malta, and the port I had sailed to, which I received in quarantine, informing me that Boo-Khaloom was appointed with an escort to convey us forthwith to Bornou. This was every thing I wished for; and immediately re-embarking, a seven days' passage brought me once more to the shores of Barbary." Accompanied by Boo-Khaloom, the traveler started for Mourzuk, by way of Sockna, where he arrived on the 2d of October. Boo-Khaloom's weakness was a love of pomp and show, and he entered the town in great state, mounted on a white horse which the Pasha of Tripoli had given him. Two or three days afterward he became seriously ill, and insisted on Major Denham prescribing for him, saying: "I am quite sure you can cure me, if it is the will of God that I shall live; if not, nobody can." The prescriptions were finally successful, although his life was despaired of for two days.

They entered Mourzuk on the 30th of October. Boo-Khaloom, who was a truly charitable and benevolent man, was so popular in the place, that on his returning to it not only safe, but standing high in the pasha's favor, half of the inhabitants came out to meet him, shouting and singing, to express their joy. Major Denham was disappointed that none of his friends came out to meet him, but soon learned that they had all been very ill with fever and ague, from which Clapperton had not yet recovered. During his absence, they had made a journey to Ghraat, the chief town of the Tuarick tribe, situated in the desert, twenty days' journey west of Mourzuk. They were now happily united, and at once set about preparing for their further travels. The party consisted of thirteen persons—Denham, Clapperton, and Oudney; Hillman, the carpenter; a native of St. Vincent, who, on account of his voyages around the globe, was nicknamed Columbus; a Gibraltar Jew, who acted as storekeeper; three free negro servants, and four camel-drivers. They were also accompanied by several merchants from Mesurata, Tripoli, Sockna, and Mourzuk, who gladly embraced the protection of their escort to proceed to the interior with their merchandize. The procuring of camels and supplies for the long journey across the desert, occupied some time, and the caravan did not leave Mourzuk, finally, until the 29th of November.

In three days they arrived at Gatrone, whither Oudney, Clapperton, and Hillman had already proceeded, hoping to improve their health by the change of air. Denham found them still sick, however, especially the last, who had been twice given over by the doctor. They moved on slowly to the town of Tegerry, the last place in Fezzan, and there halted three or four days to rest the sick, as beyond this they should travel for fifteen days over a desert, where it would be necessary to march from sunrise until dark. There is a well near the gate of the fortress of Tegerry, the water of which, the travelers were gravely informed, always rose when a caravan was coming near the town. The inhabitants stated that they always prepared what they had to sell, on seeing this water increase in bulk, for it never deceived them. "In proof of this asser-

alta, and the port I  
rming ne that Boo-  
s forthwith to Bor-  
diately re-embarking,  
shores of Barbary."  
ted for Mourzuk, by  
ber. Boo-Khaloom's  
ered the town in great  
of Tripoli had given  
iously ill, and insisted  
I am quite sure you  
live; if not, nobody  
although his life was

. Boo-Khaloom, who  
popular in the place,  
ing high in the pasha's  
, shouting and singing,  
ointed that none of his  
that they had all been  
ton had not yet recov-  
ney to Ghraat, the chief  
t, twenty days' journey  
d, and at once set about  
onsisted of thirteen per-  
man, the carpenter; a  
yages around the globe,  
o acted as storekeeper;  
rs. They were also ac-  
ta, Tripoli, Sockna, and  
f their escort to proceed  
rocurring of camels and  
occupied some time, and  
the 29th of November.  
her Oudney, Clapperton,  
improve their health by  
sick, however, especially  
doctor. They moved on  
Fezzan, and there halted  
is they should travel for  
necessary to march from  
ce of the fortress of Te-  
gravely informed, always  
The inhabitants stated  
ell, on seeing this water  
"In proof of this asser-

tion," says Major Denham, "they pointed out to me how much higher the water had been previous to our arrival than it was at the moment we were standing on the brink. This I could have explained by the number of camels that had drunk at it, but I saw it was better policy to believe what every body allowed to be true. Even Boo-Khaloom exclaimed: 'Allah! God is great, powerful, and wise! How wonderful! Oh!'"

On the 13th of December the caravan left Tegerry, and entered on a desert plain, where the sick were constantly disheartened by the sight of the skulls and skeletons of men who had perished on the sands. On the 22d Denham writes: "During the last two days, we have passed on an average from sixty to eighty or ninety skeletons each day; but the numbers that lay about the wells at El-Hammar were countless. Those of two women, whose perfect and regular teeth bespoke them young, were particularly shocking; their arms still remained clasped around each other as they had expired, although the flesh had long since perished by being exposed to the burning rays of the sun, and the blackened bones only left. The nails of the fingers, and some of the sinews of the hand, also remained, and part of the tongue of one of them still appeared through the teeth." Two days after this, one of Denham's she-camels foaled, and he looked forward to enjoying the milk, which, the Arabs assured him, she would have in abundance; but all at once the animal suddenly fell and died. "The evil-eye—the evil-eye!" the Arabs exclaimed, and some of them added: "She was sure to die. I knew it."—"Well, if she had been mine, I would rather have lost a child, or three slaves!"—"God be praised! God is great, powerful, and wise: those looks of the people are always fatal."

On the 1st of January, 1823, they reached a little oasis called Wady Ikbar, and were cheered by the sight of doum-palms laden with fruit, and grass in abundance. Three days more brought them to the village of Anay, the first Tibboo town, which is built upon the summit of a sandstone rock, a hundred feet high. The inhabitants ascend by means of ladders, which they draw up after them, whenever they are attacked by their enemies, the Tuaricks. The Sultan of the Tibboos was visiting another village in the neighborhood, and sent word to Boo-Khaloom that he would join the caravan and keep company with him as far as Bilma, the capital of his country. He made his appearance the next day. "He had neither much majesty nor cleanliness of appearance: he came to Boo-Khaloom's tent, accompanied by six or seven Tibboos, some of them really hideous. They take a quantity of snuff, both in their mouths and noses; their teeth were of a deep yellow; the nose resembles nothing so much as a round lump of flesh stuck on the face, and the nostrils are so large that their fingers go up as far as they will reach, in order to insure the snuff an admission into the head."

After entering the Tibboo country, the villages were numerous; the sterile, burning desert was exchanged for a broken country, intersected

with deep and abrupt valleys, the beds of which were covered with grass and trees. On approaching the villages, the inhabitants always came out to meet the travelers, and when within about fifty paces of the horses fell upon their knees, singing and beating a sort of drum, which always accompanies their rejoicing. They halted two days to rest at a town called Dirkee. So many of Boo-Khaloom's camels had fallen on the road that he determined to send out a marauding party to plunder some more from the Tibboos—a proceeding which was sanctioned by the sultan, who, moreover, gave him instructions as to the proper route. The party returned with thirteen, and for several nights afterward a strict watch was kept, through fear that the owners would endeavor to regain possession of them.

"On the 12th," continues the narrative, "we reached Bilma, the capital of the Tibboos, and the residence of their sultan, who, having managed to get before and receive us, advanced a mile from the town attended by some fifty of his men-at-arms, and double the number of the sex we call fair. The men had most of them bows and arrows, and all carried spears. They approached Boo-Khaloom, shaking them in the air over their heads, and after this salutation we all moved on toward the town, the females dancing, and throwing themselves about with screams and songs in a manner to us quite original. They were of a superior class to those of the minor towns, some having extremely pleasing features, while the pearly white of their regular teeth was beautifully contrasted with the glossy black of their skin, and the triangular flaps of plaited hair which hung down on each side of their faces, streaming with oil, with the addition of the coral in the nose and large amber necklaces, gave them a very seducing appearance.

"I now for the first time produced Captain Lyon's book in Boo-Khaloom's tent, and on turning over the prints of the natives, he swore, and exclaimed, and insisted upon it, that he knew every face: 'This was such a one's slave—that was his own; he was right; he knew it. Praised be God for the talents he gave the English! they were *shatr*, clever, exceedingly clever.' Of a landscape, however, I found that he had not the least idea, nor could I at all make him understand the intention of the print of the sand-wind in the desert, which is really so well described by Captain Lyon's drawing; he would look at it upside down, and when I twice reversed it for him, he exclaimed: 'Why! why! it is all the same!' A camel or a human figure was all I could make him understand, and at these he was all agitation and delight. '*Agib!* wonderful!' The eyes first took his attention, then the other features: at the sight of the sword he exclaimed, 'Allah! Allah!' and on discovering the guns instantly asked, 'Where is the powder?' This want of perception, as I imagined, in so intelligent a man, excited at first my surprise; but perhaps just the same would an European have felt under similar circumstances."

Beyond Bilma the desert commenced again, and their route, for

e covered with grass  
bitants always came  
ut fifty paces of the  
sort of drum, which  
two days to rest at a  
camels had fallen on  
ing party to plunder  
was sanctioned by the  
to the proper route.  
al nights afterward a  
ers would endeavor to

e reached Bilma, the  
ir sultan, who, having  
a mile from the town  
ble the number of the  
ws and arrows, and all  
shaking them in the  
all moved on toward  
themselves about with  
inal. They were of a  
naving extremely pleas-  
ar teeth was beautifully  
nd the triangular flaps  
f their faces, streaming  
e and large amber neck-

in Lyon's book in Boo-  
of the natives, he swore,  
y every face: 'This was  
as right; he knew it.  
nglish! they were *shatr*,  
wever, I found that he  
him understand the in-  
desert, which is really so  
would look at it upside  
he exclaimed: 'Why!  
an figure was all I could  
l agitation and delight.  
attention, then the other  
ed, 'Allah! Allah!' and  
re is the powder?' This  
ent a man, excited at first  
d an European have felt  
ain, and their route, for

several days, was over broad plains of billowy sand, without any sign of vegetation. They sometimes found wells of bitter water in the hollows, but frequently saw none for two or three days together. Many camels fell and died on this march; the heat was very oppressive; but as the sick were much better than they had been, the travelers were all in good spirits.

By this time they had passed the latitude which is the northern limit of the tropical rains, and "on the 27th," says Major Denham, "we appeared to be gradually approaching something resembling vegetation: we had rising sands and clumps of fine grass the whole way, and the country was not unlike some of our heaths in England. Toward evening the trees increased greatly in number, and where we halted the animals found abundance of food. The *tulloh*-trees, the *kossom* (a very beautiful parasitic plant), and the herbage, were most refreshing to our parched feelings, although in reality they were of the most dingy green and stunted appearance."

#### RECEPTION IN BORNOU.

On the 31st there were still more marked signs of their approach to Bornou. "We reached a well where some really sweet milk was brought to us in immensely large basket bottles, some holding two gallons or more. No traveler in Africa should imagine that *this* he could not bear, or *that* could not be endured. It is wonderful how a man's taste conforms itself to his necessities. Six months ago, camels' milk would have acted upon us as an emetic; now we thought it a most refreshing and grateful cordial. The face of the country improved in appearance every mile. We passed along to-day what seemed to us a most joyous valley, smiling in flowery grasses, tulloh-trees, and kossom. About mid-day, we halted in a luxurious shade, the ground covered with creeping vines of the colocynth in full blossom, which, with the red flowers of the kossom which drooped over our heads, made our resting-place a little Arcadia." Boo-Khaloom now judged it expedient to send a messenger in advance with letters to Shekh El-Kanemy, the chief of Bornou, giving news of the approach of the expedition.

On the 4th of February, they reached the town of Lari, the inhabitants of which fled in all directions, in the greatest terror, on perceiving the caravan. "Beyond the town, however," says Major Denham, "was an object full of interest to us, and the sight of which conveyed to my mind a sensation so gratifying and inspiring, that it would be difficult in language to convey an idea of its force or pleasure. The great Lake Tchad, glowing with the golden rays of the sun in its strength, appeared to be within a mile of the spot on which we stood. My heart bounded within me at this prospect, for I believed this lake to be the key to the great object of our search, and I could not refrain from silently imploring Heaven's continued protection, which had enabled us to pro-

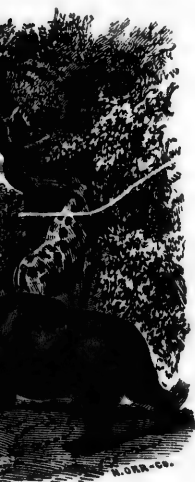
ceed so far in health and strength, even to the accomplishment of our task. By sun-rise next morning I was on the borders of the lake, armed for the destruction of the multitude of birds, who, all unconscious of my purpose, seemed to welcome our arrival. Flocks of geese and wild ducks, of a most beautiful plumage, were quietly feeding at half pistol-shot of where I stood. As I moved toward them they only changed their places a little to the right or left, and appeared to have no idea of the hostility of my intentions. Pelicans, cranes, four and five feet in height, gray, variegated and white, were scarcely so many yards from my side, and a bird, between a snipe and a woodpecker, resembling both and larger than either; immense spoonbills of a snowy whiteness, widgeon, teal, yellow-legged plover, and a hundred species of unknown water-fowl were sporting before me; and it was long before I could disturb the tranquillity of the dwellers on these waters by firing a gun.



LAKE TCHAD.

"In the evening I visited the town of Lari. It stands on an eminence, and may probably contain two thousand inhabitants. The huts are built of the rush which grows by the sides of the lake, have conical tops, and look like well-thatched stacks of corn in England. They have neat inclosures around them, made with fences of the same reed, and passages leading to them like labyrinths. In the inclosure is a goat or two, poultry, and sometimes a cow. The women were almost all spinning cotton, which grows well, though not abundantly, near the town and lake. The interior of the huts is neat. They are completely circu-

omplishment of our  
s of the lake, arrived  
ll unconscious of my  
of geese and wild  
eeding at half pistol-  
n they only changed  
l to have no idea of  
our and five feet in  
so many yards from  
dpecker, resembling  
f a snowy whiteness,  
species of unknown  
long before I could  
ters by firing a gun.



it stands on an emi-  
habitants. The huts  
the lake, have conical  
England. They have  
f the same reed, and  
nclosure is a goat or  
were almost all spin-  
dantly, near the town  
are completely circu-

lar, with no admission for air or light, except at the door, which has a mat by way of safeguard. I entered one of the best appearance, although the owner gave me no smiles of encouragement, and followed close at my heels, with his spear and dagger in his hand. In one corner stood the bed, a sofa of rushes lashed together, and supported by six poles, fixed strongly in the ground. This was covered with the skins of the tiger-cat and wild bull; around the sides were hung the wooden bowls used for water and milk: his tall shield rested against the wall. The hut had a division of mat-work, one half being allotted to the female part of the family."

Two days after this they arrived at the town of Woodie, where, on account of Boo-Khaloom and his Arabs, it was necessary to wait until the shekh of Bornou should send his permission to proceed. The town is about one mile west of the lake, and four days' march from Kouka, the capital of Bornou. The people have fish and game in abundance, and are very indolent, the men lying idly in their huts from morning till night. After waiting four days, two of the shekh's officers arrived with the necessary permission, and a present of some of the goroo nuts of Soudan, which have an agreeably bitter taste, and are much esteemed by the people of Tripoli. After eating these nuts, water has a grateful flavor, be it ever so bad. The Arabs call them the coffee of the black country. Proceeding southward for two days more, through a fertile, thickly-inhabited country, they came to a river called the Yeou—a stream fifty yards wide, with a hard, sandy bottom, and flowing eastward at the rate of three and a half miles an hour. The goods and passengers of the caravan were ferried across in canoes, to which the bridles of the horses and camels were attached, and the animals made to swim.

On the 16th of February the expedition halted within one hour's march of Kouka, in order to make the entry in state next day. Major Denham's account of what then took place is too characteristic and interesting to be omitted. "This was to us a momentous day," he writes, "and it seemed to be equally so to our conductors. Notwithstanding all the difficulties that had presented themselves at the various stages of our journey, we were at last within a few short miles of our destination, were about to become acquainted with a people who had never seen, or scarcely heard of, a European, and to tread on ground the knowledge and true situation of which had hitherto been wholly unknown. Our accounts of the state of this country had been so contradictory, that no opinion could be formed as to the real condition or the numbers of its inhabitants. The degree of credit which might be attached to the different reports was nearly balanced in the scales of probability; and we advanced toward the town of Kouka in a most interesting state of uncertainty whether we should find its chief at the head of thousands, or be received by him under a tree, surrounded by a few naked slaves.

"These doubts, however, were quickly removed. I had ridden on a short distance in front of Boo-Khaloom, with his train of Arabs, all



mounted and dressed out in their best apparel, and, from the thickness of the trees, soon lost sight of them, fancying that the road could not be mistaken. I rode still onward, and on approaching a spot less thickly planted, was not a little surprised to see in front of me a body of several thousand cavalry drawn up in line, and extending right and left as far as I could see; and, checking my horse, I awaited the arrival of my party, under the shade of a wide-spreading acacia. The Bornou troops remained quite steady, without noise or confusion; and a few horsemen, who were moving about in front giving directions, were the only persons out of the ranks. On the Arabs appearing in sight, a shout or yell was given by the shekh's people, which rent the air. A blast was blown from their rude instruments of music equally loud, and they moved on to meet Boo-Khaloom and his Arabs. There was an appearance of tact and management in their movements which astonished me. Three separate small bodies, from the center and each flank, kept charging rapidly toward us, to within a few feet of our horses' heads, without checking the speed of their own, until the moment of their halt, while the whole body moved onward. These parties were mounted on small but very perfect horses, which stopped, and wheeled from their utmost speed with great precision and expertness, shaking their spears over their heads, and exclaiming: '*Blessing! blessing! sons of your country! sons of your country!*' and returning quickly to the front of the body, in order to repeat the charge. While all this was going on, they closed in their right and left flanks, and surrounded the little body of Arab warriors so completely, as to give the compliment of welcoming them very much the appearance of contempt for their weakness. I am quite sure this was premeditated. We were all so closely pressed as to be nearly smothered, and in some danger from the crowding of the horses and the clashing of the spears. Moving on was impossible, and we therefore came to a full stop. Our chief was much enraged, but it was all to no purpose; he was only answered by shrieks of 'Welcome!' and spears most unpleasantly rattled over our heads, expressive of the same feeling. This annoyance was not, however, of long duration. Barca Gana, the shekh's first general, a negro of a noble aspect, clothed in a figured silk robe and mounted on a beautiful Mandara horse, made his appearance; and after a little delay the rear was cleared of those who had pressed in upon us, and we moved on.

"The shekh's negroes, as they were called, meaning the black chiefs and favorites, all raised to that rank by some deed of bravery, were habited in coats of mail composed of iron chain, which covered them from the throat to the knees, dividing behind, and coming on each side of the horse: some of them had helmets, or rather skull-caps, of the same metal, with chin-pieces, all sufficiently strong to ward off the shock of a spear. Their horses' heads were also defended by plates of iron, brass, and silver, just leaving sufficient room for the eyes of the animal.

"At length, on arriving at the gate of the town, ourselves, Boo-

from the thickness  
the road could not  
ng a spot less thickly  
me a body of several  
ight and left as far as  
arrival of my party,  
ne Bornou troops re-  
and a few horsemen,  
were the only persons  
t, a shout or yell was  
blast was blown from  
d they moved on to  
an appearance of tact  
shed me. Three sep-  
kept charging rapidly  
nds, without checking  
halt, while the whole  
ted on small but very  
their utmost speed with  
ears over their heads,  
our country! sons of  
t of the body, in order  
n, they closed in their  
dy of Arab warriors so  
oming them very much  
I am quite sure this  
ressed as to be nearly  
ling of the horses and  
ssible, and we therefore  
d, but it was all to no  
Welcome!' and spears  
ive of the same feeling.  
tion. Barca Gana, the  
clothed in a figured silk  
, made his appearance;  
those who had pressed

meaning the black chiefs  
deed of bravery, were  
n, which covered them  
and coming on each side  
rather skull-caps, of the  
or to ward off the shock  
ended by plates of iron,  
the eyes of the animal.  
e town, ourselves, Boo-

# CEREMONIES OF RECEPTION.

473

Khaloom and about a dozen of his followers, were alone allowed to enter the gates; and we proceeded along a wide street completely lined with spearmen on foot, with cavalry in front of them, to the door of the shekh's residence. Here the horsemen were formed up three deep, and we came to a stand: some of the chief attendants came out and after a great many '*Barca! barca's!*' retired, when others performed the same



BODY-GUARD OF THE SHEKH OF BORNOU.

ceremony. We were now again left sitting on our horses in the sun: Boo-Khaloom began to lose all patience, and swore by the pasha's head that he would return to the tents if he was not immediately admitted. He got, however, no satisfaction but a motion of the hand from one of the chiefs, meaning 'wait patiently;' and I whispered to him the necessity of obeying, as we were hemmed in on all sides, and to retire without permission would have been as difficult as to advance. Barca

Gana now appeared, and made a sign that Boo-Khaloom should dismount: we were about to follow his example, when an intimation that Boo-Khaloom was alone to be admitted again fixed us to our saddles. Another half hour at least passed without any news from the interior of the building, when the gates opened and the four Englishmen only were called for, and we advanced to the entrance. Here we were stopped most unceremoniously by the black guards in waiting, and were allowed, one by one only, to ascend a staircase; at the top of which we were again brought to a stand by crossed spears, and the open flat hand of a negro laid upon our breasts. Boo-Khaloom came from the inner chamber, and asked, 'If we were prepared to salute the shekh as we did the pasha?' We replied, 'Certainly;' which was merely an inclination of the head, and laying the right hand on the heart. He advised our laying our hands also on our heads, but we replied that the thing was impossible—we had but one manner of salutation for any body, except our own sovereign.

"Another parley now took place, but in a minute or two he returned, and we were ushered into the presence of this Shekh of Spears. We found him in a small dark room, sitting on a carpet, plainly dressed in a blue robe of Soudan and a shawl turban. Two negroes were on each side of him, armed with pistols, and on his carpet lay a brace of these instruments. His personal appearance was prepossessing, apparently not more than forty-five or forty-six, with an expressive countenance and a benevolent smile. We delivered our letter from the pasha, and after he had read it he inquired, 'What was our object in coming?' We answered, 'To see the country merely, and to give an account of its inhabitants, produce, and appearance, as our sultan was desirous of knowing every part of the globe.' His reply was that we were welcome, and whatever he could show us would give him pleasure; that he had ordered huts to be built for us in the town, and that we might then go, accompanied by one of his people, to see them. When we had recovered from the fatigue of our long journey, he would be happy to see us again. With this we took our leave."

The huts were little round mud buildings, inclosed within a wall, not far from the shekh's residence. Here the travelers, greatly fatigued with their entrée, retired; but the huts were immediately crowded with curious visitors, and the heat was insufferable. The next day at noon they received a summons to attend the shekh, and carried with them their presents, consisting of a double-barreled gun, a pair of pistols, two pieces of superfine broadcloth, red and blue, a set of china, and two bundles of spices. The ceremonies of entering the presence were even more ridiculous and annoying than on the preceding day. They passed between double lines of attendants, who caught them by the legs when they advanced too rapidly, jerked off their slippers, and seated them on a raised bench of earth. The shekh received the presents with evident satisfaction and again questioned them as to the object of their visit.

haloom should dis-  
an intimation that  
us to our saddles.  
from the interior of  
Englishmen or'y were  
re we were stopped  
g, and were allowed,  
p of which we were  
open flat hand of a  
om the inner cham-  
shekh as we did the  
ely an inclination of  
He advised our lay-  
at the thing was im-  
any body, except our

e or two he returned,  
ckh of Spears. We  
t, plainly dressed in a  
negroes were on each  
t lay a brace of these  
essing, apparently not  
ive countenance and a  
he pasha, and after he  
et in coming?" We  
ve an account of its in-  
was desirous of know-  
we were welcome, and  
asure; that he had or-  
that we might then go,

When we had recov-  
ould be happy to see us

losed within a wall, not  
s, greatly fatigued with  
tely crowded with curi-  
e next day at noon they  
carried with them their  
a pair of pistols, two  
t of china, and two bun-  
resence were even more  
day. They passed be-  
them by the legs when  
ers, and seated them on  
e presents with evident  
he object of their visit.

He was very much pleased with the assurance that the King of England had heard of Bornou and of himself; and, immediately turning to his counselor, said, "This is in consequence of our defeating the Beg-harmis;" upon which, the chief who had most distinguished himself in the battles, Bagah Furby (the gatherer of horses), demanded, "Did he ever hear of me?" The immediate reply of "Certainly," did wonders for the travelers: there was a general exclamation, and the cry of "Ah, then, your king must be a great man!" was repeated on every side.

After returning to their residence the travelers received presents of bullocks, camel-loads of wheat and rice, leathern skins of butter, jars of honey, bowls filled with a paste made of barley-flour, and great quantities of fresh fish. There was a market in front of one of the principal gates of the town, which was attended by upward of fifteen thousand people. The principal live stock sold here was slaves, sheep, and bullocks: wheat, rice, and sugar-cane were abundant, together with tamarinds, ground nuts, onions, butter, sour milk, and honey. There was also much leather, ocher, indigo, and the skins of serpents and crocodiles. Among other articles offered to Denham was a young lion, who walked about unconcernedly, confined only by a small rope around his neck.

On the 2d of March, Boo-Khaloom went to a town called Birnie, for the purpose of paying his respects to the Sultan of Bornou, who resides there, and the travelers decided to accompany him. They passed through Angornou, a town of about thirty thousand inhabitants, sixteen miles from Kouka. Two miles beyond it was Birnie, a walled town, containing about ten thousand inhabitants. Here they were met by the sultan's chamberlain, who ordered a large tent to be pitched for them, and informed them that the sultan would receive them at sunrise the next morning. In the evening, a most plentiful, if not delicate, repast was brought them, consisting of seventy dishes, each of which would have dined half a dozen persons of moderate appetites. The sultan himself sent ten, his wives thirty, and his mother thirty; the meat consisted of mutton and poultry, and was baked, boiled, and stewed.

"Soon after daylight," says Major Denham, "we were summoned to attend the Sultan of Bornou. He received us in an open space in front of the royal residence; we were kept at a considerable distance, while his people approached to within about one hundred yards, passing first on horseback; and after dismounting and prostrating themselves before him, they took their places on the ground in front, but with their backs to the royal person, which is the custom of the country. He was seated in a sort of cage of cane or wood, near the door of his garden, on a seat which at the distance appeared to be covered with silk or satin, and through the railing looked upon the assembly before him, who formed a sort of semicircle extending from his seat to nearly where we were waiting. Nothing could be more absurd and grotesque than the figures who formed this court. Large bellies and large heads are indispensable for those who serve the court of Bornou; and those who unfortunately

possess not the former by nature, or on whom lustiness will not be forced by cramming, make up the deficiency of protuberance by a wadding, which, as they sit on the horse, gives the belly the curious appearance of hanging over the pommel of the saddle. When the courtiers, to the number of about three hundred, had taken their seats in front of the sultan, we were allowed to approach to within pistol-shot of the spot where he was sitting, and desired to sit down ourselves, when the ugliest black that can be imagined, his chief eunuch, the only person who approached the sultan's seat, asked for the presents. Boo-Khaloom's were produced, inclosed in a large shawl, and were carried unopened to the presence. Our glimpse was but a faint one of the sultan, through the lattice-work of his pavilion, sufficient, however, to see that his turban was larger than any of his subjects', and that his face, from the nose downward, was completely covered. Immediately after the ceremony we took our departure for Angernou."

On returning to Kouka, Dr. Oudney became very ill. The travelers were greatly annoyed by the number of persons who crowded their huts from morning till night. Every little thing, from the compass to the pen and ink, from the watch to the tin drinking-cups, excited their curiosity; and as they now became bolder, they seized hold of every thing which they had formerly only eyed at a distance. It was not, however, their curiosity alone which was excited—the possession was coveted, either for themselves or the shekh, of every article. A copy of Captain Lyon's book, the fame of which had preceded the expedition, in consequence of Dr. Oudney having shown it to some merchants at Mourzuk, was demanded twenty times a day. It produced very different effects, but in all astonishment and suspicion. The shekh sent one of his slaves to borrow it, that he might see it by stealth, not wishing his people to know that he had made the request. He also asked that some rockets might be sent up, in order to surprise and overawe some of the Shouaas, his former enemies, who were then in Kouka. The signal was given by his chamberlain lighting a wisp of straw on the roof of the palace. The first rocket went up perpendicularly, with fine effect; the second, depressed a little, flew over the town at the height of a hundred yards, and bursting in its course, occasioned a universal scream, which lasted for some seconds.

On the 10th of March, Major Denham writes: "This day I had a little respite, my visiting-list being much reduced in consequence of its being market-day; there was, as usual, an abundance of all necessaries, though but few luxuries; and, as the people got more accustomed to my appearance, they became more familiar. One young lady, whose numerous bracelets of elephant's teeth, heavy silver rings on each side of her face, coral in her nose, and amber necklace, proclaimed her a person of wealth, nimbly jumped off her bullock and tore a corner from my pocket-handkerchief, as she said, for a souvenir. I could do no less than request her to accept the remainder of so useful an appendage, and I

ness will not be forced  
ance by a wadding,  
urious appearance of  
the courtiers, to the  
ents in front of the  
stol-shot of the spot  
ves, when the ugliest  
only person who ap-  
Boo-Khaloom's were  
ied unopened to the  
sultan, through the  
see that his turban  
s face, from the nose  
after the ceremony

very ill. The travelers  
no crowded their huts  
a the compass to the  
ng-cups, excited their  
seized hold of every  
distance. It was not,  
—the possession was  
ry article. A copy of  
ded the expedition, in  
o some merchants at  
produced very differ-  
t. The shekh sent one  
by stealth, not wishing  
t. He also asked that  
ise and overawe some  
then in Kouka. The  
ap of straw on the roof  
ularly, with fine effect;  
at the height of a hun-  
ed a universal scream,

es: "This day I had a  
d in consequence of its  
ance of all necessities,  
t more accustomed to  
ne young lady, whose  
lver rings on each side  
e, proclaimed her a per-  
tore a corner from my  
I could do no less than  
ul an appendage, and I

was happy to see that this piece of gallantry was not lost, even upon savages. They all clapped their hands and cried, 'Barca! barca!' and the lady herself, whose hands and face were really running down with grease, so regardless was she of expense, generously poured into the sleeve of my shirt nearly a quart of ground nuts."

The next day Major Denham received a summons from the shekh, to whom a report had been made of a musical box, which played or stopped merely by a motion of the finger. "The messenger declared he was dying to see it, and I must make haste. The wild exclamations of wonder and screams of pleasure which this piece of mechanism drew from the generality of my visitors were curiously contrasted in the person of the intelligent shekh; he at first was greatly astonished, and asked several questions, exclaiming, 'Wonderful! wonderful!' but the sweetness of the Swiss *ranz des vaches* which it played at last overcame every other feeling; he covered his face with his hand, listened in silence, and on one man near him breaking the charm by a loud exclamation, he struck him a blow which made all his followers tremble. He instantly asked if one twice as large would not be better. I said: 'Yes, but it would be twice as dear.' 'By Allah!' said he, 'if one thousand dollars would purchase it, it would be cheap.' Who will deny that nature has given us all a taste for luxuries?"

The instrument was presented to the shekh, who was so delighted that he gave Major Denham permission to visit Lake Tchad, and sent seven of his servants to attend him. After a ride of fifteen miles, they reached the shore of the lake, the waters of which stretched away to the horizon. In the grass marshes, thousands of cattle belonging to the shekh were peacefully grazing. The traveler encamped near the water, in spite of the remonstrances of his attendants, but was soon driven away by the swarms of mosquitoes which assailed him. In the evening, he saw a herd of forty wild elephants. The next day, while he was shooting water-fowl, news of three very large elephants was brought to him, and he immediately resolved to attack them. "One was an immense fellow, I should suppose sixteen feet high; the other two were females, and moved away rather quickly, while the male kept in the rear, as if to guard their retreat. We wheeled swiftly around him; and Maraymy casting a spear at him, which struck him just under the tail, and seemed to give him about as much pain as when we prick our finger with a pin, the huge beast threw up his proboscis in the air with a loud roar, and from it cast such a volume of sand, that, unprepared as I was for such an event, nearly blinded me. The elephant rarely, if ever, attacks, and it is only when irritated that he is dangerous; but he will sometimes rush upon a man and horse, after choking them with dust, and destroy them in an instant."

After an absence of three days, Major Denham returned to Kouka, where he received unwelcome news. "The horse which had carried me from Tripoli to Mourzuk, and back again, and on which I had ridden the



whole journey from Tripoli to Bornou, had died, a very few hours after my departure for the lake. There are situations in a man's life in which losses of this nature are felt most keenly; and this was one of them. It was not grief, but it was something very nearly approaching to it; and though I felt ashamed of the degree of derangement which I suffered from it, yet it was several days before I could get over the loss. Let it be however remembered, that the poor animal had been my support and comfort—may I not say companion?—through many a dreary day and night; had endured both hunger and thirst in my service with the utmost patience; was so docile, though an Arab, that he would stand still for hours in the desert, while I slept between his legs, his body affording me the only shelter that could be obtained from the powerful influence of a noonday sun; he was yet the fleetest of the fleet, and ever foremost in the race."

#### DENHAM'S MILITARY EXCURSION TO MANDARA.

The party had now been more than a month in Kouka, without having made any apparent advance in the object of their mission. The determination of the shekh seemed to be, not to permit them to go beyond the borders of Bornou. They were not disheartened by the suspicion and distrust with which they were met, but endeavored, by patience and the utmost prudence in their conduct, to win by degrees the confidence of the shekh and people. Their situation at this time was rendered more embarrassing by difficulties which had arisen between Boo-Khaloom and the other Arab chieftains. The shekh was planning an expedition against the Fellatas living beyond Mandara, a country to the south of Bornou, for the purpose of capturing slaves, and promised to send Boo-Khaloom and his men, with Barca Gana, who was to command the party. Major Denham determined to go likewise, as the country to be visited was entirely unknown; but the shekh, at first, seemed determined to thwart his wishes. On the 8th of April, the expedition, under Barca Gana, proceeded to Angornou, whence it was to move southward on the 14th. Denham now lost no time in consulting one of the shekh's counselors, who professed to be his friend, promising to give him \$50 if he would procure a permit for him to go. He also had another interview with the shekh, to whom he jestingly said that if he did not wish him to go, he must put him in irons. These promises and importunities were not without effect; the same night, Maraymy, one of the sultan's black slaves, who had accompanied Major Denham to Lake Tchad, came to him after midnight, and urged him to leave at once for Angornou. On the way thither, Maraymy stated, confidentially, that the shekh had desired him not to leave him, but that, if Denham persisted in joining the expedition, he was to conduct him to the camp as quickly as possible, and give him into the charge of Barca Gana.

very few hours after a man's life in which was one of them. It approaching to it; and ment which I suffered over the loss. Let it been my support and any a dreary day and my service with the ut- at he would stand still egs, his body affording he powerful influence ect, and ever foremost

TO MANDARA.

n Kouka, without hav- their mission. The de- mit them to go beyond rtended by the suspicion avored, by patience and degrees the confidence ime was rendered more een Boo-Khaloom and g an expedition against o the south of Bornou, t to send Boo-Khaloom and the party. Major ntry to be visited was d determined to thwart on, under Barca Gana, southward on the 14th. the shekh's counselors, e him \$50 if he would other interview with the not wish him to go, he rtunities were not with- he sultan's black slaves, ehad, came to him after Angornou. On the way e shekh had desired him n joining the expedition, s possible, and give him

This hint was quite sufficient for Major Denham. They reached Angornou before sunrise, and, finding that the expedition had marched on to a town about thirty-five miles to the south, where it would halt a day, determined to resume their journey at once, and overtake it. On the evening of the next day, the 17th, they reached a town called Mert, near which they discovered the tents of the Bornouese camp. Marany at once conducted Major Denham to Barca Gana, who, he says, "received me with a great deal of civility in his tent, although he kept me several minutes waiting outside, until he had summoned his *fighi*, or charm-writer—an indispensable person—and one or two of his chiefs, to attend him. 'If it was the will of God,' he said, 'I should come to no harm, and he would do all in his power for my convenience.' A spot was appointed for my tent near his own; and I took my leave in order to visit the Arabs. The cheers they all gave me, and the hearty shake of the hand of Boo-Khaloom, made me regret that I was not to be among them, in spite of all their bad qualities. Boo-Khaloom repeatedly exclaimed: 'I knew you would come; I said you would by some means or other join us.'"

The next morning the tents were struck before sunrise, and Major Denham rode off by the side of Barca Gana, in full march for Mandara. They advanced thirty-four miles that day, and reached a walled town called Deegoa, with a population of thirty thousand. The following is the description of the order of march: "Chiefs in this part of Africa are accompanied by as many personal followers as they think proper to maintain, both as horse and footmen: some of them form the band, if I may so call it. Barca Gana had five mounted, who kept close behind him, three of whom carried a sort of drum, which hangs around their necks, and beat time while they sang extempore songs; one carried a small pipe made of a reed, and the other blew, on a buffalo's horn, loud and deep-toned blasts, as we moved through the wood; but by far the most entertaining and useful were the running footmen, who preceded the kashella, and acted as pioneers; they were twelve in number, and carried long forked poles, with which they, with great dexterity, kept back the branches as they moved on at a quick pace, constantly keeping open a path, which without them would really have been scarcely passable. Besides, they were constantly crying out something about the road, or the expedition, as they went on. For example: 'Take care of the holes!—Avoid the branches!—Here is the road!—Take care of the tulloh; its leaves are like spears—worse than spears!' 'Keep off the branches!' 'For whom?' 'Barca Gana!'—'Who in battle is like rolling of thunder?' 'Barca Gana!'—'Now for Mandara!—now for the Kerdies!—now for the battle of spears! Who is our leader?' 'Barca Gana!'—'Here is the wady, but no water! God be praised!—In battle, who spreads terror around him like a buffalo in his rage?' 'Barca Gana!'"

After several days of severe travel, the heat being sometimes 113°

in the shade, the army approached the capital of the country of Mandara, and received a message from the sultan, who stated that he would meet it next day on his way to Mora, his residence. The first town of Mandara was Delow, a place of ten thousand inhabitants. "About a mile from his town," says Major Denham, "we saw before us the Sultan of Mandara, surrounded by about five hundred horsemen, posted on a rising ground ready to receive us, when Barca Gana instantly commanded a halt. The sultan's guard was composed of thirty of his sons, all mounted on very superior horses, clothed in striped silk tobies, and the skins of the tiger-cat and leopard forming their shabracks, which hung fully over their horses' haunches. After these had returned to their station in front of the sultan, we approached at full speed in our turn, halting with the guard between us and the royal presence. The parley then commenced, and the object of Boo-Khaloom's visit having been explained, we retired again to the place we had left; while the sultan returned to the town, preceded by several men blowing long pipes not unlike clarionets, ornamented with shells, and two immense trumpets from twelve to fourteen feet long."

VI. DNR-CO  
ARRIVAL AT MORA, IN MANDARA.

"Toward evening," Denham continues, "Barca Gana sent to desire me to mount, for the purpose of visiting the sultan. We entered the town, Boo-Khaloom and myself riding on his right and left. At the

e country of Man-  
ted that he would  
The first town of  
itants. "About a  
efore us the Sultan  
emen, posted on a  
ana instantly com-  
f thirty of his sons,  
ed silk tobes, and  
r shabracks, which  
se had returned to  
at full speed in our  
oyal presence. The  
aloom's visit having  
left; while the sul-  
blowing long pipes  
two immense trum-



ca Gana sent to desire  
tan. We entered the  
ght and left. At the

further end of a large square was the sultan's palace. As is usual on approaching or visiting a great man, we galloped up at full speed, almost entering the gates. This is a perilous sort of salutation, but nothing must stop you: and it is seldom made, except at the expense of one or more lives. On this occasion, a man and horse which stood in our way, were ridden over in an instant, the horse's leg broken, and the man killed on the spot. The trumpets sounded as we dismounted at the palace gate; our papouches, or outward slippers, were quickly pulled off; and we proceeded through a wide entrance, into a large court, where, under a dark blue tent of Soudan, sat the sultan, on a mud bench, covered, however, with a handsome carpet and silk pillows. He was surrounded by about two hundred persons, all handsomely dressed in tobes of silk and colored cotton, with his five eunuchs, the principal men of the country sitting in front, but all with their backs turned toward him. The manner of saluting is curious. Barca Gana, as the shekh's representative, approached to a space in front of the eunuchs, his eyes fixed on the ground: he then sat down, his eyes still fixed on the earth, with his back to the sultan, and, clapping his hands together, exclaimed: '*Engouborou dagah!*' (May you live forever!) '*Allah kiaro!*' (God send you a happy old age!) '*La, lai? barca! barca!*' (How is it with you? blessing! blessing!) These words were repeated nearly by the sultan, and then sung out by all the court.

"The sultan, whose name was Mohammed Bukr, was an intelligent little man of about fifty, with a beard dyed of a most beautiful sky-blue. He had been eyeing me for some time, as I sat between Boo-Khaloom and Barca Gana, and first asking Boo-Khaloom his name, inquired who I was? The answer that I was a native of a very distant and powerful nation, friends of the pasha of Tripoli and the shekh, who came to see the country, did not appear much to surprise him; and he looked gracious as he said: 'But what does he want to see?' A fatal question followed, however, and the answer appeared to petrify the whole assembly. — 'Are they Moslem?' '*La! la!*' (No! no!) Every eye, which had before been turned toward me, was now hastily withdrawn, and, looking round, I really felt myself in a critical situation. 'Has the great pasha infidel friends?' asked the sultan. The explanation which followed was of little use: they knew no distinctions: Christians they had merely heard of as the worst people in the world, and probably, until they saw me, scarcely believed them to be human. We shortly after returned to our camp, and I never afterward was invited to enter the Sultan of Mandara's presence."

It had been Boo-Khaloom's expectation that he would be sent against some of the Kerdies, or tribes of negroes who inhabit the mountains, in order to capture slaves: but he soon discovered that the intention of the Shekh of Bornou, aided by the Sultan of Mandara, was to send him against the warlike Felatahs, and give his Arabs a taste of their arrows and spears. The people of a country called Musgow, lying to the south-

east of Mandara, supposed the expedition was directed against them, and, to propitiate the sultan, sent him a present of two hundred slaves, and fifty horses. Major Denham says of these people: "I saw them on their leaving the sultan's palace; and both then, and on their entrance, they threw themselves on the ground, pouring sand on their heads, and uttering the most piteous cries. On their heads, which were covered with long woolly, or rather bristly hair, coming quite over their eyes, they wore a cap of the skin of the goat, or some fox-like animal, and around the necks of each were from one to six strings of what I was assured were the teeth of the enemies they had slain in battle: teeth and pieces of bone were also pendant from the clotted locks of their hair, and, with the red patches with which their bodies were marked in different places (which color also their own teeth were stained), they really had a most strikingly wild and savage appearance. What very much increased the interest I felt in gazing upon these beings, who were the most savage of their race, was the positive assertion of Boo-Khaloom that they were Christians! Some of them, however, begging permission to regale themselves on the remains of a horse, which had died during the night in our camp, gave me, as I thought, an unanswerable argument against him. I can scarcely, however, at this moment forget how disconcerted I felt when he replied: 'That is nothing: I certainly never heard of Christians eating dead horse-flesh, but I know that they eat the flesh of swine, and God knows that is worse!'"

After several more days of delay, during which a violent hurricane passed over the valley, tearing up trees, loosening rocks from the mountain sides, and prostrating the tents of the army, the order was given to advance. The united troops, commanded by Barca Gana and the Sultan of Mandara, moved on through the pass of Hairey, in the Mandara Mountains. The road lay through a narrow glen, surrounded by rugged mountains, which, for picturesque appearance, might be compared to the Jura or the Apennines. The next day they entered the pass of Horza, which was only about five hundred yards wide, overhung on either side by precipices of naked rock two thousand five hundred feet high. On encamping that night preparations were made for an attack on the Felatahs, who were said to be only sixteen miles distant. The chiefs put on their closely-linked shirts of iron mail, and the hammers of the clumsy native armorers rang through the camp all night.

To resume the narrative. "As the day broke on the morning of the 28th of April, a most interesting scene presented itself. The Sultan of Mandara was close on our flank, mounted on a very beautiful cream-colored horse, with several large red marks about him, and followed by his six favorite eunuchs, and thirty of his sons, all finely dressed and mounted on really superb horses. Barca Gana's people all wore their red scarfs, or bornouses, over their steel jackets, and the whole had a very fine effect. I took my position at his right hand, and at a spot called Duggur we entered a very thick wood, in two columns, at the

ed against them,  
vo hundred slaves,  
: "I saw them on  
on their entrance,  
on their heads, and  
which were covered  
ite over their eyes,  
fox-like animal, and  
ngs of what I was  
in in battle: teeth  
tted locks of their  
ies were marked in  
were stained), they  
rance. What very  
ese beings, who were  
tion of Boo-Khaloom  
, begging permission  
hich had died during  
answerable argument  
ment forget how dis-  
g: I certainly never  
now that they eat the

ch a violent hurricane  
rocks from the mount-  
he order was given to  
arca Gana and the Sul-  
airey, in the Mandara  
surrounded by rugged  
ht be compared to the  
ed the pass of Horza,  
e, overhung on either  
five hundred feet high.  
le for an attack on the  
es distant. The chiefs  
d the hammers of the  
ll night.

e on the morning of the  
itself. The Sultan of  
a very beautiful cream-  
t him, and followed by  
all finely dressed and  
s people all wore their  
ta, and the whole had a  
ght hand, and at a spot  
in two columns, at the

end of which it was said we were to find the enemy. \* \* \* On emerging from the wood, the large Felatah town of Dirkulla was perceivable, and the Arabs were formed in front, headed by Boo-Khaloom; they were flanked on each side by a large body of cavalry, and as they moved on, shouting the Arab war-cry, which is very inspiring, I thought I could perceive a smile pass between Barca Gana and his chiefs, at Boo-Khaloom's expense. Dirkulla was quickly burned, and another smaller town near it; and the few inhabitants who were found in them, who were chiefly infants and aged persons unable to escape, were put to death without mercy, or thrown into the flames."

They now came to a third town, called Musfeia, built in a very strong position between two low hills, with a swamp in front, beyond which were several deep ravines, impassable for more than two or three horsemen at a time. The town was also surrounded with a strong fence of pointed palissades, fastened together with thongs of raw hide. The Arabs, unsupported by either the Bornou or Mandara troops, moved on gallantly, and, in spite of showers of poisoned arrows, drove away the Felatahs, who retreated up the hills, where they rolled down huge masses of rock on their pursuers. Barca Gana, with about one hundred spearmen, now moved up to the assistance of Boo-Khaloom; but the Sultan of Mandara, and the remainder of the army, kept out of the reach of the arrows, on the other side of the ravines. "The Felatahs, finally, seeing their backwardness, now made an attack in turn; the arrows fell so thick that there was no standing against them, and the Arabs gave way. The Felatah horse now came on, and had not the little band around Barca Gana and Boo-Khaloom, with a few of his mounted Arabs, given them a very spirited check, not one of us would, probably, have lived to see the following day. As it was, Barca Gana had three horses hit under him, two of which died almost immediately, the arrows being poisoned; and poor Boo-Khaloom's horse and himself received their death-wounds. My horse was badly wounded in the neck, just above the shoulder, and in the near hind leg: an arrow had struck me in the face as it passed, merely drawing the blood, and I had two sticking in my bornous. No sooner did the Mandara and Bornou troops see the defeat of the Arabs, than they, one and all, took to flight, in the most dastardly manner, without having been once exposed to the arrows of the enemy, and in the utmost confusion. The Sultan of Mandara led the way.

"I now, for the first time, as I saw Barca Gana on a fresh horse, lamented my own folly in so exposing myself, badly prepared as I was for accidents. If either of my horse's wounds were from poisoned arrows, I felt that nothing could save me; however, there was not much time for reflection. We instantly became a flying mass, and plunged, in the greatest disorder, into that wood we had but a few hours before moved through with order, and very different feelings. I had got a little to the westward of Barca Gana, in the confusion which took place on our



passing the ravine, where upward of one hundred of the Bornouese were speared by the Felatahs, and was following at a round gallop the steps of one of the Mandara eunuchs, who, I observed, kept a good look-out, his head being constantly turned over his left shoulder, with a face expressive of the greatest dismay, when the cries behind, of the Felatah horse pursuing, made us both quicken our paces. The spur, however, had the effect of incapacitating my beast altogether, as the arrow, I found afterward, had reached the shoulder-bone, and in passing over some rough ground he stumbled and fell. Almost before I was upon my legs, the Felatahs were upon me. I had, however, kept hold of the bridle, and seizing a pistol from the holsters, I presented it at two of these ferocious savages, who were pressing me with their spears. They instantly went off; but another, who came on me more boldly, just as I was endeavoring to mount, received the contents somewhere in his left shoulder, and again I was enabled to place my foot in the stirrup. Remounted, I again pushed my retreat. I had not, however, proceeded many hundred yards, when my horse again came down with such violence as to throw me against a tree at a considerable distance, and, alarmed at the horses behind him, he quickly got up and escaped, leaving me on foot and unarmed.

"The eunuch and his four followers were here butchered, after a very slight resistance, and stripped within a few yards of me. Their cries were dreadful; and even now the feelings of that moment are fresh in my memory—my hopes of life were too faint to deserve the name. I was almost instantly surrounded, and, incapable of making the least resistance as I was unarmed, was as speedily stripped, and while attempting, first to save my shirt and then my trowsers, I was thrown on the ground. My pursuers made several thrusts at me with their spears, which badly wounded my hands in two places, and slightly my body, just under the ribs, on the right side; indeed, I saw nothing before me but the same cruel death I had seen unmercifully inflicted on the few who had fallen into the power of those who now had possession of me; and they were alone prevented from murdering me, in the first instance, I am persuaded, by the fear of injuring the value of my clothes, which appeared to them a rich booty—but it was otherwise ordained.

"My shirt was now absolutely torn off my back, and I was left perfectly naked. When my plunderers began to quarrel for the spoil, the idea of escape came like lightning across my mind, and without a moment's hesitation or reflection I crept under the belly of the horse nearest me, and started as fast as my legs could carry me for the thickest part of the wood; two of the Felatahs followed, and I ran on to the eastward, knowing that our stragglers would be in that direction, but still almost as much afraid of friends as foes. My pursuers gained on me, for the prickly underwood not only obstructed my passage, but tore my flesh miserably; and the delight with which I saw a mountain-stream gliding along at the bottom of a deep ravine can not be imagined. My

of the Bornouese were  
ound gallop the steps  
kept a good look-out,  
boulder, with a face ex-  
ehind, of the Felatah  
The spur, however,  
ether, as the arrow, I  
and in passing over  
t before I was upon my  
ever, kept hold of the  
presented it at two of  
ith their spears. They  
e more boldly, just as  
s somewhere in his left  
my foot in the stirrup.  
not, however, proceeded  
ne down with such vio-  
siderable distance, and,  
t up and escaped, leav-

e butchered, after a very  
rds of me. Their cries  
at moment are fresh in  
deserve the name. I was  
aking the least resistance  
d while attempting, first  
thrown on the ground.  
their spears, which badly  
my body, just under the  
before me but the same  
n the few who had fallen  
n of me; and they were  
first instance, I am per-  
y clothes, which appeared  
dained.

y back, and I was left per-  
o quarrel for the spoil, the  
my mind, and without a  
er the belly of the horse  
d carry me for the thickest  
owed, and I ran on to the  
l be in that direction, but  
s. My pursuers gained on  
ructed my passage, but tore  
ch I saw a mountain-stream  
can not be imagined. My

strength had almost left me, and I seized the young branches issuing from the stump of a large tree which overhung the ravine, for the purpose of letting myself down into the water, as the sides were precipitous, when, under my hand, as the branches yielded to the weight of my body, a large *liffa*—the worst kind of serpent this country produces—rose from its coil, as if in the very act of striking. I was horror-struck, and deprived for a moment of all recollection—the branch slipped from my hand, and I tumbled headlong into the water beneath. This shock, however, revived me, and with three strokes of my arms I reached the opposite bank, which, with difficulty, I crawled up; and then, for the first time, felt myself safe from my pursuers.

"I now saw horsemen through the trees, still further to the east, and determined on reaching them, if possible, whether friends or enemies; and the feelings of gratitude and joy with which I recognized Barca Gana and Boo-Khaloom, with about six Arabs, although they also were closely pressed by a party of the Felatahs, was beyond description. The guns and pistols of the Arab shekhs kept the Felatahs in check, and assisted in some measure the retreat of the footmen. I hailed them with all my might; but the noise and confusion which prevailed, from the cries of those who were falling under the Felatah spears, the cheers of the Arabs rallying, and their enemies pursuing, would have drowned all attempts to make myself heard, had not Maraymy, the shekh's negro, seen and known me at a distance. To this man I was indebted for my second escape: riding up to me, he assisted me to mount behind him, while the arrows whistled over our heads, and we then galloped off to the rear as fast as his wounded horse could carry us. After we had gone a mile or two, and the pursuit had somewhat cooled, in consequence of all the baggage having been abandoned to the enemy, Boo-Khaloom rode up to me, and desired one of the Arabs to cover me with a bournous. This was a most welcome relief, for the burning sun had already begun to blister my neck and back, and gave me the greatest pain. Shortly after, the effect of the poisoned wound in his foot caused our excellent friend to breathe his last: Maraymy exclaimed, 'Look! look! Boo-Khaloom is dead!' I turned my head, almost as great an exertion as I was capable of, and saw him drop from the horse into the arms of his favorite Arab—he never spoke after. They said he had only swooned; there was no water, however, to revive him, and about an hour after, when we came to Makkeray, he was past the reach of restoratives.

"On coming to the stream, the horses, with blood gushing from their nostrils, rushed into the shallow water, and, letting myself down from behind Maraymy, I knelt down among them, and seemed to imbibe new life by the copious draughts of the muddy beverage which I swallowed. Of what followed I have no recollection; Maraymy told me afterward that I staggered across the stream, which was not above my hips, and fell down at the foot of a tree on the other side. About

a quarter of an hour's halt took place here for the benefit of stragglers, and to tie poor Boo-Khaloom's body on a horse's back, at the end of which Maraymy awoke me from my deep sleep, and I found my strength wonderfully increased; not so, however, our horse, for he had become stiff and could scarcely move. As I learned afterward, a conversation had taken place about me while I slept, which rendered my obligations to Maraymy still greater; he had reported to Barca Gana the state of his horse, and the impossibility of carrying me on, when the chief, irritated by his losses and defeat, replied: 'Then leave him behind. By the head of the prophet! believers enough have breathed their last to-day. What is there extraordinary in a Christian's death?' My old antagonist, Malem Chadilly, replied: 'No, God has preserved him; let us not forsake him.' Maraymy returned to the tree, and said 'his heart told him what to do.' He awoke me, assisted me to mount, and we moved on as before, but with tottering steps and less speed. The effect produced on the horses that were wounded by poisoned arrows was extraordinary; immediately after drinking they dropped and instantly died, the blood gushing from their noses, mouths, and ears.

"In this way we continued our retreat, and it was after midnight when we halted in the sultan of Mandara's territory. Riding more than forty-five miles, in such an unprovided state, on the bare back of a lean horse, the powerful consequences may be imagined. I was in a deplorable state the whole night; and notwithstanding the irritation of the flesh-wounds was augmented by the woollen covering the Arab had thrown over me, it was evening the next day before I could get a shirt, when one man who had two, both of which he had worn eight or ten days at least, gave me one, on a promise of getting a new one at Kouka. I slept under a tree nearly the whole night and day, except at intervals when my friend Maraymy supplied me with a drink made from parched corn, bruised, and steeped in water.

"Mai Meegamy, the dethroned sultan of a country to the south-west of Angornou, and now subject to the shekh, took me by the hand as I crawled out of my nest for a few minutes, and with many exclamations of sorrow, and a countenance full of commiseration, led me to his leather tent, and sitting down quickly, disrobed himself of his trowsers, insisting I should put them on. Really, no act of charity could exceed this! I was exceedingly affected at so unexpected a friend, for I had scarcely seen, or spoken three words to him; but not so much so as himself, when I refused to accept of them. He shed tears in abundance; and thinking, which was the fact, that I conceived he had offered the only ones he had, immediately called a slave, whom he stripped of those necessary appendages to a man's dress, according to our ideas, and putting them on himself, insisted again on my taking those he had first offered me. I accepted this offer, and thanked him with a full heart; and Meegamy was my great friend from that moment until I quitted the shekh's dominions.

"We returned with great expedition, considering the wretched state

benefit of stragglers, back, at the end of I found my strength for he had become ward, a conversation lered my obligations a Gana the state of when the chief, irri- ve him behind. By reathed their last to- death?" My old an- reserved him; let us e, and said 'his heart ne to mount, and we ess speed. The effect isoned arrows was ex- ipped and instantly and ears.

it was after midnight ry. Riding more than he bare back of a lean d. I was in a deplora- e irritation of the flesh- the Arab had thrown ould get a shirt, when n eight or ten days at ew one at Kouka. I ay, except at intervals ink made from parched

country to the south-west ok me by the hand as I with many exclamations on, led me to his leather of his trowsers, insisting y could exceed this! I iend, for I had scarcely uch so as himself, when oundance; and thinking, ed the only ones he had, those necessary appen- s, and putting them on d first offered me. I ac- eart; and Meegamy was ed the shekh's dominions. uring the wretched state

we were in. On the sixth day after our departure from Mora, we arrived in Kouka, a distance of one hundred and eighty miles; the wounded Arabs remained behind, being unable to keep up with the chief, and did not arrive until four days after us. I suffered much, both in mind and body, but complained not; indeed all complaint would have been ill-timed, where few were enduring less than myself. My black servant had lost mule, canteens, and every thing, principally from keeping too near me in the action; and, by his obeying implicitly the strict orders I had given him not to fire on the Felatahs, he had narrowly escaped with his life. Bruised and lame, he could render me no assistance, and usually came in some hours after we had halted." On reaching Angornou, the shekh sent Major Denham some linen and a dress of the country, in which he made his entry into Kouka.

## THE RAINY SEASON IN BORNOU.

Soon after the return of the unfortunate expedition to Mandara, the shekh of Bornou determined to send a force to subdue the people of Munga, a country lying to the westward. For this purpose, he assembled eight or nine thousand spearmen, and five thousand Shouaas, and set out on the 18th of May. Major Denham and Dr. Oudney obtained permission to accompany him, for the purpose of visiting the ruins of the towns of Gambarou and Old Birnie; Captain Clapperton remained at Kouka. The travelers accompanied the shekh the first day, and then, leaving the army, took a course more to the northward, to the river Yeou, or Gambarou, near which are the ruins of Old Birnie. On the 26th of May, they passed a lake three miles long, called Muggaby, or the lake of the Sultan of Bornou. "We proceeded by the high road to Soudan," says Major Denham, "and after about two miles came to the spot on which once stood the capital of Bornou; the ruins of the city certainly tended to convince us more strongly of the power of its former sultans, than any of the tales we had heard of their magnificence. We had seen upward of thirty large towns which the Felatahs had completely razed to the ground at the time they destroyed the capital, and we were now arrived at the ruins of the capital itself. Old Birnie covered a space of five or six square miles, and is said to have had a population of two hundred thousand souls. The remains of the walls were in many places still standing, in large masses of hard red brick-work, and were from three to four feet in thickness, and sixteen to eighteen feet in height. From the top of one of these we obtained a sight of the river Gambarou, running nearly east, notwithstanding its windings, and only a few miles distant.

"Close to the bank, and just at the hollow of a slight curve in the river's course, fourteen years ago stood the town of Gambarou, the chosen place of residence of the late and former Sultans of Bornou; and the

ruins now standing give a proof of the buildings having been, for this country, of a princely kind; the walls of a mosque, which were more than twenty yards square, are still visible, and those of the sultan's house, with gates opening to the river, still remain; a private mosque appears also to have been attached to the sultan's residence. The buildings were all of brick, and must have had a superior appearance to any town we had seen in Africa. The situation was beautiful, and although labyrinths of thickets and brambles now overspread the banks of the river, while wild plants and useless grass were in the meadows, yet I was assured that the whole neighborhood of Gambarou was once in a superior state of cultivation; and that, in the old sultan's time, boats were constantly moving to and from Kabshary, and other towns to the west. Kouka was at that time not in being, and Angornou but a small parcel of huts."

The travelers were here alarmed by reports that the people of Munga were in the neighborhood, and hastened to rejoin the shekh's army. On their way they came upon a herd of fourteen wild elephants, which the negroes made to dance and frisk like so many goats, by beating a brass basin violently with a stick. They were two days in reaching the Bornou camp, and on the way both Dr. Oudney and the servant Columbus came near losing their lives by falling into pits set for wild beasts, with sharp stakes at the bottom. On rejoining the sultan, they found him within the territory of Munga, having already gained several advantages over his enemies. On the 5th of June, many hundreds of the Munga people came to the camp, bowing to the ground, and throwing sand upon their heads, in token of submission. At night, preparations were made for marching upon the capital, but the people sent word that if the shekh remained where he was, they would come to him and surrender themselves.

On the following day, several towns sent their chiefs, but Malam Fanaamy, the chief of the rebels, refused to come, because he feared to lose his head, offering at the same time two thousand slaves, one thousand bullocks, and three hundred horses, for the shekh, as the price of peace. The same evening, the shekh requested Major Denham to send up some rockets, which was successfully done. The night was very dark, and the appearance of the rockets created great wonder and consternation. Some of the Munga messengers fell on their faces and began to pray most fearfully, when the rockets burst in their descent. Next morning, Malem Fanaamy came, mounted on a white horse, at the head of a thousand followers, to make his submission. The shekh received his humble acknowledgments of subjection, and when the rebel expected to hear the order for his throat to be cut, he was clothed with eight handsome tobies, and his head made as big as six with turbans from Egypt.

A circumstance occurred during this expedition which created a great sensation among the chiefs, and which offered a striking illustration of the absolute authority of the Shekh of Bornou. Says Major Denham: "Barca Gana, the shekh's general and his favorite, a governor

having been, for this  
 e, which were more  
 e of the sultan's house,  
 ivate mosque appears  
 . The buildings were  
 rance to any town we  
 d although labyrinths  
 ks of the river, while  
 ws, yet I was assured  
 ce in a superior state  
 oats were constantly  
 to the west. Kouka  
 a small parcel of huts."  
 t the people of Munga  
 the shekh's army. On  
 elephants, which the  
 ants, by beating a brass  
 s in reaching the Bor-  
 the servant Columbus  
 t for wild beasts, with  
 ultan, they found him  
 ned several advantages  
 hundreds of the Munga  
 nd throwing sand upon  
 preparations were made  
 word that if the shekh  
 and surrender them-

chiefs, but Malam Fa-  
 cause he feared to lose  
 d slaves, one thousand  
 a, as the price of peace.  
 enham to send up some  
 was very dark, and the  
 ler and consternation.  
 and began to pray most  
 . Next morning, Ma-  
 the head of a thousand  
 received his humble ac-  
 l expected to hear the  
 eight handsome tobes,  
 n Egypt.

dition which created a  
 ered a striking illustra-  
 Bornou. Says Major  
 his favorite, a governor

of six large districts, the man whom he delighted to honor, who had more than fifty female and a hundred male slaves, was taught a lesson of humility that made me feel for him. In giving presents to the chiefs, the shekh had inadvertently sent him a horse which he had previously promised to some one else, and on Barca Gana being requested to give it up, he took such great offense that he sent back all the horses which the shekh had previously given him, saying that he would in future walk or ride his own. On this the shekh immediately sent for him, had him stripped in his presence, and the leather girdle put round his loins; and, after reproaching him with his ingratitude, ordered that he should be forthwith sold to the Tibboo merchants, for he was still a slave. The favorite thus humbled and disgraced, fell on his knees and acknowledged the justness of his punishment. He begged for no forgiveness for himself, but intreated that his wives and children might be provided for, out of the riches of his master's bounty. But on the following day, when preparations were made for carrying this sentence into effect, the black Mamelukes and Shouaa chiefs about the shekh's person fell at his feet, and, notwithstanding the haughtiness of Barca Gana's carriage to them since his advancement, to a man intreated pardon for his offenses. The culprit appearing at this moment, to take leave, the shekh threw himself back on his cushion, wept like a child, and suffered Barca Gana, who had crept close to him, to embrace his knees, and calling them all his sons, pardoned his repentant slave. In the evening, there was great and general rejoicing. The timbrels beat: the Kanemboos yelled and struck their shields; every thing bespoke joy, and Barca Gana, in new tobes and a rich bornous, rode around the camp, followed by all the chiefs of the army."

After an absence of a month, the shekh returned to Kouka, and the troops were disbanded. The travelers established themselves in the house which had been appropriated to them, to pass the rainy season, which had commenced. Major Denham commenced the study of the Arabic and Bornou languages. Dr. Oudney and Hillman were both ill with the fever, and the whole party was affected by the heat of the days and the dampness of the evenings. Major Denham gives the following description of the rainy season: "We had frequent and violent showers of rain, with thunder and most vivid lightning: the waters covered the face of the country in extensive lakes, and our excursions in search of game were now confined to the immediate neighborhood of our residence. The sugar-cane had increased in height greatly; and at this season of the year there are other reasons beside the fall of rain which induce people to remain in their habitations—when the great lake overflows the immense district which, in the dry season, affords cover and food to the numerous animals with which Bornou abounds, they are driven from the wilds, and take refuge in the standing corn, and sometimes in the immediate neighborhood of the towns. Elephants had already been seen at Dowergoo, scarcely six miles from Kouka; and a



female slave, while she was returning home from weeding the corn to Kowa, not more than ten miles distant, had been seized and carried off by a lioness."

The party now began to be embarrassed for want of funds. A merchant of Mourzuk, named Hadji Ali, to whose brother they had intrusted some money, declined to pay it, and they were almost destitute. This circumstance came to the ears of the shekh and of some relatives of Hadji Ali, who at last came to Major Denham, stating that he would let them have as much as they wanted, in pieces of cotton cloth, for which he must first send to Mourzuk; but he had no money. This was very unsatisfactory, but they thought it best to make no objection. Captain Clapperton was now seized with fever and delirium: Hillman, though he still had occasional attacks of delirium, recruited a little, but Dr. Oudney grew visibly weaker every day. The season appeared to be an unhealthy one for the natives also, and a great number of them died.

Toward the end of September, Clapperton, whose life had been despaired of, began slowly to recover. The carpenter, Hillman, employed himself in making a gun-carriage for a four-pounder, which the Sultan of Fezzan had presented to the shekh, and, notwithstanding the difficulties he had to encounter, in the scarcity of iron, and the clumsiness of the negro blacksmith, he succeeded very well. The providing of balls was a great difficulty; but after trying a number of musket-balls in a small linen rag, which would not answer, Major Denham succeeded in getting from the negro blacksmith, by means of a paper model, a small tin canister, the size of the bore of the piece, and holding sixteen musket-balls. The shekh's delight at this acquisition to his implements of war was extreme, and he became impatient to see the guns exercised. The distance to which they threw the balls, and the loudness of the report, created the greatest astonishment, but the shekh would not suffer a second canister to be shot. "No, no!" said he, "they are too valuable; they must not be thrown away. Curses on their race, how these will make the Begharmis jump!" Major Denham had cut out a harness in paper as a pattern, which had been tolerably imitated in leather: this was attached to each gun, with a man mounted on the mule that drew it, and altogether the guns had a far better appearance and effect than was anticipated.

About the middle of October cool winds began to blow, which in the course of two or three weeks produced a great change in the climate. The sick became cheered and invigorated, and the travelers now began to plan new journeys to the eastward and westward of Bornou. The shekh intended to send off two expeditions, one to Begharmi, a country lying south-east of Lake Tchad, and the other to Kanem, lying to the north-east, on the borders of the desert. Major Denham determined to accompany the former. Captain Clapperton and Dr. Oudney succeeded in obtaining the permission of the shekh to accompany a caravan which

m weeding the corn to  
a seized and carried off  
want of funds. A mer-  
rother they had intrust-  
were almost destitute.  
n and of some relatives  
n, stating that he would  
ces of cotton cloth, for  
ad no money. This was  
to make no objection.  
and delirium: Hillman,  
m, recruited a little, but  
The season appeared to  
great number of them

whose life had been de-  
nter, Hillman, employed  
under, which the Sultan  
otwithstanding the diffi-  
iron, and the clumsiness  
The providing of balls  
nber of musket-balls in a  
or Denham succeeded in  
of a paper model, a small  
and holding sixteen mus-  
ion to his implements of  
see the guns exercised.  
l the loudness of the re-  
e shekh would not suffer  
he, "they are too valua-  
on their race, how these  
am had cut out a harness  
imitated in leather: this  
d on the mule that drew  
pearance and effect than

gan to blow, which in the  
nt change in the climate.  
the travelers now began  
estward of Bornou. The  
e to Begharmi, a country  
r to Kanem, lying to the  
or Denham determined to  
d Dr. Oudney succeeded  
company a caravan which

was about starting for Kano, in the Sultan of Houssa's dominions. Dr. Oudney was extremely debilitated, but as no other caravan was expected to start for months, in consequence of the non-arrival of the caravan from Mourzuk, he determined to go, though aware that his strength was scarcely equal to the journey. They left Kouka on the 14th of December.

On the 21st Major Denham was delighted with the intelligence that a small caravan had arrived at Woodie from Mourzuk, and that there was an Englishman accompanying it. "The following day," he writes, "was a day of great anxiety; and on the 23d, very soon after daylight, I was overjoyed at seeing, instead of Mr. Tyrwhit, whose bodily infirmities made me always consider his joining me doubtful, a robust, healthy-looking young man, with a double-barreled gun slung at his back. When he presented himself at the door of my hut, his very countenance was an irresistible letter of recommendation, and I opened the packages which were to account for his appearance, with considerable eagerness. Mr. Tyrwhit, I found, had been prevented by sickness from profiting by the consul's recommendation; and that on application being made to the Governor of Malta, as a substitute, Mr. Toole, an ensign in the 80th regiment, had volunteered to join me, and left Malta at twenty hours' notice. He had made the long, dangerous and difficult journey from Tripoli to Bornou, in the short space of three months and fourteen days, having left the former place on the 6th of September: and overcoming all obstacles by perseverance and resolution, both at Mourzuk and in the Tibboo country, had arrived here with only the loss of five camels. His arrival gave a most favorable turn to my situation at Kouka. I had now money, health, and a desirable companion."

#### EXCURSIONS TO LOGGUN, AND AROUND LAKE TCHAD.

On the 12th of January, 1824, news came to Kouka, that the shekh's troops who had been stationed on the western bank of the Shary, a large river which flows into Lake Tchad from the south, had gained a victory over the troops of the Sultan of Begharmi, which latter had retreated from the river. It was therefore possible to visit the country of Loggun, on the Shary, with entire safety, and the shekh not only gave Major Denham permission to proceed thither, but appointed one of his negroes, named Bellal, to accompany him. "While I was waiting to take leave of the shekh," says Denham, "a note was brought to me from Dr. Oudney, by a Bornouese from Katagum: it had no date, and was indeed his last effort. The acknowledgment of being weak and helpless assured me that he was really so: for during the whole of his long sufferings a complaint had scarcely ever escaped his lips. On the shekh's saying to him, when he first expressed his wish to accompany the caravan, 'Surely your health is not such as to risk a journey?' he

merely replied: 'Why, if I stay here I shall die, and probably sooner, as traveling always improves my health.'

Accompanied by Mr. Toole and the negro Bellal, Major Denham left Kouka on the 23d of January, and on the 28th reached the town of Showy, on the banks of the river Shary. The magnitude of the stream drew from them an exclamation of surprise: it appeared to be full half a mile in width, running northward at the rate of two or three miles an hour. On the 2d of February they embarked, intending to descend the river to Lake Tchad. They were accompanied by the Kadi, or Governor of Showy, with eight canoes, carrying ten and eleven men each. "The river, full as it is of water at this season, had a highly interesting appearance: one noble reach succeeded another, alternately varying their courses by handsome sweeps, some of them three and four miles in length; the banks were thickly scattered with trees rich in foliage, and all overhung with creeping plants, bearing various colored and aromatic blossoms, among which the purple convolvulus flourished in great beauty." On reaching the lake, a heavy swell from the north-east prevented them from advancing further; with the aid of a good telescope no land could be discerned in that direction. The natives who accompanied them were in great fear of the Biddoomas, a fierce people, who inhabit some islands in the lake, and the party therefore returned up the river to Showy, which they reached after an absence of six days.

The travelers now continued their journey by land, and after four days of toilsome travel, over deep marshes and through dense, thorny forests, reached Kussery, on the Shary. Mr. Toole became ill, and Major Denham therefore decided to rest a day or two, to recruit him. "Kussery, however," says Denham, "was the last place one should have chosen for rest and tranquillity: during several hours in the day, the inhabitants themselves dare not move out, on account of the flies and bees. The formation of the houses, which are literally one cell within another, five or six in number, excited my surprise; which was not a little increased when I found that they were built expressly as a retreat from the attacks of these insects. Still I was incredulous, until one of our people, who had carelessly gone out, returned with his eyes and head in such a state that he was extremely ill for three days. Kussery is a strong walled town, governed by an independent sultan, named Zarmawka, who has twice been in rebellion against the shekh. Bellal was obliged to take off his red cap and turban, and enter the presence with his head and feet bare—a ceremony which had previously been dispensed with on our journey. The sultan merely peeped at us through a lattice-work of bamboo, but inquired particularly why I turned my face toward him as I sat. I, of course, replied, that turning my back would be a gross affront in my country, at which he laughed heartily."

The travelers immediately set out for Loggun, which was thirty miles distant, but were detained on the frontier of the country until the

and probably sooner,

llal, Major Denham reached the town of nitude of the stream eared to be full half wo or three miles an ending to descend the y the Kadi, or Gov- and eleven men each.

a highly interesting, alternately varying three and four miles trees rich in foliage, various colored and volulus flourished in ll from the north-east e aid of a good tele-

The natives who accomas, a fierce people, e party therefore reed after an absence of

y land, and after four through dense, thorny Toole became ill, and r two, to recruit him. place one should have hours in the day, the count of the files and literally one cell within rise; which was not a t expressly as a retreat credulous, until one of with his eyes and head ee days. Kussery is a nt sultan, named Zar- the shekh. Bellal was enter the presence with eviously been dispensed at us through a lattice- I turned my face to- ing my back would be ed heartily."

gun, which was thirty of the country until the

sultan had been consulted. They entered the town by the western gate, which leads to the principal street—a wide avenue, with large dwellings on each side, built with great uniformity, each having a court-yard in front, surrounded by walls, and a handsome entrance, with a strong door hasped with iron. A number of the inhabitants were seated at their doors for the purpose of seeing the strangers enter. The next morning Major Denham was sent for to appear before the sultan. Ten immense negroes, of high birth, gray-bearded, bare-headed, and carrying large clubs, preceded him through the streets. He was conducted to a large square court, where some hundred persons were assembled, all seated upon the ground: in the middle was a vacant space where the Major was desired to seat himself. The sultan was concealed behind a lattice-work of cane, which being removed at a given signal, something alive was discovered on a carpet, with the head enveloped in shawls, and nothing but the eyes visible. The whole court prostrated themselves and poured sand on their heads, while a harsh salute was blown from loud horns. After receiving his present the sultan whispered a welcome; for it is considered so very ill-bred in a Loggun gentleman to speak out, that the sound of their voices can with difficulty be heard.

"Loggun," says Major Denham, "the capital of which country, Kernuk Loggun, is on the banks of the Shary, and in 11° 7' north latitude, is a very populous country. Kernuk has fifteen thousand inhabitants at least. They speak a language nearly Begharmi. The Shouas are all around them, and to them they are indebted for the plentiful supply of bullocks, milk, and fat with which the market abounds. They have, also, a metal currency in Loggun, the first I had seen in Negroland. It consists of thin plates of iron, something in the shape of the tip with which they shoe race-horses. These are made into parcels of ten and twelve, according to the weight, and thirty of these parcels are equal in value to ten rottola, or a dollar."

On the 19th, Mr. Toole seemed better, and Major Denham left him for the purpose of proceeding up the Shary for a day or two. He had proceeded but a few miles, however, when an express from the sultan overtook him, announcing that the Begharmis were again marching on Loggun, and that he should return at once. On visiting the sultan, he endeavored to persuade him to allow him to remain. "More than half my people are Begharmi," said the sultan. "I have no protection to give—go while you can!" Mr. Toole was fastened upon a horse, as he was unable to sit up; and, with no provisions but a sack of parched corn which the sultan gave them, at four o'clock the same day they quitted the town, when the three gates were shut upon them by an immense crowd of people. For three days they continued their flight, with scarcely any rest, until they reached Angala, in the Shekh of Bornou's dominions, where they considered themselves comparatively

safe. Mr. Toole was alternately senseless and delirious during this journey.

"At Angala," says Major Denham, "we took up our old quarters; and Mr. Toole, on being told where he was, exclaimed: 'Thank God!'"

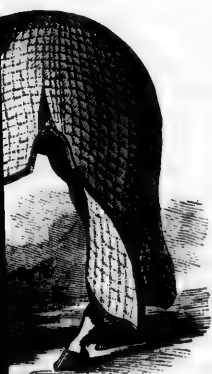


LANCER OF THE SULTAN OF BEGHARM.

then I shall not die!' And so much better was he for the two following days, that I had great hopes of his recovery; about four o'clock, however, on the morning of the 26th of February, these hopes were at an end. A cold shivering had seized him, and his extremities were like ice. I gave him both tea and rice-water; and there was but little alteration in him until just before noon, when, without a struggle or a groan,

PPERTON.

delirious during this  
up our old quarters;  
aimed: 'Thank God!



ARMY.

he for the two follow-  
ery; about four o'clock,  
ary, these hopes were at  
his extremities were like  
there was but little alter-  
out a struggle or a groan,

DEATHS OF TOOLE AND OUDNEY.

495

he expired, completely worn out and exhausted. The same afternoon, just as the sun was sinking below the horizon, I followed his remains to their last resting-place, a deep grave which six of the Sultan of Angala's slaves had prepared, under my direction, to the north-west of the town, overhung by a clump of mimosas in full blossom. The prime minister attended the procession with his staff of office, and a silent prayer, breathed over all that remained of my departed friend, was the best funeral service circumstances allowed me to perform. After raising over the grave a pile of thorns and branches of the prickly tulloh, several feet high, as a protection against the herds of hyenas who nightly infest the burying-places in this country, I returned to the town."

An immediate return to Kouka was now rendered necessary, and Major Denham arrived there on the 2d of March. The fatigue, anxiety of mind, and loss of rest which he had endured, brought on an attack of fever which confined him to his mat for ten days. A few days after his arrival a courier returned from Kano, bringing intelligence of the death of Dr. Oudney, at a place called Murmur, on the 12th of January. On the 28th of March the Shekh of Bornou, who had gone with what troops he could raise to repel the Begharmis, met them, five thousand strong, near Angala, and, with the assistance of his four-pounders, routed them with great slaughter. Of two hundred Begharmi chiefs, only one escaped alive; seven sons of the sultan and seventeen hundred men were among the slain. The plunder amounted to four hundred and eighty horses, two hundred women, and the baggage of the princes. The rejoicings in Kouka over this victory, lasted for several days.

Major Denham took advantage of the shekh's good-humor to apply for his protection on a journey to the eastward, hoping to penetrate through to Sennaar. The shekh, however, declared that the project was impossible; but toward the end of April, Denham ascertained that a secret expedition was preparing to march against a tribe of Arabs east of Lake Tchad, who were allies of the Sultan of Begharmi. He received permission to take part in this foray, and left Kouka on the 4th of May; but as the Ramadan, or Moslem fast, was just commencing, the expedition was put off for a month. On the 19th, news came that Mr. Tyrwhit had arrived at the river Yeou, and Major Denham went out the next day to meet him. This gentleman had been sent out by the British government to strengthen the party. He was the bearer of presents to the shekh, in acknowledgment of the kind reception the expedition had met with, and was also accompanied by the shekh's children, who had been detained at Mourzuk by the intrigues of the late Sultan of Fezzan.

"On the 22d of May," says Major Denham, "we delivered the presents from his majesty in full form, consisting of two swords of very beautiful workmanship, two pair of pistols, a dagger, and two gold watches. The delight, nay ecstasy, with which these well-selected speci-



mens of our manufactories were received by El Kanemy, was apparent in every feature of his intelligent countenance, and in the quick glances of his sparkling and penetrating eye. The dagger and the watch with the second movement, were the articles which struck him most forcibly; and when I mentioned that, agreeably to his request, a parcel of rockets had also been forwarded, he exclaimed: 'What! beside all these riches! there are no friends like these! they are all truth; and I see, by the Book, that if the Prophet had lived only a short time longer, they would all have been Moslem!'

On the 18th of June Major Denham set out for the eastern side of Lake Tchad, accompanied by Mr. Tyrwhit. The military expedition was commenced by Barca Gana, who was directed to take all possible care of the travelers. They crossed the Shary at Showy, and advanced between forty and fifty miles further to the eastward, along the shore of Lake Tchad, till, on approaching Mendoo, a large town in the rebel country, Barca Gana ordered them to halt until the town should be taken, and they were obliged to comply. Their situation was very unpleasant, as they were exposed to attack, and from their vicinity to the lake, suffered greatly from the flies and mosquitoes. Here they remained several days in the greatest suspense, their provisions daily becoming more scanty. Finally, on the evening of July 5th, Barca Gana returned with about half his troops; he had found the enemy so strongly entrenched at Maou, the capital, that he did not dare to attack them. Four days afterward he set out to capture the rebel sultan Amanook, who had taken refuge on one of the islands in the lake, but was repulsed with severe loss, receiving himself a spear-wound in the back. Major Denham dressed the wound with an application of burnt fat and sulphur, and succeeded in healing the general, who advised him urgently to return to Kouka. "The excursion," he said, "which you wish to make, is now impracticable. We must wait for the shekh's appearance before we can do any thing, and I think, as the rains have now begun to fall, you will find that the shekh will not come, and that we shall all return."

As we had not more than four days' provisions left, Major Denham, after another consultation with Barca Gana, determined to follow his advice and return. He had now been ten days among this tribe of Shouaas, who were a superior class to any he had met with; they were rich in cattle and in camels, and seemed to live in plenty and patriarchal simplicity. They were a handsome race, the women especially, who brought the travelers bowls of fresh milk, night and morning, in exchange for bits of amber. Says Major Denham: "There is something so curious, and singularly interesting and expressive in the Shouaas manners and language, that I am at a loss how to describe it. A girl sits down by your tent with a bowl of milk, a dark-blue cotton wrapper tied around her waist, and a mantilla of the same thrown over her head, with which she hides her face, yet leaves her bust naked. She says 'A happy

APPERTON.

Kanemy, was apparent  
and in the quick glances  
ger and the watch with  
ruck him most forcibly;  
quest, a parcel of rock-  
What! beside all these  
re all truth; and I see,  
ly a short time longer,

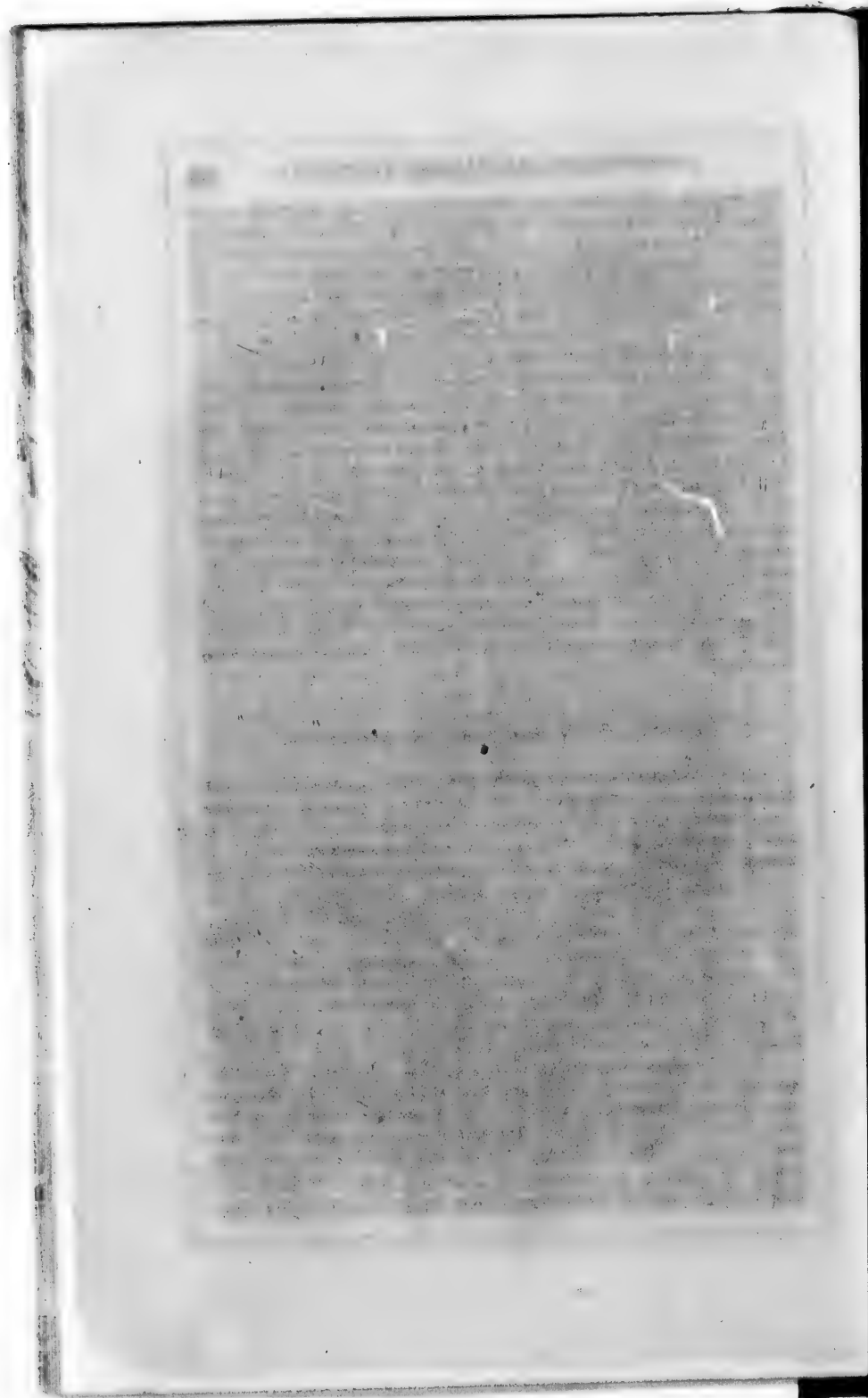
for the eastern side of  
The military expedi-  
was directed to take all  
the Shary at Showy,  
urther to the eastward,  
oaching Mendoo, a large  
ered them to halt until  
liged to comply. Their  
exposed to attack, and  
eatly from the flies and  
ys in the greatest sus-  
scanty. Finally, on the  
h about half his troops;  
ed at Maou, the capital,  
ys afterward he set out to  
ken refuge on one of the  
re loss, receiving himself  
ressed the wound with an  
eeded in healing the gen-  
ouka. "The excursion,"  
mpracticable. We must  
do any thing, and I think,  
nd that the shekh will not

sions left, Major Denham,  
determined to follow his  
lays among this tribe of  
had met with; they were  
e in plenty and patriarchal  
e women especially, who  
night and morning, in ex-  
am: "There is something  
ressive in the Shouaa man-  
o describe it. A girl sits  
k-blue cotton wrapper tied  
rown over her head, with  
aked. She says 'A happy





SHORES OF LAKE TSAD. Page 496.



day to you! Your friend has brought you milk; you gave her something so handsome yesterday, she has not forgotten it. Oh! how her eyes ache to see all you have got in that wooden house; pointing to a trunk. 'We have no fears now; we know you are good; and our eyes, which before could not look at you, now search after you always. They bade us beware of you at first, for you were bad, very bad; but we know better now. How it pains us that you are so white!'

On the 18th of July, after having experienced heavy rains and hurricanes on the way, the travelers again reached their residence in the capital of Bornou. "On our arrival at Kouka," says the narrative, "I found that Captain Clapperton, with a small caravan, had returned from Soudan. It was nearly eight months since we had separated, and although it was mid-day, I went immediately to the hut where he was lodged; but so satisfied was I that the sun-burnt, sickly person, who lay extended on the floor, rolled in a dark-blue shirt, was not my companion, that I was about to leave the place, when he convinced me of my error by calling me by my name. The alteration in him was certainly most striking. Our meeting was a melancholy one; he had buried his companion, and I had also closed the eyes of my younger and more robust colleague, Mr. Toole. Notwithstanding the state of weakness in which I found Captain Clapperton, he yet spoke of returning to Soudan after the rains."

## CLAPPERTON'S JOURNEY TO SACKATOO.

Captain Clapperton and Dr. Oudney, it will be remembered, had left Kouka on the 14th of December, 1823, for Soudan, intending to explore the unknown region lying between Bornou and the Niger. They took with them Jacob, the Gibraltar Jew, two servants, and three natives of Fezzan. The caravan consisted of twenty-seven merchants, two of whom were *shereefs*, or descendants of the prophet. They took the road to the ruins of Old Birnie, which Denham and Oudney had already visited, and then proceeded westward along the banks of the Yeou, which was much swollen from the summer rains. After a journey of twelve days, they entered the territory of Bedeguna, which formerly belonged to the Sultan of Bornou; the inhabitants spoke the Bornou language. They are regarded as a race of outlaws, and are subject to be carried off as slaves both by the natives of Bornou and Houssa.

On the 2d of January, the travelers approached the city of Katagum, and were met by a servant of the governor, with a small basket of goora nuts. He was followed by a party of horsemen who came up at full gallop, brandishing their spears. The leader remained behind with the band of music. The horsemen, after saluting the travelers, wheeled around and rode on before them, the drummers beating their drums, and two bards singing the praises of their master, one of them taking



the song and the other responding with the chorus.\* The governor received them in a very friendly manner. They remained at this place eight days, partly on account of Dr. Oudney's illness, and partly to wait for one of the Bornouese who was to accompany them to Sackatoo, and who had gone off to a town called Hadeeja. Dr. Oudney was very feeble and troubled with a distressing cough, to relieve which one of the natives cupped him on the side.

They left on the 10th of January, but were obliged to stop the next day at noon, on account of the increasing weakness of Dr. Oudney. He had been wasting away in a slow consumption, ever since leaving the hills of Obarree, in Fezzan, where he was seized with inflammation of the chest, in consequence of sitting down in a current of cold air after being heated. On the 12th, Captain Clapperton writes: "Dr. Oudney drank a cup of coffee at day-break, and, by his desire, I ordered the camels to be loaded. I then assisted him to dress, and, with the support of his servant, he came out of the tent; but, before he could be lifted on the camel, I observed the ghastliness of death in his countenance, and had him immediately replaced in the tent. I sat down by his side, and with unspeakable grief, witnessed his last breath, which was without a struggle or a groan. I now sent to the governor of the town to request his permission to bury the deceased, which he readily granted; and I had a grave made near an old mimosa-tree, a little beyond the southern gate of the town. The body being first washed, after the custom of the country, was dressed by my directions in clothes made of turban shawls, which we were carrying with us as presents. The corpse was borne to the grave by our servants, and I read over it the funeral service of the church of England, before it was consigned to the earth. I afterward caused the grave to be inclosed with a wall of clay, to keep off beasts of prey, and had two sheep killed and distributed among the poor."

Clapperton now continued his journey alone, and two days afterward entered the kingdom of Housea. The country was highly cultivated,

\* Captain Clapperton gives the following translation of the song:

"Give flesh to the hyenas at day-break:

Oh, the broad spears!

The spear of the sultan is the broadest—

Oh, the broad spears!

I behold thee now, I desire to see none other;

Oh, the broad spears!

My horse is as tall as a high wall:

Oh, the broad spears!

The elephant of the forest brings me what I want:

Oh, the broad spears!

Be brave! be brave! my friends and kinsmen:

Oh, the broad spears!

God is great! I wax fierce as a beast of prey:

Oh, the broad spears!

God is great! To-day those I wished for are come:

Oh, the broad spears!"

The governor remained at this place, and partly to wait them to Sackatoo, and Dr. Oudney was very much pleased which one of the

ordered to stop the next day of Dr. Oudney. He never since leaving the town inflammation of the throat of cold air after being "Dr. Oudney drank ordered the camels to with the support of his could be lifted on the countenance, and had by his side, and with was without a struggle town to request his granted; and I had a round the southern gate the custom of the countenance of turban shawls, the corpse was borne to the funeral service of the earth. I afterward y, to keep off beasts of among the poor." and two days afterward was highly cultivated,

the song:

other;

that I want:

cinamen:

of prey:

for are come:

and diversified by hill and dale. There were many large walled towns, quite deserted, the inhabitants having been carried off and sold by their conquerors, the Felatahs. On the 20th of January, he approached the large city of Kano, and prepared himself for the reception by arraying himself in his naval uniform. "At 11 o'clock," says he, "we entered Kano, the great emporium of the kingdom of Houssa; but I had no sooner passed the gates than I felt grievously disappointed; for from the flourishing description of it given by the Arabs, I expected to see a city of surprising grandeur. I found, on the contrary, the houses nearly a quarter of a mile from the walls, and in many parts scattered into detached groups, between large stagnant pools of water. I might have spared all the pains I had taken with my toilet; for not an individual turned his head around to gaze at me, but all, intent on their own business, allowed me to pass by without notice or remark."

He immediately called upon a person named Hat Salah, to whom he had a letter of recommendation from the shekh of Bornou. This person, having heard of his coming the day before, had hired a house for him, but, says Clapperton, "the house provided for me was situated at the end of a marsh, the pestilential exhalations of which, and of the pools of standing water, were increased by the sewers of the houses all opening in the street. I was fatigued and sick, and lay down on a mat which the owner of the house spread for me. I was immediately visited by all the Arab merchants who had been my fellow-travelers from Kouka, and were not prevented by sickness from coming to see me. They were more like ghosts than men, as almost all strangers were at this time suffering from intermittent fever."

Two days afterward, Clapperton visited the governor, who was then encamped about five miles east of the city. He took with him a number of presents, among which was a broken thermometer, which, he was given to understand, would be very acceptable. A thermometer was descriptively named by the natives "a watch of heat," and was everywhere regarded by them as a great curiosity. The governor, who was the father of fifty sons—a circumstance, which procured him much respect and honor—received him with great kindness, and promised to send a messenger to the sultan, at Sackatoo, requesting permission for him to proceed. This permission, however, did not arrive for a month, during which time the traveler remained domiciled at Kano.

"The city," says he, "may contain from thirty thousand to forty thousand resident inhabitants, of whom more than one half are slaves. It is rendered very unhealthy by a large morass, which almost divides it into two parts, besides many pools of stagnant water, made by digging clay for building houses. On the north side of the city are two remarkable mounts, each about two hundred feet in height, and a trifling distance apart. The city is of an irregular oval shape, about fifteen miles in circumference, and surrounded by a clay wall thirty feet high, with a dry ditch along the inside, and another on the outside. There are fifteen

gates of wood, covered with sheet-iron, which are regularly opened and shut at sunrise and sunset. The houses are built of clay, and are mostly of a square form, in the Moorish fashion, with a central hall of audience and store-rooms on the ground-floor, and a second story containing the sleeping apartments. I bought in the market, for three Spanish dollars, an English green cotton umbrella, an article I little expected to meet with, yet by no means uncommon; my Moorish servants, in their figurative language, were wont to give it the name of 'the cloud.'

Captain Clapperton had heard a great deal about the boxers of Houssa, and was anxious to witness their performances. He sent one of his servants to offer 2,000 cowries for an exhibition before his house. As the death of one of the combatants was almost certain, he prohibited all fighting in earnest. "A ring was soon formed, by the master of the ceremonies throwing dust on the spectators to make them stand back. The drummers entered the ring, and began to drum lustily. One of the boxers followed, quite naked, except a skin around the middle. He placed himself in an attitude, as if to oppose an antagonist, and wrought his muscles into action, seemingly to find out that every sinew was in full force for the approaching combat; then, coming from time to time to the side of the ring, and presenting his right arm to the bystanders, he said: 'I am a hyena; I am a lion; I am able to kill all that oppose me.' The spectators, to whom he presented himself, laid their hands upon his shoulders repeating: 'The blessing of God be upon thee! thou art a hyena; thou art a lion.' He then abandoned the ring to another, who showed off in the same manner. The right hand and arm of the pugilists were now bound with narrow country cloth, beginning with a fold around the middle finger, when the hand being first clinched with the thumb between the fore and mid fingers, the cloth was passed in many turns around the fist, the wrist, and the fore-arm. After about twenty had separately gone through the attitudes of defiance, and appeals to the bystanders, they were next brought forward by pairs. If they happened to be friends, they laid their left breasts together twice, and exclaimed: 'We are lions; we are friends.' If the two did not recognize each other as friends, the set-to immediately commenced. On taking their stations, the two pugilists first stood at some distance, parrying with the left hand open, and, whenever an opportunity offered, striking with the right. They generally aimed at the pit of the stomach, and under the ribs. When they break loose, they never fail to give a swinging blow with the heel under the ribs, or sometimes under the left ear. It is these blows which are so often fatal."

The permission of the Sultan of Houssa, for which Captain Clapperton had been waiting, arrived on the 22d day of February, and on the following day he left Kano for Sackatoo. After traveling eighteen days, without particular incident, he reached the town of Quarra, where he was met by an escort of an hundred and fifty horsemen, sent forward by the Sultan of Houssa. On the third day afterward he approached Sacka-

regularly opened and of clay, and are mostly central hall of audience story containing the three Spanish dollars, little expected to meet servants, in their figure of the cloud." about the boxers of romances. He sent one mission before his house. t certain, he prohibited d, by the master of the make them stand back. rum lustily. One of the round the middle. He antagonist, and wrought that every sinew was in ming from time to time t arm to the bystanders, e to kill all that oppose himself, laid their hands God be upon thee! thou oned the ring to another, ght hand and arm of the y cloth, beginning with a being first clinched with s, the cloth was passed in e fore-arm. After about tudes of defiance, and ap forward by pairs. If they ts together twice, and ex the two did not recognize commenced. On taking t some distance, parrying pportunity offered, strik the pit of the stomach, and never fail to give a swing- etimes under the left ear.

for which Captain Clapper- y of February, and on the er traveling eighteen days, town of Quarra, where he horsemen, sent forward by ward he approached Sacka-

too, followed by his escort and a numerous retinue, with a loud flourish of horns and trumpets. To impress the natives still further with his official importance, he arrayed himself in his lieutenant's coat, trimmed with gold lace, white trowsers, silk stockings, and, to complete his finery, red Turkish slippers and a turban. The valleys between the hills became wider as they approached Sackatoo, which they first beheld from the top of an eminence. At noon they entered the capital, where a great number of people was assembled to look at the traveler, who entered the city amid the hearty welcomes of young and old. He was conducted to the house of the vizier, where apartments had been prepared for him.

The next day he called upon Sultan Bello, who received him very cordially. He was a noble-looking man, forty-four years of age, five feet ten inches high, portly in person, with a short, curling black beard, a small mouth, a fine forehead, a Grecian nose, and large black eyes. He asked many questions about Europe, and the religious distinctions of the Franks. He was acquainted with the names of the ancient sects, and asked whether the English were Nestorians or Socinians. Captain Clapperton also read him some passages out of a book, in order that he might hear the sound of the English language, which he thought beautiful. On being presented with a compass, spy-glass, and other articles, he said: "Every thing is wonderful; but you are the greatest curiosity of all." He perused the letter of the Shekh of Bornou, and assured Clapperton that he was at liberty to visit every part of his dominions, including Yaouri and Nyffe, which the latter was anxious to reach, in the hope of learning something further concerning the fate of Park.

From an interview a few days after this, however, Clapperton saw that the sultan was becoming suspicious. He observed that there were two roads leading to Nyffe—one direct, but beset by enemies, the other safer, but circuitous; that by either route he would be detained, during the rains, in a country then in open rebellion. "I assured him," says Clapperton, "that I had already taken the matter into consideration, and that I was neither afraid of the dangers of the road nor of the rains. 'Think of it with prudence,' he replied, and we parted. From the tone and manner with which this was spoken, I felt a foreboding that my intended visit to Yaouri and Nyffe was at an end. I could not help suspecting the intrigues of the Arabs to be the cause; as they well knew, if the native Africans were once acquainted with English commerce by the way of the sea, their own lucrative inland trade would from that moment cease." Clapperton's surmises were correct, and after several further consultations on the subject he was obliged to give up the plan of proceeding beyond Sackatoo. After a residence of six weeks in the Felatah capital, during which he had a severe attack of fever, he began to prepare for his return journey to Bornou.

He gives the following description of the city: "It lies in latitude

13° 4' north, and longitude 6° 12' east, about four days journey from the Quorra, or Niger. The name, in their language, signifies a 'halting-place;' the city was built, as near as I could learn, about the year 1805. It occupies a long ridge which slopes gently toward the north, and appeared to me the most populous town I had visited in the interior of Africa, for unlike other towns in Houssa, where the houses are thinly scattered, it is laid out in regular, well-built streets. The wall is between twenty and thirty feet high, and has twelve gates, which are regularly closed at sunset. There is a spacious market-place in the center of the city, and another large square in front of the sultan's residence. The dwellings of the principal people are surrounded by high walls, which inclose numerous flat-roofed houses built in the Moorish style. The inhabitants are principally Felatahs, possessing numerous slaves."

Captain Clapperton set out on his return, on the 4th of May, proceeding to Kano by way of the large town of Kashna. On the 8th of July he reached Kouka, during Major Denham's absence on a visit to the eastern shore of Lake Tchad. Hillman, the carpenter, was busily employed in finishing a covered cart, to be used as a conveyance for the shekh's wives. The workmanship, considering the materials, reflected the greatest credit on his ingenuity; the wheels were hooped with iron, and the cart was extremely strong, though neither light nor handsome. Captain Clapperton immediately waited on the shekh, who inquired after his health, and expressed much regret at Dr. Oudney's death.

#### RETURN TO EUROPE.

The travelers had now accomplished the principal objects of their mission and explored as much of Central Africa as was practicable without remaining another season, which, in their state of health, was not advisable. They therefore determined to return to Tripoli with the annual caravan of slaves, which passed through Bornou on its way from Soudan. This caravan arrived at Kouka on the 13th of August. "On Monday, the 16th," says Major Denham, "we took our final leave of Kouka, and not without many feelings of regret, so accustomed had we become, particularly myself, to the people. In the morning I had taken leave of the shekh in his garden, when he had given me a letter to the king and a list of requests: he was all kindness, and said he had only one wish, which was that I might find all my friends well, and once more return to them. He gave me his hand at parting, which excited an involuntary exclamation of astonishment from the six eunuchs and the vizier, who were the only persons present."

The travelers preceded the caravan a few days, in order to attempt to reach the unvisited eastern side of Lake Tchad, through the country of Kanem. On the 23d they crossed the river Yeou, and Denham ob-

days journey from the signifies a 'halting-earn, about the year toward the north, I had visited in the 1858, where the houses well-built streets. The and has twelve gates, is a spacious market-square in front of principal people are sur-flat-roofed houses built pally Felatnhs, possess-

on the 4th of May, pro-ushna. On the 8th of a's absence on a visit to ne carpenter, was busily as a conveyance for the the materials, reflected were hooped with iron, her light nor handsome. hekhy, who inquired after adney's death.

E. principal objects of their as was practicable with-state of health, was not urn to Tripoli with the Bornou on its way from e 13th of August. "On took our final leave of et, so accustomed had we the morning I had taken given me a letter to the as, and said he had only y friends well, and once at parting, which excited rom the six eunuchs and

days, in order to attempt had, through the country er Yeou, and Denham ob-

serves: "My feelings on seeing this river for a second time were very different from what they had been when I first looked on its waters. We had then an escort of two hundred men, and yet could not feel ourselves in perfect safety one hundred yards from our tents. Now I had only one attendant—the people about me were all natives, and I wandered about the banks of the river with perfect freedom, and slept with my tent-door open, in as great a security as I could have done in any part of England, had I been obliged so to travel. Other feelings also obtruded themselves; I was about to return home, to see once more dear friends and a dear country, after an absence of nearly three years, on a duty full of perils and difficulties; two out of four of my companions had fallen victims to climate and disease, while those who remained were suffering, in no small degree, from sickness and debility."

At Woodie Major Denham met with Barca Gann, who, after an absence of five months, had completed the circuit of the lake. The latter gave him a guard of eighteen men, with which he advanced about fifty miles eastward along the shore of the lake, when the journey became so dangerous, that the guard refused to go further, and Denham was compelled to return. He therefore pitched his tent at Woodie, to await the arrival of the caravan from Kouka, which did not finally depart for the desert until the 14th of September. "We had the satisfaction," says Major Denham, "to find throughout our journey, that, young as we were at desert traveling, yet we got on as well, if not better, than our companions; and though children of the soil, they always looked to us, instead of us to them, both for safety and protection, as well as the direction of the route."

The caravan arrived at Bilma on the 11th of October, and proceeding by easy journeys toward Fezzan, reached Gatrone on the 14th of November. This place, before so miserable in their eyes, now seemed a little paradise. Seven days afterward they entered Mourzuk, and took up their residence in their old habitation. Prayer was offered up in the mosque for their safe return home. "All welcomed our return; we had bowls of *bazeen* and *kooscosoo* night and morning, and visitors from daylight until long after sunset. \* \* \* On the 12th of December we were all ready for our departure, and on the 13th took our leave. The cold of Mourzuk had pinched us terribly, and notwithstanding we used an additional blanket both day and night, one of us had cold and swelled neck, another ague, and a third pains in the limbs—all, I believe, principally from the chilliness of the air: yet the thermometer, at sunrise, was not lower than forty-two and forty-three degrees.

"On the 25th of January, 1825, we reached a well within ten miles of Tripoli; and previous to arriving there were met by two cawasses of the pasha, with one of the consul's servants. We found the consul's tents, but he had been obliged to return on business to the city; and the satisfaction with which we devoured some anchovy toasts, and washed them down with huge draughts of Marsala wine, in tumblers—



luxuries we had so long indeed been strangers to—was quite indescribable. We slept soundly after our feast, and on the 26th, were met by the consul and his eldest son, whose satisfaction at our safe return seemed equal to our own. We entered Tripoli the same day, where a house had been provided for us. Our long absence from civilized society appeared to have an effect on our manner of speaking, which, though we were unconscious of it, occasioned the remarks of our friends: even in common conversation our tone was so loud as almost to alarm those we addressed, and it was some weeks before we could moderate our voices so as to bring them in harmony with the confined space in which we were now exercising them."

Denham and Clapperton had a stormy passage to Leghorn, where they were obliged to perform a quarantine of twenty-five days. From Leghorn Hillman was sent home by sea with the living animals, collections, and baggage of the expedition. The two travelers crossed the Alps, and reached London on the 1st of June, after an absence from England of three years and a half.

CLAPPERTON.

—was quite indescribable. On the 26th, we were met by the safe return seemed day, where a house had civilized society appeared, though we were unacquainted: even in common with those we addressed, we raised our voices so as to be heard in which we were now

age to Leghorn, where we were twenty-five days. From the living animals, collected by the travelers crossed the sea after an absence from

## CLAPPERTON'S SECOND JOURNEY TO SACKATOO.

DURING Captain Clapperton's first visit to Sackatoo, in the year 1824, he was given to understand that the establishment of a friendly intercourse with England would be most agreeable to Sultan Bello; that the latter wished particularly for certain articles of English manufacture to be sent out to the sea-coast, where there was a large port belonging to him, called Funda. He also desired that an English physician and consul should be sent to another port, called Rakka, promising to send an agent to the latter place, to transact all matters of business between the two governments.

On the return of Denham and Clapperton to England, Lord Bathurst (then Colonial Secretary), considering this a favorable opportunity of establishing an intercourse with the interior of Africa, and probably of checking the trade in slaves, adopted Clapperton's suggestions, and dispatched him on a second mission to Sackatoo, by way of the Bight of Benin, with suitable presents to Sultan Bello. It had been arranged that the latter should send down his messengers to Whydah, on the coast, to meet Captain Clapperton and his companions. On the arrival of the latter at Benin, however, they could neither gain any intelligence of Bello's messengers, nor did the people know any thing of such places as Funda and Rakka. It has since been ascertained that both these towns are upon the Niger, at least two hundred miles from the sea.

Captain Clapperton was allowed to take with him, as companion, a surgeon by the name of Dickson, who had been seasoned by a residence in the West Indies. In an enterprise of so hazardous a nature, it was deemed advisable to add two others to the party, in order to accomplish a more thorough survey of the different countries of Soudan. For this purpose, Captain Pearce, of the navy, and Dr. Morrison, a naval surgeon, were selected; one being a good draughtsman, and the other well versed in natural history. Captain Clapperton also took with him his servant, Richard Lander, and the mulatto Columbus, who had been in the service of Major Denham. The party sailed from England on the

27th of August, and arrived in the Bight of Benin on the 26th of November, 1825. Dr. Dickson, being desirous of proceeding alone to Sackatoo, was landed at Whydah, and accompanied by Columbus, proceeded to Dahomey, where he was well received. He was sent forward to a place called Shar, seventeen days' journey further, beyond which nothing more was ever afterward heard of him.

Captain Clapperton was persuaded by a trader named Houtson, to make Badagry his starting-point; he agreed to accompany him as far as Eyeo, or Katunga, the capital of the kingdom of Yoriba. They landed on the 27th of November, and after having made arrangements to have their baggage sent after them, started on their journey into the interior on the 7th of December. As they were under the protection of the King of Badagry, they met with no difficulties in the early part of their route. At the different towns they were always received by the *caboceers*, or chief men, to whom they made small presents, and who supplied them with lodgings and provisions. In two or three days they entered the territories of the king of Yoriba, after which they experienced some trouble in procuring men and beasts to transport their baggage. Their road led through dense forests, the dampness of which, added to the fact of their traveling partly by night, brought on attacks of fever and ague, with which the whole party suffered.

On the 13th they reached the town of Laboo. The country now became more agreeable, rising into hill and dale, with fine prospects. They approached the town by the moonlight through an avenue of majestic trees, with fetish-houses placed here and there, and solitary lights burning in each. Two days afterward they reached the large town of Jannah, where the caboceer, who at first received them in rather a reserved and ceremonious manner, finally assured them that they might proceed safely as far as Eyeo, the capital, but he did not believe that the king would allow them to go beyond it. "I can not," says Clapperton, "omit bearing testimony to the singular and perhaps unprecedented fact that we have already traveled sixty miles in eight days, with a numerous and heavy baggage, and about ten different relays of carriers, without losing so much as the value of a shilling, public or private."

Meanwhile the sick continued to grow worse, with the exception of Richard Lander, who, after being bled on the temple and blistered on the head, improved. On the 23d, Dr. Morrison was so weak that he determined to return, and Mr. Houtson was sent back to take charge of him. On the following day, at a town called Egga, a seaman named George Dawson, died, and was buried the same evening. Three days afterward, Captain Pearce died, and was buried near the town of Engwa, the whole of the population attending the funeral. The grave was staked around by the natives, and a shed built over it: Richard Lander carved an inscription on a board, and placed it at the head. Clapperton now determined to wait for Mr. Houtson, who returned on

on the 26th of November, proceeding alone to the north by Columbus, proceeded was sent forward there, beyond which

named Houtson, to accompany him as far as the mouth of the river of Yoriba. They made arrangements for their journey into the interior under the protection of the natives in the early part of the journey, who always received by the natives presents, and who for two or three days they after which they expected to transport their baggage, the dampness of which, however, brought on attacks of fever.

The country now was, with fine prospects. Through an avenue of palm trees, and solitary villages, they reached the large town of Katunga, where they received them in rather friendly terms, but they were not at all satisfied. "I can not," says Houtson, "perhaps unpardonably, in eight days, make ten different relays of a shilling, public or

with the exception of a few people, who were simple and blistered on the face, was so weak that he was unable to go back to take charge of the party. Egga, a seaman named Houtson, arrived in the evening. Three days after the arrival of Houtson, near the town of En-... funeral. The grave was built over it: Richard placed it at the head. Houtson, who returned on

the 31st, with the news that Dr. Morrison had died at Jannah, on the same day as Captain Pearce. Thus in the short space of three weeks, three persons, or one half the party, had perished; yet the survivors manfully pushed on, although Clapperton was so ill that he was obliged to be carried in a hammock.

The country became more hilly and picturesque as they advanced. On the 13th of January, 1826, they entered a narrow defile, leading through a range of granite mountains. "The road through this mountain pass," says Clapperton, "was grand and imposing, sometimes rising almost perpendicularly, and then descending into deep dells. In every cleft of the hills, wherever there appeared the least soil, were cottages, surrounded by small plantations of millet, yams, or plantains, giving a beautiful variety to the rude scenery. The road continued rising, hill above hill, for at least two miles, until our arrival at the large and populous town of Chaki, situated on the top of the very highest hill. On every hand, on the hills, on the rocks, and crowding on the road, the inhabitants were assembled in thousands; the women welcoming us with holding up their hands and chanting choral songs, and the men with the usual salutations and every demonstration of joy."

Here they were kindly received by a caboceer with two thousand wives, and continued their journey next day. The country beyond this was populous and well cultivated; and they were everywhere hospitably treated. On the 22d they reached the large town of Tshow, where a messenger from the King of Yoriba was in waiting, to conduct them to Katunga. The caboceer visited them, and after having shaken hands with them, rubbed his face and body, in order that he might impart the blessing of a white man's touch to all parts of his frame. The next day, at noon, from the top of a high ridge, they saw the city of Katunga, or Eyeo. "Before us lay a finely-cultivated valley, extending as far as the eye could reach to the westward; the city lying, as it were, below us, surrounded and studded with green shady trees, forming a belt around the base of a rocky mountain, composed of granite, of about three miles in length, forming as beautiful a view as I ever saw."

On entering the city, a messenger met the travelers, stating that the king wanted to see them. Clapperton gives the following description of their reception: "A band of music accompanied us and the escort, with an immense multitude of men, women, and children. As there was much open and cultivated ground, the dust they caused almost suffocated us, though the escort tried all gentle means to keep them off. At last, after riding full five miles, we came to the place where the king was sitting under the verandah of his house, marked by two red and blue cloth umbrellas, supported by large poles held by slaves, with the staff resting upon the ground. After we got as far as the umbrellas in front, the space was all clear before the king, and for about twenty yards on each side. We walked up to the verandah with our hats on, until we came into the shade, when we took off our hats, made a bow, and

shook hands: he lifting up our hands three times, repeating, '*Ako, ako!*' (how do you do?) the women behind him standing up and cheering us, calling out, '*Oh, oh, oh!*' (hurrah!) and the men on the outside joining. It was impossible to count the number of his ladies, they were so densely packed and so very numerous. If I might judge by their smiles, they seemed as glad to see us as their master. The king was dressed in a large white shirt, with a blue one under; around his neck some three strings of large blue cut-glass beads, and on his head the imitation of a European crown of blue cotton covered over pasteboard, made apparently by some European, and sent up to him from the coast."

The city of Eyeo (Katunga, in the language of Houssa), is situated in latitude eight degrees fifty-nine minutes north, longitude six degrees twelve minutes east. It is built on the sloping side and around the base of a small range of granite hills, which, as it were, form the citadel of the town: they are composed of stupendous blocks of gray granite of the softest kind, some of which are seen hanging from the summits, in the most frightful manner, as if the least touch would send them down into the valley beneath. A belt of thick wood runs around the walls, which are built of clay, about twenty feet high, and surrounded by a dry ditch. There are ten gates in the walls, which are fifteen miles in circumference, of an oval shape, about four miles in diameter one way and six miles the other, the south end leaning against the rocky hills, and forming an inaccessible barrier in that quarter. The king's houses and those of his women occupy about a square mile, and are on the south side of the hills, having two large parks, one in front and another facing the north.

Clapperton was detained at Katunga during the whole month of February, the king refusing to allow him to proceed, under one pretext or another. He kept him well supplied with provisions, but as the traveler was obliged to make frequent presents to him, his sons, and the caboceers or head men of the city, these gifts were well paid for. Captain Clapperton applied for permission to visit Rakka, on the Niger, and to pass onward to the kingdom of Nyffe, lying east of Yoriba, which was refused, on the ground that the road was not safe. Finally, after fixing a day for Clapperton's departure five or six times, and as often postponing it, he sent word to him, on the 6th of March, that a messenger was about to start for the city of Kiama, and would accompany and give him in charge to the Sultan Yarro, who would forward him to the kingdom of Yaouri. Clapperton, therefore, immediately arranged his baggage and started, leaving Mr. Houtson, who intended returning to Badagry.\*

On the way to Kiama Lander became so ill that he could not travel without being held on the horse. They reached that city on the 13th, and rode immediately to the house of Sultan Yarro, whom they found sitting at the door of his house. He was a stout, good-looking man, past

\* Mr. Houtson reached Badagry in safety, but died soon afterward.

ating, 'Ako, ako!'  
up and cheering us,  
the outside joining.  
they were so densely  
their smiles, they  
ng was dressed in a  
his neck some three  
d the imitation of a  
board, made appar-  
ne coast."

Houssa), is situated  
ongitude six degrees  
and around the base  
, form the citadel of  
s of gray granite of  
from the summits, in  
ould send them down  
ns around the walls,  
and surrounded by a  
hich are fifteen miles  
in diameter one way  
against the rocky hills,  
r. The king's houses  
, and are on the south  
ont and another facing

the whole month of  
ed, under one pretext  
provisions, but as the  
him, his sons, and the  
re well paid for. Cap-  
kka, on the Niger, and  
east of Yoriba, which  
ot safe. Finally, after  
six times, and as often  
March, that a messen-  
would accompany and  
uld forward him to the  
mediately arranged his  
intended returning to

that he could not travel  
that city on the 13th,  
arro, whom they found  
good-looking man, past  
d soon afterward.

the middle age, dressed in a white robe or large shirt, with a red Moorish cap on his head. He received Clapperton kindly, and gave him a very comfortable house. After the heat of the day was over Yarro came to visit him, mounted on a beautiful red roan, attended by a number of armed men on horseback and on foot, and six young female slaves, carrying spears. He promised to send the travelers to Wawa, whence they would be forwarded to Boussa on the Niger. The town of Kiama, according to Clapperton's estimate, contains thirty thousand inhabitants, who are looked upon as the greatest thieves and robbers in Africa. The traveler, however, was fortunate; he escaped being plundered, and after a stay of five days, was allowed to proceed, in company with a caravan bound for Kano, in Houssa.

His road now led through a thickly wooded country, broken by picturesque rocky ranges. In passing through one of the villages, a Borgoo hunter came in from the chase. "He had a leopard's skin over his shoulder, a light spear in his hand, and his bow and arrows slung at his back. He was followed by three cream-colored dogs, a breed as if between the grayhound and the cur; they were adorned with round collars of different colored leather. The hunter and his dogs marched through the village as independently as I ever saw a man, without tak-



AFRICAN FOREST.

ing the least notice of us, or even looking at us." The road continued through tropical woods of the most luxuriant foliage. They were shaded from the heat of the sun, which was intense at noonday, and were cheered by their approach to the Niger, the proximity of which was announced by its numerous tributaries.



On the 21st, Clapperton reached the large town of Wawa, where he was indifferently received by the governor, who wrapped up his hand in his sleeve, for fear the touch of a white man would kill him. Soon after his arrival he was visited by an Arab widow named Zuma, who desired to have a white husband. She was said to be the richest person in the town, having the best house and a thousand slaves. "She showed a great regard for my servant Richard, who is younger and better looking than I am," says Captain Clapperton; "but she had passed her twentieth year, was fat, and a perfect Turkish beauty, just like a walking water-butt. All her arts were unavailing on Richard; she could not induce him to visit her at her house, though he had my permission." In spite of these rebuffs, the widow furnished the traveler with abundance of cooked provisions every day. She offered Clapperton's servant Pascoe a wife if he could persuade his master to marry her. Clapperton visited her one day, and received an estimate of all her wealth; she exhibited to him her gold bracelets, her coral beads, silver rings and other trinkets, and her apartments, splendidly adorned with pewter dishes and brass pans. She then proposed to send for a priest and have the marriage ceremony performed—whereupon the captain speedily retreated.

After spending nine days at Wawa, a messenger of the Sultan of Boussa arrived, to conduct the travelers through his dominions. The governor of Wawa promised to send all the baggage to the town of Koofu, beyond the Niger, on the direct road to Kano, and Clapperton therefore, leaving Lander to take charge of it, rode on to Boussa. The same afternoon he reached a branch of the Niger, called the Menni. It was not more than twenty yards across, but twelve feet deep. After being ferried over, an hour's ride brought him to the town of Boussa. He was much surprised, after entering the gate, to see only clusters of huts here and there, and no regular town, as he had been led to expect. He proceeded at once to visit the sultan, whom he found sitting under the verandah of one of his huts, with his principal wife beside him. The sultan received him very kindly, and said that the Sultan of Yaouri had kept seven boats waiting several days, to take him up the river. Clapperton informed him that on account of the war between Yaouri and Boussa, he intended taking the route of Koofu and Nyffé, on his way to Bornou. The sultan was a handsome man of about twenty-five years of age, five feet ten inches in height, with a lofty forehead, Roman nose, good teeth, and a short chin covered with a beard two inches long.

Clapperton's presents the next day procured him a still more favorable reception, and he was informed that he would be allowed to continue his journey on the morrow. "I next inquired of him," says the traveler, "after some white men who were lost in the river near Boussa twenty years ago. He seemed rather uneasy at this question, and I observed that he stammered in his speech. He assured me that he had nothing belonging to them; that he was a little boy when the event happened. I said, I wanted nothing but the books and papers, and to

of Wawa, where he  
lapped up his hand in  
kill him. Soon after  
Zuma, who desired  
richest person in the  
res. "She showed a  
er and better looking  
passed her twentieth  
like a walking water-  
she could not induce  
permission." In spite  
with abundance of  
ton's servant Pascoe

Clapperton visited  
wealth; she exhibited  
gs and other trinkets,  
ter dishes and brass  
d have the marriage  
dily retreated.

ger of the Sultan of  
his dominions. The  
ggage to the town of  
Kano, and Clapperton  
e on to Boussa. The  
called the Mennai. It  
elve feet deep. After  
o the town of Boussa.  
to see only clusters of  
ad been led to expect.  
e found sitting under  
wife beside him. The  
Sultan of Yaouri had  
m up the river. Clap-  
r between Yaouri and  
and Nyffé, on his way  
about twenty-five years  
forehead, Roman nose,  
l two inches long.

him a still more favora-  
uld be allowed to con-  
quired of him," says the  
a the river near Boussa  
at this question, and I  
assured me that he had  
e boy when the event  
oks and papers, and to

learn from him a correct account of the manner of their death; and that, with his permission, I would go and visit the spot where they were lost. He said no, I must not go; it was a very bad place. Having heard that part of the boat still remained, I asked him if it was so. He replied that such a report was untrue; that she did remain on the rocks for some time after, but had gone to pieces and floated down the river long ago. I said if he would give me the books and papers, it would be the greatest favor he could possibly confer upon me. He again assured me that nothing remained with him; every thing of that kind had gone into the hands of the learned men; but that if any were now in existence he would procure them and give them to me. I then asked him if he would allow me to inquire of the old people in the town the particulars of the affair, as some of them must have seen it. He appeared very uneasy, gave me no answer, and I did not press him further."

Clapperton was afterward informed by the sultan that the late *imam*, or priest, who was a Felatah, had had possession of all of Park's books and papers, but that he had fled from Boussa some time before. The inhabitants appeared uneasy and embarrassed whenever he asked for information, but they pointed out the place where the boat struck and the unfortunate travelers perished. "Even this," Clapperton remarks, "was done with caution, and as if by stealth; though, in every thing unconnected with that affair, they were most ready to give me what information I asked, and never in my life have I been treated with more hospitality and kindness. The place pointed out to me is in the eastern channel, the river being divided into three branches at this place, not one of which is more than a good pistol-shot across. A low, flat island, of about a quarter of a mile in breadth, lies between the town of Boussa and the fatal spot. The bank is not particularly high at present, being only about ten feet above the level of this branch, which here breaks over a gray slate-rock, extending quite across to the eastern shore."

Clapperton left Houssa on the 2d of April, and proceeded down the river to a days' journey to Comie, or the king's ferry, where the caravans to and from Houssa cross the Niger. His baggage, much to his surprise, had not arrived from Wawa, and he found, on inquiry, that it had been detained by the orders of the persevering widow Zuma. He immediately returned to Wawa, and Lander arrived there at the same moment from Boussa, whither he had gone to seek his master and acquaint him with the detention of his property. The sultan had treated Lander with great kindness, and sent two armed men back with him to desire the governor of Wawa to allow the baggage to leave—"a convincing proof," says Clapperton, "that the minds of men here must be much changed for the better since the days of Park and Martyn." But they were not yet done with the widow. The governor would not give up the baggage until she arrived, as she was then absent. She made her entry in state the next day, astride of a fine horse, with a drummer before her, and a train of bowmen and spearmen behind. She wore red

silk trowsers and red morocco boots, with a white turban upon her head, and over her shoulders a mantle of silk and gold. "Had she been somewhat younger and less corpulent," says her victim, "there might have been great temptations to head her party, for she has certainly been a very handsome woman." She was immediately summoned before the governor, who gave her a lecture on disobedience and vanity, and finally ended by giving up Clapperton's baggage, and allowing him to depart the next day.

After crossing the Niger, Clapperton proceeded toward Kano through the country of Nyffe, and on the 12th arrived at a town called Tabra, on the river Mayarow, where he was obliged to remain several days. While here, a messenger came to him from the Sultan of Yaouri, bringing a present of a camel. He stated that the sultan had in his possession two large printed books which had belonged to the white men who were lost in the boat at Boussa, and had been offered a hundred and seventy-five pieces of gold for them. Clapperton was obliged to make a journey of two or three days, to the camp of the king of Nyffe, in order to obtain permission to proceed further. He reached Koolfu, the capital of the country, on the 2d of May. This is a place of twelve or fifteen thousand inhabitants, situated on the river Mayarow. It is surrounded by a clay wall about twenty feet high, with four gates. He here heard the story of Park's death related in the same manner as at Boussa, and there seems no reason to doubt its correctness. The only uncertain point is, whether the travelers were shot by the natives, or were drowned in attempting to escape. Soon after their death the country was visited by a pestilence, which the superstition of the natives attributed to that occurrence, and they all seemed disinclined to converse on the subject. Clapperton remarks: "I was often puzzled to think, after the kindness I had received at Boussa, what could have caused such a change in the minds of these people, in the course of twenty years, and of their different treatment of two European travelers. I was even disposed at times to flatter myself that there was something in me that belonged to nobody else, to make them treat me and my people with so much kindness."

After having been detained six weeks at Koolfu, partly by his own and Lander's sickness, and partly by the difficulty of procuring an escort to Kano, Clapperton set out for the latter place on the 19th of June. His progress was slow and toilsome, the rainy season having set in. He reached the city of Zaria on the 10th of July. This is a place of more than fifty thousand inhabitants, situated on a plain near a long chain of hills. Its appearance is made very picturesque by the long avenues of trees, resembling poplars, which border the roads leading to it. This was within the territory of Houssa, and Clapperton now congratulated himself that all his difficulties were over. The country around Zaria reminded him of England in April, and grew more pleasant as he approached Kano. "The land, everywhere the eye turned, looked beau-

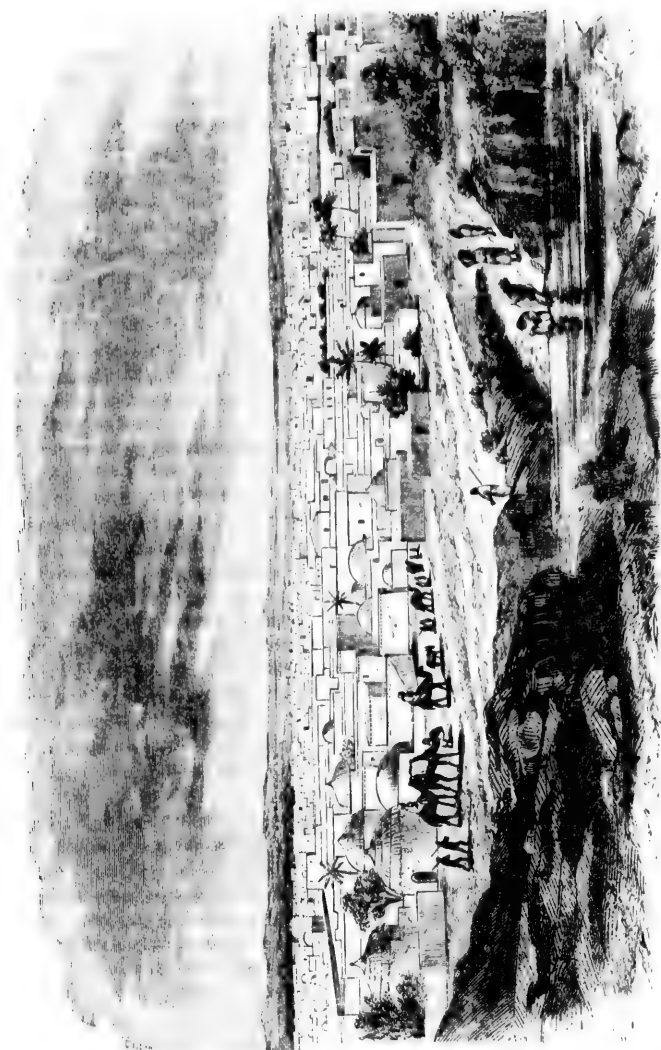
O SACKATOO.

te turban upon her  
ld. "Had she been  
ctim, "there might  
or she has certainly  
ately summoned be-  
bedience and vanity,  
ye, and allowing him

eded toward Kano  
ved at a town called  
ed to remain several  
the Sultan of Yaouri,  
the sultan had in his  
elonged to the white  
been offered a hun-  
apperton was obliged  
camp of the king of  
further. He reached  
May. This is a place  
on the river Mayarrow.  
high, with four gates.  
n the same manner as  
correctness. The only  
shot by the natives, or  
after their death the  
superstition of the na-  
seemed disinclined to  
I was often puzzled to  
oussa, what could have  
people, in the course of  
two European travelers.  
nt there was something  
hem treat me and my

polfu, partly by his own  
y of procuring an escort  
e on the 19th of June.  
ason having set in. He  
This is a place of more  
plain near a long chain  
ue by the long avenues  
oads leading to it. This  
erton now congratulated  
he country around Zaria  
more pleasant as he ap-  
eye turned, looked beau-

The text in this block is extremely faint and illegible, appearing as a large block of horizontal lines across the center of the page.



VIEW OF KANO. Page 513.



VIEW OF KANO. Page 513.





tiful; the grain was just high enough to wave with the wind; little towns and villages were numerous; the trees full of foliage, few being left except such as were fit for use, as the butter-tree and the tamarind; herds of fine cattle were seen grazing on the fallow-ground; and horses and mares were tethered in the small spaces left between the cultivated fields."

On the evening of July 20th, they entered Kano, and went to the house of his former agent, Hat Salab. The latter was in low spirits on account of the war between Houssa and Bornou, which had shut them out, for some time, from all communication with Fezzan or Tripoli. Clapperton only remained four days in Kano, and then left for the camp of Sultan Bello, with the presents he had brought, leaving Lander behind him, to take charge of those intended for the Shekh of Bornou. It was now the height of the rainy season; severe storms occurred nearly every day; the rivers were swollen; the marshes almost impassable, and he made but slow progress. On the way to the camp he met the vizier, whom he had already known in Sackatoo, and who received him in a very friendly manner. Soon after this one of his horses was lost, and with it one of his journals, so that there is a hiatus of more than two months in his narrative—an omission which does not appear to have been replaced afterward.

We are, therefore, ignorant of the causes which delayed him on his way to Bello's camp, which he did not reach until the 15th of October. "The sultan's reception of me," he says, "was most kind and gratifying. He asked after the health of the King of England, and if we were still at peace, and how I had found all my friends. He was surprised when I said I had not seen them, and that I had remained only four months in England. He said he had not received either of my letters, the one from Bornou, or that which had been sent by way of Ghadames from Tripoli. He asked me if I had not experienced a great many difficulties in getting through Yoriba; said he had heard of me when I was at Katunga, and had sent a messenger to that place to assist me in getting through, as well as another to Koolfu—but neither of whom, as I told him, had I seen."

Clapperton accompanied the sultan in an attack upon the town of Coonie, in which the Felatah troops were repulsed, and then directed his course toward Sackatoo, where he arrived on the 20th of October. He was immediately visited by the Arabs of the place, who first paid him a great many compliments, and then begged for presents. He remained in Sackatoo for several months, during which time he made several excursions into the country around, mostly at the command of the sultan, who frequently had communications to make to him. He was very desirous of proceeding to Bornou, but as the two countries were at war, Bello refused his permission. He promised, however, to send him to Europe, through the country of the Tuaricks, to Fezzan.

On the 22d of December, he was surprised by the arrival of Richard

Lander from Kano, with the remainder of the baggage, including the presents for the Shekh of Bornou. Lander had been brought to Sackatoo by the order of the sultan, who used the fact of the war with Bornou as a pretext to seize upon the presents intended for the shekh. Lander had suffered a great deal of fatigue and anxiety on account of the knavery of the servant Pascoe, who had three times deserted, after breaking open some of Captain Clapperton's trunks, and stealing the contents. On the first and second of these occasions, Lander had himself followed him for several days, and overtaken him. Clapperton was now informed by the sultan that if he wished to go home, he must go by way of Fezzan or Timbuctoo, but should not be allowed to visit Bornou. He also demanded the letter to the shekh of the latter country, which Clapperton refused to give up. This treachery on the part of the Sultan Bello appears to have depressed Clapperton profoundly, and when the former again sent to him, demanding his stores of powder and ammunition, under the pretext that they were intended for the Shekh of Bornou, his customary prudence entirely deserted him. He reproached the vizier and his brother with the baseness and falsehood of this proceeding; harsh epithets were used on both sides, and a breach was made between the traveler and the rulers of Houssa, which was never afterward healed.

Toward the close of February, 1827, news came to Sackatoo of the defeat of the Shekh of Bornou, and his retreat to Kouka, with the loss of all his baggage, camels, and two hundred and nine horses. During the winter, Captain Clapperton's journal records little except some excursions around Sackatoo, and the difficulty he had in procuring the skins and skeletons of some wild hogs. He does not appear to have made any preparations for his return to Europe. His journal terminates abruptly on the 11th of March, after which we must have recourse to the narrative of Richard Lander, for the particulars of his last illness and death.

Lander relates that his master was taken ill on the 12th of March, with dysentery. As it was the fast of Ramadan, none of the servants would render the least assistance, and he was obliged to wash, cook, watch at night, and fan the invalid. The weather was insufferably hot, the thermometer being 107° in the shade. Lander carried him in his arms every day to a shady place on the outside of the hut, as he was too weak even to raise himself on his couch. The former fancied that he had been poisoned by some of the Arabs or Tuaricks, in drinking camel's milk; but Clapperton replied, "No, my dear boy, no such thing has been done, I assure you. Do you remember that when on a shooting excursion in the early part of February, after walking the whole of the day, exposed to the scorching rays of the sun, I was fatigued, and lay down under the branches of a tree for some time? The earth was soft and wet, and from that hour to the present, I have not been free from cold; this has brought on my present disorder, from which, I believe, I shall never recover."

"For twenty days," says Lander, "my poor master remained in a low and distressed state. He told me he felt no pain; but this was

baggage, including the  
been brought to Sacka-  
of the war with Bornou  
or the shekh. Lander  
account of the knavery  
ed, after breaking open  
the contents. On the  
himself followed him for  
as now informed by the  
o by way of Fezzan or  
Bornou. He also de-  
ntry, which Clapperton  
of the Sultan Bello ap-  
y, and when the former  
ler and ammunition, un-  
e Shekh of Bornou, his  
e reproached the vizier  
of this proceeding; harsh  
was made between the  
ver afterward healed.  
came to Sackatoo of the  
t to Kouka, with the loss  
nd nine horses. During  
a little except some excur-  
d in procuring the skins  
appear to have made any  
urnal terminates abruptly  
ve recourse to the narra-  
is last illness and death.  
ill on the 12th of March,  
han, none of the servants  
s obliged to wash, cook,  
ther was insufferably hot,  
der carried him in his arms  
he hut, as he was too weak  
r fancied that he had been  
in drinking camel's milk;  
such thing has been done,  
on a shooting excursion in  
whole of the day, exposed  
d, and lay down under the  
was soft and wet, and from  
rom cold; this has brought  
e, I shall never recover."  
oor master remained in a  
felt no pain; but this was

spoken only to comfort me, for he saw I was dispirited. His sufferings must have been acute. During this time he was gradually, but perceptibly, declining; his body, from being robust and vigorous, became weak and emaciated, and indeed was little better than a skeleton. I was the only person, with one exception, he saw in his sickness. Abderachman, an Arab from Fezzan, came to him one day, and wished to pray with him, after the manner of his countrymen, but was desired to leave the apartment instantly. I read to him daily some portions of the New Testament, and the ninety-fifth Psalm, which he was never weary of listening to, and on Sundays added the church service, to which he invariably paid the profoundest attention. The constant agitation of mind and exertions of body I had myself undergone for so long a time, never having in a single instance slept out of my clothes, weakened me exceedingly, and a fever came on not long before my master's death, which hung upon me for fifteen days, and ultimately brought me to the very verge of the grave.

"On the 1st of April, he became considerably worse, and though evidently in want of repose, his sleep became more and more disturbed. On the 9th, Maddie, a native of Bornou, whom master had retained in his service, brought him about twelve ounces of green bark from the butter-tree, and said it would do him much good. Notwithstanding all my remonstrances, master immediately ordered a decoction of it to be prepared, observing, 'No man will injure me.' Accordingly Maddie himself boiled two basins-full, the whole of which he drank in less than an hour. Next morning he was much altered for the worse, and regretted his not having followed my advice. About twelve o'clock of the same day, he said, 'Richard, I shall shortly be no more; I feel myself dying.' Almost choked with grief, I replied, 'God forbid, my dear master: you will live many years yet.' 'Don't be so much affected, my dear boy, I entreat you,' said he: 'it is the will of the Almighty; it can not be helped. Take care of my journal and papers after my death; and when you arrive in London, go immediately to my agents, send for my uncle, who will accompany you to the Colonial Office, and let him see you deposit them safely into the hands of the secretary. After I am buried, apply to Bello, and borrow money to purchase camels and provisions for your journey over the desert, and go in the train of the Arab merchants to Fezzan. \* \* \* Remark what towns or villages you pass through; pay attention to whatever the chiefs may say to you, and put it on paper. The little money I have, and all my clothes, I leave you: sell the latter, and put what you may receive for them into your pocket; and if, on your journey, you should be obliged to expend it, government will repay you on your return.' I said, as well as my agitation would permit me, 'If it be the will of God to take you, you may rely on my faithful performing, as far as I am able, all that you have desired; but I trust the Almighty will spare you, and you will yet live to see your country.' 'I thought I should at one time, Richard,' con-

tinued he, 'but all is now over; I shall not be long for this world; but God's will be done.' He then took my hand betwixt his, and looking me full in the face, while a tear stood glistening in his eye, said, in a low but deeply affecting tone, 'My dear Richard, if you had not been with me, I should have died long ago; I can only thank you, with my latest breath, for your kindness and attachment to me, and if I could have lived to return with you, you should have been placed beyond the reach of want; but God will reward you.' This conversation occupied nearly two hours, in the course of which my master fainted several times, and was distressed beyond measure. The same evening he fell into a slumber, from which he awoke in much perturbation, and said he had heard with much distinctness the tolling of an English funeral bell: I entreated him to be composed, and observed that sick people frequently fancy they hear and see things which can possibly have no existence. He made no reply.

"About six o'clock on the morning of the 11th, on asking how he did, my master answered he was much better, and requested me to shave him. On the morning of the 13th, however, being awake, I was much alarmed by a peculiar rattling noise, proceeding from my master's throat, and his breathing was loud and difficult; at the same instant he called out 'Richard!' in a low and hurried tone. I was immediately at his side, and was astonished at seeing him sitting upright in his bed, and staring wildly around. I held him in my arms, and placing his head gently on my left shoulder, gazed a moment on his pale and altered features: some indistinct expressions quivered on his lips; he strove, but ineffectually, to give them utterance, and expired without a struggle or a sigh. When I found my poor master so very ill, I called out with all my strength, 'O God, my master is dying!' which brought Pascoe and Mudéy into the apartment. Shortly after the breath had left his body, I desired Pascoe to fetch some water, with which I washed the corpse. I then got Pascoe and Mudéy to assist me in taking it outside of the hut, laid it on a clean mat, and wrapped it in a sheet and blanket. Leaving it in this state two hours, I put a large clean mat over the whole, and sent a messenger to Sultan Bello, to acquaint him of the mournful event, and ask his permission to bury the body after the manner of my own country, and also to know in what particular place his remains were to be interred. The messenger soon returned with the sultan's consent to the former part of my request; and about 12 o'clock at noon of the same day a person came into my hut, accompanied by four slaves, sent by Bello to dig the grave. I was desired to follow them with the corpse. Accordingly I saddled my camel, and putting the body on its back, and throwing a union-jack over it, I bade them proceed. Traveling at a slow pace, we halted at Jungavie, a small village, built on a rising ground, about five miles to the south-east of Sackatoo. The body was then taken from the camel's back, and placed in a shed, while the slaves were digging the grave; which being quickly

g for this world; but  
wixt his, and looking  
in his eye, said, in a  
if you had not been  
y thank you, with my  
to me, and if I could  
een placed beyond the  
conversation occupied  
master fainted several  
e same evening he fell  
turbation, and said he  
n English funeral bell:  
l that sick people fre-  
n possibly have no ex-

11th, on asking how he  
, and requested me to  
ver, being awake, I was  
eding from my master's  
; at the same instant he  
one. I was immediately  
tting upright in his bed,  
y arms, and placing his  
t on his pale and altered  
h his lips; he strove, but  
ed without a struggle or  
ill, I called out with all  
hich brought Pascoe and  
breath had left his body,  
ch I washed the corpse.  
taking it outside of the  
in a sheet and blanket.  
rge clean mat over the  
, to acquaint him of the  
y the body after the man-  
what particular place his  
soon returned with the  
et; and about 12 o'clock  
my hut, accompanied by  
I was desired to follow  
d my camel, and putting  
jack over it, I bade them  
ed at Jungavie, a small  
miles to the south-east of  
camel's back, and placed  
rave; which being quickly

done, it was conveyed close to it. I then opened a prayer-book, and, amid showers of tears, read the funeral service over the remains of my valued master. Not a single person listened to this peculiarly distressing ceremony, the slaves being at some distance, quarreling and making a most indecent noise the whole of the time it lasted. This being done, the union-jack was taken off, and the body was slowly lowered into the earth, and I wept bitterly as I gazed for the last time upon all that remained of my generous and intrepid master. The pit was speedily filled, and I returned to the village about thirty yards to the east of the grave, and giving the most respectable inhabitants, both male and female, a few trifling presents, entreated them to let no one disturb its sacred contents. I also gave them two thousand cowries to build a house, four feet high, over the spot, which they promised to do. I then returned, disconsolate and oppressed, to my solitary habitation, and leaning my head on my hand, could not help being deeply affected with my lonesome and dangerous situation; a hundred and fifteen days' journey from the sea-coast, surrounded by a selfish and cruel race of strangers, my only friend and protector moldering in his grave, and myself suffering dreadfully from fever. I felt, indeed, as if I stood alone in the world, and earnestly wished I had been laid by the side of my dear master: all the trying evils I had endured never affected me half so much as the bitter reflections of that distressing period."\*

\* Captain Hugh Clapperton was born in Dumfriesshire, Scotland, in the year 1788, and consequently was thirty-nine years old at the time of his death. He received very little education, except in trigonometry and navigation, and was apprenticed on board a merchant vessel, at the age of thirteen. Having been impressed by the frigate *Renommée*, at Gibraltar, in 1806, he was, through the influence of an uncle, who was captain of the marines, appointed midshipman. He afterward made a voyage to India in the frigate *Clorinde*, and in 1814 was sent to Bermuda and Halifax, and then to Upper Canada. He was distinguished as an excellent swordsman, a good vocalist, an admirable story-teller, a frank, whole-souled companion, and a faithful friend. "In the winter of 1815," says his biographer, "he was placed in command of a blockhouse on Lake Ontario. He had only one small gun for its defense; he was attacked by an American schooner; the blockhouse was soon demolished by the superiority of the enemy's fire, and he found that himself and the party must either become prisoners of war, or form the resolution of crossing Lake Ontario on the ice, a journey of forty miles, to York (Toronto), the nearest British dépôt. Notwithstanding the difficulty and danger attending a journey of such length over the ice in the depth of winter, the alternative was soon adopted and the party set out to cross the lake, but had not gone more than ten or twelve miles, before a boy, one of the party, was unable to proceed from the cold. The sailors all declared that they were unable to carry him, as they were so benumbed with the cold, and had scarcely strength sufficient to support themselves. Clapperton's generous nature could not bear the idea of a fellow-creature being left to perish under such appalling circumstances, for a dreadful snow-storm had commenced. He therefore took the boy upon his back, holding him with his left hand, and supporting himself from slipping with a staff in his right. In this manner he continued to go forward for eight or nine miles, when he perceived that the boy relaxed his hold, and on examining the cause, found that he was in a dying state from the cold, and soon after expired. The sufferings of the whole party were great before they reached York; the stockings and shoes completely worn off their feet, and



## RETURN JOURNEY OF RICHARD LANDER.

After the death of his master, Richard Lander was very ill for many days. The Arabs in the city visited him daily, and pretended to condole with and comfort him. The weather was so warm that he was obliged to keep a tub of water at his side, into which he frequently plunged his hands and arms. After he had given up all hope of recovery, his health suddenly improved on the 26th of April, and the next day he was able to sit up. The vizier came and searched the boxes, which he had been informed were filled with gold and silver; but to his surprise, found that Lander had not money enough to take him back to the sea-coast. The latter concealed about his person the watches of Clapperton and Pearce. The sultan then demanded the arms and ammunition, promising to pay for them. Lander charged him two hundred and forty-five thousand cowries (about seventy-five dollars) and received an order on Hat Salah, of Kano.

By making some presents to an old Arab named Ben Gumso, who had considerable influence over Sultan Bello, Lander finally succeeded in obtaining permission to depart from Sackatoo. The sultan insisted that he should go from Kano through the country of the Tuaricks to Fezzan, while Lander had made up his mind to return by way of Boussa, over the road he had already traveled. Bello also declared his intention to keep Pascoe, for the purpose of cleaning his guns, but was persuaded to let him go as far as Kano, as interpreter. "Finding," says Lander, "that the sultan had nothing more to say, I bowed profoundly and retired. I never saw him again."

The brave-hearted young man left Sackatoo on the 4th of May, but on the very next day narrowly escaped perishing of thirst. Sitting under a tree nearly suffocated, he implored the hundreds of Felatahs and Tuaricks who were passing, to sell him a drop of water, but they merely

their bodies in a dreadful state from the want of nourishment, having had nothing during the journey but one bag of meal. From the long inaction of Clapperton's left hand, in carrying the boy upon his back, he lost, from the effects of the frost, the first joint of his thumb."

Clapperton remained upon the lakes until 1817, when he returned to England, on the breaking up of the lake fleet, and was put upon half-pay. He then resided with his relatives in Scotland until 1820, when, happening to meet Dr. Oudney at Edinburgh, he made application to join the mission to Central Africa, and his offer was accepted. The remainder of his history is contained in this, and the foregoing narrative.

Captain Clapperton was about five feet eleven inches high; he had great breadth of chest and expansion of shoulders, and was otherwise proportionately strong; he was a handsome, athletic, powerful man, yet with an expression of genial kindness and humanity on his features. One of his medical friends placed so much reliance on the native vigor of his constitution, that he supposed he could not be overcome by disease, and until the return of Lander, would not believe that his death (the news of which had previously reached England), had happened in any other way, except through accident or violence.

er was very ill for many  
, and pretended to con-  
s so warm that he was  
nto which he frequently  
even up all hope of recov-  
h of April, and the next  
and searched the boxes,  
old and silver; but to his  
ough to take him back to  
s person the watches of  
manded the arms and am-  
er charged him two hun-  
seventy-five dollars) and

o named Ben Gunso, who  
, Lander finally succeeded  
katoo. The sultan insisted  
country of the Tuaricks to  
o return by way of Boussa,  
also declared his intention  
is guns, but was persuaded  
"Finding," says Lander,  
I bowed profoundly and re-

to on the 4th of May, but  
shing of thirst. Sitting un-  
e hundreds of Felatahs and  
p of water, but they merely

shment, having had nothing during  
ction of Clapperton's left hand, in  
pts of the frost, the first joint of his

hen he returned to England, on the  
ay. He then resided with his re-  
meet Dr. Oudney at Edinburg, he  
a, and his offer was accepted. The  
foregoing narrative.

ches high; he had great breadth of  
e proportionately strong; he was a  
ession of genial kindness and human-  
aced so much reliance on the native  
ot be overcome by disease, and until  
death (the news of which had pre-  
ner way, except through accident or

exclaimed: "He is a *kaffir* (infidel); let him die." Finally, a young man, in spite of the remonstrances of the other natives, gave him a calash full, which revived himself and his horse, and enabled them to go on. Reaching Kano on the 25th, he called upon Hat Salah, who instead of the sultan's cowries, gave him a female slave, with some red caps and beads. After four days' stay, he left for Funda, taking with him Pascoe, who was no less desirous than himself to escape from the territory of Houssa. His course was to the southward and eastward of that which Clapperton had pursued in going from Badagry to Kano, and had never before been traveled by a European.

On the 18th of June he arrived at the town of Dunrora (Darroro of Barth), in the kingdom of Yacoba. "Our route, some parts of this day," says he, "lay over steep and craggy precipices, of a most awful height. On the summit of one of these places the path was barely wide enough for a single beast to pass. The horse that carried the portmanteaus, in which were the journal, papers, watches, etc., struck himself against a piece of rock and was precipitated a distance of eighty yards, the ropes which were bound around the portmanteaus arresting his further progress. This accident occasioned us two hours' delay, but the horse was not materially hurt. We had been traveling about half an hour after leaving this spot, when we came to a place from which there was an extensive and beautiful prospect of the surrounding country, and eight days' journey might be plainly seen before us. About half a day's journey to the east stood a lofty hill, at the foot of which lay the large city of Yacoba. Mohammed affirmed that there is a river called Shar, or Shary, about half a mile from that place, which derives its source from Lake Tchad; and that canoes can go from the lake to the Niger at any season of the year.\*

As he was about leaving Dunrora the next day, on his way southward, messengers suddenly arrived from the King of Zegzeg (a small country through which he had already passed), commanding him to return. In spite of all remonstrance, he was obliged to comply. "Thus," he remarks, with a naïve and touching sincerity, "after seventeen days' perilous traveling from Kano, with a fair prospect of reaching Funda in twelve or thirteen more, from whence four days' sail would bring me to the salt water—a new country opening before me, and filled with the most lively anticipations of solving the geographical problem which had for so long a time puzzled Europeans, of ascertaining whether the Niger actually joins the sea in that direction—was I obliged to abandon my fondest and long-cherished hopes, and return to Zegzeg; from thence to be transported the Lord knows whither. I felt depressed and unhappy

\* At Dunrora, Lander was but two or three days' journey from the Chadda, or Blinué, and narrowly escaped the geographical discovery made by Dr. Barth in 1851. The Chadda, however, rises in the mountains of Adamowa, and has no connection with the Shary, which flows into Lake Tchad from the south-east. The two rivers approach each other at one point, and are often confounded by the natives.—B. T.

at this sudden turn in my affairs, and cared not much whether I lived or died."

The rainy season had now commenced and he was detained so long by the rising of the rivers that he did not reach Zegzeg until the 22d of July. He had reason to believe that the king had sent for him merely to gratify his curiosity, as he had never seen a white man. He was detained but two days, and received a present of a bullock and a female slave at parting. He now judged it prudent to take the direct route to Boussa, as there was less risk of being arrested on the way. He reached the Niger in safety, and on the 24th of August arrived at Wawa, just one month after leaving Zegzeg. The natives had been very kind to him on the road, and he experienced no serious difficulty anywhere. In the villages people frequently applied to him to write charms, and as his means were greatly reduced, he gave them fragments of old English ballads, which they took with a devout belief in their efficacy.

The old Governor of Wawa received him with great kindness and cordiality, and kept him until the 4th of September, detaining some merchants who were bound for Kiama, in order that they might accompany him. The road was at this time infested with robbers, but Lander reached there safely on the 9th, and remained five days. The generous old king supplied him with provisions in abundance. On the 25th he reached Katunga, the capital of Yoriba. The king would not allow him to wait on him, lest he should wet his feet, but came himself to visit Lander, accompanied by five hundred of his wives. Lander remained at Katunga until the 21st of October, when he left for Badagry, the king giving him a present of 4000 cowries (a little more than a dollar) at parting. He arrived at Badagry without accident, on the 21st of November, having been one month on the road.

While at this place he had a disagreeable adventure, which he thus relates: "Three of the Portuguese slave-merchants residing at Badagry, went to the king one day, and told him and his principal men that I was a spy sent by the English government, and if suffered to leave, would soon return with an army and conquer their country. This the credulous people believed, and I was treated with coldness and distrust by the king and his subjects, who seldom came to see me. All the chief men at length assembled at the fetish hut, and having come to a resolution that I was to drink a fetish, sent for me to appear before them. On entering, one of the men, presenting me with a bowl in which was about a quart of a liquid resembling water, commanded me to drink it, saying: 'If you come to do bad, it will kill you; but if not, it can not hurt you.' There being no resource, I immediately and without hesitation swallowed the contents of the bowl, and walked hastily out of the hut, through the armed men, to my own lodgings, took powerful medicine and plenty of warm water, which instantly ejected the whole from my stomach, and I felt no ill effects from the fetish. When the king and chief men found, after five days, that the fetish had not hurt me, they became extremely

much whether I lived or  
 e was detained so long  
 h Zegzeg until the 22d  
 had sent for him merely  
 hite man. He was de-  
 a bullock and a female  
 take the direct route to  
 n the way. He reached  
 arrived at Wawa, just  
 had been very kind to  
 us difficulty anywhere.  
 to write charms, and as  
 ragments of old English  
 their efficacy.

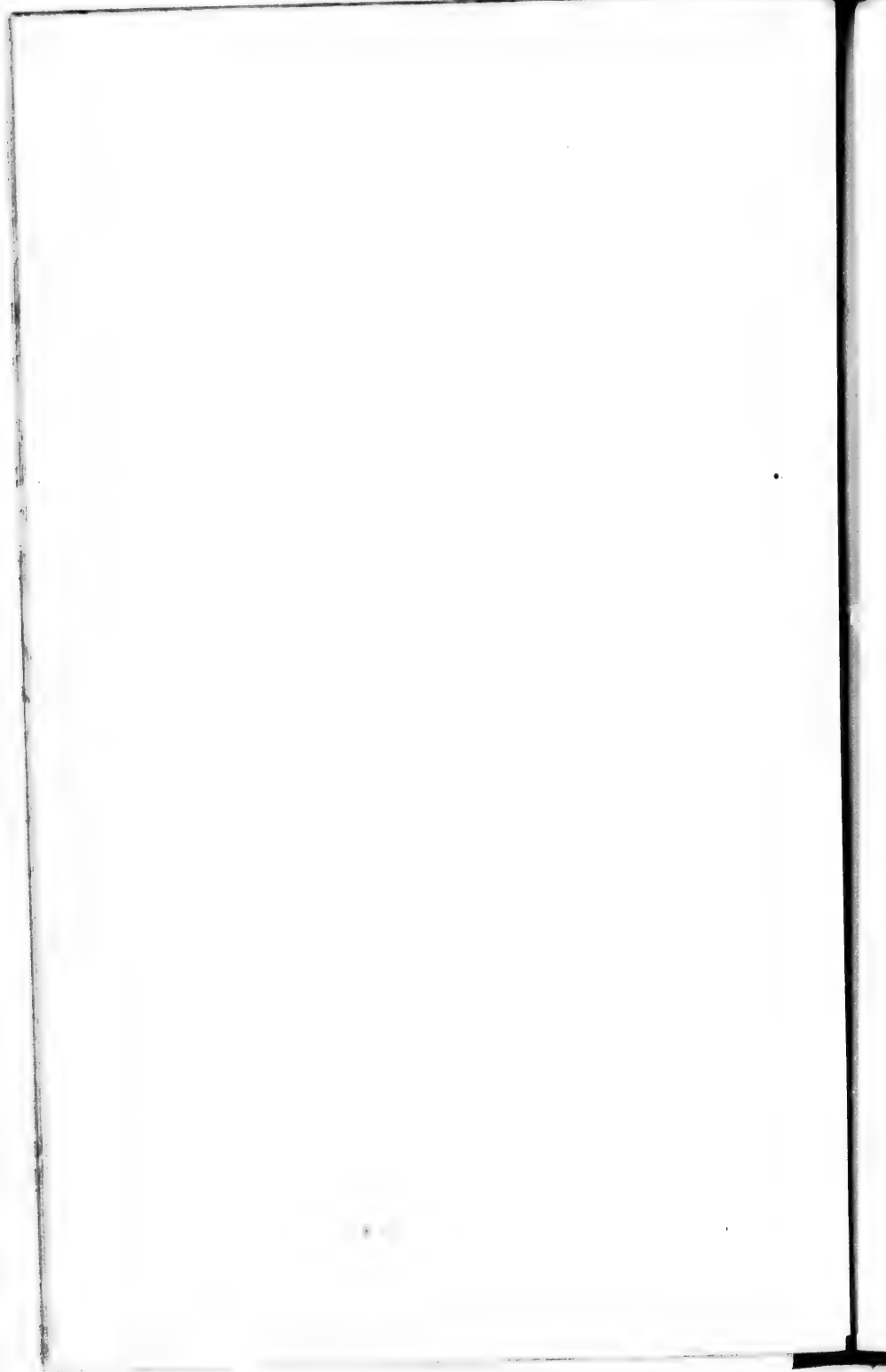
with great kindness and  
 tember, detaining some  
 that they might accom-  
 with robbers, but Lander  
 ve days. The generous  
 lance. On the 25th he  
 ing would not allow him  
 ut came himself to visit  
 rives. Lander remained  
 he left for Badagry, the  
 little more than a dollar)  
 accident, on the 21st of

adventure, which he thus  
 ants residing at Badagry,  
 principal men that I was  
 suffered to leave, would  
 ountry. This the credu-  
 coldness and distrust by  
 o see me. All the chief  
 having come to a resolu-  
 appear before them. On  
 bowl in which was about  
 ed me to drink it, saying:  
 f not, it can not hurt you.'  
 hout hesitation swallowed  
 out of the hut, through  
 erful medicine and plenty  
 ole from my stomach, and  
 king and chief men found,  
 e, they became extremely

kind, and sent me presents of provisions, etc., daily, and frequently said I was protected by God, and that it was out of the power of man to do me an injury.

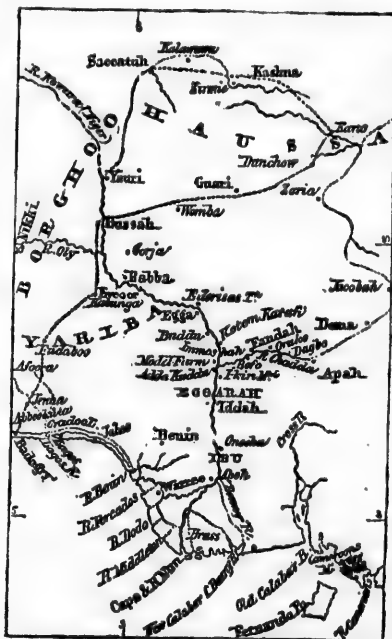
"Captain Morris, of the brig *Maria*, of London, hearing of my being at Badagry, kindly came from Whydah to fetch me, and on the 20th of January, 1828, I went on board, and arrived at Cape Coast on the 31st. Here I gave my faithful slaves their freedom, who testified their sorrow on my departure by heaping sand on their heads, and other marks of grief peculiar to the African race.

"Sailed from Cape Coast in the *Esk*, sloop-of-war, February 3d, and arrived in England on the 30th of April following."



## EXPLORATIONS OF THE NIGER.

DISCOVERIES OF RICHARD AND JOHN LANDER.



AFTER returning to England, Richard Lander made a proposition to the English government to undertake an exploration of the course of the Niger, from Boussa to the sea, and on the 31st of December, 1829, received a letter accepting his offer, with instructions as to the course he should pursue. He was furnished with all the articles necessary for the journey, and a sum not exceeding five hundred dollars, the government agreeing to pay one hundred pounds to his wife for the first year after his absence. His brother John, who also volunteered for the service, was permitted to accompany him, but the government refused to allow him any compensation.

The brothers embarked at Portsmouth on the 9th of January, 1830, and reached Cape Coast on the 22d of February. Here they engaged old Pascoe and his wife, and two Bornou men who were familiar with the English, and could speak the language of Houssa. They were detained some time, waiting for a vessel, and did not reach Badagry until the 21st of March. The king received them rather coldly, and so far from being



grateful for the handsome presents they had brought him, continually demanded more. A portion of the inhabitants appeared to be hostile to their undertaking, and tried to persuade the king to demand of them a larger sum than they could afford to pay, in order to prevent them from going. Endless difficulties were thrown in their way; half of their supply of goods and money for the interior was begged or extorted from them; every effort at conciliation was met with insolence and complaint; yet the travelers persisted in their demands for boats and horses, with the utmost patience and perseverance. Finally, on the 31st, after ten days of infinite vexation, they succeeded, and about ten o'clock at night commenced their voyage up the Badagry River.

On the 6th of April they arrived at Jannah, where they were received with much ceremony by the governor, who treated them with kindness and courtesy. Here they were compelled to remain eight days, to wait for one of their horses which had not yet arrived from Badagry. They again set out for the capital of Yoriba on the 14th. Richard Lander says: "Several strangers accompany us from town to town, in order to evade the duty which is exacted at the turnpike-gates, by stating themselves to be of the number of our attendants. Women have also placed themselves under the protection of our men from Cape Coast Castle, that they may enjoy the like advantage; in return for this favor they do us many little kind offices, and are useful in making fires, preparing food, etc., for our people." A week afterward John Lander had a severe attack of fever; his state was very critical for two or three days, but under the care of his brother, he recovered sufficiently to proceed.

Their journey through the kingdom of Yoriba, by nearly the same road as Captain Clapperton had traveled four years previous, was exceedingly interesting, and John Lander relates many curious anecdotes of their intercourse with the inhabitants. They encountered no serious difficulty, and on the 13th of May approached the city of Katunga, to which news of their coming had already been forwarded. Richard gives the following account of their arrival: "Hundreds of people, and perhaps if I were to say *thousands* the number would not be overrated, preceded and followed us on the pathway; and as they wound through thick forests, along narrow roads, their blue and white clothing, contrasted with the deep green of the ancient trees, produced an eminently pleasing effect. After a hasty ride of two hours we came in sight of the town of Eetcholee, outside of which are numerous trees, and underneath their widely-spreading branches we observed various groups of people seated on the turf, taking refreshment. We joined them, partook of a little corn and water, which is our usual traveling fare, and then renewed our journey. I sounded my bugle, at which the natives were astonished and pleased; but a black trumpeter, jealous of the performance, challenged a contest for the superiority of the respective instruments, which terminated in the entire defeat of the African, who was hooted

and laughed at by his companions for his presumption, and gave up the trial in despair. Thus escorted we traveled onward; and after a hasty ride of six hours from Eetchó beheld from a little eminence those black, naked hills of granite at whose base lies the metropolis of Yoriba. About an hour afterward we entered the gates of that extensive city. As is the custom, we staid under a tree just inside the walls, till the king and his eunuchs were informed of our arrival, which having been done, after a wearisome delay, we rode to the residence of Ebo, the chief eunuch, who, next to the king, is the most influential man in the place."

The king received them kindly, but by the advice of the eunuch, they said nothing to him of the real object of their journey, pretending that they were on their way to Yaouri, for the purpose of procuring Park's papers. Contrary to their expectations, he did not detain them more than a week, at the end of which time they continued their journey toward Kiama. As they approached the Borghoo country, the country became more populous and cultivated, and the people, many of whom were Felatahs, treated them hospitably. They reached Kiama on the 28th of May, and went directly to the house of the king, who had sent an armed escort to meet them, and appeared well-pleased to see them. During their stay at this place, there were several public festivals, attended with music, dancing, and horse-races. The king would not permit them to visit Wawa, but required that they should go direct to Boussa.

John Lander was taken ill immediately after leaving Kiama, and continued to grow worse from day to day. During the intervals of his delirium, he gave directions with regard to his family, supposing that he could not live. Richard watched him with great distress and anxiety; but on the night of June 10th, his disorder took a favorable turn, and he gradually recovered. While Richard was occupied in nursing him, an old woman applied to him for medicine that would produce her an entire new set of teeth; or, said she, "if I can only be supplied with two large and strong ones, I shall be satisfied with them." The woman was becoming rather impertinent, when Lander recommended her to procure two iron ones from a blacksmith, which so much displeased her that she went away in a pet.

They reached Boussa on the 17th, and were heartily welcomed by the king and his wife, who stated that they had both been weeping all the morning, on account of the death of Clapperton, though their faces showed no evidence of it. The next day Lander writes: "The noted widow Zuma visited us to-day without the slightest pretensions to finery of any kind, either in her dress or ornaments, for she was clad in very humble apparel of country cloth. She related to us, with great good-humor, her quarrels with her prince, the ruler of Wawa, and her consequent flight from that city to escape his resentment. It appears, that in order to effect this, she was actually obliged to climb over the city

ER.

t him, continually de-  
red to be hostile to  
to demand of them  
der to prevent them  
eir way; half of their  
gged or extorted from  
olence and complaint;  
oats and horses, with  
on the 31st, after tea  
ut ten o'clock at nig't

a, where they were re-  
ho treated them with  
d to remain eight days,  
arrived from Badagry.  
on the 14th. Richard  
from town to town, in  
turnpike-gates, by stat-  
endants. Women have  
of our men from Cape  
ntage; in return for this  
e useful in making fires,  
afterward John Lander  
critical for two or three  
vered sufficiently to pro-

riba, by nearly the same  
years previous, was ex-  
many curious anecdotes  
y encountered no serious  
the city of Katunga, to  
rwarded. Richard gives  
reds of people, and per-  
would not be overrated,  
as they wound through  
and white clothing, con-  
es, produced an eminently  
rs we came in sight of the  
ous trees, and underneath  
various groups of people  
oined them, partook of a  
veling fare, and then re-  
which the natives were as-  
ealous of the performance,  
he respective instruments,  
African, who was hooted

wall in the night, and travel on foot to Bousa, which is a very long journey, and to a woman of her size must have been an arduous task. She alleged that she had done nothing whatever to merit the displeasure of the Wawa chief, notwithstanding which he had robbed her of all her household furniture and a number of her slaves.

"We imagined," continues Lander, "that it would have been bad policy to have stated the true reason of our visiting this country, knowing the jealousy of most of the people with regard to the Niger; and therefore, in answer to the king's inquiries, were obliged to deceive him with the assertion that our object was to go to Bornou by way of Yaouri, requesting at the same time a safe conveyance through his territories. This answer satisfied the king, and he promised us every assistance in his power. Our visitors remained with us a considerable time, and in the course of conversation, one of them observed that they had in their possession a robe which belonged to a white man who came from the north many years ago, and from whom it had been purchased by the king's father. We expressed great curiosity to see this robe, and it was sent us as a present a short time after their departure. Contrary to our expectations, we found it to be made of rich crimson damask, and very heavy from the immense quantity of gold embroidery with which it was covered. As the time when the late king is said to have purchased this robe corresponds very nearly to the supposed period of Mr. Park's death, and as we never heard of any other white man having come from the north so far south as Bousa, we are inclined to believe it to be part of the spoil obtained from the canoe of that ill-fated traveler."

The next day a man brought them a book which had been picked up in the river after Park's death. It proved to be an old volume of navigation, of no value, but between the leaves were some loose papers, one of which was an invitation to dinner, addressed to Park. In a day or two afterward messengers arrived to conduct them to the Sultan of Yaouri, from whom they hoped to obtain more satisfactory relics of Park's expedition. They embarked in a canoe, and proceeded up the Niger; the river, which is split into three channels and obstructed with rapids, near Bousa, gradually widened to the extent of two miles, and continued so, as far as the eye could reach. In most places it was extremely shallow, but in others deep enough to float a frigate. "The banks were literally covered with hamlets and villages; fine trees, bending under the weight of their dark and impenetrable foliage, everywhere relieved the eye from the glare of the sun's rays, and, contrasted with the lively verdure of the little hills and plains, produced the most pleasing effect."

After a voyage of four days, they landed at a village on the eastern bank, eight miles from the city of Yaouri, which lies inland, on the top of a steep hill. The path up the hill was so narrow that two men could hardly pass, and terminated in an arched way through the wall of the

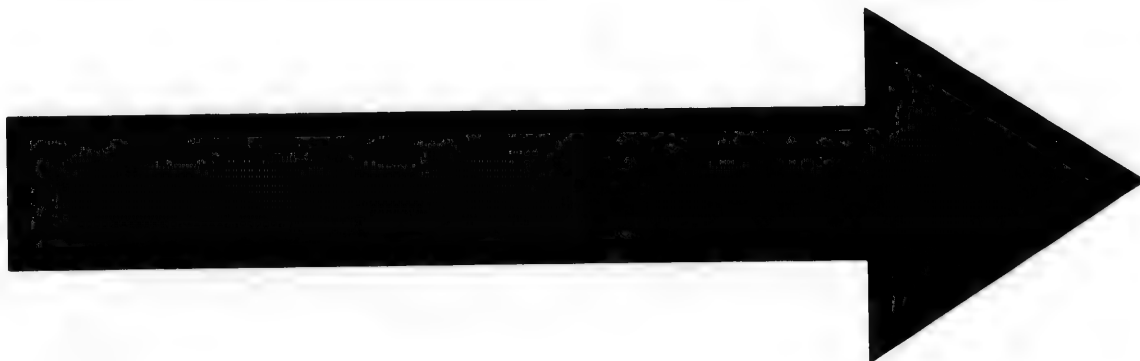
TIGER.

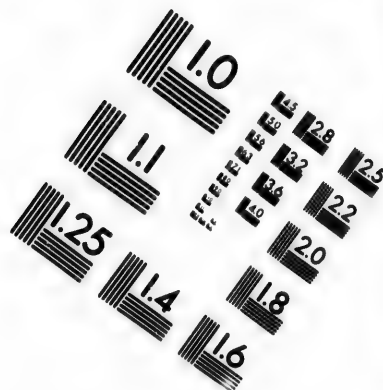
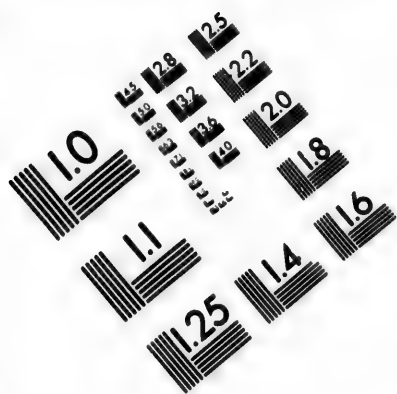
, which is a very long  
been an arduous task.  
r to merit the displeas-  
ne had robbed her of  
laves.

would have been bad  
ing this country, know-  
ard to the Niger; and  
obliged to deceive him  
to Bornou by way of  
eyance through his ter-  
e promised us every as-  
with us a considerable  
hem observed that they  
a white man who came  
it had been purchased  
iosity to see this tobe,  
their departure. Con-  
made of rich crimson  
tity of gold embroidery  
the late king is said to  
y to the supposed period  
ny other white man hav-  
a, we are inclined to be-  
ne canoe of that ill-fated

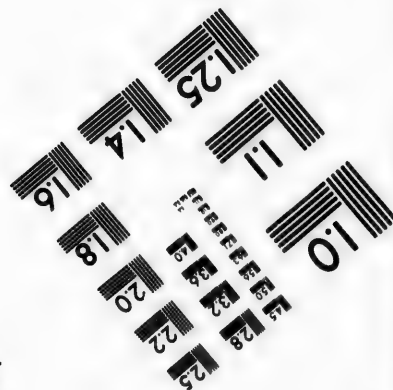
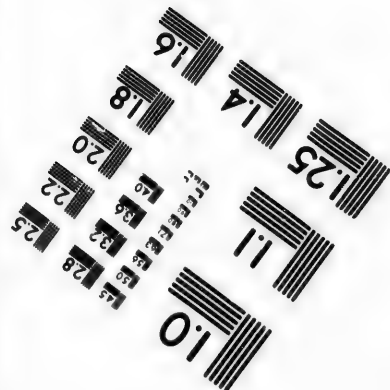
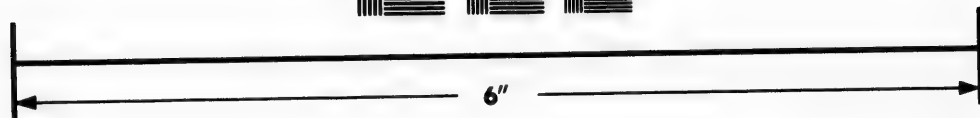
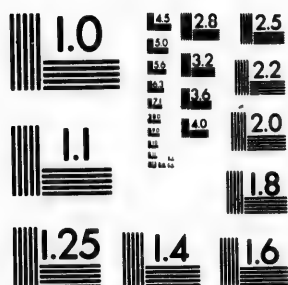
which had been picked  
to be an old volume of  
were some loose papers,  
essed to Park. In a day  
ct them to the Sultan of  
ore satisfactory relics of  
e, and proceeded up the  
nels and obstructed with  
extent of two miles, and  
n most places it was ex-  
o float a frigate. "The  
villages; fine trees, bend-  
rable foliage, everywhere  
ays, and, contrasted with  
produced the most pleas-

at a village on the eastern  
ich lies inland, on the top  
arrow that two men could  
through the wall of the





# IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1983**





city, closed by a gate covered with plates of iron. Three days after their arrival, the travelers were conducted to the sultan. Says Richard Lander, "He is a big-headed, corpulent, and jolly-looking man, well stricken in years; and though there is something harsh and forbidding in his countenance, yet he was generally smiling during the conference. The conversation commenced in the usual complimentary way; and then our object in visiting Yaouri was briefly and indirectly hinted at. When we asked him whether he did not send a letter to the late Captain Clapperton, while that officer was at Koofu, in which he had affirmed that he had certain books and papers in his possession which belonged to Mr. Park, he appeared very much confused. After thinking and hesitating a good while, he answered with an affected laugh, 'How do you think that I could have the books of a person that was lost at Boussa?' and this was all he said on the subject."

After remaining at Yaouri seven days, vainly endeavoring to procure further information concerning Park, the patience of the travelers was exhausted, and they sent Pascoe with a message to the sultan, that they earnestly wished to receive a final and decisive answer with regard to the restoration of Mr. Park's papers, which they declared to have been the sole object of their visiting him, and that it was their desire to quit Yaouri immediately. "This bold and to us unusual language seemed to have surprised and startled the sultan," says Richard Lander, "and he instantly dispatched the old Arab to inform us, 'that he declared to God, in the most solemn manner, that he had never had in his possession, nor seen, any books or papers of the white travelers that perished at Boussa.' The Arab likewise assured us that we were at liberty to proceed on our journey whenever we should think proper." They were thus obliged to give up all hopes of recovering Park's journals, but succeeded in obtaining one of his muskets from a native of Yaouri. There can be no doubt that Park reached Boussa, and met his death in the manner stated.

The sultan afterward requested the travelers to remain a few days longer, until he could write to the King of England an explanation of his conduct toward Mungo Park, and an account of the death of the latter. Meanwhile, there were indications of a war between Nyffé and Yaouri, which would make their journey to Funda, on the Niger, hazardous by land. They therefore sent a messenger to the King of Boussa, stating that they would be obliged to return to the salt water to obtain more money and presents before proceeding to Bornou—(they had previously stated that they were on their way to Bornou, on account of the great jealousy of the natives concerning any exploration of the Niger)—and would be glad if he would furnish them with a canoe to Funda, as the King of Badagry had treated them so ill that they were afraid to return thither. On the 18th of July, the messenger returned, and to their great joy stated that the King of Boussa would furnish them with a canoe to Funda, provided the road by land was not safe, but advised

them to obtain also the permission of the King of Wawa, and other petty sovereigns whose territories extended to the river. They were now ready to leave, but the sultan detained them from day to day, on the most frivolous and contradictory pretexts, until finally, on the 26th, a messenger arrived from the King of Boussa, to request their immediate release. On the 1st of August, they received permission to depart, and immediately left, after a residence of five weeks in Yaouri, which Richard Lander describes as the largest city in Central Africa, its walls being more than twenty miles in circuit.

Soon after their return to Boussa, the king declared that he should go down and ask the Dark Water (as the Niger is termed by the natives), whether it would be favorable to their undertaking. They waited in some anxiety for the result, and were not a little relieved when he came to them next morning with a cheerful countenance, and stated that the answer was good, the river having promised to conduct them in safety down its current. They then set out for Wawa, to procure the permission of the king of that country, whose territory borders on the Niger below Boussa. He received them with the greatest kindness, at once acceded to their request, and sent a messenger to Comié, or the king's ferry, to engage a canoe for them. Richard Lander was taken very ill, and obliged to return to Boussa, where he had left his medicine-chest. Here he soon recovered, and was joined by his brother John, on the 21st of August. The canoe offered them by the King of Wawa proved to be too small, and they were greatly delayed by the difficulty of procuring a suitable one. In addition to this, the king had sent a messenger to Rabba (Rakka of Clapperton), and the intermediate towns on the river, requesting permission for the travelers to pass down in safety, and desired them to wait until he had received an answer.

They were thus obliged to remain at Boussa until the 19th of September, when "to our unspeakable joy," says Lander, "the long-expected and wished-for messenger arrived in this city from Rabba, accompanied by two messengers from the king of Nyffé, one of whom, a modest-looking, respectable young man, is his own son. These men are to be our guides as far as Rabba, after we have passed which city, all the Nyffé territory to the southward is under the *surveillance* of Ederesa and his partisans. 'The magla,' says the Boussa ambassador, 'was delighted with the intelligence that white men were to honor his dominions with their presence;' he showed me the presents sent to him by Captain Clapperton three years ago, and said a great deal in his favor and commendation. 'And as a proof,' continued the man, 'of his friendly disposition toward you, and his interest in your welfare, he has not only sent his son as your companion and guide, but he has likewise dispatched a messenger to every town on the banks of the Niger either considerable or unimportant, even as far as Funda.'

"The king of Boussa was overwhelmed with delight at this intelligence; he capered around his hut with transport, when he saw our

awa, and other petty  
r. They were now  
n day to day, on the  
nally, on the 26th, a  
uest their immediate  
ission to depart, and  
Yaouri, which Rich-  
frica, its walls being

clared that he should  
is termed by the na-  
aking. They waited  
e relieved when he  
tenance, and stated  
sed to conduct them  
Wawa, to procure the  
itory borders on the  
greatest kindness, at  
ger to Comié, or the  
d Lander was taken  
had left his medicine-  
his brother John, on  
the King of Wawa  
yed by the difficulty  
king had sent a mes-  
termediate towns on  
pass down in safety,  
answer.

until the 19th of Sep-  
Lander, "the long-  
his city from Rabba,  
Nyffé, one of whom,  
vn son. These men  
ve passed which city,  
r the *surveillance* of  
Boussa ambassador,  
en were to honor his  
presents sent to him  
great deal in his favor  
d the man, "of his  
your welfare, he has  
but he has likewise  
s of the Niger either

elight at this intelli-  
t, when he saw our

guides and heard their message; and after a burst of joy, he began to cry like a child, his heart was so full. 'Now,' said he, when he had become more composed, 'whatever may happen to the white men, my neighbors can not but acknowledge that I have taken every care of them, treated them as became a king, and done my best to promote their happiness and interests. They will not be able,' continued the monarch with exultation, 'they dare not have the effrontery to cast at me a reproach like that which they bestowed upon my ancestor.'"

The next morning they quitted Boussa, and embarked in their canoes, full of joy at their success thus far, and hopeful, notwithstanding the certain perils that awaited them. Lander thus describes their farewell to Boussa, where, in spite of delays, they had been treated with steady kindness and good faith. "When we quitted the hut, we found our yard filled with neighbors, friends, and acquaintances, who all fell down on their knees to bid us good-by. They blessed us earnestly with uplifted hands, and those among them that were of the Mohammedan religion fervently implored for us the favor and protection of Allah and their prophet. The eyes of many of them were streaming with tears, and all were more or less affected. As we passed by these poor creatures, we spoke to them all, and thanked them again and again for their good wishes. Our hearts must have been of marble if we could have beheld such a scene without some slight emotion. On our way toward the river, also, the path was lined with people, some of whom saluted us on one knee, and some on both, and we received their benedictions as we walked along."

The current was very swift and the navigation dangerous until they had passed the frontier of Boussa at the king's ferry, where the Niger becomes broader and deeper. They halted at the island of Patashie, until they could procure a larger canoe, which they had purchased of the king of Wawa, but were again subjected to vexatious delays. Richard Lander was obliged to proceed once more to Wawa, and part with more presents from his rapidly diminishing store, before the matter could be arranged. Meanwhile they were treated with the greatest kindness and hospitality by the natives, and supplied with more provisions than they were able to consume. The king of Wawa had promised to send the canoe to a large town called Lever, a short distance below Patashie: they started again on the 30th, but were astounded on arriving at Lever, to find that the place was not in the territory of Wawa, and the king did not possess a single canoe there. They were therefore obliged to detain a large canoe which they had borrowed at the island of Patashie, the Wawa messengers promising that the king would pay for it. Soon afterward the chief of Patashie sent for it, but the governor of Lever refused to give it up, and detained the travelers from day to day, until their patience was at an end. Although they were wholly in the power of the natives, they went to the chief priest, who was at the bottom of these intrigues, and in the presence of him and the governor, declared

that they would no longer submit to the delay, and would shoot down any man who attempted to prevent them from leaving. This produced an immediate effect; the governor and priest became polite and submissive, and the travelers seized upon the moment to embark, and push into the middle of the current, which, in a short time, carried them out of sight of the place.



SCENERY OF THE LOWER NIGER.

They stopped for the night at a town called Bajebie, and started next morning (October 5), at sunrise. "Just below the town," says Lander, "the Niger spreads itself into two noble branches, of nearly equal width, formed by an island. We preferred journeying on the eastern branch, but for no particular reason. The country beyond the banks was very fine. The island in the middle of the river is small, but verdant, woody, and handsome; and we passed by the side of it in a very few minutes, with considerable velocity. It was then that both banks presented the most delightful appearance. They were embellished with mighty trees and elegant shrubs, which were clad in thick and luxuriant foliage, some of lively green, and others of darker hues; and little birds were singing merrily among their branches. Magnificent festoons of creeping plants, always green, hung from the tops of the tallest trees, and drooping to the water's edge, formed immense natural grottoes, pleasing and grateful to the eye, and seemed to be fit abodes for the Naiads of the river."

On the following day they approached Rabba, and stopped at an island in the river, while they dispatched a messenger to the king. He returned in the evening, with a message, stating that they should remain where they were until they had been visited by the "King of the Dark Water." This monarch came the next morning in a canoe propelled by

twenty young men, who sang in time to the motion of the paddles. The king sat under an awning hung with scarlet cloth, and was attended by six of his wives and two handsome pages. He was a stately man, well-stricken in years; his skin was coal-black and his features coarse, but commanding. He received the travelers cordially, presented them with honey and goora-nuts, and offered to accompany them to the island of Zagoshi, opposite Rabba, where they were to remain.

Here they were detained eight days by the deceit and rapacity of the King of Rabba and the King of the Dark Water. The former at first expressed himself delighted with the presents they sent him, but in a short time changed his tone, and said they were not fit for a child. The travelers had a rich crimson robe, which had been found among Park's goods, and was presented to them by the King of Boussa. This they were compelled to part with; but the king was so much pleased that he promised to procure them a large canoe, and refused to listen to the proposals which were made to him to plunder them. They had the greatest difficulty, nevertheless, in getting a canoe sufficiently large and strong, while the natives positively refused to sell their paddles, and the Landers were therefore compelled to permit their men to steal as many as they wanted, by night. At length, after much suspense and anxiety, and no little peril, considering the nature of the people with whom they had to deal, they pushed off on the 16th, and resumed their voyage down the stream.

After paddling all day, during which they made about thirty miles, they attempted to go ashore for the night, but found the banks so marshy that it was impossible to land. The men became very much fatigued, and they finally permitted the canoe to float with the current. "But here," says Richard Lander, "a fresh evil arose, which we were unprepared to meet. An incredible number of hippopotami arose very near us, and came plashing, snorting, and plunging all round the canoe, and placed us in imminent danger. Thinking to frighten them off, we fired a shot or two at them, but the noise only called up from the water, and out of the fens, about as many more of their unwieldy companions, and we were more closely beset than before. Our people, who had never in all their lives been exposed in a canoe to such huge and formidable beasts, trembled with fear and apprehension, and absolutely wept aloud; and their terror was not a little increased by the dreadful peals of thunder which rattled over their heads, and by the awful darkness which prevailed, broken at intervals by flashes of lightning, whose powerful glare was truly awful. Our people tell us that these formidable animals frequently upset canoes in the river, when every one in them is sure to perish. These came so close to us, that we could reach them with the butt end of a gun."

During the night a violent storm came on, and for several hours the canoe was in great danger of being swamped by the agitation of the waves. At last they succeeded in attaching it to a tree in the current,



and lay there until dawn, when they started again. During that day and the next they went slowly, on account of the rains, but were not molested by the natives whom they met. On the forenoon of the 19th, they were informed that the large town of Egga, where they had been advised to stop, was near at hand. "We journeyed onward for half an hour," says the narrative, "when we perceived a large, handsome town behind a deep morass. Several little inlets led through it to the town, distant about three miles from the bank of the river, which, as we drew near, we learned was the place of which we were in quest. It was the long-sought Egga, and we instantly proceeded up a creek to the landing-place. The town is upward of two miles in length, and we were struck with the immense number of large, bulky canoes which lay off it, and which were filled with trading commodities, and all kinds of merchandise which are common to the country. They also had huts in them, like the canoes we had seen before. All of them had blood smeared on their sterns, and feathers stuck in it as a charm or preservative against robbers and the evil-disposed."

They were well received at Egga, but were much annoyed by the curiosity of the natives, who, never having before seen white men, crowded into the house until they were nearly suffocated. They remained at this place two days: the chief did not attempt to prevent them from leaving, but their men were so terrified by the reports of the fierce tribes further down the river, that they refused to proceed, and demanded their pay. This the travelers would not give: the chief was appealed to by the boatmen, but declared himself neutral in the matter, and the difficulty ended in the men coming back the following morning, and taking their place in the canoe. Soon after leaving Egga, there were indications of an approach to the sea. A gull flew over their heads; and the native canoes greatly resembled those on the Calabar River. "For many miles," says Lander, "we could see nothing but large, open, well-built villages on both banks of the river, but more especially on the eastern, and tracts of land covered with verdure, or prepared for cultivation, between them. Here nature seems to have scattered her favors with an unsparing hand. Yet we touched at none of these goodly places, but continued our journey till the sun began to decline, and the men to be fatigued, when we stopped at a small hamlet on an island, intending to sleep there."

Here, however, they were not received in a friendly manner, and the natives advised them to go on to a city called Kacunda, where the Houssa language was spoken. They arrived at this place in the evening, and were welcomed by a Mohammedan priest, who entertained them for the night. The next morning the king's brother came, and received them with no less kindness and cordiality. He made them presents, which they were too poor to return adequately, but he was more than satisfied by the gift of some little trifles which he saw about the room. Becoming more friendly and confidential, he gave them a terrible account of

the natives further down the river, and advised them to return by the way they came. As he found them resolved to depart, he then said, "If you will not be persuaded by me to turn back, and save your lives, at least you must not leave this by daylight, but stop until the sun goes down, and you may then go on your journey—you will then pass the most dangerous town in the middle of the night, and perhaps save yourselves." The travelers placed faith in the representations of this man, and therefore judged it prudent to postpone their departure until the following afternoon. While at Kacunda, they learned that Funda was not on the Niger, but on the Chadda, the mouth of which river, it was stated, was but a day's journey distant. They were promised a guide, but he disappeared just before the appointed time; the chief used every argument except force to prevent their departure, but they were resolute, and put off from Kacunda on the 24th.

"At three o'clock in the afternoon," says Lander, "we offered up a prayer to the Almighty Disposer of all human events for protection on our future voyage, that He would deign to extend to us His all-saving power among the lawless barbarians it was our lot to be obliged to pass. Having done this, we next ordered Pascoe and our people to commence loading the canoe. I shall never forget them, poor fellows; they were all in tears, and trembled with fear. One of them, named Antonio, a native of Bonny, and son to the late chief of that river, was as much affected as the rest, but on a different account. For himself, he said that he did not care; his own life was of no consequence. All he feared was, that my brother and I should be murdered; he loved us dearly: he had been with us ever since we had left the sea, and it would be as bad as dying himself to see us killed.

"We were now fairly off, and prepared ourselves for the worst. 'Now,' said I, 'my boys,' as our canoe glided down with the stream, 'let us all stick together. I hope that we have none among us who will flinch, come what may.' Antonio and Sam said they were determined to stick to us to the last. The former I have before alluded to; the latter is a native of Sierra Leone, and I believe them both to be firm fellows when required. Old Pascoe and Jowdie, two of my former people, I knew could be depended on; but the new ones, although they boasted much when they found that there was no avoiding it, I had not much dependence on, as I had not had an opportunity of trying them. We directed the four muskets and two pistols to be loaded with ball and slugs, determined that our opponents, whoever they might be, should meet with a warm reception; and having made every preparation for our defense which we thought would be availing, and encouraging our little band to behave themselves gallantly, we gave three hearty cheers, and commended ourselves to Providence.

"Our little vessel moved on in grand style under the vigorous and animated exertions of our men. Shortly after leaving Kacunda, the river took a turn due south, between tolerably high hills; the strength

During that day  
as, but were not  
on of the 19th,  
they had been  
ward for half an  
handsome town  
h it to the town,  
ich, as we drew  
west. It was the  
k to the landing-  
d we were struck  
h lay off it, and  
s of merchandise  
uts in them, like  
lood smeared on  
servative against

a annoyed by the  
seen white men,  
located. They re-  
attempt to prevent  
the reports of the  
d to proceed, and  
ive: the chief was  
atral in the matter,  
following morning,  
aving Egga, there  
all flew over their  
se on the Calabar  
d see nothing but  
he river, but more  
ed with verdure, or  
ure seems to have  
we touched at none  
all the sun began to  
ed at a small hamlet

ldly manner, and the  
la, where the Houssa  
in the evening, and  
rtained them for the  
, and received them  
hem presents, which  
s more than satisfied  
t the room. Becom-  
a terrible account of

of the current continued much about the same. A few miles further on, we found ourselves opposite a large, spreading town, from which issued a great and confused noise, as of a multitude quarreling, or as the waves of the sea rolling upon a rocky beach; we saw also other towns on the western bank of the river, but we cautiously avoided them all. The evening was calm and serene, the heat of the day was over, the moon and stars now afforded us an agreeable light, every thing was still and pleasant; we glided smoothly and silently down the stream, and for a long while we saw little to excite our fears, and heard nothing but a gentle rustling of the leaves, occasioned by the wind, the noise of our paddles, or now and then the plashing of fishes, as they leaped out of the water.

"About midnight we observed lights from a village, to which we were very close, and heard people dancing, singing, and laughing, in the moonshine outside their huts. We made haste over to the opposite side to get away, for fear of a lurking danger, and we fancied that a light was following us, but it was only a 'will o' the wisp,' or some such thing, and trees soon hid it from our sight. After the moon had gone down, it became rather cloudy, so that we could not discern the way as plainly as we could have wished, and the consequence was, that we were suddenly drifted by the current into an eddy, and, in spite of all our exertions to get out of it, we swept over into a small, shallow channel which had been formed by the overflowing of the river, and it cost two hours' hard labor to get out into the main stream again.

"At five o'clock in the morning, we found ourselves nearly opposite a very considerable river, entering the Niger from the eastward; it appeared to be three or four miles wide at its mouth, and on the bank we saw a large town, one part of which faced the river, and the other the Quorra. We at first supposed it to be an arm of that river, and running from us; and therefore directed our course for it. We proceeded up it a short distance, but finding the current against us, and that it increased as we got within its entrance, and our people being tired, we were compelled to give up the attempt, and were easily swept back into the Niger. Consequently we passed on, but determined on making inquiries concerning it the first convenient opportunity. But we concluded this to be the Chadda.

"At 10 A. M. we passed a huge and naked white rock, in the form of a perfect dome, arising from the center of the river. It was about twenty feet high, and covered with an immense quantity of white birds, in consequence of which we named it the Bird Rock: it is about three or four miles distant from Bocquâ, on the same side of the river. We passed it on the western side, and were very nearly lost in a whirlpool. It was with the utmost difficulty we preserved the canoe from being carried away, and dashed against the rocks. Fortunately, I saw the danger at first, and, finding we could not get clear of it, my brother and I took a paddle, and animating our men, we exerted all our strength, and suc-

ceeded in preventing her from turning around. Had our canoe become unmanageable, we should inevitably have perished. Shortly after, seeing a convenient place for landing, the men being languid and weary with hunger and exertion, we halted on the right bank of the river, which we imagined was most convenient for our purpose.

"Totally unconscious of danger, we were reclining on our mats—for we too, like our people, were wearied with toil, and overcome with drowsiness—when in about twenty minutes after our men had returned, one of them shouted, with a loud voice, 'War is coming! O, war is coming!' and ran toward us with a scream of terror, telling us that the natives were hastening to attack us. We started up at this unusual exclamation, and, looking about us, we beheld a large party of men, almost naked, running in a very irregular manner, and with uncouth gestures, toward our little encampment. They were all variously armed with muskets, bows and arrows, knives, cutlasses, barbs, long spears, and other instruments of destruction; and, as we gazed upon this band of wild men, with their ferocious looks and hostile appearance, which was not a little heightened on observing the weapons in their hands, we felt a very uneasy kind of a sensation, and wished ourselves safe out of their hands.

"One of the natives, who proved to be the chief, we perceived a little in advance of his companions; and, throwing down our pistols, which we had snatched up in the first moment of surprise, my brother and I walked very composedly and unarmed toward him. As we approached him, we made all the signs and motions we could with our arms, to deter him and his people from firing on us. His quiver was dangling at his side, his bow was bent, and an arrow, which was pointed at our breasts, already trembled on the string, when we were within a few yards of his person. This was a highly critical moment—the next might be our last. But the hand of Providence averted the blow; for just as the chief was about to pull the fatal cord, a man that was nearest him rushed forward and stayed his arm. At that instant we stood before him, and immediately held forth our hands; all of them trembled like aspen leaves; the chief looked up full in our faces, kneeling on the ground—light seemed to flash from his dark, rolling eyes—his body was convulsed all over, as though he were enduring the utmost torture, and with a timorous, yet undefinable expression of countenance, in which all the passions of our nature were strangely blended, he drooped his head, eagerly grasped our proffered hands, and burst into tears. This was a sign of friendship—harmony followed, and war and bloodshed were thought of no more.

"At first no one could understand us; but an old man made his appearance shortly after, who understood the Houssa language. Him the chief employed as an interpreter, and every one listened with anxiety to the following explanation which he gave us: 'A few minutes after you first landed, one of my people came to me, and said that a number of strange people had arrived at the market-place. I sent him back again

to get as near to you as he could, to hear what you intended doing. He soon after returned to me, and said that you spoke in a language which he could not understand. Not doubting that it was your intention to attack my village at night, and carry off my people, I desired them to get ready to fight. We were all prepared and eager to kill you, and came down breathing vengeance and slaughter, supposing that you were my enemies, and had landed from the opposite side of the river. But when you came to meet us unarmed, and we saw your white faces, we were all so frightened that we could not pull our bows, nor move hand or foot; and when you drew near me, and extended your hands toward me, I felt my heart faint within me, and believed that you were "*Children of Heaven*," and had dropped from the skies." Such was the effect we had produced on him; and under this impression he knew not what he did. 'And now,' said he, 'white men, all I want is your forgiveness.'"

The chief assured them that they had passed the most dangerous portions of the river, and there was no further necessity for traveling at night. Seven days more, he added, would bring them to the sea. He cautioned them, however, to avoid a large town on the eastern bank, called Atta, a little below, the governor of which would probably attempt to detain them. They started early the next morning, and about noon observed a town which they supposed to be Atta, and took care to avoid observation by keeping close to the opposite shore. Both banks of the river were hilly and fringed with primeval woods, which were bending over the water. "For upward of thirty miles after passing Atta," observes Lander, "not a town, or a village, or even a single hut, could anywhere be seen. The whole of this distance our canoe passed smoothly along the Niger, and every thing was silent and solitary; no sound could be distinguished save our own voices and the plashing of the paddles with their echoes; the song of birds was not heard, nor could any animal whatever be seen; the banks seemed to be entirely deserted, and the magnificent Niger to be slumbering in its own grandeur."

They stopped that evening at a village called Abbazacca, where they found a man who spoke the Bonny language, which one of their men understood. The chief of the place invited them to accompany him the next day to a large town, of which his brother was governor, further down the river, and where they would find people from Bonny, Calabar, and Brass. They set out again next morning, the chief preceding them. He spread news of their coming everywhere, so that they found the shores crowded with people, to look at them. In the afternoon, as they were passing a large town, they were hailed by a native in an English soldier's jacket. As they paid no attention to him, a dozen canoes followed, and insisted on their going back to pay their respects to the king of the place. This they were obliged to do. The chief, who had a mild and benevolent face, received them in a very friendly manner, gave them

a hut for the night, and when they were annoyed by the crowd of curious natives who pressed around them, told them they might kill as many as they pleased.



ABOKKO.

The name of the town was Damuggoo. The next morning the chief, whose name was Abokko, paid them a visit, bringing presents of palm-wine, eggs, bananas, and yams. "He desired us," says Richard Lander, "to ask for any thing we might want, telling us that we should have every thing we wished that the town could afford. He told us that neither he nor his father had seen a white man, although they had much wished it, and that our presence made him quite happy. He then gave us a pressing invitation to come to see him, which we readily accepted. He seemed to be one of the worthiest fellows whom we have yet met." The man in a soldier's jacket, proved to be a messenger from the King of Bonny, and proposed to accompany them down the river to the territories of his master. At the same time Abokko, who ordered a grand public festival next day in honor of their arrival, and presented them with a bullock, offered them a good canoe, with a crew of his own people, provided they would wait until the latter returned from the market at Bocqua. He assured them that they would be able to continue their voyage to the sea in this manner, with perfect safety.

The Landers judged it prudent to accede to his proposition, and during the remainder of their stay were very well treated. The only annoyance they suffered was from the curiosity of the natives, and the procrastination of the chief, to whom time was no object, and who, with all his kindness, delayed their departure considerably. Finally, on the evening of November 4th, after a stay of eight days at Damuggoo, they set off in one of Abokko's canoes, in addition to their own, accompanied by the messenger of the King of Bonny. Their departure was attended



by renewed festivities. "The palm-wine circulated freely in the bowls," says Richard Lander, "and the natives of the village, who witnessed all our proceedings with no little anxiety, seemed to be greatly delighted at seeing their chief and the priests so familiar with white men. Meanwhile several elephants' tusks, and a number of slaves and goats, were put into the canoe as presents to the chief of Bonny. A fatted goat was given us as a parting gift, and a small decanter of rum was thrust in my brother's bosom as a cordial during the night."

They passed rapidly down the river during the night, and in the morning reached a large market-place called Kirree. Richard Lander was in the Damuggoo canoe, considerably in advance of his own, in which was his brother; and soon after passing Kirree, was astonished at the sight of fifty large canoes coming up the river, in some of which the English flag was flying from a bamboo staff. Each canoe had a four-pounder in the bow, and contained forty or fifty men, all of whom were armed with muskets. Delighted with the sight of the flags, he approached them unhesitatingly. The foremost canoe instantly ran up to his own, and in the twinkling of an eye every thing was taken out of it, himself and his men violently disarmed, plundered of their clothing, and taken prisoners. The boats were on their way to the market of Kirree, whither he was conducted, with but faint hopes of recovering any of his property, or even of preserving his life. By this time the other canoe, in which was John Lander, was observed and pursued. The boatmen attempted to escape, but were soon run down with such violence that the canoe was capsized, and sunk. John Lander was thrown into the water, and sustained himself by swimming until, having approached one of the hostile canoes, he was hauled on board by a native. Meanwhile the greatest tumult and confusion prevailed. In the struggle to get possession of the plunder, several of the native canoes were upset and their crews thrown into the water. The Landers were conducted to a small island opposite Kirree; the Damuggoo people and the King of Bonny's messenger made their appearance and protested violently against the outrage, as they were on friendly terms with the people of Eboc, who had perpetrated it; and a grand *palaver*, or council, was held.

After a time a search was commenced in the canoes, for the goods, some of which were found, although the greater part of them were at the bottom of the river. "We were now invited to land," says Richard Lander, "and told to look at our goods, in order to see if they were all there. To my great satisfaction I immediately recognized the box containing our books, and one of my brother's journals. The medicine-chest was by its side, but both were filled with water. A large carpet-bag, containing all our wearing apparel, was lying cut open and deprived of its contents, with the exception of a shirt, a pair of trousers, and a waistcoat. Many valuable articles which it had contained were gone. The whole of my journal, with the exception of a note-book with re-

marks from Rabba to this place, was lost. Four guns, one of which had been the property of the late Mr. Park, four cutlasses, and two pistols, were gone. Nine elephants' tusks, the finest I had seen in the country, which had been given me by the Kings of Wawa and Boussa, a quantity of ostrich-feathers, some handsome leopard-skins, a great variety of seeds, all our buttons, cowries, and needles, which were necessary for us to purchase provisions with—all were missing, and said to have been sunk in the river. The two boxes and the bag were all that could be found.

"At about three in the afternoon we were ordered to return to the small island from whence we had come, and the setting of the sun being the signal for the council to dissolve, we were again sent for to the market. The people had been engaged in deliberation and discussion during the whole of the day, and with throbbing hearts we received their resolution in nearly the following words:—'That the king of the country being absent, they had taken upon themselves to consider the occurrence which had taken place in the morning, and to give judgment accordingly. Those of our things which had been saved from the water should be restored to us, and the person that had first commenced the attack on my brother, should lose his head, as a just retribution for his offense, having acted without his chief's permission; that with regard to us, we must consider ourselves as prisoners, and consent to be conducted on the following morning to Obie, King of the Eboe country, before whom we should undergo an examination, and whose will and pleasure concerning our persons would then be explained.' We received the intelligence with feelings of rapture, and with bursting hearts we offered up thanks to our Divine Creator for his signal preservation of us throughout this disastrous day."

On the morning of the 6th they left Kirree for the Eboe country, accompanied by two large war canoes. On the morning of the 8th, after a voyage of two days, the Niger expanded into a lake, out of which it flowed in three separate channels. Their conductors took the central stream, and about noon they reached the Eboe town, the residence of King Obie. On landing they were hailed in broken English by a large negro who called himself King Gun, and said that he was one of the chiefs of the Brass country. He added, to their great joy, that an English vessel, called the *Thomas*, of Liverpool, was lying in the First Brass River, two or three days' journey below. The travelers were conducted to a hut, and soon afterward taken before King Obie, whom they found to be a sprightly-looking young negro, dressed in a scarlet jacket and trowsers, with strings of coral and bells around his wrists and ankles. The story of the attack and capture was told by the Bonny messenger in a speech of two hours in length, after which some yams, stewed in rancid palm-oil, were given to the travelers. At the end of two days, during which they were greatly annoyed by the curiosity of the natives, who allowed them no rest, either by day or night,

they received the decision of King Obie. It was to the effect that, as circumstances had thrown them into his hands, he intended to keep them until the master of some English vessel would be willing to ransom them for the price of twenty slaves. They could not proceed to Bonny, because the branch of the Niger leading to that country was dried up, and the only channel navigable from Eboe to the sea, was that through the dominions of the King of Brass.

Shortly afterward they noticed that earnest conferences were held between King Obie and King Boy, the son of the old King of Brass, and their suspense was soon relieved by the latter, who stated that he had arranged to pay King Obie their ransom, provided they would give him an order on Captain Lake, of the brig *Thomas*, for their value in English goods, with a cask of rum and some additional articles. He agreed to convey them on board the vessel, as soon as the captain had paid him the amount of the order. They were overjoyed at this prospect of release and immediately wrote a request to Captain Lake, not doubting but that he would immediately ransom them. "Fearing," says Richard Lander, "that something might yet occur to detain us, and ultimately change the king's resolution altogether, we were most eager to get out of the reach of him and his people as quickly as possible. Therefore we lost not a moment, but hastened to our lodgings, and having sent our people on board Boy's canoe, we hurried after them immediately, and embarked at three in the afternoon, November 11th. And thus terminated four of the most wretched days of our existence."

They sailed down the main branch of the Niger for three days and one night. The shores were thickly inhabited, and the villages surrounded with plantations of yams, bananas, and other kinds of fruit and vegetables. As they approached the sea, however, the shores became low and swampy, and lined with a dense growth of mangrove. The Landers were greatly cramped and incommoded in King Boy's canoe, and were but scantily supplied with food. On the third day they remarked with joy the appearance of tide-water, and at noon, on the fourth, reached Brass Town, only sixty miles from the mouth of the Niger, which, they were informed, was here called the River Nun. On landing, they were surprised to see a white man, who proved to be the captain of a Spanish slaver lying in the Brass River. The next day it was decided by King Boy, and his father, King Forday, that the former should go with Richard Lander to the English vessel, leaving his brother John as a security for the amount of ransom to be paid. The travelers now looked upon their journey as completed, and considered that all their trials and difficulties were at an end.

The canoe with Lander and King Boy reached the Nun, or First Brass River, early on the morning of November 18th. "About a quarter of an hour after we had entered the River Nun," says Lander, "we descried, at a distance before us, two vessels lying at anchor. The emo-

tions of delight which the sight of them occasioned are quite beyond my powers of description. The nearest to us was a schooner, a Spanish slave-vessel, whose captain we had seen at Brass town. Our canoe was quickly by her side, and I went on board. The captain received me very kindly, and invited me to take some spirits and water with him.

"We now directed our course to the English brig, which was lying about three hundred yards lower down the river. Having reached her with feelings of delight mingled with doubt, I went on board. Here I found every thing in as sad a condition as I had in the schooner; four of the crew had just died of fever; four more, which completed the whole, were lying sick in their hammocks, and the captain appeared to be in the very last stage of illness. He had recovered from a severe attack of fever, and had suffered a relapse in consequence of having exposed himself too soon, which had nearly been fatal to him. I now stated to him who I was, explained my situation to him as fully as I could, and had my instructions read to him by one of his own people, that he might see I was not imposing on him. I then requested that he would redeem us by paying what had been demanded by King Boy, and assured him that whatever he might give to him on our account would certainly be repaid him by the British government. To my utter surprise and consternation, he flatly refused to give a single thing, and, ill and weak as he was, made use of the most offensive and shameful oaths I ever heard."

Lander, disappointed and mortified beyond expression, then requested King Boy to take him to Bonny, where there were probably other English vessels; but the latter declared that if one captain would not pay, another would also refuse. Finally, on Lander's representing to the captain that some of his men would be useful to assist in working the vessel, the latter requested King Boy to go back and bring John Lander and the boatmen, declaring that nothing would be paid until they were on board. The captain then added that if they were not brought within three days, he would sail without them. The intervening time was passed by Lander in great anxiety and distress, and on the evening of the third day the brutal captain declared that he would put to sea the next morning. Fortunately there was such a swell on the bar that he was afraid to cross, as he had refused to pay the native pilot who had brought him in, and the place was very dangerous for large vessels. That evening Richard Lander saw some canoes coming down the river, and early in the morning King Boy brought his brother on board, with their servants and boatmen.

Captain Lake received John Lander civilly, but immediately expressed his determination to dismiss King Boy without giving him a single article, and then make the best of his way out of the river. The travelers had three silver bracelets and some trinkets left among their scanty baggage, which they gave to Boy, who treated them with the greatest indignation and contempt. Richard Lander thus describes the scene

which followed: "Boy now ventured to approach Captain Lake on the quarter-deck, and, with an anxious, petitioning countenance, asked for the goods which had been promised him. Prepared for the desperate game he was about to play, it was the object of Lake to gain as much time as possible, that he might get his vessel under way before he came to an open rupture. Therefore he pretended to be busy in writing, and desired Boy to wait a moment. Becoming impatient with delay, Boy repeated his demand a second and a third time, 'Give me my bars.'—'I NO WILL!' said Lake, in a voice of thunder, which one could hardly have expected from so emaciated a frame as his. 'I no will, I tell you; I won't give you a flint.' Terrified by the demeanor of Lake, and the threats and oaths he made use of, poor King Boy suddenly retreated, and seeing men going aloft to loosen the sails, apprehensive of being carried off to sea, he quickly disappeared from the deck of the brig, and was soon observed making his way on shore in his canoe, with the rest of his people; this was the last we saw of him."

It was four days before the brig succeeded in getting over the bar, and after all the perils through which they had passed, the intrepid travelers narrowly escaped a watery grave. The vessel twice drifted to the edge of the breakers, and at one time there seemed no hope of her escape. Finally, at noon on the 27th, they reached the open sea and sailed for Fernando Po, where they arrived on the 1st of December. The Landers were very kindly received by Governor Becroft, who supplied all their wants, and treated them with the greatest hospitality. After remaining on the island until the 20th of January, 1831, waiting in vain for a chance of getting to England, they took passage to Rio Janeiro in the ship *Caernarvon*. A fever broke out on board soon after they sailed; several of the crew died, and for many days the Landers and three black men were the only persons strong enough to manage the ship and attend to the sick. They did not reach Rio Janeiro until the 16th of March.

The admiral of the British squadron on the coast of Brazil immediately gave them a passage to England on board of a transport ship, which sailed for Portsmouth on the 20th. "On the 9th of June," says Richard Lander, "we arrived at Portsmouth, and gladly landed, with hearts full of gratitude for all our deliverances."

"Thus," remarks Captain Allen, "the solution of the problem which has excited the interest of so many ages, has been accomplished by the most modest of means, while many costly and more imposing undertakings have failed. A solitary pedestrian discovered the long-hidden Niger in its course through hitherto almost unheard-of countries; and two unpretending young men, committing themselves in a frail bark to its mysterious bosom, were borne by it through unknown regions, a distance of more than six hundred miles, to its termination in the vast and multitudinous ocean."

## LAIRD AND OLDFIELD'S VOYAGES ON THE NIGER.

On the return of the Landers, from their remarkable and successful discovery of the outlet of the Niger, they gave such a flourishing account of the quantity of ivory to be found on its banks, that some enterprising merchants of Liverpool—actuated by the spirit of legitimate trade, which had assumed in that city the excitement of the former traffic in human beings—fitted out an expedition for the purpose of ascertaining and opening out the resources of the country.

This mercantile expedition was composed of one small brig, to be stationed at the mouth of the river, to receive the expected cargo of ivory, and two steamers; the smaller of which—the first iron vessel that had crossed the Atlantic—was built by Mr. Macgregor Laird, whose family were large subscribers to the expedition, and who himself bore a considerable share in the conduct of it, though the nominal command was held by Richard Lander, to whom it had been offered, previous to the formation of the company, and on whom devolved the duty of selecting the articles of trade. The large steamer was named the *Quorra* (Niger), and contained a crew of twenty-six men, all told; the other was called the *Alburkah* (Blessing), and carried fourteen men.

The expedition sailed from Milford Haven on the 29th of July, 1832, and after touching at Cape Coast Castle, where Lander re-engaged Pascoe, Jowdie, and others of his former men, reached the river Nun, on the 16th of October. Here Captain Harries of the *Quorra* and one of the engineers died of fever, which had already made its appearance on board. There was a Liverpool trader lying in the Brass River, the captain of which had purchased from King Boy, Richard Lander's journal of his voyage down the Niger, which had been lost during the attack on himself and his brother at Kirree. After an interview with King Boy and King Forday, they furnished a pilot named Louis, and recommended them to take a certain channel, which they stated was the best for the steamers. The pilot, however, privately informed Mr. Laird that the chiefs wished to run the vessels aground, and that the deepest channel was a very narrow creek, which he pointed out. Lander, having ascended this creek in a small boat for the purpose of sounding, found sufficient water, and on the 28th the steamers set out, the *Alburkah* taking the lead. After passing thirteen other arms of the Niger, they safely reached the main stream in the evening, having made forty-five miles.

On the evening of November 1st, as they were slowly ascending the river, Lander sent a note to Mr. Laird, stating that he had received information that the Ibos intended attacking the steamers. While the guns were being got in readiness on board the *Quorra*, "we heard the report of several shots," says Mr. Laird, "and on going on deck observed the whole bush on our left, which was the right bank of the river



and about seventy yards from us, in a blaze of musketry, which the *Alburkah* was returning. Mr. Lander hailed me and said he was going to drop down the river; but on my offering to go between him and the fire, he sent Louis, the Eboe pilot, on board. We immediately got under weigh, and the pilot placed the *Quorra* within pistol-shot abreast of the town. I was much amused by the coolness and self-possession of this pilot. He could speak tolerable English; so I told him, if he ran us aground, the instant the vessel touched I would blow his brains out. The fellow laughed, and opening his country-cloth, showed me the butt-end of two pistols; a gentle hint that two could play at that game. I gave directions for the guns to be loaded with round and canister, and in about twenty minutes we silenced the firing on shore.

"At daylight of the following day the firing from the bush recommenced, and I now discovered that our invisible enemies (for we hardly saw one) had two swivels. The *Quorra* opened her fire on the town at six o'clock with four four-pounders and the twenty-four-pound swivel; but finding that we made no impression on the mud-walls or the huts, although we had silenced the firing, Mr. Lander hailed us, and we agreed to land and burn the town as an example to the rest. Accordingly the gig under my command led the way; Captain Miller in the cutter followed, and also the launch with eight men; while the two mates, engineers, and Dr. Briggs were left to keep up a fire of musketry over our heads." This was accomplished, without the loss of a man, and they afterward learned that three natives had been killed and several wounded. The chiefs of the villages which they passed next day, came to congratulate them, and appeared highly delighted at their victory.

On the morning of the 6th they reached the mouth of the creek which leads to the town of Eboe, and made preparations for visiting King Obie. Mr. Laird gives the following account of the interview: "Mr. Lander in a general's uniform, with a feather in his cocked-hat that almost reached the ground, Mr. Jordan in a colonel's uniform, and Lieutenant Allen in his own, led the van, and attracted so much of the natives' attention, that Dr. Briggs and myself almost regretted that we had not visited Monmouth-street before our departure from England. Preceded by old Pascoe, Jowdie, and some other men who had accompanied Mr. Lander on his former journey, and who were now returning in triumph to the scene of their former exploits, dressed in soldiers' jackets and military caps, blowing trumpets and beating drums, accompanied by King Boy and about forty Eboe canoes emulating them in their discordant noises, we advanced up the narrow creek more like merry-andrews than sensible people; and after a row of about three quarters of a mile, in one of the hottest days I ever experienced, we landed at the upper end of the town among a great assemblage of people of both sexes. From our landing we had still more than half a mile to walk, surrounded by a mob of about a thousand people armed with all manner of muskets, spears, cutlasses, bayonets and knives fastened

on the ends of poles. After waiting about ten minutes, a side-door opened, and in rushed Obie, a tall man with a pleasing countenance, dressed in scarlet cloth. Poor Jordan was the first he saw, and rushing upon him at once he gave him a most fraternal hug; then shaking hands with Lander and myself, he took his seat on the throne, placing us on each side of him."

King Obie afterward visited Lander on board of the *Alburkah*, where he was received with a salute. During the visit of the steamers the members of the expedition were treated with great kindness by the king and the natives, but they accomplished very little in the way of trade. The principal article to be had was palm-oil, and no ivory was to be seen. On the evening of the 9th they resumed their voyage, and proceeded slowly up the river, being obliged to stop frequently for the purpose of cutting wood. A violent fever broke out on board of the *Quorra*, and by the 13th, there were only two men on board capable of doing duty. Captain Hill of the *Alburkah* took command of the vessel, but was soon attacked and obliged to return. The mortality was so great that by the 24th the *Quorra* had lost thirteen men, and the *Alburkah* two. Mr. Laird says: "Mr. Lander's behavior during our sickness did him infinite credit. He was indefatigable in his attention to the sick, and bled and blistered the men as if he had been a regular licentiate. The application of a blister over the head seemed to give the greatest relief, and in my own case and that of Dr. Briggs was, under Providence, the means of saving us. After this is done, I do not think that medical skill can go further—the question becomes a pitched battle between the fever and the constitution of the person attacked with it; and medicine, after the first necessary emetics and purgatives, does more harm than good."

On the 27th they reached the large town of Attah, near the place where the Niger passes the range of the Kong Mountains, and the fever began to abate. At Damuggoo, they had obtained sixteen elephants' teeth from the brother of Abokko, who had been so kind to the brothers Lander, and they procured a few more from the King of Attah, but only after making him large presents. They were ready to start on the 5th of December, but on going ashore to take leave of the king, were unable to see him, and decided to proceed up the river next morning. "During the day," says the narrative, "some ceremonies were performed ahead of the vessels in the river to prevent our passing upward, his majesty of Attah being very desirous that we should not proceed further up the river. These ceremonies were performed by men in canoes, fantastically dressed. They stood up and made a variety of expressive gestures, and concluded their proceedings by throwing into the river what appeared to me to be alligator's flesh. As the vessels gathered way, and passed the place where the fetish or ceremony was made, the natives, who were crowded on the hill on which the town stands, testified their astonishment by a general yell." On the 21st, the vessels

reached the junction of the Niger and the Chadda, where the *Quorra* ran aground. She was got off, but grounded again on a sand-bank, and after various unsuccessful attempts, they resigned themselves to wait until the annual rise of the river.

Mr. Laird gives the following account of the scenery and inhabitants of the banks of the Niger, from Eboe to its junction with the Chadda: "On leaving Eboe we emerged from a comparatively winding and narrow stream, bordered by stagnant swamps and overgrown with immense forests, the sameness of which distressed the eye, while the extent baffled the imagination, into a wide and splendid river. The banks were but thinly wooded, and in many places highly and extensively cultivated. The various reaches of the river became longer, and in its serpentine course it assumed a more graceful character, while the inhabitants on its banks were more civilized and better appareled. We found the better class attired in the Houssa loose shirt and trowsers, instead of the common wrapper of the Eboes. The country generally presented that formed and decided appearance which characterizes land that has been long under the dominion of man. The banks, although elevated fifteen or twenty feet above the surface of the river, continued flat until we arrived at Kirree, where we met with the first bluff. From thence the country gradually rises, until at Attah it attains an elevation of from two to three hundred feet. From Attah upward a range of hills on each bank of the river gives the scenery a picturesque and bold character; those on the western bank seem to have the highest elevation, but neither appeared to rise above four hundred and fifty or five hundred feet above the water. From the general outline of these hills, and from the specimens of the rock that we found being principally granite and mica slate, we pronounced them of primitive formation.

"Passing through this romantic valley, which extends from forty to fifty miles, we reached the Kong Mountains, which on the banks of the river rise to an elevation of between two and three thousand feet. As far as we could ascertain, they are composed principally of granite, and have a bold and magnificent appearance. The chasm through which the river passes seemed about fifteen hundred yards wide, but the channel of the river does not occupy more than seven hundred.

"Both banks of the river are thickly studded with town and villages. I could count seven from the place where we lay aground; and between Eboe and the confluence of the rivers, there can not be less than forty, generally occurring every two or three miles. The principal towns are Attah and Addakudda; and averaging the inhabitants at one thousand for each town and village, will, I think, very nearly give the population of the banks. It may be rather below the mark.

"The general character of the people is much superior to that of the inhabitants of the swampy country between them and the coast. They are shrewd, intelligent, and quick in their perception, milder in their dispositions, and more peaceable in their habits. The security of life and

property is evidently greater among them; though it is still sufficiently precarious to prevent the inhabitants from living in isolated situations, nor will any of them venture upon the river after sunset in small canoes. Agriculture is extensively followed, and Indian corn and other grain are raised with little labor and less skill on the part of the cultivators."

It was determined to build a hut on the hill at the junction, and open a market for the purpose of trading with the natives. The arrangements were completed on the 29th of January, 1833, but the result was not what had been expected. Very little ivory was brought in; the indigo was so badly prepared as to be valueless, and the other articles offered would scarcely pay the cost of transportation. To add to their misfortunes, fever broke out again; Mr. Laird was several times on the verge of the grave; Dr. Briggs died on the 28th of February, and Mr. Lander, who had been prevented from reaching Rabba and Boussa, in the *Alburkah*, on account of the shallowness of the water, returned ill, with the loss of some of his men. News having reached the expedition that the King of Funda (the town which Lander had attempted to reach, on his return from Sackatoo to Badagry) desired some of the white men to visit him, Mr. Laird determined to proceed thither, and Lander promised to follow him, as soon as he should be strong enough.

Toward the end of March, Mr. Laird set out, and after a voyage of seven days up the Chadda, in the *Quorra's* boat, reached the town of Yimmaha, thirty miles from Funda. As he was too ill to travel on horseback, he sent his goods and men by land, and continued his way up the river to a village about nine miles from the capital, whither he was carried in a hammock. The next morning he visited the king, who was a sinister-looking person, dressed in robes of silk and velvet. The hut to which Mr. Laird was conducted, was so dirty and small that he set out to hunt a better one. One of his men, Sarsfield, soon came running to him with the news that the king had seized upon all his goods, and had prohibited any person from furnishing him with a residence. He finally, however, furnished them with a rather better hut. "After being in my new quarters a few days," says Mr. Laird, "I began to suspect that my Funda trip would turn out an unprofitable speculation, as two or three natives had been severely flogged for attempting to sell me some ivory; and the king, who visited me every day, evidently had none—or if he had, thought it better to keep it and my goods also. I had, in short, been completely decoyed, and had only myself to blame, as I had put myself entirely in the king's power."

He finally prevailed upon the king to allow him to send Sarsfield to the *Quorra*, apparently to procure more goods, but in reality to bring rockets and ammunition. After an absence of fourteen days, the latter returned with the news that Captain Hill, of the *Alburkah*, was so ill that Mr. Lander had set off in a canoe for the sea-coast with him. "If I was glad to see Sarsfield," observes Mr. Laird, "he was overjoyed to find me still alive, and though much fatigued with his journey, having walked

from Yimmaha, a distance of thirty miles, we sat up until nearly day-break, and laid a plan for frightening the king and his people, all the credit of which is due to him both for its invention and success. He had brought the rockets with him, and had let off one at Yimmaha, and described the terror and alarm of the inhabitants produced by it as excessive. They looked upon him as a deity, and supplied him in consequence with provisions and carriers to Funda. He proposed to try the effect of them here, letting off three or four at a time, and burning blue-lights after them.

"The next morning we had a visit from the king, who wished to see what Sarsfield had brought. I gave him to understand that my people would not send any thing until I went to them myself, and that in the evening I intended to make a grand fetish to my god, to know whether I should go, or stay at Funda. The king said that was good, and that he would attend with all his priests and summon the inhabitants to witness it. The fetish was to be made under a large tamarind-tree, at the upper end of the street in which the court was wherein we resided. We made as much of this affair as we could, and pretended to go through sundry preparations, in order to impress on the minds of these people an idea of its importance.

"In the evening I was carried out about seven o'clock, and seated in the street opposite the tree, the king and his chief men close by, surrounding Sarsfield and the Kroomen, who were holding the rockets and blue lights that we had brought out for the occasion. As a commencement of the proceeding, I took a piece of paper and with great solemnity fastened it to one of the rockets and gave it to Sarsfield; we agreed that the signal for firing the rockets and blue lights, should be the discharge of my pistol. An immense crowd of natives was assembled to witness the ceremony of the white man's fetish; the wide street was filled, and the roofs of the houses and the tops of the walls were crowded with spectators, all full of wonder and speculation as to what they were to see.

"Every thing being ready, I fired my pistol, and up flew four beautiful two pound rockets, the discharge of which was immediately followed by the blaze of six blue lights, throwing a ghastly glare over the whole scene. The effect was perfectly electric; the natives had no idea of what was coming, and fled in all directions. The king, filled with terror, threw himself on the ground before me, and placing one of my feet on his head, entreated me to preserve him from harm, and to inform him what was the decision of the Fates. It was now my turn to make use of the power which I was supposed to possess, and I replied that I should tell him presently, but that I must now return to my house with all my men. The farce had been successful so far, and the artifice was only to be carried out to a successful issue.

"After keeping the king in suspense about an hour, I sent word to him that I was ready to receive him, and that he himself was to come

and see the result of the fetish. He came immediately, and as soon as he was seated, I told him that I had sent for him to see whether I was to go or stay, and that my god would punish them in a manner of which they had no idea, if they presumed to break his commandments. I then took from my pocket a little compass, and explained to him, that if the needle in it pointed toward me, as soon as it was placed on the ground, that I was to go from Funda, and that if toward him that I was to stay, to all of which he attended with much reverence. I of course took care to know my position, and placing the compass on the ground, the needle very properly turned toward me. This was sufficient, the thing was done, and the king was convinced that he should allow me to depart freely. I wished him to handle it, but he shrunk from it with terror, imagining that it was a living creature, and was glad to get out of my presence, after having promised to give me horses, or whatever I might want in the morning. We had the greatest difficulty to preserve our gravity throughout this farce, and when left to ourselves we enjoyed a hearty laugh at the success of our plan, and the credulity of the king."

Mr. Laird lost no time in returning to the *Quorra*, which he reached in the beginning of June, having been detained seven weeks at Funda. He dispatched the purser, Mr. Hector, to the latter place, for the purpose of bringing away the goods he had been obliged to leave behind him, but without success. Finding it impossible to trade with the natives to any advantage, his crew being disabled by sickness, and himself in a dropsical state which threatened to become fatal, he determined to return to the coast. "On the 10th of July," he says, "the water having risen by measurement fourteen feet, we got under weigh, taking the *Alburkah* in tow, and proceeded rapidly down the river, passing the beautiful gorge through the Kong Mountains, and arriving at Bocqua, where we anchored to purchase rice and other provisions. About two o'clock in the afternoon, to my great surprise, a boat under canvas hove in sight. I sent a boat to her with Hector, who returned with Mr. Lander and Mr. Oldfield, our surgeon, bringing a parcel of letters for me. Mr. Lander was looking much worse than when I last saw him, and had evidently suffered much in the boats from exposure to the weather. He had been thirty-two days on his passage from the Nun, in the brig's long boat. Mr. Lander having determined to endeavor to reach Boussa in the *Alburkah*, fixed his departure for the 27th; and though very anxious myself to visit a place hallowed by the melancholy fate of Mungo Park, I did not consider myself justified in returning, and adhered to my determination to lay the vessel up at Fernando Po and return to England."



## NARRATIVE OF DR. OLDFIELD.

Mr. Laird carried out his purpose, and reached Liverpool in safety, with restored health, in January, 1834. We now follow the fortunes of the remaining vessel, the *Alburkah*, which once more proceeded up the Niger, having on board Richard Lander, Lieutenant Allen, and Dr. Oldfield.

On the 2d of August they entered the Chadda, intending to ascend it to the eastward as far as Lake Tchad, if practicable; but after proceeding a distance of one hundred and four miles, and reaching a country called Domah, the king of which was at war with the Shekh of Bornou, they ran out of provisions, and were obliged to return. The people would neither trade nor sell them any thing, but deserted the villages and retreated into the woods at their approach. On the 20th of August they again entered the Niger, which they designed ascending to Boussa, or as far as it would be possible for the steamer to go. On reaching Kacunda, they saw the old schoolmaster who had been so friendly to the brothers Lander on their first voyage, and was greatly surprised to see one of them again. The river was rising rapidly, and they experienced no difficulty in ascending. Dr. Oldfield says: "A number of natives lined the bank of the river, who, as the vessel approached them, fell upon their knees. Our interpreter hailed them, and was answered *that they came to see the people of God*. A large canoe was now seen approaching from a distance, containing nearly forty persons, several of whom were Mallams. When near the vessel, the Mallams and natives in front fell down on their knees, exclaiming, 'Allah um de le la fee! Allah um de le la fee!' (God is great, and God preserve you!) They continued repeating extracts from the Koran as they drew nearer; and when the Mallams in the front had knelt, those behind them fell down in the same manner. It was an extraordinary sight, and produced a strange but very pleasing effect."

At Egga, where they arrived on the 7th of September, they saw Felatahs for the first time. They made no halt here, however, but kept on their way to Rabba, which they reached, without accident, on the 16th. "As we rapidly approached the town," says Dr. Oldfield, "it appeared to be situated on the slope of a rising ground; and the houses being built one above the other, impart to it the appearance of an amphitheater. With the aid of a glass we could discern an amazing crowd of natives assembled on the banks; but, what was more in accordance with our wishes, we could distinguish horses, cows, bullocks, sheep, and goats. As we drew nearer, we found the city to be of immense extent, with villages all round the suburbs. The king was apprised of our intention to fire a salute, and the walls of Rabba, for the first time, echoed with the sound of British cannon, and her people witnessed a novel sight in the arrival of a British steam-vessel constructed of iron.

After our salute, our people broke out into three hearty cheers, which perhaps surprised still more the thousands of human beings that were assembled before the walls of Rabba."

It was determined to establish a trade at this place, and then to run the *Alburkah* as far toward Boussa as possible, after which Lander and Oldfield would proceed in the long-boat. Both of these plans, however, were thwarted; the goods did not meet with a ready sale, and the engineer discovered a flaw in the cylinder, which disabled the boat from advancing against a strong current. They remained here until the 2d of October, when, finding that little was to be done in the way of trade, and that the river was beginning to fall, they decided to return to the sea-coast. While visiting their old friend Abokko, at Damuggoo, on the voyage down, Lander gave him a very handsome necklace, which had been intended for the King of Boussa, and he repaid it by the gift of a large island opposite the town, to which the name of English Island was given. Mr. Brown, one of the company's clerks, was placed upon it, to trade with the natives during the absence of the steamer, Abokko having promised to build a house for him. The vessel then resumed her voyage, and reached the sea on the 31st.

"No sooner had we reached Fernando Po," says Dr. Oldfield, "than I became too unwell to attend to any thing that was going forward respecting the destination of the vessel. Lieutenant Allen, having completed his survey of the river, determined on returning to England by the first opportunity; and it was now arranged that I should go again up the river with the vessel, while Mr. Lander, after visiting Cape Coast and Accrah for cowries, was to follow me, and expected to rejoin me up the river in about six weeks."

On the 27th of November they were again in the River Nun. Lander left the same day in the *Quorra* for Cape Coast, while the *Alburkah*, under the command of Dr. Oldfield, sailed for the Niger. Shortly after passing Ebot, the engine gave way, and all efforts to repair it seemed to be ineffectual. While these attempts were going on, Dr. Oldfield took a boat and ascended the river to Iddah, where he arrived on the 23d of December, and found Mr. Brown, the clerk, who had been left behind. Finally, on the 1st of January, 1834, the engine was again put in motion, but in the mean time the engineers and several of the crew had died. Dr. Oldfield was, therefore, obliged to intrust the management of the engine entirely to the black firemen. They proceeded very slowly, and did not reach Iddah until the 14th.

From this time forward, the journal of Dr. Oldfield is little else than a record of his dealings with the Kings of Iddah, Abokko, and other native chiefs, in his endeavors to establish a trade. The former, whose name was Attah, was the same man who had poisoned Pascoe, and endeavored to get Lander into his power with the same object. Abokko alone was faithful, and inclined to take their part, but there was no end to the intrigue and deceit which they encountered. The trading

operations were tolerably successful, and they received a larger quantity of ivory than they had before taken. In the early part of February they heard a rumor that Richard Lander, in ascending the river to rejoin them, with a supply of cowries, had been attacked and plundered in the Eboe country; and this was confirmed on the 29th of March by a letter from Lander himself, who stated that he had been attacked on the 20th of January, near a village called Hyammah, about eighty-five miles from the mouth of the river. Three men were killed, and the boat taken, with every thing it contained, Lander and the other men barely escaping in a light canoe, in which they pulled down the stream all night. Lander was severely wounded by a ball in the thigh, and had returned to Fernando Po.



LANDER'S GRAVE.

In March, Dr. Oldfield received notice from Abokko that an attack on the steamer was designed by the natives, and consequently kept a strict watch at night, to guard against surprise. He remained in this region until the 1st of June, constantly exposed to the danger of hostilities, which were only avoided, in two or three instances, by his coolness and determination. Finally, his men being all more or less disabled by the fevers, which had already carried off several of them, he decided to return to the sea. In passing down the river, he reached, on the 21st, the spot where Lander had been attacked. He says: "About three o'clock, on passing a town situate on the left bank, about two hundred natives rushed from behind the trees and fired at us, taking deliberate aim. I stood by the nine-pounder and fired a rocket over the town; but this did not appear to alarm them, for they kept up an irregular fire,

ER.

ed a larger quantity  
ly part of February  
ing the river to re-  
cked and plundered  
e 29th of March by  
d been attacked on  
h, about eighty-five  
were killed, and the  
and the other men  
led down the stream  
all in the thigh, and

ookko that an attack  
consequently kept a  
He remained in this  
the danger of hostil-  
ances, by his coolness  
re or less disabled by  
f them, he decided to  
reached, on the 21st,  
says: "About three  
k, about two hundred  
us, taking deliberate  
cket over the town;  
ot up an irregular fire,

#### GOVERNMENT EXPEDITION TO THE NIGER. 553

running along the bank with the vessel until we rounded the point and got out of sight of the town. The musket-balls flew about the temporary house and the ship's quarter-deck in all directions for several minutes; and although they struck the chimney and roof of the house, we all escaped."

The *Alburkah* reached Fernando Po on the 9th of July. Richard Lander had died in consequence of the wounds he had received, and was buried in a sequestered spot near the town, at the base of a lofty cotton-tree, where a monument has since been placed to his memory and that of the many other daring men who have fallen in the attempt to open the savage regions of Africa to intercourse with the civilized world.

Dr. Oldfield took passage for England on the 11th of August. "On the 18th of November," he says, "I reached London, but in a very infirm state of health, having suffered much in my constitution from exposure to climate and all kinds of privation, and the only European left alive of the crew of the *Alburkah* who left Fernando Po in November"

#### ALLEN AND THOMPSON'S EXPEDITION TO THE NIGER.

After the failure of Mr. Laird's commercial expedition to the Niger, no further attempt was made for several years. In 1839, however, a society was formed, under the presidency of Prince Albert, "for the Extinction of the Slave-trade and the Civilization of Africa." A deputation from this society waited on Lord John Russell, recommending that a government expedition should be sent to the coast of Africa, and the river Niger, with commissioners empowered to form treaties of commerce and for the suppression of the external slave-trade. After some deliberation the government acceded, and orders were given to build three iron steamers for the service. Two of these, the *Albert* and *Wilberforce*, were 140 feet in length, and of 457 tons burden; the third, the *Soudan*, was of 250 tons only, and 113 feet in length.

The vessels were built during the summer of 1840; in November of that year, most of the officers appointed to the expedition had joined their respective ships, and the greater part of the crews had entered. Captain Trotter was appointed commander of the *Albert*, Captain William Allen, of the *Wilberforce*, and Captain Bird Allen of the *Soudan*. These three commanders, with Mr. William Cook, were appointed commissioners, empowered to make treaties. In addition, several scientific men were sent out, under the auspices of the African Civilization Society. As auxiliary to the purpose of the society, but not officially connected with it, nor with the expedition, an Agricultural Society was formed, with the intention of establishing a model farm in such a locality as might be selected by the commissioners. The Admiralty granted a

passage to Mr. Carr, a colored West Indian, who was engaged to act as superintendent of the farm. All the preparations having been completed, the expedition sailed from England on the 22d of April, 1841.

After touching at the Canaries, Sierra Leone, Liberia, and Cape Coast Castle, the three vessels reached the river Nun on the 9th of August. The surf was very heavy on the bar, and owing to the vessels



MOUTH OF THE NIGER.

being rather deeply laden, with their coal, supplies, and the articles for the model farm, which they had taken on board at Cape Coast, they did not venture to attempt the entrance, until the 15th, when the sea was smooth. Says Captain Allen: "It was a moment of deep and breathless expectation, both as being a passage of considerable difficulty and as being the first absolute step in that path, so full of novelty and exciting interest, but which all knew must be fraught with danger; yet their zeal did not suffer such anticipations to darken their prospect, and the accomplishment of the entrance of the river Niger was announced by three cheers from the whole crew."

On the 20th, they started on their voyage up the river, passing into the main stream by the same narrow channel which Lander and Laird had chosen, and, after exploring a new arm of the river to the westward, anchored off Eboe, the residence of King Obie, on the evening of the 25th. The next day, after sending one of his sons to ascertain the intentions of his visitors, King Obie made his appearance, in his state canoe, with a numerous retinue, and a deafening company of native drummers and singers. On reaching the deck of the *Wilberforce*, the king recognized Captain Allen (who, as Lieutenant Allen, had accompanied Lander and Oldfield in the *Alburkah*) as an old friend. "He brought with him," says the Captain, "two favorite wives and a daughter; one of the for-

mer probably was not more than thirteen, and was younger than the daughter. They were simply attired with a scanty waist-cloth; but two dresses of flaming red silk, and another of cotton print, supplied to the expedition by their compassionate sisters of our own blest land, were presented to them, and very soon put on, but did not appear to add at all to their comfort, as they stood trembling between fear and joy."



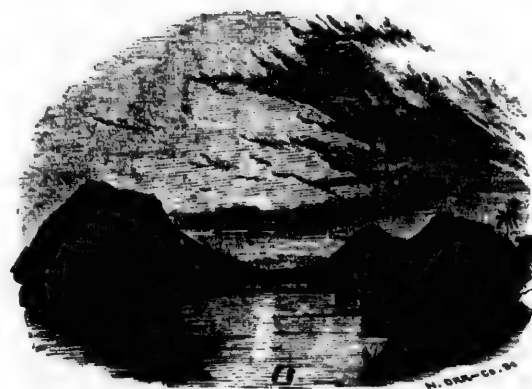
KING OBIE AND HIS WIVES.

After a consultation between the commissioners and King Obie, the latter expressed his willingness to make such a treaty as they proposed to him—to give up the slave-trade in his dominions, and prevent his neighbors, as far as possible, from carrying it on—to give English traders the freedom of the river, allow them to purchase houses and lands, and both to enjoy their own religion and to convert his own subjects to it, without disturbance. On the 28th, the treaty having been carefully explained, was signed by the commissioners on the part of the queen, properly witnessed; and by Obie, witnessed by his eldest son and two brothers. Captain Trotter then requested the chaplain, the Rev. Theodore Muller, to ask the blessing of God on this successful commencement of their labors. "The nature of the ceremony having been explained to Obie," says Captain Allen, "with an intimation that he might remain or retire, he signified his wish to join us, and imitated our example in kneeling to the Christian's God—to him an unknown and inappreciable being.

"In that solemn moment, when the stillness was unbroken, save by the reverential voice of the clergyman, and all were devoutly engaged, Obie became violently agitated. On the conclusion of the ceremony he started up, and uttering a sudden fearful exclamation, called aloud for his ju-ju man to bring his protecting 'Arriai,' or idol, being evidently under the impression that we had performed some incantation to his prejudice, the adverse tendencies of which, it would be necessary to



counteract by a sacrifice on his part. He stood trembling with fear and agitation; the perspiration streamed down his face and neck, showing how great was the agony of mind he endured. The priest had heard the cry of his sovereign, and rushing into the cabin with the idol—a piece of blackened wood, enveloped in cloth—which the king placed between his feet, was about to offer the customary libation of palm-wine, etc., when Captain Trotter, also much disconcerted at the idea of a heathen ceremony being performed in our presence, and in opposition to the rites of our holy religion, interrupted him, and called for Captain



THE MODEL FARM.

Bird Allen, who had just left the cabin. It was an interval of breathless anxiety, the king became every moment more alarmed, and desirous to continue his sacrifice, until it was explained to him that we had asked the Great God, who was Father of us all, to bestow His blessing alike on the black people and on us. This immediately pacified him, he desisted from the operations, and his good humor as quickly returned."

On the 1st of September, the vessels reached Damuggoo, the residence of old Abokko, who had proved so true a friend to the Landers and Mr. Laird. They were grieved to find that the old man had been dead for several years. His family, however, was still in great power, one of his sons, Okien, having succeeded him in the government of the town and territory. They then proceeded to Iddah, where the commissioners had several interviews with the treacherous old king, Attah. He professed his entire willingness to discontinue the slave-trade, prevent it from being carried on, to discontinue human sacrifices, receive and treat hospitably English traders, and finally, to give up such a tract of land for the purposes of the model farm, as the commissioners might select. After making all these promises, he was particularly anxious to see the

R.

bling with fear and  
and neck, showing  
the priest had heard  
n with the idol—a  
the king placed be-  
ation of palm-wine,  
ed at the idea of a  
and in opposition to  
called for Captain

interval of breathless  
med, and desirous to  
m that we had asked  
ow His blessing alike  
r pacified him, he de-  
quently returned."  
Damuggoo, the resi-  
friend to the Landers  
the old man had been  
s still in great power,  
the government of the  
h, where the commis-  
old king, Attah. He  
lave-trade, prevent it  
ces, receive and treat  
such a tract of land  
sioners might select.  
ly anxious to see the

present intended for him. All the arrangements having been concluded, the expedition left on the 8th for the confluence of the Niger and the Chadda, near which point the commissioners proposed to locate the model farm.

By this time the fever had made its appearance on board the vessels, and soon occasioned fearful havoc. The men died every day, and they had every reason to expect a recurrence of the melancholy scenes on board the *Quorra* and *Alburkah*. On the 12th, they reached the junction, and the botanist and geologist, having examined the country, recommended a spot on the western bank of the Niger, opposite the mouth of the Chadda, and near a lofty hill called Mount Stirling, by Lander. The preliminaries were agreed upon between the commissioners and the agents of Attah, and the land was purchased for the sum of 700,000 cowries (about \$220). The tract extended about sixteen miles along the bank of the river, and four miles in depth.

"On the 18th of September," says Captain Allen, "the number of sick had increased to sixty, and death had already done fearful execution among us. The scenes at night were most agonizing. Nothing but muttering delirium, or suppressed groans were heard on every side on board the vessels, affording a sad contrast to the placid character of the river and its surrounding scenery." It was at first proposed to send the invalids to the summit of the hills, in order to enjoy a purer air; but the surgeon declared that they could not safely be removed, and Captain Trotter then decided to put them on board the *Soudan*, and have them carried down to the sea-coast. On Sunday, the 19th, this was done: "Prayers were read to the crews of both vessels. It was an affecting scene. The whole of one side of the little vessel was covered with the invalids, and the cabins were full of officers; there was, indeed, no room for more."

A conference of the commanders was now held, as to the proper course to be pursued. On the one hand it was proposed that they should ascend the Niger as far as Rabba, to make a treaty with the Felatahs, and other native tribes; while Captain William Allen, who had some experience of the river and its climate, strongly urged an immediate return to the sea, in order to restore the health of the crews. After a long discussion it was decided that the *Albert* should attempt to reach Rabba, while the *Wilberforce* should descend the river, and proceed to carry out the intentions of the government in the Bights of Benin and Biafra. Captain Trotter having prepared his dispatches for England, the vessels separated on the 20th of September.

The *Wilberforce* reached Fernando Po on the 1st of October, and found the *Soudan* at anchor there. Several persons had died on both vessels, and as there was no diminution of the sick-list, but the contrary, Captain Allen resolved to leave Fernando Po as soon as possible—its reputation for unhealthiness being second only to the fatal Niger—and to proceed to Ascension, as the best means under Providence of enabling

the crew of the *Wilberforce* to recover their health. A small trading steamer, called the *Ethiopia*, under charge of Mr. Becroft, was engaged to proceed at once up the Niger in order to assist the *Albert*, if, as was feared, her officers and crew should be disabled by fever. She sailed on the 7th, and two days afterward the *Wilberforce* left on her sanitary cruise. She visited Prince's Island, St. Thomas, Annobon, and Ascension; the sick gradually recovered, with two or three exceptions, the vessel was overhauled and thoroughly cleansed, and Captain Allen was about to sail for the coast of Africa in the beginning of January, 1842, when the melancholy intelligence reached Ascension that the *Albert* had returned to Fernando Po, with all her crew dangerously ill with fever.

"They had been immediately landed at the hospital, where Commander Bird Allen, with several officers and men had fallen a sacrifice to their zeal in braving to the utmost the climate of the fatal river. In fact, the vessel and her crew were only saved from great risk of destruction by the timely meeting of Mr. Becroft, in the *Ethiopia*, who brought them safely to Fernando Po. She had been conducted as far as the point where her deliverer was met, by the almost superhuman exertions of Doctors McWilliam and Stanger; but it was not possible that their unaided strength could have lasted much longer. Captain Trotter was reported to be in such danger, that the medical men had thought it necessary he should immediately return to England, as the only means of saving his life, and that officer deeming it also of importance that one of the commissioners should lay before her majesty's government a statement of the condition of the vessels and survivors of the expedition, had taken his passage in a small schooner which was about to sail for England."

Dr. McWilliam's journal of what occurred on board the *Albert* after the departure of the *Wilberforce* and *Soudan* from the mouth of the Chadda, adds another melancholy chapter to the history of Niger exploration. It will be remembered that Captain Trotter had determined to ascend as far as Rabba, but the number of the sick increased as he advanced, and by the time he reached Egga, on the 28th of September, the engineer was unable to perform his duty. The King of Egga received the officers in a friendly manner, but refused to make a treaty, through fear of the Felatahs. On the 3d of October, Dr. McWilliam writes: "This day our hopes of penetrating further into the interior received a finishing blow. Our arduous, enterprising, and kind chief, who was complaining yesterday, has now unmistakable symptoms of fever. Commander Bird Allen lies in a very critical state, and upward of twenty others of our companions are completely prostrated. In short, of the whites at all fit for duty, there remain only one seaman, the sergeant, and one private of marines, John Huxley, sick attendant, John Duncan, master-at-arms, Mr. Willie, mate, Dr. Stanger, and myself. The time, therefore, seems now to have arrived when there is no reason-

able prospect of our reaching Rabba this season; and no alternative left us but to return to the sea with all possible speed."

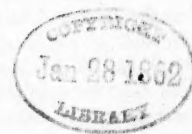
On the voyage down several deaths occurred. Two of the officers jumped overboard, while in the delirium of fever, and one of them was lost. The entire command and management of the vessel devolved on Doctors McWilliam and Stanger, the former of whom undertook the navigation, while the latter acted as engineer: and in addition to these labors, they took charge of the sick. At the model farm, they found that the persons they had left had cleared and planted twelve acres of ground, and built several huts, but Mr. Carr, the superintendent, with the schoolmaster and gardener, were so ill, that the physicians had them brought on board, and gave the farm into the charge of Ralph Moore, an American negro, who had accompanied the expedition from Liberia. On the 13th, below Eboe, they fortunately met the *Ethiopia*, without the assistance of which vessel they would have been unable to cross the bar at the mouth of the Nun, and on the 17th, reached Fernando Po.

After the departure of Captain Trotter for England, the command of the expedition devolved upon Captain Allen. In a consultation with Mr. Cook, the remaining commissioner, it was decided to proceed up the Niger again, to the relief of the settlers of the model farm; but Captain Allen deferred this trip until June, when the Niger should be swollen by the tropical rains. In the mean time he proceeded to carry out the object of the expedition in the Bights of Benin and Biafra, which occupied him until the beginning of June, when he returned to Fernando Po. He was preparing to set out for the Niger once more, when, on the 24th of June, dispatches arrived from England to put a stop to the expedition, and forward the officers and men composing it to England, with the exception of the few who would be required to proceed to the relief of the persons left at the model farm.

The *Wilberforce* was detailed for this service, under the command of Lieutenant Webb, and having been fitted out in all haste, entered the mouth of the Niger on the 2d of July. She proceeded up the river rapidly, passed Idda on the 10th, and had nearly reached the mouth of the Chadda, when she struck on a sunken rock. She was built in compartments, which alone prevented her from being a total loss; but the damage was so serious, that on reaching the model farm, Mr. Webb was obliged to run her aground to have the hull repaired. This was accomplished in a day or two, and the vessel got afloat again; and, as fever had already made its appearance, haste was made to reship the goods and stores at the model farm and return down the river. It was found that Moore, who had been left in charge of the undertaking, had not sufficient control over his subordinates; the latter were idle and vicious; and though the crops promised well and the natives were friendly, it was thought best to abandon the place altogether.

Lieutenant Webb returned to Fernando Po on the 29th of July, and soon afterward sailed in the *Wilberforce* for England, where he arrived

on the 17th of November. Captain Allen and the remainder of the expedition had already arrived in September. Thus disastrously terminated an imposing attempt to open the Niger to English commerce—not from any want of energy or courage on the part of those who engaged in it, but from the ravages of a climate into which few Europeans can venture and live. Of the total of one hundred and forty-five Europeans who took part in this expedition, forty-four died, and only fourteen escaped without an attack of fever.



GER.

remainder of the ex-  
astrously terminated  
commerce—not from  
se who engaged in it,  
Europeans can venture  
ve Europeans who took  
fourteen escaped with-



